

## SECTION 1 GENERAL

Group 1 Safety Hints .....	1-1
Group 2 Specifications .....	1-10
Group 3 Operational Checkout Record Sheet .....	1-21

## SECTION 2 ENGINE

Group 1 Structure and Function .....	2-1
Group 2 Engine speed and Stall rpm .....	2-3

## SECTION 3 POWER TRAIN SYSTEM

Group 1 Structure and Function .....	3-1
Group 2 Operational Checks and Troubleshooting .....	3-86
Group 3 Test and Adjustments .....	3-98
Group 4 Disassembly and Assembly .....	3-100

## SECTION 4 BRAKE SYSTEM

Group 1 Structure and Function .....	4-1
Group 2 Operational Checks and Troubleshooting .....	4-30
Group 3 Tests and Adjustments .....	4-37
Group 4 Disassembly and assembly .....	4-39

## SECTION 5 STEERING SYSTEM

Group 1 Structure and Function .....	5-1
Group 2 Operational Checks and Troubleshooting .....	5-18
Group 3 Tests and Adjustments .....	5-26
Group 4 Disassembly and Assembly .....	5-34

## SECTION 6 WORK EQUIPMENT

Group 1 Structure and Function .....	6-1
Group 2 Operational Checks and Troubleshooting .....	6-39
Group 3 Tests and Adjustments .....	6-50
Group 4 Disassembly and Assembly .....	6-64

## SECTION 7 ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

Group 1 Component Location .....	7-1
Group 2 Electrical Circuit .....	7-3
Group 3 Monitoring System .....	7-22
Group 4 Electrical Component Specification .....	7-67
Group 5 Connectors .....	7-74
Group 6 Troubleshooting .....	7-95



## 1. STRUCTURE

This service manual has been prepared as an aid to improve the quality of repairs by giving the serviceman an accurate understanding of the product and by showing him the correct way to perform repairs and make judgements. Make sure you understand the contents of this manual and use it to full effect at every opportunity.

This service manual mainly contains the necessary technical information for operations performed in a service workshop.

For ease of understanding, the manual is divided into the following sections.

### **Structure and function**

This group explains the structure and function of each component. It serves not only to give an understanding of the structure, but also serves as reference material for troubleshooting.

### **Operational checks and troubleshooting**

This group explains the system operational checks and troubleshooting charts correlating problem to remedy.

### **Tests and adjustments**

This group explains checks to be made before and after performing repairs, as well as adjustments to be made at completion of the checks and repairs.

### **Disassembly and assembly**

This section explains the order to be followed when removing, installing, disassembling or assembling each component, as well as precautions to be taken for these operations.

The specifications contained in this shop manual are subject to change at any time and without any advance notice. Contact your Hyundai distributor for the latest information.

## 2. HOW TO READ THE SERVICE MANUAL

### Distribution and updating

Any additions, amendments or other changes will be sent to HYUNDAI distributors.

Get the most up-to-date information before you start any work.

### Filing method

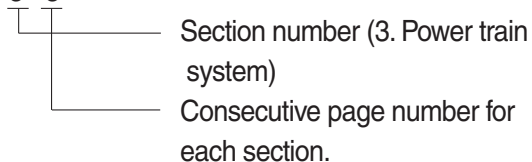
1. See the page number on the bottom of the page.

File the pages in correct order.

2. Following examples shows how to read the page number.

Example 1

3 - 3



3. Additional pages : Additional pages are indicated by a hyphen(-) and number after the page number. File as in the example.

10 - 4

10 - 4 - 1

10 - 4 - 2

10 - 5

Added pages

### Revised edition mark (①②③...)

When a manual is revised, an edition mark is recorded on the bottom outside corner of the pages.

### Revisions

Revised pages are shown at the list of revised pages on the between the contents page and section 1 page.

### Symbols

So that the shop manual can be of ample practical use, important places for safety and quality are marked with the following symbols.

Symbol	Item	Remarks
	Safety	Special safety precautions are necessary when performing the work.
		Extra special safety precautions are necessary when performing the work because it is under internal pressure.
	Caution	Special technical precautions or other precautions for preserving standards are necessary when performing the work.

### 3. CONVERSION TABLE

Method of using the Conversion Table

The Conversion Table in this section is provided to enable simple conversion of figures. For details of the method of using the Conversion Table, see the example given below.

#### Example

1. Method of using the Conversion Table to convert from millimeters to inches

Convert 55 mm into inches.

- (1) Locate the number 50 in the vertical column at the left side, take this as ①, then draw a horizontal line from ①.
- (2) Locate the number 5 in the row across the top, take this as ②, then draw a perpendicular line down from ②.
- (3) Take the point where the two lines cross as ③. This point ③ gives the value when converting from millimeters to inches. Therefore, 55 mm = 2.165 inches.

2. Convert 550 mm into inches.

- (1) The number 550 does not appear in the table, so divide by 10 (move the decimal point one place to the left) to convert it to 55 mm.
- (2) Carry out the same procedure as above to convert 55 mm to 2.165 inches.
- (3) The original value (550 mm) was divided by 10, so multiply 2.165 inches by 10 (move the decimal point one place to the right) to return to the original value.  
This gives 550 mm = 21.65 inches.

#### Millimeters to inches

②

1mm = 0.03937 in

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0		0.039	0.079	0.118	0.157	0.197	0.236	0.276	0.315	0.354
10	0.394	0.433	0.472	0.512	0.551	0.591	0.630	0.669	0.709	0.748
20	0.787	0.827	0.866	0.906	0.945	0.984	1.024	1.063	1.102	1.142
30	1.181	1.220	1.260	1.299	1.339	1.378	1.417	1.457	1.496	1.536
40	1.575	1.614	1.654	1.693	1.732	1.772	1.811	1.850	1.890	1.929
① 50	1.969	2.008	2.047	2.087	2.126	③ 2.165	2.205	2.244	2.283	2.323
60	2.362	2.402	2.441	2.480	2.520	2.559	2.598	2.638	2.677	2.717
70	2.756	2.795	2.835	2.874	2.913	2.953	2.992	3.032	3.071	3.110
80	3.150	3.189	3.228	3.268	3.307	3.346	3.386	3.425	3.465	3.504
90	3.543	3.583	3.622	3.661	3.701	3.740	3.780	3.819	3.858	3.898

**Millimeters to inches**

1mm = 0.03937in

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0		0.039	0.079	0.118	0.157	0.197	0.236	0.276	0.315	0.354
10	0.394	0.433	0.472	0.512	0.551	0.591	0.630	0.669	0.709	0.748
20	0.787	0.827	0.866	0.906	0.945	0.984	1.024	1.063	1.102	1.142
30	1.181	1.220	1.260	1.299	1.339	1.378	1.417	1.457	1.496	1.536
40	1.575	1.614	1.654	1.693	1.732	1.772	1.811	1.850	1.890	1.929
50	1.969	2.008	2.047	2.087	2.126	2.165	2.205	2.244	2.283	2.323
60	2.362	2.402	2.441	2.480	2.520	2.559	2.598	2.638	2.677	2.717
70	2.756	2.795	2.835	2.874	2.913	2.953	2.992	3.032	3.071	3.110
80	3.150	3.189	3.228	3.268	3.307	3.346	3.386	3.425	3.465	3.504
90	3.543	3.583	3.622	3.661	3.701	3.740	3.780	3.819	3.858	3.898

**Kilogram to Pound**

1kg = 2.2046lb

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0		2.20	4.41	6.61	8.82	11.02	13.23	15.43	17.64	19.84
10	22.05	24.25	26.46	28.66	30.86	33.07	35.27	37.48	39.68	41.89
20	44.09	46.30	48.50	50.71	51.91	55.12	57.32	59.5	61.73	63.93
30	66.14	68.34	70.55	72.75	74.96	77.16	79.37	81.57	83.78	85.98
40	88.18	90.39	92.59	94.80	97.00	99.21	101.41	103.62	105.82	108.03
50	110.23	112.44	114.64	116.85	119.05	121.25	123.46	125.66	127.87	130.07
60	132.28	134.48	136.69	138.89	141.10	143.30	145.51	147.71	149.91	152.12
70	154.32	156.53	158.73	160.94	163.14	165.35	167.55	169.76	171.96	174.17
80	176.37	178.57	180.78	182.98	185.19	187.39	189.60	191.80	194.01	196.21
90	198.42	200.62	202.83	205.03	207.24	209.44	211.64	213.85	216.05	218.26

**Liter to U.S. Gallon**

1 l = 0.2642 U.S.Gal

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0		0.264	0.528	0.793	1.057	1.321	1.585	1.849	2.113	2.378
10	2.642	2.906	3.170	3.434	3.698	3.963	4.227	4.491	4.755	5.019
20	5.283	5.548	5.812	6.076	6.340	6.604	6.869	7.133	7.397	7.661
30	7.925	8.189	8.454	8.718	8.982	9.246	9.510	9.774	10.039	10.303
40	10.567	10.831	11.095	11.359	11.624	11.888	12.152	12.416	12.680	12.944
50	13.209	13.473	13.737	14.001	14.265	14.529	14.795	15.058	15.322	15.586
60	15.850	16.115	16.379	16.643	16.907	17.171	17.435	17.700	17.964	18.228
70	18.492	18.756	19.020	19.285	19.549	19.813	20.077	20.341	20.605	20.870
80	21.134	21.398	21.662	21.926	22.190	22.455	22.719	22.983	23.247	23.511
90	23.775	24.040	24.304	24.568	24.832	25.096	25.631	25.625	25.889	26.153

**Liter to U.K. Gallon**

1 l = 0.21997 U.K.Gal

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0		0.220	0.440	0.660	0.880	1.100	1.320	1.540	1.760	1.980
10	2.200	2.420	2.640	2.860	3.080	3.300	3.520	3.740	3.950	4.179
20	4.399	4.619	4.839	5.059	5.279	5.499	5.719	5.939	6.159	6.379
30	6.599	6.819	7.039	7.259	7.479	7.699	7.919	8.139	8.359	8.579
40	8.799	9.019	9.239	9.459	9.679	9.899	10.119	10.339	10.559	10.778
50	10.998	11.281	11.438	11.658	11.878	12.098	12.318	12.528	12.758	12.978
60	13.198	13.418	13.638	13.858	14.078	14.298	14.518	14.738	14.958	15.178
70	15.398	15.618	15.838	16.058	16.278	16.498	16.718	16.938	17.158	17.378
80	17.598	17.818	18.037	18.257	18.477	18.697	18.917	19.137	19.357	19.577
90	19.797	20.017	20.237	20.457	20.677	20.897	21.117	21.337	21.557	21.777

kgf · m to lbf · ft

1 kgf · m = 7.233 lbf · ft

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
		7.2	14.5	21.7	28.9	36.2	43.4	50.6	57.9	65.1
10	72.3	79.6	86.8	94.0	101.3	108.5	115.7	123.0	130.2	137.4
20	144.7	151.9	159.1	166.4	173.6	180.8	188.1	195.3	202.5	209.8
30	217.0	224.2	231.5	238.7	245.9	253.2	260.4	267.6	274.9	282.1
40	289.3	296.6	303.8	311.0	318.3	325.5	332.7	340.0	347.2	354.4
50	361.7	368.9	376.1	383.4	390.6	397.8	405.1	412.3	419.5	426.8
60	434.0	441.2	448.5	455.7	462.9	470.2	477.4	484.6	491.8	499.1
70	506.3	513.5	520.8	528.0	535.2	542.5	549.7	556.9	564.2	571.4
80	578.6	585.9	593.1	600.3	607.6	614.8	622.0	629.3	636.5	643.7
90	651.0	658.2	665.4	672.7	679.9	687.1	694.4	701.6	708.8	716.1
100	723.3	730.5	737.8	745.0	752.2	759.5	766.7	773.9	781.2	788.4
110	795.6	802.9	810.1	817.3	824.6	831.8	839.0	846.3	853.5	860.7
120	868.0	875.2	882.4	889.7	896.9	904.1	911.4	918.6	925.8	933.1
130	940.3	947.5	954.8	962.0	969.2	976.5	983.7	990.9	998.2	10005.4
140	1012.6	1019.9	1027.1	1034.3	1041.5	1048.8	1056.0	1063.2	1070.5	1077.7
150	1084.9	1092.2	1099.4	1106.6	1113.9	1121.1	1128.3	1135.6	1142.8	1150.0
160	1157.3	1164.5	1171.7	1179.0	1186.2	1193.4	1200.7	1207.9	1215.1	1222.4
170	1129.6	1236.8	1244.1	1251.3	1258.5	1265.8	1273.0	1280.1	1287.5	1294.7
180	1301.9	1309.2	1316.4	1323.6	1330.9	1338.1	1345.3	1352.6	1359.8	1367.0
190	1374.3	1381.5	1388.7	1396.0	1403.2	1410.4	1417.7	1424.9	1432.1	1439.4

**kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> to lbf/in<sup>2</sup>**1 kgf / cm<sup>2</sup> = 14.2233 lbf / in<sup>2</sup>

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
		14.2	28.4	42.7	56.9	71.1	85.3	99.6	113.8	128.0
10	142.2	156.5	170.7	184.9	199.1	213.4	227.6	241.8	256.0	270.2
20	284.5	298.7	312.9	327.1	341.4	355.6	369.8	384.0	398.3	412.5
30	426.7	440.9	455.1	469.4	483.6	497.8	512.0	526.3	540.5	554.7
40	568.9	583.2	597.4	611.6	625.8	640.1	654.3	668.5	682.7	696.9
50	711.2	725.4	739.6	753.8	768.1	782.3	796.5	810.7	825.0	839.2
60	853.4	867.6	881.8	896.1	910.3	924.5	938.7	953.0	967.2	981.4
70	995.6	1010	1024	1038	1053	1067	1081	1095	1109	1124
80	1138	1152	1166	1181	1195	1209	1223	1237	1252	1266
90	1280	1294	1309	1323	1337	1351	1365	1380	1394	1408
100	1422	1437	1451	1465	1479	1493	1508	1522	1536	1550
110	1565	1579	1593	1607	1621	1636	1650	1664	1678	1693
120	1707	1721	1735	1749	1764	1778	1792	1806	1821	1835
130	1849	2863	1877	1892	1906	1920	1934	1949	1963	1977
140	1991	2005	2020	2034	2048	2062	2077	2091	2105	2119
150	2134	2148	2162	2176	2190	2205	2219	2233	2247	2262
160	2276	2290	2304	2318	2333	2347	2361	2375	2389	2404
170	2418	2432	2446	2460	2475	2489	2503	2518	2532	2546
180	2560	2574	2589	5603	2617	2631	2646	2660	2674	2688
200	2845	2859	2873	2887	2901	2916	2930	2944	2958	2973
210	2987	3001	3015	3030	3044	3058	3072	3086	3101	3115
220	3129	3143	3158	3172	3186	3200	3214	3229	3243	3257
230	3271	3286	3300	3314	3328	3343	3357	3371	3385	3399
240	3414	3428	3442	3456	3470	3485	3499	3513	3527	3542

## TEMPERATURE

Fahrenheit-Centigrade Conversion.

A simple way to convert a fahrenheit temperature reading into a centigrade temperature reading or vice verse is to enter the accompanying table in the center or boldface column of figures.

These figures refer to the temperature in either Fahrenheit or Centigrade degrees.

If it is desired to convert from Fahrenheit to Centigrade degrees, consider the center column as a table of Fahrenheit temperatures and read the corresponding Centigrade temperature in the column at the left.

If it is desired to convert from Centigrade to Fahrenheit degrees, consider the center column as a table of Centigrade values, and read the corresponding Fahrenheit temperature on the right.

°C		°F	°C		°F	°C		°F	°C		°F
-40.4	-40	-40.0	-11.7	11	51.8	7.8	46	114.8	27.2	81	117.8
-37.2	-35	-31.0	-11.1	12	53.6	8.3	47	116.6	27.8	82	179.6
-34.4	-30	-22.0	-10.6	13	55.4	8.9	48	118.4	28.3	83	181.4
-31.7	-25	-13.0	-10.0	14	57.2	9.4	49	120.2	28.9	84	183.2
-28.9	-20	-4.0	-9.4	15	59.0	10.0	50	122.0	29.4	85	185.0
-28.3	-19	-2.2	-8.9	16	60.8	10.6	51	123.8	30.0	86	186.8
-27.8	-18	-0.4	-8.3	17	62.6	11.1	52	125.6	30.6	87	188.6
-27.2	-17	1.4	-7.8	18	64.4	11.7	53	127.4	31.1	88	190.4
-26.7	-16	3.2	-6.7	20	68.0	12.8	55	131.0	32.2	90	194.0
-26.1	-15	5.0	-6.7	20	68.0	12.8	55	131.0	32.2	90	194.0
-25.6	-14	6.8	-6.1	21	69.8	13.3	56	132.8	32.8	91	195.8
-25.0	-13	8.6	-5.6	22	71.6	13.9	57	134.6	33.3	92	197.6
-24.4	-12	10.4	-5.0	23	73.4	14.4	58	136.4	33.9	93	199.4
-23.9	-11	12.2	-4.4	24	75.2	15.0	59	138.2	34.4	94	201.2
-23.3	-10	14.0	-3.9	25	77.0	15.6	60	140.0	35.0	95	203.0
-22.8	-9	15.8	-3.3	26	78.8	16.1	61	141.8	35.6	96	204.8
-22.2	-8	17.6	-2.8	27	80.6	16.7	62	143.6	36.1	97	206.6
-21.7	-7	19.4	-2.2	28	82.4	17.2	63	145.4	36.7	98	208.4
-21.1	-6	21.2	-1.7	29	84.2	17.8	64	147.2	37.2	99	210.2
-20.6	-5	23.0	-1.1	35	95.0	21.1	70	158.0	51.7	125	257.0
-20.0	-4	24.8	-0.6	31	87.8	18.9	66	150.8	40.6	105	221.0
-19.4	-3	26.6	0	32	89.6	19.4	67	152.6	43.3	110	230.0
-18.9	-2	28.4	0.6	33	91.4	20.0	68	154.4	46.1	115	239.0
-18.3	-1	30.2	1.1	34	93.2	20.6	69	156.2	48.9	120	248.0
-17.8	0	32.0	1.7	35	95.0	21.1	70	158.0	51.7	125	257.0
-17.2	1	33.8	2.2	36	96.8	21.7	71	159.8	54.4	130	266.0
-16.7	2	35.6	2.8	37	98.6	22.2	72	161.6	57.2	135	275.0
-16.1	3	37.4	3.3	38	100.4	22.8	73	163.4	60.0	140	284.0
-15.6	4	39.2	3.9	39	102.2	23.3	74	165.2	62.7	145	293.0
-15.0	5	41.0	4.4	40	104.0	23.9	75	167.0	65.6	150	302.0
-14.4	6	42.8	5.0	41	105.8	24.4	76	168.8	68.3	155	311.0
-13.9	7	44.6	5.6	42	107.6	25.0	77	170.6	71.1	160	320.0
-13.3	8	46.4	6.1	43	109.4	25.6	78	172.4	73.9	165	329.0
-12.8	9	48.2	6.7	44	111.2	26.1	79	174.2	76.7	170	338.0
-12.2	10	50.0	7.2	45	113.0	26.7	80	176.0	79.4	172	347.0



SECTION 1 GENERAL



Group 1 Safety Hints .....1-1

Group 2 Specifications .....1-10

Group 3 Operational Checkout Record Sheet .....1-21

## SECTION 1 GENERAL

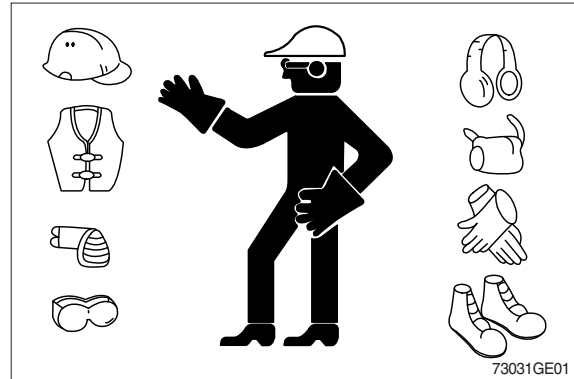
### GROUP 1 SAFETY HINTS

#### FOLLOW SAFE PROCEDURE

Unsafe work practices are dangerous. Understand service procedure before doing work; Do not attempt shortcuts.

#### WEAR PROTECTIVE CLOTHING

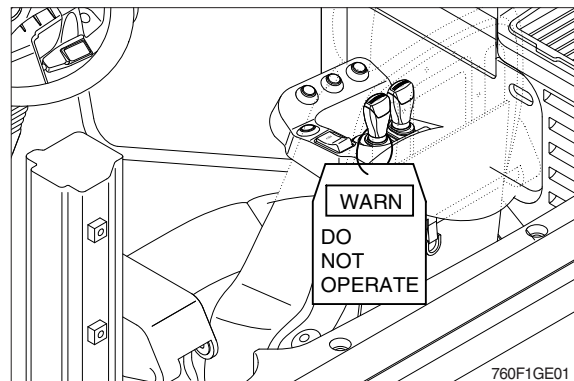
Wear close fitting clothing and safety equipment appropriate to the job.



#### WARN OTHERS OF SERVICE WORK

Unexpected machine movement can cause serious injury.

Before performing any work on the wheel loader, attach a 「Do Not Operate」 tag on the right side controller lever.



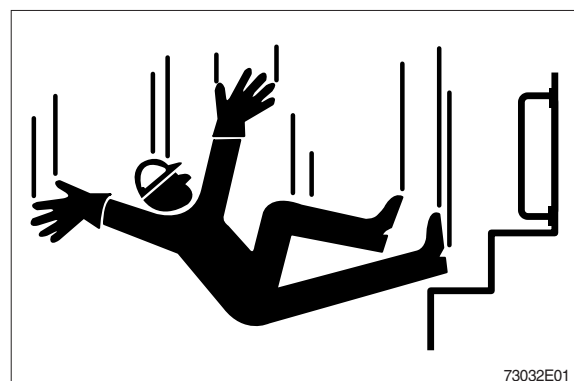
#### USE HANDHOLDS AND STEPS

Falling is one of the major causes of personal injury.

When you get on and off the machine, always maintain a three point contact with the steps and handrails and face the machine. Do not use any controls as handholds.

Never jump on or off the machine. Never mount or dismount a moving machine.

Be careful of slippery conditions on platforms, steps, and handrails when leaving the machine.

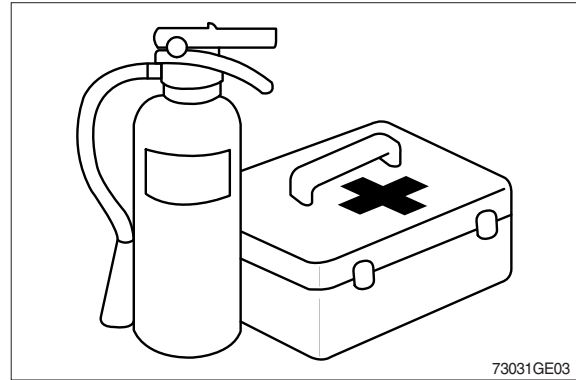


## PREPARE FOR EMERGENCIES

Be prepared if a fire starts.

Keep a first aid kit and fire extinguisher handy.

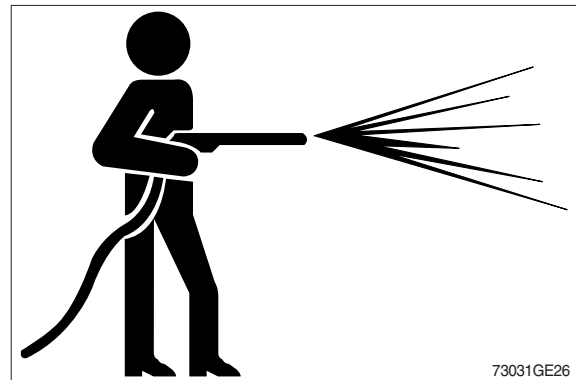
Keep emergency numbers for doctors, ambulance service, hospital, and fire department near your telephone.



## WORK IN CLEAN AREA

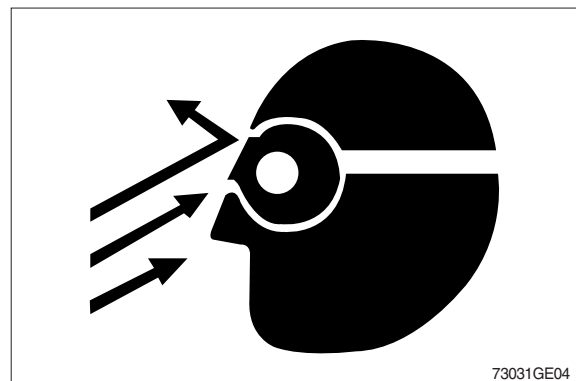
Before starting a job :

- Clean work area and machine.
- Make sure you have all necessary tools to do your job.
- Have the right parts on hand.
- Read all instructions thoroughly; Do not attempt shortcuts.



## PROTECT AGAINST FLYING DEBRIS

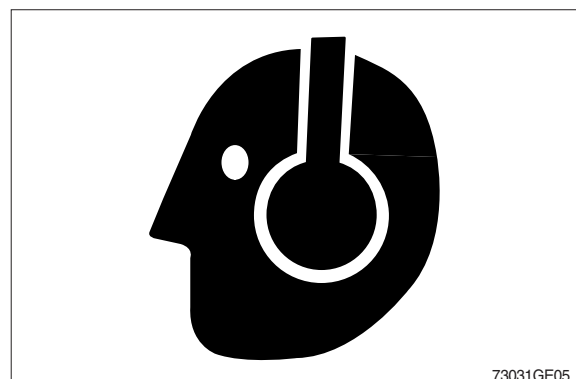
Guard against injury from flying pieces of metal or debris; Wear goggles or safety glasses.



## PROTECT AGAINST NOISE

Prolonged exposure to loud noise can cause impairment or loss of hearing.

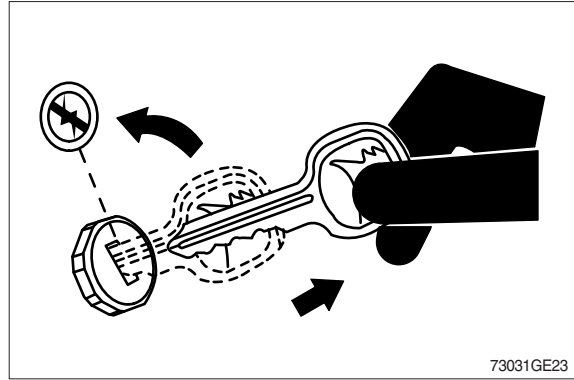
Wear a suitable hearing protective device such as earmuffs or earplugs to protect against objectionable or uncomfortable loud noises.



## PARK MACHINE SAFELY

Before working on the machine:

- Park machine on a level surface.
- Lower bucket to the ground.
- Turn key switch to OFF to stop engine. Remove key from switch.
- Move pilot control shutoff lever to locked position.
- Allow engine to cool.



## SUPPORT MACHINE PROPERLY

Always lower the attachment or implement to the ground before you work on the machine. If you must work on a lifted machine or attachment, securely support the machine or attachment.

Do not support the machine on cinder blocks, hollow tiles, or props that may crumble under continuous load.

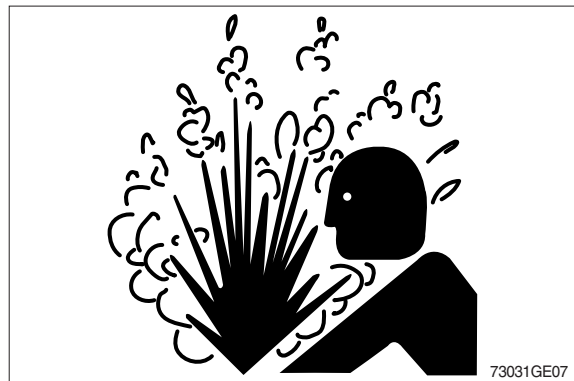
Do not work under a machine that is supported solely by a jack. Follow recommended procedures in this manual.



## SERVICE COOLING SYSTEM SAFELY

Explosive release of fluids from pressurized cooling system can cause serious burns.

Shut off engine. Only remove filler cap when cool enough to touch with bare hands.



## HANDLE FLUIDS SAFELY-AVOID FIRES

Handle fuel with care; It is highly flammable. Do not refuel the machine while smoking or when near open flame or sparks. Always stop engine before refueling machine. Fill fuel tank outdoors.



Store flammable fluids away from fire hazards.  
Do not incinerate or puncture pressurized containers.

Make sure machine is clean of trash, grease, and debris.

Do not store oily rags ; They can ignite and burn spontaneously.



### **BEWARE OF EXHAUST FUMES**

Prevent asphyxiation. Engine exhaust fumes can cause sickness or death.

If you must operate in a building, be positive there is adequate ventilation. Either use an exhaust pipe extension to remove the exhaust fumes or open doors and windows to bring enough outside air into the area.

### **REMOVE PAINT BEFORE WELDING OR HEATING**

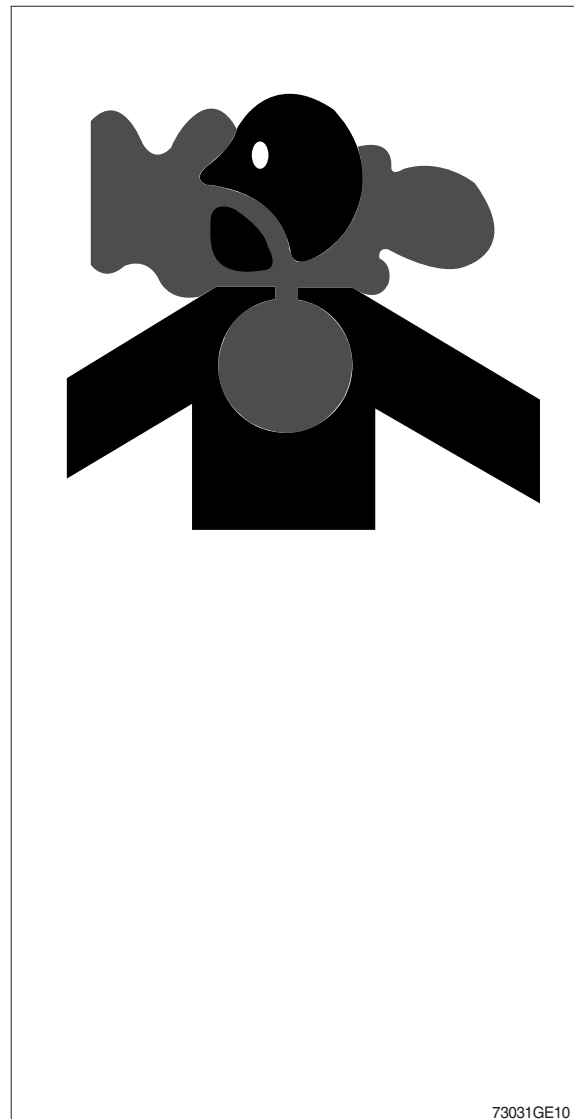
Avoid potentially toxic fumes and dust.

Hazardous fumes can be generated when paint is heated by welding, soldering, or using a torch.

Do all work outside or in a well ventilated area.  
Dispose of paint and solvent properly.

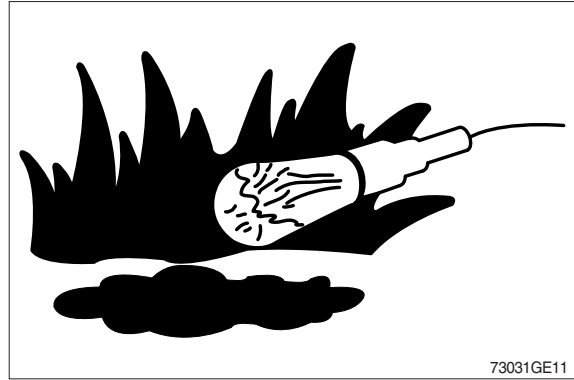
Remove paint before welding or heating:

- If you sand or grind paint, avoid breathing the dust. Wear an approved respirator.
- If you use solvent or paint stripper, remove stripper with soap and water before welding. Remove solvent or paint stripper containers and other flammable material from area. Allow fumes to disperse at least 15 minutes before welding or heating.



### ILLUMINATE WORK AREA SAFELY

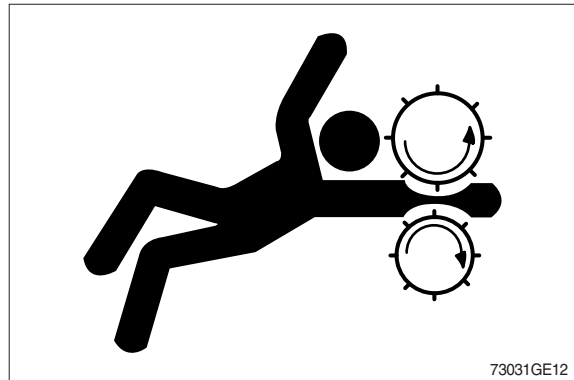
Illuminate your work area adequately but safely. Use a portable safety light for working inside or under the machine. Make sure the bulb is enclosed by a wire cage. The hot filament of an accidentally broken bulb can ignite spilled fuel or oil.



### SERVICE MACHINE SAFELY

Tie long hair behind your head. Do not wear a necktie, scarf, loose clothing or necklace when you work near machine tools or moving parts. If these items were to get caught, severe injury could result.

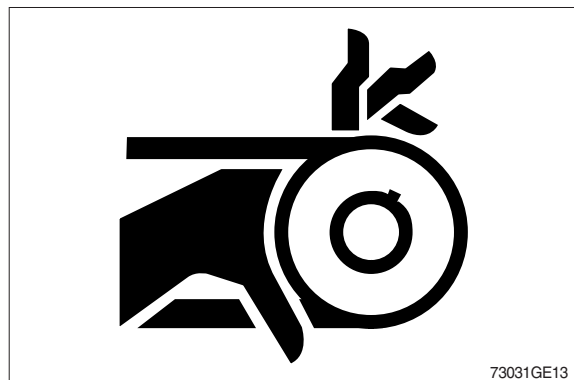
Remove rings and other jewelry to prevent electrical shorts and entanglement in moving parts.



### STAY CLEAR OF MOVING PARTS

Entanglements in moving parts can cause serious injury.

To prevent accidents, use care when working around rotating parts.



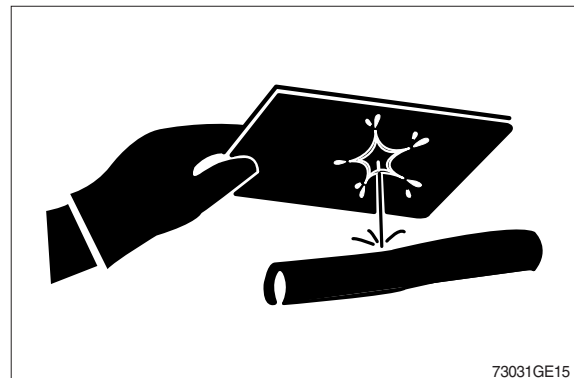
## AVOID HIGH PRESSURE FLUIDS

Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.

Avoid the hazard by relieving pressure before disconnecting hydraulic or other lines. Tighten all connections before applying pressure.

Search for leaks with a piece of cardboard. Protect hands and body from high pressure fluids.

If an accident occurs, see a doctor immediately. Any fluid injected into the skin must be surgically removed within a few hours or gangrene may result.



## AVOID HEATING NEAR PRESSURIZED FLUID LINES

Flammable spray can be generated by heating near pressurized fluid lines, resulting in severe burns to yourself and bystanders. Do not heat by welding, soldering, or using a torch near pressurized fluid lines or other flammable materials.

Pressurized lines can be accidentally cut when heat goes beyond the immediate flame area. Install fire resisting guards to protect hoses or other materials.



## PREVENT BATTERY EXPLOSIONS

Keep sparks, lighted matches, and flame away from the top of battery. Battery gas can explode.

Never check battery charge by placing a metal object across the posts. Use a volt-meter or hydrometer.

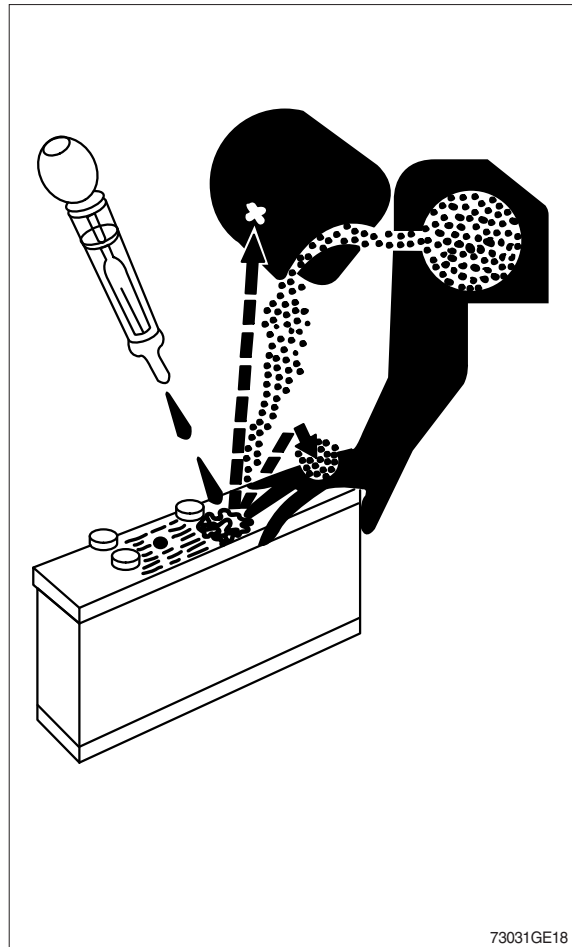
Do not charge a frozen battery; It may explode. Warm battery to 16°C (60°F).



## PREVENT ACID BURNS

Sulfuric acid in battery electrolyte is poisonous. It is strong enough to burn skin, eat holes in clothing, and cause blindness if splashed into eyes.

1. Avoid the hazard by:
  2. Filling batteries in a well-ventilated area.
  3. Wearing eye protection and rubber gloves.  
Avoiding breathing fumes when electrolyte is added.
  4. Avoiding spilling or dripping electrolyte.
  5. Use proper jump start procedure.
1. If you spill acid on yourself:
  2. Flush your skin with water.  
Apply baking soda or lime to help neutralize the acid.
  3. Flush your eyes with water for 10-15 minutes.  
Get medical attention immediately.
1. If acid is swallowed:
  2. Drink large amounts of water or milk.  
Then drink milk of magnesia, beaten eggs, or vegetable oil.
  3. Get medical attention immediately.



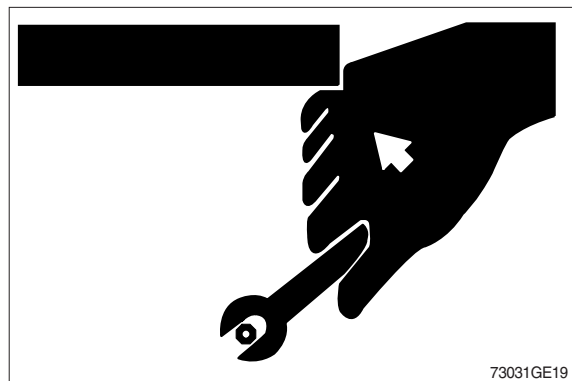
## USE TOOLS PROPERLY

Use tools appropriate to the work. Makeshift tools, parts, and procedures can create safety hazards.

Use power tools only to loosen threaded tools and fasteners.

For loosening and tightening hardware, use the correct size tools. Avoid bodily injury caused by slipping wrenches.

Use only recommended replacement parts.  
(See Parts catalogue.)





## SERVICE TIRES SAFELY

Explosive separation of a tire and rim parts can cause serious injury or death.

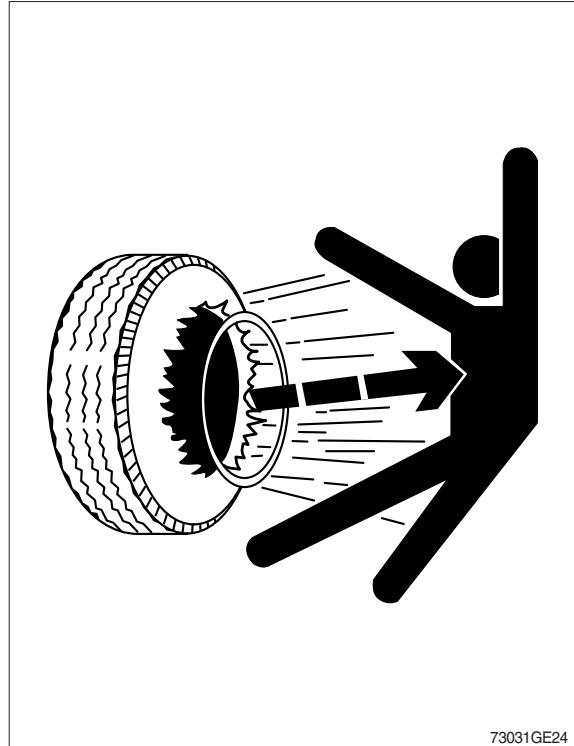
Do not attempt to mount a tire unless you have the proper equipment and experience to perform the job.

Always maintain the correct tire pressure. Do not inflate the tires above the recommended pressure. Never weld or heat a wheel and tire assembly. The heat can cause an increase in air pressure resulting in a tire explosion.

Welding can structurally weaken or deform the wheel.

When inflating tires, use a clip-on chuck and extension hose long enough to allow you to stand to one side and not in front of or over the tire assembly. Use a safety cage if available.

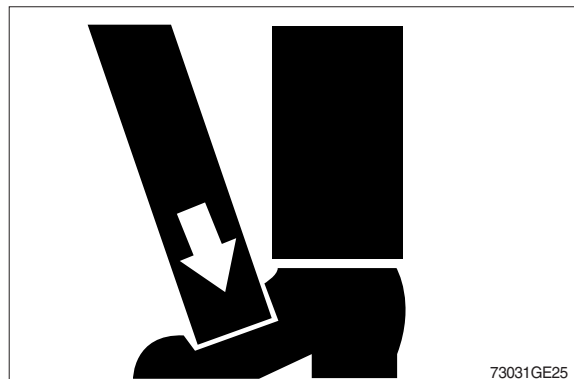
Check wheels for low pressure, cuts, bubbles, damaged rims or missing lug bolts and nuts.



## USE PROPER LIFTING EQUIPMENT

Lifting heavy components incorrectly can cause severe injury or machine damage.

Follow recommended procedure for removal and installation of components in the manual.

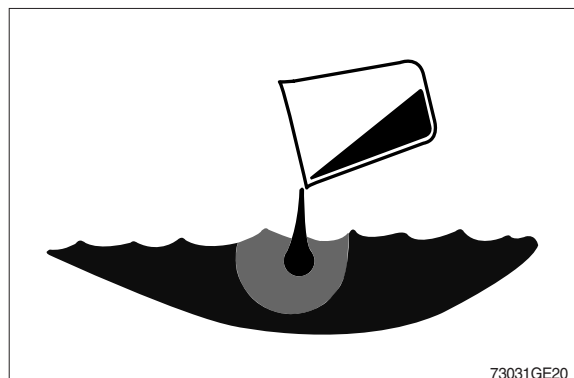


## DISPOSE OF FLUIDS PROPERLY

Improperly disposing of fluids can harm the environment and ecology. Before draining any fluids, find out the proper way to dispose of waste from your local environmental agency.

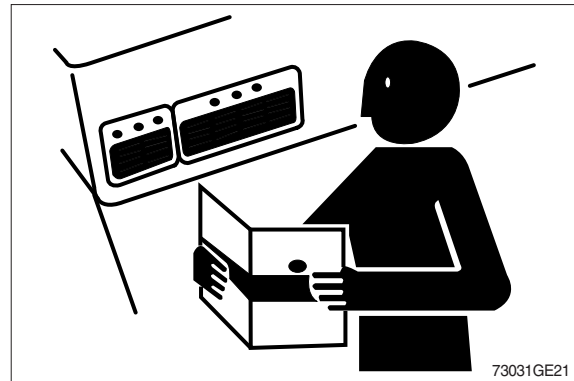
Use proper containers when draining fluids. Do not use food or beverage containers that may mislead someone into drinking from them.

DO NOT pour oil into the ground, down a drain, or into a stream, pond, or lake. Observe relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of oil, fuel, coolant, brake fluid, filters, batteries, and other harmful waste.



## REPLACE SAFETY SIGNS

Replace missing or damaged safety signs. See the machine operator's manual for correct safety sign placement.



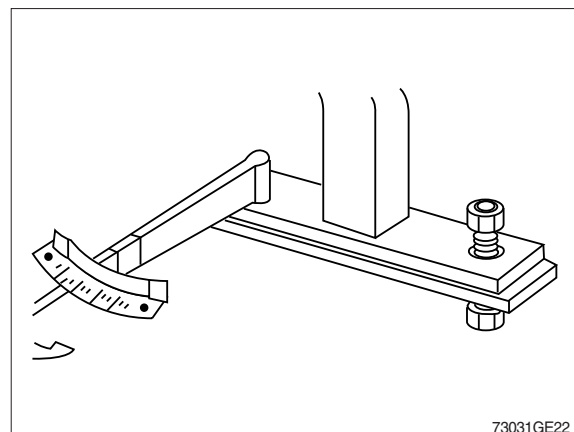
## LIVE WITH SAFETY

Before returning machine to customer, make sure machine is functioning properly, especially the safety systems. Install all guards and shields.

## KEEP ROPS INSTALLED PROPERLY

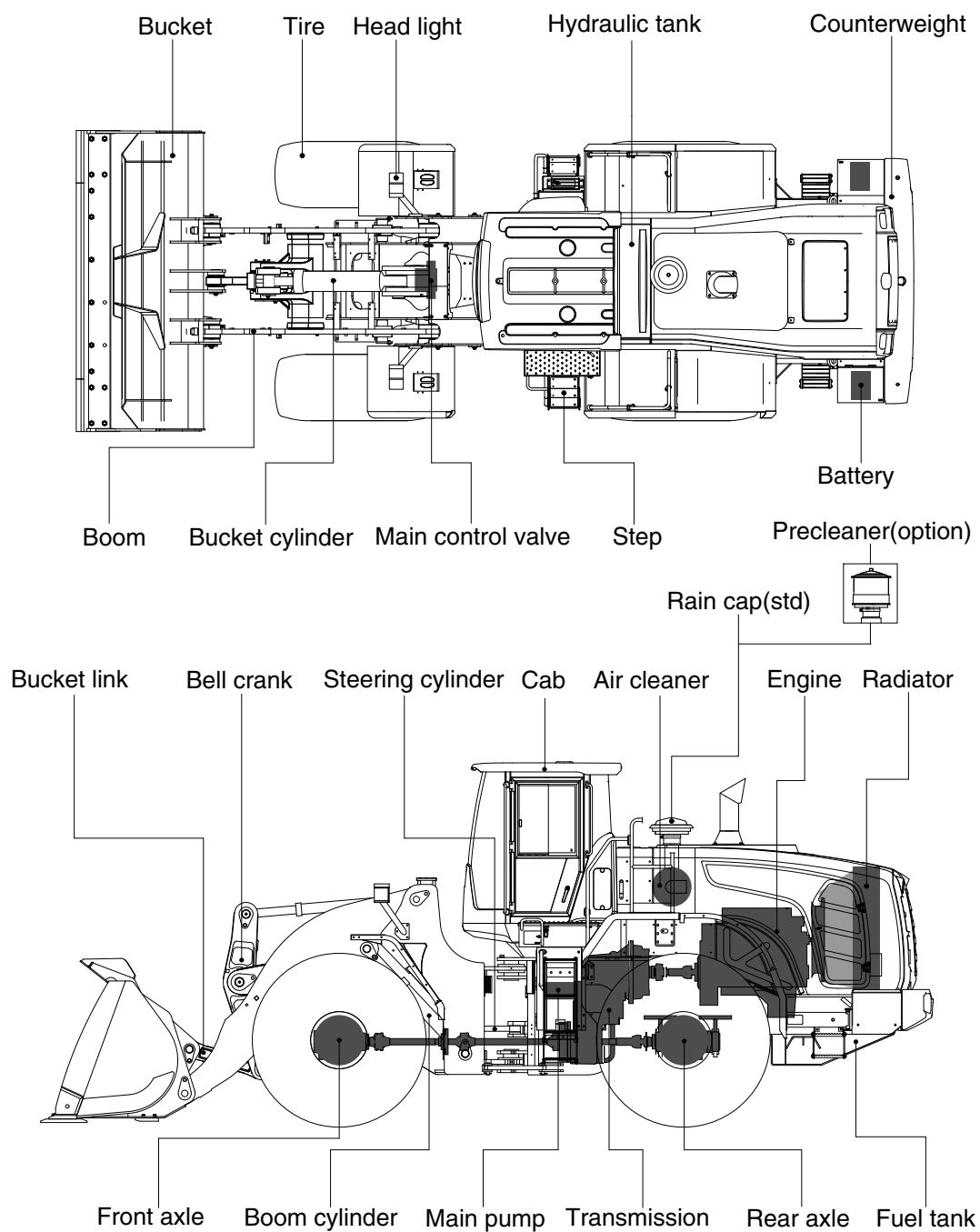
Make certain all parts are reinstalled correctly if the roll-over protective structure (ROPS) is loosened or removed for any reason. Tighten mounting bolts to proper torque.

The protection offered by ROPS will be impaired if ROPS is subjected to structural damage, is involved in an overturn incident, or is in any way altered by welding, bending, drilling, or cutting. A damaged ROPS should be replaced, not reused.



## GROUP 2 SPECIFICATIONS

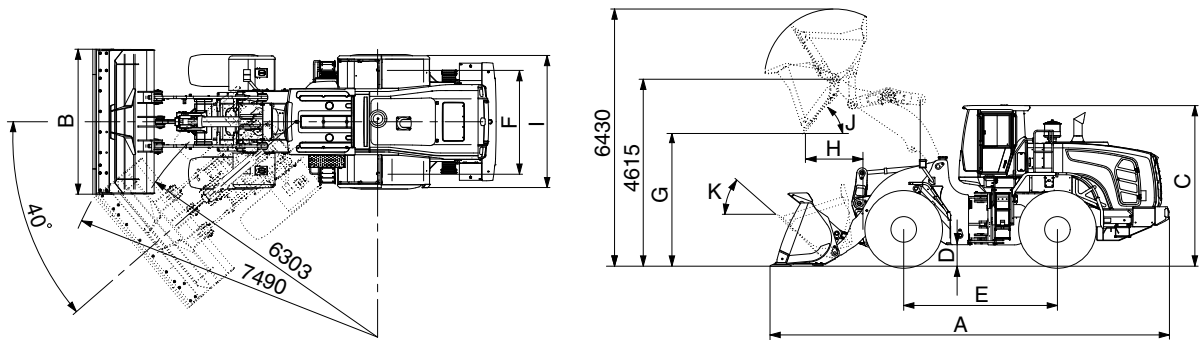
### 1. MAJOR COMPONENT



9802SE01

## 2. SPECIFICATIONS

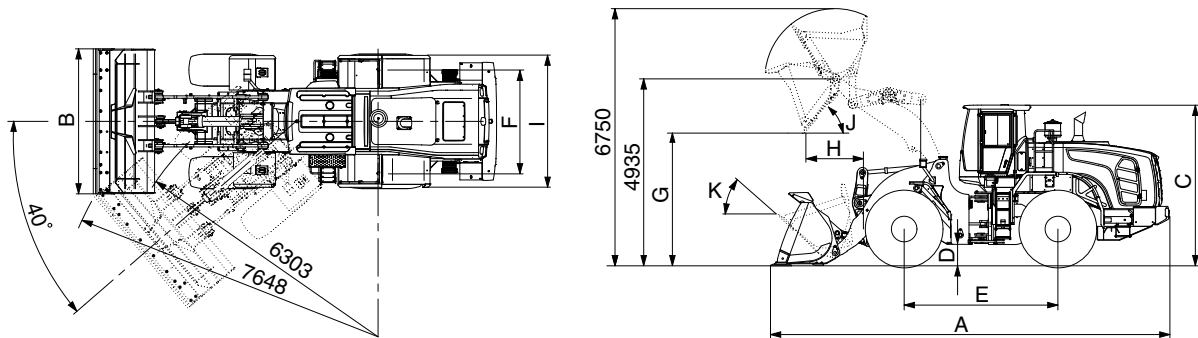
### 1) WITH BOLT-ON CUTTING EDGE TYPE BUCKET (HL980)



9802SE03

Description			Unit	Specification
Operating weight			kg (lb)	31000 (68340)
Bucket capacity	Struck		m³ (yd³)	4.8 (6.3)
	Heaped			5.6 (7.3)
Overall length	A		mm (ft-in)	9610 (31' 6")
Overall width	B			3450 (11' 4")
Overall height	C			3865 (12' 8")
Ground clearance	D			495 (1' 7")
Wheelbase	E			3700 (12' 2")
Tread	F			2440 (8' 0")
Dump clearance at 45°	G			3300 (10' 10")
Dump reach (full lift)	H			1500 (4' 11")
Width over tires	I			3160 (10' 4")
Dump angle	J		degree (°)	50
Roll back angle (carry position)	K			47
Cycle time	Lift (with load)		sec	6.6
	Dump (with load)			1.4
	Lower (empty)			4.0
Maximum travel speed			km/hr (mph)	36.5 (22.7)
Braking distance			m (ft-in)	13 (42' 8")
Minimum turning radius (center of outside tire)				6.30 (20' 8")
Gradeability			degree (°)	30
Breakeout force			kg (lb)	24640 (54320)
Travel speed	Forward	First gear	km/hr (mph)	6.1 (3.8)
		Second gear		11.4 (7.1)
		Third gear		17.9 (11.1)
		Fourth gear		36.5 (22.7)
	Reverse	First gear		6.1 (3.8)
		Second gear		11.4 (7.1)
		Third gear		25.0 (15.5)

## WITH BOLT-ON CUTTING EDGE TYPE BUCKET (HL980 XT)



9802SE03-1

Description			Unit	Specification
Operating weight			kg (lb)	31700 (69890)
Bucket capacity	Struck		m³ (yd³)	4.8 (6.3)
	Heaped			5.6 (7.3)
Overall length	A		mm (ft-in)	9930 (32' 7")
Overall width	B			3450 (11' 4")
Overall height	C			3865 (12' 8")
Ground clearance	D			485 (1' 7")
Wheelbase	E			3700 (12' 2")
Tread	F			2440 (8' 0")
Dump clearance at 45°	G			3615 (11' 10")
Dump reach (full lift)	H			1525 (5' 0")
Width over tires	I			3220 (10' 7")
Dump angle	J		degree (°)	50
Roll back angle (carry position)	K			47
Cycle time	Lift (with load)		sec	6.6
	Dump (with load)			1.3
	Lower (empty)			4.0
Maximum travel speed			km/hr (mph)	36.5 (22.7)
Braking distance			m (ft-in)	13 (42' 8")
Minimum turning radius (center of outside tire)				6.30 (20' 8")
Gradeability			degree (°)	30
Brokeout force			kg (lb)	23130 (50990)
Travel speed	Forward	First gear	km/hr (mph)	6.1 (3.8)
		Second gear		11.4 (7.1)
		Third gear		17.9 (11.1)
		Fourth gear		36.5 (22.7)
	Reverse	First gear		6.1 (3.8)
		Second gear		11.4 (7.1)
Third gear		25.0 (15.5)		

### 3. WEIGHT

Item		kg	lb
Front frame assembly		2920	6440
Rear frame assembly		3280	7230
Front fender (LH/RH)		52/52	115/115
Counterweight (HL980)		1200	2650
Counterweight (HL980 XT)		1750	3860
Cab assembly		994	2190
Engine assembly		1075	2370
Transmission assembly		854	1880
Drive shaft (front)		25	55
Drive shaft (center)		48	106
Drive shaft (rear/upper)		30/14	66/31
Front axle (include differential)		1810	3990
Rear axle (include differential)		1820	4010
Tire (29.5 R25, ★L3)		555	1220
Hydraulic tank assembly		275	606
Fuel tank assembly		474	1040
Main pump assembly/Steering pump assembly		45/45	99/99
Fan & brake pump assembly		12	26
Main control valve (2 spool/3 spool)		88/104	194/229
Flow amplifier		29	64
Boom assembly	HL980	2100	4630
	HL980 XT	2110	4650
Bell crank assembly		645	1420
Bucket link		97	214
5.6 m³ bucket, with bolt on cutting edge		2810	6190
Boom cylinder assembly		300	661
Bucket cylinder assembly		305	672
Steering cylinder assembly		60	132
Seat		80	176
Battery		58	127

#### 4. SPECIFICATION FOR MAJOR COMPONENTS

##### 1) ENGINE

Item	Specification
Model	Scania DC13
Type	4-cycle turbocharged, charge air cooled diesel engine
Control type	Electronic control
Cooling method	Water cooling
Number of cylinders and arrangement	6 cylinders, in-line
Firing order	1-5-3-6-2-4
Combustion chamber type	Direct injection type
Cylinder bore × stroke	130 × 160 mm (5.1" × 6.3")
Piston displacement	12700 cc (775 cu in)
Compression ratio	17.5 : 1
Rated gross horse power	380 hp at 1800 rpm
Maximum gross torque (1300 rpm)	180 kgf · m (1302 lbf · ft)
Engine oil quantity	45 ℓ (11.9 U.S. gal)
Wet weight	1075 kg (2370 lb)
High idling speed	2100 ± 50 rpm
Low idling speed	750 ± 25 rpm
Rated fuel consumption	202 g/kW · hr
Starting motor	Nippondenso (24 V - 6.0 kW)
Alternator	Bosch (24 V - 100 Amp)
Battery	2 × 12 V × 220 Ah

##### 2) STEERING PUMP / MAIN PUMP

Item	Specification	
	Steering pump	Main pump
Type	Variable tandem piston pump	
Capacity	110 cc/rev	100 cc/rev
Maximum operating pressure	280 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> (3980 psi)	
Rated oil quantity	208 ℓ /min (54.9 U.S.gpm)	189 ℓ /min (49.9 U.S.gpm)
Engine high rpm	2100 rpm	

### 3) FAN + BRAKE PUMP

Item	Specification	
	Fan pump	Brake pump
Type	Piston pump	
Capacity	45 cc/rev	
Maximum operating pressure	250 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> (3980 psi)	150 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> (2130 psi)
Rated oil quantity	101 l /min (26.7 U.S.gpm)	
Engine high rpm	2100 rpm	

### 4) MAIN CONTROL VALVE

Item	Specification
Type	2 spool (mono block)
Operating method	Hydraulic pilot assist
Main relief valve pressure	280 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> (3980 psi)
Overload relief valve pressure	340 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> (4840 psi)

### 5) ELECTRO-HYDRAULIC BLOCK

Item	Specification
Type	Proportional pressure reducing valve
Control current	0~950 mA
Resistance	10.5 Ω
Normal flow	12 l /min (3.17 U.S.gpm)

### 6) REMOTE CONTROL VALVE (EH TYPE)

Item	Specification
Type	Fingertip
Axle	Single axle for boom, bucket, auxiliary
Operating voltage	4.5~5.5 V
Output signal	0.5~4.5 V (neutral 2.5 V)

### 7) REMOTE CONTROL VALVE (FNR TYPE)

Item	Specification
Type	Joystick
Axle	Two axle for boom, bucket, roller for auxiliary
Operating type	CAN J1939
Baud rate	500 kbps



## 8) CYLINDER

Item		Specification
Boom cylinder	Bore dia × Rod dia × Stroke	ø 180 × ø 105 × 885 mm
Bucket cylinder (HL980)	Bore dia × Rod dia × Stroke	ø 200 × ø 110 × 550 mm
Bucket cylinder (HL980 XT)	Bore dia × Rod dia × Stroke	ø 200 × ø 110 × 545 mm
Steering cylinder	Bore dia × Rod dia × Stroke	ø 105 × ø 55 × 480 mm

## 9) DYNAMIC POWER TRANSMISSION DEVICES

Item			Specification
4-speed transmission (std)	Model		ZF 4WG 310
	Type	Converter	Single-stage, single-phase
		Transmission	Full-automatic power shift
	Converter stall ratio		2.51 : 1
	Gear shift		Forward fourth gear, reverse third gear
	Control		Electrical single lever type, kick-down system Automatic kick down from 2nd to 1st gear FNR switch on joystick lever (option)
	Pump rated flow		135 ℓ /min (35.7 U.S.gpm) at 2000 rpm
	Travel speed		See the page 2-2.
5-speed transmission (opt)	Model		ZF 5WG 310
	Type	Converter	Single-stage, double-phase (with lock up clutch)
		Transmission	Full-automatic power shift
	Converter stall ratio		2.51 : 1
	Gear shift		Forward fifth gear, reverse third gear
	Control		Electrical single lever type, kick-down system Automatic kick down from 2nd to 1st gear FNR switch on joystick lever (option)
	Pump rated flow		135 ℓ /min (35.7 U.S.gpm) at 2000 rpm
	Travel speed	Forward 1/2/3/4/5	6.1 / 11.8 / 18.3 / 26.8 / 40.0 km/hr
Reverse 1/2/3		6.1 / 11.8 / 26.8 km/hr	
Axle	Drive devices		4-wheel drive
	Front		Front fixed location
	Rear		Oscillation ± 13° of center pin-loaded
Wheels	Tires		29.5 R25, ★(L3)
Brakes	Travel		Four-wheel, wet-disc type, full hydraulic
	Parking		Spring applied, hydraulic released brake on T/M
Steering	Type		Full hydraulic, articulated
	Steering angle		40° to both right and left angle, respectively

## 5. TIGHTENING TORQUE

Use following table for unspecified torque.

### 1) BOLT AND NUT

#### (1) Coarse thread

Bolt size	8.8T		10.9T		12.9T	
	kgf · m	lbf · ft	kgf · m	lbf · ft	kgf · m	lbf · ft
M 6×1.0	0.8 ~ 1.2	5.8 ~ 8.6	1.2 ~ 1.8	8.7 ~ 13.0	1.5 ~ 2.1	10.9 ~ 15.1
M 8×1.25	2.0 ~ 3.0	14.5 ~ 21.6	2.8 ~ 4.2	20.3 ~ 30.4	3.4 ~ 5.0	24.6 ~ 36.1
M10×1.5	4.0 ~ 6.0	29.0 ~ 43.3	5.6 ~ 8.4	40.5 ~ 60.8	6.8 ~ 10.0	49.2 ~ 72.3
M12×1.75	6.8 ~ 10.2	50.0 ~ 73.7	9.6 ~ 14.4	69.5 ~ 104	12.3 ~ 16.5	89.0 ~ 119
M14×2.0	10.9 ~ 16.3	78.9 ~ 117	16.3 ~ 21.9	118 ~ 158	19.5 ~ 26.3	141 ~ 190
M16×2.0	17.9 ~ 24.1	130 ~ 174	25.1 ~ 33.9	182 ~ 245	30.2 ~ 40.8	141 ~ 295
M18×2.5	24.8 ~ 33.4	180 ~ 241	34.8 ~ 47.0	252 ~ 340	41.8 ~ 56.4	302 ~ 407
M20×2.5	34.9 ~ 47.1	253 ~ 340	49.1 ~ 66.3	355 ~ 479	58.9 ~ 79.5	426 ~ 575
M22×2.5	46.8 ~ 63.2	339 ~ 457	65.8 ~ 88.8	476 ~ 642	78.9 ~ 106	570 ~ 766
M24×3.0	60.2 ~ 81.4	436 ~ 588	84.6 ~ 114	612 ~ 824	102 ~ 137	738 ~ 991
M30×3.5	120 ~ 161	868 ~ 1164	168 ~ 227	1216 ~ 1641	202 ~ 272	1461 ~ 1967

#### (2) Fine thread

Bolt size	8.8T		10.9T		12.9T	
	kgf · m	lbf · ft	kgf · m	lbf · ft	kgf · m	lbf · ft
M 8×1.0	2.1 ~ 3.1	15.2 ~ 22.4	3.0 ~ 4.4	21.7 ~ 31.8	3.6 ~ 5.4	26.1 ~ 39.0
M10×1.25	4.2 ~ 6.2	30.4 ~ 44.9	5.9 ~ 8.7	42.7 ~ 62.9	7.0 ~ 10.4	50.1 ~ 75.2
M12×1.25	7.3 ~ 10.9	52.8 ~ 78.8	10.3 ~ 15.3	74.5 ~ 110	13.1 ~ 17.7	94.8 ~ 128
M14×1.5	12.4 ~ 16.6	89.7 ~ 120	17.4 ~ 23.4	126 ~ 169	20.8 ~ 28.0	151 ~ 202
M16×1.5	18.7 ~ 25.3	136 ~ 182	26.3 ~ 35.5	191 ~ 256	31.6 ~ 42.6	229 ~ 308
M18×1.5	27.1 ~ 36.5	196 ~ 264	38.0 ~ 51.4	275 ~ 371	45.7 ~ 61.7	331 ~ 446
M20×1.5	37.7 ~ 50.9	273 ~ 368	53.1 ~ 71.7	384 ~ 518	63.6 ~ 86.0	460 ~ 622
M22×1.5	51.2 ~ 69.2	370 ~ 500	72.0 ~ 97.2	521 ~ 703	86.4 ~ 116	625 ~ 839
M24×2.0	64.1 ~ 86.5	464 ~ 625	90.1 ~ 121	652 ~ 875	108 ~ 146	782 ~ 1056
M30×2.0	129 ~ 174	933 ~ 1258	181 ~ 245	1310 ~ 1772	217 ~ 294	1570 ~ 2126

**2) PIPE AND HOSE (FLARE type)**

Thread size	Width across flat (mm)	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1/4"	19	4	28.9
3/8"	22	5	36.2
1/2"	27	9.5	68.7
3/4"	36	18	130
1"	41	21	152
1-1/4"	50	35	253

**3) PIPE AND HOSE (ORFS type)**

Thread size	Width across flat (mm)	kgf · m	lbf · ft
9/16-18	19	4	28.9
11/16-16	22	5	36.2
13/16-16	27	9.5	68.7
1-3/16-12	36	18	130
1-7/16-12	41	21	152
1-11/16-12	50	35	253

**4) FITTING**

Thread size	Width across flat (mm)	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1/4"	19	4	28.9
3/8"	22	5	36.2
1/2"	27	9.5	68.7
3/4"	36	18	130
1"	41	21	152
1-1/4"	50	35	253

## 5) TIGHTENING TORQUE OF MAJOR COMPONENT

No.	Descriptions		Bolt size	Torque	
				kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	Engine	Engine mounting bolt, nut (rubber, 4EA)	M24×3.0	76.5 ± 7.7	553 ± 55.7
2		Engine mounting bolt (bracket, 16EA)	M16×1.5 M14×2.0	28.6 ± 4.3 9.18 ± 1.4	207 ± 31.1 66.4 ± 10.1
3		Coupling cover mounting bolt (8EA)	M10×1.5	3.06 ± 0.5	22.1 ± 3.6
4		Coupling mounting socket bolt (8EA)	M12×1.75	11.7 ± 1.8	84.6 ± 13.0
5		Fan motor mounting bolt	M12×1.75	12.8 ± 3.0	92.6 ± 21.7
6		Radiator mounting bolt	M16×2.0	29.7 ± 5.9	215 ± 42.7
7		Fuel tank mounting bolt, nut	M16×2.0	29.7 ± 4.5	215 ± 32.5
8	Hydraulic system	Main pump mounting bolt	M14×2.0	19.6 ± 2.9	142 ± 21.0
9		Steering pump mounting bolt	M14×2.0	19.6 ± 2.9	142 ± 21.0
10		Fan & Brake pump mounting bolt	M14×2.0	19.6 ± 2.9	142 ± 21.0
11		Main control valve mounting bolt	M12×1.75	12.8 ± 3.0	92.6 ± 21.7
12		Steering unit mounting bolt	M10×1.5	6.9 ± 1.4	50 ± 10.1
13		Flow amplifier mounting bolt	M10×1.5	6.9 ± 1.4	50 ± 10.1
14		Brake valve mounting bolt	M8×1.25	2.5 ± 0.5	18.1 ± 3.6
15		Cut-off valve mounting bolt	M8×1.25	2.5 ± 0.5	18.1 ± 3.6
16		EH control block mounting bolt	M8×1.25	2.5 ± 0.5	18.1 ± 3.6
17		Safety valve mounting bolt	M10×1.5	6.9 ± 1.4	50 ± 10.1
18		Hydraulic oil tank mounting bolt	M16×2.0	29.7 ± 4.5	215 ± 32.5
19	Power train system	Transmission mounting bolt, nut (rubber, 4EA)	M24×3.0	76.5 ± 7.7	553 ± 55.7
20		Transmission mounting bolt (bracket, 12EA)	M20×2.5 M16×2.0	56.1 ± 8.4 28.6 ± 4.3	406 ± 60.8 207 ± 31.1
21		Front axle mounting bolt, nut	M36×3.0	280 ± 30	2025 ± 217
22		Rear axle support mounting bolt, nut	M36×3.0	280 ± 30	2025 ± 217
23		Tire mounting nut	M22×1.5	79 ± 2.5	571 ± 18.1
24		Drive shaft joint mounting bolt	1/2-20UNF	15 ± 2.0	108 ± 14.5
25	Others	Counterweight mounting bolt	M30×3.5 M24×3.0	199 ± 30 100 ± 15	1439 ± 216 723 ± 108
26		Operator's seat mounting bolt	M8×1.25	3.4 ± 0.8	24.6 ± 5.0
27		ROPS Cab mounting bolt (4EA)	M30×3.5	199 ± 30	1440 ± 216
		ROPS Cab mounting nut (4EA)	M16×2.0	20.5 ± 4.7	148± 34

## 6. RECOMMENDED LUBRICANTS

Use only oils listed below.

Do not mix different brand oil.

Service point	Kind of fluid	Capacity ℓ (U.S. gal)	Ambient temperature °C (°F)								
			-50 (-58)	-30 (-22)	-20 (-4)	-10 (14)	0 (32)	10 (50)	20 (68)	30 (86)	40 (104)
Engine oil pan	Engine oil	45 (11.9)		SAE 0W-20, 0W-30							
				SAE 0W-40, 5W-40							
				SAE 5W-20, 5W-30							
				SAE 15W-30							
				SAE 10W-40							
				SAE 15W-40							
DEF/ AdBlue® tank	Mixture of urea and deionized water	45 (11.9)		ISO 22241, High-purity urea + deionized water (32.5 : 67.5)							
Transmission	Engine oil	54 (14.3)		SAE 10W-30							
				SAE 15W-40							
Axle★ <sup>4</sup>	UTTO	Front : 58 (15.3) Rear : 58 (15.3)		UTTO							
Hydraulic tank	Hydraulic oil	Tank: 186 (49.1)		★ <sup>2</sup> ISO VG 15							
		System: 344 (90.9)			ISO VG 46, HBHO VG 46★ <sup>4</sup>						
					ISO VG 68						
Fuel tank	Diesel fuel★ <sup>1</sup>	430 (113.6)		★ <sup>2</sup> ASTM D975 NO.1							
					ASTM D975 NO.2						
Fitting (grease nipple)	Grease	As required		★ <sup>2</sup> NLGI NO.1							
					NLGI NO.2						
Radiator (reservoir tank)	Mixture of antifreeze and soft water★ <sup>3</sup>	50 (13.2)		Ethylene glycol base permanent type (50 : 50)							
				★ <sup>2</sup> Ethylene glycol base permanent type (60 : 40)							

**SAE** : Society of Automotive Engineers

**API** : American Petroleum Institute

**ISO** : International Organization for Standardization

**NLGI** : National Lubricating Grease Institute

**ASTM** : American Society of Testing and Material

**UTTO** : Universal Tractor Transmission Oil

**DEF** : Diesel Exhaust Fluid

DEF compatible with AdBlue®

★<sup>1</sup> : Ultra low sulfur diesel

- sulfur content ≤ 15 ppm

★<sup>2</sup> : Cold region

Russia, CIS, Mongolia

★<sup>3</sup> : Soft water

City water or distilled water

★<sup>4</sup> : Hyundai Bio Hydraulic Oil

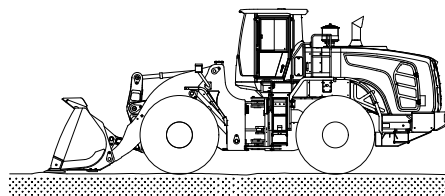
- For more information, contact HYUNDAI dealers.

## GROUP 3 OPERATIONAL CHECKOUT RECORD SHEET

- Owner :
- Date :
- Hours :
- Serial No. :
- Technician :

※ Use this sheet to record operational checkout results.

Perform the operational check before installing any test equipment.



9801GE02

Item	OK	NOT OK	Comments
------	----	-----------	----------

### 1. Monitor indicator and gauge checks (engine OFF)

- |  |                          |                          |       |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|-------|
| • Hourmeter and gauge check                        | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Battery check                                    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Monitor indicator circuit check                  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Cluster turn signals and warning indicator check | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |

### 2. Transmission, axle and engine, neutral start switch and reverse warning alarm switch checks

- |  |                          |                          |       |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|-------|
| • Transmission control lever and neutral | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Neutral start and reverse warning      | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Alarm circuit checks                   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |

### 3. Monitor indicator and gauge checks (engine running)

- |  |                          |                          |       |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|-------|
| • Monitor display and alternator output checks         | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Monitor bypass circuit and seat belt indicator check | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Monitor primary and secondary level check            | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Transmission oil warm up procedure                   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Transmission temperature gauge check                 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |

#### 4. Brake system and clutch cut off checks

• Park brake capacity check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Park brake transmission lockout check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Service brake pump flow check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Service brake capacity check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Brake accumulator precharge check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Brake system leakage check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Service brake pedal check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Service and park brake system drag check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Clutch cut off check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____

#### 5. Driving checks

• Transmission oil warm up procedure	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Transmission noise check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Speedometer check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Transmission kick down system check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• 1st, 2nd, 3rd and 4th speed clutch pack drag check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Transmission pressure, pump flow and leakage check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Transmission shift modulation check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Torque converter check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Engine power check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____

#### 6. Hydraulic system checks

• Hydraulic system warm up procedure	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Hydraulic pump performance check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Pilot control valve boom float check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Boom down solenoid valve check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Control valve lift check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Bucket rollback circuit relief valve check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Bucket dump circuit relief			
Low pressure check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
High pressure check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Boom and bucket cylinder drift check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Boom down solenoid valve leakage check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Pilot controller check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Return to dig check	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
• Boom height kickout check-if equipped	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____

## 7. Steering system checks

- |                                 |                          |                          |       |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|-------|
| • Steering unit check           | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Steering system leakage check | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Steering valve (EHPS)         |                          |                          |       |
| Low check pressure              | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| High check pressure             | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |

## 8. Accessory checks

- |                                       |                          |                          |       |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|-------|
| • Operating lights check              | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Work light check                    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Brake light check                   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Cab light check                     | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Horn circuit check                  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Windshield washer and wiper check   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Defroster blower check              | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Heater/Air conditioner blower check | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Heater functional check             | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Air conditioner functional check    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Start aid system check              | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |

## 9. Cab components and vandal protection checks

- |                                    |                          |                          |       |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|-------|
| • Cab door latch check             | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Cab door hold open latch check   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Cab door release button check    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Cab door lock check              | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Cab door window check            | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Cab window latch check           | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Steering column adjustment check | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Seat and seat belt check         | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Air intake filter door check     | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Engine side panels check         | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Radiator cap access door check   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Frame locking bar check          | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Boom lock check                  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |
| • Service decal check              | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | _____ |



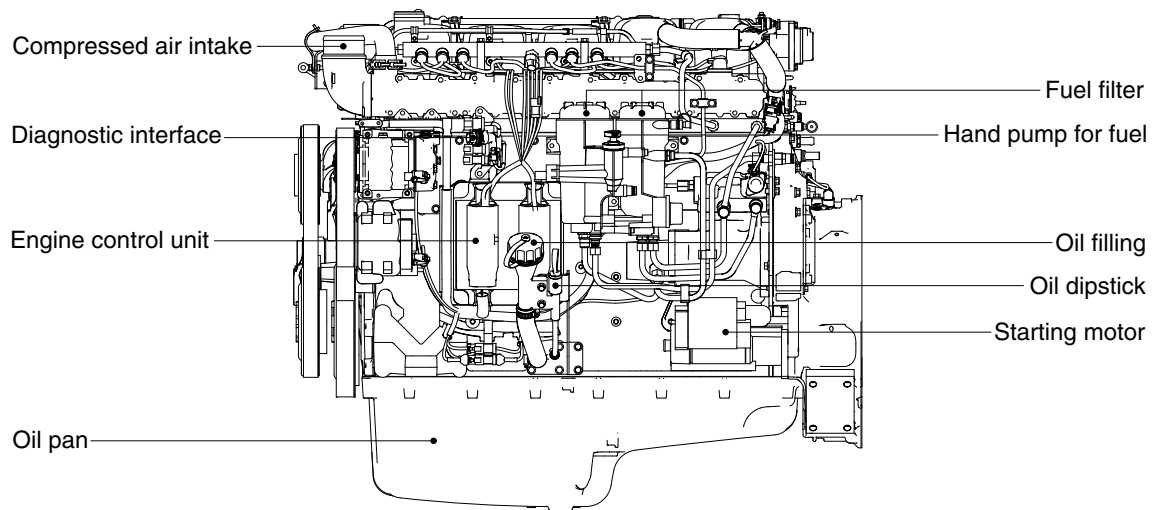
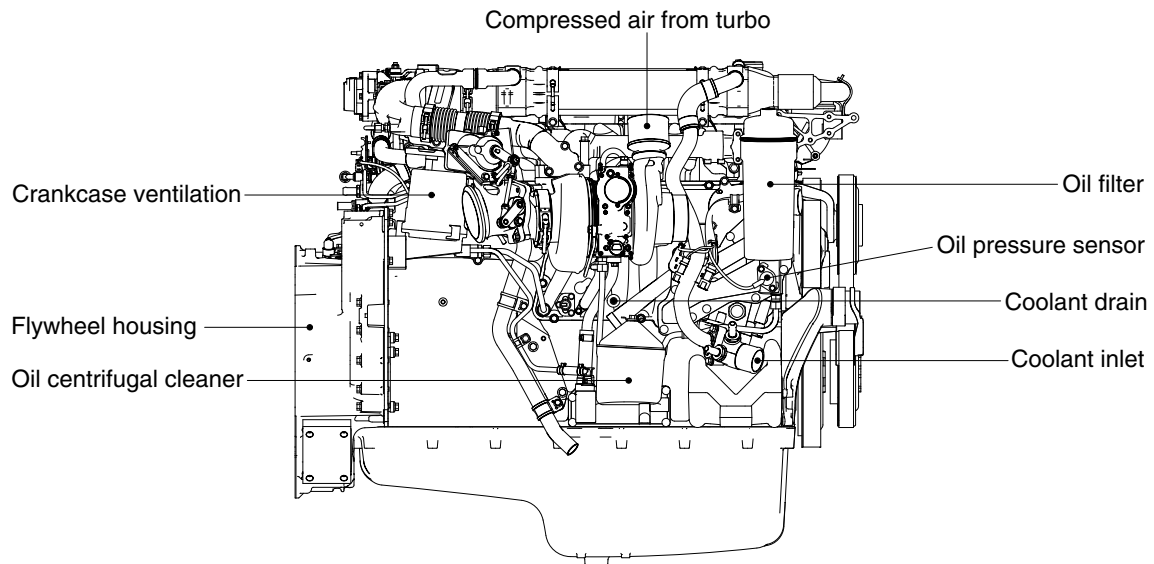
SECTION 2 ENGINE

Group 1	Structure and Function .....	2-1
Group 2	Engine speed and Stall rpm .....	2-3

## SECTION 2 ENGINE

### GROUP 1 STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION

#### 1. STRUCTURE

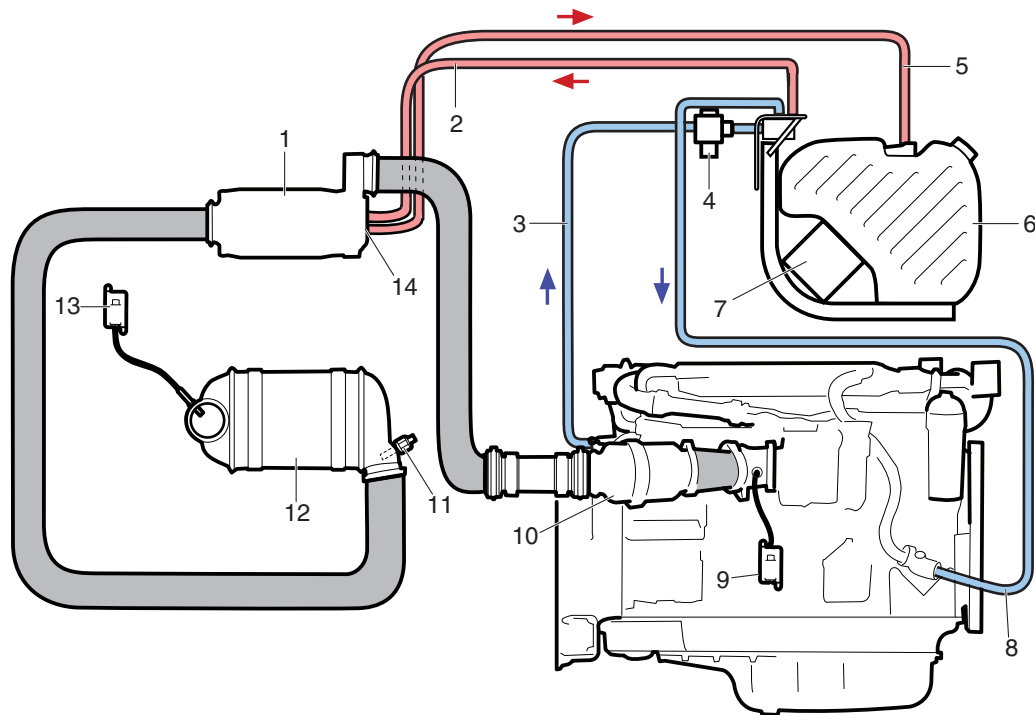


770F2EG01

- Direct 4-stroke, 6-cylinders, water-cooling and charge air cooled diesel engine in installed, cylinder block and cylinder head are made of case iron and turbocharger is attached.

## 2. SCR SYSTEM

The following drawing provides an overview of SCR system components.



770F2EG06

- |   |  |    |   |
|---|--|----|---|
| 1 | Evaporator                             | 8  | Coolant hose, return from tank and pump heating |
| 2 | Pressure line for reductant            | 9  | NOx sensor with control unit                    |
| 3 | Coolant hose for tank and pump heating | 10 | Oxidation catalytic converter                   |
| 4 | Coolant valve                          | 11 | Exhaust gas temperature sensor                  |
| 5 | Reductant return line                  | 12 | SCR catalytic converter                         |
| 6 | Reductant tank                         | 13 | NOx sensor with control unit                    |
| 7 | Reductant pump and control unit        | 14 | Reductant doser                                 |

## GROUP 2 ENGINE SPEED & STALL RPM

### 1. TEST CONDITION

- 1) Normal temperature of the whole system
  - Coolant : Approx 80°C (176°F)
  - Hydraulic oil : 45 ± 5°C (113 ± 10°F)
  - Transmission oil : 75 ± 5°C (167 ± 10°F)
- 2) Normal operating pressure : See page 6-56.

### 2. SPECIFICATION

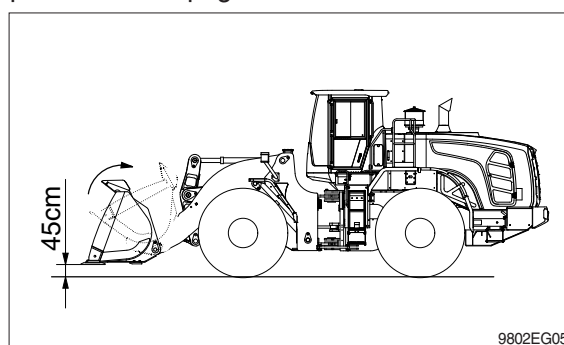
Engine speed (P mode), rpm						Remark
Low idle	High idle	Pump stall	Converter stall	Full stall	Fan motor	
750±25	2100±50	2100±70	2050±70	2000±100	850±50	

### 3. ENGINE RPM CHECK

Remark : If the checked data is not normal, it indicates that the related system is not working properly. Therefore, it is required to check the related system pressure : See page 6-56.

#### 1) Pump stall rpm

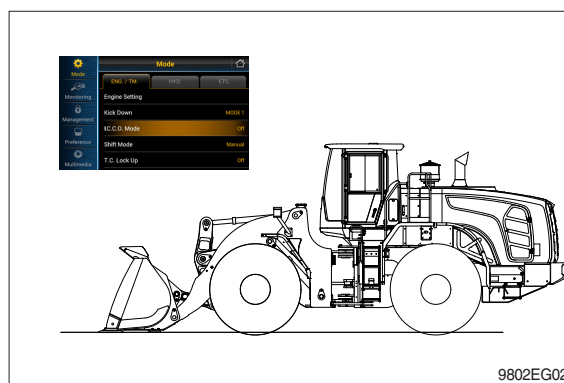
- Start the engine and raise the bucket approx 45 cm (1.5 ft) as the figure.
- Press the accelerator pedal fully and operate the bucket control lever to the retract position fully.
- Check the engine rpm at the above condition.



9802EG05

#### 2) Converter stall rpm

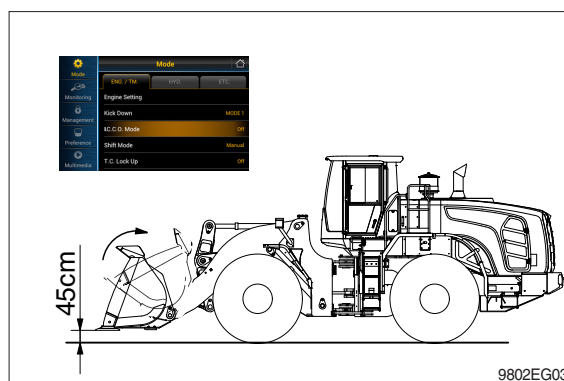
- Start the engine and lower the bucket on the ground as the figure.
- Set the I.C.C.O. mode at the OFF position.
- Press the brake pedal and accelerator pedal fully.
- Shift the transmission lever to the 4th forward position.
- Check the engine rpm at the above condition.



9802EG02

#### 3) Full stall rpm

- Start the engine and raise the bucket approx 45 cm (1.5 ft) as the figure.
- Set the I.C.C.O. mode at the OFF position.
- Press the brake pedal and accelerator pedal fully.
- Shift the transmission lever to the 4th forward position and operate the bucket lever to the retract position fully.
- Check the engine rpm at the above condition.



9802EG03

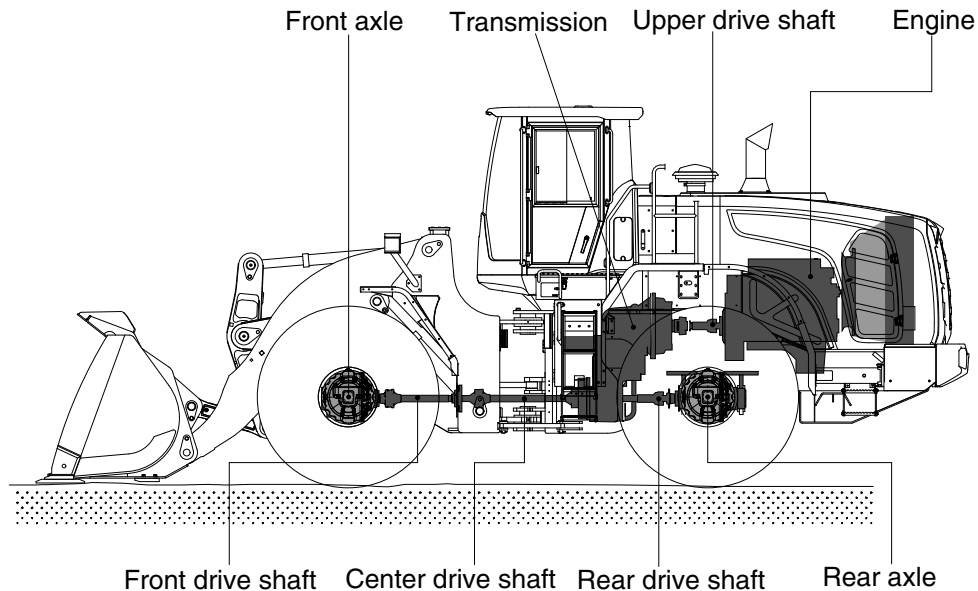
## SECTION 3 POWER TRAIN SYSTEM

Group 1	Structure and Function .....	3-1
Group 2	Operational Checks and Troubleshooting .....	3-86
Group 3	Tests and Adjustments .....	3-98
Group 4	Disassembly and Assembly .....	3-100

# SECTION 3 POWER TRAIN SYSTEM

## GROUP 1 STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION

### 1. POWER TRAIN COMPONENT OVERVIEW



9803PT01

The power train consists of the following components:

- Transmission
- Front, center, rear and upper drive shafts
- Front and rear axles

Engine power is transmitted to the transmission through the torque converter.

The transmission is a hydraulically engaged four speed forward, three speed reverse countershaft type power shift transmission. A calliper-disc type parking brake is located on the transmission.

The transmission outputs through universal joints to four drive shaft assemblies. The front drive shaft is a telescoping shaft which drives the front axle. The front axle is mounted directly to the loader frame.

The front axle is equipped with hydraulic lock differential as standard.

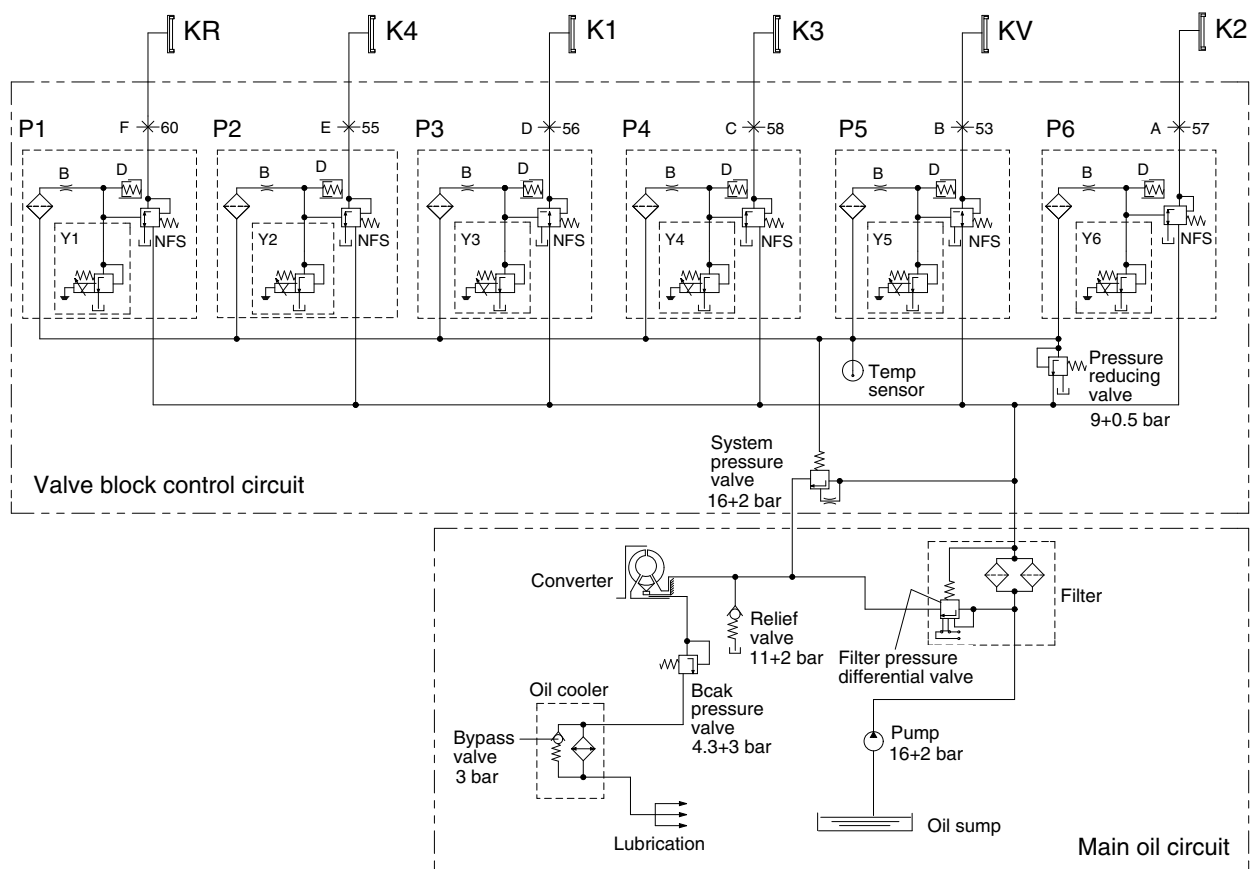
The rear axle is equipped with conventional differential as standard.

The rear axle is mounted on an oscillating pivot.

The power transmitted to front axle and rear axle is reduced by the pinion gear and ring gear of differential. It then passes from the differential to the sun gear shaft (axle shaft) of final drive.

The power of the sun gear is reduced by a planetary mechanism and is transmitted through the planetary hub to the wheel.

## HYDRAULIC CIRCUIT (4-speed transmission)



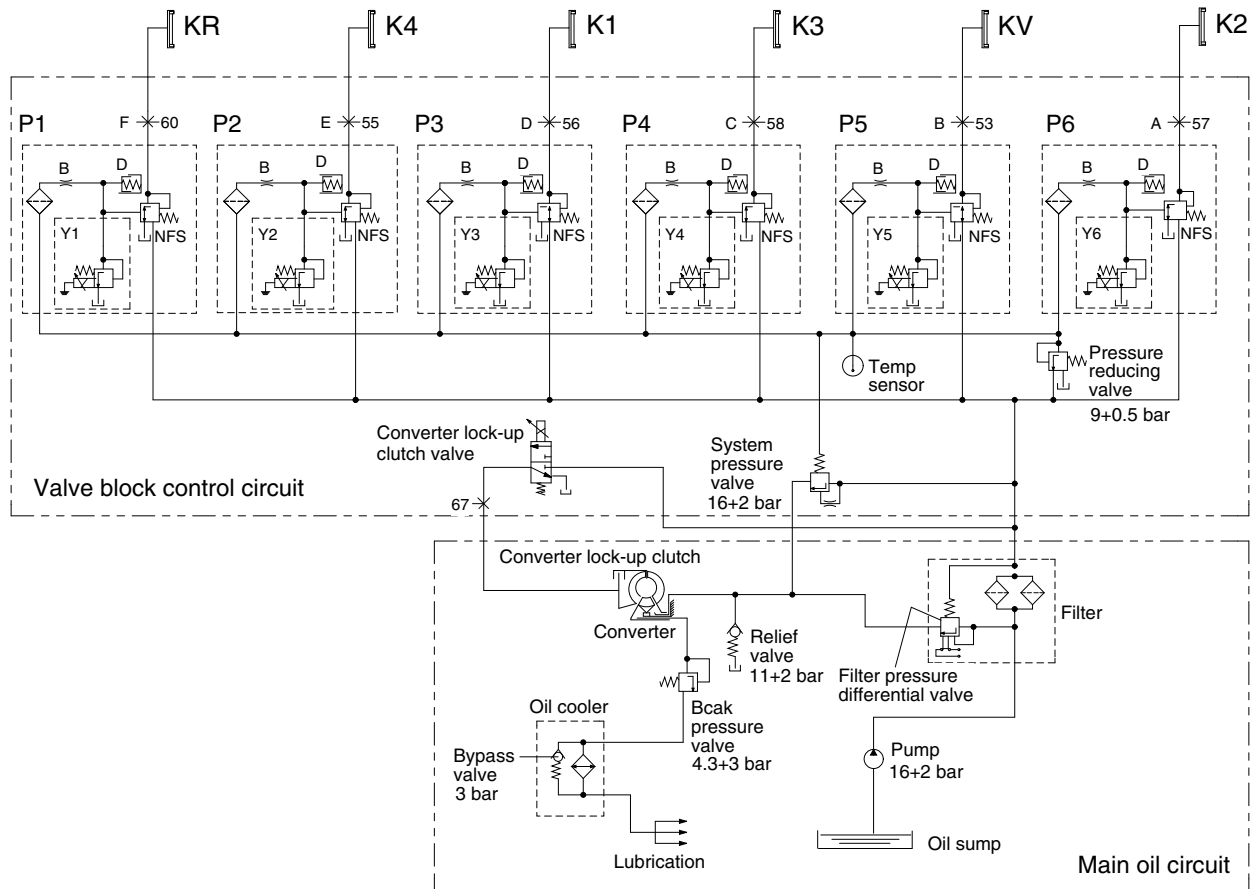
7707APT09

- |     |                              |       |                                      |
|-----|------------------------------|-------|--------------------------------------|
| NFS | Follow-on slide              | P3    | Proportional valve clutch K1         |
| D   | Oscillation damper           | P4    | Proportional valve clutch K3         |
| B   | Orifice                      | P5    | Proportional valve clutch KV         |
| P1  | Proportional valve clutch KR | P6    | Proportional valve clutch K2         |
| P2  | Proportional valve clutch K4 | Y1~Y6 | Pressure regulator valve with filter |

Speed	Forward				Reverse			Neutral	Engaged clutch	Positions on the valve block	Current No. of the measuring points
	1	2	3	4	1	2	3				
Y1					X	X	X		KR	F	55
Y2			X	X					K4	E	60
Y3	X				X				K1	D	56
Y4				X			X		K3	C	58
Y5	X	X							KV	B	53
Y6		X	X			X			K2	A	57
Engaged clutch	K1,KV	KV,K2	K4,K2	K4,K3	KR,K1	KR,K2	KR, K3		-	-	-

X : Pressure regulator under voltage

## HYDRAULIC CIRCUIT (5-speed transmission)



7709A3PT09

NFS Follow-on slide

D Oscillation damper

B Orifice

P1 Proportional valve clutch KR

P2 Proportional valve clutch K4

P3 Proportional valve clutch K1

P4 Proportional valve clutch K3

P5 Proportional valve clutch KV

P6 Proportional valve clutch K2

Y1~Y6 Pressure regulator with filter

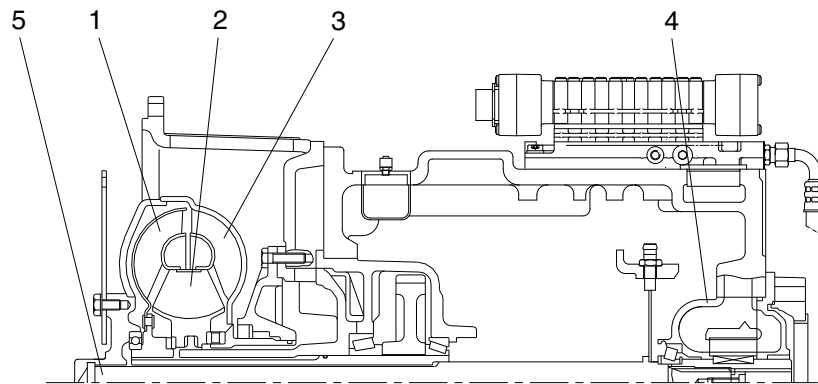
Speed	Forward					Reverse			Neutral	Engaged clutch	Positions on the valve block	Current No. of the measuring points
	1	2	3	4	5	1	2	3				
Y1						X	X	X		KR	F	55
Y2			X		X					K4	E	60
Y3	X					X				K1	D	56
Y4				X	X			X		K3	C	58
Y5	X	X		X						KV	B	53
Y6		X	X				X			K2	A	57
Engaged clutch	K1,KV	KV,K2	K2,K4	KV,K3	K3,K4	KR,K1	KR,K2	KR,K3		-	-	-

X : Pressure regulator under voltage



## 2. TORQUE CONVERTER

### 1) FUNCTION



7704PT03

- |           |                     |               |
|-----------|---------------------|---------------|
| 1 Turbine | 3 Pump              | 5 Input shaft |
| 2 Stator  | 4 Transmission pump |               |

The converter is working according to the Trilok-system, i.e. it assumes at high turbine speed the characteristics, and with it the favorable efficiency of a fluid clutch.

The converter will be defined according to the engine power so that the most favorable operating conditions for each installation case are given.

**The Torque converter is composed of 3 main components :**  
**Pump wheel - turbine wheel - stator (reaction member)**

These 3 impeller wheels are arranged in such a ring-shape system that the fluid is streaming through the circuit components in the indicated order.

Pressure oil is constantly streaming out of the transmission pump through the converter. In this way, the converter can fulfill its task to multiply the torque of the engine, and at the same time, the heat created in the converter is dissipated through the escaping oil.

The oil, escaping out of the pump wheel, enters the turbine wheel and is there inversed in the direction of flow.

According to the rate of inversion, the turbine wheel and with it also the output shaft, receive a more or less high reaction moment. The stator (reaction member), following the turbine, has the task to inverse again the oil which is escaping out of the turbine and to delivery it under the suitable discharge direction to the pump wheel.

Due to the inversion, the stator receives a reaction moment.

The relation turbine moment/pump moment is called torque conversion. This is the higher the greater the speed difference of pump wheel and turbine wheel will be.

Therefore, the maximum conversion is created at standing turbine wheel.

With increasing output speed, the torque conversion is decreasing. The adoption of the output speed to a certain required output moment is infinitely variable and automatically achieved by the torque converter.

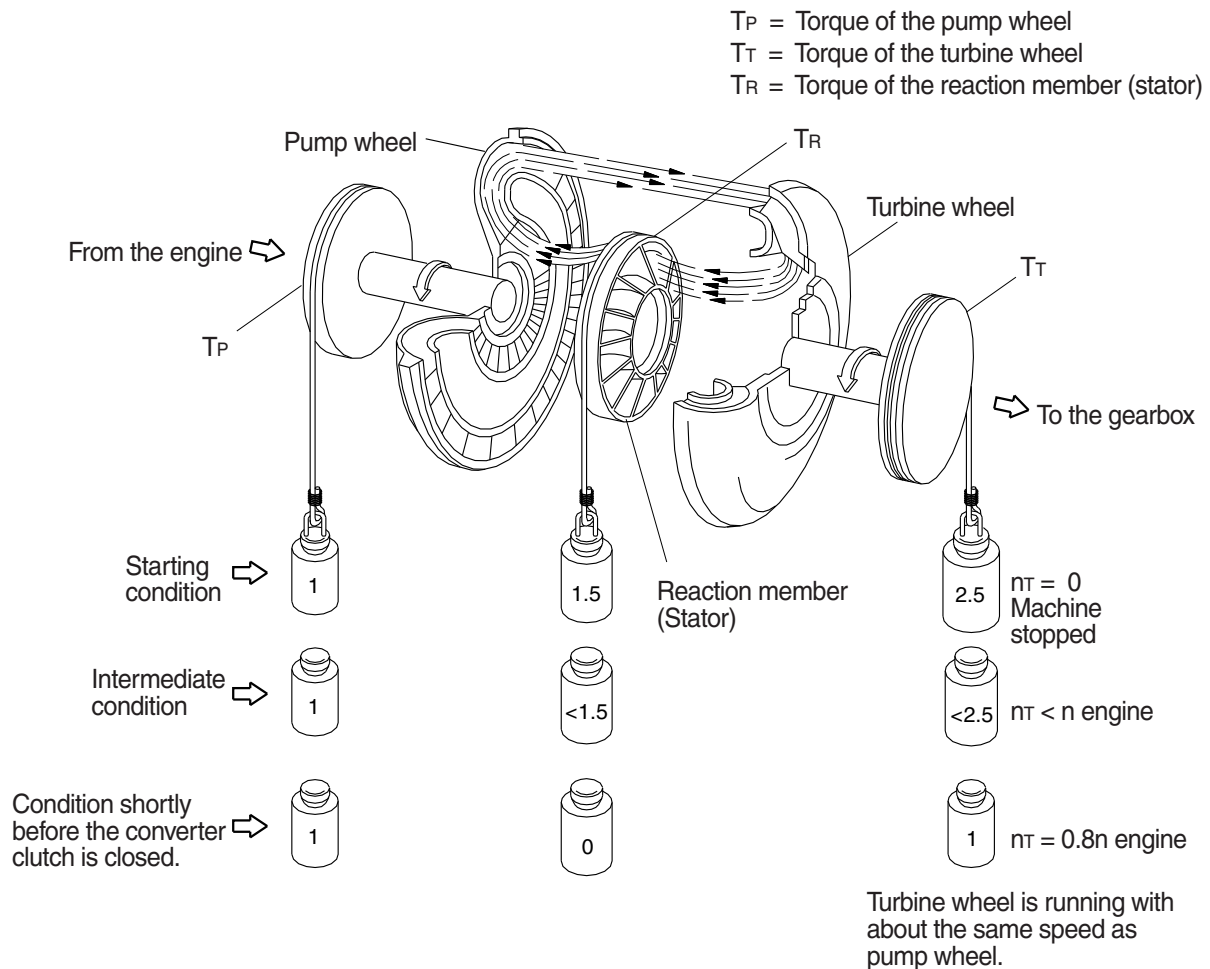
If the turbine speed is reaching about 80% of the pump speed, the conversion becomes 1.0 i.e. the turbine moment becomes equal to that of the pump moment.

From this point on, the converter is working similar to a fluid clutch.

A stator freewheel serves to improve the efficiency in the upper driving range, it is backing up in the conversion range the moment upon the housing, and is released in the coupling range.

In this way, the stator can rotate freely.

### Function of a hydrodynamic torque converter (schematic view)



3-4(770-3)

## 2) CONVERTER LOCK-UP CLUTCH (5-speed transmission)

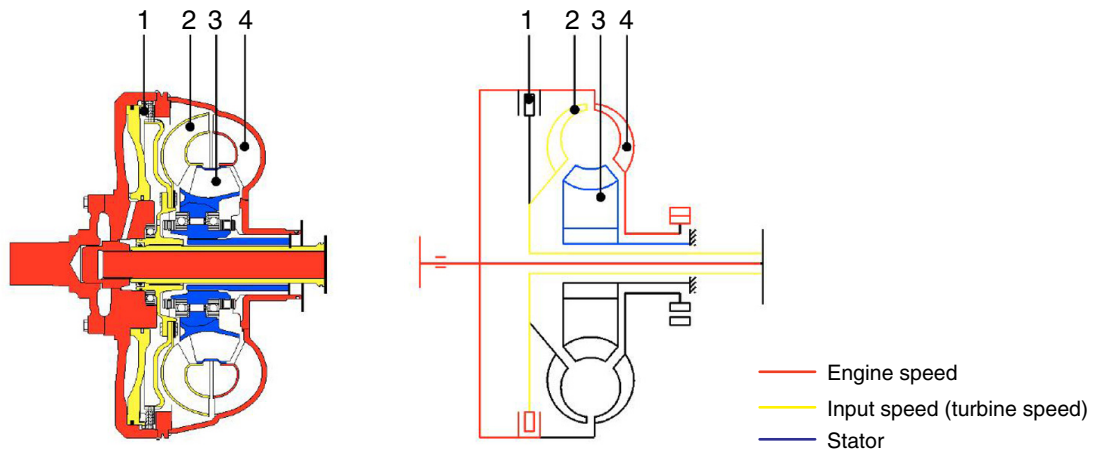


Figure A

7609A3PT22

- 1 Converter lock-up clutch
- 2 Turbine wheel
- 3 Stator
- 4 Circuit cover/pump wheel
- 5 Proportional valve
- 6 Measuring point "Lock-up clutch"
- 7 Cover
- 8 System pressure to lock-up clutch valve
- 9 System pressure from lock-up clutch valve to lock-up clutch

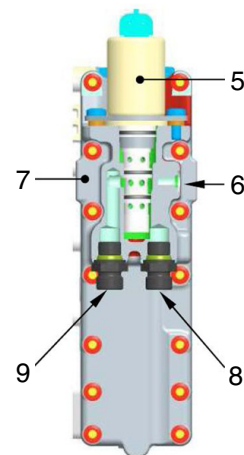


Figure B

7609A3PT23

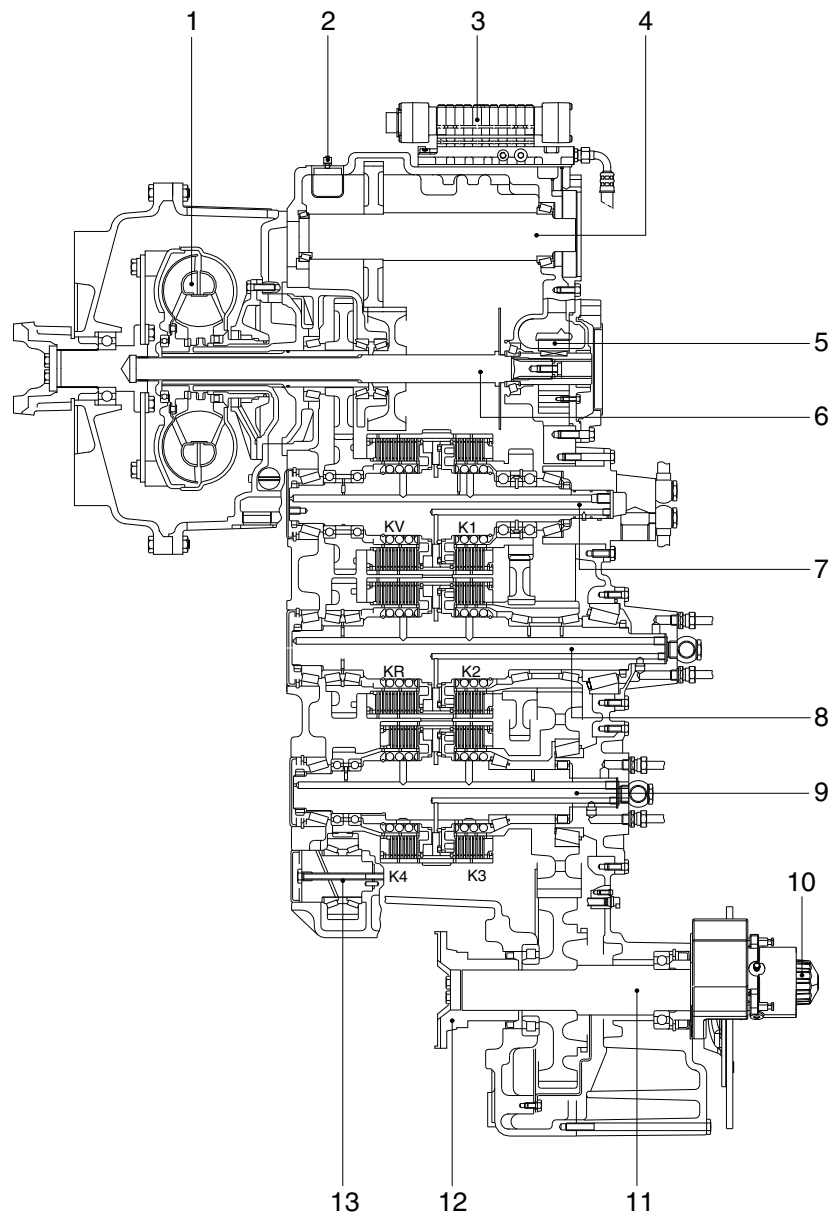
With closed converter lock-up clutch the slip between pump and turbine wheel and consequently the hydraulic loss in the converter is equal to "zero" (see figure A).

According to the turbine speed the converter lock-up clutch is shifted automatically.

Via a proportional valve the pilot pressure is applied to the actuating piston, which compresses the disc set (see figure B, lock-up clutch valve).

### 3. TRANSMISSION

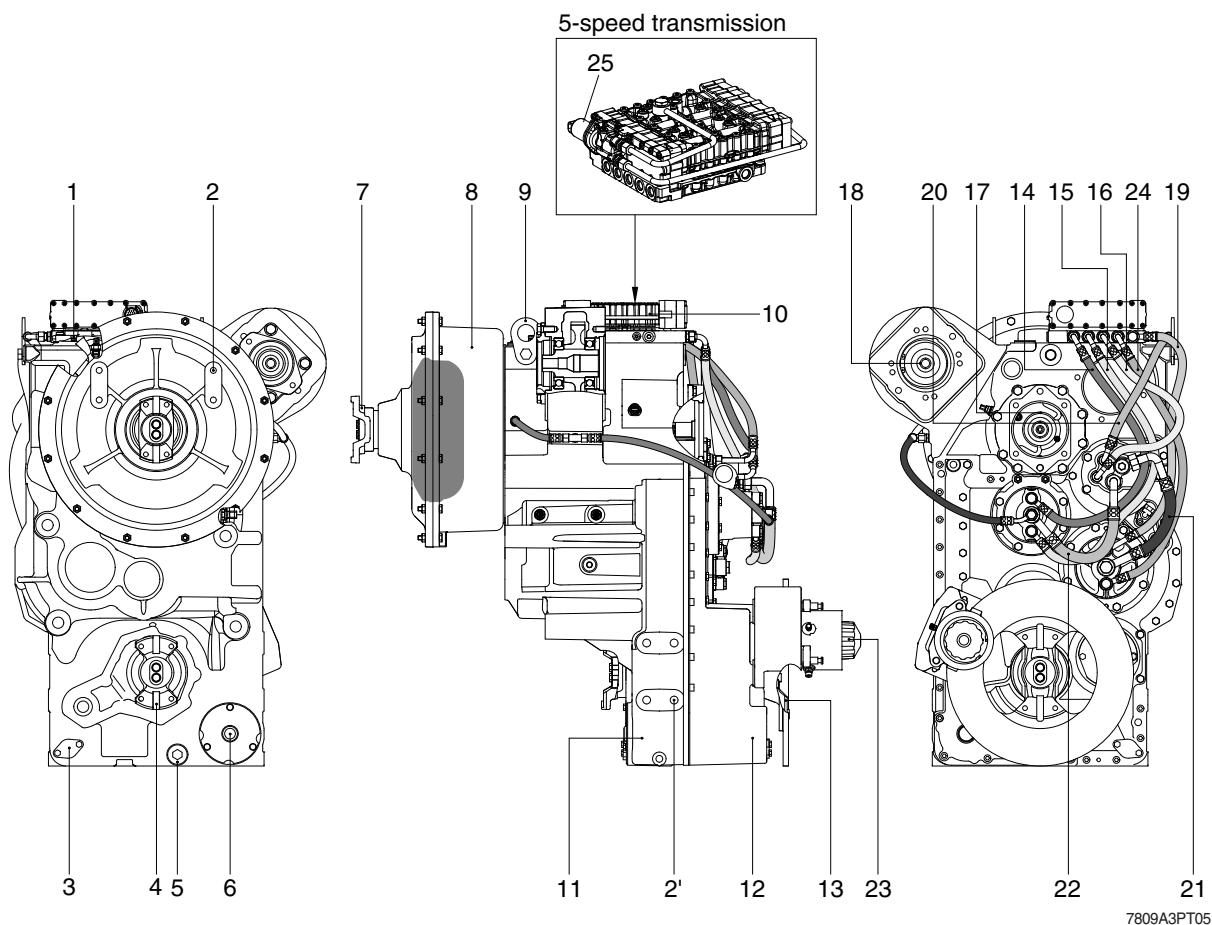
#### 1) LAYOUT



78093PT03

- |                                   |                                   |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 Torque converter                | 8 Clutch axle-KR/K2               |
| 2 Breather                        | 9 Clutch axle-K4/K3               |
| 3 Electro-hydraulic shift control | 10 Parking brake                  |
| 4 2nd power take off              | 11 Output shaft                   |
| 5 Transmission pump               | 12 Output flange (converter side) |
| 6 1st power take off              | 13 Countershaft                   |
| 7 Clutch axle-KV/K1               |                                   |

## 2) INSTALLATION VIEW



- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 Breather   | 13 Output flange   |
| 2 Transmission suspension M16                                      | 14 Pressure oil line clutch K2   |
| 2' Transmission suspension M20                                     | 15 Pressure oil line clutch KR   |
| 3 Attachment possibility for an oil filler tube with oil dipstick. | 16 Pressure oil line clutch KV   |
| 4 Output flange  | 17 1st power take off  |
| 5 Oil drain plug   | 18 2nd power take off  |
| 6 Coarse filter  | 19 Pressure oil line clutch K3   |
| 7 Input flange   | 20 Pressure oil line clutch K1   |
| 8 Converter bell   | 21 Lubricating oil line S2 clutch K4/K3                                    |
| 9 Lifting lug  | 22 Lubricating oil line S1 clutch KR/K2                                    |
| 10 Electrohydraulic shift controller                               | 23 Parking brake   |
| 11 Gearbox housing   | 24 Pressure oil line clutch K4   |
| 12 Cover   | 25 Solenoid valve for converter lock-up clutch (5-speed transmission only) |

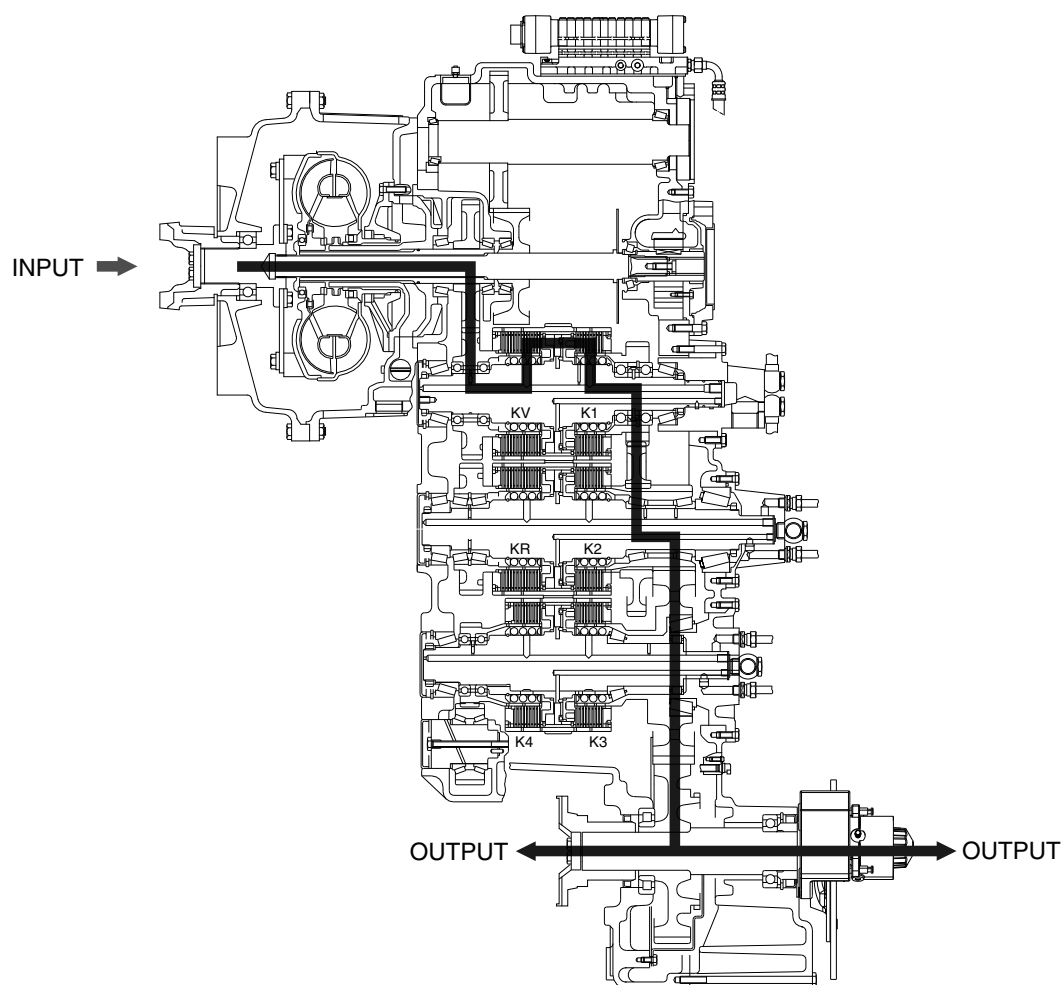
### 3) OPERATION OF TRANSMISSION (4-speed transmission)

#### (1) Forward

##### ① Forward 1st

In 1st forward, forward clutch and 1st clutch are engaged.

Forward clutch and 1st clutch are actuated by the hydraulic pressure applied to the clutch piston.

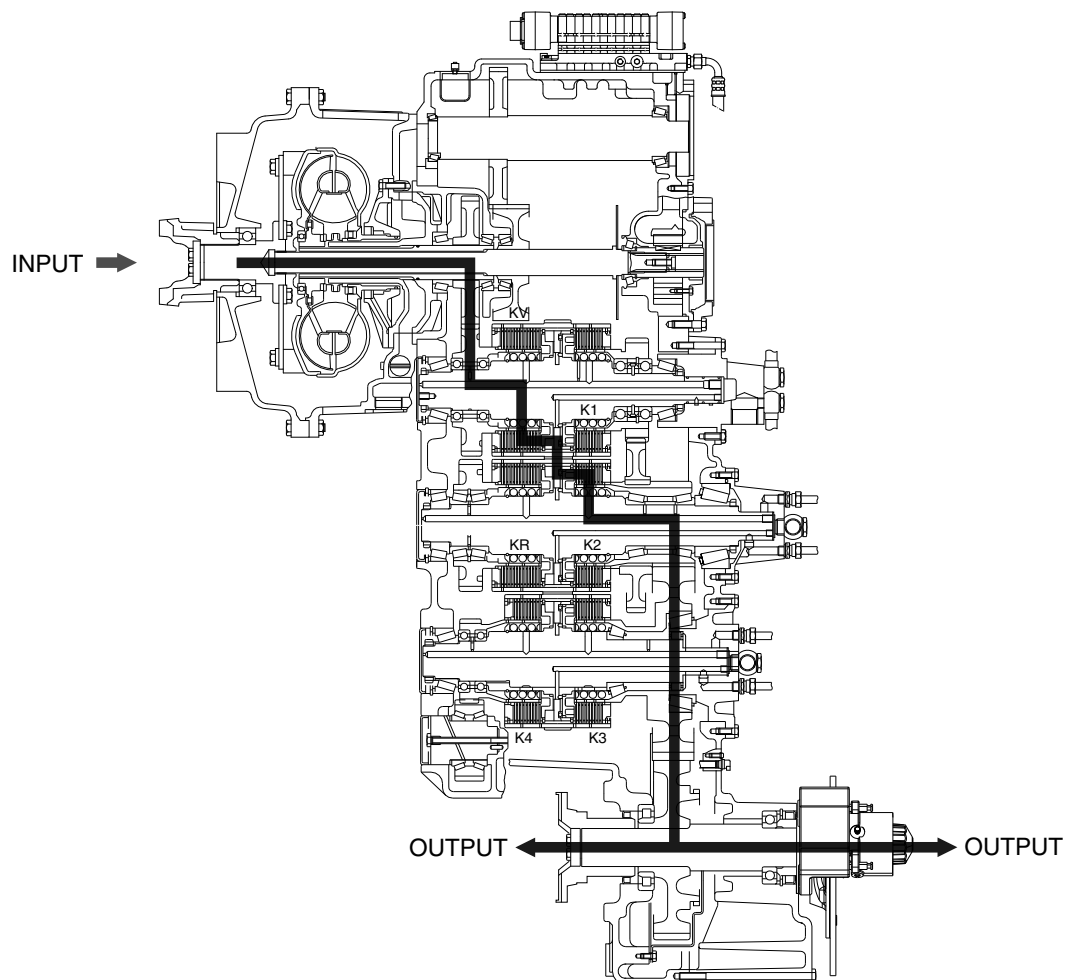


78093PT07

## ② Forward 2nd

In 2nd forward, forward clutch and 2nd clutch are engaged.

forward clutch and 2nd clutch are actuated by the hydraulic pressure applied to the clutch piston.

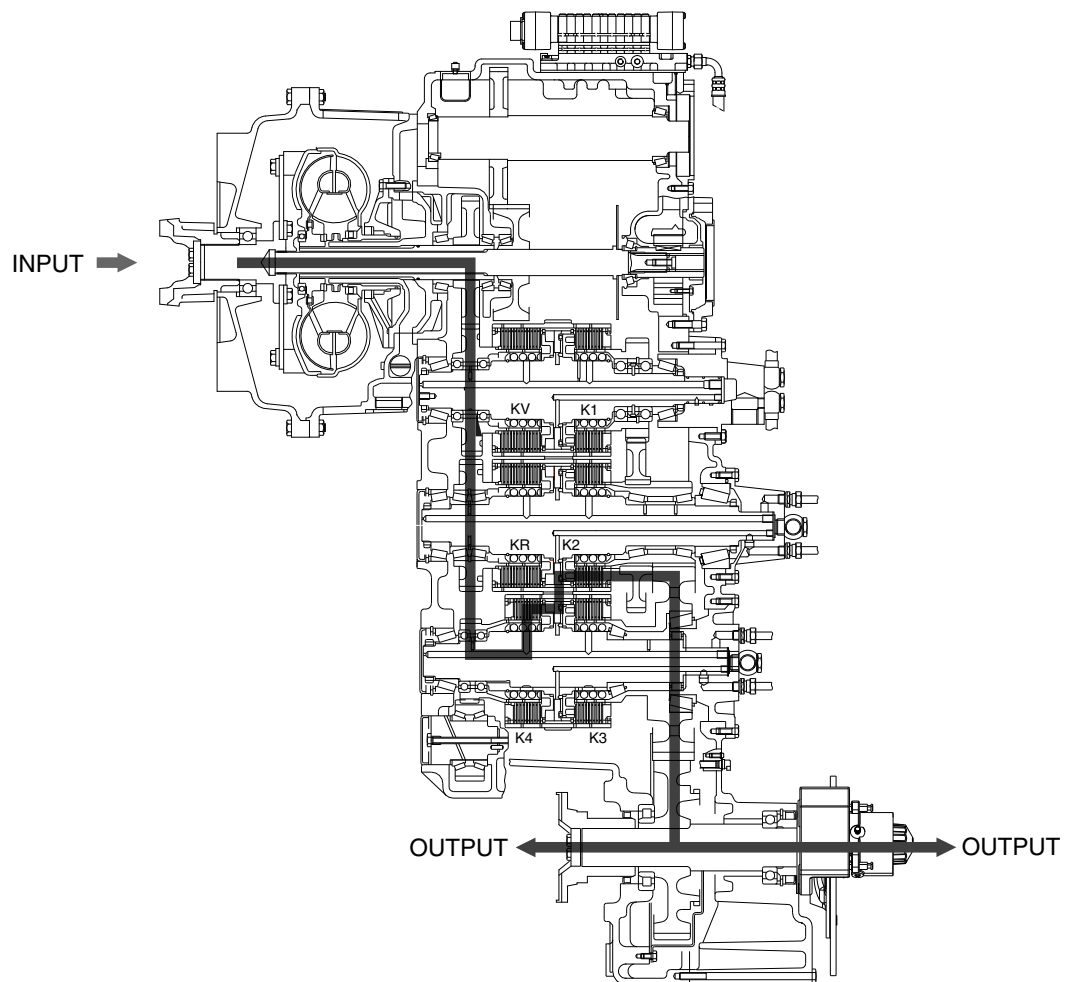


78093PT08

### ③ Forward 3rd

In 3th forward, 4th clutch and 2nd clutch are engaged.

4th clutch and 2nd clutch are actuated by the hydraulic pressure applied to the clutch piston.



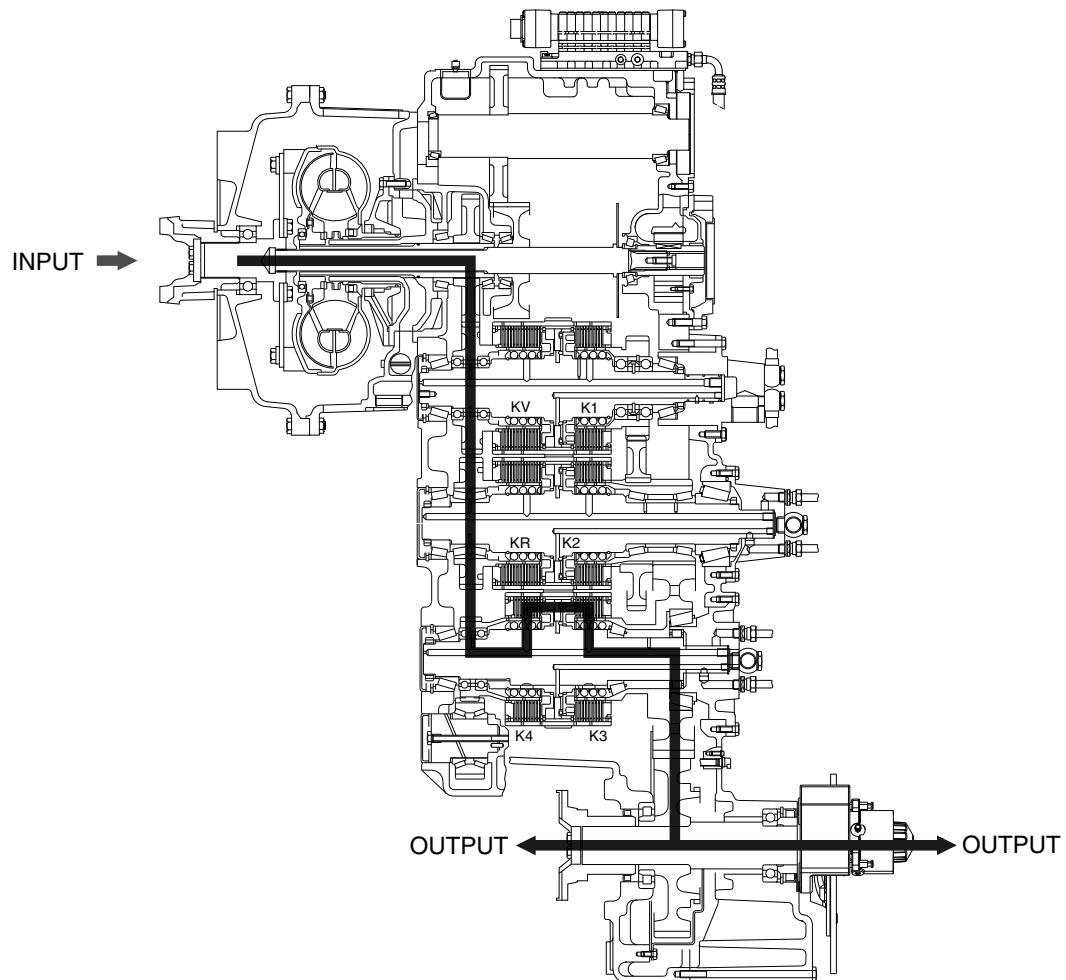
78093PT09-1



#### ④ Forward 4th

In 4th forward, 4th clutch and 3rd clutch are engaged.

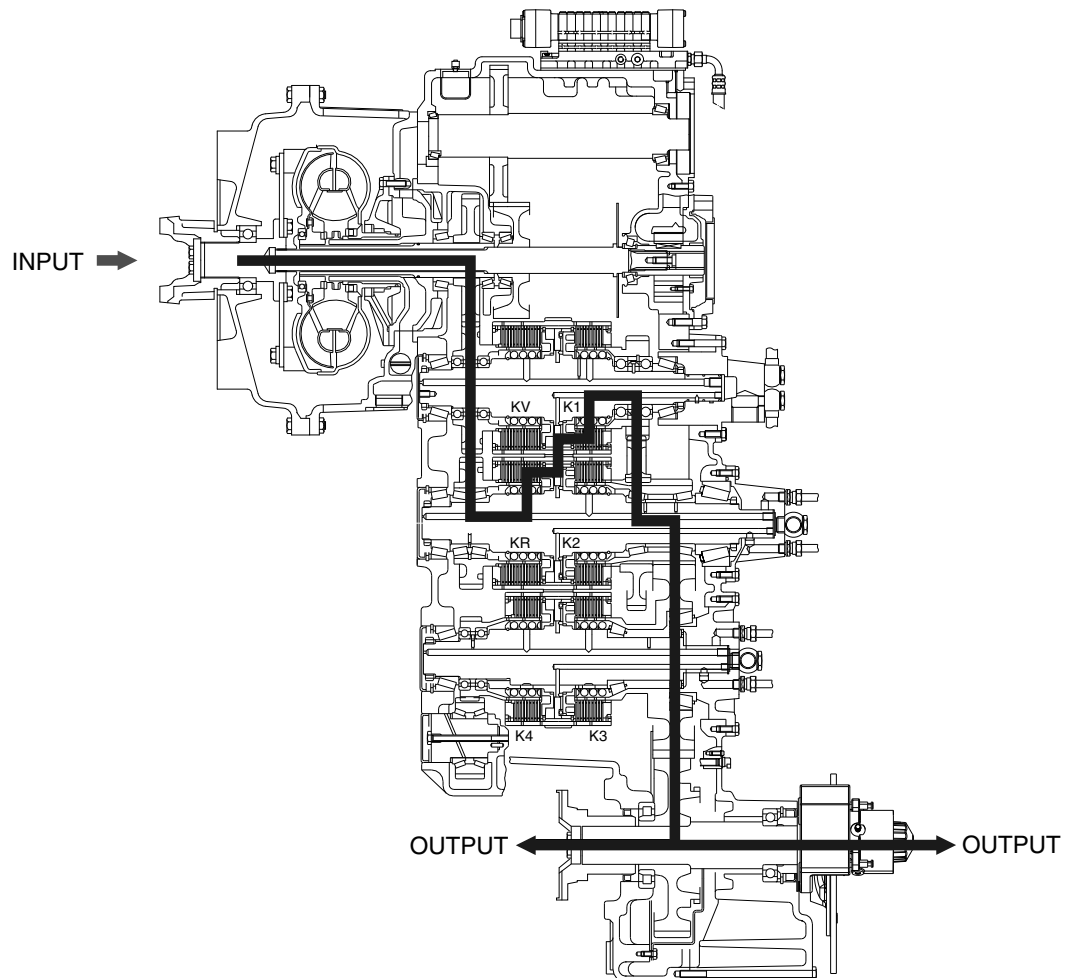
4th clutch and 3rd clutch are actuated by the hydraulic pressure applied to the clutch piston.



78093PT10

① Reverse 1st

reverse clutch and 1st clutch are actuated by the hydraulic pressure applied to the clutch piston.

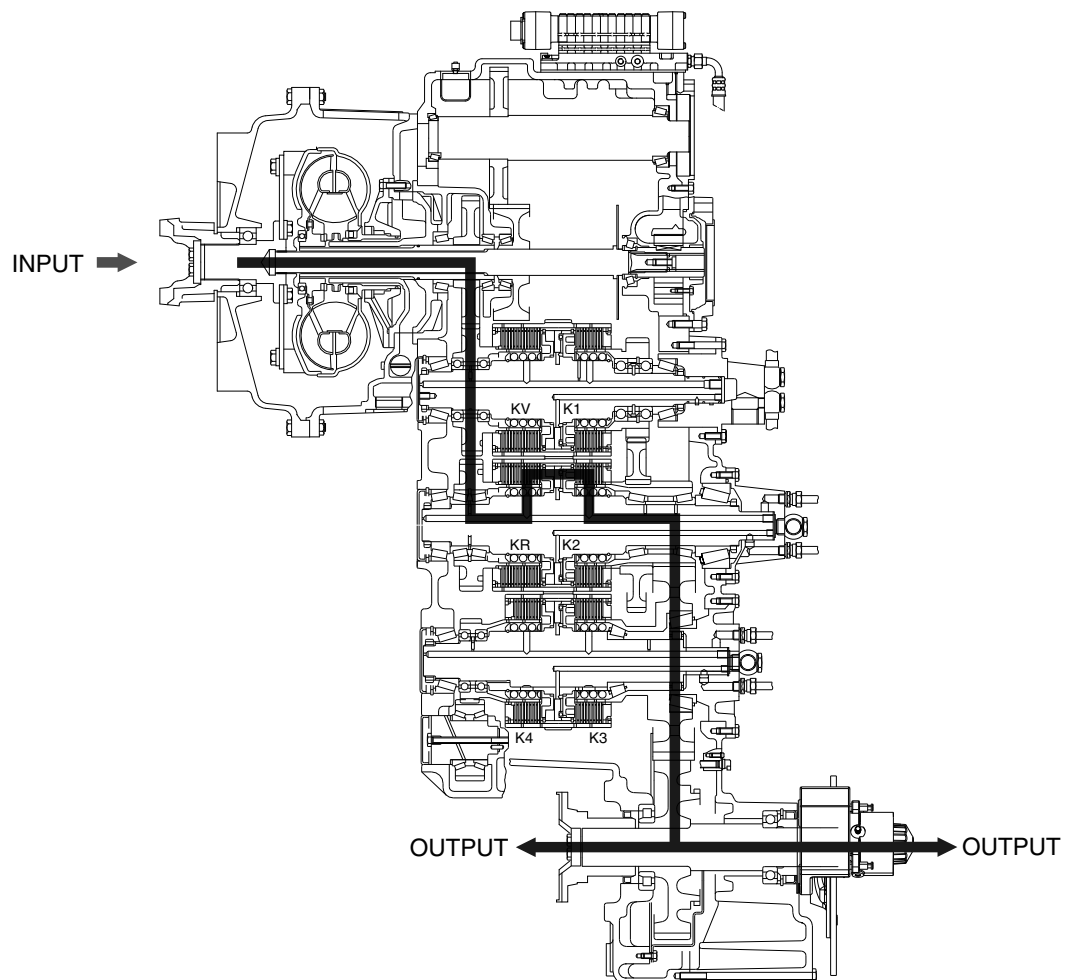


78093PT11

## ② Reverse 2nd

In 2nd reverse, reverse clutch and 2nd clutch are engaged.

reverse clutch and 2nd clutch are actuated by the hydraulic pressure applied to the clutch piston.

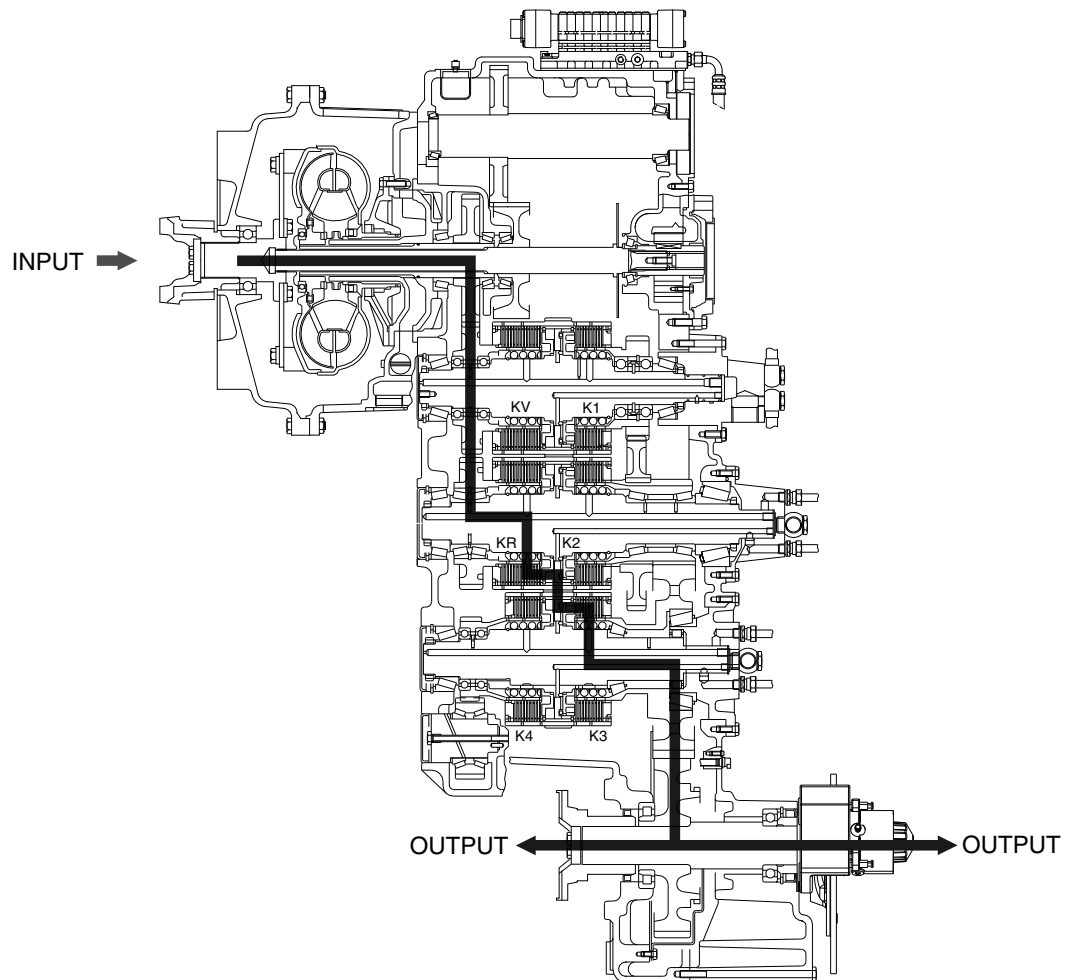


78093PT12

### ③ Reverse 3rd

In 3rd reverse, reverse clutch and 3rd clutch are engaged.

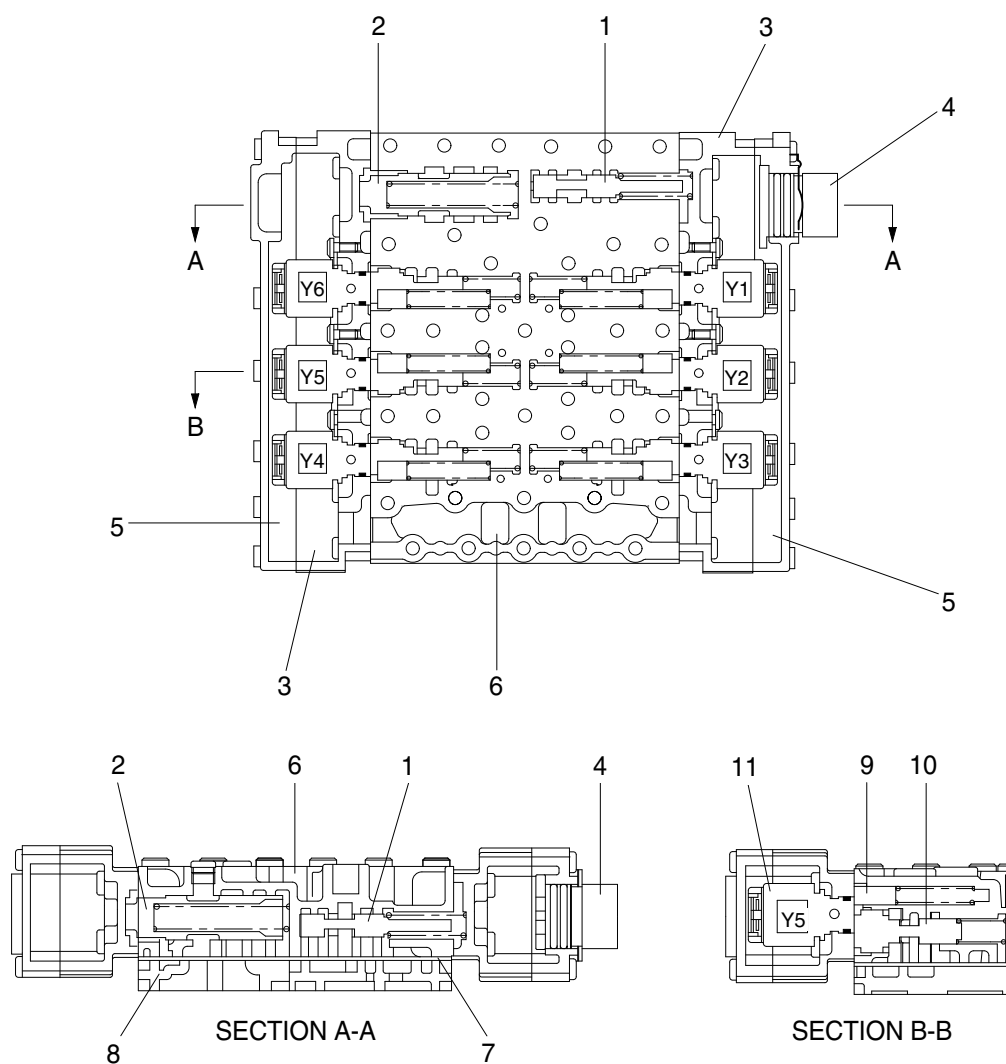
reverse clutch and 3rd clutch are actuated by the hydraulic pressure applied to the clutch piston.



78093PT13

#### 4) ELECTRO-HYDRAULIC SHIFT CONTROL WITH PROPORTIONAL VALVE

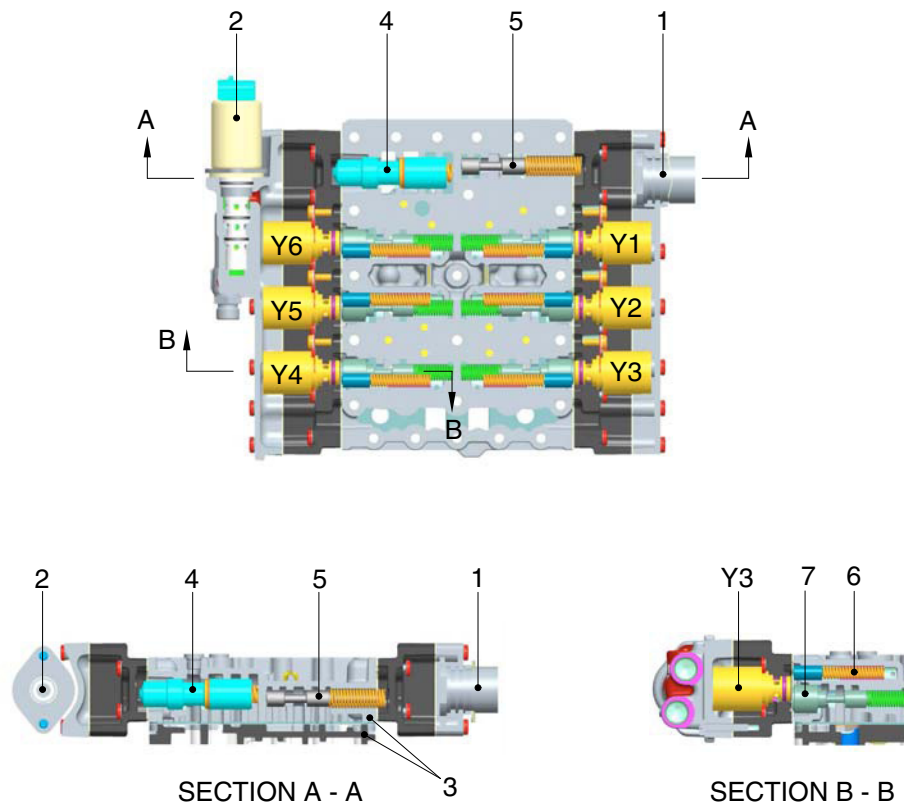
##### (1) 4-speed transmission



73033CV01

- |   |                                     |    |                    |
|---|-------------------------------------|----|--------------------|
| 1 | Pressure reducing valve (9+0.5 bar) | 7  | Intermediate sheet |
| 2 | System pressure valve (16+2 bar)    | 8  | Duct plate         |
| 3 | Housing                             | 9  | Oscillation damper |
| 4 | Cable harness                       | 10 | Follow-on slide    |
| 5 | Cover                               | 11 | Pressure regulator |
| 6 | Valve block                         |    |                    |

## (2) 5-speed transmission



7609AW3PT30

- |   |                                  |       |                                     |
|---|----------------------------------|-------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 | Cable harness                    | 5     | Pressure reducing valve (9+0.5 bar) |
| 2 | Proportional valve               | 6     | Vibration damper                    |
| 3 | Intermediate plate/duct plate    | 7     | Follow-on slide                     |
| 4 | System pressure valve (16+2 bar) | Y1~Y6 | Proportional valve                  |

Transmission control, see schedule of hydraulic circuit, electro-hydraulic control unit and measuring points at page 3-2, 3-16, 3-17 and 3-98.

The six clutches of the transmission are selected via the 6 proportional valves P1 to P6. The proportional valve (pressure regulator unit) is composed of pressure regulator (e.g. Y1), follow-on slide and vibration damper.

The control pressure of 9 bar for the actuation of the follow-on slides is created by the pressure reducing valve. The pressure oil (16+2 bar) is directed via the follow-on slide to the respective clutch.

Due to the direct proportional selection with separated pressure modulation for each clutch, the pressures to the clutches, which are engaged in the gear change, will be controlled. In this way, a hydraulic intersection of the clutches to be engaged and disengaged becomes possible.

This is creating spontaneous shiftings without traction force interruption.

At the shifting, the following criteria are considered:

- Speed of engine, turbine, central gear train and output.
- Transmission temperature.
- Shifting mode (Up-, down-, reverse shifting and speed engagement out of neutral).
- Load condition (full and part load, traction, overrun inclusive consideration of load cycles during the shifting).

The main pressure valve is limiting the maximum control pressure to 16+2 bar and releases the main stream to the converter and lubricating circuit.

In the inlet to the converter, a converter safety valve is installed which protects the converter from high internal pressures (opening pressure 11+2 bar).

Within the converter, the oil serves to transmit the power according to the well-known hydrodynamic principle (see torque converter, page 3-3).

To avoid cavitation, the converter must be always completely filled with oil.

This is achieved by a converter back pressure back-up valve, rear-mounted to the converter, with an opening pressure of at least 4.3bar.

The oil, escaping out of the converter, is directed to a oil cooler.

The oil is directed from the oil cooler to the transmission and from there to the lubricating oil circuit, so that all lubricating points are supplied with cooled oil.

In the electro-hydraulic control unit are 6 pressure regulators installed.

## 5) GEAR SELECTOR (DW-3)

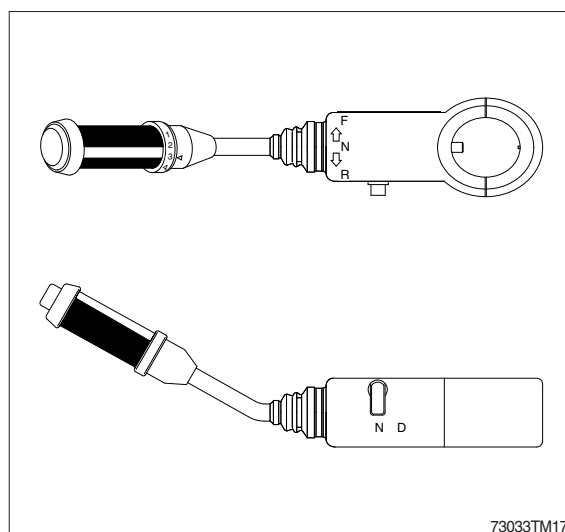
The gear selector is designed for the mounting on the left side of the steering column. The positions (speeds) 1 to 4 are selected by a rotary motion, the driving direction Forward (F)-Neutral (N)-Reverse (R) by tilting the gear selector lever.

The gear selector is also available with integrated kickdown push button.

For the protection from unintended start off, a neutral interlock is installed.

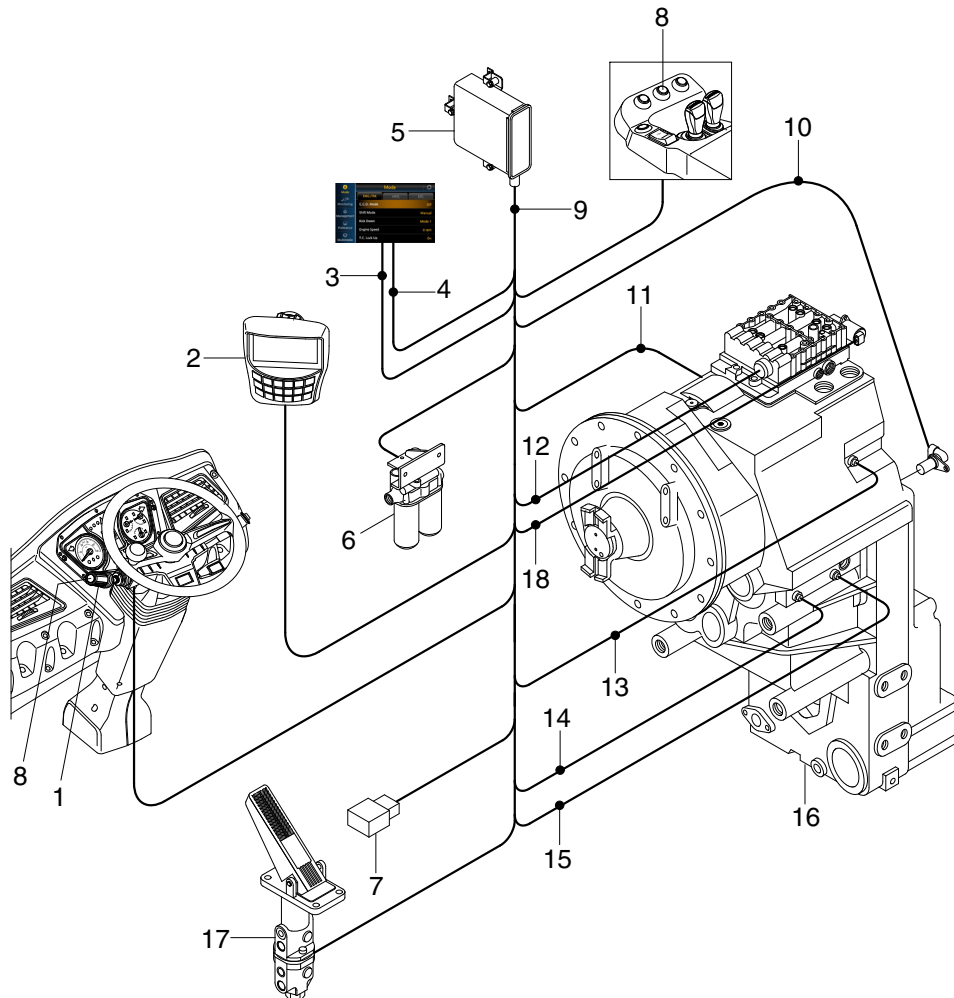
Position N - Gear selector lever blocked in this position.

Position D - Driving.



## 6) ELECTRIC CONTROL UNIT

### (1) Complete system



9803PT23

- 1 Gear selector (DW-3)
- 2 Monitor
- 3 Clutch cut off mode switch
- 4 Transmission shift mode switch
- 5 Control unit (EST-37)
- 6 Filter
- 7 Power supply connection
- 8 Kickdown switch
- 9 Wiring
- 10 Cable to speed sensor output and speedometer
- 11 Cable to temperature measuring point behind the converter
- 12 Cable to plug connection on the electrohydraulic control unit
- 13 Cable to inductive transmitter speed engine
- 14 Cable to inductive transmitter speed turbine
- 15 Cable to inductive transmitter speed central gear train
- 16 Transmission
- 17 Brake pressure sensor / Load sensor
- 18 Cable to lock-up clutch valve (5-speed transmission)

### (2) Description of the basic functions

The powershift transmission will be equipped with the electronic transmission control unit (EST-37), developed for it.

The system is processing the desire of the driver according to the following criteria.



- Protection from operating errors as far as necessary, is possible via electronic protection (programming).
- Protection from over-speeds (On the basis of engine and turbine speed).
- Automatic reversing (Driving speed-dependent).
- Pressure cut-off possible (Disconnecting of the drive train for maximum power on the power take-off).
- Change-over possibility for Auto-/Manual mode.
- Kick down functions possible.

### **(3) Driving and shifting**

#### **- Neutral position :**

Neutral position will be selected via the controller.

After the ignition is switched on, the electronics remains in the waiting state. By the position NEUTRAL of the controller, resp. by pressing the pushbutton NEUTRAL, the EST-37A becomes ready for operation.

Now, a gear can be engaged.

#### **- Starting :**

The starting of the engine has always to be carried out in the NEUTRAL POSITION of the controller.

For safety reasons it is to recommend to brake the machine securely in position with the parking brake prior to start the engine.

After the starting of the engine and the preselection of the driving direction and the gear, the machine can be set in motion by acceleration.

At the start off, the converter takes over the function of a master clutch.

On a level road it is possible to start off also in higher gears.

#### **- Upshifting under load**

Upshifting under load will be then realized if the machine can still accelerate by it.

#### **- Downshifting under load**

Downshifting under load will be realized if more traction force is needed.

#### **- Upshifting in overrunning condition**

In the overrunning mode, the upshifting will be suppressed by accelerator pedal idling position, if the speed of the machine on a downgrade should not be further increased.

#### **- Downshifting in overrunning condition**

Downshiftings in overrunning mode will be then carried out if the machine should be retarded.

If the machine will be stopped and is standing with running engine and engaged transmission, the engine cannot be stalled. On a level and horizontal roadway it is possible that the machine begins to crawl, because the engine is creating at idling speed a slight drag torque via the converter.

It is convenient to brake the machine at every stop securely in position with the parking brake.

At longer stops, the controller has to be shifted to the NEUTRAL POSITION.

At the start off, the parking brake has to be released. We know from experience that at a converter transmission it might not immediately be noted to have forgotten this quite normal operating step because a converter, due to its high ratio, can easily overcome the braking torque of the parking brake.

Temperature increases in the converter oil as well as overheated brakes will be the consequences to be find out later.

Neutral position of the selector switch at higher machine speeds (above stepping speed) is not admissible.

Either a suitable gear is to be shifted immediately, or the machine must be stopped at once.

#### **(4) Independent calibration of the shifting elements (AEB)**

The AEB has the task to compensate tolerances (plate clearance and pressure level) which are influencing the filling procedure of the clutches. For each clutch, the correct filling parameters are determined in one test cycle for :

- Period of the quick-filling time
- Level of the filling compensating pressure

The filling parameters are stored, together with the AEB-program and the driving program in the transmission electronics. Because the electronics will be separately supplied, the AEB-cycle must be started only after the installation of both components in the machine, thus ensuring the correct mating (Transmission and electronics).

※ It is imperative, to respect the following test conditions :

- Shifting position neutral
- Engine in idling speed
- Parking brake actuated
- Transmission in operating temperature

※ After a replacement of the transmission, the electrohydraulic control or the TCU in the machine, the AEB-cycle must be as well carried out again.

The AEB-cycle continues for about 3 to 4 minutes. The determined filling parameters are stored in the EEPROM of the electronics. In this way, the error message F6 shown on the display will be cancelled also at non-performed AEB.

#### **(5) Pressure cut-off**

In order to provide the full engine power for the hydraulic system, the control can be enlarged for the function of a pressure cut-off in the 1st and 2nd speed. In this way, the pressure in the powershift clutches will be cut-off, and the torque transmission in the drive train will be eliminated by it. This function will be released at the actuation of a switch, arranged on the brake pedal.

For a soft restart, the pressure will be build-up via a freely programmable characteristic line.

## 4. FAULT CODE

### 1-1) MACHINE FAULT CODE

DTC		Diagnostic Criteria	Application		
HCESPN	FMI		G	C	S
101	3	10 seconds continuous, Hydraulic Oil Temp. Measurement Voltage > 3.95 V	●		
	4	10 seconds continuous, Hydraulic Oil Temp. Measurement Voltage < 0.3 V	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Hydraulic Oil temperature display failure 2. Control Function – No warming up operation, No fuel warmer function operation, High hydraulic oil temperature warning failure  (Checking list) 1. CN-58B (#23) – CD-01 (#2) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-58B (#25) – CD-01 (#1) Checking Open/Short				
202	0	10 seconds continuous, Steering main pump pressure Measurement Voltage > 5.3 V	●		
	4	10 seconds continuous, Steering main pump pressure Measurement Voltage < 0.3 V	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Steering main pump press. Display failure 2. Control Function – No automatic Emergency steering operation, ECO gauge display failure 3. RMS – Working hours accumulation failure (Checking list) 1. CN-58B (#35) – CD-39 (B) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-58A (#11) – CD-39 (A) Checking Open/Short 3. CN-58B (#25) – CD-39 (C) Checking Open/Short				
204	0	10 seconds continuous, Boom cylinder 'head' pressure Measurement Voltage > 5.3 V	●		
	4	10 seconds continuous, Boom cylinder 'head' pressure Measurement Voltage < 0.3 V	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Boom cylinder 'head' press. display failure 2. Control Function – No Boom pressure calibration function operation, workload measurement sys. operation failure  (Checking list) 1. CN-58B (#29) – CD-80 (B) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-58A (#11) – CD-80 (A) Checking Open/Short 3. CN-58B (#25) – CD-80 (C) Checking Open/Short				

G : General    C : Cummins Engine application equipment    S : Scania Engine application equipment

DTC		Diagnostic Criteria	Application		
HCESPN	FMI		G	C	S
205	0	10 seconds continuous, Boom cylinder 'rod' pressure Measurement Voltage > 5.3V	●		
	4	10 seconds continuous, Boom cylinder 'rod' pressure Measurement Voltage < 0.3V	●		
		(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Boom cylinder 'rod' press. display failure 2. Control Function – No Boom pressure calibration function operation, workload measurement sys. operation failure  (Checking list) 1. CN-58B(#36) – CD-81(B) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-58A(#11) – CD-81(A) Checking Open/Short 3. CN-58B(#25) – CD-81(C) Checking Open/Short			
301	3	10 seconds continuous, Fuel level Measurement Voltage > 3.8V	●		
	4	10 seconds continuous, Fuel level Measurement Voltage < 0.3V	●		
		(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Fuel level display failure 2. Control Function – Fuel level low warning operation failure  (Checking list) 1. CN-58B (#22) – CD-02 (#2) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-58B (#25) – CD-02 (#1) Checking Open/Short			
318	8	(In the startup conditions) 30 seconds continuous, Fan speed < 10 rpm in the Remote cooling fan EPPR current reference value is in X Ma(differ by model)	●		
		(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Cooling Fan revolutions display failure  (Checking list) 1. CN-58A (#15) – CD-73 (#1) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-58A (#18) – CD-73 (#2) Checking Open/Short			
339	3	10 seconds continuous, Accel pedal position 1 voltage Measurement Voltage > 5.0 V			●
	4	10 seconds continuous, Accel pedal position 1 voltage Measurement Voltage < 0.2 V			●
		(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Accel pedal position 1 voltage display failure 2. Control Function – Engine rpm control failure  (Checking list) 1. CN-58B(#39) – CN-162(#2) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-58A(#6) – CN-162(#3) Checking Open/Short 3. CN-58A(#8) – CN-162(#1) Checking Open/Short			

G : General    C : Cummins Engine application equipment    S : Scania Engine application equipment

DTC		Diagnostic Criteria	Application		
HCESPN	FMI		G	C	S
343	3	10 seconds continuous, Accel pedal position 2 voltage Measurement Voltage > 5.0 V			●
	4	10 seconds continuous, Accel pedal position 2 voltage Measurement Voltage < 0.2 V			●
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Accel pedal position 2 voltage display failure 2. Control Function – Engine rpm control failure (Checking list) 1. CN-58B (#40) – CN-162 (#5) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-58A (#7) – CN-162 (#6) Checking Open/Short 3. CN-58A (#9) – CN-162 (#4) Checking Open/Short				
503	0	10 seconds continuous, Brake oil pressure Measurement Voltage > 5.3V	●		
	4	10 seconds continuous, Brake oil pressure Measurement Voltage < 0.3V	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Brake oil press. display failure 2. Control Function – Brake oil pressure low warning display failure (Checking list) 1. CN-58B (#27) – CD-03 (B) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-58A (#11) – CD-03 (A) Checking Open/Short 3. CN-58B (#25) – CD-03 (C) Checking Open/Short				
507	0	10 seconds continuous, Parking oil pressure Measurement Voltage > 5.3V	●		
	4	10 seconds continuous, Parking oil pressure Measurement Voltage < 0.3V	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Parking oil Press. display failure 2. Control Function – No judgment Parking status (Checking list) 1. CN-58B (#34) – CD-26 (B) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-58A (#11) – CD-26 (A) Checking Open/Short 3. CN-58B (#25) – CD-26 (C) Checking Open/Short				
557	0	10 seconds continuous, Brake oil charging priority pressure Measurement Voltage > 5.3V	●		
	4	10 seconds continuous, Brake oil charging priority pressure Measurement Voltage < 0.3V	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Brake oil charging priority press. display failure 2. Control Function – Cooling fan revolutions control failure, Brake oil(Accumulator) charging failure (Checking list) 1. CN-58B (#38) – CD-31 (B) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-58A (#11) – CD-31 (A) Checking Open/Short 3. CN-58B (#25) – CD-31 (C) Checking Open/Short				

G : General    C : Cummins Engine application equipment    S : Scania Engine application equipment

DTC		Diagnostic Criteria	Application		
HCESPN	FMI		G	C	S
705	0	10 seconds continuous, Battery input Voltage > 35V	●		
	1	10 seconds continuous, Battery input Voltage < 18V	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – Disabled startup (Checking list) 1. Checking battery voltage 2. CN-58A (#1) – CN-36 (07 fuse) Checking Open/Short 3. CN-58A (#2) – CN-36 (07 fuse) Checking Open/Short				
707	1	(In the 500rpm or more) 10 seconds continuous, Alternator Node I Measurement Voltage < 18V	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – Battery charging circuit failure (Checking list) 1. CN-58B (#33) – CN-04 (#18) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-04 (#18) – CN-74 (#2) Checking Open/Short				
728	3	10 seconds continuous, Boom position sensor signal voltage Measurement Voltage > 5.0V	●		
	4	10 seconds continuous, Boom position sensor signal voltage Measurement Voltage < 0.3V	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Boom position sensor signal voltage display failure 2. Control Function – No calibration angle sensor, No calibration boom pressure , Boom Detent operation failure, Soft end stop(Boom) operation failure, Lock-up clutch operation failure (Checking list) 1. CN-58B (#37) – CN-100 (B) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-58A (#5) – CN-100 (C) Checking Open/Short 3. CN-58B (#25) – CN-100 (A) Checking Open/Short				
729	3	10 seconds continuous, Bucket position sensor signal voltage Measurement Voltage > 5.0V	●		
	4	10 seconds continuous, Bucket position sensor signal voltage Measurement Voltage < 0.3V	●		
	(Results /Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Bucket position sensor signal voltage display failure 2. Control Function – No calibration angle sensor, Bucket Detent operation failure, Soft end stop(Bucket) operation failure (Checking list) 1. CN-58B(#30) – CN-101(B) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-58A(#5) – CN-101(C) Checking Open/Short 3. CN-58B(#25) – CN-101(A) Checking Open/Short				

G : General    C : Cummins Engine application equipment    S : Scania Engine application equipment

DTC		Diagnostic Criteria	Application		
HCESPN	FMI		G	C	S
831	2	(When mounting the A/C Controller) 10 seconds continuous, A/C controller Communication Data Error	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – A/C Controller malfunction				
841	2	10 seconds continuous, ECM Communication Data Error	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – ECM operation failure				
842	2	10 seconds continuous, TCU Communication Data Error	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – TCU operation failure				
844	2	10 seconds continuous, Monitor Communication Data Error	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – Monitor operation failure				
850	2	(When mounting the RMCU) 90 seconds continuous, RMCU Communication Data Error	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – RMCU operation failure				
861	2	(When mounting the EHCU) 10 seconds continuous, EHCU Communication Data Error	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – EHCU operation failure				
869	2	(When mounting the BKCU) 10 seconds continuous, BKCU Communication Data Error	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – BKCU operation failure				

G : General    C : Cummins Engine application equipment    S : Scania Engine application equipment

## 1-2) EHCU FAULT CODE

HCESPN	FMI	Description
2333	9	Communication timeout between EHCU and TCU
2331	9	Communication timeout between EHCU and MCU
2332	9	Communication timeout between EHCU and working joystick
2317	9	Communication timeout between EHCU and steering joystick
2319	2	Steering joystick position signal error
2320	2	Steering joystick - FNR enable switch error
2321	2	Steering joystick - forward switch error
2322	2	Steering joystick - neutral switch error
2323	2	Steering joystick - reverse switch error
2324	2	Steering joystick - kick down switch error
2325	2	Steering joystick - steering on switch error
2326	5	PVE coil power current below normal or open circuit
2326	6	PVE coil power current above normal or grounded circuit
2327	0	PVE coil PWM duty cycle input value above normal operation range
2327	1	PVE coil PWM duty cycle input value below normal operation range
2327	5	PVE coil PWM duty cycle current below normal or open circuit
2327	6	PVE coil PWM duty cycle current above normal or grounded circuit
2327	14	PVE coil PWM duty cycle control block parameter invalid
2311	2	Boom joystick position signal error
2311	0	Boom joystick position input value above normal operation range
2311	1	Boom joystick position input value below normal operation range
2311	3	Boom joystick position input voltage above normal or shorted to high source
2311	4	Boom joystick position input voltage below normal or shorted to low source
2311	13	Boom joystick position control block out of calibration
2311	14	Boom joystick position control block parameter invalid
2311	31	Boom joystick position signal redundancy lost
2313	2	Bucket joystick position signal error
2313	0	Bucket joystick position input value above normal operation range
2313	1	Bucket joystick position input value below normal operation range
2313	3	Bucket joystick position input voltage above normal or shorted to high source
2313	4	Bucket joystick position input voltage below normal or shorted to low source
2313	13	Bucket joystick position control block out of calibration
2313	14	Bucket joystick position control block parameter invalid
2313	31	Bucket joystick position signal redundancy lost
2315	2	Aux joystick position signal error
2315	0	Aux joystick position input value above normal operation range
2315	1	Aux joystick position input value below normal operation range



HCESPN	FMI	Description
2315	3	Aux joystick position input voltage above normal or shorted to high source
2315	4	Aux joystick position input voltage below normal or shorted to low source
2315	13	Aux joystick position control block out of calibration
2315	14	Aux joystick position control block parameter invalid
2315	31	Aux joystick position signal redundancy lost
2304	0	Boom up EPPR valve input value above normal operation range
2304	1	Boom up EPPR valve input value below normal operation range
2304	5	Boom up EPPR valve input current below normal or open circuit
2304	6	Boom up EPPR valve input current above normal or grounded circuit
2304	14	Boom up EPPR valve block parameter invalid
2305	0	Boom down EPPR valve input value above normal operation range
2305	1	Boom down EPPR valve input value below normal operation range
2305	5	Boom down EPPR valve input current below normal or open circuit
2305	6	Boom down EPPR valve input current above normal or grounded circuit
2305	14	Boom down EPPR valve block parameter invalid
2306	0	Bucket in EPPR valve input value above normal operation range
2306	1	Bucket in EPPR valve input value below normal operation range
2306	5	Bucket in EPPR valve input current below normal or open circuit
2306	6	Bucket in EPPR valve input current above normal or grounded circuit
2306	14	Bucket in EPPR valve block parameter invalid
2307	0	Bucket dump EPPR valve input value above normal operation range
2307	1	Bucket dump EPPR valve input value below normal operation range
2307	5	Bucket dump EPPR valve input current below normal or open circuit
2307	6	Bucket dump EPPR valve input current above normal or grounded circuit
2307	14	Bucket dump EPPR valve block parameter invalid
2308	0	Aux. Up EPPR valve input value above normal operation range
2308	1	Aux. Up EPPR valve input value below normal operation range
2308	5	Aux. Up EPPR valve input current below normal or open circuit
2308	6	Aux. Up EPPR valve input current above normal or grounded circuit
2308	14	Aux. Up EPPR valve block parameter invalid
2309	0	Aux. Down EPPR valve input data above normal operation range
2309	1	Aux. Down EPPR valve input data below normal operation range
2309	5	Aux. Down EPPR valve input current below normal or open circuit
2309	6	Aux. Down EPPR valve input current above normal or grounded circuit
2309	14	Aux. Down EPPR valve block parameter invalid
2328	0	EHCUSensor power voltage high
2328	1	EHCUSensor power voltage low
2328	3	EHCUSensor power voltage above normal or shorted to high source

HCESPN	FMI	Description
2328	4	EHCUC sensor power voltage below normal or shorted to low source
2329	0	EHCUC power voltage high
2329	1	EHCUC power voltage low
2329	11	EHCUC safety cpu error
739	2	Armrest switch signal error
2334	0	Steering pilot pressure sensor data above normal range
2334	1	Steering pilot pressure sensor data below normal range
2335	2	Steering proportional valve moving position error
2335	14	Steering proportional valve start position error

### 1-3) AAVM FAULT CODE

Fault Code	Description
A01	AAVM Communication Error -AAVM
A02	AAVM Communication Error -Front Camera
A03	AAVM Communication Error -Rear Camera
A04	AAVM Communication Error -Left Camera
A05	AAVM Communication Error -Right Camera
A06	Manual Setting Fail
A07	No MCU CID
A08	MCU CID Format Error
A09	AAVM Hardware Error -AAVM
A10	AAVM Hardware Error -Front Camera
A11	AAVM Hardware Error -Rear Camera
A12	AAVM Hardware Error -Left Camera
A13	AAVM Hardware Error -Right Camera
A14	MCU CID Model is not registered
A15	MCU CID Model can't be applied

## 2) ENGINE FAULT CODE

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
12D1 46 1	Pneumatic supply pressure	Low air pressure signal from APS
12D4 46 19	Pneumatic supply pressure	CAN message timeout from APS
2123 51 3	Engine throttle valve position	Throttle Position Sensor 1, short circuit to +24
2122 51 4	Engine throttle valve position	Throttle Position Sensor 1, short circuit to ground
2121 51 7	Engine throttle valve position	Throttle Position Sensor, not plausible
1091 51 8	Engine throttle valve position	Endpoints of throttle position sensor are out of range
2138 51 9	Engine throttle valve position	Throttle Position Sensor, correlation error
16C9 91 2	Accelerator pedal position	Auxiliary accelerator pedal is used due to other fault
16C8 91 9	Accelerator pedal position	Accelerator pedal faulty or error via can
D415 91 10	Accelerator pedal position	Accelerator pedal not plausible, faulty
D414 91 19	Accelerator pedal position	Accelerator pedal value out of range via CAN
1100 94 0	Engine fuel deliver pressure	Accumulator pressure is too high
250A 98 2	Engine oil level	Oil level sensor, faulty
250D 98 3	Engine oil level	Oil level sensor, short circuit to +24V
250C 98 4	Engine oil level	Oil level sensor, short circuit to ground
1715 98 10	Engine oil level	Oil level sensor stuck

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
0524 100 1	Engine oil pressure	Oil pressure sensor, pressure too low
0521 100 2	Engine oil pressure	Oil pressure sensor, faulty
0523 100 3	Engine oil pressure	Oil pressure sensor, short circuit to +24V
0522 100 4	Engine oil pressure	Oil pressure sensor, short circuit to ground
1522 100 13	Engine oil pressure	Oil pressure sensor, pressure not plausible
1520 100 16	Engine oil pressure	Oil pressure sensor, pressure above normal
134F 100 17	Engine oil pressure	Oil pressure sensor, pressure too low and engine protective action
1521 100 18	Engine oil pressure	Oil pressure sensor, pressure below normal
0234 102 0	Engine intake manifold pressure	Boost pressure higher than reference
0299 102 1	Engine intake manifold pressure	Boost pressure lower than reference
0108 102 3	Engine intake manifold pressure	Boost pressure sensor, short circuit to +24V
0107 102 4	Engine intake manifold pressure	Boost pressure sensor, short circuit to ground
2262 102 7	Engine intake manifold pressure	Boost pressure, too low
1081 102 8	Engine intake manifold pressure	Boost pressure sensor, faulty
107C 102 9	Engine intake manifold pressure	Boost pressure, not plausible
006C 102 10	Engine intake manifold pressure	Boost pressure sensor, faulty

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
006B 102 15	Engine intake manifold pressure	Boost pressure sensor and exhaust pressure sensor do not correlate
1234 102 16	Engine intake manifold pressure	Boost pressure above normal
1299 102 18	Engine intake manifold pressure	Boost pressure, lower than reference at part load
1066 102 20	Engine intake manifold pressure	Boost pressure, too high not plausible
1067 102 21	Engine intake manifold pressure	Boost pressure, too low not plausible
1683 103 0	Engine turbocharger speed	Turbine excessive overspeed
2579 103 2	Engine turbocharger speed	Turbine speed sensor, faulty
2581 103 3	Engine turbocharger speed	Turbine speed sensor, short circuit to +24V
2580 103 4	Engine turbocharger speed	Turbine speed sensor, short circuit to ground
2578 103 5	Engine turbocharger speed	Turbine speed sensor, open load
150B 103 9	Engine turbocharger speed	Turbine speed not plausible
1506 103 20	Engine turbocharger speed	Turbine speed sensor above model, not plausible
1504 103 21	Engine turbocharger speed	Turbine speed sensor below model, not plausible
16EA 105 0	Engine intake manifold temperature	Boost temp sensor excessive high
16EB 105 1	Engine intake manifold temperature	Boost temp sensor excessive low
0096 105 2	Engine intake manifold temperature	Boost temp sensor, faulty

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
0098 105 3	Engine intake manifold temperature	Boost temp sensor, short circuit to +24V
0097 105 4	Engine intake manifold temperature	Boost temp sensor, short circuit to ground
16EE 105 9	Engine intake manifold temperature	Boost temperature above ambient, not plausible
16F3 105 15	Engine intake manifold temperature	Boost temperature to high for longer period
16C3 105 16	Engine intake manifold temperature	Boost temperature above normal
16EF 105 17	Engine intake manifold temperature	Boost temperature below ambient, not plausible
16F0 105 20	Engine intake manifold temperature	Boost temperature to high, not plausible
16F1 105 21	Engine intake manifold temperature	Boost temperature to low, not plausible
1422 107 1	Engine air filter pressure	Air filter clogged
1423 107 2	Engine air filter pressure	Air filter control switch broken
2226 108 2	Barometric pressure	Ambient Pressure Sensor Error via CAN
16DB 108 3	Barometric pressure	Ambient Pressure Sensor, short circuit to +24V
16DA 108 4	Barometric pressure	Ambient Pressure Sensor, short circuit to ground
106C 108 15	Barometric pressure	Ambient Pressure Sensor and Exhaust Pressure Sensor do not correlate
006D 108 16	Barometric pressure	Ambient Pressure above normal
1064 108 20	Barometric pressure	Ambient Pressure too high, not plausible

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
1065 108 21	Barometric pressure	Ambient Pressure too low, not plausible
1133 110 0	Engine coolant temperature	Engine temperature, excessive high
1128 110 1	Engine coolant temperature	Engine temperature too low
1136 110 2	Engine coolant temperature	Engine temp sensor fault
0118 110 3	Engine coolant temperature	Engine temp sensor, short circuit to +24V
0117 110 4	Engine coolant temperature	Engine temp sensor, short circuit to ground
0115 110 8	Engine coolant temperature	Engine temp sensor, stuck
0116 110 9	Engine coolant temperature	Engine temp sensor, faulty
1135 110 10	Engine coolant temperature	Engine temperature is not plausible
1132 110 16	Engine coolant temperature	Engine temperature, too high
1130 110 17	Engine coolant temperature	Engine temp sensor, temp below normal or VGT-temp above normal
1131 110 18	Engine coolant temperature	Engine temp sensor, temp above normal or VGT-temp below normal
0217 110 20	Engine coolant temperature	Engine Coolant Water Temperature Too High
0128 110 21	Engine coolant temperature	Coolant Temperature Below Thermostat Regulating Temperature
2560 111 1	Engine coolant level	Coolant level too low
2556 111 3	Engine coolant level	Coolant level sensor, short circuit to +24

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
2558 111 4	Engine coolant level	Coolant level sensor, short circuit to ground
107D 131 2	Engine exhaust back pressure	Exhaust pressure sensor, not plausible
0473 131 3	Engine exhaust back pressure	Exhaust pressure sensor, short circuit to +24V
0472 131 4	Engine exhaust back pressure	Exhaust pressure sensor, short circuit to ground or open load
106B 131 7	Engine exhaust back pressure	Exhaust pressure sensor and boost pressure sensor do not correlate
1078 131 8	Engine exhaust back pressure	Exhaust pressure sensor, faulty
16CC 131 9	Engine exhaust back pressure	Exhaust pressure sensor, stuck
106D 131 10	Engine exhaust back pressure	Exhaust pressure sensor and ambient pressure sensor do not correlate
1414 131 15	Engine exhaust back pressure	Exhaust pressure, high exhaust pressure during normal fueling
1413 131 16	Engine exhaust back pressure	Exhaust pressure, high exhaust pressure during motoring, no fueling
1415 131 18	Engine exhaust back pressure	Exhaust pressure, low exhaust pressure during exhaust brake
1068 131 20	Engine exhaust back pressure	Exhaust pressure too high, not plausible
106A 131 21	Engine exhaust back pressure	Exhaust pressure too low, not plausible
0103 132 0	Engine intake air mass flow rate	Mass flow sensor, short circuit to +24V
0102 132 1	Engine intake air mass flow rate	Mass flow sensor, short circuit to ground or open load
0101 132 2	Engine intake air mass flow rate	Mass flow sensor, faulty

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.



Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
1187 132 3	Engine intake air mass flow rate	Mass flow sensor, supply
1189 132 4	Engine intake air mass flow rate	Mass flow sensor, adaptation under low threshold
1188 132 5	Engine intake air mass flow rate	Mass flow sensor, adaptation over high threshold
0100 132 7	Engine intake air mass flow rate	Mass flow sensor, stuck
0088 156 0	Engine injector timing rail pressure	Fuel rail pressure is excessively above command
0087 156 1	Engine injector timing rail pressure	Fuel rail pressure is excessively below command
0191 156 2	Engine injector timing rail pressure	Fuel rail pressure sensor, faulty
0193 156 3	Engine injector timing rail pressure	Fuel rail pressure sensor, short circuit to +24V or open load
0192 156 4	Engine injector timing rail pressure	Fuel rail pressure sensor, short circuit to ground
0190 156 8	Engine injector timing rail pressure	Fuel rail pressure sensor, stuck
1090 156 9	Engine injector timing rail pressure	Fuel rail pressure is lagging
1087 156 18	Engine injector timing rail pressure	Fuel rail pressure is too low during cranking
1060 167 2	Charging system potential	Alternator actuator, faulty
1063 167 3	Charging system potential	Alternator actuator, short circuit to +24V
1062 167 4	Charging system potential	Alternator actuator, short circuit to ground
1061 167 5	Charging system potential	Alternator actuator, open load

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
063A 167 9	Charging system potential	Alternator 1, signal not plausible
160B 167 10	Charging system potential	Alternator 2, signal not plausible
1565 168 0	Battery potential	Battery voltage above 47 V for 1 s
1564 168 1	Battery potential	Battery voltage below 9 V for 0.5 s
1507 168 4	Battery potential	Battery voltage 1 for engine control unit is low
1509 168 5	Battery potential	Battery voltage 2 for engine control unit is low
2064 168 15	Battery potential	Battery voltage too high for SCR main unit
0563 168 16	Battery potential	Battery voltage above 32 V
2063 168 17	Battery potential	Battery voltage too low for SCR main unit
0562 168 18	Battery potential	Battery voltage below 21 V
1074 171 0	Ambient air temperature	Ambient temperature sensors correlation error
1271 171 1	Ambient air temperature	Ambient temperature low or boost temperature high
11B0 171 2	Ambient air temperature	Ambient temperature sensor, faulty
1073 171 3	Ambient air temperature	Ambient temperature sensor error via CAN
1075 171 4	Ambient air temperature	Ambient temperature sensor error via CAN
1077 171 7	Ambient air temperature	Ambient temperature sensor stuck

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
D104 171 9	Ambient air temperature	CAN message AMBIENT CONDITION from coordinator timeout
1076 171 15	Ambient air temperature	Ambient temperature sensors correlation error
1270 171 16	Ambient air temperature	Ambient temperature high or boost temperature low
1071 171 17	Ambient air temperature	Ambient temperature sensors correlation error
1072 171 18	Ambient air temperature	Ambient temperature sensors correlation error
1070 171 19	Ambient air temperature	Ambient temperature sensor signal defect
0070 171 20	Ambient air temperature	Temperature sensor before compressor low or ambient temperature sensor high
0071 171 21	Ambient air temperature	Temperature sensor before compressor high or ambient temperature sensor low
0111 172 2	Engine air intake temperature	Air inlet temp sensor, faulty
0113 172 3	Engine air intake temperature	Air inlet temp sensor, short circuit to +24V
0112 172 4	Engine air intake temperature	Air inlet temp sensor, short circuit to ground
0114 172 7	Engine air intake temperature	Air inlet temp sensor, stuck
0198 175 3	Engine oil temperature	Oil temp sensor, short circuit to +24V
0197 175 4	Engine oil temperature	Oil temp sensor, short circuit to ground
0195 175 11	Engine oil temperature	Oil temp sensor, faulty
16C2 188 14	Engine speed at idle	Idle due to other fault

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
1205 190 0	Engine speed	Severe overspeed has occurred
1201 190 10	Engine speed	Overspeed protection, fast over speed
1321 190 15	Engine speed	Engine speed has been above the limit
1202 190 16	Engine speed	Overspeed protection, over speed
0219 190 20	Engine speed	Engine overspeed, value too high
C10F 234 2	Software identification	The EMS and EEC control units are incompatible
D10B 234 19	Software identification	Wrong CAN version transmitted by COO
16C1 532 14	Engine speed at high idle	Increased idle due to other fault
D109 558 2	Accelerator pedal - low idle switch	Low idle switch error state from coordinator
D107 559 2	Accelerator pedal kickdown switch	Kickdown signal defect via CAN
1550 559 9	Accelerator pedal kickdown switch	Accelerator pedal kickdown CAN message, faulty
D418 559 10	Accelerator pedal kickdown switch	Accelerator pedal/kick down switch, EMS and coordinator do not agree
D105 597 2	Brake switch	Brake pedal signal defect via CAN
D106 598 2	Clutch switch	Clutch pedal signal defect via CAN
0811 598 7	Clutch switch	Excessive clutch slip
D10D 598 19	Clutch switch	CAN-signal or engine shut-down command from OPC for automatic clutch failure, timeout

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
1214 636 1	Engine position sensor	Camshaft position sensor, faulty
0344 636 2	Engine position sensor	Camshaft position sensor, intermittent fault
0343 636 3	Engine position sensor	Camshaft position sensor, short circuit to +24V
0342 636 4	Engine position sensor	Camshaft position sensor, short circuit to ground
0340 636 5	Engine position sensor	Camshaft position sensor, open circuit
0016 636 7	Engine position sensor	Engine speed detected by flywheel sensor, but no signal from camshaft sensor
0341 636 8	Engine position sensor	Camshaft Pulse Pattern, Gap or Sync Error or other fault
16E7 641 2	Engine turbocharger actuator	VGT internal temperature sensor stuck
1686 641 4	Engine turbocharger actuator	VGT voltage supply open load
16B5 641 5	Engine turbocharger actuator	VGT internal temperature sensor open circuit
168B 641 7	Engine turbocharger actuator	VGT motion limited or restricted
168E 641 8	Engine turbocharger actuator	VGT reference or position not found
1134 641 9	Engine turbocharger actuator	VGT temperature sensor value not plausible
168C 641 10	Engine turbocharger actuator	VGT motion error, span too large
1689 641 11	Engine turbocharger actuator	VGT actuator faulty
1693 641 12	Engine turbocharger actuator	VGT internal fault

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
16DF 641 13	Engine turbocharger actuator	VGT actuator installation procedure was not completed
1685 641 15	Engine turbocharger actuator	VGT error
1684 641 16	Engine turbocharger actuator	VGT temperature too high
1690 641 19	Engine turbocharger actuator	VGT timeout on CAN
D101 645 19	Engine tachometer	CAN message TCO1 from tachograph timeout
11A1 651 1	Engine injector cylinder 1	Two or more injectors with the same trim code, injector cyl. 1
1178 651 2	Engine injector cylinder 1	Injector trim code, checksum error injector cyl. 1
0261 651 4	Engine injector cylinder 1	Injector 1 cable short circuit to ground
0201 651 5	Engine injector cylinder 1	Injector cyl. 1 cable/injector open load
115F 651 6	Engine injector cylinder 1	Injector cyl. 1 cable/injector short circuit
1150 651 7	Engine injector cylinder 1	Injection error, physical cylinder 1
118F 651 8	Engine injector cylinder 1	Injector cyl. 1, over or under fueling
12C0 651 10	Engine injector cylinder 1	Fault with sensors/actuators for the particulate filter
1199 651 13	Engine injector cylinder 1	Injector trim code version error, injector cyl. 1
11E0 651 15	Engine injector cylinder 1	Cylinder 1 torque error
11D0 651 16	Engine injector cylinder 1	Cylinder 1 injector fault, high torque

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
11D8 651 18	Engine injector cylinder 1	Cylinder 1 injector fault, low torque
0263 651 20	Engine injector cylinder 1	Cylinder 1 balancing min or max
11E8 651 21	Engine injector cylinder 1	Cylinder balancing, not plausible
11A2 652 1	Engine injector cylinder 2	Two or more injectors with the same trim code, injector cyl. 2
1179 652 2	Engine injector cylinder 2	Injector trim code, checksum error injector cyl. 2
0264 652 4	Engine injector cylinder 2	Injector 2 cable short circuit to ground
0202 652 5	Engine injector cylinder 2	Injector cyl. 2 cable/injector open load
1161 652 6	Engine injector cylinder 2	Injector cyl. 2 cable/injector short circuit
1151 652 7	Engine injector cylinder 2	Injection error, physical cylinder 2
1190 652 8	Engine injector cylinder 2	Injector cyl. 2, over or under fueling
12C1 652 10	Engine injector cylinder 2	Fault with sensors/actuators for the particulate filter
119A 652 13	Engine injector cylinder 2	Injector trim code version error, injector cyl. 2
11E1 652 15	Engine injector cylinder 2	Cylinder 2 torque error
11D1 652 16	Engine injector cylinder 2	Cylinder 2 injector fault, high torque
11D9 652 18	Engine injector cylinder 2	Cylinder 2 injector fault, low torque
0266 652 20	Engine injector cylinder 2	Cylinder 2 balancing min or max

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
11A3 653 1	Engine injector cylinder 3	Two or more injectors with the same trim code, injector cyl. 3
117A 653 2	Engine injector cylinder 3	Injector trim code, checksum error injector cyl. 3
0267 653 4	Engine injector cylinder 3	Injector 3 cable short circuit to ground
0203 653 5	Engine injector cylinder 3	Injector cyl. 3 cable/injector open load
1164 653 6	Engine injector cylinder 3	Injector cyl. 3 cable/injector short circuit
1152 653 7	Engine injector cylinder 3	Injection error, physical cylinder 3
1191 653 8	Engine injector cylinder 3	Injector cyl. 3, over or under fueling
12C2 653 10	Engine injector cylinder 3	Fault with sensors/actuators for the particulate filter
119B 653 13	Engine injector cylinder 3	Injector trim code version error, injector cyl. 3
11E2 653 15	Engine injector cylinder 3	Cylinder 3 torque error
11D2 653 16	Engine injector cylinder 3	Cylinder 3 injector fault, high torque
11DA 653 18	Engine injector cylinder 3	Cylinder 3 injector fault, low torque
0269 653 20	Engine injector cylinder 3	Cylinder 3 balancing min or max
11A4 654 1	Engine injector cylinder 4	Two or more injectors with the same trim code, injector cyl. 4
117B 654 2	Engine injector cylinder 4	Injector trim code, checksum error injector cyl. 4
0270 654 4	Engine injector cylinder 4	Injector 4 cable short circuit to ground

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.



Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
0204 654 5	Engine injector cylinder 4	Injector cyl. 4 cable/injector open load
1167 654 6	Engine injector cylinder 4	Injector cyl. 4 cable/injector short circuit
1153 654 7	Engine injector cylinder 4	Injection error, physical cylinder 4
1192 654 8	Engine injector cylinder 4	Injector cyl. 4, over or under fueling
12C3 654 10	Engine injector cylinder 4	Fault with sensors/actuators for the particulate filter
119C 654 13	Engine injector cylinder 4	Injector trim code version error, injector cyl. 4
11E3 654 15	Engine injector cylinder 4	Cylinder 4 torque error
11D3 654 16	Engine injector cylinder 4	Cylinder 4 injector fault, high torque
11DB 654 18	Engine injector cylinder 4	Cylinder 4 injector fault, low torque
0272 654 20	Engine injector cylinder 4	Cylinder 4 balancing min or max
11A5 655 1	Engine injector cylinder 5	Two or more injectors with the same trim code, injector cyl. 5
117C 655 2	Engine injector cylinder 5	Injector trim code, checksum error injector cyl. 5
0273 655 4	Engine injector cylinder 5	Injector 5 cable short circuit to ground
0205 655 5	Engine injector cylinder 5	Injector cyl. 5 cable/injector open load
116E 655 6	Engine injector cylinder 5	Injector cyl. 5 cable/injector short circuit
1154 655 7	Engine injector cylinder 5	Injection error, physical cylinder 5

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
1193 655 8	Engine injector cylinder 5	Injector cyl. 5, over or under fueling
12C4 655 10	Engine injector cylinder 5	Fault with sensors/actuators for the particulate filter
119D 655 13	Engine injector cylinder 5	Injector trim code version error, injector cyl. 5
11E4 655 15	Engine injector cylinder 5	Cylinder 5 torque error
11D4 655 16	Engine injector cylinder 5	Cylinder 5 injector fault, high torque
11DC 655 18	Engine injector cylinder 5	Cylinder 5 injector fault, low torque
0275 655 20	Engine injector cylinder 5	Cylinder 5 balancing min or max
11A6 656 1	Engine injector cylinder 6	Two or more injectors with the same trim code, injector cyl. 6
117D 656 2	Engine injector cylinder 6	Injector trim code, checksum error injector cyl. 6
0206 656 5	Engine injector cylinder 6	Injector cyl. 6 cable/injector open load
1171 656 6	Engine injector cylinder 6	Injector cyl. 6 cable/injector short circuit
1155 656 7	Engine injector cylinder 6	Injection error, physical cylinder 6
1194 656 8	Engine injector cylinder 6	Injector cyl. 6, over or under fueling
119E 656 13	Engine injector cylinder 6	Injector trim code version error, injector cyl. 6
11E5 656 15	Engine injector cylinder 6	Cylinder 6 torque error
11D5 656 16	Engine injector cylinder 6	Cylinder 6 injector fault, high torque

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
11DD 656 18	Engine injector cylinder 6	Cylinder 6 injector fault, low torque
0278 656 20	Engine injector cylinder 6	Cylinder 6 balancing min or max
11A7 657 1	Engine injector cylinder 7	Two or more injectors with the same trim code, injector cyl. 7
117E 657 2	Engine injector cylinder 7	Injector trim code, checksum error injector cyl. 7
0207 657 5	Engine injector cylinder 7	Injector cyl. 7 cable/injector open load
1174 657 6	Engine injector cylinder 7	Injector cyl. 7 cable/injector short circuit
1156 657 7	Engine injector cylinder 7	Injection error, physical cylinder 7
1195 657 8	Engine injector cylinder 7	Injector cyl. 7, over or under fueling
119F 657 13	Engine injector cylinder 7	Injector trim code version error, injector cyl. 7
11E6 657 15	Engine injector cylinder 7	Cylinder 7 torque error
11D6 657 16	Engine injector cylinder 7	Cylinder 7 injector fault, high torque
11DE 657 18	Engine injector cylinder 7	Cylinder 7 injector fault, low torque
0281 657 20	Engine injector cylinder 7	Cylinder 7 balancing min or max
11A8 658 1	Engine injector cylinder 8	Two or more injectors with the same trim code, injector cyl. 8
117F 658 2	Engine injector cylinder 8	Injector trim code, checksum error injector cyl. 8
0208 658 5	Engine injector cylinder 8	Injector cyl. 8 cable/injector open load

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
1177 658 6	Engine injector cylinder 8	Injector cyl. 8 cable/injector short circuit
1157 658 7	Engine injector cylinder 8	Injection error, physical cylinder 8
1196 658 8	Engine injector cylinder 8	Injector cyl. 8, over or under fueling
11A0 658 13	Engine injector cylinder 8	Injector trim code version error, injector cyl. 8
11E7 658 15	Engine injector cylinder 8	Cylinder 8 torque error
11D7 658 16	Engine injector cylinder 8	Cylinder 8 injector fault, high torque
11DF 658 18	Engine injector cylinder 8	Cylinder 8 injector fault, low torque
0284 658 20	Engine injector cylinder 8	Cylinder 8 balancing min or max
160D 677 0	Engine starter motor relay	Unintentional starter activation while moving or idling
160C 677 2	Engine starter motor relay	Starter actuator, faulty
1645 677 3	Engine starter motor relay	Starter actuator, short circuit to +24V
1646 677 4	Engine starter motor relay	Starter actuator, short circuit to ground
0512 677 5	Engine starter motor relay	Starter actuator, open load
1670 677 7	Engine starter motor relay	Starter actuator, blind start
D108 677 19	Engine starter motor relay	Starter motor demand defect via CAN
1319 723 2	Engine speed	Engine position sensor 2, faulty

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
1312 723 4	Engine speed	Engine position sensor 2, too weak signal
1212 723 7	Engine speed	Engine position sensor 2, faulty
1330 723 8	Engine speed	Engine position sensor 2, Gap Puls or Sync error
1318 723 9	Engine speed	Engine position sensor 2, Time out
1311 723 10	Engine speed	Engine position sensor 2, position diff
1317 723 14	Engine speed	Engine position sensor 2 error torque limit
16C6 974 0	Remote accelerator pedal position	Signal level from redundant gas pedal above high limit
16C5 974 1	Remote accelerator pedal position	Signal level from redundant gas pedal below low limit
1602 986 2	Requested % fan speed	Fan actuator, faulty
0692 986 3	Requested % fan speed	Fan actuator, short circuit to +24V
0691 986 4	Requested % fan speed	Fan actuator, short circuit high to ground
0480 986 5	Requested % fan speed	Fan actuator, open load
1603 986 7	Requested % fan speed	Fan coupling unit, bad performance
12D3 1086 2	Parking and/or trailer pressure	Electrical fault on the parking brake pressure sensor
16C0 1108 14	Engine protection system timer override	Overridden due to other fault
16BF 1110 14	Engine protection system has shutdown engine	Engine Stop due to other fault

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
0094 1239 7	Engine fuel leakage	Fuel Rail pressure, small volume leak
0300 1322 7	Engine misfire for multiple cylinders	Random/Multiple Cylinder Misfire Detected
0301 1323 7	Engine misfire cylinder 1	Cylinder 1 Misfire Detected
0302 1324 7	Engine misfire cylinder 2	Cylinder 2 Misfire Detected
0303 1325 7	Engine misfire cylinder 3	Cylinder 3 Misfire Detected
0304 1326 7	Engine misfire cylinder 4	Cylinder 4 Misfire Detected
0305 1327 7	Engine misfire cylinder 5	Cylinder 5 Misfire Detected
1183 1442 2	Engine fuel valve position	Inlet metering valve 1, faulty
1184 1442 3	Engine fuel valve position	Inlet metering valve 1, short circuit to +24V
1182 1442 5	Engine fuel valve position	Inlet metering valve 1, short circuit to ground
11B8 1442 7	Engine fuel valve position	Inlet metering valve 1, stuck
11B1 1442 8	Engine fuel valve position	Inlet metering valve 1, plausible leakage
118E 1442 10	Engine fuel valve position	Inlet metering valve 1, calculated resistance error
1080 1443 1	Engine fuel valve position	Mechanical dump valve, opened
118B 1443 6	Engine fuel valve position	Mechanical dump valve, tripped
1605 1483 2	Source address of engine control device	EMS internal error

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
1606 1483 2	Source address of engine control device	EMS Memory Error
1610 1483 2	Source address of engine control device	EMS Memory Error
1607 1483 8	Source address of engine control device	EMS Memory or TPU Error
160F 1483 8	Source address of engine control device	EMS memory or TPU error
16D7 1483 9	Source address of engine control device	Camshaft TPU Supervision Error
160A 1483 11	Source address of engine control device	Software Watchdog Reset
1604 1483 12	Source address of engine control device	Hardware watchdog error
D100 1484 9	Other control are reporting faults affecting the engine	CAN message DLN1 from coordinator timeout
D102 1484 10	Other control are reporting faults affecting the engine	CAN message CRUISE CONTROL/ VEHICLE SPEED from coordinator timeout
D113 1484 16	Other control are reporting faults affecting the engine	CAN message from EMSX, invalid data
D112 1484 18	Other control are reporting faults affecting the engine	CAN message from EMSX, invalid data
D103 1484 19	Other control are reporting faults affecting the engine	CAN message DLN6 from coordinator timeout
D111 1484 20	Other control are reporting faults affecting the engine	CAN message timeout from EMSX
D110 1484 21	Other control are reporting faults affecting the engine	CAN message timeout from EMSX
20EA 1485 16	ECM main relay	SCR main unit, power switched off too early
20EB 1485 18	ECM main relay	SCR main unit, power switched off too late

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
16BE 1569 14	Engine protection torque derate	Torque reduction due to other fault
16F9 1639 3	Fan speed	Fan speed sensor, short circuit to +24V
0526 1639 4	Fan speed	Fan speed sensor supply too low
0528 1639 8	Fan speed	Fan speed sensor circuit no signal
D10F 1675 2	Engine starter mode	Immobiliser - EMS and EMSX
C426 1675 9	Engine starter mode	Invalid Data Received From Vehicle Control Module
D10A 1675 12	Engine starter mode	Immobiliser error
C326 1675 13	Engine starter mode	Software Incompatibility With Vehicle Immobilizer Control Module
C167 1675 19	Engine starter mode	Lost Communication With Vehicle Immobilizer Control Module
1704 1761 1	After treatment diesel exhaust fluid level	Reductant tank, empty
203C 1761 2	After treatment diesel exhaust fluid level	Reductant tank level sensor, short circuit to ground
203A 1761 3	After treatment diesel exhaust fluid level	Reductant tank level sensor, short circuit to +24V
203D 1761 5	After treatment diesel exhaust fluid level	Reductant tank level sensor, open circuit
203F 1761 18	After treatment diesel exhaust fluid level	Reductant tank, low level
1600 2609 2	Cab A/C outlet pressure	AC compressor actuator, faulty
2521 2609 3	Cab A/C outlet pressure	AC compressor actuator, short circuit to +24V

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.



Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
2520 2609 4	Cab A/C outlet pressure	AC compressor actuator, short circuit to ground
2519 2609 5	Cab A/C outlet pressure	AC compressor actuator, open load
042F 2791 2	Engine EGR valve control	EGR actuator, control error
0490 2791 3	Engine EGR valve control	EGR actuator, short circuit to +24V
0489 2791 4	Engine EGR valve control	EGR actuator, short circuit to ground
1400 2791 5	Engine EGR valve control	EGR actuator, stuck open
0488 2791 7	Engine EGR valve control	EGR actuator, stuck close
1424 2791 8	Engine EGR valve control	The EGR valve is responding too slow
2BAB 2791 10	Engine EGR valve control	NOx Exceedence - Incorrect EGR Flow
0400 2791 11	Engine EGR valve control	EGR system faulty
2BAC 2791 16	Engine EGR valve control	NOx Exceedence - Deactivation of EGR
0402 2791 20	Engine EGR valve control	EGR higher than desired
0401 2791 21	Engine EGR valve control	EGR lower than desired
115D 2797 2	Engine injector group 1	Injector group A, short circuit to other bank
115C 2797 3	Engine injector group 1	Injector group A, short circuit to +24V
115B 2797 4	Engine injector group 1	Injector group A, short circuit to ground

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
1692 2797 5	Engine injector group 1	Injector drive voltage, faulty
115A 2797 8	Engine injector group 1	Injector group A, injection error
116D 2798 2	Engine injector group 2	Injector group B, short circuit to other bank
116C 2798 3	Engine injector group 2	Injector group B, short circuit +24V
116B 2798 4	Engine injector group 2	Injector group B, short circuit ground
116A 2798 8	Engine injector group 2	Injection error, group B
1608 2858 13	Machine data config. 1	EMS, Default EOL Data in E2
1609 2859 13	Machine data config. 2	EMS, Default Barcoding Data in E2
1697 2860 13	Machine data config. 3	EMS internal software error
1613 2861 13	Machine data config. 4	EMS Configuration for Automatic Clutch Faulty
9999 2862 13	Machine data config. 5	Internal software error
1038 3031 0	After treatment diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature	SCR main unit, high temperature low limit exceedence
2215 3216 4	After treatment - intake Nox	NOx sensor upstream, internal fault or open circuit
2213 3216 5	After treatment - intake Nox	NOx sensor upstream, open circuit
2214 3216 7	After treatment - intake Nox	NOx sensor upstream, internal fault
100B 3216 8	After treatment - intake Nox	NOx sensor upstream of catalytic converter

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
100E 3216 9	After treatment - intake Nox	NOx sensor upstream of catalytic converter
16CF 3216 10	After treatment - intake Nox	NOx sensor upstream, stuck
16F4 3216 17	After treatment - intake Nox	NOx sensor upstream, low signal
16D8 3216 18	After treatment - intake Nox	NOx sensor upstream, too low value
12CA 3216 19	After treatment - intake Nox	NOx sensor upstream error via CAN
16FA 3216 20	After treatment - intake Nox	NOx sensor upstream, not plausible
2202 3226 4	After treatment - outlet Nox	NOx sensor downstream, internal fault or open circuit
2200 3226 5	After treatment - outlet Nox	NOx sensor downstream, open circuit
2201 3226 7	After treatment - outlet Nox	NOx sensor downstream, internal fault
12C9 3226 8	After treatment - outlet Nox	NOx sensor downstream error via CAN
100F 3226 9	After treatment - outlet Nox	NOx sensor downstream of the SCR catalytic converter
16CE 3226 10	After treatment - outlet Nox	NOx sensor downstream, stuck
16F2 3226 17	After treatment - outlet Nox	NOx sensor downstream, low signal
16D9 3226 18	After treatment - outlet Nox	NOx sensor downstream, too low value
100A 3226 19	After treatment - outlet Nox	NOx sensor downstream of the catalytic converter
16FB 3226 20	After treatment - outlet Nox	NOx sensor downstream, not plausible

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
0426 3241 2	After treatment - exhaust gas temperature	Upstream catalyst temperature sensor not plausible.
104D 3241 3	After treatment - exhaust gas temperature	Upstream catalyst temperature sensor not plausible, too high
0427 3241 4	After treatment - exhaust gas temperature	Upstream catalyst temperature sensor not plausible, short circuit
0425 3241 5	After treatment - exhaust gas temperature	Upstream catalyst temperature sensor not plausible, open circuit
104F 3241 8	After treatment - exhaust gas temperature	Upstream catalyst temperature sensor not plausible, too high
16CD 3241 10	After treatment - exhaust gas temperature	Upstream catalyst temperature sensor not plausible.
20ED 3241 16	After treatment - exhaust gas temperature	Upstream catalyst temperature too high
104E 3241 18	After treatment - exhaust gas temperature	Upstream catalyst temperature sensor not plausible, too low
16FF 3241 19	After treatment - exhaust gas temperature	CAN Error from Exhaust Temperature Sensors
1803 3242 0	After treatment - DPF intake gas temp.	Upstream DPF temperature sensor, too high
16FC 3242 7	After treatment - DPF intake gas temp.	Upstream DPF temperature sensor, not plausible
2080 3242 9	After treatment - DPF intake gas temp.	Upstream DPF temperature sensor, not plausible
200F 3242 10	After treatment - DPF intake gas temp.	Upstream DPF temperature too high during normal condition
200E 3242 16	After treatment - DPF intake gas temp.	Upstream DPF temperature too high during regeneration
12CF 3245 19	After treatment - exhaust gas temperature	Auxiliary Temperature Sensor Error on CAN
12CB 3246 2	After treatment - DPF outlet gas temp.	Downstream DPF temperature sensor error

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
042C 3246 3	After treatment - DPF outlet gas temp.	Exhaust temperature sensor after SCR catalytic converter, short circuit
042D 3246 4	After treatment - DPF outlet gas temp.	Exhaust temperature sensor after SCR catalytic converter, open circuit
242B 3246 9	After treatment - DPF outlet gas temp.	Downstream exhaust temperature sensor, not plausible
200D 3246 15	After treatment - DPF outlet gas temp.	Downstream DPF temperature too high during normal condition
200C 3246 16	After treatment - DPF outlet gas temp.	Downstream DPF temperature too high during regeneration
16E3 3251 2	After treatment - DPF differential pressure	Particulate filter is missing
16D6 3251 7	After treatment - DPF differential pressure	Differential pressure sensor over particulate filter, faulty
16E4 3251 7	After treatment - DPF differential pressure	Particulate filter is damaged or cracked
12D2 3251 8	After treatment - DPF differential pressure	Differential pressure sensor not plausible
16D5 3251 9	After treatment - DPF differential pressure	Differential pressure sensor over particulate filter, not plausible
16ED 3340 1	Engine CAC intake pressure	Intercooler temperature, too low
1111 3340 3	Engine CAC intake pressure	Intercooler pressure sensor, short circuit to ground
1112 3340 4	Engine CAC intake pressure	Intercooler pressure sensor, short circuit to +24V
1079 3340 7	Engine CAC intake pressure	Intercooler pressure sensor, stuck
107E 3340 9	Engine CAC intake pressure	Intercooler pressure sensor, not plausible
107F 3340 10	Engine CAC intake pressure	Intercooler pressure sensor, not plausible

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
106F 3340 15	Engine CAC intake pressure	Intercooler pressure, above normal
106E 3340 16	Engine CAC intake pressure	Intercooler pressure, above normal
107A 3340 20	Engine CAC intake pressure	Intercooler pressure too high
107B 3340 21	Engine CAC intake pressure	Intercooler pressure too low
16DD 3360 0	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid controller	SCR system adaptation have reached max values
16DE 3360 1	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid controller	SCR system adaptation have reached min values
12C7 3360 2	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid controller	EEC3 System has demanded "SCR Hazardous major functional failure" actions
20A3 3360 3	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid controller	SCR main unit, ventilation valve test, short to battery
1033 3360 4	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid controller	SCR main unit, internal supply voltage low
20A0 3360 5	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid controller	SCR main unit, ventilation valve test, open load
1047 3360 6	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid controller	SCR main unit, system voltage error
1022 3360 7	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid controller	SCR main unit, ignition switch plausible error
12C6 3360 9	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid controller	EEC3 has demanded "SCR Major functional failure reductant dosing stopped" actions
12C8 3360 10	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid controller	EEC3 System has demanded "SCR minor functional failure" actions
16AA 3360 12	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid controller	SCR main unit, error
1032 3360 16	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid controller	SCR main unit, internal supply voltage high

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
100C 3360 19	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid controller	SCR main unit, communication error
2049 3361 3	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit	SCR reductant dosing valve, short circuit to battery
2047 3361 5	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit	SCR reductant dosing valve, open circuit
208E 3361 10	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit	SCR main unit, reductant pressure not plausible
202D 3362 2	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit input lines	SCR reductant pressure, error
20C0 3363 0	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid tank heater	SCR main unit, reductant heater, circuit high
20BD 3363 2	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid tank heater	SCR main unit, reductant heater, open load
20C4 3363 3	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid tank heater	SCR main unit, internal heating pump, short circuit to battery
2044 3363 4	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid tank heater	SCR main unit, reductant temperature sensor circuit low
20C1 3363 5	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid tank heater	SCR main unit, internal heating pump, open load
20BE 3363 8	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid tank heater	SCR main unit, reductant heater, circuit performance
1054 3363 15	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid tank heater	SCR reagent tank temperature too high
101A 3363 16	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid tank heater	SCR main unit, high temperature high limit exceeded
209F 3363 17	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid tank heater	SCR reductant tank temperature too low
2045 3363 18	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid tank heater	SCR main unit, low temperature limit exceeded
0638 3464 2	Engine throttle actuator control command	Throttle, control error

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
2103 3464 3	Engine throttle actuator control command	Throttle Actuator, short circuit to +24V
2102 3464 4	Engine throttle actuator control command	Throttle Actuator, short circuit
2101 3464 5	Engine throttle actuator control command	Throttle Actuator, slow response
2106 3464 6	Engine throttle actuator control command	Throttle Actuator Control System - Forced Limited Power
2111 3464 7	Engine throttle actuator control command	Throttle, stuck in open position
2112 3464 8	Engine throttle actuator control command	Throttle, stuck in closed position
20CA 3485 1	After treatment - supply air pressure	SCR main unit, air pressure too low
209A 3485 2	After treatment - supply air pressure	SCR main unit, air pressure sensor after orifice circuit supply
209D 3485 3	After treatment - supply air pressure	SCR main unit, air pressure sensor after orifice circuit high
209C 3485 4	After treatment - supply air pressure	SCR main unit, air pressure sensor after orifice circuit low
1014 3485 7	After treatment - supply air pressure	SCR, air circuit blocked
209B 3485 9	After treatment - supply air pressure	SCR main unit, air pressure sensor after orifice performance
1045 3485 18	After treatment - supply air pressure	EEC, air supply low
209E 3485 20	After treatment - supply air pressure	SCR main unit, air pressure sensor after orifice plausible error
1082 3563 11	Engine intake manifold pressure	Boost pressure sensor and ambient pressure sensor do not correlate
1069 3563 15	Engine intake manifold pressure	Boost pressure sensor and ambient pressure sensor do not correlate

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.



Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
0069 3563 17	Engine intake manifold pressure	Boost pressure sensor and ambient pressure sensor do not correlate
F001 3607 2	Engine emergency shutdown	Incorrect EMS shutdown
2128 3673 3	Engine throttle valve position	Throttle Position Sensor 2, short circuit to +24V
2127 3673 4	Engine throttle valve position	Throttle Position Sensor 2, short circuit to ground
0406 3822 3	Engine EGR valve position	EGR position sensor, short circuit to +24V
0405 3822 4	Engine EGR valve position	EGR position sensor, short circuit to ground
1405 3822 7	Engine EGR valve position	EGR SRA reports a warning during Learn Stops.
049D 3822 8	Engine EGR valve position	EGR position sensor, outside the permitted range
1404 3822 12	Engine EGR valve position	EGR SRA reports it has a continuous fault.
1705 3822 13	Engine EGR valve position	EGR position sensor, not plausible
1406 3822 16	Engine EGR valve position	EGR SRA reports a running conditions warning for high temp or low voltage.
1402 3822 19	Engine EGR valve position	EGR CAN timeout
1813 3822 20	Engine EGR valve position	EGR position sensor, voltage shows large variation in open position
1814 3822 21	Engine EGR valve position	EGR position sensor, voltage shows large variation in closed position
244B 3936 2	After treatment - DPF filter	Particulate filter, clogged
242F 3936 6	After treatment - DPF filter	Particulate filter, ash level too high

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
1802 3936 10	After treatment - DPF filter	Exhaust temperature sensors, not plausible
1049 4090 0	Nox limit exceeded	NOx level after catalytic converter too high
2BAD 4090 11	Nox limit exceeded	NOx Exceedence - Root Cause Unknown
20EE 4090 16	Nox limit exceeded	SCR main unit, NOx level too high
2BA8 4095 2	Nox limit exceeded	NOx Exceedence - Interruption of Reagent Dosing Activity
2BA7 4096 2	Nox limit exceeded	NOx Exceedence - Empty Reagent Tank
1309 4201 2	Engine speed	Engine position sensor 1, faulty
1302 4201 4	Engine speed	Engine position sensor 1, too weak signal
1213 4201 7	Engine speed	Engine position sensor 1, faulty
1303 4201 8	Engine speed	Engine position sensor 1, Gap Puls or Sync error
1308 4201 9	Engine speed	Engine position sensor 1, time out
1301 4201 10	Engine speed	Engine position sensor 1, position diff
0726 4202 2	Engine speed	Engine speed sensor faulty
2BAE 4225 2	Nox limit exceeded	Failure in the NOx control monitoring system
1040 4334 0	After treatment Diesel exhaust fluid pressure	SCR reductant pressure error
12C5 4334 1	After treatment Diesel exhaust fluid pressure	EEC3 has demanded "SCR Hazardous functional failure reductant dosing stopped" actions

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
103D 4334 2	After treatment Diesel exhaust fluid pressure	Urea pressure sensor, plausible error during start-up
204D 4334 3	After treatment Diesel exhaust fluid pressure	Urea pressure sensor, SCR high
204C 4334 4	After treatment Diesel exhaust fluid pressure	Urea pressure sensor, SCR low
204B 4334 8	After treatment Diesel exhaust fluid pressure	Urea pressure sensor, pressure too high not plausible
1031 4374 0	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid pump	Reductant pump fault, pump speed too high
1030 4374 1	After treatment - Diesel exhaust fluid pump	Reductant pump fault, pump speed too low
16AC 4782 0	DPF soot density	Particulate filter is clogged, hazardous
16AB 4782 16	DPF soot density	Particulate filter is clogged, major
12CC 4809 2	After treatment - DOC intake temp.	Upstream exhaust temperature sensor error
16E0 4809 7	After treatment - DOC intake temp.	Upstream exhaust temperature sensor, stuck
12CE 4809 8	After treatment - DOC intake temp.	Upstream exhaust temperature sensor error
16FD 4809 9	After treatment - DOC intake temp.	Upstream exhaust temperature sensor, not plausible
1700 4809 16	After treatment - DOC intake temp.	Upstream exhaust temperature sensor, above limit
1701 4809 18	After treatment - DOC intake temp.	Upstream exhaust temperature sensor, below limit
16B1 4810 9	After treatment - DOC outlet temp	Particulate filter, temperature drop not plausible
2423 4810 18	After treatment - DOC outlet temp	Upstream exhaust temperature too low during regeneration

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
2601 4814 2	Engine coolant pump	Coolant water pump actuator, faulty
2603 4814 3	Engine coolant pump	Coolant water pump actuator, short circuit on high side
2602 4814 4	Engine coolant pump	Coolant water pump actuator, short circuit on low side
1811 4814 7	Engine coolant pump	Coolant pump speed sensor, stuck
00B7 4814 8	Engine coolant pump	Electrically controlled coolant pump
1810 4814 10	Engine coolant pump	Coolant pump speed sensor, no signal
16EC 5285 1	Engine CAC efficiency	Boost temperature to high, not plausible
245B 5401 2	Engine Turbocharger Turbine Bypass Actuator	EGR bypass actuator, faulty
245D 5401 3	Engine Turbocharger Turbine Bypass Actuator	EGR bypass actuator, short circuit high to +24V
245C 5401 4	Engine Turbocharger Turbine Bypass Actuator	EGR bypass actuator, short circuit high to ground
245A 5401 5	Engine Turbocharger Turbine Bypass Actuator	EGR bypass actuator, open load
1717 5419 2	Engine Throttle Actuator	Throttle M42, CAN interface fault
1707 5419 3	Engine Throttle Actuator	Throttle M42, supply voltage fault
1716 5419 5	Engine Throttle Actuator	Throttle M42, current limited
170A 5419 6	Engine Throttle Actuator	Throttle M42, overload
1708 5419 9	Engine Throttle Actuator	Throttle M42 has detected a CAN timeout

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
170B 5419 10	Engine Throttle Actuator	Throttle M42, control error
1710 5419 11	Engine Throttle Actuator	Throttle M42, internal fault
1711 5419 12	Engine Throttle Actuator	Throttle M42, software execution error
170D 5419 13	Engine Throttle Actuator	Throttle M42, unsuccessful learning of the reference position
1709 5419 14	Engine Throttle Actuator	Throttle M42 has detected a CAN timeout
1706 5419 16	Engine Throttle Actuator	Throttle M42, too high temperature
1714 5419 19	Engine Throttle Actuator	Throttle M42, CAN timeout
170F 5419 31	Engine Throttle Actuator	Throttle M42, service mode enabled
1426 5421 3	Engine Turbocharger Wastegate Actuator	Wastegate actuator, short circuit to +24V
0249 5421 4	Engine Turbocharger Wastegate Actuator	Wastegate actuator, short circuit
1425 5421 5	Engine Turbocharger Wastegate Actuator	Wastegate actuator, short circuit to ground
0247 5421 6	Engine Turbocharger Wastegate Actuator	Wastegate actuator, short circuit
1407 5543 2	Engine Exhaust Brake Actuator Command	Exhaust brake actuator, control fault
0478 5543 3	Engine Exhaust Brake Actuator Command	Exhaust brake actuator, short circuit to +24V
0477 5543 4	Engine Exhaust Brake Actuator Command	Exhaust brake actuator, short circuit to ground
1427 5543 5	Engine Exhaust Brake Actuator Command	Exhaust brake actuator, stuck in open position

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Name	Description
0475 5543 6	Engine Exhaust Brake Actuator Command	Exhaust brake actuator, faulty
1411 5543 7	Engine Exhaust Brake Actuator Command	Exhaust brake actuator, stuck in closed position
1428 5543 12	Engine Exhaust Brake Actuator Command	Exhaust brake actuator, control fault
1408 5543 13	Engine Exhaust Brake Actuator Command	Exhaust brake actuator, fault with stop position
1409 5543 16	Engine Exhaust Brake Actuator Command	Exhaust brake actuator, over temperature
1403 5543 19	Engine Exhaust Brake Actuator Command	Exhaust brake actuator, CAN timeout
0476 5543 21	Engine Exhaust Brake Actuator Command	Exhaust brake actuator, error
205B 5743 2	Aftertreatment SCR Temperature	Reductant tank temperature sensor, not plausible
205C 5743 4	Aftertreatment SCR Temperature	Reductant tank temperature sensor, short circuit
205A 5743 5	Aftertreatment SCR Temperature	Reductant tank temperature sensor, open load
202C 5745 3	Aftertreatment Diesel Exhaust Fluid Dosing Unit Heater	SCR water valve, short circuit to battery
202A 5745 5	Aftertreatment Diesel Exhaust Fluid Dosing Unit Heater	SCR water valve, open load
207F 5841 1	Diesel Exhaust Fluid Quality Malfunction	SCR main unit, reductant quality too low

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

### 3) DEFINITION OF OPERATING MODES

#### (1) Normal

There's no failure detected in the transmission system or the failure has no or slight effects on transmission control. TCU will work without or in special cases with little limitations. (See following table)

#### (2) Substitute clutch control

TCU can't change the gears or the direction under the control of the normal clutch modulation. TCU uses the substitute strategy for clutch control. All modulations are only time controlled. (Comparable with EST 25)

#### (3) Limp-home

The detected failure in the system has strong limitations to transmission control. TCU can engage only one gear in each direction. In some cases only one direction will be possible. TCU will shift the transmission into neutral at the first occurrence of the failure. First, the operator must shift the gear selector into neutral position.

If output speed is less than a threshold for neutral to gear and the operator shifts the gear selector into forward or reverse, the TCU will select the limp-home gear.

If output speed is less than a threshold for reversal speed and TCU has changed into the limp-home gear and the operator selects a shuttle shift, TCU will shift immediately into the limp-home gear of the selected direction.

If output speed is greater than the threshold, TCU will shift the transmission into neutral. The operator has to slow down the vehicle and must shift the gear selector into neutral position.

#### (4) Transmission-shutdown

TCU has detected a severe failure that disables control of the transmission.

TCU will shut off the solenoid valves for the clutches and also the common power supply (VPS1).

Transmission shifts to neutral. The park brake will operate normally, also the other functions which use ADM1 to ADM8.

The operator has to slow down the vehicle. The transmission will stay in neutral.

#### (5) TCU-shutdown

TCU has detected a severe failure that disables control of system.

TCU will shut off all solenoid valves and also both common power supplies (VPS1, VPS2). The park brake will engage, also functions are disabled which use ADM 1 to ADM 8.

The transmission will stay in neutral.

#### ※ Abbreviations

OC : Open circuit

SC : Short circuit

OP mode : Operating mode

TCU : Transmission control unit

EEC : Electronic engine controller

PTO : Power take off

#### 4) TRANSMISSION FAULT CODES

Fault code (Hex)	Meaning of the fault code possible reason for fault detection	Reaction of the TCU	Possible steps to repair
10	Logical error at direction select signal 3rd shift lever TCU detected a wrong signal combination for the direction <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable from shift lever 3 to TCU is broken</li> <li>· Cable is defective and is contacted to battery voltage or vehicle ground</li> <li>· Shift lever is defective</li> </ul>	TCU shifts transmission to neutral if selector active OP mode : Transmission shutdown if selector active	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cables from TCU to shift lever 3</li> <li>· Check signal combinations of shift lever positions F-N-R</li> <li>· If shift lever is a CAN shift lever check CAN cable/shifter/device</li> </ul> <p>※ Fault is cleared if TCU detects a valid neutral signal for the direction at the shift lever</p>
11	Logical error at gear range signal TCU detected a wrong signal combination for the gear range <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable from shift lever to TCU is broken</li> <li>· Cable is defective and is contacted to battery voltage or vehicle ground</li> <li>· Shift lever is defective</li> </ul>	TCU shifts transmission to neutral OP mode : Transmission shutdown	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cables from TCU to shift lever</li> <li>· Check signal combinations of shift lever positions for gear range</li> </ul> <p>※ Failure cannot be detected in systems with DW2/DW3 shift lever. Fault is taken back if TCU detects a valid signal for the position</p>
12	Logical error at direction select signal TCU detected a wrong signal combination for the direction <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable from shift lever to TCU is broken</li> <li>· Cable is defective and is contacted to battery voltage or vehicle ground</li> <li>· Shift lever is defective</li> </ul>	TCU shifts transmission to neutral OP mode : Transmission shutdown	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cables from TCU to shift lever</li> <li>· Check signal combinations of shift lever positions F-N-R</li> </ul> <p>※ Fault is taken back if TCU detects a valid signal for the direction at the shift lever</p>
13	Logical error at engine derating device TCU detected no reaction of engine while derating device active	After selecting neutral, TCU change to OP mode limp home	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check engine derating device</li> </ul> <p>※ This fault is reset after power up of TCU</p>
15	Logical error at direction select signal 2 shift lever TCU detected a wrong signal combination for the direction <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable from shift lever 2 to TCU is broken</li> <li>· Cable is defective and is contacted to battery voltage or vehicle ground</li> <li>· Shift lever is defective</li> </ul>	TCU shifts transmission to neutral if selector active OP mode : Transmission shutdown if selector active	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cables from TCU to shift lever 2</li> <li>· Check signal combinations of shift lever positions F-N-R</li> </ul> <p>※ Fault is taken back if TCU detects a valid neutral signal for the direction at the shift lever</p>
17	S.C. to ground at customer specific function No. 1 (ride control) TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin, that looks like a S.C. to vehicle ground <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable is defective and is contacted to vehicle ground</li> <li>· Customer specific function No. 1 device has an internal defect</li> <li>· Connector pin is contacted to vehicle ground</li> </ul>	Customer specific	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cable from TCU to customer specific function No. 1 device</li> <li>· Check the connectors from customer specific function No. 1 to TCU</li> <li>· Check the resistance of customer specific function No. 1 device</li> </ul>

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.



Fault code (Hex)	Meaning of the fault code possible reason for fault detection	Reaction of the TCU	Possible steps to repair
18	S.C. to battery voltage at customer specific function No. 1 (ride control) TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin, that looks like a S.C. to battery voltage <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable is defective and is contacted to battery voltage</li> <li>· Customer specific function No. 1 device has an internal defect</li> <li>· Connector pin is contacted to battery voltage</li> </ul>	Customer specific	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cable from TCU to customer specific function No. 1 device</li> <li>· Check the connectors from customer specific function No. 1 to TCU</li> <li>· Check the resistance of customer specific function No. 1 device</li> </ul>
19	O.C. at customer specific function No. 1 (ride control) TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin, that looks like a O.C. for this output pin <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable is defective and has no connection to TCU</li> <li>· Customer specific function No. 1 device has an internal defect</li> <li>· Connector has no connection to TCU</li> </ul>	Customer specific	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cable from TCU to customer specific function No. 1 device</li> <li>· Check the connectors from customer specific function No. 1 device to TCU</li> <li>· Check the resistance of customer specific function No. 1 device</li> </ul>
21	S.C. to battery voltage at clutch cut off input The measured voltage is too high: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable is defective and is contacted to battery voltage</li> <li>· Clutch cut off sensor has an internal defect</li> <li>· Connector pin is contacted to battery voltage</li> </ul>	Clutch cut off function is disabled OP mode : Normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cable from TCU to the sensor</li> <li>· Check the connectors</li> <li>· Check the clutch cut off sensor</li> </ul>
22	S.C. to ground or O.C. at clutch cut off input The measured voltage is too low: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable is defective and is contacted to vehicle ground</li> <li>· Cable has no connection to TCU</li> <li>· Clutch cut off sensor has an internal defect</li> <li>· Connector pin is contacted to vehicle ground or is broken</li> </ul>	Clutch cut off function is disabled OP mode : Normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cable from TCU to the sensor</li> <li>· Check the connectors</li> <li>· Check the clutch cut off sensor</li> </ul>
25	S.C. to battery voltage or O.C. at transmission sump temperature sensor input The measured voltage is too high: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable is defective and is contacted to battery voltage</li> <li>· Cable has no connection to TCU</li> <li>· Temperature sensor has an internal defect</li> <li>· Connector pin is contacted to battery voltage or is broken</li> </ul>	No reaction, TCU use default temperature OP mode : Normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cable from TCU to the sensor</li> <li>· Check the connectors</li> <li>· Check the temperature sensor</li> </ul>

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code (Hex)	Meaning of the fault code possible reason for fault detection	Reaction of the TCU	Possible steps to repair
26	S.C. to battery voltage or O.C. at transmission sump temperature sensor input The measured voltage is too low: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable is defective and is contacted to vehicle ground</li> <li>· Temperature sensor has an internal defect</li> <li>· Connector pin is contacted to vehicle ground</li> </ul>	No reaction, TCU uses default temperature OP mode : Normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cable from TCU to the sensor</li> <li>· Check the connectors</li> <li>· Check the temperature sensor</li> </ul>
27	S.C. to battery voltage or O.C. at retarder temperature sensor input The measured voltage is too high: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable is defective and is contacted to battery voltage</li> <li>· Cable has no connection to TCU</li> <li>· Temperature sensor has an internal defect</li> <li>· Connector pin is contacted to battery voltage or is broken</li> </ul>	No reaction, TCU uses default temperature OP mode : Normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cable from TCU to the sensor</li> <li>· Check the connectors</li> <li>· Check the temperature sensor</li> </ul>
28	S.C. to ground at retarder temperature sensor input The measured voltage is too low: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable is defective and is contacted to vehicle ground</li> <li>· Temperature sensor has an internal defect</li> <li>· Connector pin is contacted to vehicle ground</li> </ul>	No reaction, TCU uses default temperature OP mode : Normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cable from TCU to the sensor</li> <li>· Check the connectors</li> <li>· Check the temperature sensor</li> </ul>
31	S.C. to battery voltage or O.C. at engine speed input TCU measures a voltage higher than 7.00V at speed input pin <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable is defective and is contacted to battery voltage</li> <li>· Cable has no connection to TCU</li> <li>· Speed sensor has an internal defect</li> <li>· Connector pin is contacted to battery voltage or has no contact</li> </ul>	OP mode : Substitute clutch control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cable from TCU to the sensor</li> <li>· Check the connectors</li> <li>· Check the speed sensor</li> </ul>
32	S.C. to ground at engine speed input TCU measures a voltage less than 0.45V at speed input pin <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable/connector is defective and is contacted to vehicle ground</li> <li>· Speed sensor has an internal defect</li> </ul>	OP mode : Substitute clutch control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cable from TCU to the sensor</li> <li>· Check the connectors</li> <li>· Check the speed sensor</li> </ul>
33	Logical error at engine speed input TCU measures a engine speed over a threshold and the next moment the measured speed is zero <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable/connector is defective and has bad contact</li> <li>· Speed sensor has an internal defect</li> <li>· Sensor gap has the wrong size</li> </ul>	OP mode : Substitute clutch control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cable from TCU to the sensor</li> <li>· Check the connectors</li> <li>· Check the speed sensor</li> <li>· Check the sensor gap</li> </ul> <p>※ This fault is reset after power up of TCU</p>

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code (Hex)	Meaning of the fault code possible reason for fault detection	Reaction of the TCU	Possible steps to repair
34	S.C. to battery voltage or O.C. at turbine speed input TCU measures a voltage higher than 7.00V at speed input pin · Cable is defective and is contacted to vehicle battery voltage · Cable has no connection to TCU · Speed sensor has an internal defect · Connector pin is contacted to battery voltage or has no contact	OP mode : Substitute clutch control If a failure is existing at output speed, TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home	· Check the cable from TCU to the sensor · Check the connectors · Check the speed sensor
35	S.C. to ground at turbine speed input TCU measures a voltage less than 0.45V at speed input pin · Cable/connector is defective and is contacted to vehicle ground · Speed sensor has an internal defect	OP mode : Substitute clutch control If a failure is existing at output speed, TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home	· Check the cable from TCU to the sensor · Check the connectors · Check the speed sensor ※ This fault is reset after power up of TCU
36	Logical error at turbine speed input TCU measures a turbine speed over a threshold and at the next moment the measured speed is zero · Cable/connector is defective and has bad contact · Speed sensor has an internal defect · Sensor gap has the wrong size	OP mode : Substitute clutch control If a failure is existing at output speed, TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home	· Check the cable from TCU to the sensor · Check the connectors · Check the speed sensor · Check the sensor gap
37	S.C. to battery voltage or O.C. at internal speed input TCU measures a voltage higher than 7.00V at speed input pin · Cable is defective and is contacted to vehicle battery voltage · Cable has no connection to TCU · Speed sensor has an internal defect · Connector pin is contacted to battery voltage or has no contact	OP mode : Substitute clutch control	· Check the cable from TCU to the sensor · Check the connectors · Check the speed sensor
38	S.C. to ground at turbine speed input TCU measures a voltage less than 0.45V at speed input pin · Cable/connector is defective and is contacted to vehicle ground · Speed sensor has an internal defect	OP mode : Substitute clutch control	· Check the cable from TCU to the sensor · Check the connectors · Check the speed sensor
39	Logical error at internal speed input TCU measures a internal speed over a threshold and at the next moment the measured speed is zero · Cable/connector is defective and has bad contact · Speed sensor has an internal defect · Sensor gap has the wrong size	OP mode : Substitute clutch control	· Check the cable from TCU to the sensor · Check the connectors · Check the speed sensor · Check the sensor gap ※ This fault is reset after power up of TCU
3A	S.C. to battery voltage or O.C. at output speed input TCU measures a voltage higher than 12.5V at speed input pin · Cable is defective and is contacted to battery voltage · Cable has no connection to TCU · Speed sensor has an internal defect · Connector pin is contacted to battery voltage or has no contact	Special mode for gear selection OP mode : Substitute clutch control If a failure is existing at turbine speed, TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home	· Check the cable from TCU to the sensor · Check the connectors · Check the speed sensor

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code (Hex)	Meaning of the fault code possible reason for fault detection	Reaction of the TCU	Possible steps to repair
3B	S.C. to ground at output speed input TCU measures a voltage less than 1.00V at speed input pin <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable/connector is defective and is contacted to vehicle ground</li> <li>· Speed sensor has an internal defect</li> </ul>	Special mode for gear selection OP mode : Substitute clutch control If a failure is existing at turbine speed, TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cable from TCU to the sensor</li> <li>· Check the connectors</li> <li>· Check the speed sensor</li> </ul>
3C	Logical error at output speed input TCU measures a turbine speed over a threshold and at the next moment the measured speed is zero <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable/connector is defective and has bad contact</li> <li>· Speed sensor has an internal defect</li> <li>· Sensor gap has the wrong size</li> </ul>	Special mode for gear selection OP mode : Substitute clutch control If a failure is existing at turbine speed, TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cable from TCU to the sensor</li> <li>· Check the connectors</li> <li>· Check the speed sensor</li> <li>· Check the sensor gap</li> </ul> <p>※ This fault is reset after power up of TCU</p>
3D	Turbine speed zero doesn't fit to other speed signals	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Not used</li> </ul>
3E	Output speed zero doesn't fit to other speed signals If transmission is not neutral and the shifting has finished, TCU measures output speed zero and turbine speed or internal speed not equal to zero. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Speed sensor has an internal defect</li> <li>· Sensor gap has the wrong size</li> </ul>	Special mode for gear selection OP mode : Substitute clutch control If a failure is existing at turbine speed, TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the sensor signal of output speed sensor</li> <li>· Check the sensor gap of output speed sensor</li> <li>· Check the cable from TCU to the sensor</li> </ul> <p>※ This fault is reset after power up of TCU</p>
54	DCT1 timeout Timeout of CAN-message DCT1 from display computer <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Interference on CAN-Bus</li> <li>· CAN wire/connector is broken</li> <li>· CAN wire/connector is defective and has contact to vehicle ground or battery voltage</li> </ul>	OP mode : Normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check display computer</li> <li>· Check wire of CAN-Bus</li> <li>· Check cable to display computer</li> </ul>
55	JSS timeout Timeout of CAN-message JSS from joystick steering controller <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Interference on CAN-Bus</li> <li>· CAN wire/connector is broken</li> <li>· CAN wire/connector is defective and has contact to vehicle ground or battery voltage</li> </ul>	TCU shifts to neutral while joystick steering is active OP mode : Normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check joystick steering controller</li> <li>· Check wire of CAN-Bus</li> <li>· Check cable to joystick steering controller</li> </ul>
56	Engine CONF timeout Timeout of CAN-message engine CONF from engine controller <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Interference on CAN-Bus</li> <li>· CAN wire/connector is broken</li> <li>· CAN wire/connector is defective and has contact to vehicle ground or battery voltage</li> </ul>	OP mode : Substitute clutch control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check engine controller</li> <li>· Check wire of CAN-Bus</li> <li>· Check cable to engine controller</li> </ul>

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code (Hex)	Meaning of the fault code possible reason for fault detection	Reaction of the TCU	Possible steps to repair
57	EEC1 timeout Timeout of CAN-message EEC1 from EEC controller <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Interference on CAN-Bus</li> <li>CAN wire/connector is broken</li> <li>CAN wire/connector is defective and has contact to vehicle ground or battery voltage</li> </ul>	OP mode : Substitute clutch control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check EEC controller</li> <li>Check wire of CAN-Bus</li> <li>Check cable to EEC controller</li> </ul>
58	EEC3 timeout Timeout of CAN-message EEC3 from EEC controller <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Interference on CAN-Bus</li> <li>CAN wire/connector is broken</li> <li>CAN wire/connector is defective an has contact to vehicle ground or battery voltage</li> </ul>	OP mode : Substitute clutch control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check EEC controller</li> <li>Check wire of CAN-Bus</li> <li>Check cable to EEC controller</li> </ul>
5C	Auto downshift signal CAN signal for automatic downshift is defective <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cluster controller is defective</li> <li>Interference on CAN-Bus</li> </ul>	No reaction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check cluster controller</li> <li>Check wire of CAN-Bus</li> <li>Check cable to cluster controller</li> </ul>
5D	Manual downshift signal CAN signal for manual downshift is defective <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cluster controller is defective</li> <li>Interference on CAN-Bus</li> </ul>	No reaction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check cluster controller</li> <li>Check wire of CAN-Bus</li> <li>Check cable to controller</li> </ul>
5E	CCO request signal CAN signal for CCO request is defective <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cluster controller is defective</li> <li>Interference on CAN-Bus</li> </ul>	No reaction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check cluster controller</li> <li>Check wire of CAN-Bus</li> <li>Check cable to controller</li> </ul>
61	AEB request signal CAN signal for AEB request is defective <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>I/O controller is defective</li> <li>Interference on CAN-Bus</li> </ul>	No reaction OP mode : Normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check I/O controller, Omron master</li> <li>Check wire of CAN-Bus</li> <li>Check cable to I/O controller, Omron master</li> </ul>
64	Sarting gear signal CAN signal for starting gear is defective <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>I/O controller is defective (illegal starting gear)</li> <li>Interference on CAN-Bus</li> </ul>	No reaction. TCU uses default starting gear OP mode : Normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check I/O controller</li> <li>Check wire of CAN-Bus</li> <li>Check cable to I/O controller</li> </ul>
65	Engine torque signal CAN signal for engine torque is defective <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Engine controller is defective</li> <li>Interference on CAN-Bus</li> </ul>	OP mode : Substitute clutch control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check engine controller</li> <li>Check wire of CAN-Bus</li> <li>Check cable to engine controller</li> </ul>
69	Reference engine torque signal CAN signal for reference of engine torque is defective <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Engine controller is defective</li> <li>Interference on CAN-Bus</li> </ul>	OP mode : Substitute clutch control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check engine controller</li> <li>Check wire of CAN-Bus</li> <li>Check cable to engine controller</li> </ul>
6A	Actual engine torque signal CAN signal for actual engine torque is defective <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Engine controller is defective</li> <li>Interference on CAN-Bus</li> </ul>	OP mode : Substitute clutch control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check engine controller</li> <li>Check wire of CAN-Bus</li> <li>Check cable to engine controller</li> </ul>

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code (Hex)	Meaning of the fault code possible reason for fault detection	Reaction of the TCU	Possible steps to repair
6E	EEC2 timeout Timeout of CAN-message EEC2 from EEC controller <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Interference on CAN-Bus</li> <li>CAN wire/connector is broken</li> <li>CAN wire/connector is defective and has contact to vehicle ground or battery voltage</li> </ul>	No reaction, TCU uses default signal accelerator pedal in idle position OP mode : Normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check EEC controller</li> <li>Check wire of CAN-Bus</li> <li>Check cable to EEC controller</li> </ul>
71	S.C. to battery voltage at clutch K1 The measured resistance value of the valve is out of limit, the voltage at K1 valve is too high <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cable/connector is defective and has contact to battery voltage</li> <li>Cable/connector is defective and has contact to another regulator output of the TCU</li> <li>Regulator has an internal defect</li> </ul>	TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home If failure at another clutch is pending TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the cable from TCU to the gearbox</li> <li>Check the connectors from TCU to the gearbox</li> <li>Check the regulator resistance*</li> <li>Check internal wire harness of the gearbox</li> </ul> <p>* See page 3-82</p>
72	S.C. to ground at clutch K1 The measured resistance value of the valve is out of limit, the voltage at K1 valve is too low <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cable/connector is defective and has contact to vehicle ground</li> <li>Regulator has an internal defect</li> </ul>	TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home If failure at another clutch is pending TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the cable from TCU to the gearbox</li> <li>Check the connectors from gearbox to TCU</li> <li>Check the regulator resistance*</li> <li>Check internal wire harness of the gearbox</li> </ul> <p>* See page 3-82</p>
73	O.C. at clutch K1 The measured resistance value of the valve is out of limit <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cable/connector is defective and has no contact to TCU</li> <li>Regulator has an internal defect</li> </ul>	TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home If failure at another clutch is pending TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the cable from TCU to the gearbox</li> <li>Check the connectors from gearbox to TCU</li> <li>Check the regulator resistance*</li> <li>Check internal wire harness of the gearbox</li> </ul> <p>* See page 3-82</p>
74	S.C. to battery voltage at clutch K2 The measured resistance value of the valve is out of limit, the voltage at K2 valve is too high <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cable/connector is defective and has contact to battery voltage</li> <li>Cable/connector is defective and has contact to another regulator output of the TCU</li> <li>Regulator has an internal defect</li> </ul>	TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home If failure at another clutch is pending TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the cable from TCU to the gearbox</li> <li>Check the connectors from gearbox to TCU</li> <li>Check the regulator resistance*</li> <li>Check internal wire harness of the gearbox</li> </ul> <p>* See page 3-82</p>
75	S.C. to ground at clutch K2 The measured resistance value of the valve is out of limit, the voltage at K2 valve is too low <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cable/connector is defective and has contact to vehicle ground</li> <li>Regulator has an internal defect</li> </ul>	TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home If failure at another clutch is pending TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the cable from TCU to the gearbox</li> <li>Check the connectors from gearbox to TCU</li> <li>Check the regulator resistance*</li> <li>Check internal wire harness of the gearbox</li> </ul> <p>* See page 3-82</p>

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.



Fault code (Hex)	Meaning of the fault code possible reason for fault detection	Reaction of the TCU	Possible steps to repair
76	O.C. at clutch K2 The measured resistance value of the valve is out of limit · Cable/connector is defective and has no contact to TCU · Regulator has an internal defect	TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home If failure at another clutch is pending TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	· Check the cable from TCU to the gearbox · Check the connectors from gearbox to TCU · Check the regulator resistance* · Check internal wire harness of the gearbox * See page 3-82
77	S.C. to battery voltage at clutch K3 The measured resistance value of the valve is out of limit, the voltage at K3 valve is too high · Cable/connector is defective and has contact to battery voltage · Cable/connector is defective and has contact to another regulator output of the TCU · Regulator has an internal defect	TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home If failure at another clutch is pending TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	· Check the cable from TCU to the gearbox · Check the connectors from gearbox to TCU · Check the regulator resistance* · Check internal wire harness of the gearbox * See page 3-82
78	S.C. to ground at clutch K3 The measured resistance value of the valve is out of limit, the voltage at K3 valve is too low · Cable/connector is defective and has contact to vehicle ground · Regulator has an internal defect	TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home If failure at another clutch is pending TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	· Check the cable from TCU to the gearbox · Check the connectors from gearbox to TCU · Check the regulator resistance* · Check internal wire harness of the gearbox * See page 3-82
79	O.C. at clutch K3 The measured resistance value of the valve is out of limit · Cable/connector is defective and has no contact to TCU · Regulator has an internal defect	TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home If failure at another clutch is pending TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	· Check the cable from TCU to the gearbox · Check the connectors from gearbox to TCU · Check the regulator resistance* · Check internal wire harness of the gearbox * See page 3-82
7D	S.C. ground at engine derating device · Cable is defective and is contacted to vehicle ground · Engine derating device has an internal defect · Connector pin is contacted to vehicle ground	Engine derating will be on until TCU power down even if fault vanishes (Loose connection) OP mode : Normal	· Check the cable from TCU to the engine derating device · Check the connectors from engine derating device to TCU · Check the resistance* of engine derating device ※ Not used * See page 3-82
7E	S.C. battery voltage at engine derating device · Cable/connector is defective and is contacted to battery voltage · Engine derating device has an internal defect	No reaction OP mode : Normal	· Check the cable from TCU to the engine derating device · Check the connectors from backup alarm device to TCU · Check the resistance* of backup alarm device * See page 3-82

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code (Hex)	Meaning of the fault code possible reason for fault detection	Reaction of the TCU	Possible steps to repair
7F	O.C. at engine derating device TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin, that looks like a O.C. for this output pin · Cable is defective and has no connection to TCU · Engine derating device has an internal defect · Connector has no connection to TCU	No reaction OP mode : Normal	· Check the cable from TCU to the engine derating device · Check the connectors from engine derating device to TCU · Check the resistance* of engine derating device * See page 3-82
81	S.C. to battery voltage at clutch K4 The measured resistance value of the valve is out of limit, the voltage at K4 valve is too high · Cable/connector is defective and has contact to battery voltage · Cable/connector is defective and has contact to another regulator output of the TCU · Regulator has an internal defect	TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home If failure at another clutch is pending TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	· Check the cable from TCU to the gearbox · Check the connectors from gearbox to TCU · Check the regulator resistance* · Check internal wire harness of the gearbox * See page 3-82
82	S.C. to ground at clutch K4 The measured resistance value of the valve is out of limit, the voltage at K4 valve is too low · Cable/connector is defective and has contact to vehicle ground · Regulator has an internal defect	TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home If failure at another clutch is pending TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	· Check the cable from TCU to the engine derating device · Check the connectors from gearbox to TCU · Check the regulator resistance* · Check internal wire harness of the gearbox * See page 3-82
83	O.C. at clutch K4 The measured resistance value of the valve is out of limit · Cable/connector is defective and has contact to TCU · Regulator has an internal defect	TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home If failure at another clutch is pending TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	· Check the cable from TCU to the gearbox · Check the connectors from gearbox to TCU · Check the regulator resistance* · Check internal wire harness of the gearbox * See page 3-82
84	S.C. to battery voltage at clutch KV The measured resistance value of the valve is out of limit, the voltage at KV valve is too high · Cable/connector is defective and has contact to battery voltage · Cable/connector is defective and has contact to another regulator output of the TCU · Regulator has an internal defect	TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home If failure at another clutch is pending TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	· Check the cable from TCU to the gearbox · Check the connectors from gearbox to TCU · Check the regulator resistance* · Check internal wire harness of the gearbox * See page 3-82
85	S.C. to ground at clutch KV The measured resistance value of the valve is out of limit, the voltage at KV valve is too low · Cable/connector is defective and has contact to vehicle ground · Regulator has an internal defect	TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home If failure at another clutch is pending TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	· Check the cable from TCU to the gearbox · Check the connectors from gearbox to TCU · Check the regulator resistance* · Check internal wire harness of the gearbox * See page 3-82

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.



Fault code (Hex)	Meaning of the fault code possible reason for fault detection	Reaction of the TCU	Possible steps to repair
86	O.C. at clutch KV The measured resistance value of the valve is out of limit · Cable/connector is defective and has contact to TCU · Regulator has an internal defect	TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home If failure at another clutch is pending TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	· Check the cable from TCU to the gearbox · Check the connectors from gearbox to TCU · Check the regulator resistance* · Check internal wire harness of the gearbox * See page 3-82
87	S.C. to battery voltage at clutch KR The measured resistance value of the valve is out of limit, the voltage at KR valve is too high · Cable/connector is defective and has contact to battery voltage · Cable/connector is defective and has contact to another regulator output of the TCU · Regulator has an internal defect	TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home If failure at another clutch is pending TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	· Check the cable from TCU to the gearbox · Check the connectors from gearbox to TCU · Check the regulator resistance* · Check internal wire harness of the gearbox * See page 3-82
88	S.C. to ground at clutch KR The measured resistance value of the valve is out of limit, the voltage at KR valve is too low · Cable/connector is defective and has contact to vehicle ground · Regulator has an internal defect	TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home If failure at another clutch is pending TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	· Check the cable from TCU to the gearbox · Check the connectors from gearbox to TCU · Check the regulator resistance* · Check internal wire harness of the gearbox * See page 3-82
89	O.C. at clutch KR The measured resistance value of the valve is out of limit · Cable/connector is defective and has no contact to TCU · Regulator has an internal defect	TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home If failure at another clutch is pending TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	· Check the cable from TCU to the gearbox · Check the connectors from gearbox to TCU · Check the regulator resistance* · Check internal wire harness of the gearbox * See page 3-82
91	S.C. to ground at relay reverse warning alarm TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin, that looks like a S.C. to vehicle ground · Cable is defective and is contact to vehicle ground · Backup alarm device has an internal defect · Connector pin is contacted to vehicle ground	Backup alarm will be on until TCU power down even if fault vanishes (Loose connection) OP mode : Normal	· Check the cable from TCU to the backup alarm device · Check the connectors from backup alarm device to TCU · Check the resistance* of backup alarm device * See page 3-82
92	S.C. to battery voltage at relay reverse warning alarm TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin, that looks like a S.C. to battery voltage · Cable is defective and is contacted to battery voltage · Backup alarm device has an internal defect · Connector pin is contacted to battery voltage	No reaction OP mode : Normal	· Check the cable from TCU to the backup alarm device · Check the connectors from backup alarm device to TCU · Check the resistance* of backup alarm device * See page 3-82

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code (Hex)	Meaning of the fault code possible reason for fault detection	Reaction of the TCU	Possible steps to repair
93	O.C. at relay reverse warning alarm TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin, that looks like a O.C. for this output pin · Cable is defective and has no connection to TCU · Backup alarm device has an internal defect · Connector has no connection to TCU	No reaction OP mode : Normal	· Check the cable from TCU to the backup alarm device · Check the connectors from backup alarm device to TCU · Check the resistance* of backup alarm device * See page 3-82
94	S.C. to ground at relay starter interlock TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin, that looks like a S.C. to vehicle ground · Cable is defective and is connection to vehicle ground · Starter interlock relay has an internal defect · Connector pin is contacted to vehicle ground	No reaction OP mode : Normal	· Check the cable from TCU to the stater interlock relay · Check the connectors from starter interlock relay to TCU · Check the resistance* of starter interlock relay * See page 3-82
95	S.C. to battery voltage at relay starter interlock TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin, that looks like a S.C. to battery voltage · Cable is defective and has no connection to battery voltage · Starter interlock relay has an internal defect · Connector pin is contacted to battery voltage	No reaction OP mode : Normal	· Check the cable from TCU to the starter interlock relay · Check the connectors from starter interlock relay to TCU · Check the resistance* of starter interlock relay * See page 3-82
96	O.C. at relay starter interlock TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin, that looks like a O.C. for this output pin · Cable is defective and has no connection to TCU · Starter interlock relay has an internal defect · Connector has no connection to TCU	No reaction OP mode : Normal	· Check the cable from TCU to the starter interlock relay · Check the connectors from starter interlock relay to TCU · Check the resistance* of starter interlock relay * See page 3-82
9A	S.C. to ground at converter lock up clutch solenoid TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin, that looks like a S.C. to vehicle ground · Cable is defective and is contacted to vehicle ground · Converter clutch solenoid has an internal defect · Connector pin is contacted to vehicle ground	No reaction OP mode : Normal	· Check the cable from TCU to the converter clutch solenoid · Check the connectors from converter clutch solenoid to TCU · Check the resistance* of converter clutch solenoid * See page 3-82

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code (Hex)	Meaning of the fault code possible reason for fault detection	Reaction of the TCU	Possible steps to repair
9B	O.C. at converter lock up clutch solenoid TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin, that looks like a O.C. for this output pin <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable is defective and has no connection to TCU</li> <li>· Converter clutch solenoid has an internal defect</li> <li>· Connector has no connection to TCU</li> </ul>	Converter clutch always open, retarder not available OP mode : Normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cable from TCU to the converter clutch solenoid</li> <li>· Check the connectors from converter clutch solenoid to TCU</li> <li>· Check the resistance* of converter clutch solenoid</li> </ul> <p>* See page 3-82</p>
9C	S.C. to battery voltage at converter lock up clutch solenoid TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin, that looks like a S.C. to battery voltage <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable is defective and has no contacted to battery voltage</li> <li>· Converter clutch solenoid has an internal defect</li> <li>· Connector pin is contacted to battery voltage</li> </ul>	No reaction OP mode : Normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cable from TCU to the converter clutch solenoid</li> <li>· Check the connectors from converter clutch solenoid to TCU</li> <li>· Check the resistance* of converter clutch solenoid</li> </ul> <p>* See page 3-82</p>
A1	S.C. to ground at difflock or axle connection solenoid TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin, that looks like a S.C. to vehicle ground <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable is defective and is contacted to vehicle ground</li> <li>· Difflock solenoid has an internal defect</li> <li>· Connector pin is contacted to vehicle ground</li> </ul>	No reaction OP mode : Normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cable from TCU to the difflock solenoid</li> <li>· Check the connectors from difflock solenoid to TCU</li> <li>· Check the resistance* of difflock solenoid</li> </ul> <p>* See page 3-82</p>
A2	S.C. to battery voltage at difflock or axle connection solenoid TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin, that looks like a S.C. to battery voltage <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable is defective and has no connection to battery voltage</li> <li>· Difflock solenoid has an internal defect</li> <li>· Connector pin is contacted to battery voltage</li> </ul>	No reaction OP mode : Normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cable from TCU to the difflock solenoid</li> <li>· Check the connectors from difflock solenoid to TCU</li> <li>· Check the resistance* of difflock solenoid</li> </ul> <p>* See page 3-82</p>
A3	O.C. at difflock or axle connection solenoid TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin, that looks like a O.C. for this output pin <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable is defective and has no connection to TCU</li> <li>· Difflock solenoid has an internal defect</li> <li>· Connector has no connection to TCU</li> </ul>	No reaction OP mode : Normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cable from TCU to the difflock solenoid</li> <li>· Check the connectors from difflock solenoid to TCU</li> <li>· Check the resistance* of difflock solenoid</li> </ul> <p>* See page 3-82</p>

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code (Hex)	Meaning of the fault code possible reason for fault detection	Reaction of the TCU	Possible steps to repair
A4	S.C. to ground at warning signal output TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin, that looks like a S.C. to vehicle ground <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable is defective and is contacted to vehicle ground</li> <li>· Warning device has an internal defect</li> <li>· Connector pin is contacted to vehicle ground</li> </ul>	No reaction OP mode : Normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cable from TCU to the warning device</li> <li>· Check the connectors from warning device to TCU</li> <li>· Check the resistance* of warning device</li> </ul> <p>* See page 3-82</p>
A5	O.C. voltage at warning signal output TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin, that looks like a O.C. for this output pin <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable is defective and has no connection to TCU</li> <li>· Warning device has an internal defect</li> <li>· Connector has no connection to TCU</li> </ul>	No reaction OP mode : Normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cable from TCU to the warning device</li> <li>· Check the connectors from warning device to TCU</li> <li>· Check the resistance* of warning device</li> </ul> <p>* See page 3-82</p>
A6	S.C. to battery voltage at warning signal output TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin, that looks like a S.C. to battery voltage <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable is defective and has is contacted to battery voltage</li> <li>· Warning device has an internal defect</li> <li>· Connector pin is contacted to battery voltage</li> </ul>	No reaction OP mode : Normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cable from TCU to the warning device</li> <li>· Check the connectors from warning device to TCU</li> <li>· Check the resistance* of warning device</li> </ul> <p>* See page 3-82</p>
B1	Slippage at clutch K1 TCU calculates a differential speed at closed clutch K1. If this calculated value is out of range, TCU interprets this as slipping clutch <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Low pressure at clutch K1</li> <li>· Low main pressure</li> <li>· Wrong signal at internal speed sensor</li> <li>· Wrong signal at output speed sensor</li> <li>· Wrong size of the sensor gap</li> <li>· Clutch is defective</li> </ul>	TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home If failure at another clutch is pending TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check pressure at clutch K1</li> <li>· Check main pressure in the system</li> <li>· Check sensor gap at internal speed sensor</li> <li>· Check sensor gap at output speed sensor</li> <li>· Check signal at internal speed sensor</li> <li>· Check signal at output speed sensor</li> <li>· Replace clutch</li> </ul>
B2	Slippage at clutch K2 TCU calculates a differential speed at closed clutch K2. If this calculated value is out of range, TCU interprets this as slipping clutch <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Low pressure at clutch K2</li> <li>· Low main pressure</li> <li>· Wrong signal at internal speed sensor</li> <li>· Wrong signal at output speed sensor</li> <li>· Wrong size of the sensor gap</li> <li>· Clutch is defective</li> </ul>	TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home If failure at another clutch is pending TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check pressure at clutch K2</li> <li>· Check main pressure in the system</li> <li>· Check sensor gap at internal speed sensor</li> <li>· Check sensor gap at output speed sensor</li> <li>· Check signal at internal speed sensor</li> <li>· Check signal at output speed sensor</li> <li>· Replace clutch</li> </ul>

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code (Hex)	Meaning of the fault code possible reason for fault detection	Reaction of the TCU	Possible steps to repair
B3	Slippage at clutch K3 TCU calculates a differential speed at closed clutch K3. If this calculated value is out of range, TCU interprets this as slipping clutch <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Low pressure at clutch K3</li> <li>Low main pressure</li> <li>Wrong signal at internal speed sensor</li> <li>Wrong signal at output speed sensor</li> <li>Wrong size of the sensor gap</li> <li>Clutch is defective</li> </ul>	TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home If failure at another clutch is pending TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check pressure at clutch K3</li> <li>Check main pressure in the system</li> <li>Check sensor gap at internal speed sensor</li> <li>Check sensor gap at output speed sensor</li> <li>Check signal at internal speed sensor</li> <li>Check signal at output speed sensor</li> </ul> Replace clutch
B4	Slippage at clutch K4 TCU calculates a differential speed at closed clutch K4. If this calculated value is out of range, TCU interprets this as slipping clutch <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Low pressure at clutch K4</li> <li>Low main pressure</li> <li>Wrong signal at internal speed sensor</li> <li>Wrong signal at turbine speed sensor</li> <li>Wrong size of the sensor gap</li> <li>Clutch is defective</li> </ul>	TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home If failure at another clutch is pending TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check pressure at clutch K4</li> <li>Check main pressure in the system</li> <li>Check sensor gap at internal speed sensor</li> <li>Check sensor gap at turbine speed sensor</li> <li>Check signal at internal speed sensor</li> <li>Check signal at turbine speed sensor</li> </ul> Replace clutch
B5	Slippage at clutch KV TCU calculates a differential speed at closed clutch KV. If this calculated value is out of range, TCU interprets this as slipping clutch <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Low pressure at clutch KV</li> <li>Low main pressure</li> <li>Wrong signal at internal speed sensor</li> <li>Wrong signal at turbine speed sensor</li> <li>Wrong size of the sensor gap</li> <li>Clutch is defective</li> </ul>	TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home If failure at another clutch is pending TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check pressure at clutch KV</li> <li>Check main pressure in the system</li> <li>Check sensor gap at internal speed sensor</li> <li>Check sensor gap at turbine speed sensor</li> <li>Check signal at internal speed sensor</li> <li>Check signal at turbine speed sensor</li> </ul> Replace clutch
B6	Slippage at clutch KR TCU calculates a differential speed at closed clutch KR. If this calculated value is out of range, TCU interprets this as slipping clutch <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Low pressure at clutch KR</li> <li>Low main pressure</li> <li>Wrong signal at internal speed sensor</li> <li>Wrong signal at turbine speed sensor</li> <li>Wrong size of the sensor gap</li> <li>Clutch is defective</li> </ul>	TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : Limp home If failure at another clutch is pending TCU shifts to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check pressure at clutch KR</li> <li>Check main pressure in the system</li> <li>Check sensor gap at internal speed sensor</li> <li>Check sensor gap at turbine speed sensor</li> <li>Check signal at internal speed sensor</li> <li>Check signal at turbine speed sensor</li> </ul> Replace clutch
B7	Overtemp sump TCU measured a temperature in the oil sump that is over the allowed threshold.	No reaction OP mode : Normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cool down machine</li> <li>Check oil level</li> <li>Check temperature sensor</li> </ul>
B9	Overspend engine	Retarder applies OP mode : Normal	-
BA	Differential pressure oil filter TCU measured a voltage at differential pressure switch out of the allowed range <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Oil filter is polluted</li> <li>Cable/connector is broken or cable/connector is contacted to battery voltage or vehicle ground</li> <li>Differential pressure switch is defective</li> </ul>	No reaction OP mode : Normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check oil filter</li> <li>Check wiring from TCU to differential pressure switch</li> <li>Check differential pressure switch(Measure resistance)</li> </ul>

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code (Hex)	Meaning of the fault code possible reason for fault detection	Reaction of the TCU	Possible steps to repair
BB	Slippage at converter lockup clutch TCU calculates a differential speed at closed converter lockup clutch. If this calculated value is out of range, TCU interprets this as slipping clutch <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Low pressure at converter lockup clutch</li> <li>· Low main pressure</li> <li>· Wrong signal at engine speed sensor</li> <li>· Wrong signal at turbine speed sensor</li> <li>· Wrong size of the sensor gap</li> <li>· Clutch is defective</li> </ul>	No reaction OP mode : Normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check pressure at converter lockup clutch</li> <li>· Check main pressure in the system</li> <li>· Check sensor gap at engine speed sensor</li> <li>· Check sensor gap at turbine speed sensor</li> <li>· Check signal at engine speed sensor</li> <li>· Check signal at turbine speed sensor</li> <li>· Replace clutch</li> </ul>
C0	Engine torque or engine power overload TCU calculates an engine torque or engine power above the defined thresholds	OP mode : Normal	
C1	Transmission output torque overload TCU calculates an transmission output torque above the defined threshold	OP mode : Normal	
C2	Transmission input torque overload TCU calculates an transmission input torque above the defined threshold	programmable : No reaction or shift to neutral OP mode : Normal	
C3	Overtemp converter output TCU measured a oil temperature at the converter output that is the allowed threshold	No reaction OP mode : Normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cool down machine</li> <li>· Check oil level</li> <li>· Check temperature sensor</li> </ul>
C4	S.C. to ground at joystick status indicator TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin, that looks like a S.C. to vehicle ground <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable is defective and is contacted to vehicle ground</li> <li>· Joystick status indicator has an internal defect</li> <li>· Connector pin is contacted to vehicle ground</li> </ul>	No reaction OP mode : Normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cable from TCU to joystick status indicator</li> <li>· Check the connectors from joystick status indicator to TCU</li> <li>· Check the resistance* of joystick status indicator</li> </ul> <p>* See page 3-82</p>
C5	S.C. to battery voltage at joystick status indicator TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin, that looks like a S.C. to battery voltage <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Cable is defective and is contacted to battery voltage</li> <li>· Joystick status indicator has an internal defect</li> <li>· Connector pin is contacted to battery voltage</li> </ul>	No reaction OP mode : Normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the cable from TCU to joystick status indicator</li> <li>· Check the connectors from joystick status indicator to TCU</li> <li>· Check the resistance* of joystick status indicator</li> </ul> <p>* See page 3-82</p>

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.



Fault code (Hex)	Meaning of the fault code possible reason for fault detection	Reaction of the TCU	Possible steps to repair
C6	O.C. at joystick status indicator TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin, that looks like a O.C. for this output pin · Cable is defective and has no connection to TCU · Joystick status indicator has an internal defect · Connector pin has no connection to TCU	No reaction OP mode : Normal	· Check the cable from TCU to joystick status indicator · Check the connectors from joystick status indicator to TCU · Check the resistance* of joystick status indicator * See page 3-82
D1	S.C. to battery voltage at power supply for sensors TCU measures more than 6V at the pin AU1 (5V sensor supply)	See fault codes No.21 to 2C	· Check cables and connectors to sensors, which are supplied from AU1 · Check the power supply at the pin AU1(Should be appx. 5V) · Fault codes No.21 to No.2C may be reaction of this fault
D2	S.C. to ground at power supply for sensors TCU measures less than 4V at the pin AU1 (5V sensor supply)	See fault codes No.21 to 2C	· Check cables and connectors to sensors, which are supplied from AU1 · Check the power supply at the pin AU1(Should be appx. 5V) · Fault codes No.21 to No.2C may be reaction of this fault
D3	Low voltage at battery Measured voltage at power supply is lower than 18V(24V device)	Shift to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	· Check power supply battery · Check cables from batteries to TCU · Check connectors from batteries to TCU
D4	High voltage at battery Measured voltage at power supply is higher than 32.5V(24V device)	Shift to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	· Check power supply battery · Check cables from batteries to TCU · Check connectors from batteries to TCU
D5	Error at valve power supply VPS1 TCU switched on VPS1 and measured VPS1 is off or TCU switched off VPS1 and measured VPS1 is still on · Cable or connectors are defect and are contacted to battery voltage · Cable or connectors are defect and are contacted to vehicle ground · Permanent power supply KL30 missing · TCU has an internal defect	Shift to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	· Check fuse · Check cables from gearbox to TCU · Check connectors from gearbox to TCU · Replace TCU
D6	Error at valve power supply VPS2 TCU switched on VPS2 and measured VPS2 is off or TCU switched off VPS2 and measured VPS2 is still on · Cable or connectors are defect and are contacted to battery voltage · Cable or connectors are defect and are contacted to vehicle ground · Permanent power supply KL30 missing · TCU has an internal defect	Shift to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	· Check fuse · Check cables from gearbox to TCU · Check connectors from gearbox to TCU · Replace TCU

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

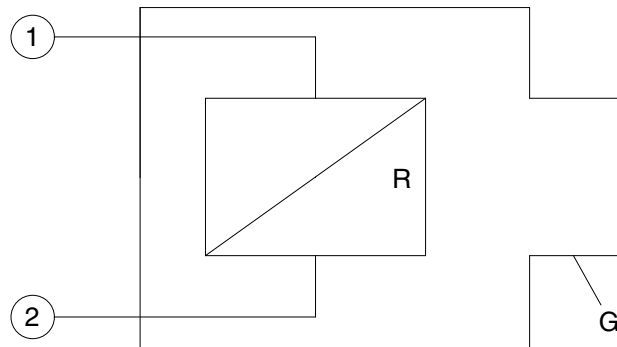
Fault code (Hex)	Meaning of the fault code possible reason for fault detection	Reaction of the TCU	Possible steps to repair
E3	S.C. to battery voltage at display output TCU sends data to the display and measures always a high voltage level on the connector · Cable or connectors are defective and are contacted to battery voltage · Display has an internal defect	No reaction OP mode : Normal	· Check the cable from TCU to the display · Check the connectors at the display · Change display
E4	S.C. to ground at display output TCU sends data to the display and measures always a high voltage level on the connector · Cable or connectors are defective and are contacted to battery voltage · Display has an internal defect	No reaction OP mode : Normal	· Check the cable from TCU to the display · Check the connectors at the display · Change display
E5	Communication failure on DeviceNet	Shift to neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	· Check Omron master · Check wire of DeviceNet-Bus · Check cable to Omron master
F1	General EEPROM fault TCU can't read non volatile memory · TCU is defective	No reaction OP mode : Normal	· Replace TCU ※ Often shown together with fault code F2
F2	Configuration lost TCU has lost the correct configuration and can't control the transmission · Interference during saving data on non volatile memory · TCU is brand new or from another vehicle	Transmission stay neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	· Reprogram the correct configuration for the vehicle (e.g. with cluster controller,...)
F3	Application error Something of this application is wrong	Transmission stay neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	· Replace TCU ※ This fault occurs only if an test engineer did something wrong in the application of the vehicle
F5	Clutch failure AEB was not able to adjust clutch filling parameters · One of the AEB-Values is out of limit	Transmission stay neutral OP mode : TCU shutdown	· Check clutch ※ TCU shows also the affected clutch on the display
F6	Clutch adjustment data lost TCU was not able to read correct clutch adjustment parameters · Interference during saving data on non volatile memory · TCU is brand new	No reaction, Default values : 0 for AEB Offsets used OP mode : Normal	· Execute AEB and brake sensor calibration
F7	Substitute clutch control · Transmission input torque wrong · Engine retarder torque wrong · Speed signal (s) defective	OP mode : Substitute clutch control	· Check engine retarder torque · Check speed sensors

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.



## 5) MEASURING OF RESISTANCE AT ACTUATOR/SENSOR AND CABLE

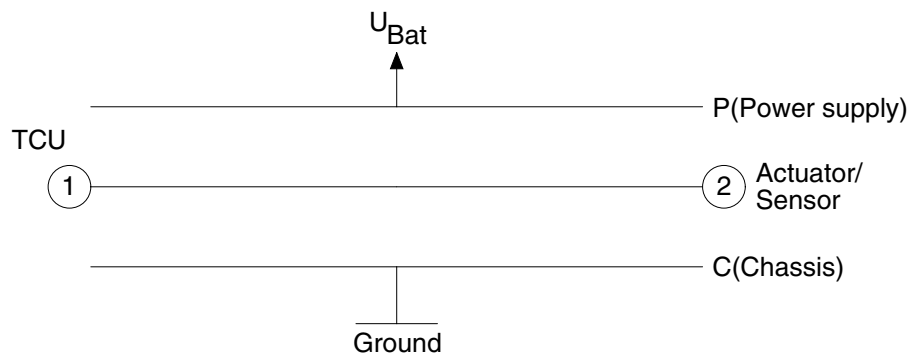
### (1) Actuator



76043PT19

- Open circuit  $R_{12} = R_{1G} = R_{2G} = \infty$
- Short cut to ground  $R_{12} = R$ ;  $R_{1G} = 0$ ,  $R_{2G} = R$  or  $R_{1G} = R$ ,  $R_{2G} = 0$   
(For S.C. to ground, G is connected to vehicle ground)
- Short cut to battery  $R_{12} = R$ ;  $R_{1G} = 0$ ,  $R_{2G} = R$  or  $R_{1G} = R$ ,  $R_{2G} = 0$   
(For S.C. to battery, G is connected to battery voltage)

### (2) Cable



76043PT20

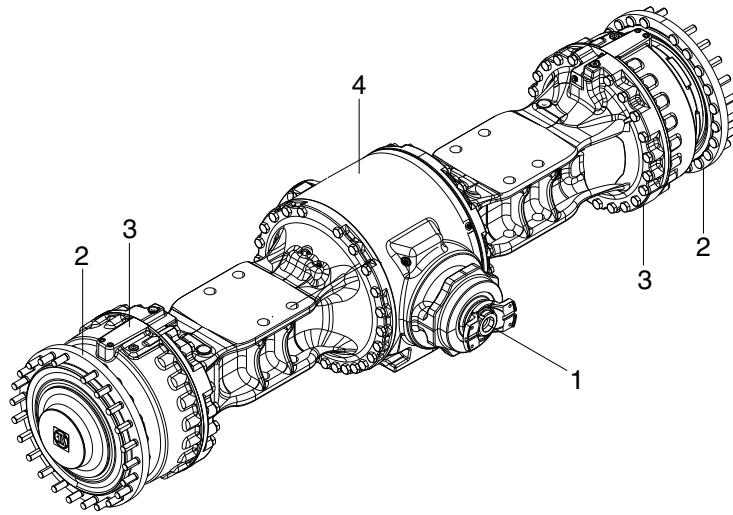
- Open circuit  $R_{12} = R_{1P} = R_{1C} = R_{2P} = R_{2C} = \infty$
- Short cut to ground  $R_{12} = 0$ ;  $R_{1C} = R_{2C} = 0$ ,  $R_{1P} = R_{2P} = \infty$
- Short cut to battery  $R_{12} = 0$ ;  $R_{1C} = R_{2C} = 0$ ,  $R_{1P} = R_{2P} = 0$

## 5. AXLE

### 1) OPERATION

- The power from the engine passes through torque converter, transmission and drive shafts, and is then sent to the front and rear axles.
- Inside the axles, the power passes from the bevel pinion to the bevel gear and is sent at right angles. At the same time, the speed is reduced and passes through the both differentials to the axle shafts. The power of the axle shafts is further reduced by planetary-gear-type final drives and is sent to the wheels.

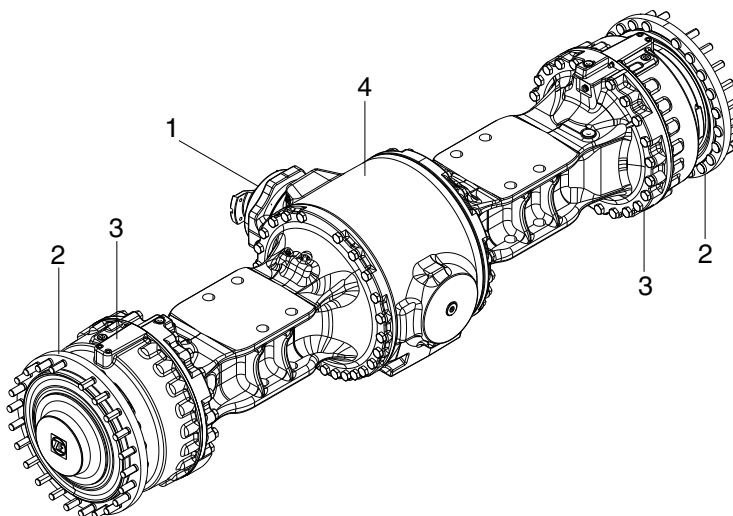
#### (1) Front axle



78093PT14

- |   |              |   |        |   |       |
|---|--------------|---|--------|---|-------|
| 1 | Input        | 2 | Output | 3 | Brake |
| 4 | Axle housing |   |        |   |       |

#### (2) Rear axle



78093PT15

- |   |              |   |        |   |       |
|---|--------------|---|--------|---|-------|
| 1 | Input        | 2 | Output | 3 | Brake |
| 4 | Axle housing |   |        |   |       |

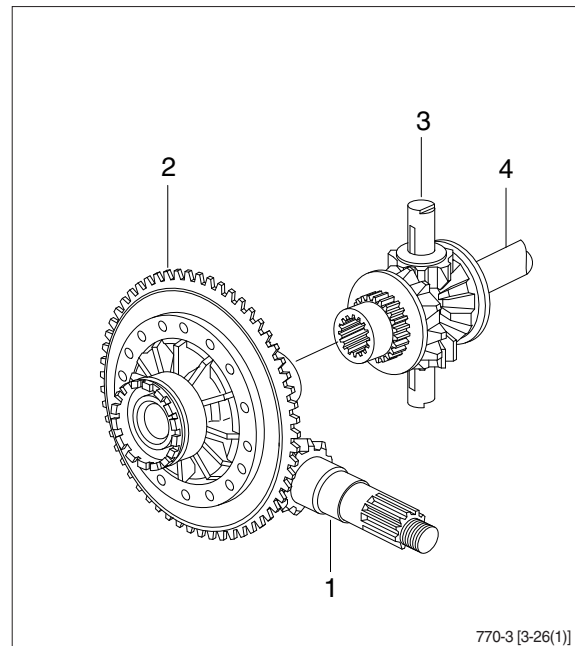
## 2) DIFFERENTIAL

### (1) Description

When the machine makes a turn, the outside wheel must rotate faster than the inside wheel. A differential is a device which continuously transmits power to the right and left wheels while allowing them to turn at different speeds, during a turn.

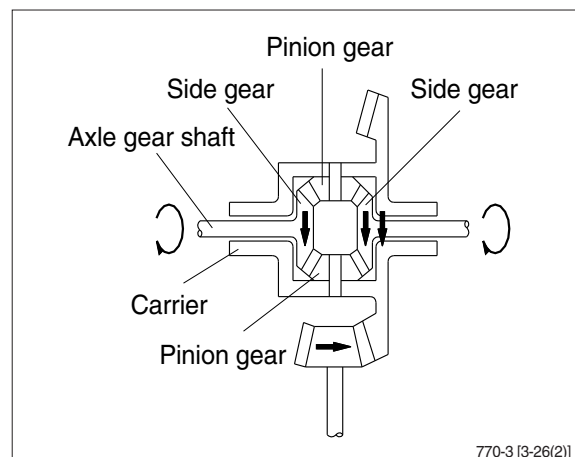
The power from the drive shaft passes through bevel pinion (1) and is transmitted to the bevel gear (2). The bevel gear changes the direction of the motive force by 90 degree, and at the same time reduces the speed.

It then transmits the motive force through the differential (3) to the axle gear shaft (4).



### (2) When driving straight forward

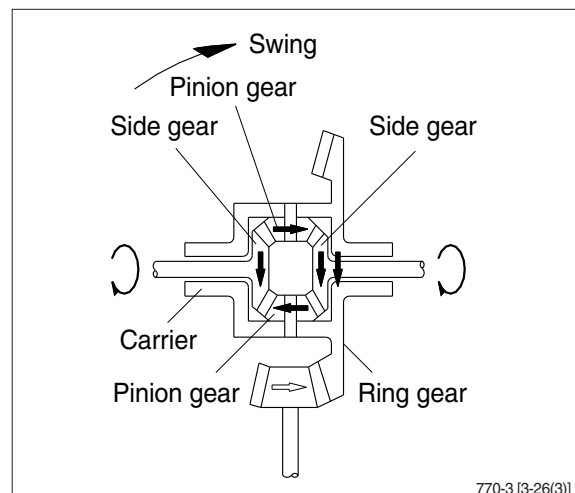
When the machine is being driven straight forward and the right and left wheels are rotating at the same speed, so the pinion gear inside the differential assembly do not rotate. The motive force of the carrier is sent through the pinion gear and the side gear, therefore the power is equally transmitted to the left and right axle gear shaft.



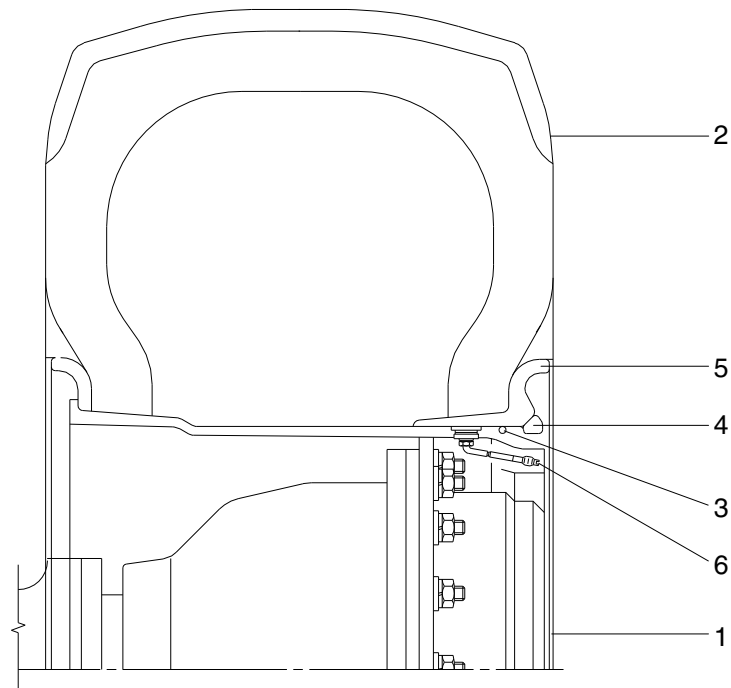
### (3) When turning

When turning, the rotating speed of the left and right wheels is different, so the pinion gear and side gear inside the differential assembly rotate in accordance with the difference between the rotating speed of the left and right wheels.

The power of the carrier is then transmitted to the axle gear shafts.



## 6. TIRE AND WHEEL



7407APT10

- |   |           |   |           |   |                |
|---|-----------|---|-----------|---|----------------|
| 1 | Wheel rim | 3 | O-ring    | 5 | Side ring      |
| 2 | Tire      | 4 | Lock ring | 6 | Valve assembly |

- 1) The tire acts to absorb the shock from the ground surface to the machine, and at the same time they must rotate in contact with the ground to gain the power which drives the machine.
- 2) Various types of tires are available to suit the purpose. Therefore it is very important to select the correct tires for the type of work and bucket capacity.

## GROUP 2 OPERATIONAL CHECKS AND TROUBLESHOOTING

### 1. POWER TRAIN OPERATIONAL CHECKS

This procedure is designed so that the mechanic can make a quick check of the system using a minimum amount of diagnostic equipment. If you need additional information, read Structure and function, Group 1.

A location will be required which is level and has adequate space to complete the checks.

The engine and all other major components must be at operating temperature for some checks.




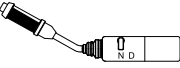



Locate system check in the left column and read completely, following the sequence from left to right. Read each check completely before performing.

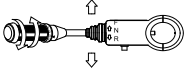
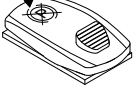


At the end of each check, if no problem is found(OK), that check is complete or an additional check is needed. If problem is indicated(NOT OK), you will be given repair required and group location. If verification is needed, you will be given next best source of information :

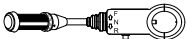

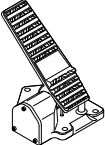
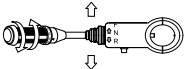
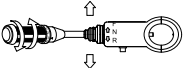
Chapter 2 : Troubleshooting

Group 3 : Tests and adjustments

※ Transmission oil must be at operating temperature for these checks.

Item	Description	Service action
Transmission oil warm-up procedure	 <p>Start engine. Apply service brakes and release parking brake.</p> <p>Select T/M shift mode to MANUAL mode.</p> <p>Move gear selector lever to 3rd speed.</p> <p>Move gear selector lever to forward "F" position.</p> <p>Increase engine speed to high idle for 30 seconds.</p>  <p>Move gear selector lever to neutral "N" position and run for 15 seconds.</p> <p>Repeat procedure until transmission temperature gauge arrow points to bar above dial.</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Check completed.</p>
Gear selector lever and neutral lock latch checks Engine OFF.	 <p>Move gear selector lever to each position.</p> <p><b>NOTE</b> : Gear selector lever position changes slightly as steering column is tilted.</p> <p><b>FEEL</b> : Lever must move freely through all positions.</p> <p>Engage neutral lock.</p>  <p>Apply slight effort to move lever into forward (F) and reverse (R).</p> <p><b>LOOK</b> : Neutral lock must stay engaged.</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Check completed.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> Repair lock or replace switch.</p>
Automatic shifting check	 <p>Start engine.</p> <p>Move gear selector lever to 4th speed.</p> <p>Select T/M shift mode to AL (auto light) mode.</p>  <p><b>LOOK</b> : Automatic sign on cluster.</p> <p>Move gear selector lever to forward or reverse position.</p> <p>Increase engine rpm.</p>  <p><b>LOOK</b> : Speed on cluster must vary with machine speed.</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Check completed.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> Go to transmission fault code group at page 3-65~3-81. Repair or replace the monitor or harness.</p>

Item	Description	Service action
<b>Transmission noise check</b> Engine running.	 <p>Run engine at approximately 1600 rpm.</p> <p>Drive unit with transmission in each forward and reverse speed.</p> <p><b>LISTEN</b> : Transmission must not make excessive noise in any range.</p> <p>Engine rpm must not "lug down" as unit is shifted between gears.</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Check completed.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> Go to transmission makes excessive noise, chapter 2 in this group.</p>
<b>Transmission "quick shift" check</b> Engine running.	<p>Release</p>  <p><b>MANUAL mode</b></p>  <p><b>AL mode</b></p>  <p>Release parking brake and select T/M shift mode to MANUAL mode.</p> <p>Shift to 2nd forward.</p> <p>Drive machine at approximately 5km/h and press gear selector lever kick down switch or RCV levers switch once.</p> <p><b>LOOK/FEEL</b> : Transmission must shift to and remain in 1st gear.</p> <p>Press gear selector lever kick down switch once.</p> <p><b>LOOK/FEEL</b> : Transmission must shift back to 2nd gear.</p> <p>Shift to (3rd or 4th) gear and press gear selector lever kick down switch once.</p> <p><b>LOOK/FEEL</b> : Transmission must not shift down.</p> <p>Select T/M shift mode to AL (auto light) mode.</p> <p>Drive machine at approximately 90% speed of max speed in each gear (2nd or 3rd or 4th).</p> <p>Shift to (2nd or 3rd or 4th) gear in each forward and reverse speed and press gear selector kick down lever switch or RCV lever switch once.</p> <p><b>LOOK/FEEL</b> :</p> <p>If shift down quickly from current gear to one step lower speed and recover to original speed quickly when push the switch one more time. (mode 1)</p> <p>If shifts down from current gear to one step lower speed when push the switch everytime and recover when push the switch in 1st gear. (mode 2)</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Check completed.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> Check connector at base of control valve.</p> <p><b>IF OK</b> Go to transmission controller circuit in group 1.</p>

Item	Description	Service action
<b>Forward, reverse and 4th speed clutch pack drag check</b> ※ Transmission must be warmed up for this check. Engine running.	     <p>Park unit on level surface.</p> <p>Apply service brakes.</p> <p>Move gear selector lever to neutral.</p> <p>Move gear selector lever to 1st.</p> <p>Release parking brake and service brakes.</p> <p>Run engine at low idle.</p> <p><b>LOOK</b> : Unit must not move in either direction.</p> <p><b>NOTE</b> : If unit moves forward, either the forward pack or the 4th speed pack is dragging.</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Check completed.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> If unit moves, repair transmission.</p>
<b>Transmission shift modulation check</b> Engine running.	 <p>Run engine at approximately 1300 rpm.</p> <p>Put transmission in 1st forward, shift several times from forward to reverse and reverse to forward. Repeat check in 2nd gear.</p> <p><b>LOOK</b> : Unit must slow down and change direction smoothly.</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Check completed.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> Go to unit shifts too fast, chapter 2 in this group.</p>
<b>Torque converter check</b>	 <p>Start engine. Apply service brakes and release parking brake.</p> <p>Move gear selector lever to 3rd speed.</p> <p>Move gear selector control lever to forward "F" position.</p> <p>Increase engine speed to high idle.</p> <p><b>LOOK</b> : Torque converter stall rpm must be within the following range. Stall rpm : <math>2050 \pm 70</math> rpm</p> <p>Move gear selector control lever to neutral "N" position and run for 15 seconds.</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Check completed.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> If stall rpm are too low or too high, problem may be engine power or torque converter.</p> <p><b>IF OK</b> Replace transmission torque converter.</p>



## 2. TROUBLESHOOTING

### 1) TRANSMISSION

※ Diagnose malfunction charts are arranged from most probable and simplest to verify, to least likely, more difficult to verify. Remember the following steps when troubleshooting a problem :

Step 1. Operational check out procedure (See group 3 in section 1.)

Step 2. Operational checks (In this group.)

Step 3. Troubleshooting

Step 4. Tests and/or adjustments (See group 3.)

Problem	Cause	Remedy
Transmission slippage	Low oil level.	Add oil.
	Wrong oil grade.	Change oil.
	Restricted transmission pump suction screen.	Remove and clean screen.
	Leak in transmission control valve or gasket.	Remove valve and inspect gaskets.
	Low transmission pump flow due to worn pump.	Do transmission pump flow test.
	Weak or broken pressure regulating valve spring.	Do transmission system pressure test.
Error code on display	Something wrong in transmission.	Go to transmission fault code group at page 3-65~3-81.

Problem	Cause	Remedy
Machine will not move	<p>Low oil level.</p> <p>Applied park brake.</p> <p>No power to transmission controller.</p> <p>Malfunctioning parking brake solenoid valve.</p> <p>Restricted orifice of PPC valve.</p> <p>Excessive leakage in transmission element.</p> <p>Worn clutch disks.</p> <p>Low or no transmission pressure.</p> <p>Service brake will not release.</p> <p>Failed torque converter.</p> <p>Broken shafts or gears.</p> <p>Broken drive shafts.</p> <p>Broken ring or pinion gear.</p>	<p>Add oil.</p> <p>Check parking brake fuse. Check continuity to parking brake switch.</p> <p>Check transmission controller fuse.</p> <p>Remove and inspect parking brake solenoid valve. Check for power to solenoid valve.</p> <p>Remove orifice and check for contamination and/or plugging. (Do not remove valve housing for this purpose.)</p> <p>Do transmission element leakage test using system pressure.</p> <p>Repair transmission.</p> <p>See transmission pressure is low in this group.</p> <p>Do brake pedal operational check. Do service and park system drag checks.</p> <p>Do torque converter stall test. If engine pulldown in normal, torque converter is good.</p> <p>Drain transmission to determine if large pieces of metal contamination are present.</p> <p>Inspect drive shafts and universal joints for external damage. Repair.</p> <p>If drive shaft rotate with transmission in gear but machine does not move, a differential failure is indicated. Repair.</p>
Machine does not engage in low gear	<p>Malfunctioning transmission control solenoid valve.</p> <p>Stuck spool in transmission control valve.</p> <p>Stuck PPC valve.</p> <p>Malfunctioning transmission speed sensor.</p>	<p>Check solenoid valve.</p> <p>Remove and inspect transmission control valve spools.</p> <p>Remove end cover to inspect PPC valve. Replace if necessary.</p> <p>Check speed sensor.</p>

Problem	Cause	Remedy
Transmission pressure is low (all gears)	Low oil level.	Check transmission oil level and refill if necessary.
	Failed transmission pressure switch.	Verify transmission system pressure. Do transmission system pressure test.
	Plugged suction strainer.	Transmission pump may be noisy if transmission suction screen is clogged. Drain transmission. Remove and clean suction screen. Also, check condition of transmission filter.
	Stuck transmission pressure regulating valve or broken spring.	Remove transmission pressure regulating valve. Inspect for damage (See transmission control valve).
	Failed control valve gasket.	Inspect transmission control valve for external leakage. Remove control valve. Inspect or replace gasket.
	Stuck PPC valve.	Remove end cover to inspect modulation spool and check torque on cap screws retaining control valve to transmission.
Transmission system pressure is low (one or two gears)	Failed transmission pump.	Do pump flow test.
	Failed transmission control valve gasket.	Inspect transmission control valve for external leakage. Remove control valve. Inspect or replace gasket.
	Leakage in clutch piston or seal ring.	Disassemble and repair.
Transmission shifts too low	Low oil level (aeration of oil).	Add oil.
	Low transmission pressure.	Do transmission system pressure test.
	Restricted transmission pump suction screen.	Remove and clean screen.
	Low transmission pump flow.	Do transmission pump flow test.
	Excessive transmission element leakage.	Do transmission element leakage test using system pressure.
	Stuck PPC valve.	Remove end cover to inspect modulation spool. Replace if necessary.
	Restricted PPC valve orifice.	Remove orifice and inspect for contamination and /or plugging.
	Restricted oil passages between control valve and transmission elements.	Remove control valve and inspect oil passage.
	Incorrect transmission oil.	Change oil (SAE 10W-30/15W-40)

Problem	Cause	Remedy
Transmission shifts too fast	<p>Wrong transmission controller.</p> <p>System pressure too high.</p> <p>Stuck PPC valve.</p> <p>Stuck or missing check valves.</p> <p>Missing O-ring from end of modulation orifice.</p> <p>Broken piston return spring.</p> <p>Incorrect transmission oil.</p>	<p>Check if transmission controller has been changed</p> <p>Do transmission system pressure test.</p> <p>Remove and inspect PPC valve. Replace if necessary. Also remove end cover to inspect PPC valve and control valve housing. Replace if necessary.</p> <p>Inspect transmission control valve.</p> <p>Remove orifice and inspect port for O-ring.</p> <p>Disassemble and inspect clutch.</p> <p>Change oil (SAE 10W-30/15W-40).</p>
Machine "creeps" in neutral	Warped disks and plates in transmission.	Check transmission.
Transmission hydraulic system overheats	<p>High oil level.</p> <p>Low oil level.</p> <p>Wrong oil grade.</p> <p>Park brake dragging.</p> <p>Pinched, restricted or leaking lube lines.</p> <p>Machine operated in too high gear range.</p> <p>Malfunction in temperature gauge or sensor.</p> <p>Restricted air flow through oil cooler or radiator.</p> <p>Failed oil cooler bypass valve (In thermal bypass valve).</p> <p>Failed thermal bypass valve.</p> <p>Internally restricted oil cooler.</p> <p>Leakage in transmission hydraulic system.</p> <p>Malfunction in converter relief valve.</p> <p>Low transmission pump output.</p>	<p>Transmission overfilled or hydraulic pump seal leaking.</p> <p>Add oil.</p> <p>Change oil.</p> <p>Check for heat in park brake area.</p> <p>Check cooler lines.</p> <p>Operate machine in correct gear range.</p> <p>Install temperature sensor the verify temperature.</p> <p>Do tachometer/temperature reader installation procedure.</p> <p>Do radiator air flow test.</p> <p>Disassemble and inspect.</p> <p>Remove thermal bypass valve and check to see if machine still overheats. Do transmission oil cooler thermal bypass valve test.</p> <p>Do oil cooler restriction test.</p> <p>Do transmission system pressure, element leakage test.</p> <p>Do converter out pressure test.</p> <p>Do transmission pump flow test.</p>

Problem	Cause	Remedy
Excessive transmission noise (Under load or no load)	Too low engine low idle. Worn parts or damaged in transmission. Warped drive line between engine and torque converter. Low or no lube.	Check engine low idle speed. Remove transmission suction screen. Inspect for metal particles. Repair as necessary. Inspect drive line. Do converter-out and lube pressure test. Do transmission pump flow test.
Foaming oil	Incorrect type of oil. High oil level. Low oil level. Air leak on suction side of pump.	Change oil. Transmission overfilled or hydraulic pump seal leaking. Add oil. Check oil pickup tube on side of transmission.
Oil ejected from dipstick	Plugged breather.	Inspect breather on top of transmission. Replace.
Machine vibrates	Aerated oil. Low engine speed. Failed universal joints on transmission drive shaft or differential drive shafts.	Add oil. Check engine speed. Check universal joints.
Machine lacks power and acceleration	Engine high idle speed set too low. Incorrect transmission oil. Aerated oil. Low transmission pressure. Warped transmission clutch. Torn transmission control valve gasket. Brake drag. Failed torque converter. Low engine power.	Check high idle adjustment. Change oil. Add oil. Do transmission system pressure test. Do transmission clutch drag checks. Inspect gasket. Do brake drag check. Do torque converter stall speed test. Do engine power test.
Torque converter stall RPM too high	Aerated oil. Stuck open converter relief valve. Leakage in torque converter seal. Torque converter not transferring power (Bent fins, broken starter).	Put clear hose on thermal bypass outlet port. Run machine to check for bubbles in oil. Do converter-out pressure test. Do converter-out pressure test. Replace torque converter.

Problem	Cause	Remedy
Torque converter stall RPM too low	Low engine power. Mechanical malfunction.	Do engine power test. Remove and inspect torque converter.
Transmission pressure light comes ON when shifting from forward to reverse (all other gears OK)	Low oil level. Cold oil. Leak in reverse pack.	Add oil. Warm oil to specification. Do transmission pressure, pump flow, and leakage check.
Transmission pressure light comes ON for each shift	Cold oil. No time delay in monitor. Restriction in modulation orifice.  Stuck PPC valve. Low transmission pressure circuit.  Leak in transmission pressure circuit. Failed transmission pump. Clogged filter.	Warm oil to specification. Do monitor check. Remove orifice and inspect for restriction and/or plugging. Remove and inspect. Do transmission system pressure test.  Do converter out pressure test.  Do transmission pump flow test. Inspect filter. Replace.

## 2) DIFFERENTIAL / AXLE

Problem	Cause	Remedy
Differential low on oil	External leakage.	Inspect axle and differential for leaks.
Excessive differential and/or axle noise	Low oil level in differential.	Check oil. Remove drain plug and inspect for metal particles in differential case. Disassemble and determine cause.
	Incorrect type of oil.	Change oil
	Dragging brakes.	Do brake check.
	Failed pinion bearing.	Remove and inspect pinion. Check to ensure pinion housing was indexed.
	Incorrect gear mesh pattern between ring and pinion gear.	Remove pinion gear housing and inspect ring and pinion gear.
	Failed differential pinion gears and/or cross shafts.	Remove differential housing drain plug and inspect for metal particles. Disassemble and inspect.
	Failed axle bearing.	Do axle bearing adjustment check.
Oil seeping from outer axle seal	Mechanical failure in axle planetary.	Remove differential. Inspect, repair.
	Excessive end play in axle.	Do axle bearing adjustment check.
	Worn outer bearing and/or cup.	Disassemble and inspect outer axle bearing, cup, spacer, and seal. Replace, if necessary.
Axle overheats	Overfilled differential.	Check differential oil return system for excessive internal restriction.
	Low differential oil.	Add oil.
	Overfilled differential.	See differential overfills with oil in this group.
	Brake drag.	See brakes drag in this group.

### 3) DRIVE LINE

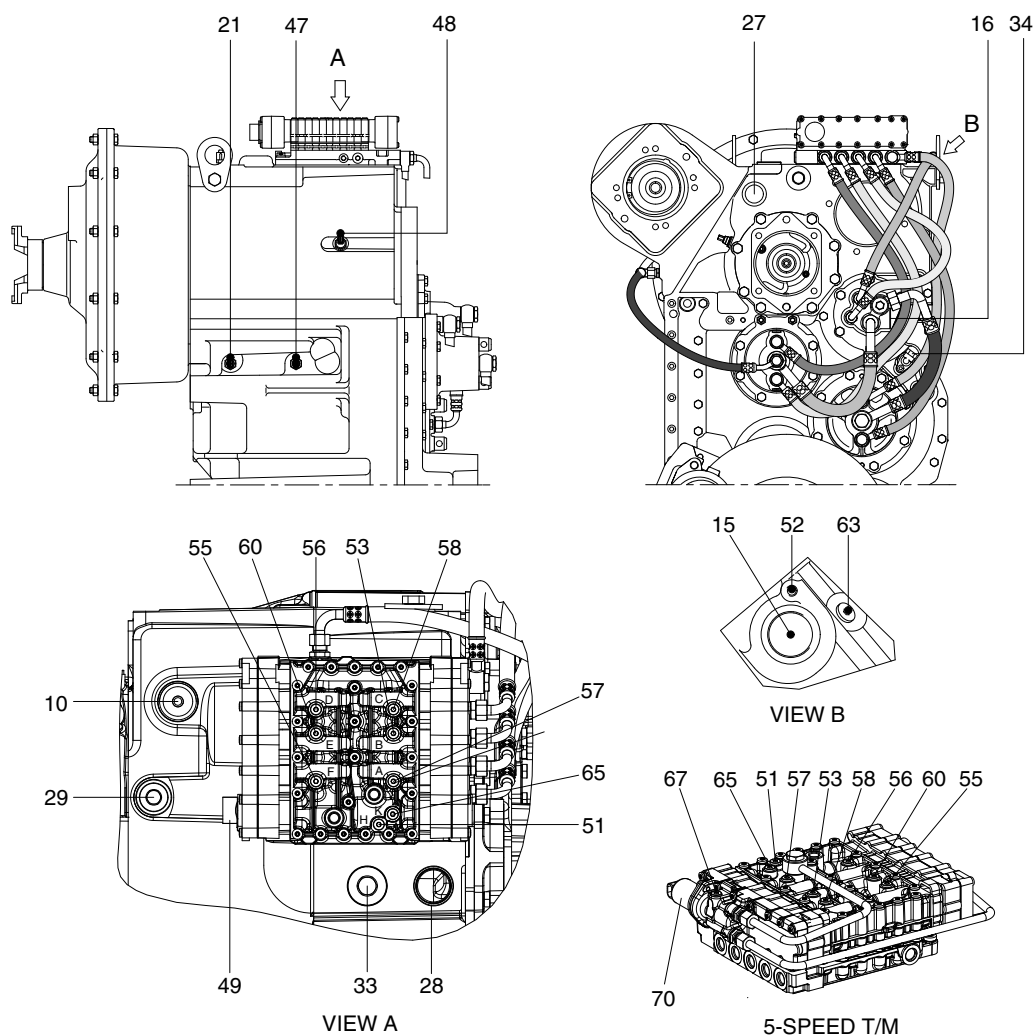
Problem	Cause	Remedy
Excessive drive line vibration or noise	Yokes not in line on drive shafts.	Inspect. Align drive shaft yokes.
	Worn front drive line support bearing.	Inspect, repair.
	Bent drive shaft.	Inspect all drive shafts. Replace.
	Loose yoke retaining nuts (drive shafts wobble at high speed).	Inspect. Replace.
	Rear axle oscillating support.	Inspect, repair.
	Lack of lubrication.	Lubricate with proper grade of grease.



## GROUP 3 TESTS AND ADJUSTMENTS

### 1. TRANSMISSION MEASURING POINTS AND CONNECTIONS

The measurements have to be carried out at hot transmission (about 80~95°C).



7809A3PT17

#### 1) OIL PRESSURE AND TEMPERATURE

Port	Description		Size
51	In front of the converter-opening pressure (11bar)	H	M10×1.0
52	Behind the converter-opening pressure (5bar)		M14×1.5
53	Forward clutch (16+2bar)	KV B	M10×1.0
55	Reverse clutch (16+2bar)	KR F	M10×1.0
56	1st clutch (16+2bar)	K1 D	M10×1.0
57	2nd clutch (16+2bar)	K2 A	M10×1.0
58	3rd clutch (16+2bar)	K3 C	M10×1.0
60	4th clutch (16+2bar)	K4 E	M10×1.0
63	Behind the converter temperature 100°C, short-time 120°C		M14×1.5
65	System pressure (16+2bar)	K	M10×1.0
*67	Lock-up clutch pressure (12+2bar)		M10×1.0

\* : 5-speed transmission

## 2) DELIVERY RATES

Port	Description	Size
10	Breather	M10×1.0
15	Connection to the oil cooler	-
16	Connection from the oil cooler	-
27	Connection to the filter	M42×2.0
28	Connection from the filter	M42×2.0
29	Connection from the filter bypass	M42×2.0
33	Connection oil filler plug	M42×2.0
49	Plug connection on the electro-hydraulic control unit	-

## 3) INDUCTIVE TRANSMITTER AND SPEED SENSOR

Port	Description	Size
21	Inductive transmitter n Turbine	M18×1.5
34	Speed sensor n Output and speedometer	-
47	Inductive transmitter n Central gear train	M18×1.5
48	Inductive transmitter n Engine	M18×1.5

## 4) SOLENOID VALVE (5-speed transmission)

Item	Description	Size
70	Converter lock-up clutch	AMP 282080-1

## GROUP 4 DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

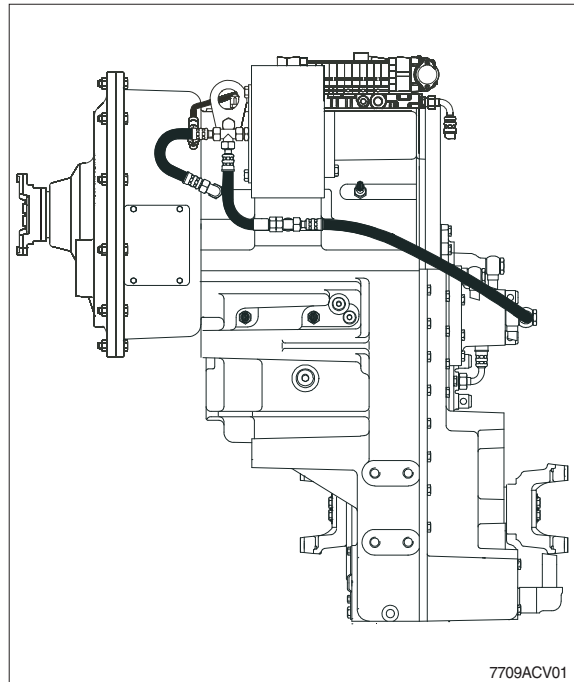
### 1. CONTROL VALVE

#### 1) DISASSEMBLY

- (1) Attach transmission to assembly truck.

Assembly truck	5870 350 000
Holding fixture	5870 350 071

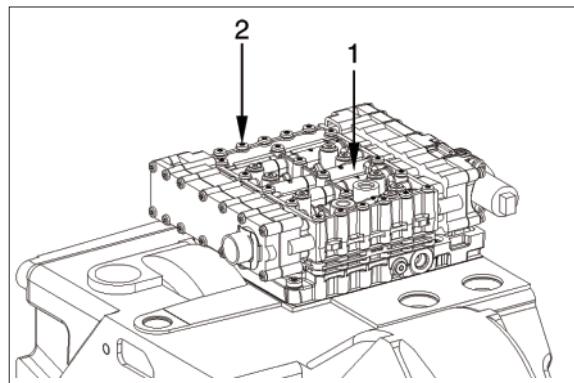
- ※ Drain oil prior to starting disassembly.
- ※ Disposal of oil according to legal requirements.



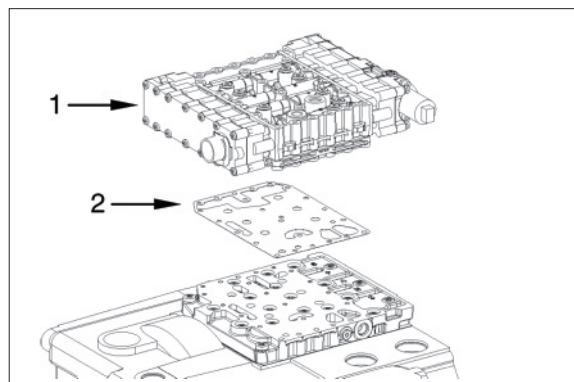
#### Removal of electric gear-shift control

- (2) Remove all oil pipes.  
Remove gear-shift control (1).  
Loosen torx screws (2).

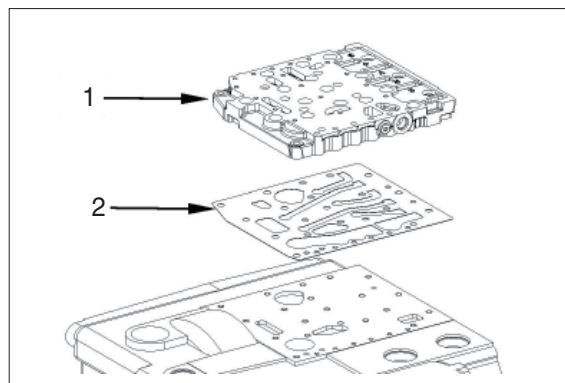
Socket wrench TX-27	5873 042 002
Adjusting screws M6	5870 204 063



- (3) Remove gear-shift control assy (1) and gasket (2).

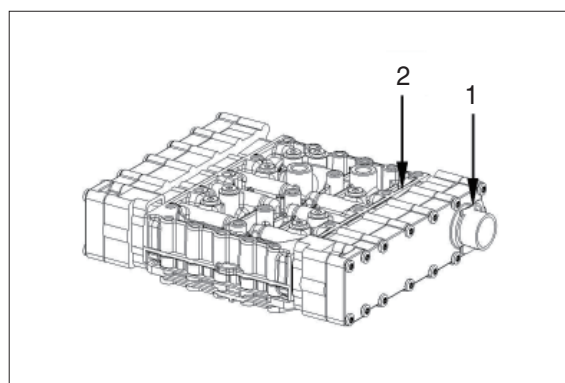


- (4) Loosen torx screws and separate duct plate (1) and gasket (2) from gearbox housing.



7709ACV04

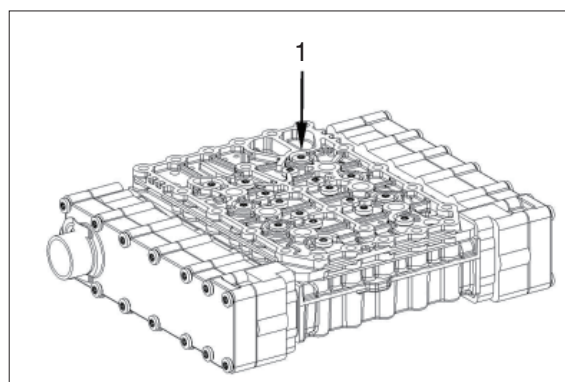
- (5) Mark installation position of wiring harness (1) towards valve block (2).



7709ACV05

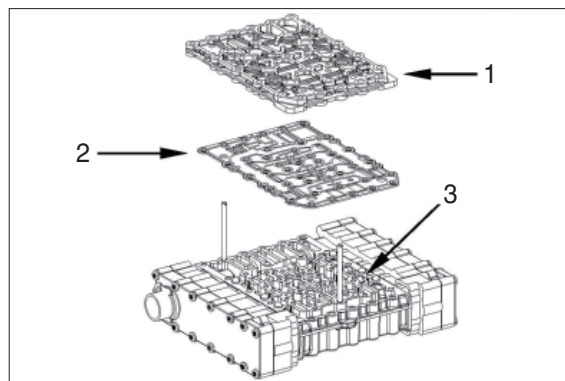
- (6) Loosen torx screws (1).

Socket wrench TX-27      5873 042 002



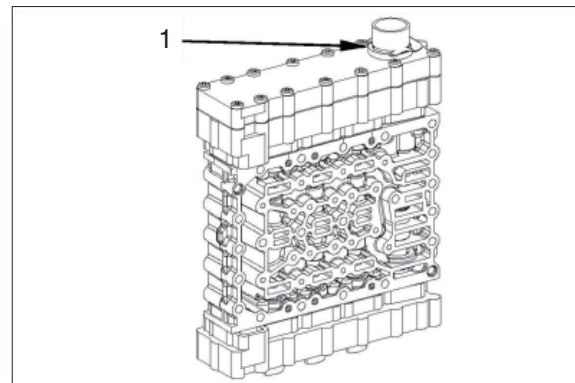
7709ACV06

- (7) Separate duct plate (1) and sealing plate (2) from valve block (3).



7709ACV07

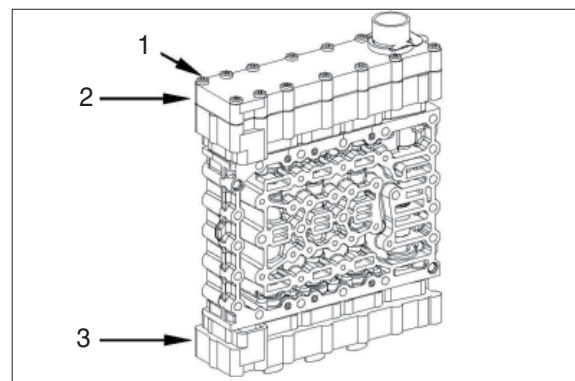
(8) Remove retaining clamp (1).



7709ACV08

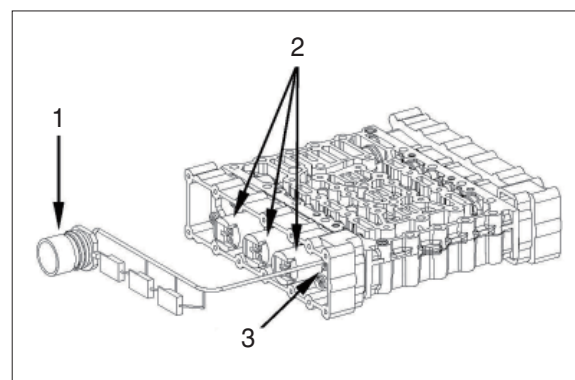
(9) Loosen torx screws (2) and remove cover (2). Remove opposite cover (3) in the same way.

Socket wrench TX-27      5873 042 002



7709ACV09

(10) Remove wiring harness (1).  
Loosen cylindrical screws (3), remove fixing plates and remove pressure controllers (2).



7709ACV10

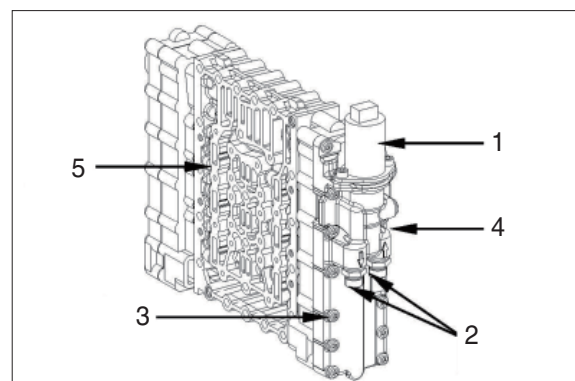
(11) **Lock-up clutch solenoid valve (5-speed transmission)**

Mark installation position of connecting housing (4) towards valve block (5).

Loosen cylindrical screws (1) and remove lock-up clutch valve.

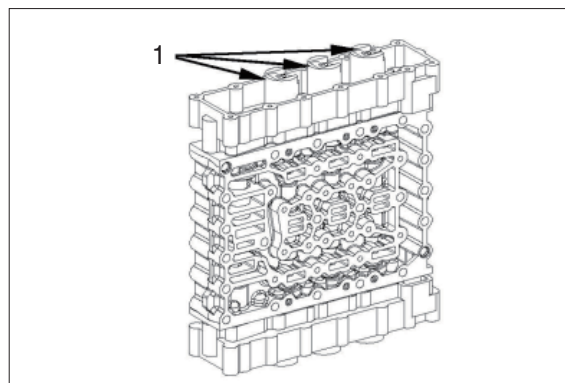
Loosen screws neck (2) and remove O-rings.

Loosen torx screws (3) and remove connecting housing.



7709ACV11

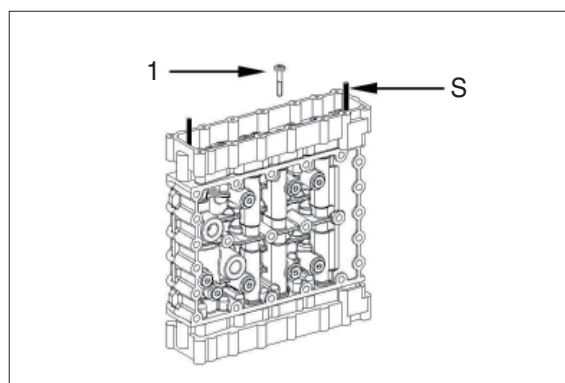
- (12) Loosen cylindrical screws, remove fixing plates and remove pressure controllers (1) on opposite side.



7709ACV12

- (13) Loosen torx screws (1) and preliminarily fix housing by means adjusting screws (S). (Housing is spring-loaded.) Then loosen remaining torx screws.

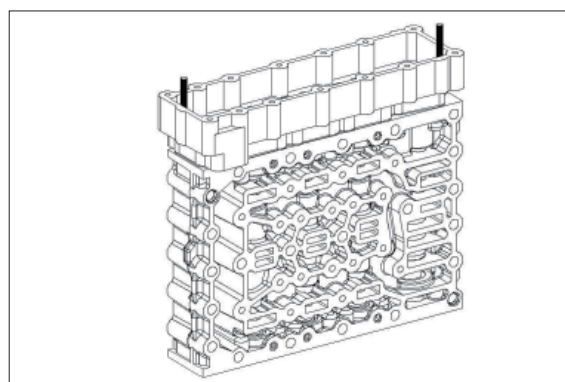
Adjusting screws                      5870 204 036



7709ACV13

- (14) Separate housing from valve housing by loosening the adjusting screws equally.

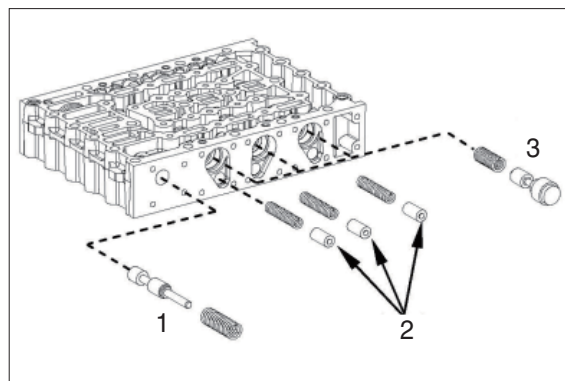
Adjusting screws                      5870 204 036



7709ACV14

- (15) Remove individual parts :

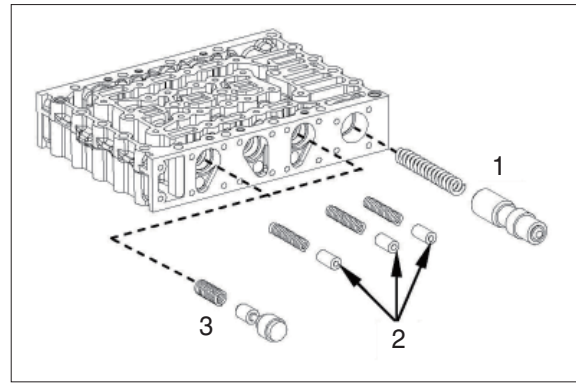
- 1 Pressure reducing valve
- 2 Vibration dampers
- 3 Follow-on silde



7709ACV15

(16) Remove individual parts of opposite side analogously :

- 1 Main pressure valve
- 2 Vibration dampers
- 3 Follow-on silde



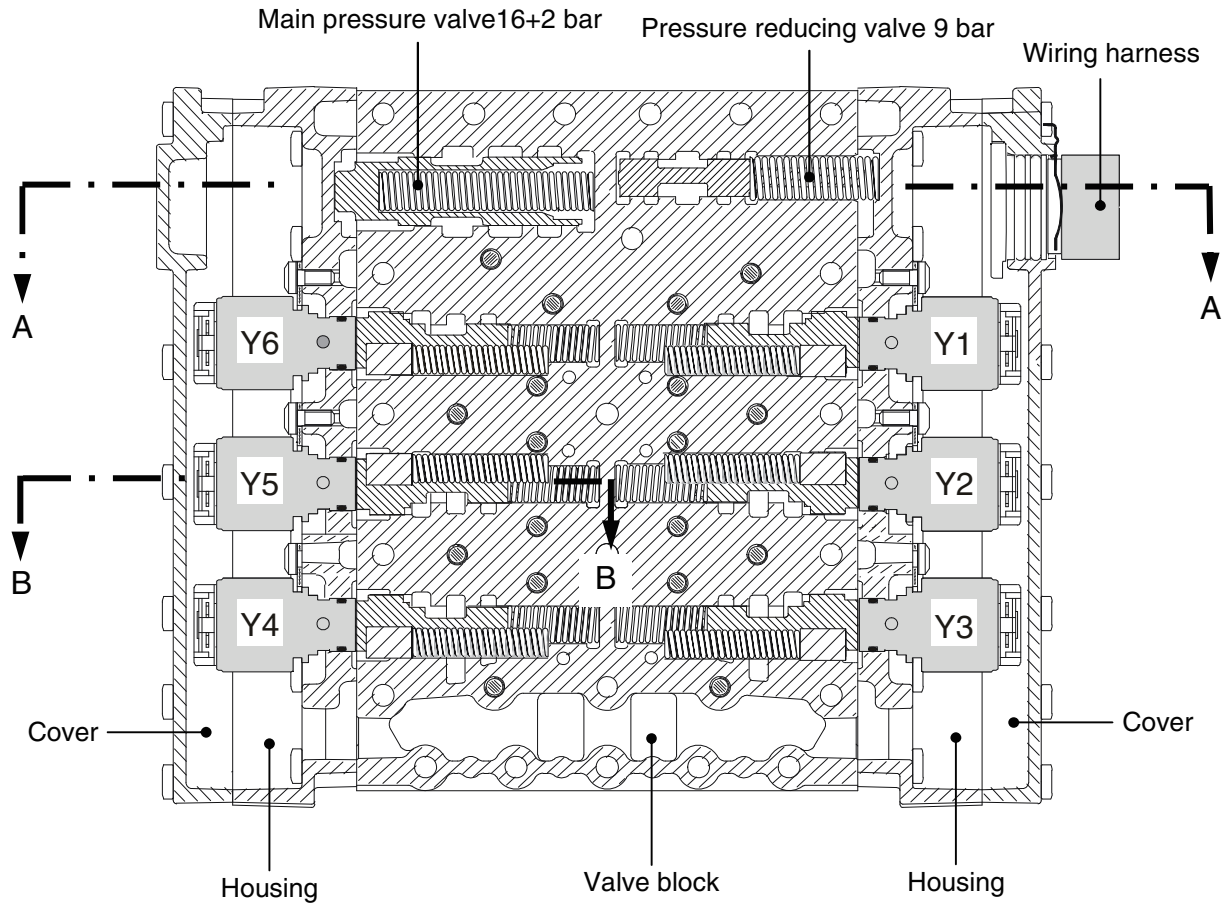
7709ACV16



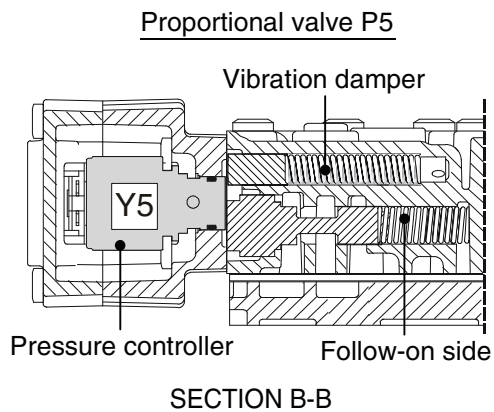
## 2) REASSEMBLY

### Electro-hydraulic control with proportional valves :

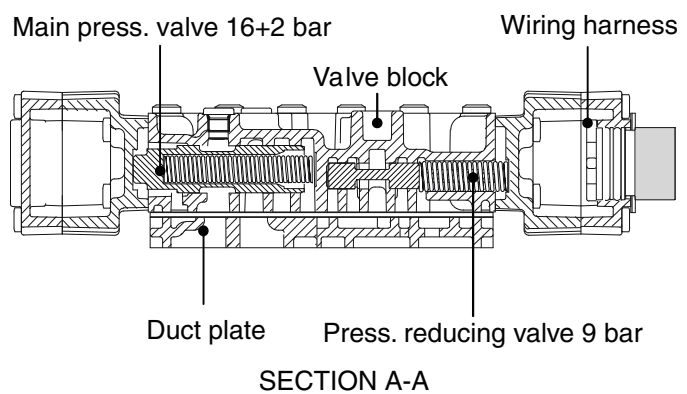
※ The following sketches show the sectional views of the electro-hydraulic control.



7709ACV17



7709ACV18



7709ACV19



### (1) Fitting of electric control

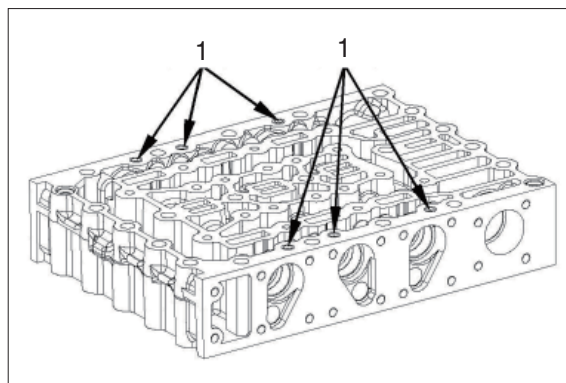
※ All single parts are to be checked for damage and replaced, if required.

Ensure free travel of the moving parts in the valve block prior to installation. Pistons can be exchanged individually.

Prior to the installation, oil single part.

- ① With the concave side showing upwards, insert orifice (1) until contact is obtained.

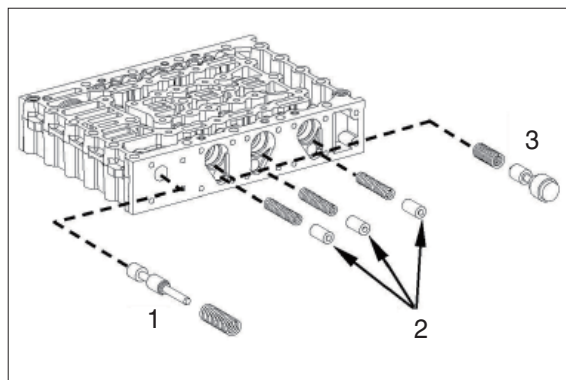
※ See arrows for installation position.



7709ACV20

- ② The opposite figure shows the following single parts :

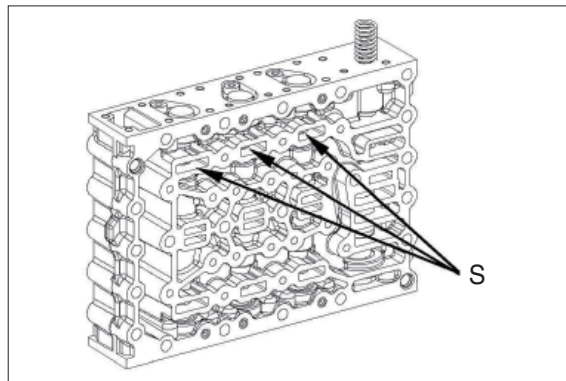
- 1 Pressure reducing valve  
(1EA, piston and compression spring)
- 2 Vibration damper  
(3EA, piston and compression spring)
- 3 Follow-on slide  
(3EA, piston and compression spring)



7709ACV21

- ③ Install the single parts according to figure CV21.

※ Preload compression springs of the follow-on slides and preliminarily fix pistons by means of cylindrical pins  $\varnothing 5.0$  mm (assembly aid), see arrows (S).



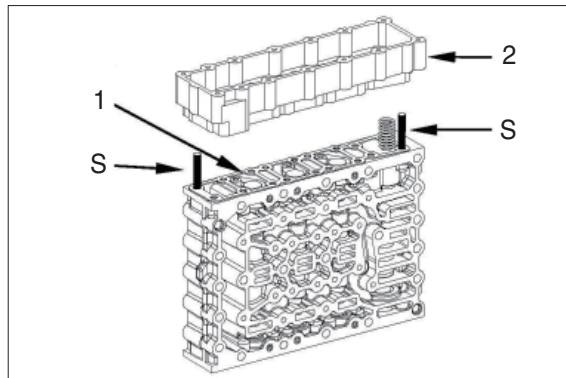
7709ACV22

- ④ Fit two adjusting screws.

Mount seal (1) and housing (2).

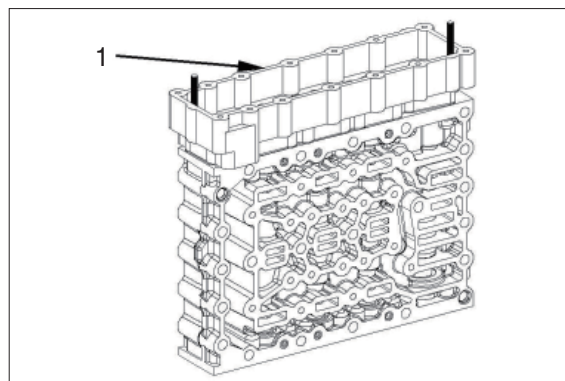
Then position housing equally by means of adjusting screws until contact is obtained.

Adjusting screws (S)      5870 204 036



7709ACV23

- ⑤ Bring housing (1) into contact position by means of the torx screws. This will preload the pistons, and you can remove the cylindrical pins (assembly aid).

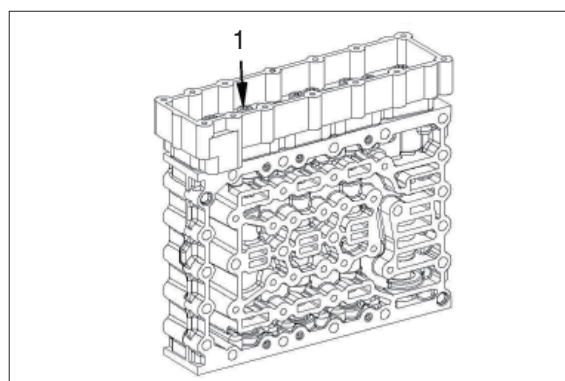


7709ACV24

- ⑥ Fix housing by means of the torx screws (1).

· Tightening torque (M5/10.9×30) :  
0.56 kgf · m (4.06 lbf · ft)

Reducing adapter                    5870 656 056  
Socket wrench TX-27            5873 042 002



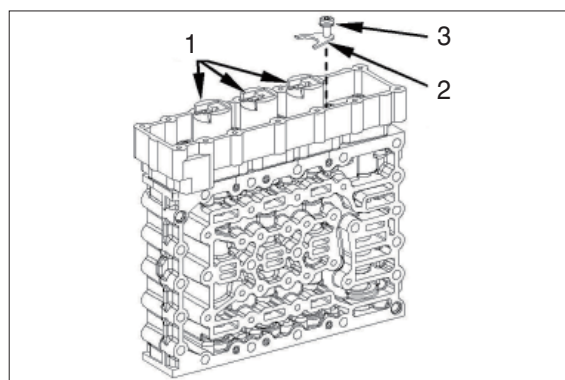
7709ACV25

- ⑦ Monut pressure controllers with O-ring 13.5×2 (1) and fasten them by means of fixing plates (2) and torx screws (3).

※ Install the fixing plate, with the claw showing downwards.  
Pay attention to the radial installation position of pressure controllers, see figure.

· Tightening torque (M5/8.8×12) :  
0.56 kgf · m (4.06 lbf · ft)

Reducing adapter                    5870 656 056  
Socket wrench TX-27            5873 042 002

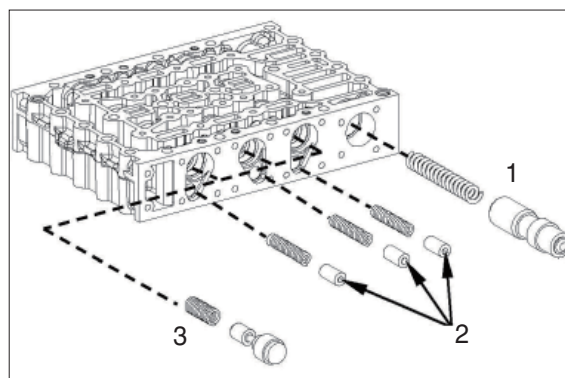


7709ACV26

### Preassemble the opposite side

- ⑧ The figure on the right shows the following single parts :

- 1 Main pressure valve  
(1EA, piston and compression spring)
- 2 Vibration damper  
(3EA, piston and compression spring)
- 3 Follow-on slide  
(3EA, piston and compression spring)



7709ACV27

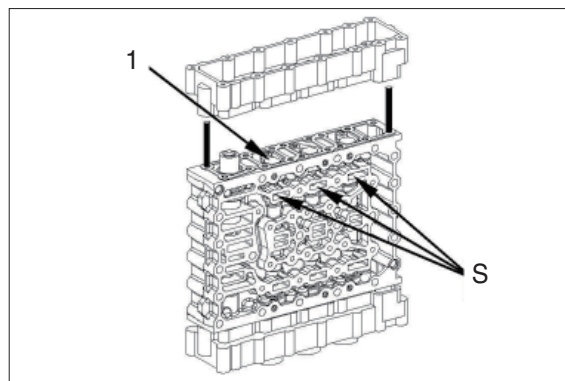
- ⑨ Install the single parts according to figure CV27.

- ※ Preload the compression springs of the follow-on slides and fasten the pistons preliminarily by means of cylindrical pins (S)  $\varnothing 5.0$  mm (assembly aid), see arrows (S).

Install two adjusting screws.

Adjusting screws M5      5870 204 036

Assemble flat gasket (1) and housing cover. Then place the housing cover by means of adjusting screws equally until contact.



7709ACV28

- ⑩ Preload the position with torx screws and remove the cylindrical pins (assembly aid) again.

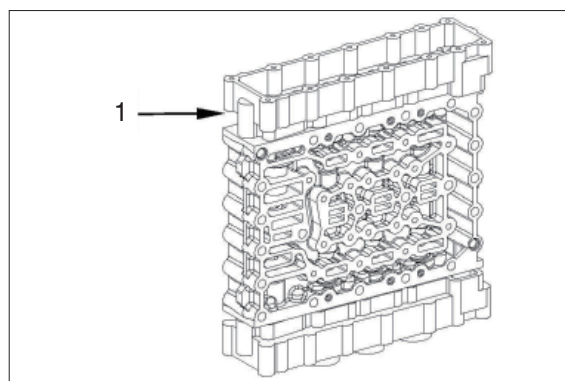
Then fasten the housing cover by means of torx screws (1).

- Tightening torque (M5/10.9 $\times$ 30) :  
0.56 kgf · m (4.06 lbf · ft)

Adjusting screws      5870 204 036

Reducer      5870 656 056

Socket spanner TX-27      5873 042 002



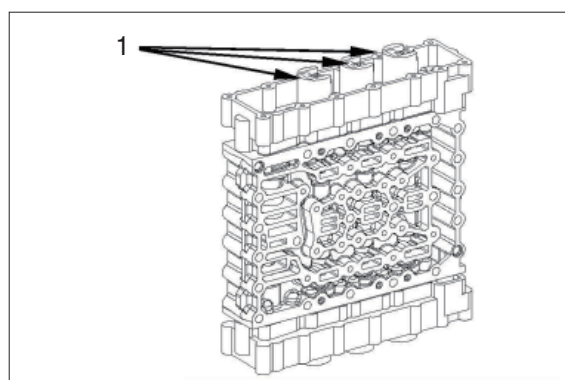
7709ACV29

- ⑪ Mount the pressure regulators with O-ring 13.5 $\times$ 2 (1) and fasten them by means of fixing plates and cap screws.

- ※ Install the fixing plate with the neck showing downwards.

Observe radial installation position of the pressure regulators, see figure.

- Tightening torque (M5/8.8 $\times$ 12) :  
0.56 kgf · m (4.06 lbf · ft)

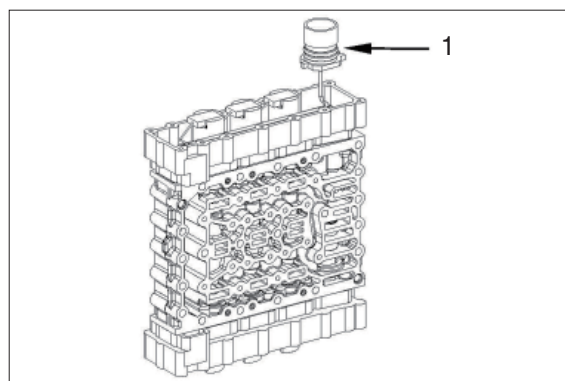


7709ACV30

- ⑫ Assemble the wiring harness (1) and connect the pressure regulators (6EA).

- ※ See figure CV01 for installation position of pressure regulators.

- ※ Pay attention to the installation position of the wiring harness, also see markings (figure CV05).



7709ACV31

⑬ Put on the flat gasket (1).

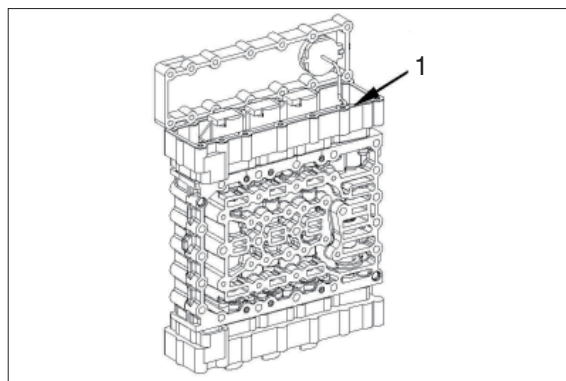
Assemble the plug socket with the slot showing to the lug of the cover until contact.

Fasten the cover by means of cap screws.

- Tightening torque (M5/10.9×30) :  
0.56 kgf · m (4.06 lbf · ft)

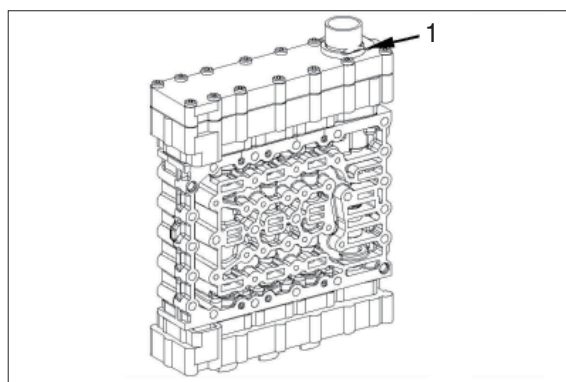
Reducer 5870 656 056

Socket spanner TX-27 5873 042 002



7709ACV32

⑭ Fix the wiring harness by means of retaining clamp (1).



7709ACV33

⑮ Lock-up clutch solenoid valve (5-speed transmission)

a. Place gasket (1).

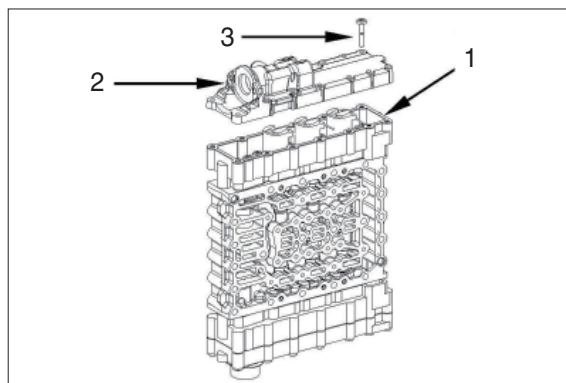
Fix connecting housing (2) by means of torx screws (3).

- Tightening torque (M5/10.9×30) :  
0.56 kgf · m (4.06 lbf · ft)

Torque wrench 5870 203 031

Socket wrench TX-27 5873 042 002

Reducing adapter 5870 656 056



7709ACV34

※ Pay attention to installation position of connection housing, see the markings applied during disassembly.



- b. Fix pressure controller (1) by means of cylindrical screws (2).

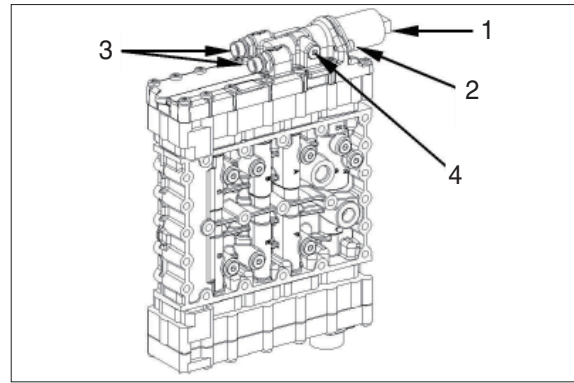
· Tightening torque (M6/8.8×12) :  
1.02 kgf · m (7.38 lbf · ft)

Fit screw necks with O-ring 11.3×2.4 (3).

· Tightening torque :  
2.55 kgf · m (18.4 lbf · ft)

Fit screw plug with O-ring 8×1.5 (4).

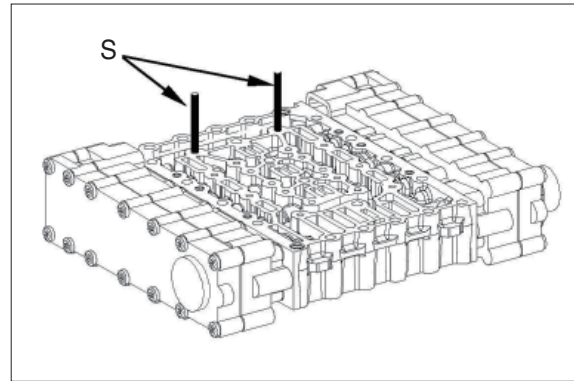
· Tightening torque (M10×1) :  
1.02 kgf · m (7.38 lbf · ft)



7709ACV35

- ⑩ Install two adjusting screws (S).

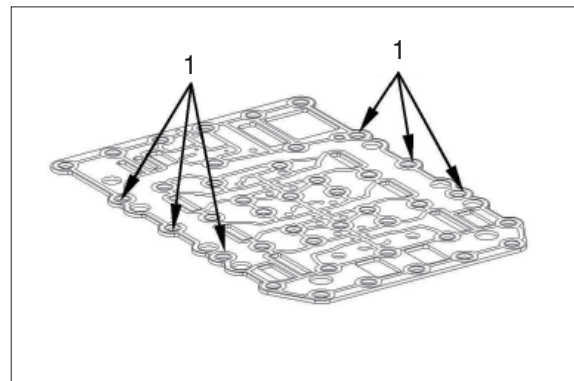
Adjusting screws 5870 204 063



7709ACV36

- ⑪ Flush-mount screens (1) into the holes of the sealing plate, see arrows.

※ Pay attention to the installation position  
- screens to show upwards (towards the duct plate).



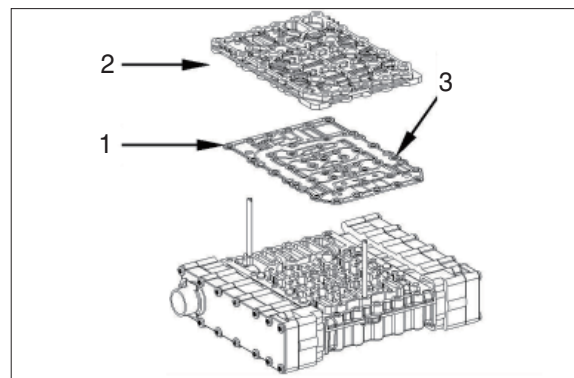
7709ACV37

- ⑫ Put on sealing plate (1) and duct plate (2).

※ Screens (3) to show upwards.

※ It is not permitted to reassemble the seal plate after opening the threaded joint shift unit/duct plate.

In case of repair it is always necessary to mount a new seal plate.

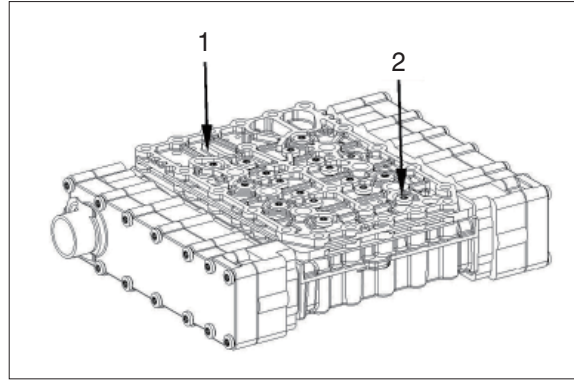


7709ACV38

- ⑲ Place duct plate (1) and fix it equally by means of torx screws (2).

· Tightening torque (M6/10.9×23) :  
1.07 kgf · m (7.74 lbf · ft)

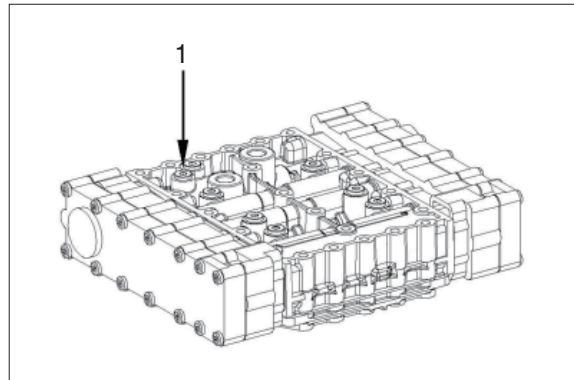
Socket wrench TX-27      5873 042 002



7709ACV39

- ⑳ Provide the screw plugs M10×1 with O-rings 8×1.5 (1) and install them.

· Tightening torque :  
0.61 kgf · m (4.43 lbf · ft)

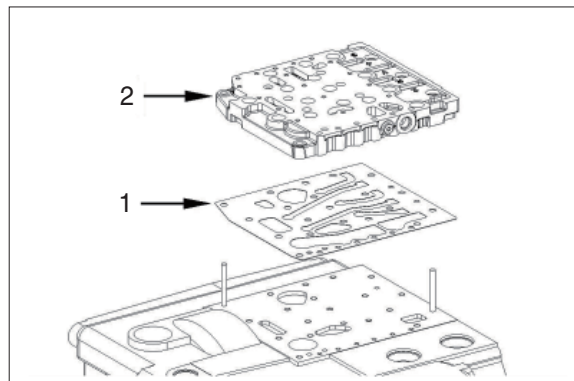


7709ACV40

- ㉑ Fit two adjusting screws.

Adjusting screws      5870 204 011

Place gasket (1) and duct plate (2) at the gearbox housing part until contact is obtained.



7709ACV41

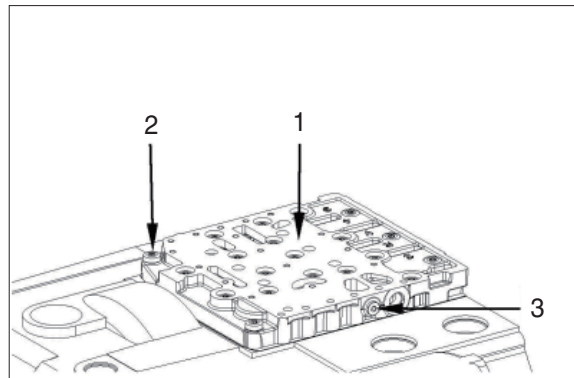
- ㉒ Fix duct plate (1) by means of torx screws (2).

· Tightening torque (M8/10.9×35) :  
2.35 kgf · m (17.0 lbf · ft)

Mount screw plug with O-ring 8×1.5 (3).

· Tightening torque (M10×1) :  
0.61 kgf · m (4.43 lbf · ft)

Socket wrench TX-40      5873 042 004



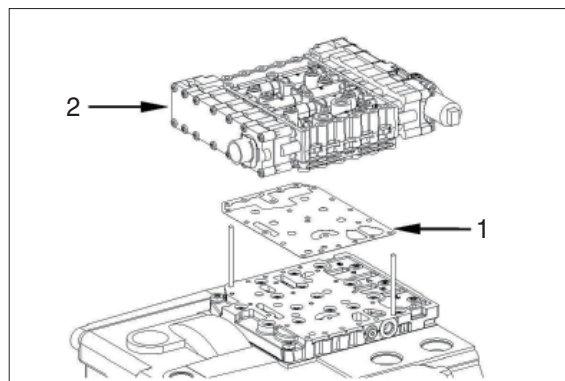
7709ACV42

②③ Fit two adjusting screws.

Adjusting screws 5870 204 063

Mount sealing plate (1) and electro-hydraulic control unit (2).

- ※ It is not permitted to reassemble the seal plate after opening the threaded joint shift unit/gearbox housing.  
In case of repair it is always necessary to mount a new seal plate.



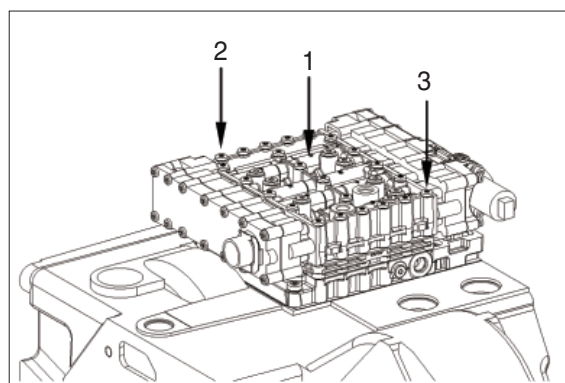
7709ACV43

②④ Fix electro-hydraulic control unit (1) equally by means of torx screws (2 and 3)

- Tightening torque (M6/10.9×76) :  
0.97 kgf · m (7.01 lbf · ft)
- Tightening torque (M6/10.9×100) :  
0.97 kgf · m (7.01 lbf · ft)

Socket wrench TX-27 5873 042 002

Reducing adapter 5870 656 056



7709ACV44

**Pipe - System pressure to lock-up clutch valve (5-speed transmission)**

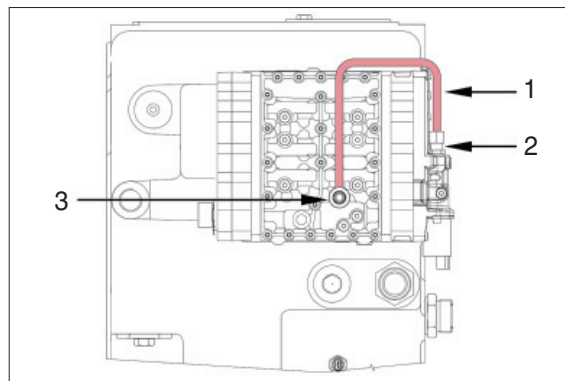
②⑤ Fix pipes (1) with hollow screws (3) and O-rings and screw nut (2).

Fit O-ring 13×2 on hollow screw (3), insert into eye of pipes, mount O-ring 18×2.5.

- Tightening torque :  
4.59 kgf · m (33.2 lbf · ft)

Fixing of screw nut (2).

- Tightening torque :  
3.57 kgf · m (25.8 lbf · ft)



7709ACV45

**Pipes - System pressure from lock-up clutch valve to lock-up clutch (5-speed transmission)**

②⑥ Fix pipe union (1).

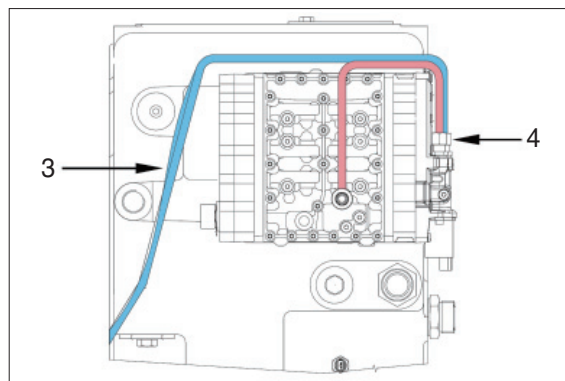
- Tightening torque :  
4.08 kgf · m (29.5 lbf · ft)

Fix connection socket (2).

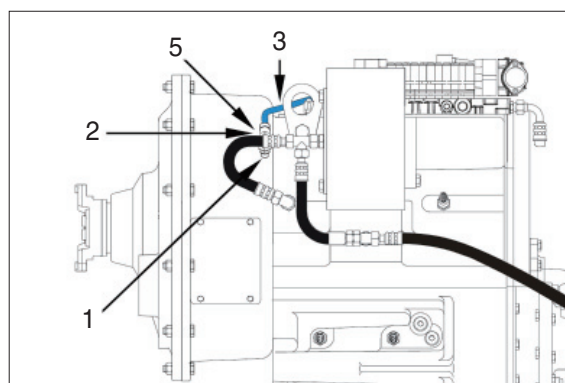
- Tightening torque :  
3.57 kgf · m (25.8 lbf · ft)

Fix pipes (3) with screw nut (4 and 5).

- Tightening torque :  
3.57 kgf · m (25.8 lbf · ft)

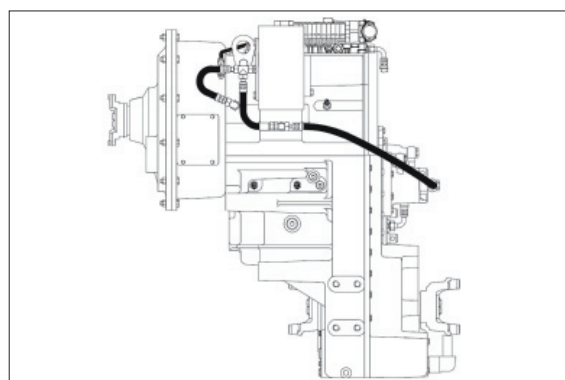


7709ACV46



7709ACV47

※ Before putting the transmission into operation, fill it with oil according to operation manual.



7709ACV48



## 2. TRANSMISSION

### 1) DISASSEMBLY

- (1) Fasten the complete transmission to the assembly truck.

※ Special tool

Assembly truck 5870 350 000

Holding fixture 5870 350 071

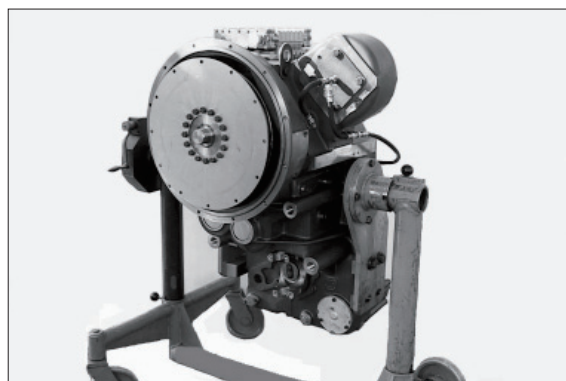


Figure 1

- (2) Remove the plug (arrow) and drain the oil. Then remove the oil cylinder.

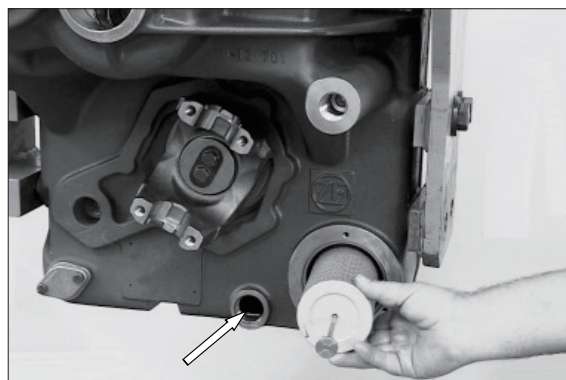


Figure 2

- (3) Remove all oil pipes, the complete gear shift system and the duct plate.

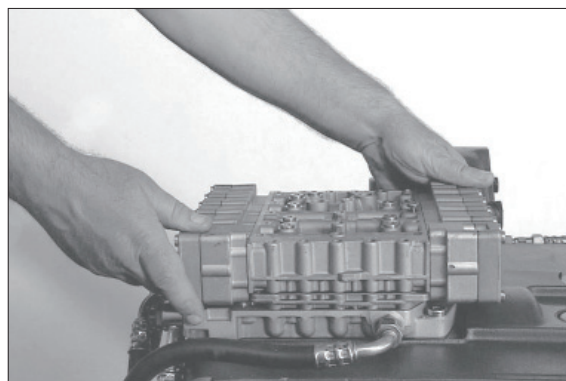


Figure 3

### Converter drive

- (1) By means of the lifting tackle separate the torque converter from the transmission.

※ Special tool

Eybolts assortment 5870 204 002

Lifting chain 5870 281 047

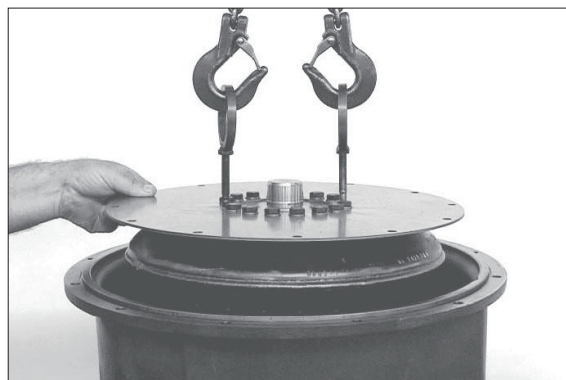


Figure 4

- (2) Loosen the bolt connection and by means of the forcing screws (3EA) separate the cover from the converter bell.

※ Special tool  
Forcing screws 5870 204 005

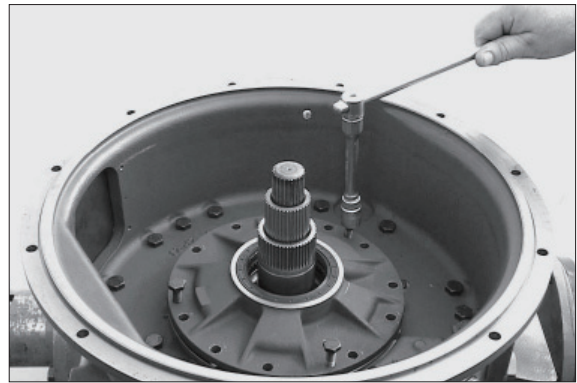


Figure 5

- (3) By means of the extractor pull the oil supply flange out of the converter bell.

※ Special tool  
Extractor 5870 000 089

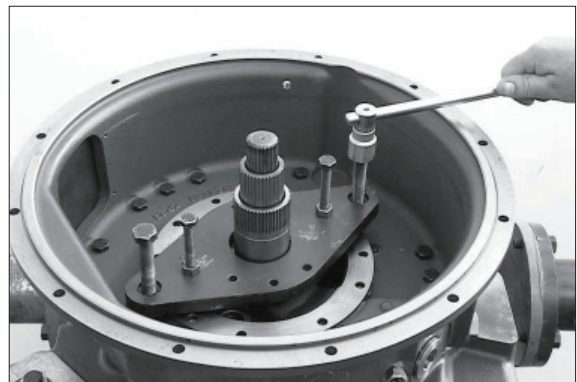


Figure 6

- (4) Remove the converter safety valve (arrow 1), if required.

※ Converter safety valve is fixed by means of slotted pin (arrow 2).



Figure 7

- (5) Loosen the bolt connection (M8 and M12) and by means of lifting tackle and pry bar set separate the coverter bell from the transmission housing.

※ Special tool  
Eyebolts assortment 5870 204 002  
Pry bar set 5870 345 036  
Lifting chain 5870 281 047



Figure 8

- (6) Remove the rectangular ring (arrow).



Figure 9

- (7) Press the input shaft out of the spur gear bearing. Remove the released bearing inner ring and the spur gear.

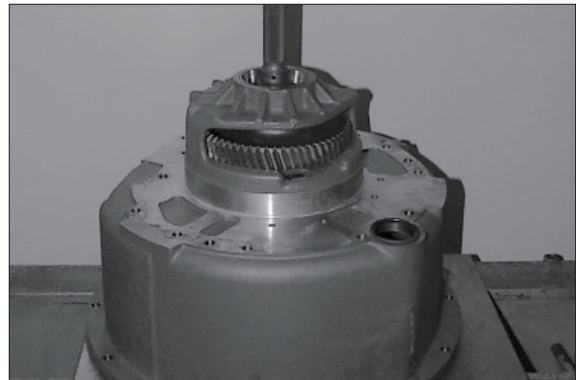


Figure10

- (8) Press off the bearing inner ring from the spur gear.

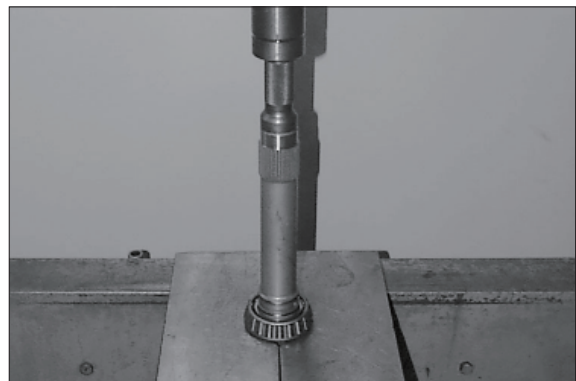


Figure11

- (9) Remove the converter pressure back-up valve.

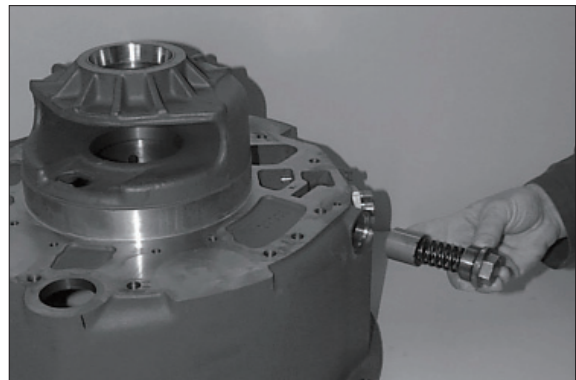


Figure 12

- (10) Remove the inductive transmitter.  
9 = n - Engine

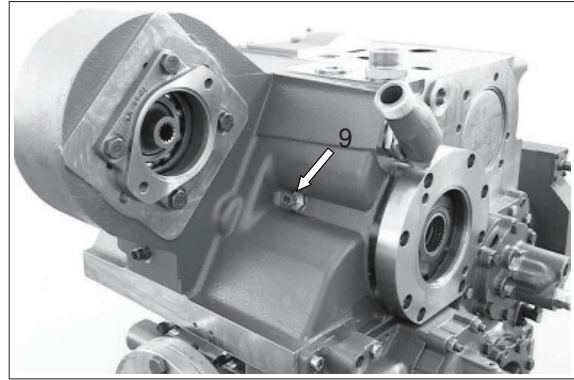


Figure 13

**Input shaft-pump/power take-off (the 1st power take-off)**

- (1) Loosen the cap screw.

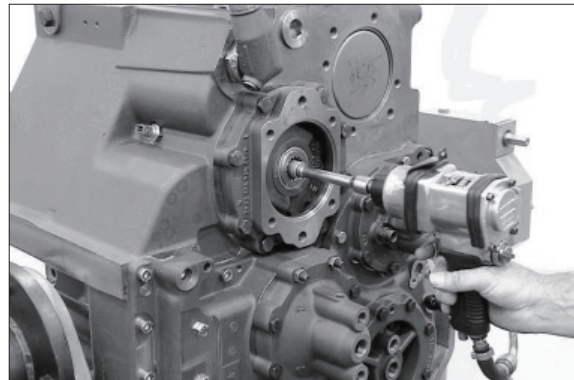


Figure 21

- (2) Remove the cap screw and clamping plate.

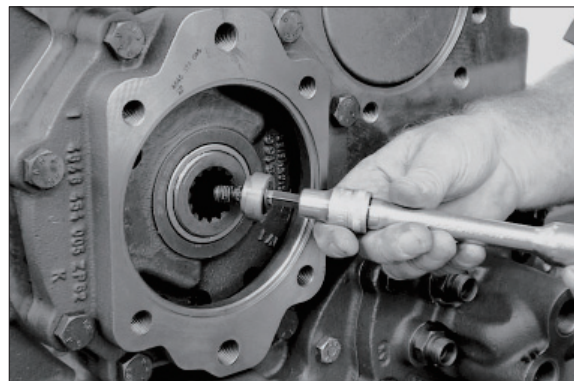


Figure 22

- (3) Press the input shaft out of the bearing.

※ Pay attention to released input shaft as well as shims.

※ Special tool

Extractor

5870 000 065

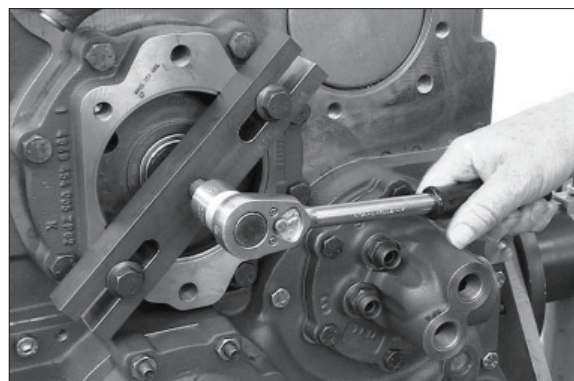


Figure 23



- (4) Snap out the rectangular ring (arrow 1) and remove both shims (arrow 2).

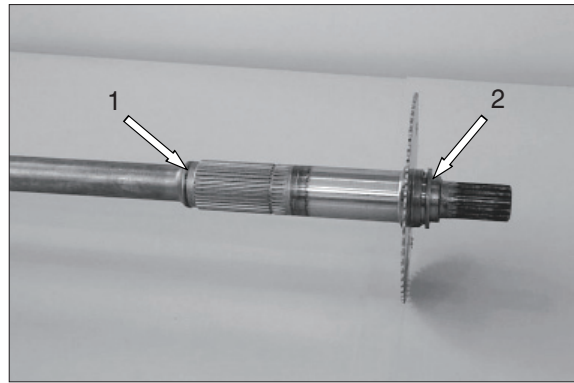


Figure 24

### Transmission pump

- (1) Loosen the cap and hexagon screws (depending on the version) respectively and separate the pump flange from the housing.

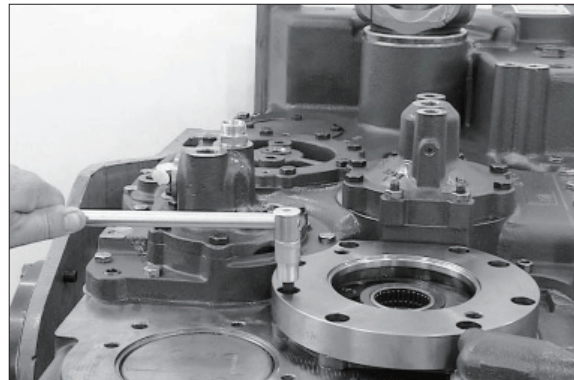


Figure 25

- (2) Loosen the cap screws (4EA / M8).  
Position the extractor on the transmission pump and fasten it by means of screws (M8 × 65) to the transmission pump. Then pull out the pump from the housing bore.

※ Extracting is supported by slightly tapping onto the transmission housing.

※ Special tool

Extractor 5870 000 089

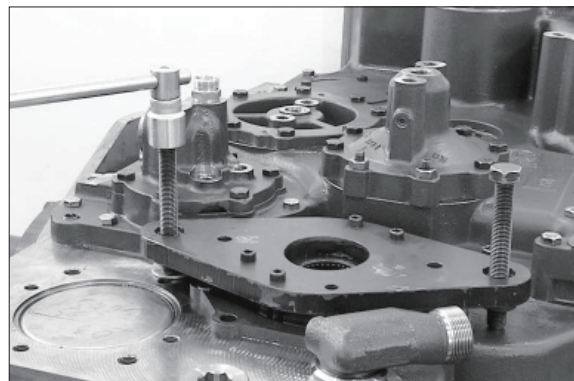


Figure 26

### Remove the bearing outer ring (2nd/3rd and 4th power take-off)

- (3) Pull out the bearing outer ring from the bore.

※ Special tool

Internal extractor 5870 300 017

Counter-support 5870 300 009



Figure 27

**Remove the ball bearing and the driver**  
(1st power take-off, figure 28~29)

(4) Snap out the retaining ring.



Figure 28

(5) Press out the driver with ball bearing from the bearing bore.  
Then separate the ball bearing from the driver.

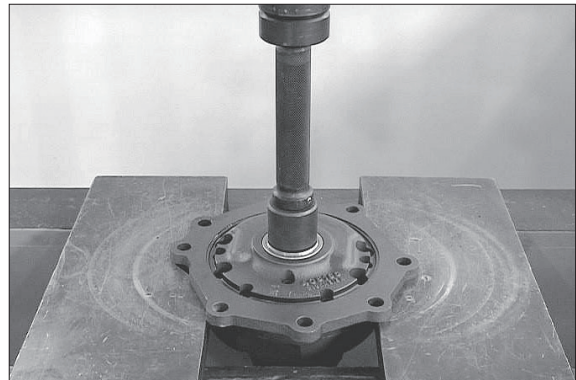


Figure 29

(6) Loosen the cap screws, take off the pump cover and remove the rotor set.

**▲ If marks due to running-in are found on the pump housing or housing cover, the complete pump is to be replaced.**

Then assemble the rotor set with the chamfer on the tooth tip showing downwards and install the housing cover again.

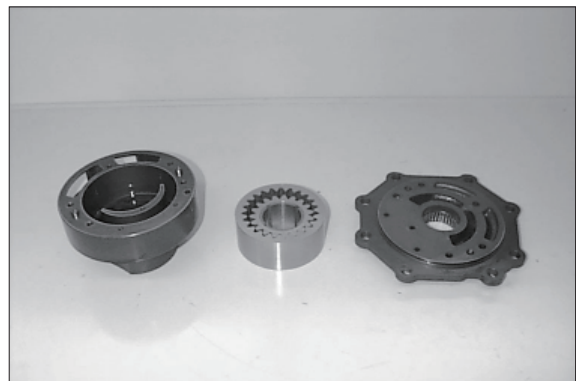


Figure 30

- Torque limit (M8/8.8) :  
2.35 kgf · m (17.0 lbf · ft)
- Torque limit (M6/8.8) :  
0.97 kgf · m (7.01 lbf · ft)

### 3rd/and 4th power take-off

- (7) Remove the screw-in sleeve (arrow).

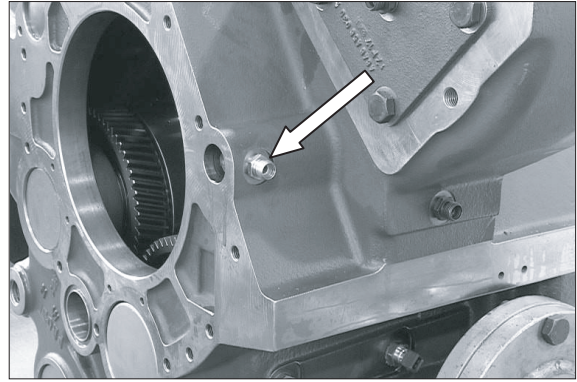


Figure 31

- (8) Sealing cap is to be drilled centrally and thread M8 to be cut.  
By means of the striker expel the sealing cap from the housing bore.

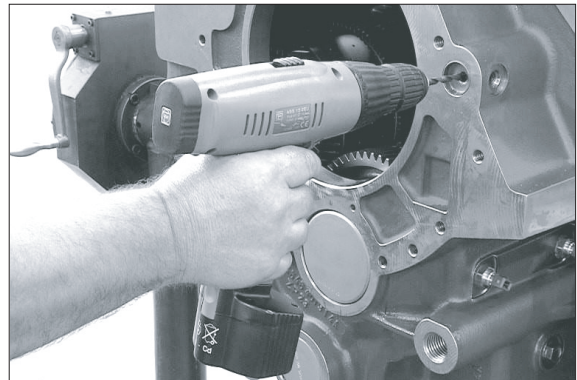


Figure 32

- (9) By means of the striker expel the pin from the housing bore (figure 33) and remove the complete spur gear (figure 34).

※ Pay attention to released shim (2).  
Striker 5870 650 001

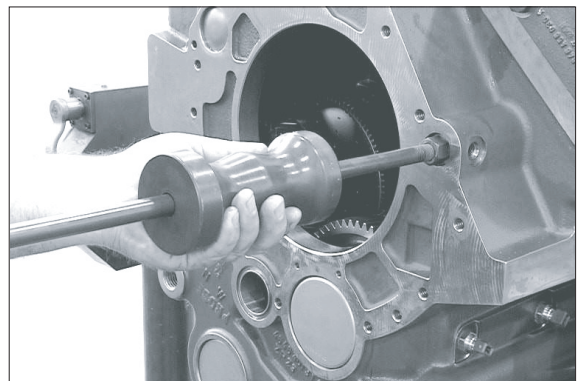


Figure 33

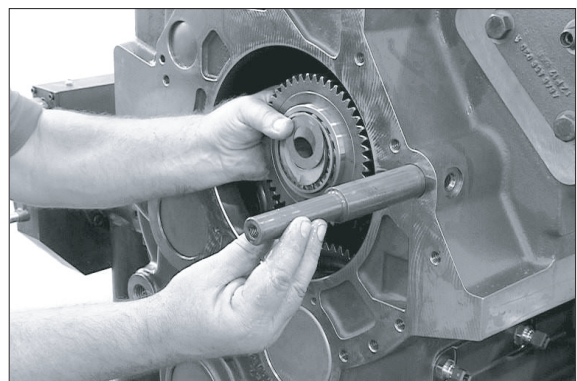


Figure 34

- (10) Loosen the hexagon screws and remove the cover.

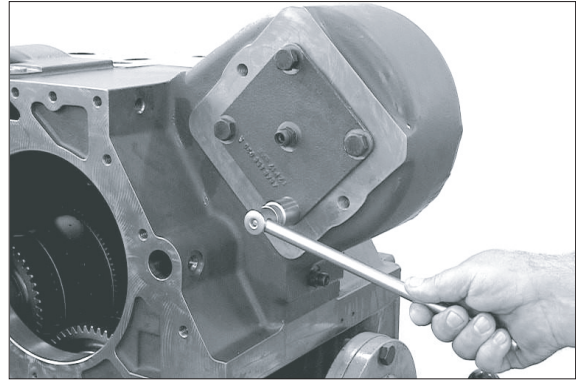


Figure 35

- (11) Remove the pump flange on the rear side and snap out the retaining ring.

Clamping pliers                      5870 900 021

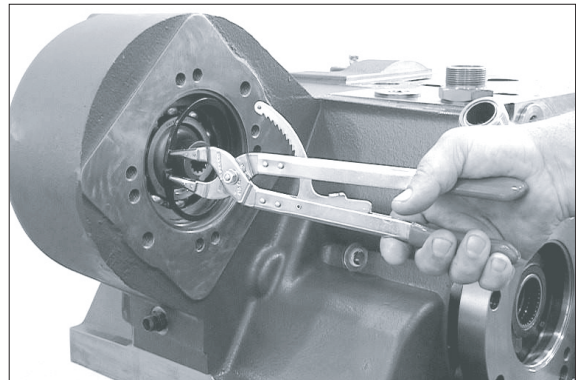


Figure 36

- (12) Expel the driver from the bearing bore and remove the released single components.

Plastic hammer                      5870 280 004

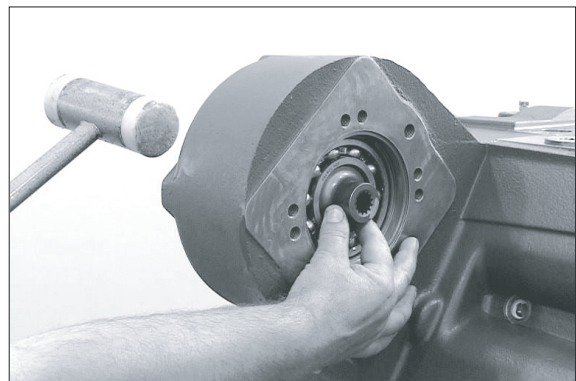


Figure 37



### Layshaft

- (1) Remove the sealing cover and loosen the hexagon screw.

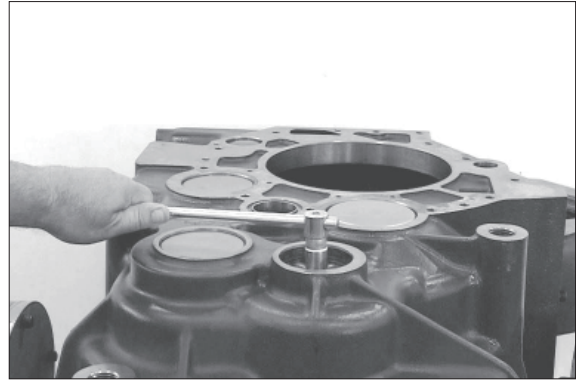


Figure 38

- (2) Expel the idler shaft by means of the striker from the housing bore and layshaft bearing respectively.

Striker

5870 650 014

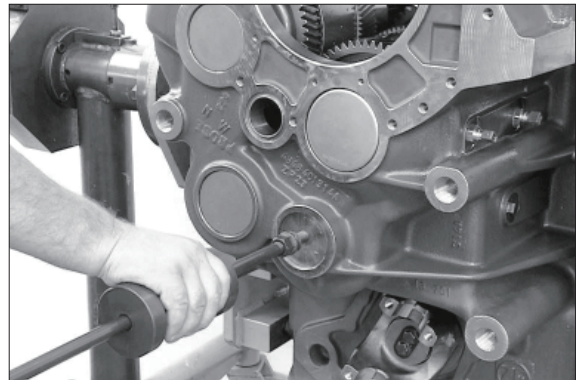


Figure 39

### Removal of inductive and speed transmitter (figure 40~41)

14 = n - Turbine

5 = n - Internal speed input

13 = n - Output (speed transmitter)

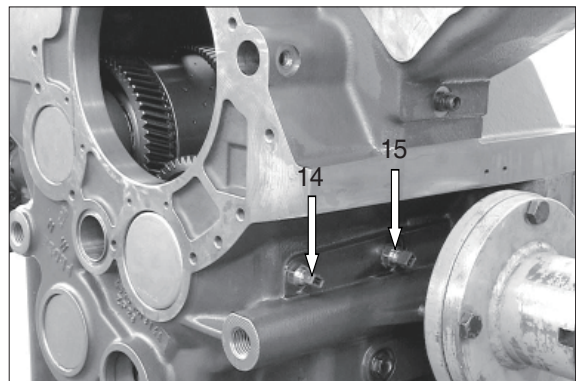


Figure 40

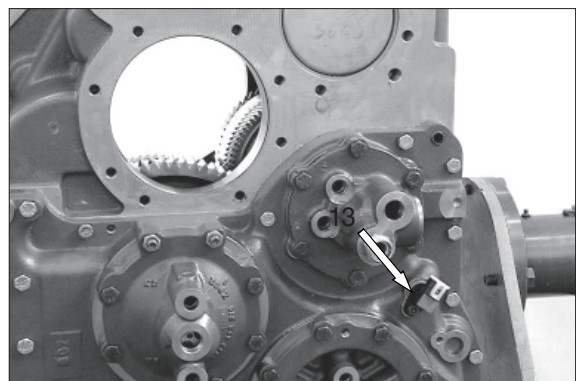


Figure 41

## Output

### Converter side :

Remove the lock plate. Loosen hexagon screws and take off the output flange. Rotate the housing by 180° and remove the output flange on the housing rear side.

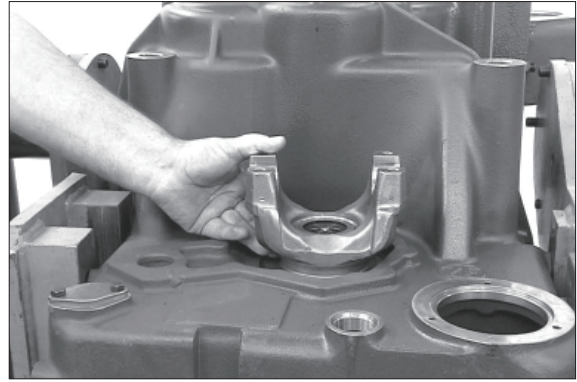


Figure 42

## Transmission rear side

**⚠** For working on the brake system observe the instructions and specifications of the brake manufacturer.

(1) Unscrew the screw cap.

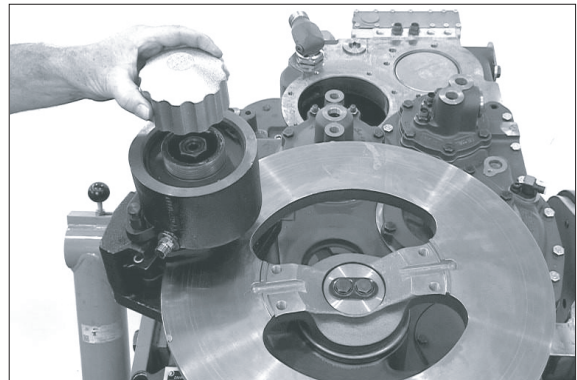


Figure 43

(2) Loosen the counternut and unscrew the adjusting screw in counterclockwise direction until the brake disc is released.

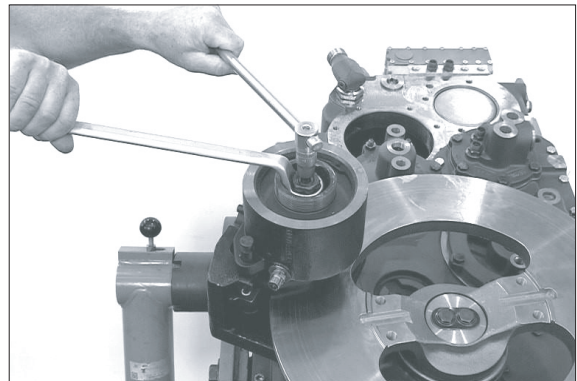


Figure 44

(3) Loosen the cap screws and separate the complete brake from the transmission housing. Remove the lock plate. Loosen the hexagon screws and separate the output flange/brake disc from the output shaft.

※ (S) Socket spanner                      5870 656 047



Figure 45

## Removal of the clutches and layshaft

- (1) Loosen the hexagon screws and expel the bearing cover KV/K1 by means of the striker from the housing bore.  
Remove the bearing cover KR/K2 (arrow) analogously.

※ Mark the installation location of the bearing cover.

※ Special tool

Threaded insert 5870 204 069

Striker 5870 650 014

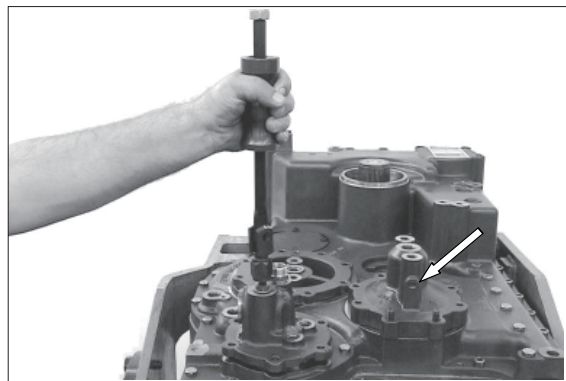


Figure 46

- (2) Pull out the bearing cover K4/K3 by means of the forcing screws from the housing bore.

※ Special tool

Forcing screws 5870 204 005

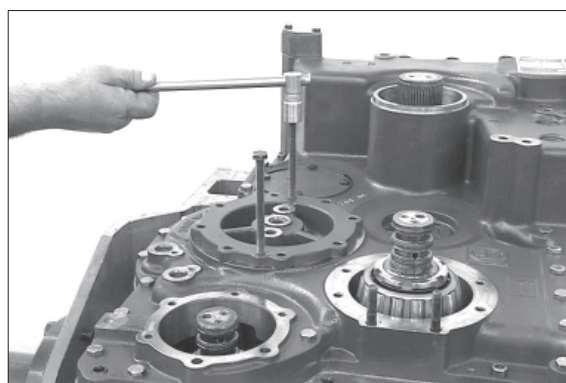


Figure 47

- (3) Separate the bearing inner ring from bearing cover K4/K3.

※ Special tool

Three-armed puller 5870 971 003



Figure 48

- (4) Loosen the bolt connection.  
Separate the housing cover from the housing by equally tightening both forcing screws (arrow 1 and 2) as well as the threaded spindle (arrow 3).

※ Special tool

Internal hex spanner, size 8 5870 290 003

Forcing screws 5870 204 005

Lifting tackle 5870 281 061

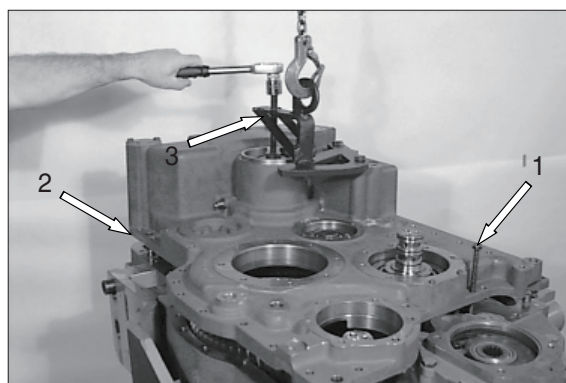


Figure 49



- (5) Expel the output shaft from the output gear.

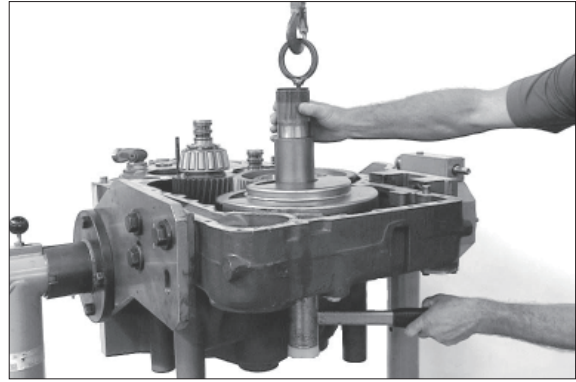


Figure 50

- (6) Loosen the hexagon screws and remove the oil baffle.  
Lift the output gear out of the transmission housing (figure).

※ Special tool  
Stop washer 5870 100 054  
Eyebolts assortment 5870 204 002

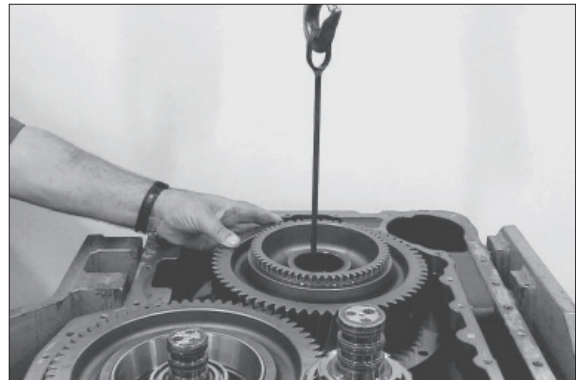


Figure 51

- (7) Remove the bearing inner ring from the output gear.

※ Special tool  
Three-armed puller 5870 971 003

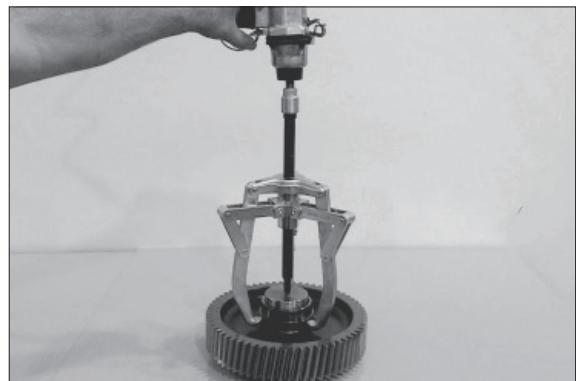


Figure 52

- (8) Take the roller bearing out of the housing bore and remove the oil baffle (arrow).

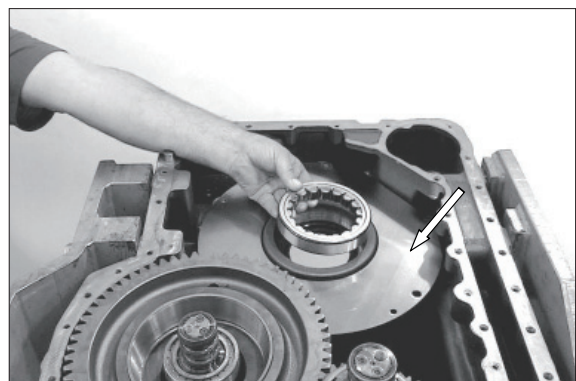


Figure 53

### Remove the multi-disc clutches

- ※ For removal of the single clutches observe the following sequence :

K4/K3 → KR/K2 → KV/K1.

For removal of clutch K4/K3, lift the clutch KR/K2 slightly and move it in direction of the arrow, see figure.

- ※ Special tool

Eyebolts assortment                      5870 204 002

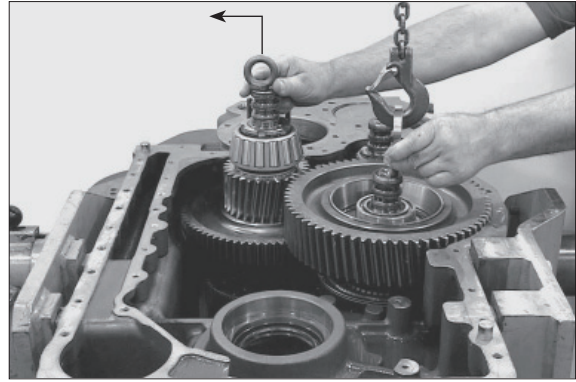


Figure 54

- (9) Opposite figure shows the clutches when removed.



Figure 55

- (10) Remove the layshaft gear.



Figure 56

### Dismantling of the Multi-Disc Clutch K3/K4

- (1) By means of clamping ring (S) fasten the clutch to the assembly truck.

※ Special tool  
Clamping ring 5870 654 033

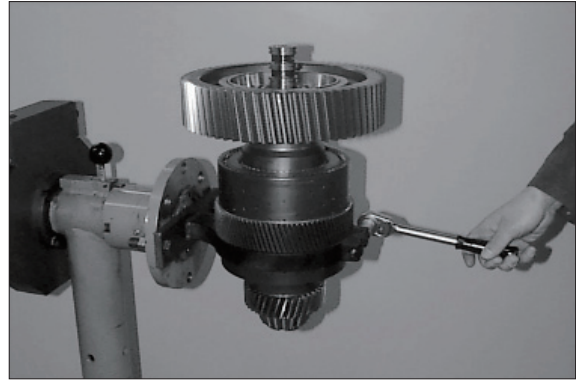


Figure 62

- (2) Pull off the roller bearing from the disc carrier.

※ Special tool  
Three-armed puller 5870 971 002



Figure 63

- (3) Separate spur gear K3 from the disc carrier.



Figure 64

- (4) Pull off the bearing inner ring from the disc carrier.

※ Special tool  
Rapid grip 5873 012 012  
Basic tool 5873 002 001



Figure 65

- (5) Squeeze out the snap ring.  
Remove the end shim and disc set K3.

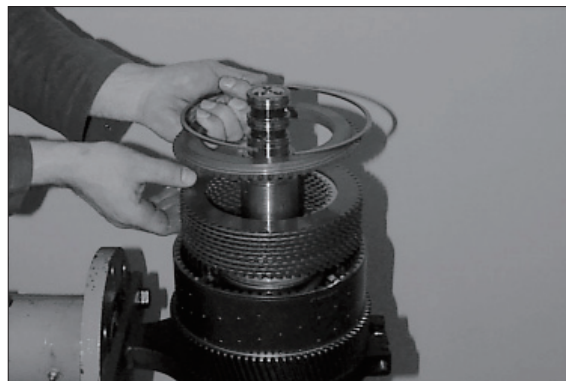


Figure 66

- (6) Rotate disc carrier by 90°.  
Loosen the slotted nut.

- ※ Special tool  
Slotted nut wrench 5870 401 118  
Slotted nut wrench 5870 401 115

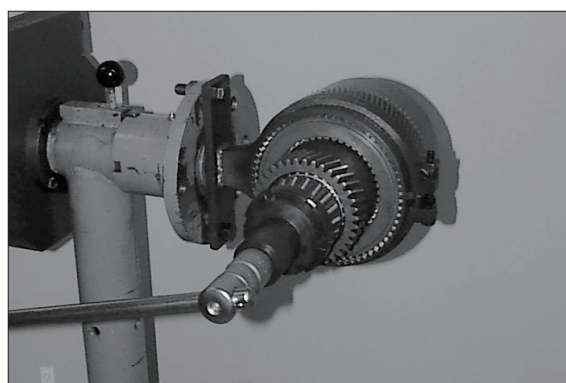


Figure 67

- (7) Rotate disc carrier by 90°.  
Pull off the taper roller bearing.

- ※ Special tool  
Gripping insert 5873 011 012  
Basic tool 5873 001 000



Figure 68

- (8) Pull off the spur gear K4 from the disc carrier.

- ※ Special tool  
Three-armed puller 5870 971 003

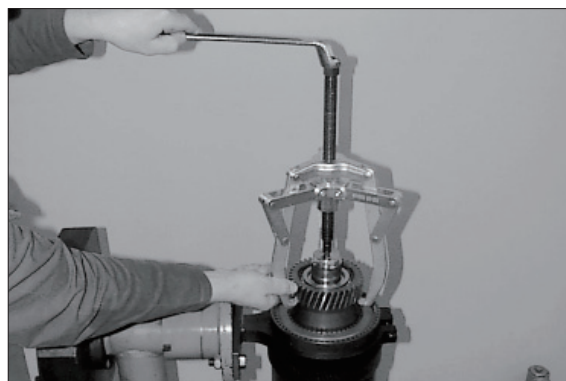


Figure 69



(9) Remove the ring.

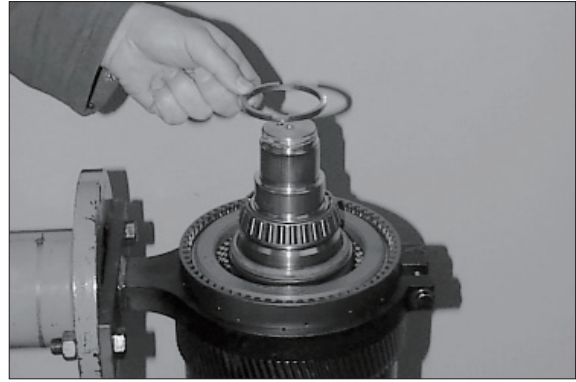


Figure 70

(10) Pull off the taper roller bearing.

※ Special tool  
Three-armed puller 5870 971 002

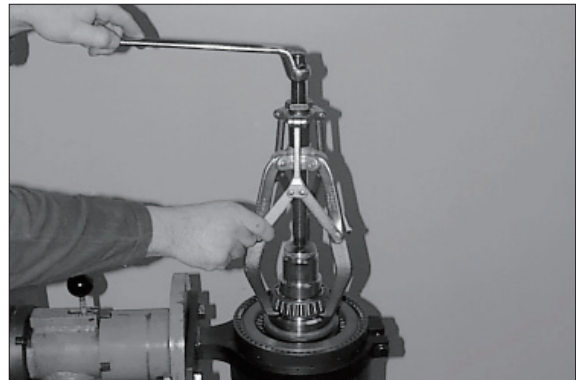


Figure 71

(11) Squeeze out the snap ring.  
Remove the end shim and the disc set K4.

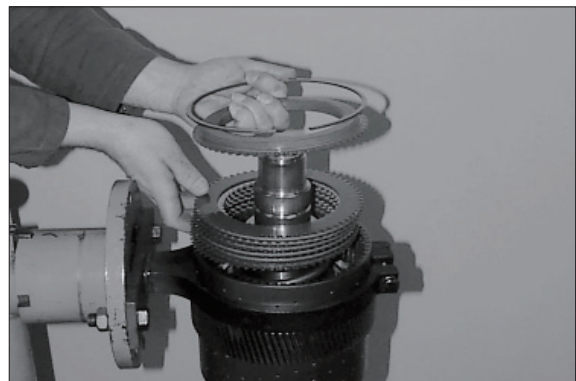


Figure 72

(12) Preload the compression spring by means of fixture.  
Squeeze out the snap ring and the released single components.  
Remove the opposite single components (K3 side) analogously.

※ Special tool  
Pressure piece 5870 345 072



Figure 73



- (13) Separate both pistons by means of compressed air from the disc carrier.

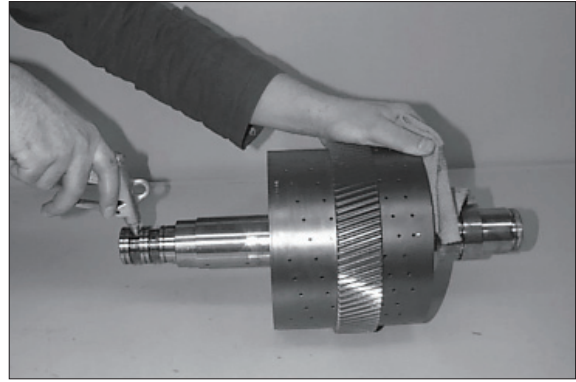


Figure 74

### Dismantling of the multi-disc clutch KR/K2

- (1) Fasten the clutch by means of clamping ring (arrow) on the assembly truck.

※ Special tool  
Clamping ring 5870 654 033

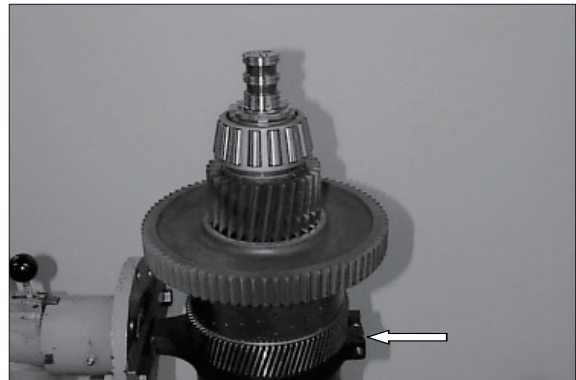


Figure 75

- (2) Rotate disc carrier by 90°.  
Loosen the slotted nut.

※ Special tool  
Slotted nut wrench 5870 401 099

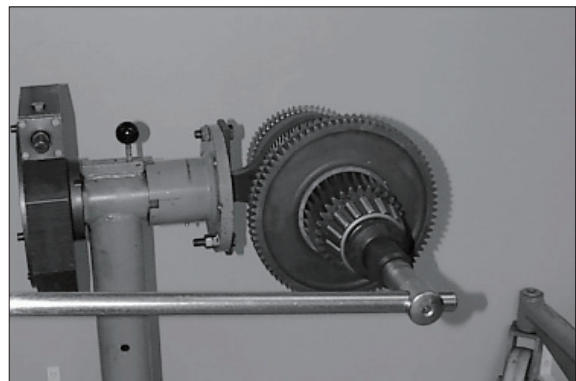


Figure 76

- (3) Pull off the taper roller bearing from the disc carrier.

※ Special tool  
Gripping insert 5873 012 018  
Basic tool 5873 002 001



Figure 77

- (4) Press off the spur gear K2 from the disc carrier.

▲ Pay attention to released disc carrier.

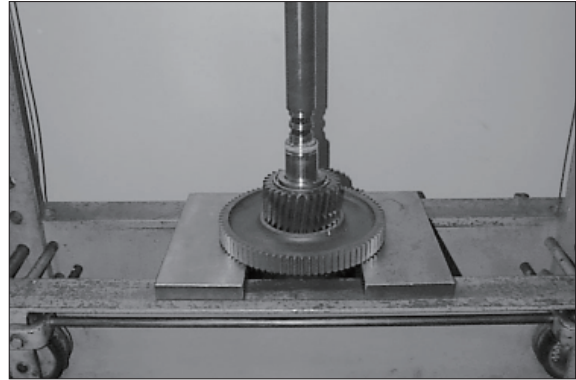


Figure 78

- (5) Fasten the disc carrier by means of clamping ring.  
Pull off the taper roller bearing from the disc carrier.

※ Special tool  
Clamping ring                    5870 654 033  
Gripping insert                5873 012 019  
Basic tool                        5873 002 001

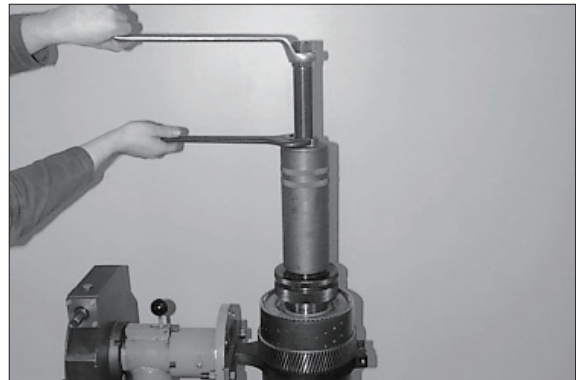


Figure 79

- (6) Squeeze out the snap ring.  
Remove the end shim and disc set K2.

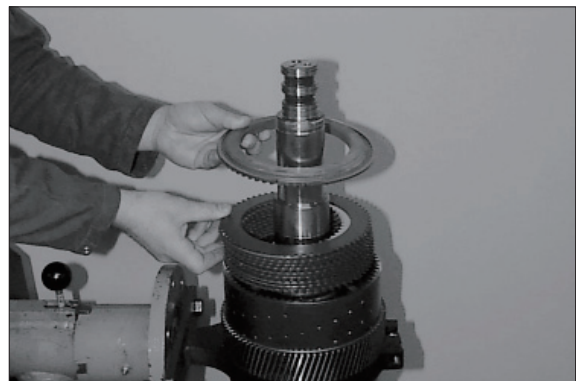


Figure 80

- (7) Rotate disc carrier by 90°.  
Loosen the slotted nut.

※ Special tool  
Slotted nut wrench            5870 401 099

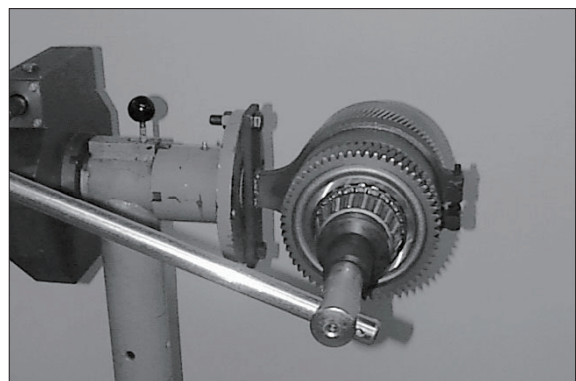


Figure 81

(8) Pull off the taper roller bearing from the disc carrier.

※ Special tool

Gripping insert 5873 002 044

Basic tool 5873 002 001

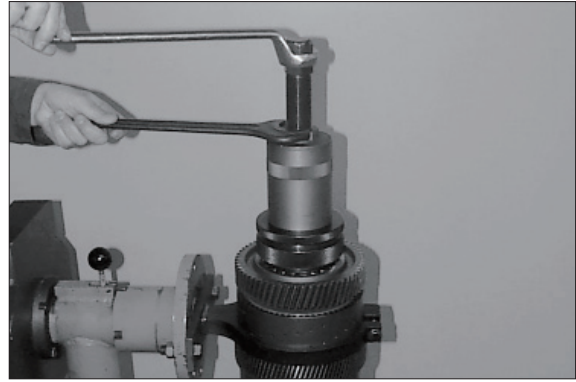


Figure 82

(9) Fasten spur gear KR by means of clamping ring (arrow) and pull it from the disc carrier.

※ Collar of the clamping ring must show upwards (to the spur gear).

※ Special tool

Three-armed puller 5870 971 003

Clamping ring 5870 654 045

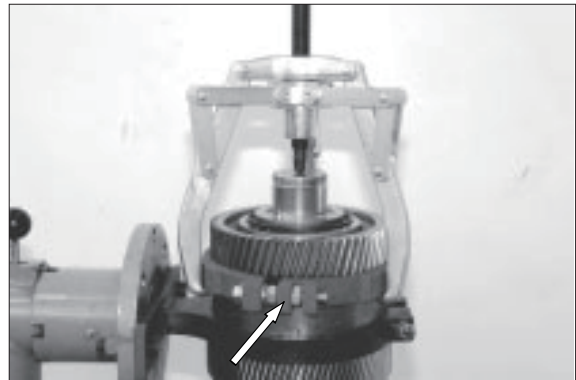


Figure 83

(10) Remove the ring.

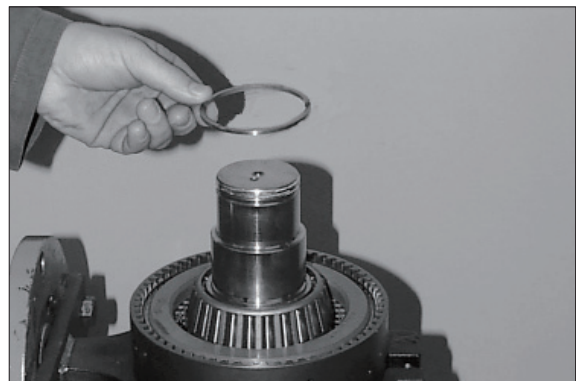


Figure 84

(11) Squeeze out the snap ring.  
Remove end shim and disc set KR.



Figure 85

(12) Pull off the taper roller bearing from the disc carrier.

※ Special tool

Gripping insert 5873 012 013

Basic tool 5873 002 001

Remove both piston (like described in figure 73 and 74)

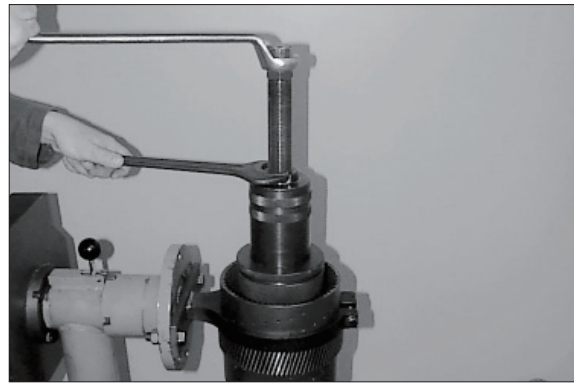


Figure 86

### Dismantling of the multi-disc clutch KV/K1

(1) Fasten clutch by means of clamping ring to the assembly truck.

Loosen the slotted nut (figure 87).

※ Special tool

Clamping ring 5870 654 033

Slotted nut wrench 5870 401 118

Slotted nut wrench 5870 401 099

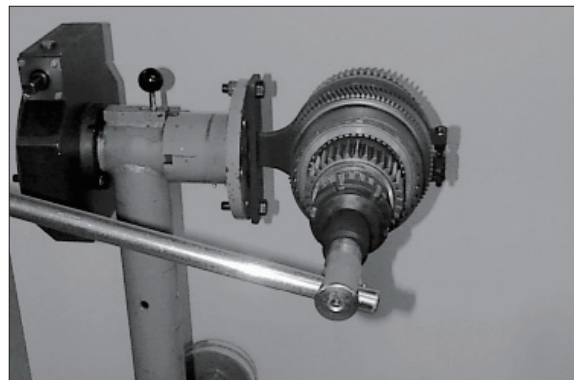


Figure 87

(2) Pull off the taper roller bearing from the disc carrier.

※ Special tool

Gripping insert 5873 001 023

Basic tool 5873 001 000

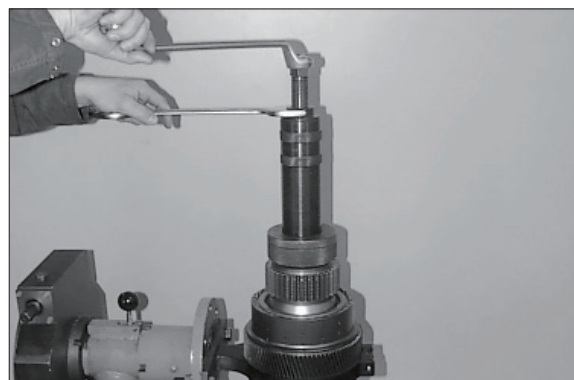


Figure 88

(3) Remove the shim.

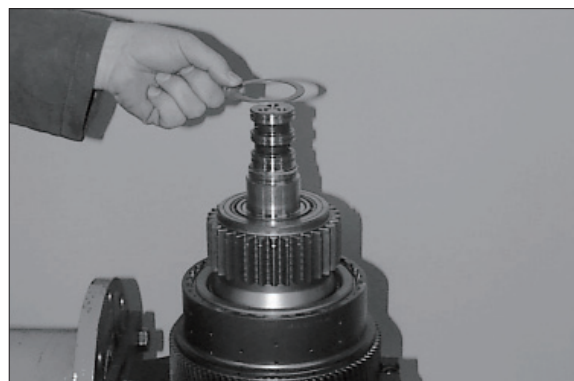


Figure 89



(4) Pull off spur gear K1 from the disc carrier.

※ Special tool

Three-armed puller 5870 971 003

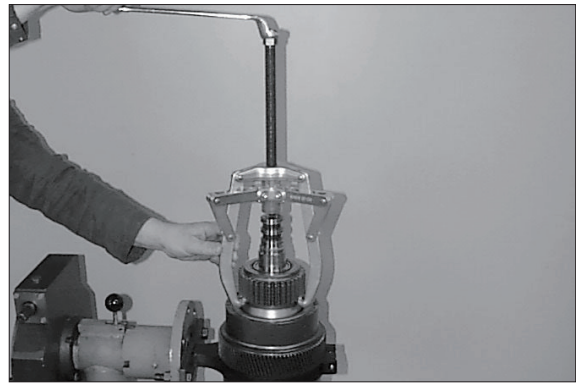


Figure 90

(5) Opposite figure shows the spur gear bearing K1.

Bearing (1) can only be obtained as complete part.

▲ If it is necessary to remove the clutch-pack-sided ball bearing (arrow or Figure 93 and 94), the complete bearing (1) has to be removed.

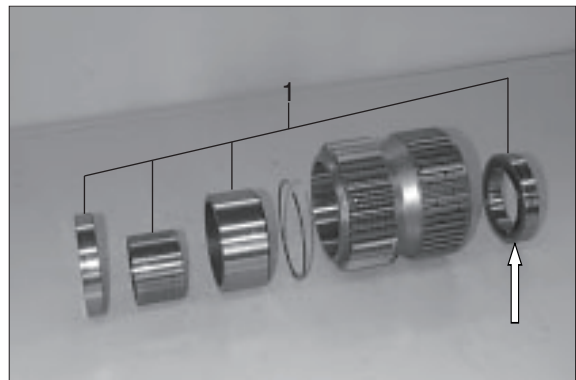


Figure 91

(6) Take off the bush.

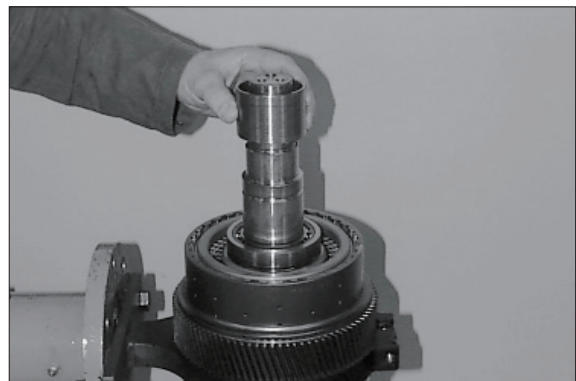


Figure 92

(7) Pull off the ball bearing from the disc carrier (figure 93 and 94).

※ Pay attention to released balls.



Figure 93

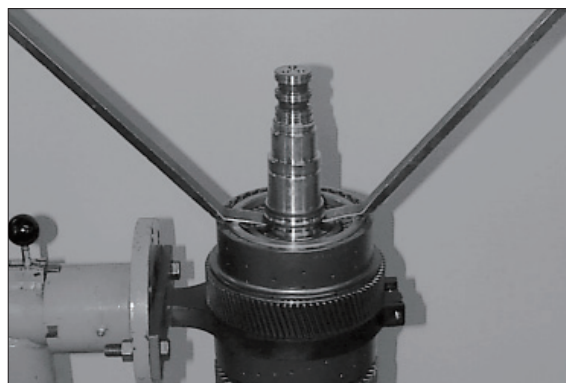


Figure 94

- (8) Squeeze out the snap ring.  
Remove end shim and disc set K1.

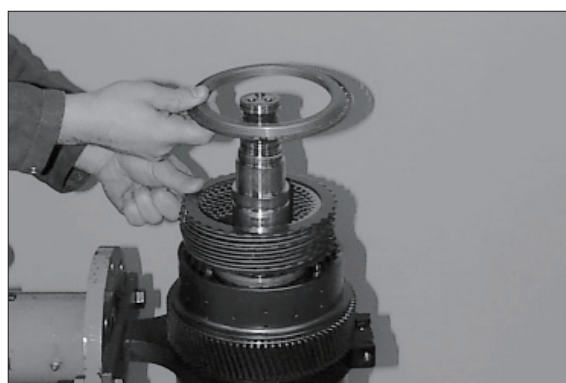


Figure 95

- (9) Rotate disc carrier by 90°.  
Loosen the slotted nut.

- ※ Special tool  
Slotted nut wrench                      5870 401 118  
Slotted nut wrench                      5870 401 115

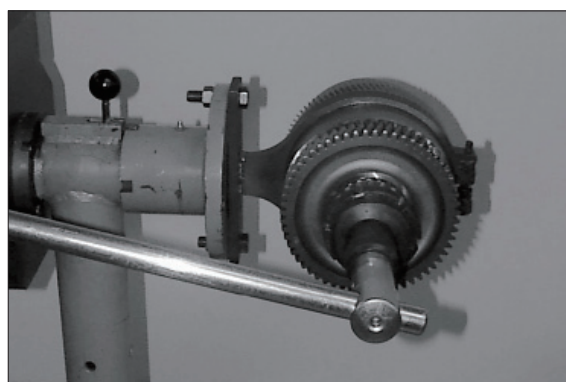


Figure 96

- (10) Pull off the taper roller bearing from the  
disc carrier.

- ※ Special tool  
Gripping insert                          5873 001 034  
Basic tool                                  5873 001 000



Figure 97

(11) Pull off spur gear KV from the disc carrier.

※ Special tool

Three-armed puller 5870 971 003

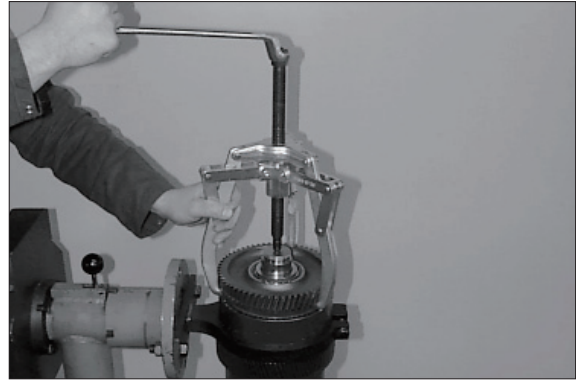


Figure 98

(12) Remove the ring.

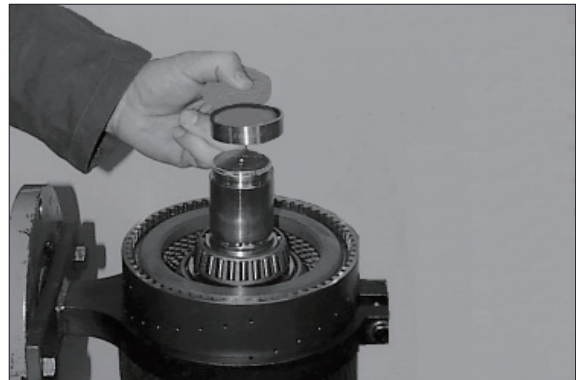


Figure 99

(13) Pull off the taper roller bearing from the disc carrier (figure 100).

Squeeze out the snap ring.

Remove end shim and disc set KV.

Remove both pistons (like described in Figure 73 and 74).

※ Special tool

Gripping insert 5873 001 034

Basic tool 5873 001 000

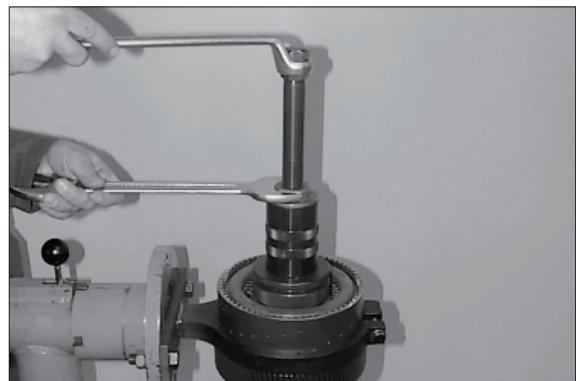
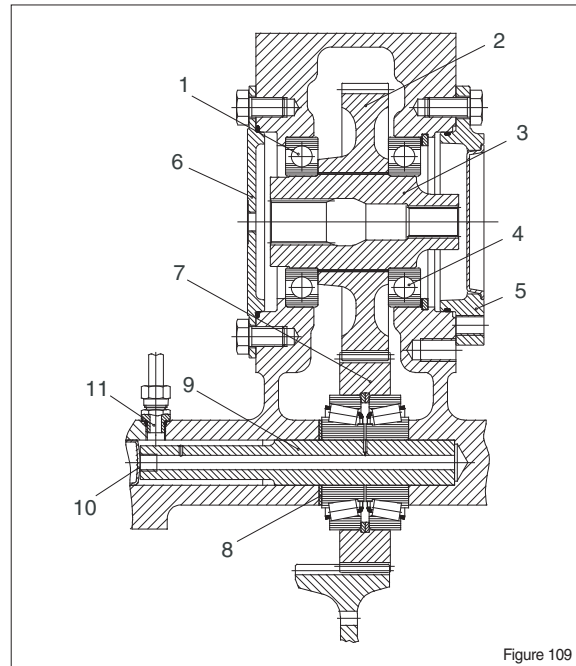


Figure 100

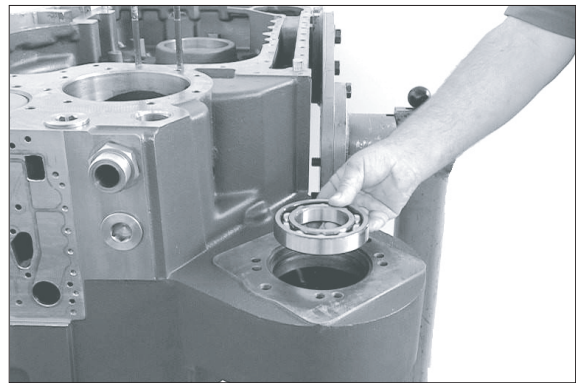
## 2) ASSEMBLY

### 3rd/4th power take-off

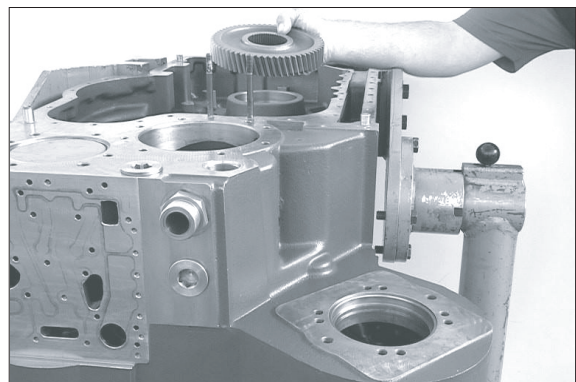
- 1 = Ball bearing
- 2 = Spur gear
- 3 = Driver
- 4 = Ball bearing
- 5 = Pump flange
- 6 = Cover
- 7 = Intermediate gear
- 8 = Shim
- 9 = Pin
- 10 = Sealing cover
- 11 = Orifice



- (1) Insert the ball bearing (1) into the housing bore until contact.



- (2) Position spur gear (2).
- ※ Pay attention to the installation position, see sketch (figure 109).





- (3) Heat the ball bearing (inner ring) and bore of the gear respectively.

※ (S) Hot-air blower 230V      5870 221 500  
Hot-air blower 115V      5870 221 501

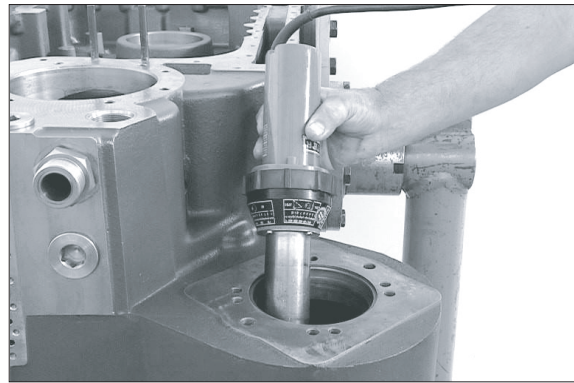


Figure 112

- (4) Align the spur gear centrally and insert the driver (3) until contact.

※ Pay attention to the installation position, also see sketch (figure 109).

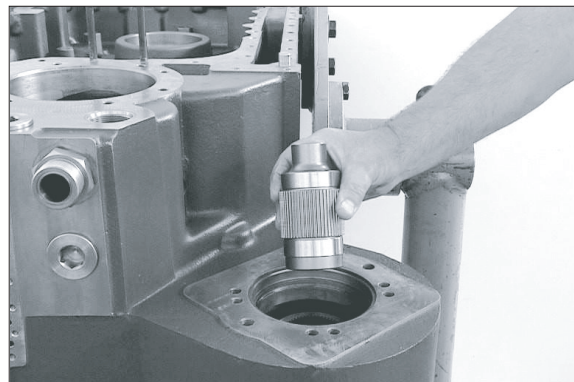


Figure 113

- (5) Install the ball bearing (4) by means of fixture until contact.

※ Pay attention to perfect contact of the ball bearing.

Fixture      5870 000 083

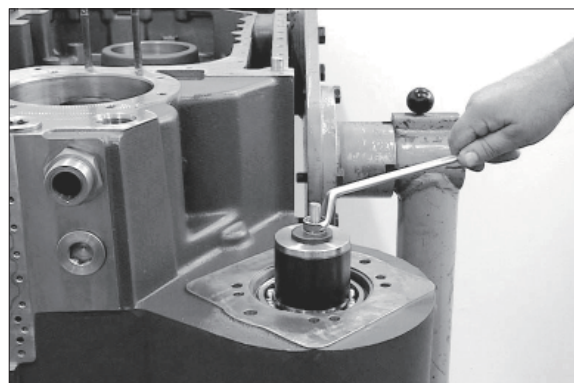


Figure 114

**Adjust the axial play of power take-off bearing  
= 0.2~0.3 mm (figure 115~116)**

- (6) Fasten ball bearing by means of shim s = 1.80 mm (empirical value) and retaining ring.

Clamping pliers      5870 900 021



Figure 115

(7) Check the axial play by means of feeler gauge.

※ If different from the required axial play = 0.2~0.3 mm this is to be corrected with the corresponding shim.

Feeler gauge                      5870 200 112

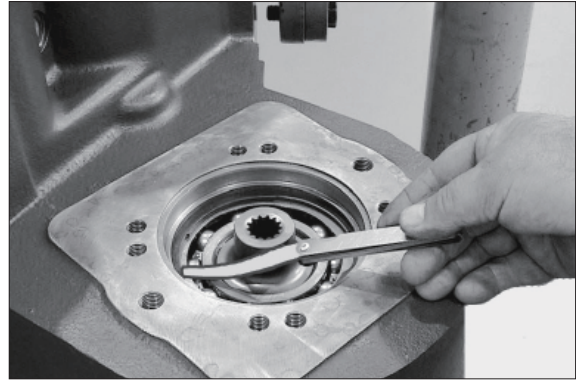


Figure 116

(8) Place the O-ring (arrow) in the annular groove of the pumpflange (5) and grease it.

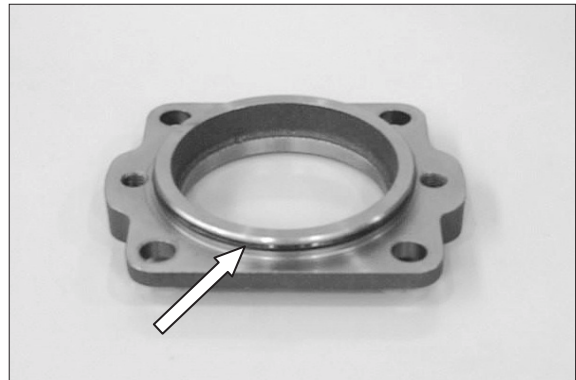


Figure 117

(9) Fasten the pump flange (5) by means of hexagon screws.

Tightening torque (M14/8.8) : 12.7 kgf · m  
(92.2 lbf · ft)

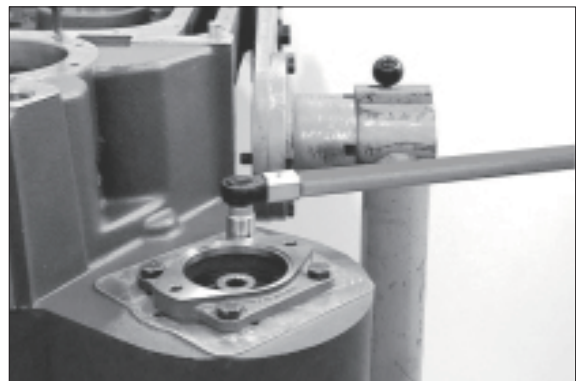


Figure 118

### Converter side

(10) Place the O-ring (arrow) with assembly grease in the recess of the housing bore.

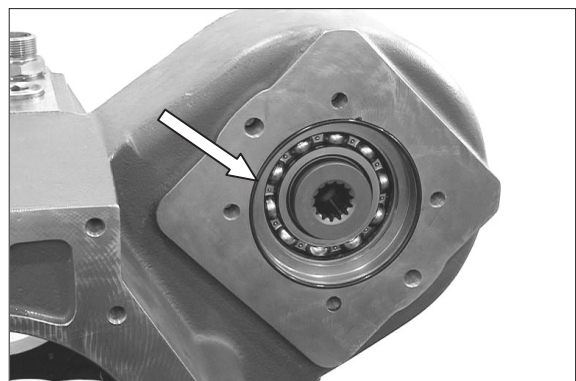


Figure 119

(11) Fasten the cover (6) with hexagon screws.

Tightening torque (M14/8.8) : 12.7 kgf · m  
(92.2 lbf · ft)

Provide the orifice (arrow) with a new sealing ring (CU) and install it.

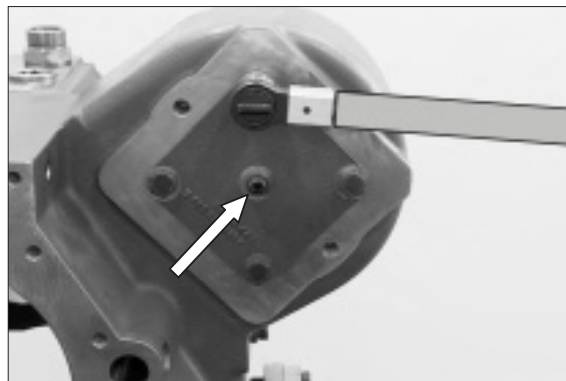


Figure 120

(12) Preassemble the intermediate gear (7) according to figure 121.

※ Exact locating of the single components to be ensured by pressing

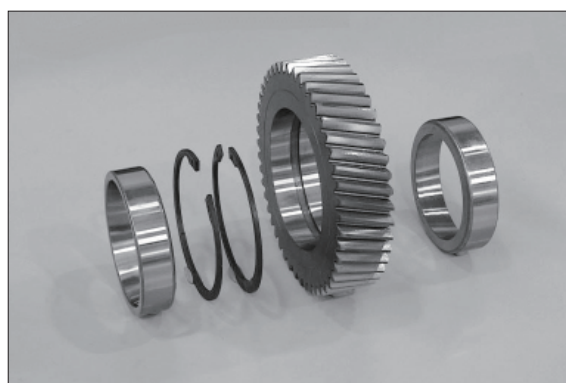


Figure 121

(13) Put in the bearing inner rings and position the intermediate gear (7), see arrow.

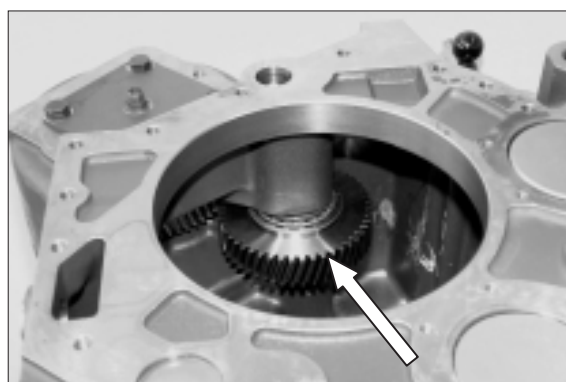


Figure 122

(14) Adjust the axial play-intermediate gear bearing max. 0.1 mm (figure 123~124)

Determine the gap size by means of feeler gauge (arrow).

Dim I e.g. .... 1.25 mm

**Example**

Dim I (gap size) ..... 1.25 mm

Axial play (0~0.1 mm) e.g. .... - 0.05 mm

resulting shim e.g. s = 1.20 mm

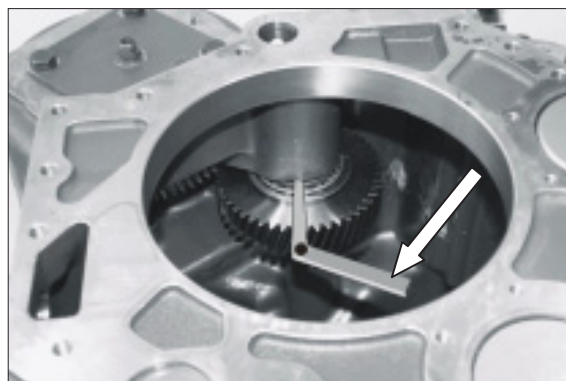


Figure 123

Feeler gauge

5870 200 112

(15) Install the corresponding shim (8) e.g.  $s = 1.20 \text{ mm}$  (arrow).

※ Install shim on the converter side

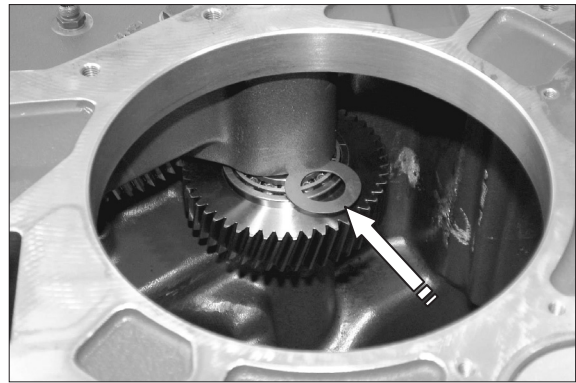


Figure 124

(16) Align the single components centrically. Undercool the pin (9) and install it until contact.



Figure 125

(17) Flush-mount the sealing cover (10) with the concave side showing upwards (arrow 1).

※ Wet contact face of the sealing cover with loctite (type No.262).

※ Provide orifice (11) with a new O-ring and install it (arrow 2).

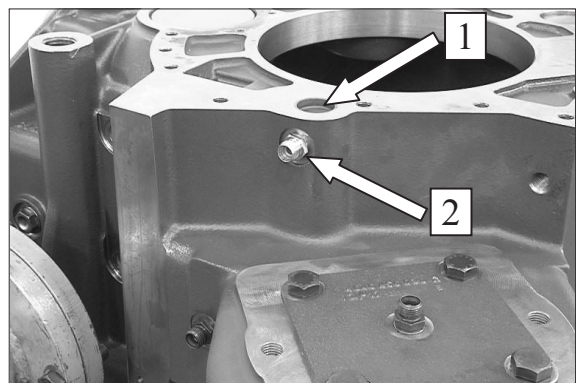


Figure 126

## Assembly of the multi-disc clutch K4/K3

The following sketch shows the clutch sectioning

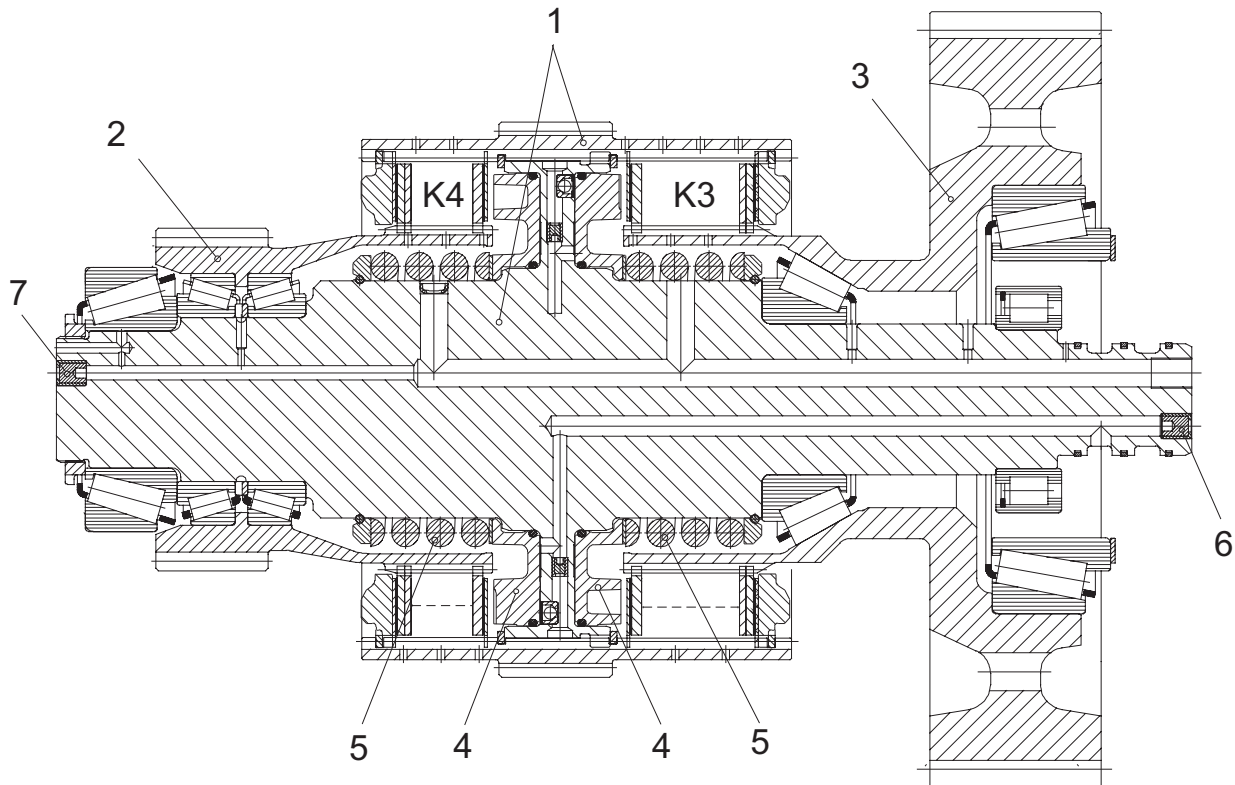


Figure 127

- |   |                    |    |                      |   |                    |
|---|--------------------|----|----------------------|---|--------------------|
| 1 | Disc carrier(assy) | K4 | Multi-disc clutch K4 | 5 | Compression spring |
| 2 | Spur gear K4       | K3 | Multi-disc clutch K3 | 6 | Plug 2EA           |
| 3 | Spur gear K3       | 4  | Piston               | 7 | Plug 1EA           |

※ Observe the installation position of the single components for the following assembly.



- (1) Lift the disc carrier with the K4-side showing downwards into the clamping ring and fasten it.  
Rotate disc carrier by 180°.

※ Special tool  
Clamping ring 5870 654 033

▲ To install new disc carriers the finished bores have to be sealed with plugs.  
Installation position, see arrow, figure 128 and 129.

※ Special tool  
Hand inserting tool 5870 320 014  
Ratchet spanner 5870 320 018

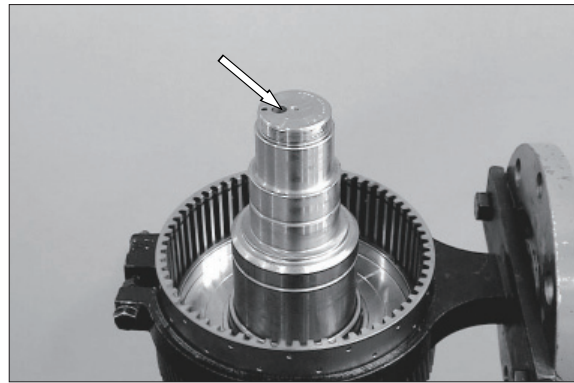


Figure 128

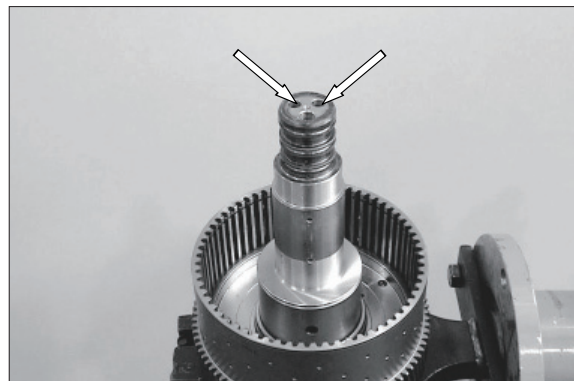


Figure 129

- (2) Flush-mount the drain valve (arrow) with the chamfer showing downwards.

※ Special tool  
Inserting tool 5870 320 019

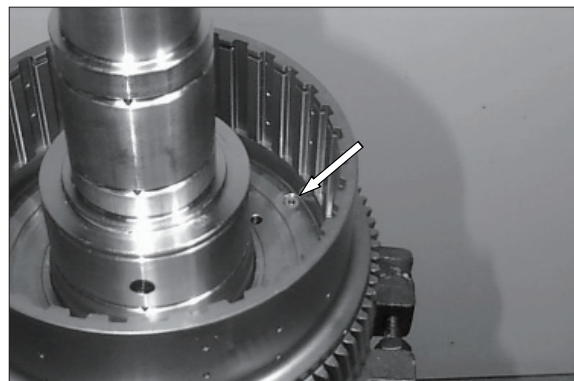


Figure 130

- (3) Put both O-rings **scroll-free** into the annular grooves of the piston, see arrows.

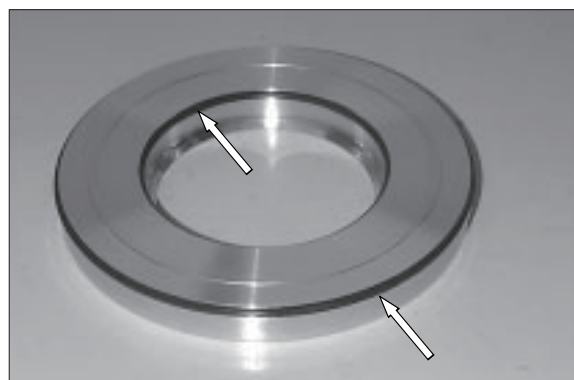


Figure 131

- (4) Oil the O-rings and the piston contact surface.

Install K3 piston **equally** until contact.

- ※ Observe the installation position of the piston, see figure.

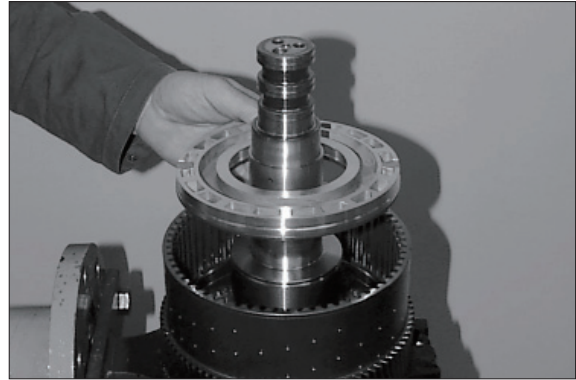


Figure 132

- (5) Install spacer and compression spring.

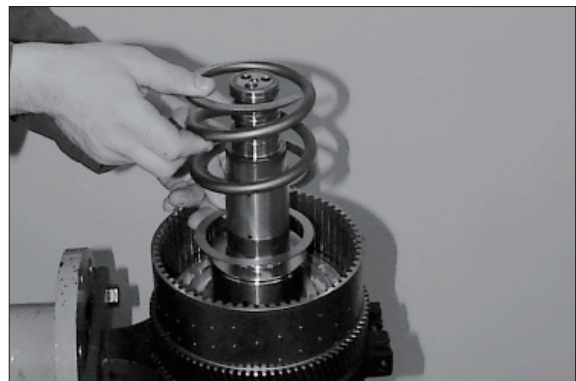


Figure 133

- (6) Place guide ring, with the chamfer (arrow) showing upwards, over the compression spring and install the snap ring.

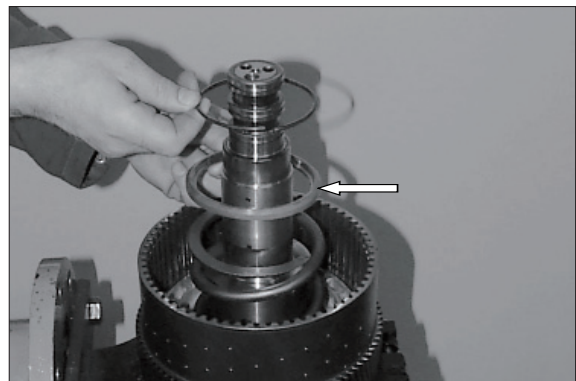


Figure 134

- (7) Lift the disc carrier out of the clamping ring. Preload the compression spring by means of fixture and engage the snap ring into the annular groove of the disc carrier (arrow), see figure 135.

- ※ Special tool

Fixture 5870 345 072

Clamping fixture 5870 654 036

Install the drain valve, piston and compression spring on the opposite side (clutch K4) analogously (figure 130~135).

Then lift the disc carrier with the K4-side showing downwards into the clamping ring and fasten it. Rotate disc carrier by 180°.

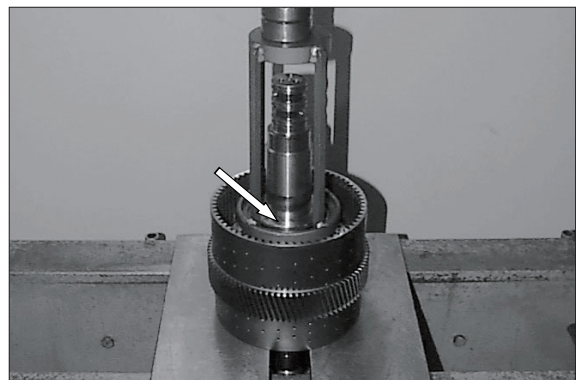


Figure 135

## Disc Components K4

※ Below sketch or table shows the standard version as to the installation position of the single components. Obligatory is the respective spare parts list.

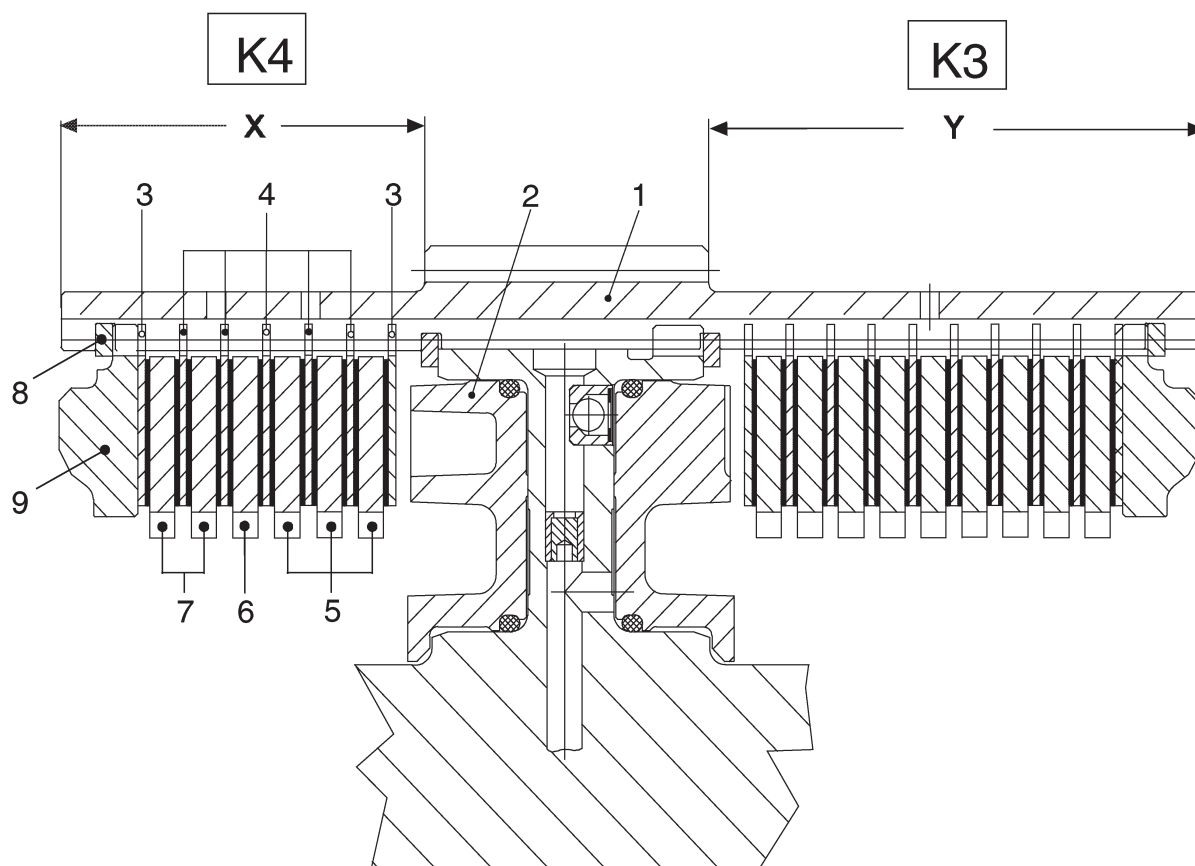


Figure 136

Position	Description	Quantity	s (mm)	Remarks
1	Disc carrier	1		
2	Piston	1		
3	Outer clutch disc	2	1.85	Coated on one side
4	Outer clutch disc	5	2.5	Coated on both sides
5	Inner clutch disc	3	3.5	
6	Inner clutch disc	1	4.0	
7	Inner clutch disc	2	2.5~4.0	Optional
8	Snap ring	1	2.10~3.10	Optional
9	End shim	1		
Number of friction surfaces : 12				
Disc clearance : 2.2 ~ 2.4 mm				

※ Install the outer clutch discs position 3 with uncoated side showing to the piston and end shim respectively. The respective clutch side can be seen on the length of the disc carrier, see sketch.

K4 Dimension X (short disc carrier side)

K3 Dimension Y (long disc carrier side)



**Check disc clearance  $K4=2.2\sim 2.4$  mm**  
(figure 137~139)

※ In order to ensure a perfect measuring result, the disc set is first of all to be installed without oil.

(1) Install disc set according to sketch or table (figure 136).

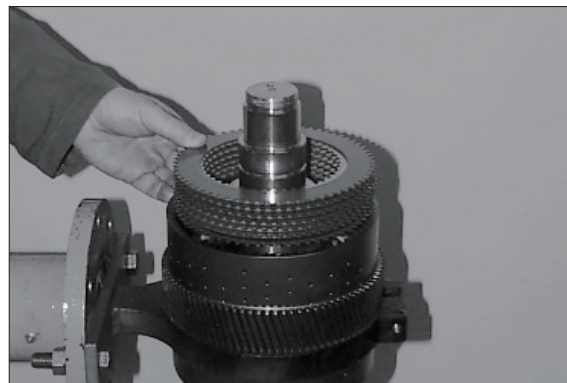


Figure137

(2) Install the end shim and fasten it by means of the snap ring.

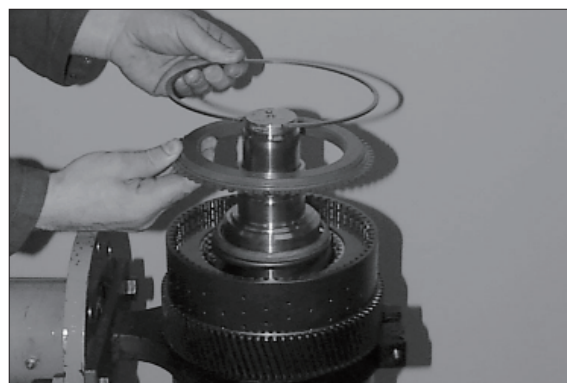


Figure138

(3) Press on end shim with approximately 100N (10 kg) and set dial indicator to "Zero".

Then press end shim against snap ring (upwards) and read disc clearance on the dial indicator.

※ If the required disc clearance differs, it has to be corrected with the adequate inner clutch disc or/and snap ring, see table/ position 7 and position 8.

Upon setting of disc clearance, remove the disc set, oil the clutch discs and reinstall them.

※ Special tool

Magnetic stand 5870 200 055

Dial indicator 5870 200 057

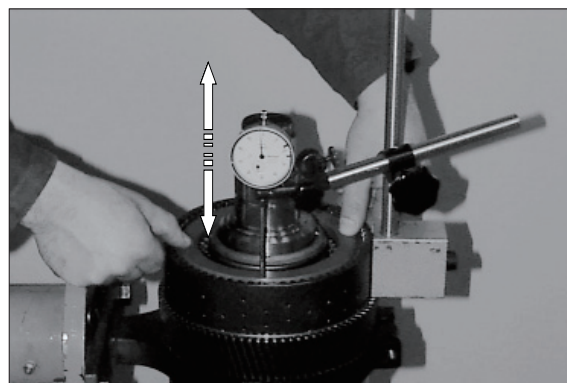


Figure139

**Preamble and install spur gear K4**  
(figure 140~144) :

(1) Opposite figure shows the single components of spur gear K4.

- 1 Bearing inner ring
- 2 Bearing outer ring
- 3 Ring
- 4 Spur gear

Locate both bearing outer rings (2) until contact.

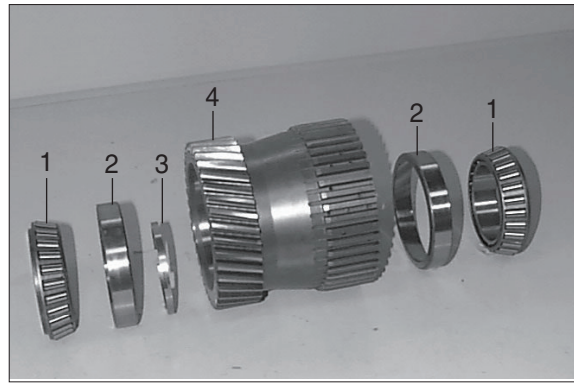


Figure140

(2) Heat the bearing inner ring and install it until contact.

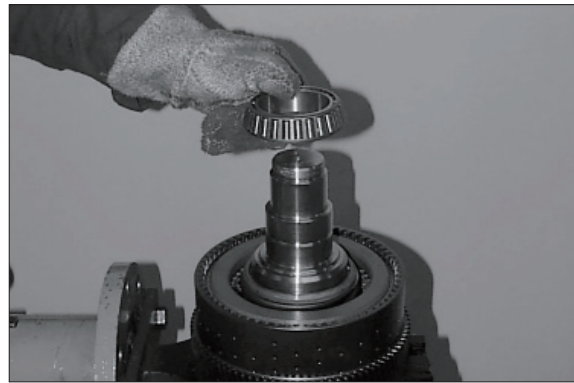


Figure141

(3) Install the ring (3).

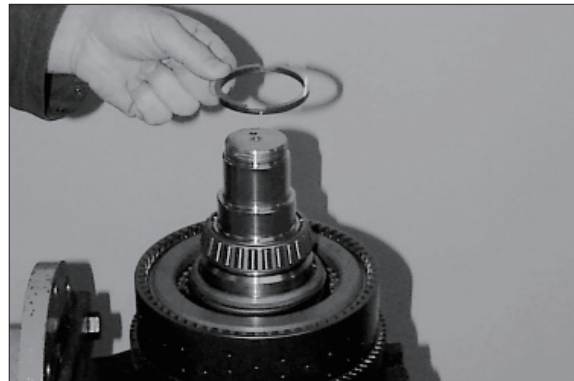


Figure142

(4) Assemble the spur gear until all inner clutch discs are located.



Figure143

(5) Heat the bearing inner ring (spur gear bearing) and locate it until contact.

**⚠ Use safety gloves.**

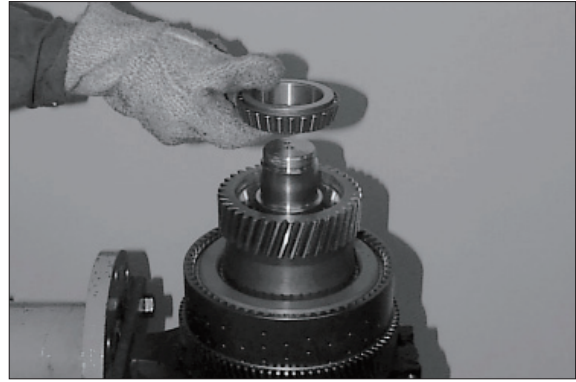


Figure144

(6) Heat the bearing inner ring (clutch bearing) and install it until contact.

**⚠ Use safety gloves.**

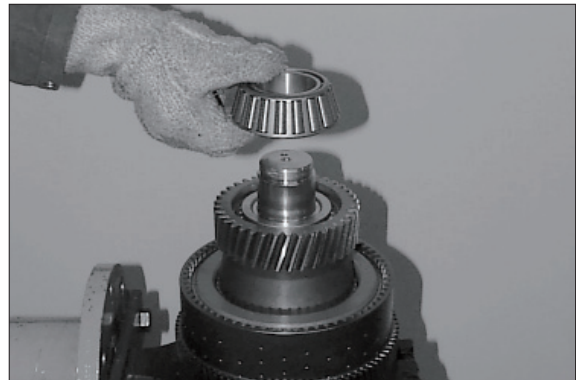


Figure145

### Clutch Components K3

※ Below sketch or table shows the standard version as to the installation position of the single components. Obligatory is the respective spare parts list.

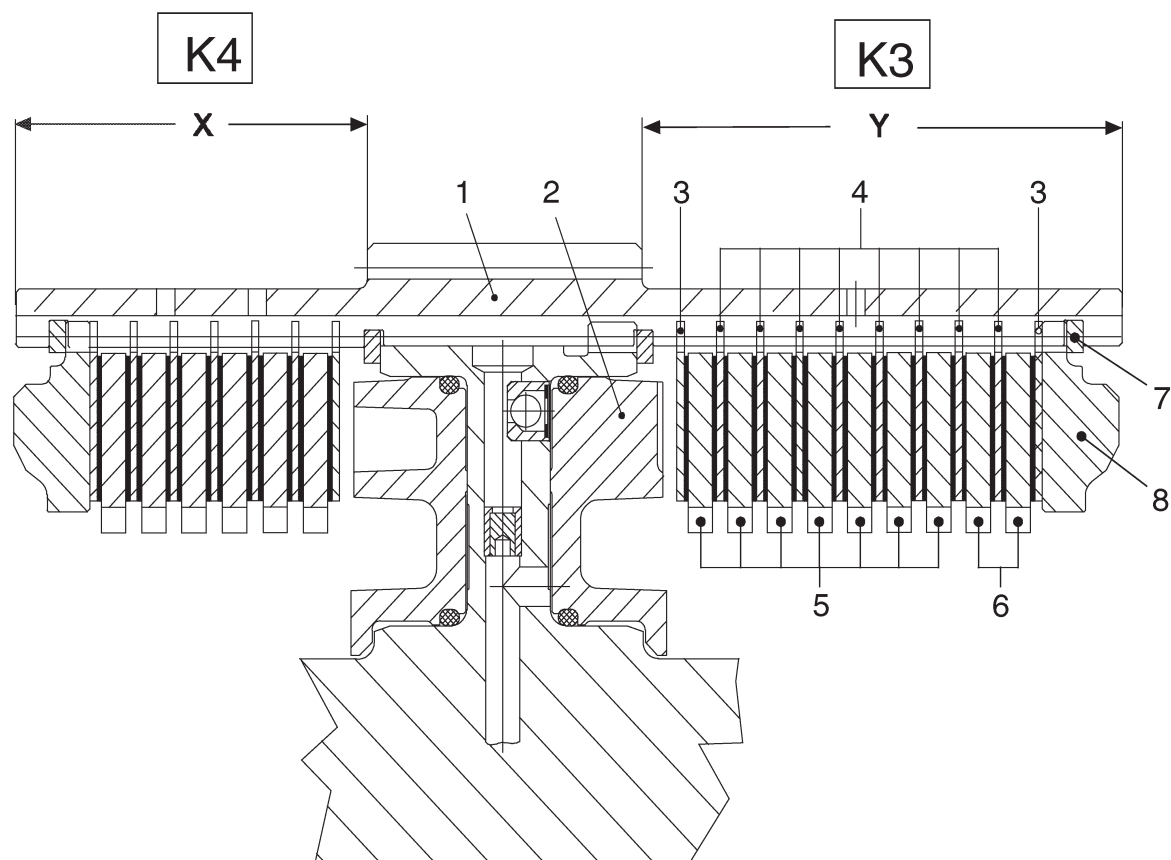


Figure146

Position	Description	Quantity	s(mm)	Remarks
1	Disc carrier	1		
2	Piston	1		
3	Outer clutch disc	2	1.85	Coated on one side
4	Outer clutch disc	8	2.5	Coated on both sides
5	Inner clutch disc	7	3.0	
6	Inner clutch disc	2	2.5~4.0	Optional
7	Snap ring	1	2.10~3.10	Optional
8	End shim	1		
Number of friction surfaces : 18				
Disc clearance : 2.6 ~ 2.8 mm				

※ Install the outer clutch discs position 3 with uncoated side showing to the piston and end shim respectively. The respective clutch side can be seen on the length of the disc carrier, see sketch.

K3 Dimension Y (long disc carrier side)

K4 Dimension X (short disc carrier side)

**Check disc clearance  $K3=2.6\sim 2.8$  mm**  
(figure 147~149)

※ In order to ensure a perfect measuring result, the disc set is first of all to be installed without oil.

(1) Install disc set according to sketch or table (figure 146).

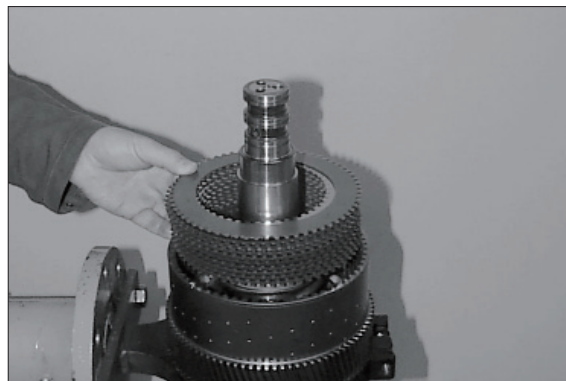


Figure 147

(2) Install the end shim and fasten it by means of the snap ring.

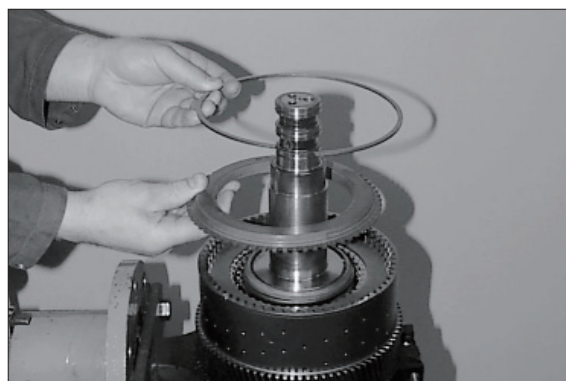


Figure 148

(3) Press on end shim with approximately 100N (10 kg) and set dial indicator to "Zero".

Then press end shim against snap ring (upwards) and read disc clearance on the dial indicator.

※ If the required disc clearance differs, it has to be corrected with the adequate inner clutch disc or/and snap ring, see table/ position 6 and position 7.

Upon setting of disc clearance, remove the disc set, oil the clutch discs and reinstall them.

※ Special tool

※ Magnetic stand 5870 200 055

Dial indicator 5870 200 057

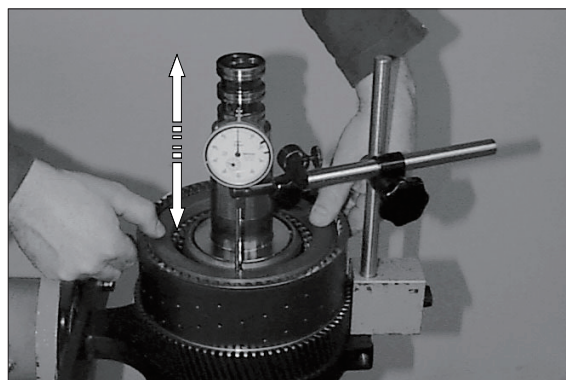


Figure 149



- (4) Heat the bearing inner ring and install it until contact.

▲ **Use safety gloves.**

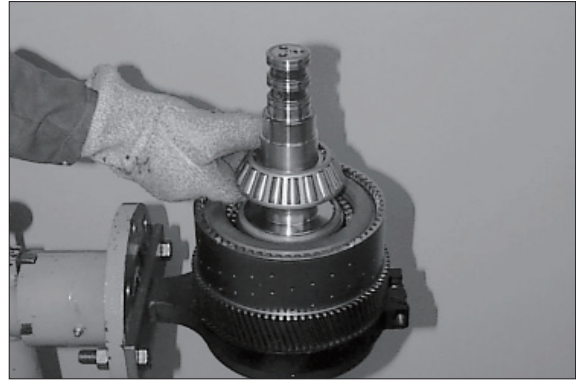


Figure 150

- (5) Lift the disc carrier out of the clamping ring (S).

To ensure the exact locating of the single components, preload the bearing with 100KN (10 t) (figure 151)

▲ Support on the lower as well as upper **bearing inner ring**.  
Use pressure pieces.

※ Special tool

Pressure piece 5870 506 096

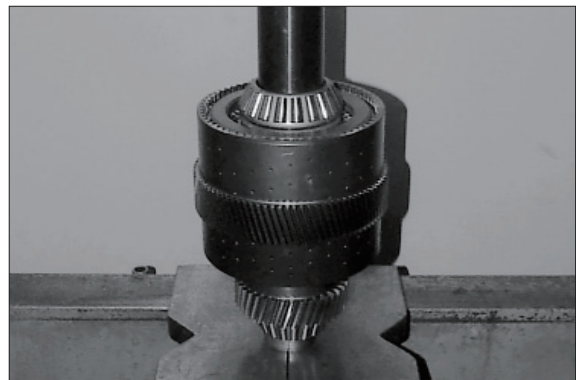


Figure 151

- (6) Lift the disc carrier with the K4-side showing downwards into the clamping ring (S) and fasten it.  
Rotate disc carrier by 90°.  
Install the slotted nut.

※ Observe installation position of the slotted nut. Collar (ø 60 mm) must show to the bearing inner ring, also see sketch (Figure 127). Oil the thread.

· Tightening torque : 56.1 kgf · m (406 lbf · ft)

※ Special tool

Clamping ring 5870 654 033

Slotted nut wrench 5870 401 118

Slotted nut wrench 5870 401 115



Figure 152

- (7) Install the bearing outer ring into spur gear K3 until contact.

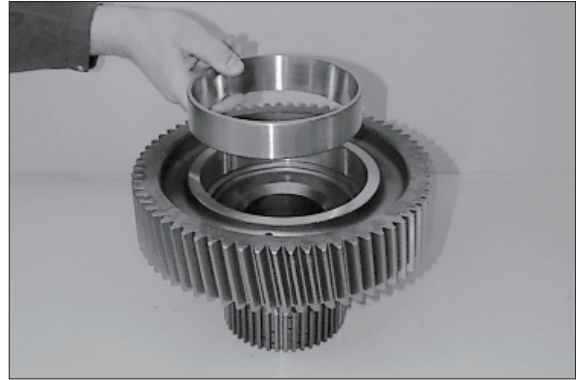


Figure 153

- (8) Assemble the spur gear until all inner clutch discs are located.

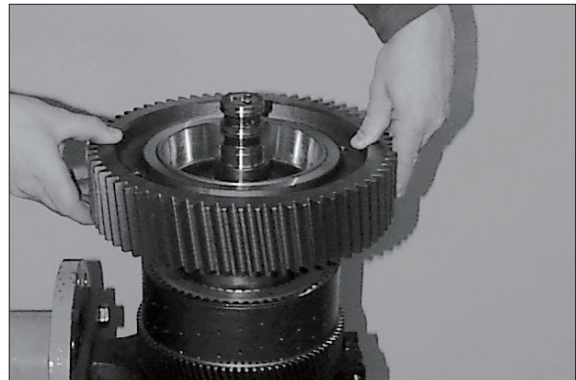


Figure 154

- (9) Heat the roller bearing and locate it until contact.

**▲ Use safety gloves.**



Figure 155

- (10) Install the bearing inner ring.

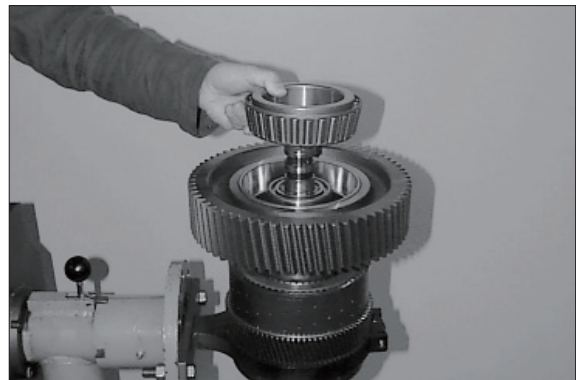


Figure 156

(11) Check function of the clutches K3 and K4 by means of compressed air.

※ Closing or opening of the clutches is clearly audible when the single parts have been installed adequately.

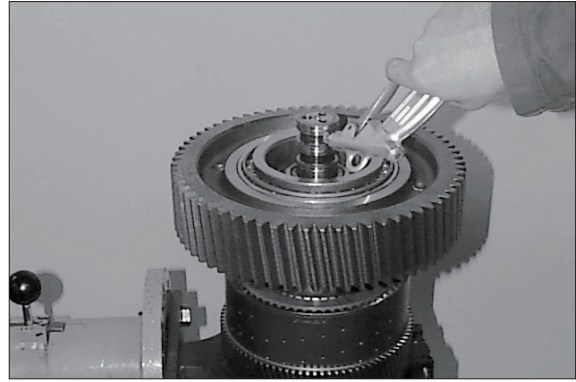


Figure 157

(12) Snap-in and lock the rectangular rings (3EA, see arrows).

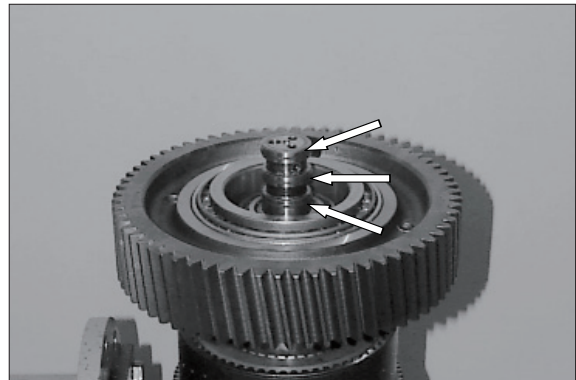


Figure 158



## Assembly of the multi-disc clutch KR/K2

The following sketch shows the clutch sectioning.

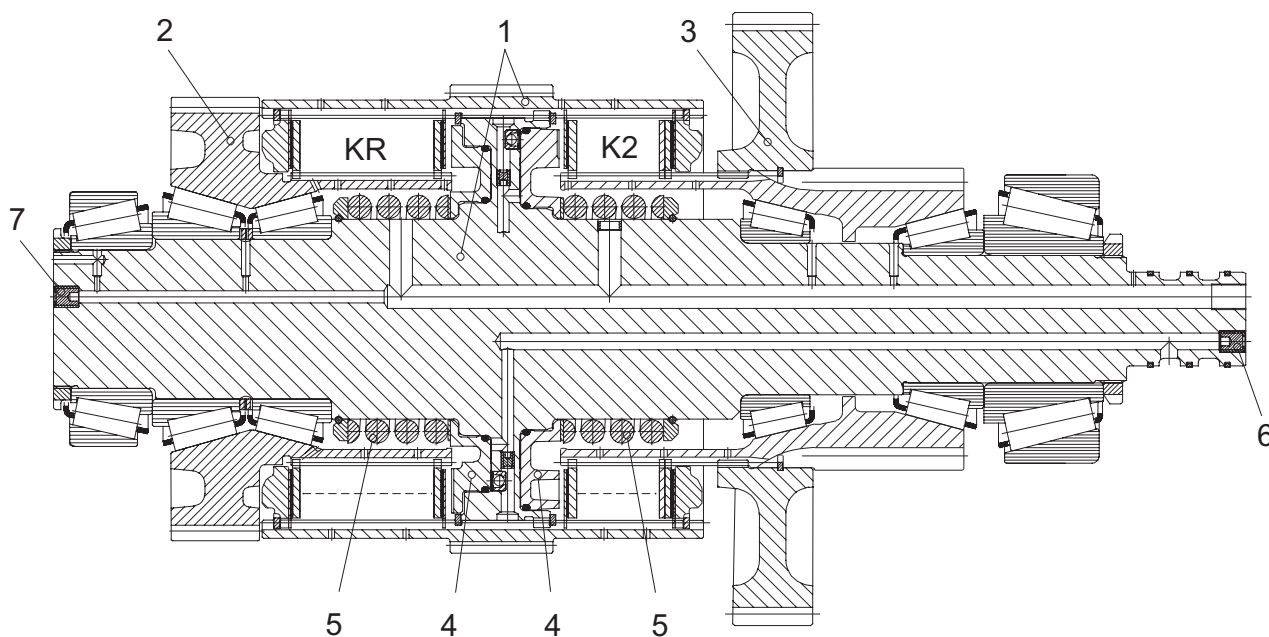


Figure159

- |   |              |    |                      |   |                    |
|---|--------------|----|----------------------|---|--------------------|
| 1 | Disc carrier | K4 | Multi-disc clutch KR | 5 | Compression spring |
| 2 | Spur gear KR | K2 | Multi-disc clutch K2 | 6 | Plug 2EA           |
| 3 | Spur gear K2 | 4  | Piston               | 7 | Plug 1EA           |

※ Observe the installation position of the single components for the following assembly.

- (1) Lift the disc carrier with the KR-side showing downwards into the clamping ring and fasten it.  
Then rotate disc carrier by 180°.

▲ To install new disc carriers the finished bores have to be sealed with plugs.  
Installation position, see arrow, figure 160~161.

※ Special tool

Clamping ring 5870 654 033

Hand mounting tool 5870 320 014

Ratchet 5870 320 018

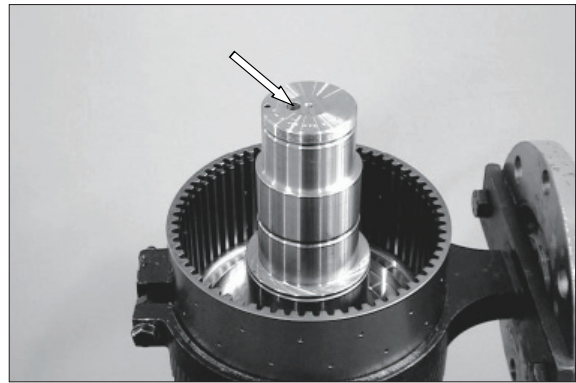


Figure 160

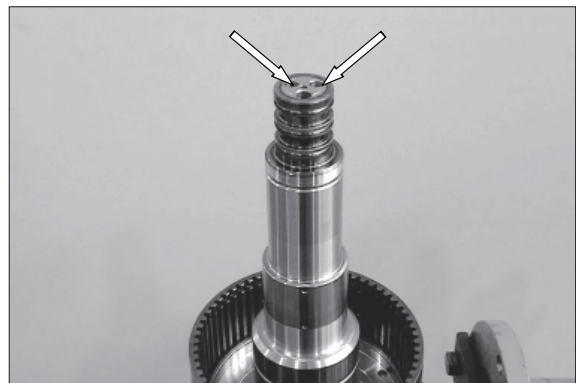


Figure 161

- (2) Flush-mount the drain valve (arrow) with the chamfer showing downwards.

※ Special tool

Inserting tool 5870 320 019

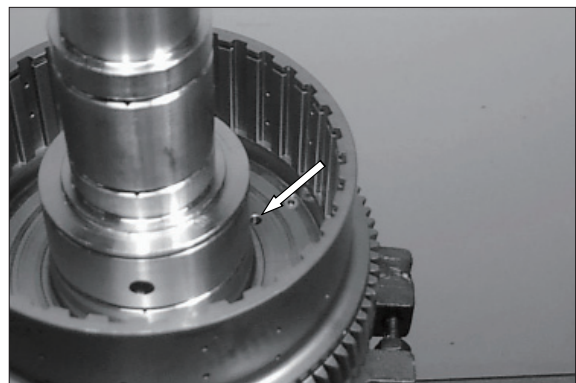


Figure 162

- (3) Put both O-rings **scroll-free** into the annular grooves of the piston, see arrows.

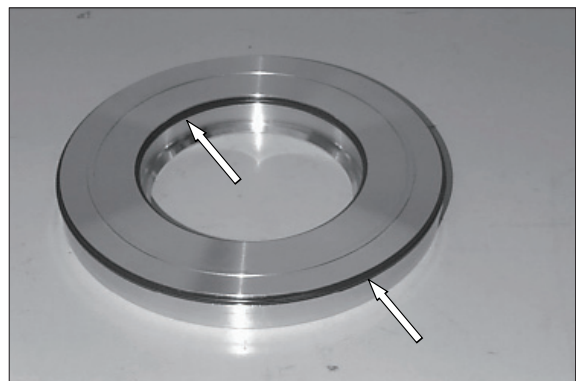


Figure 163

- (4) Oil the O-rings and the piston contact surface.

Install K2 piston **equally** until contact.

- ※ Observe the installation position of the piston, see figure.

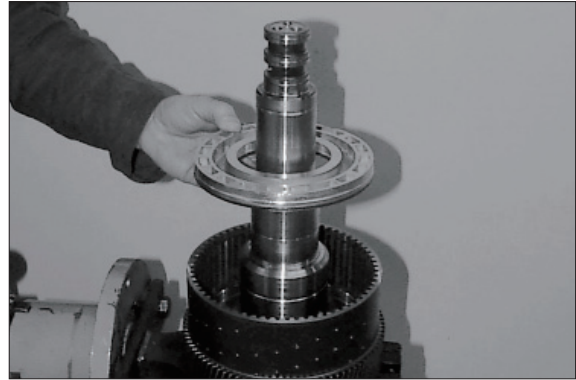


Figure 164

- (5) Install spacer and compression spring.

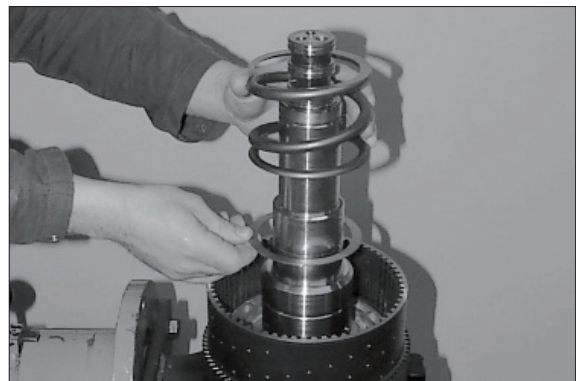


Figure 165

- (6) Place guide ring, with the chamfer (arrow) showing upwards, over the compression spring and install the snap ring.

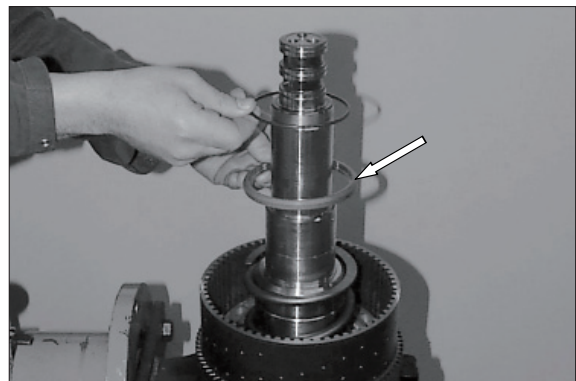


Figure 166

- (7) Lift the disc carrier out of the clamping ring. Preload the compression spring by means of fixture and engage the snap ring into the annular groove of the disc carrier (arrow), see figure 167.

Install the drain valve, piston and compression spring on the opposite side (clutch KR) analogously (like figure 162~167).

Then lift the disc carrier with the KR-side showing downwards into the clamping ring and fasten it. Rotate disc carrier by 180°.

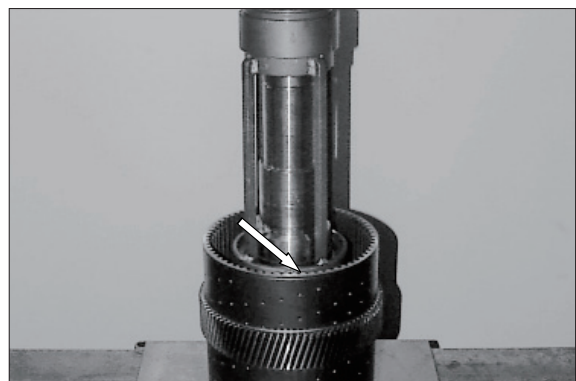


Figure 167

- ※ Special tool

Pressure piece 5870 345 072

Clamping fixture 5870 654 036

## Disc Components KR

※ Below sketch or table shows the standard version as to the installation position of the single components. Obligatory is the respective spare parts list.

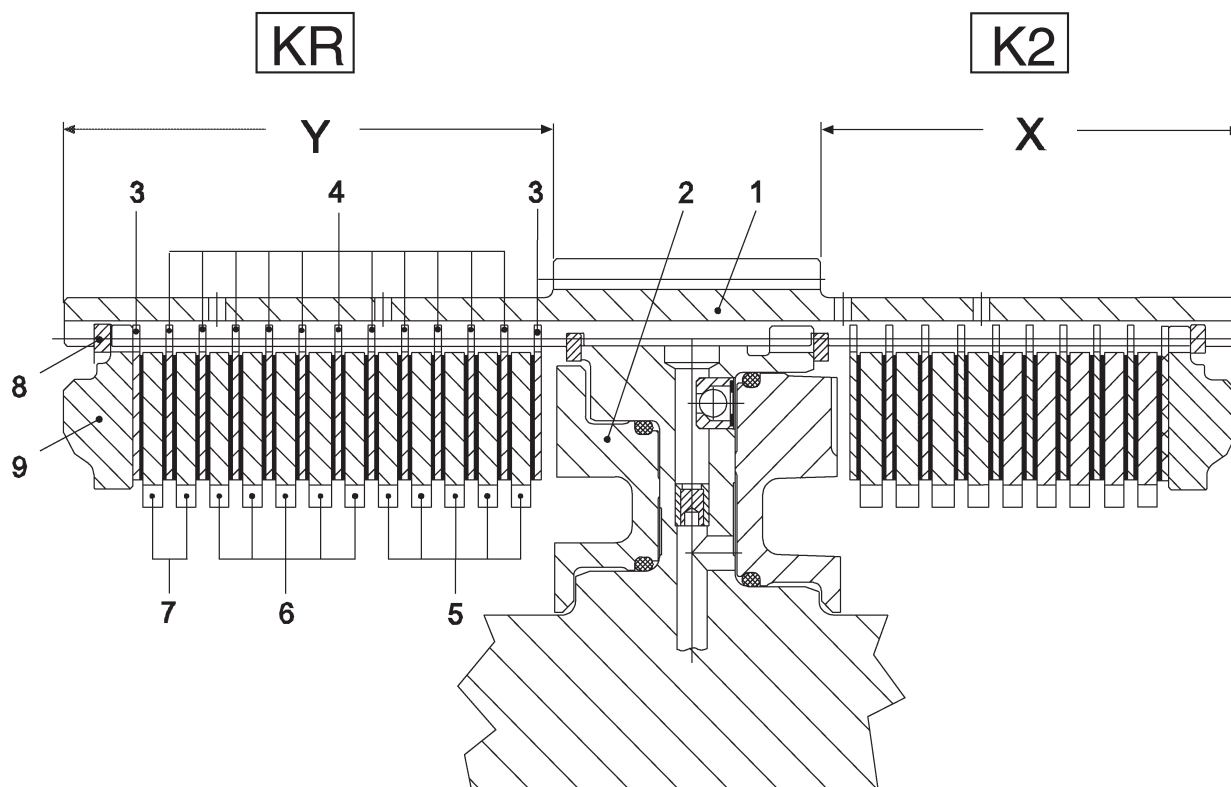


Figure 168

Position	Description	Quantity	s (mm)	Remarks
1	Disc carrier	1		
2	Piston	1		
3	Outer clutch disc	2	1.85	Coated on one side
4	Outer clutch disc	11	3.35	Coated on both sides
5	Inner clutch disc	5	2.5	
6	Inner clutch disc	5	3.0	
7	Inner clutch disc	2	2.5~4.0	Optional
8	Snap ring	1	2.10~3.10	Optional
9	End shim	1		
Number of friction surfaces : 24				
Disc clearance : 2.8 ~ 3.0 mm				

※ Install the outer clutch discs position 3 with uncoated side showing to the piston and end shim respectively. The respective clutch side can be seen on the length of the disc carrier, see sketch.

KR Dimension X (long disc carrier side)

K2 Dimension Y (short disc carrier side)

**Check disc clearance  $KR=2.8\sim3.0$  mm**  
(figure 169~171)

※ In order to ensure a perfect measuring result, the disc set is first of all to be installed without oil.

(1) Install disc set according to sketch or table.

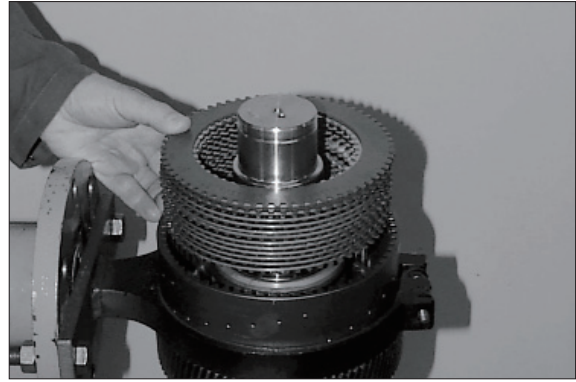


Figure 169

(2) Install the end shim and fasten it by means of the snap ring.

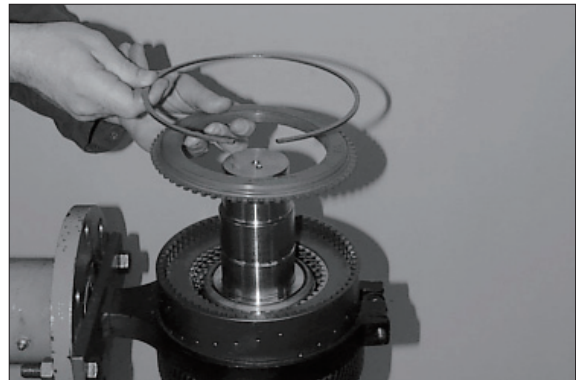


Figure 170

(3) Press on end shim with approximately 100N (10 kg) and set dial indicator to "Zero".

Then press end shim against snap ring (upwards) and read disc clearance on the dial indicator.

※ If the required disc clearance differs, it has to be corrected with the adequate inner clutch disc or/and snap ring, see table/ position 7 and Position 8.

Upon setting of disc clearance, remove the disc set, oil the clutch discs and reinstall them.

※ Special tool

Magnetic stand                      5870 200 055

Dial indicator                      5870 200 057

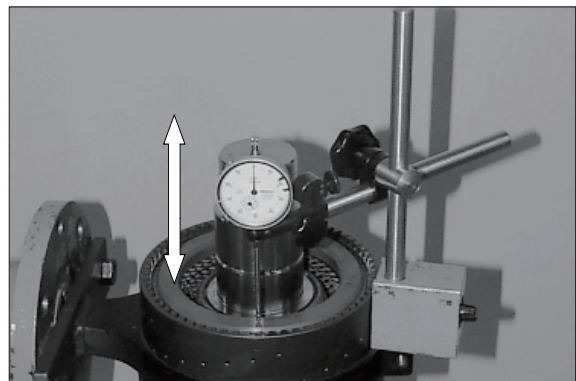


Figure 171



Preassemble and install spur gear KR (figure 172~176) :

(1) Opposite figure shows the single components of spur gear KR.

- 1 Bearing inner ring (75×37 mm)
- 2 Ring
- 3 Spur gear
- 4 Bearing inner ring (75×41 mm)

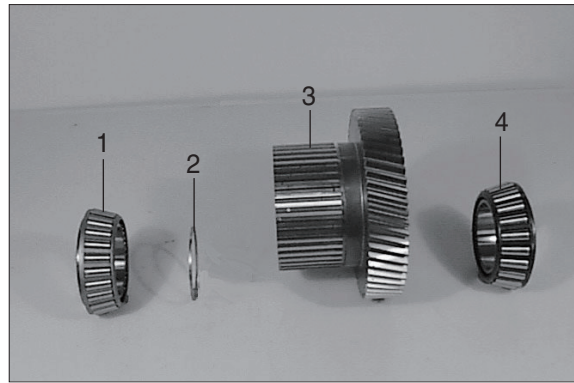


Figure 172

(2) Heat the bearing inner ring (75×37 mm) and install it until contact.

**▲ Use safety gloves.**

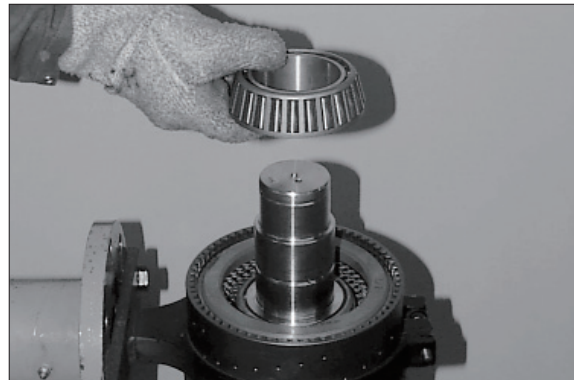


Figure 173

(3) Assemble the spur gear until all inner clutch discs are located.

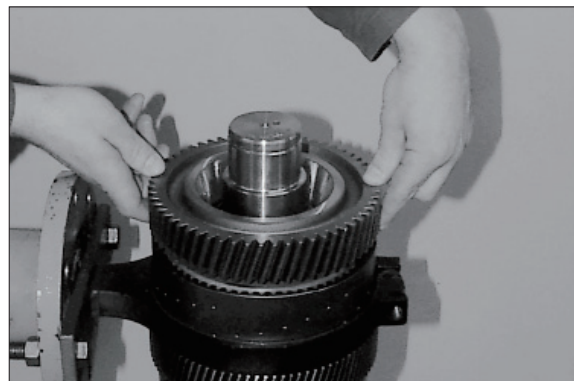


Figure 174

(4) Install the ring.

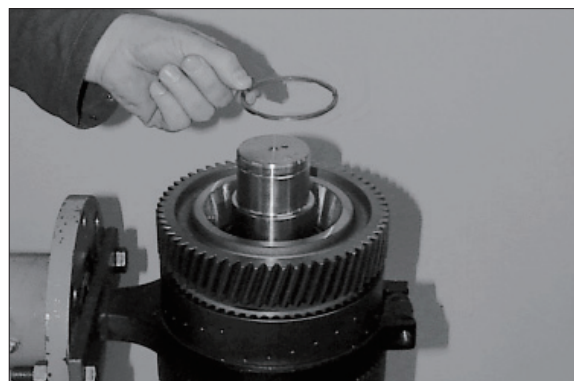


Figure 175

(5) Heat the bearing inner ring (75×41 mm) and locate it until contact.

**⚠ Use safety gloves.**

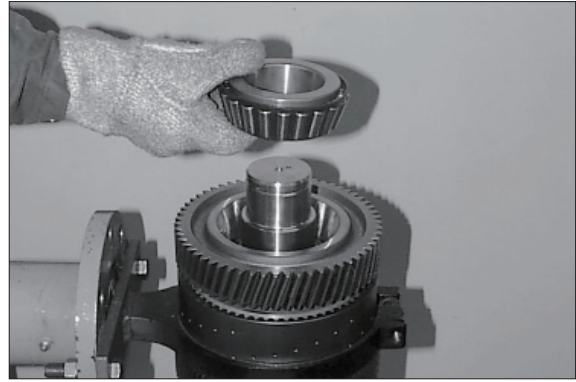


Figure 176

(6) Heat the bearing inner ring (clutch bearing) and locate it until contact.

**⚠ Use safety gloves.**

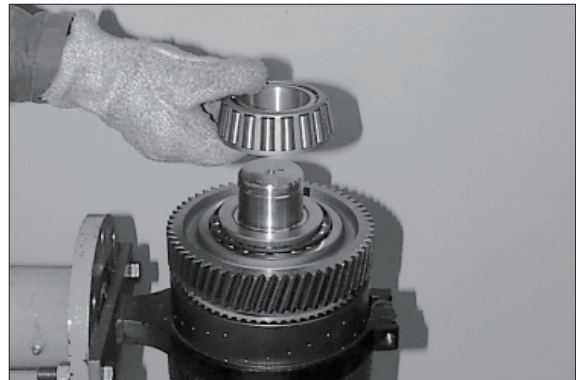


Figure 177

## Disc Components K2

※ Below sketch or table shows the standard version as to the installation position of the single components. Obligatory is the respective spare parts list.

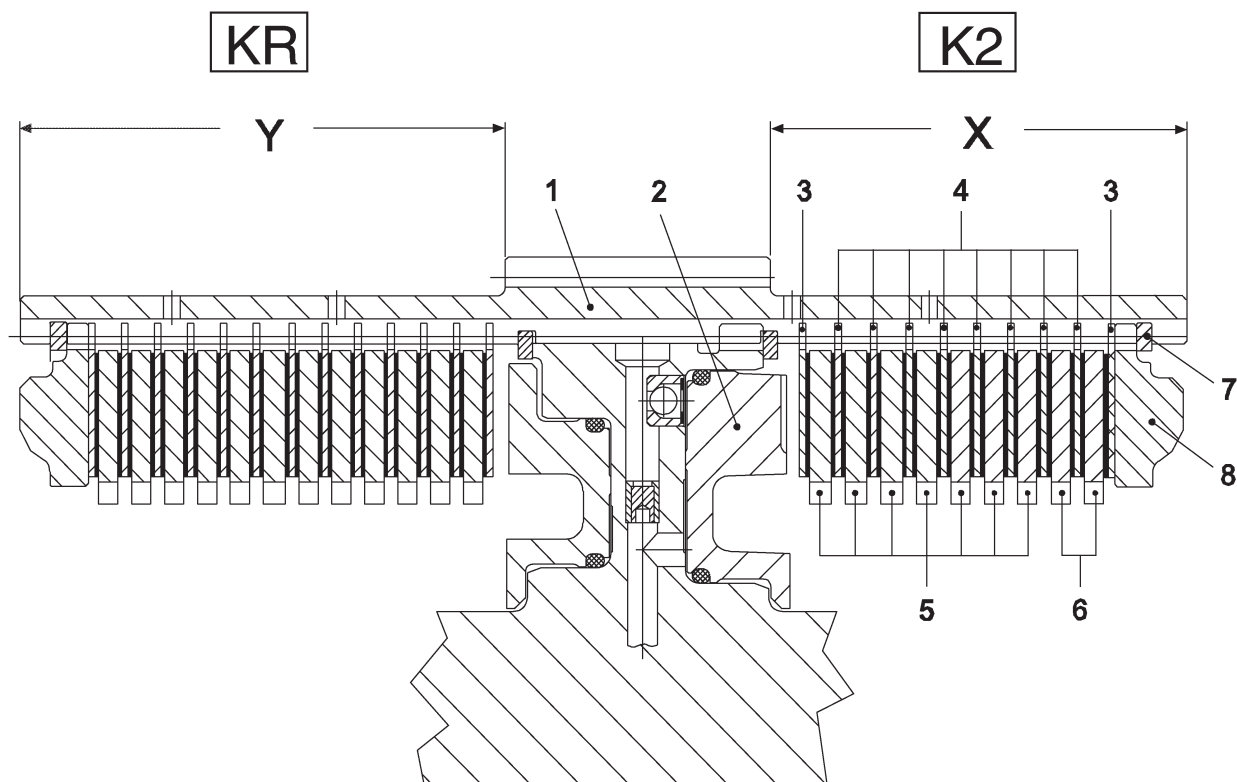


Figure 178

Position	Description	Quantity	s (mm)	Remarks
1	Disc carrier	1		
2	Piston	1		
3	Outer clutch disc	2	1.85	Coated on one side
4	Outer clutch disc	8	2.5	Coated on both sides
5	Inner clutch disc	7	3.0	
6	Inner clutch disc	2	2.5~4.0	Optional
7	Snap ring	1	2.10~3.10	Optional
8	End shim	1		
Number of friction surfaces : 18				
Disc clearance : 2.6 ~ 2.8 mm				

※ Install the outer clutch discs position 3 with uncoated side showing to the piston and end shim respectively. The respective clutch side can be seen on the length of the disc carrier, see sketch.

K2 Dimension X (short disc carrier side)

KR Dimension Y (long disc carrier side)



Check disc clearance  $K2=2.6\sim 2.8$  mm  
(figure 179~181)

※ In order to ensure a perfect measuring result, the disc set is first of all to be installed without oil.

(1) Install disc set according to sketch or table (figure 178).

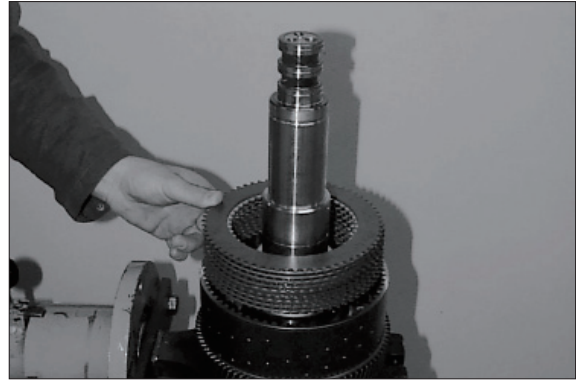


Figure 179

(2) Install the end shim and fasten it by means of the snap ring.

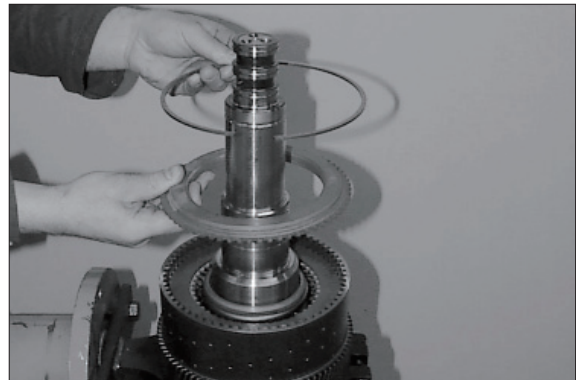


Figure 180

(3) Press on end shim with approximately 100N (10 kg) and set dial indicator to "Zero".

Then press end shim against snap ring (upwards) and read disc clearance on the dial indicator.

※ If the required disc clearance differs, it has to be corrected with the adequate inner clutch disc or/and snap ring, see table/ position 6 and position 7.

Upon setting of disc clearance, remove the disc set, oil the clutch discs and reinstall them.

※ Special tool

Magnetic stand 5870 200 055

Dial indicator 5870 200 057

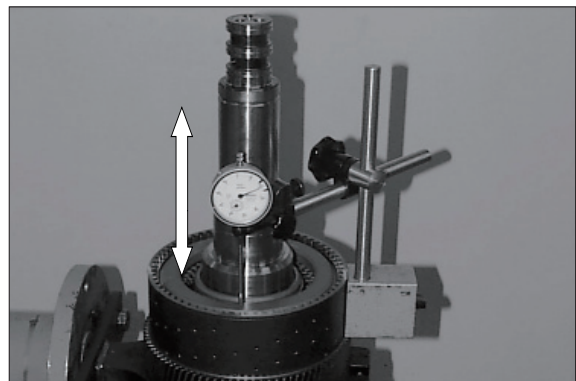


Figure 181

**Preamble and install spur gear K2  
(figure182~186) :**

- (1) Undercool gear 1 (approx -80°C) and heat gear 2 (approx 120°C). Engage the snap ring (arrow), preload it and join both components by means of hydraulic press until the snap ring engages into the annular groove of gear 2.

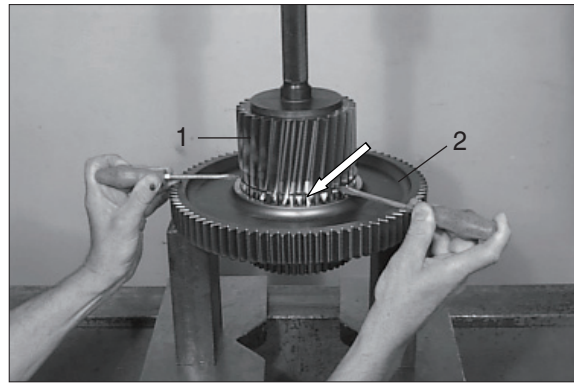


Figure 182

- (2) Opposite figure shows the single components of the spur gear bearing.

- 1 Bearing inner ring
- 2 Spur gear assy
- 3 Bearing inner ring

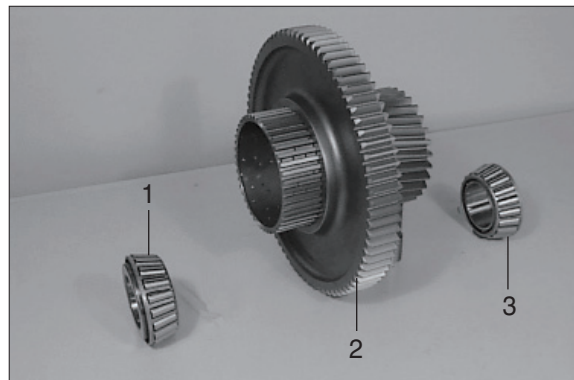


Figure 183

- (3) Heat the bearing inner ring and install it until contact.

**▲ Use safety gloves.**

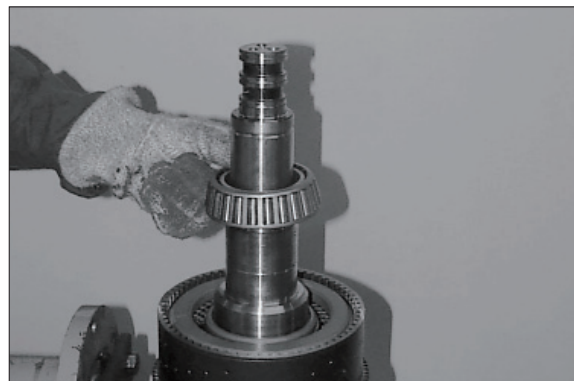


Figure 184

- (4) Assemble the spur gear until all inner clutch discs are located.

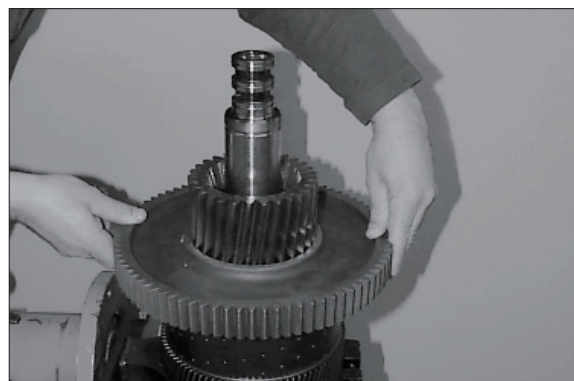


Figure 185

- (5) Heat the bearing inner ring (spur gear bearing) and install it until contact.

**▲ Use safety gloves.**

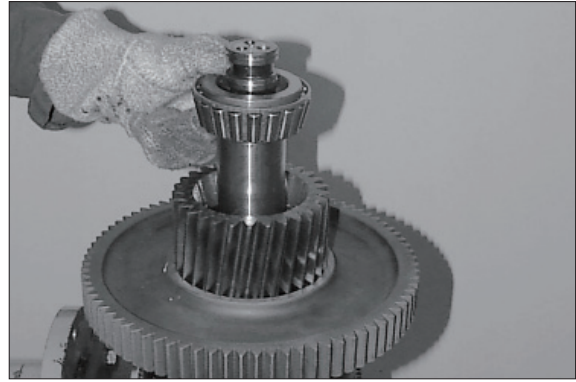


Figure 186

- (6) Heat the bearing inner ring (clutch bearing) and locate it until contact.

**▲ Use safety gloves.**

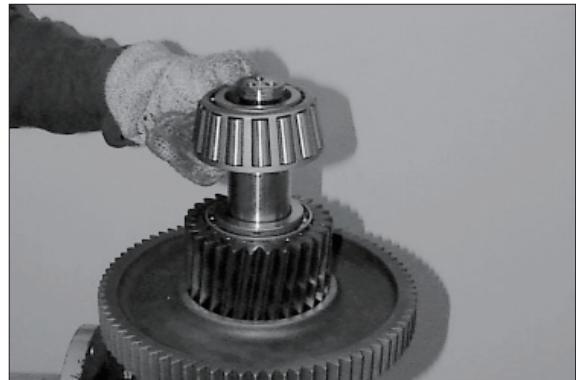


Figure 187

- (7) Lift the disc carrier out of the clamping ring.

To ensure the exact locating of the single components, preload the bearing with 100 KN (10t) (figure 188)

**▲ Support on the lower as well as upper bearing inner ring.  
Use pressure pieces.**

※ Special tool

Pressure piece

5870 506 096

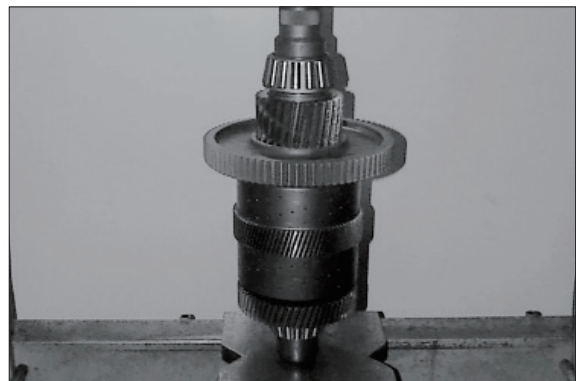


Figure 188

- (8) Lift the disc carrier into the clamping ring and fasten it.

Rotate disc carrier by 90°.

**K2-side :**

Install the slotted nut.

- ※ Observe installation position of the slotted nut. Chamfer must show to the bearing inner ring, also see sketch (figure 159). Oil the thread.

• Torque limit : 81.6 kgf · m (590 lbf · ft)

- ※ Special tool

Clamping ring                      5870 654 033

Slotted nut wrench              5870 401 099

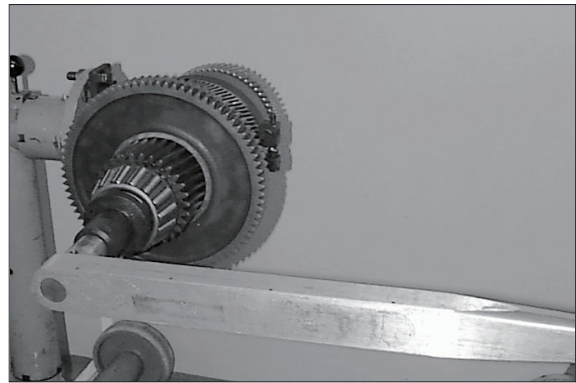


Figure 189

**KR-side :**

Install the slotted nut.

- ※ Observe installation position of the slotted nut. Collar (ø 76 mm) must show to the bearing inner ring, also see sketch (figure 159). Oil the thread.

• Torque limit : 81.6 kgf · m (590 lbf · ft)

- ※ Special tool

Slotted nut wrench              5870 401 099



Figure 190

- (9) Check function of the clutches K3 and K4 by means of compressed air (figure 191).

- ※ Closing or opening of the clutches is clearly audible when the single parts have been installed adequately.

Snap-in and lock the rectangular rings (3EA, see arrows).

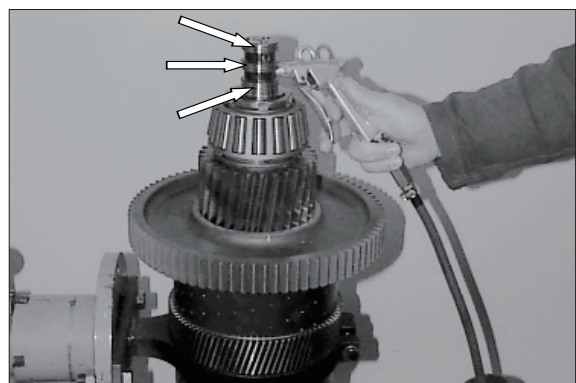


Figure 191

## Assembly of the multi-disc clutch KV/K1

The following sketch shows the clutch sectioning

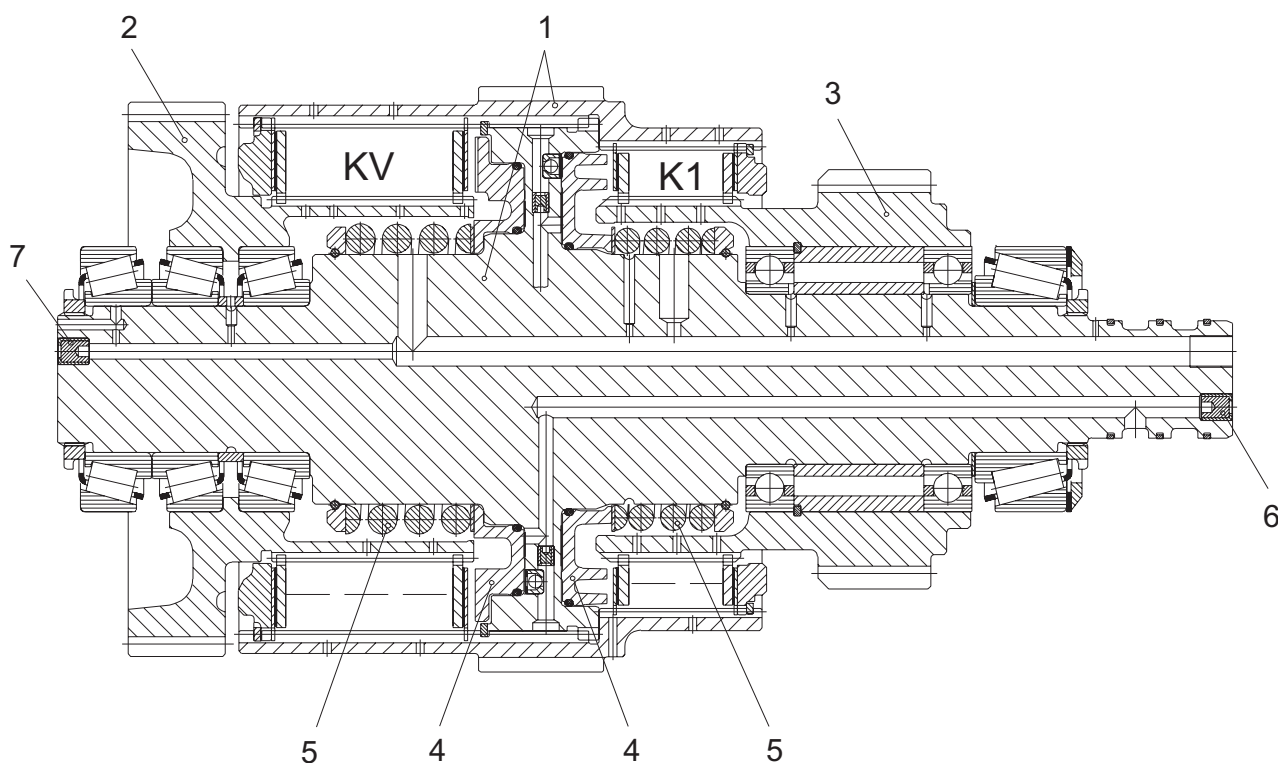


Figure 192

1	Disc carrier	KV	Multi-disc clutch KV	5	Compression spring
2	Spur gear KV	K1	Multi-disc clutch K1	6	Plug 2EA
3	Spur gear K1	4	Piston	7	Plug 1EA

※ Observe the installation position of the single components for the following assembly.



- (1) Lift the disc carrier with the KV-side showing downwards into the clamping ring(S) and fasten it.  
Then rotate disc carrier by 180°.

▲ To install new disc carriers the finished bores have to be sealed with plugs.  
Installation position, see arrow, figure193~194.

※ Special tool

Hand mounting tool 5870 320 014

Ratchet spanner 5870 320 018

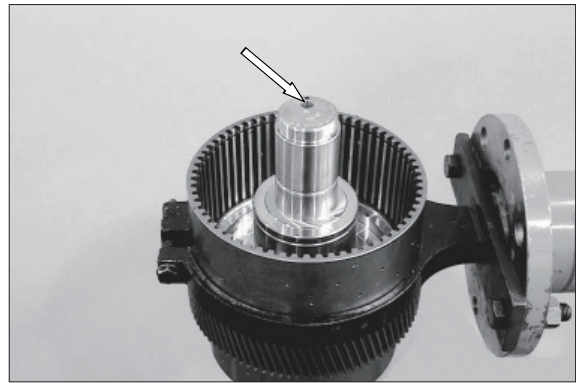


Figure 193

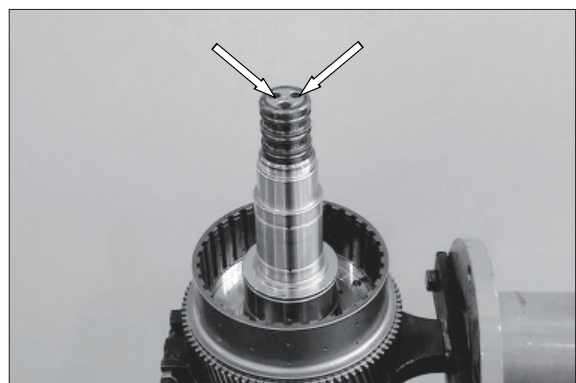


Figure 194

- (2) Flush-mount the drain valve (arrow) with the chamfer showing downwards.

※ Special tool

Inserting tool 5870 320 019

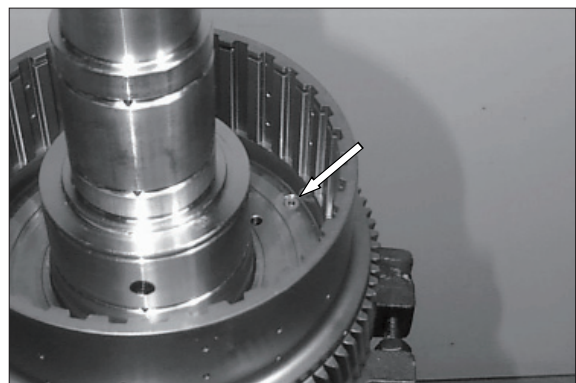


Figure 195

- (3) Put both O-rings **scroll-free** into the annular grooves of the piston, see arrows.

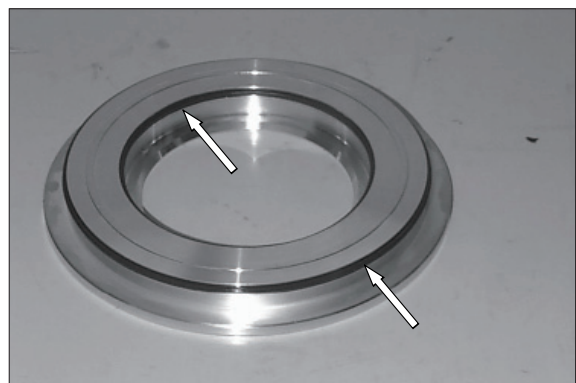


Figure 196

- (4) Oil the O-rings and the piston contact surface.

Install K1 piston **equally** until contact.

- ※ Observe the installation position of the piston, see figure.

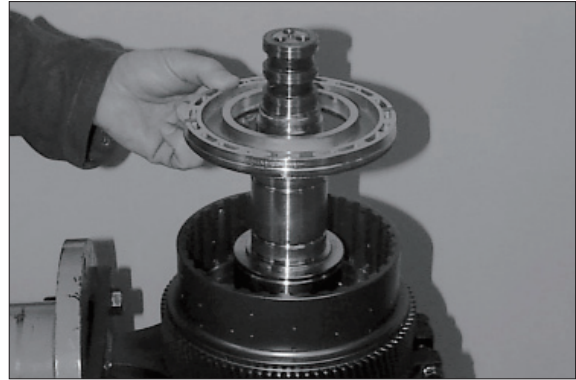


Figure 197

- (5) Install spacer and compression spring.

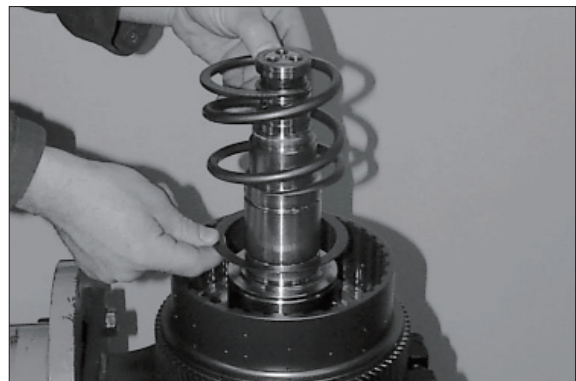


Figure 198

- (6) Place guide ring, with the chamfer (arrow) showing upwards, over the compression spring and install the snap ring.

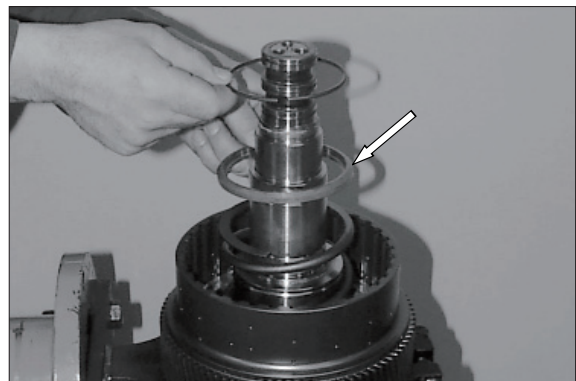


Figure 199

- (7) Lift the disc carrier out of the clamping ring. Preload the compression spring by means of fixture and engage the snap ring into the annular groove of the disc carrier (arrow), see figure 200.

Install the drain valve, piston and compression spring on the opposite side (clutch KV) analogously.

Then lift the disc carrier with the KV-side showing downwards into the clamping ring and fasten it.

Rotate disc carrier by 180°.



Figure 200

- ※ Special tool

Pressure piece 5870 345 072

Clamping fixture 5870 654 036

## Disc Components KV

※ Below sketch or table shows the standard version as to the installation position of the single components. Obligatory is the respective spare parts list.

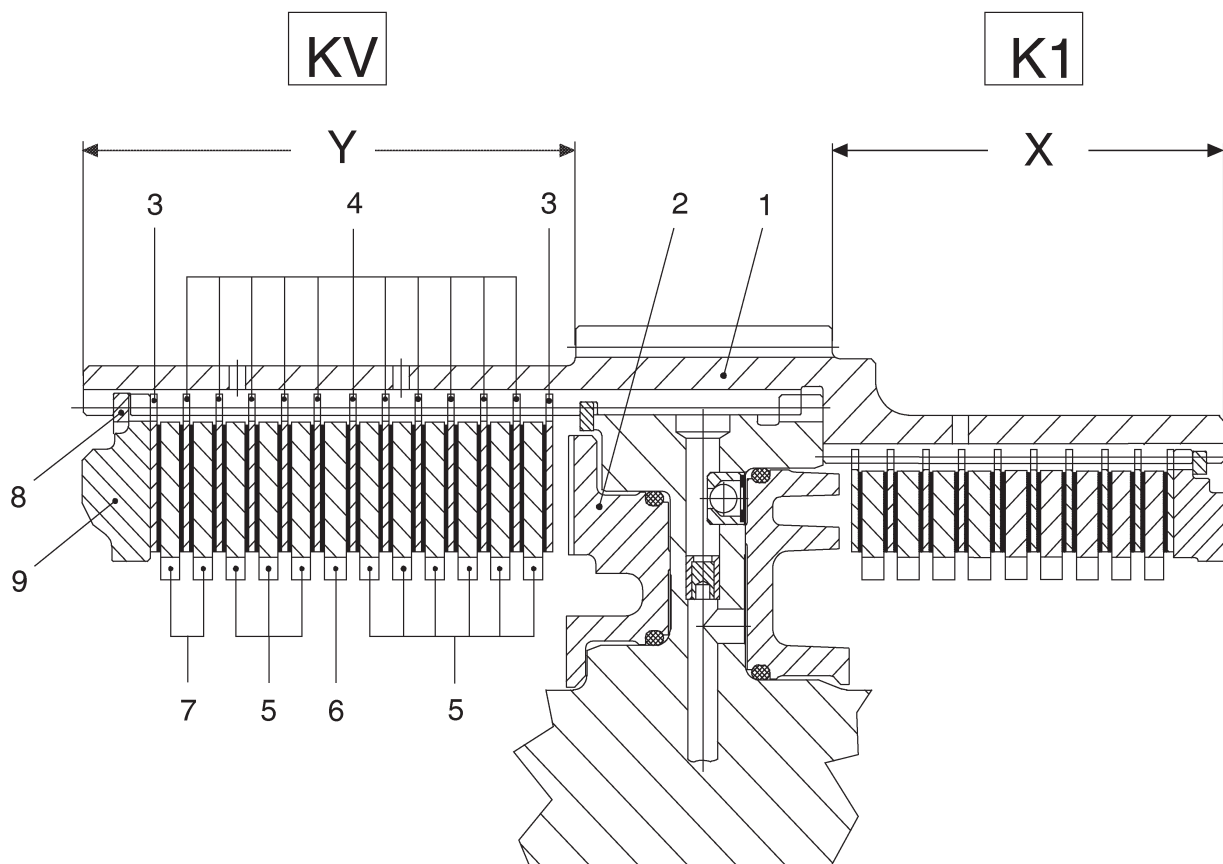


Figure 201

Position	Description	Quantity	s (mm)	Remarks
1	Disc carrier	1		
2	Piston	1		
3	Outer clutch disc	2	1.85	Coated on one side
4	Outer clutch disc	11	2.5	Coated on both sides
5	Inner clutch disc	9	3.5	
6	Inner clutch disc	1	4.0	
7	Inner clutch disc	2	2.5~4.0	Optional
8	Snap ring	1	2.10~3.10	Optional
9	End shim	1		
Number of friction surfaces : 24				
Disc clearance : 2.8 ~ 3.0 mm				

※ Install the outer clutch discs position 3 with uncoated side showing to the piston and end shim respectively. The respective clutch side can be seen on the length and  $\varnothing$  of the disc carrier respectively, see sketch.

KV Dimension Y (long disc carrier side and large  $\varnothing$  respectively)

K1 Dimension X (short disc carrier side and small  $\varnothing$  respectively)



**Check disc clearance  $KV=2.8\sim 3.0$  mm**  
(figure 202~204)

※ In order to ensure a perfect measuring result, the disc set is first of all to be installed without oil.

(1) Install disc set according to sketch or table (figure 201).

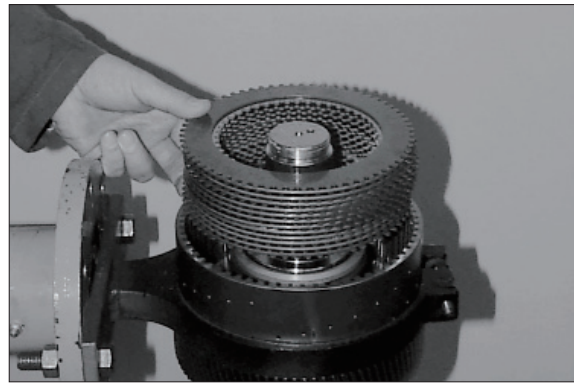


Figure 202

(2) Install the end shim and fasten it by means of the snap ring.

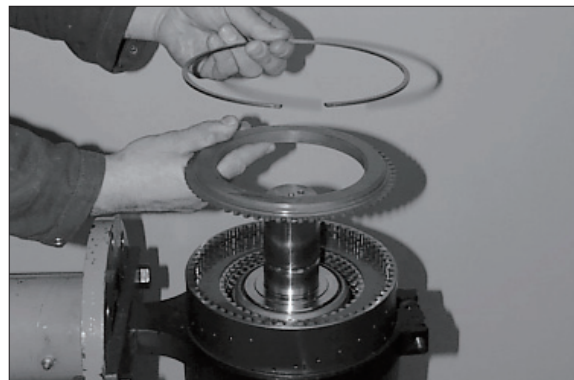


Figure 203

(3) Press on end shim with approximately 100N (10 kg) and set dial indicator to "Zero".

Then press end shim against snap ring (upwards) and read disc clearance on the dial indicator.

※ If the required disc clearance differs, it has to be corrected with the adequate inner clutch disc or/and snap ring, see table/ position 7 and position 8.

Upon setting of disc clearance, remove the disc set, oil the clutch discs and reinstall them.

※ Special tool

Magnetic stand 5870 200 055

Dial indicator 5870 200 057

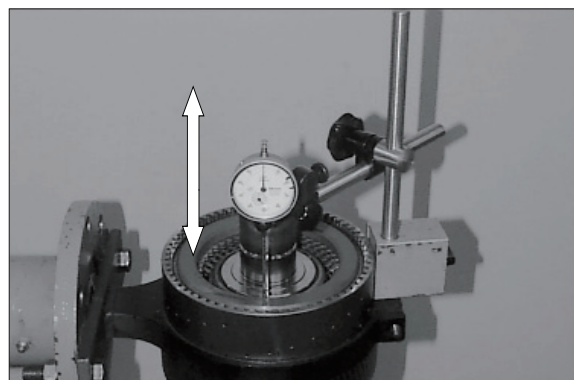


Figure 204

**Preamble and install spur gear KV**  
(figure 205~209) :

(1) Opposite figure shows the single components of spur gear KV.

- 1 Bearing inner ring
- 2 Bearing outer ring
- 3 Ring
- 4 Spur gear

Install both bearing outer rings (2) until contact.

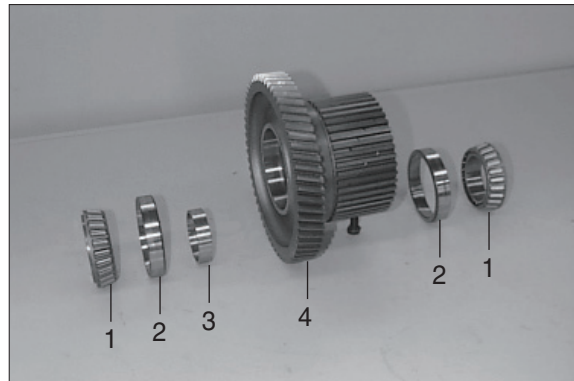


Figure 205

(2) Heat the bearing inner ring and install it until contact.

**▲ Use safety gloves.**

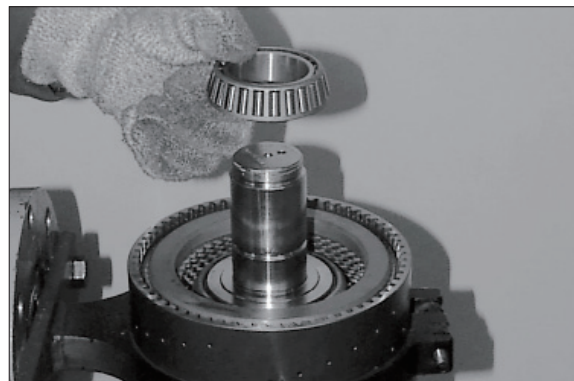


Figure 206

(3) Install the ring.

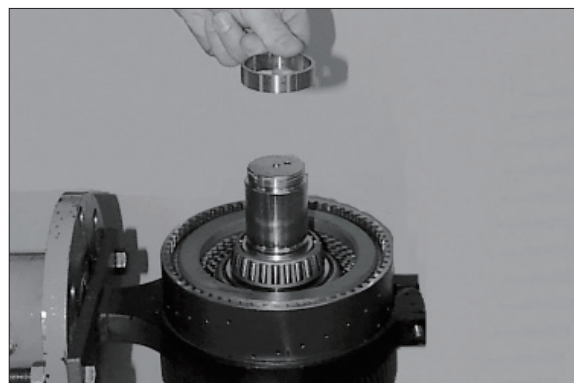


Figure 207

(4) Assemble the spur gear until all inner clutch discs are located.

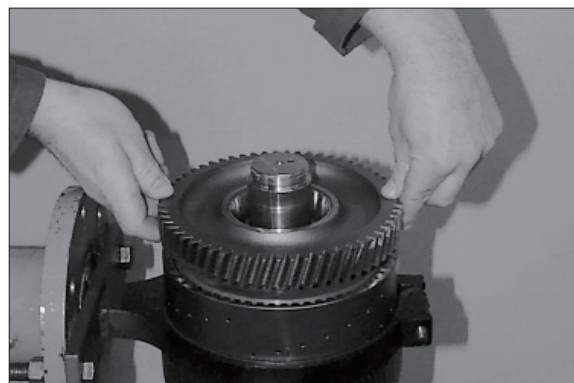


Figure 208

- (5) Heat the bearing inner ring (spur gear bearing) and locate it until contact.

**⚠ Use safety gloves.**

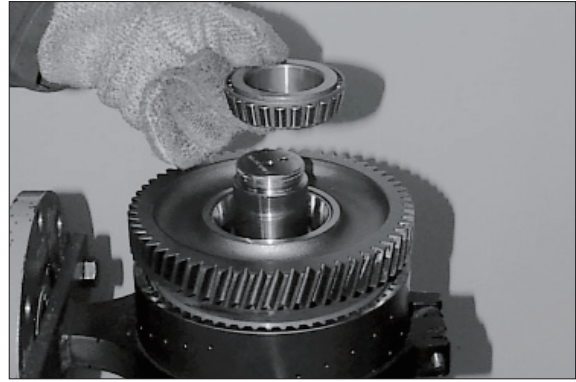


Figure 209

- (6) Heat the bearing inner ring (clutch bearing) and locate it until contact.

**⚠ Use safety gloves.**

Rotate disc carrier by 180°.



Figure 210

## Disc Components K1

※ Below sketch or table shows the standard version as to the installation position of the single components. Obligatory is the respective spare parts list.

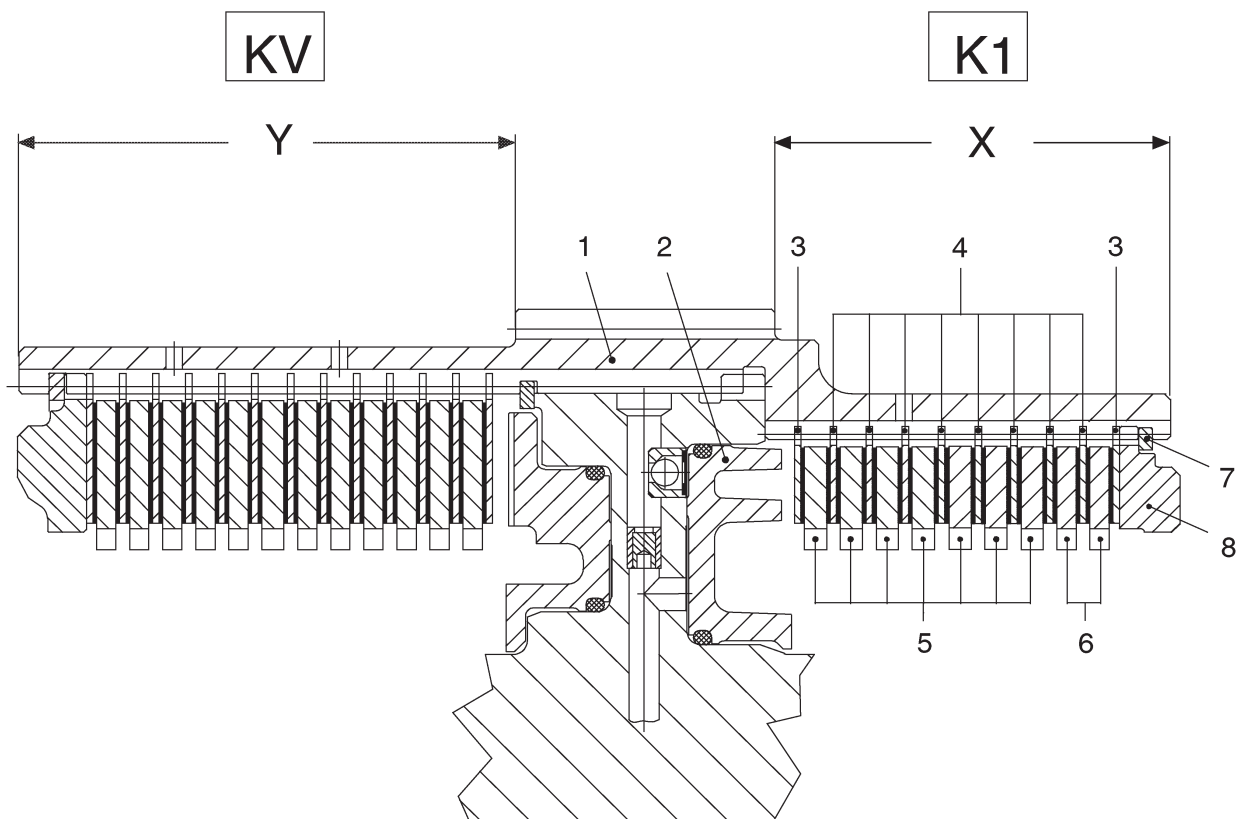


Figure 211

Position	Description	Quantity	s (mm)	Remarks
1	Disc carrier	1		
2	Piston	1		
3	Outer clutch disc	2	1.85	Coated on one side
4	Outer clutch disc	8	2.5	Coated on both sides
5	Inner clutch disc	7	2.5	
6	Inner clutch disc	2	2.5~4.0	Optional
7	Snap ring	1	2.1~2.5	Optional
8	End shim	1		
Number of friction surfaces : 18				
Disc clearance : 2.6 ~ 2.8 mm				

※ Install the outer clutch discs position 3 with uncoated side showing to the piston and end shim respectively. The respective clutch side can be seen on the length and  $\varnothing$  of the disc carrier respectively, see sketch.

K1 Dimension X (short disc carrier side and small  $\varnothing$  respectively)

KV Dimension Y (long disc carrier side and large  $\varnothing$  respectively)

**Check disc clearance  $KV=2.6\sim 2.8$  mm**  
(figure 212~214)

※ In order to ensure a perfect measuring result, the disc set is first of all to be installed without oil.

(1) Install disc set according to sketch or table (figure 211).

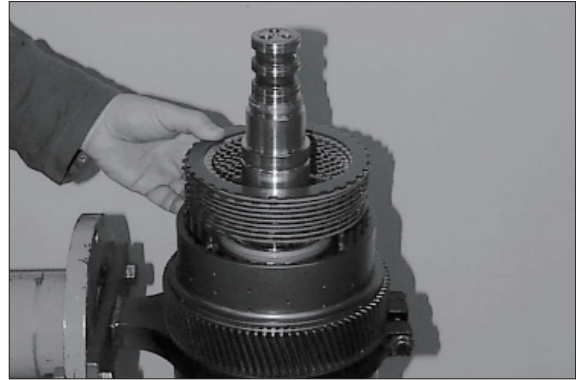


Figure 212

(2) Install the end shim and fasten it by means of the snap ring.

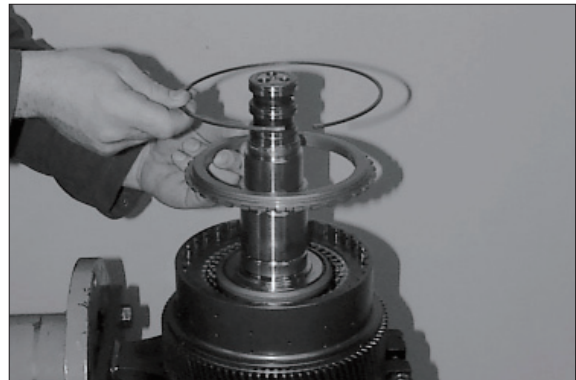


Figure 213

(3) Press on end shim with approximately 100N (10 kg) and set dial indicator to "Zero".

Then press end shim against snap ring (upwards) and read disc clearance on the dial indicator.

※ If the required disc clearance differs, it has to be corrected with the adequate inner clutch disc or/and snap ring, see table/ position 7 and position 8.

Upon setting of disc clearance, remove the disc set, oil the clutch discs and reinstall them.

※ Special tool

Magnetic stand 5870 200 055

Dial indicator 5870 200 057

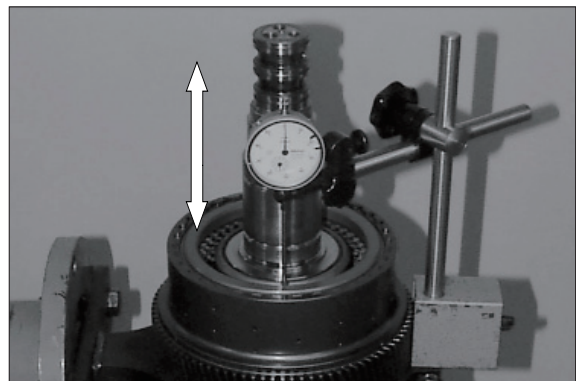


Figure 214



**Preamble and install spur gear K1**  
(figure 215~222) :

(1) Opposite figure shows the single components of spur gear K1.

- 1 Ball bearing (assy)
- 2 Snap ring
- 3 Spur gear

※ Prior to installation of the single components, align the disc set by means of the spur gear radially and center it, see figure 216.

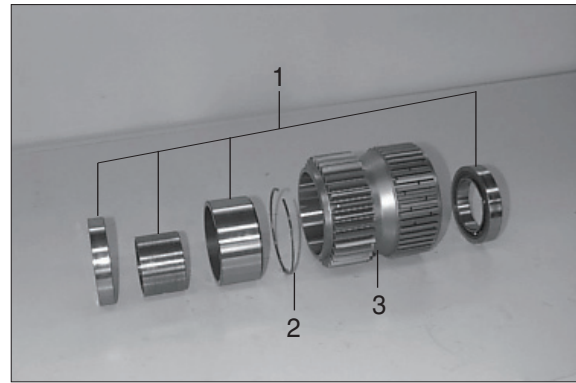


Figure 215



Figure 216

(2) Install the ring.

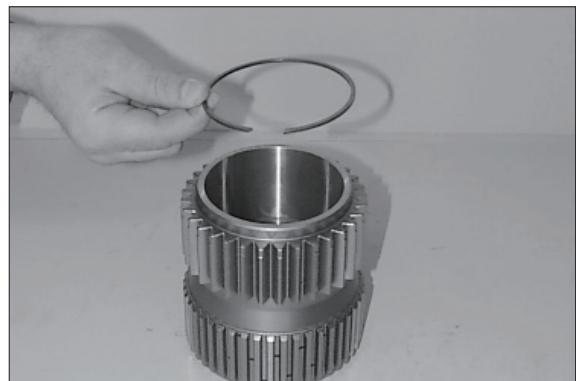


Figure 217

(3) Install the bush with collar (arrow) on face end showing to the snap ring.



Figure 218

(4) Press in the ball bearing until contact.

- ※ Install the ball bearing with the lubricating groove (arrow) showing downwards. Put the press-in tool only to the bearing outer ring.

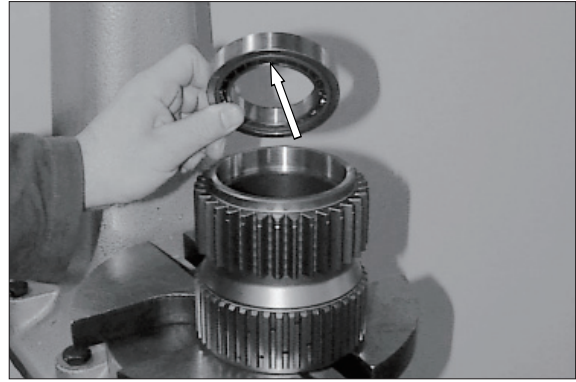


Figure 219

(5) Heat the second ball bearing and install it until contact.

- ※ Lubricating groove (arrow), must show upwards.

**▲ Use safety gloves.**



Figure 220

(6) Assemble the bush.



Figure 221

(7) Heat the spur gear to approximately 120°C and assemble it until all inner clutch discs are located.

**▲ Use safety gloves.**



Figure 222

(8) Install shim  $s = 1.20 \text{ mm}$

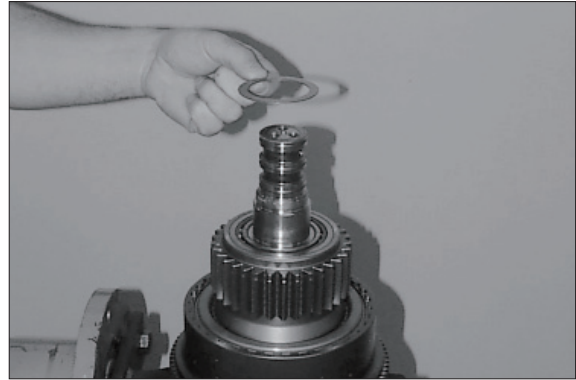


Figure 223

(9) Heat the bearing inner ring and install it until contact.

**▲ Use safety gloves.**



Figure 224

(10) Lift the disc carrier out of the clamping ring. To ensure the exact locating of the single components, preload the bearing with 100kN (10 t) (figure 225).

**▲ Support on the lower as well as upper bearing inner ring.  
Use pressure pieces.**

※ Special tool

Pressure pieces

5870 506 096

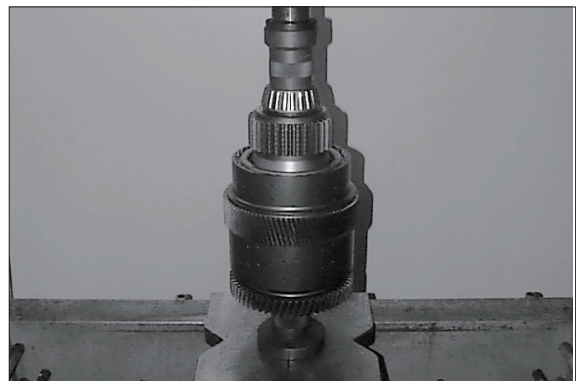


Figure 225



(11) Lift the disc carrier into the clamping ring.  
Rotate disc carrier by 90°.  
Install the slotted nut.

- ※ Observe installation position of the slotted nut. Collar (ø 60 mm) must show to the taper roller bearing also see sketch (figure 192). Oil the thread.

- Torque limit : 56.1 kgf · m (406 lbf · ft)

- ※ Special tool

- Slotted nut wrench                      5870 401 118

- Slotted nut wrench                      5870 401 099

Install the opposite slotted nut (KV-side)  
analogously.

- ※ Special tool

- Slotted nut wrench                      5870 401 118

- Slotted nut wrench                      5870 401 115

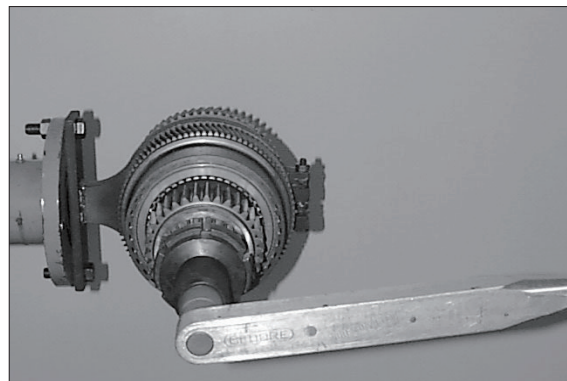


Figure 226

(12) Check function of the clutches KV and K1  
by means of compressed air.

- ※ Closing or opening of the clutches is  
clearly audible when the single parts have  
been installed adequately.



Figure 227

(13) Snap-in and lock the rectangular rings  
(3EA, see arrows).

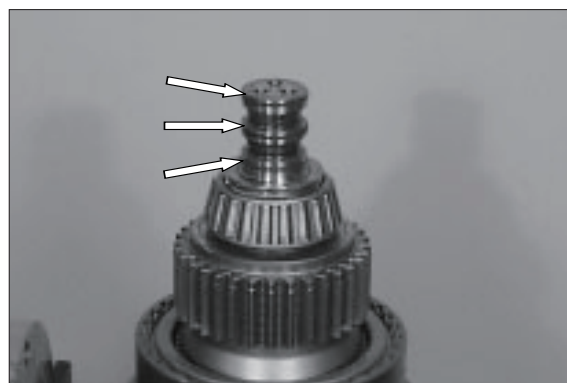


Figure 228

## Installation of layshaft gear, multi-disc clutches and output gear

(1) Opposite figure shows the single components of the layshaft gear bearing.

- 1 Bearing inner ring (2EA)
- 2 Ring
- 3 Layshaft gear

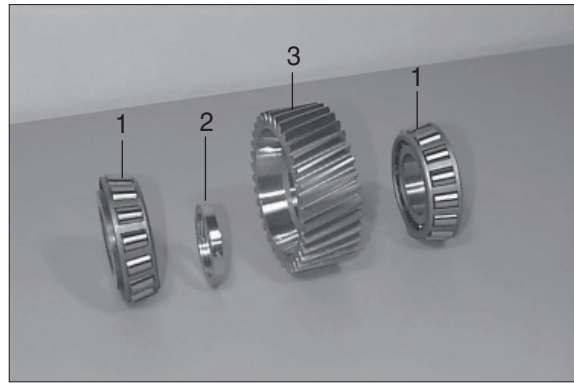


Figure 229

(2) Position layshaft gear (assy) in the housing.

※ Only when the clutches are installed, the idler shaft can be mounted.

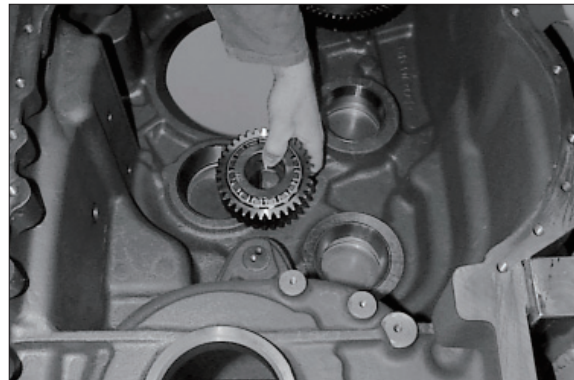


Figure 230

(3) Insert the bearing outer rings KV/K1, KR/K2 and K3/K4 into the housing bores until contact, see arrows.

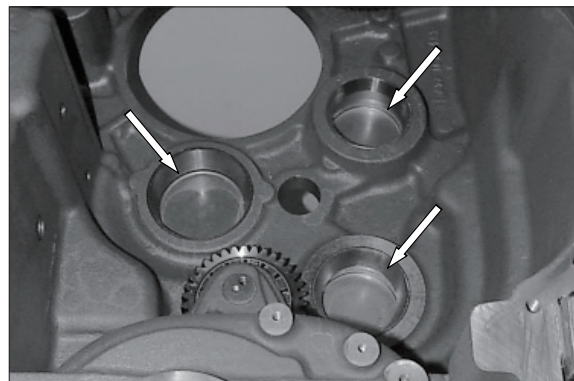


Figure 231

(4) Position clutch KV/K1 by means of lifting tackle.

※ Special tool  
Eyebolts assortment 5870 204 002

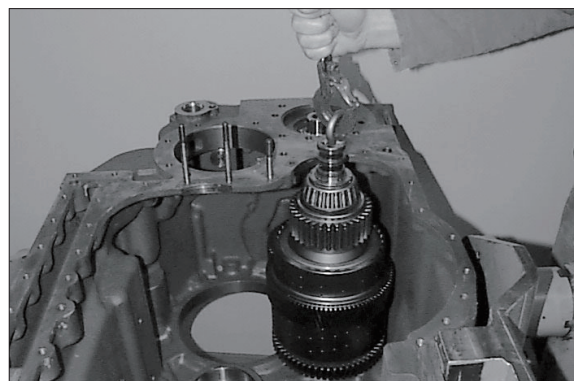


Figure 232

(5) Position clutch KR/K2.

- ※ Special tool  
Eyebolts assortment 5870 204 002

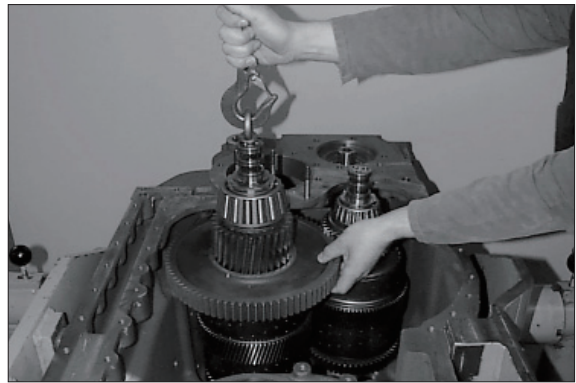


Figure 233

(6) Check the installation position of the layshaft gear (arrow) once again and correct it, if required.

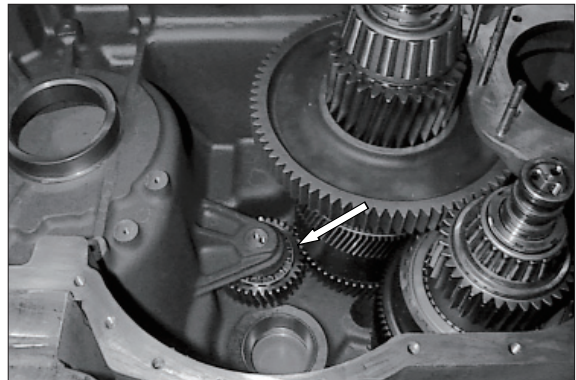


Figure 234

(7) Fasten the spur gear K3 by means of fixture and eyebolt (arrow) axially.

- ※ Spur gear fixing prevents the clutch discs from dislocating when the clutch is lifted in.

- ※ Special tool  
Assembly fixture 5870 345 033  
Eyebolt 5870 204 066



Figure 235

(8) Lift the clutch KR/K2 slightly, move it in direction of the arrow and position clutch K3/K4.

Then remove the fixture (figure 235) again.

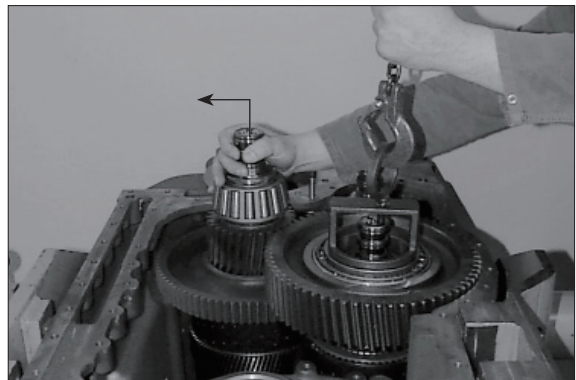


Figure 236

- (9) Insert the bearing outer ring into the housing bore until contact.

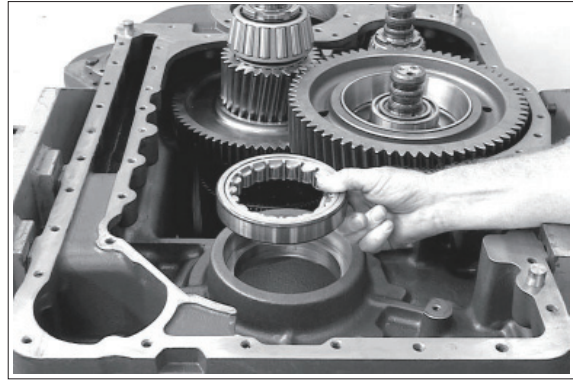


Figure 237

- (10) Heat the bearing inner ring and install it until contact.

**▲ Use safety gloves.**

- ※ Observe installation position-collar (arrow) shows to the spur gear. Install the bearing inner ring after cooling down subsequently (press).



Figure 238

- (11) Position the oil baffle.

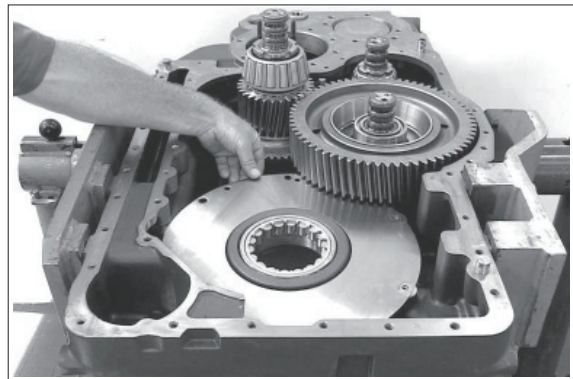


Figure 239

- (12) Install the output gear by means of lifting tackle.

- ※ Special tool  
Stop washer 5870 100 054  
Eyebolts assortment 5870 204 002

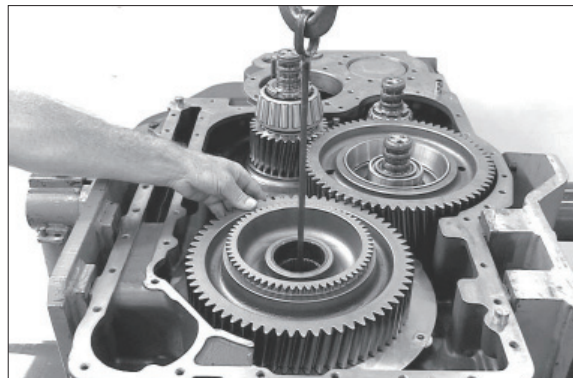


Figure 240



- (13) Position upper oil baffle and fasten both plates by means of hexagon screws (4EA).

※ Install washers.

Secure hexagon screws with loctite (type No.243).

• Torque limit : 2.35 kgf · m (16.7 lbf · ft)

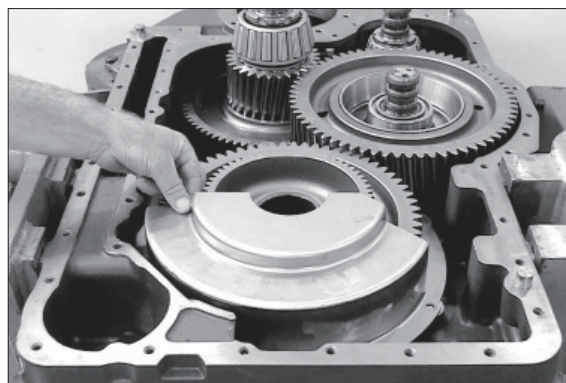


Figure 241

### Preassembly and mounting of the housing cover

Note to figure 242 and 243 :

Depending on the transmission version, differences as regards the single components and their installation position are possible.

Obligatory is the respective parts list.

- (1) Install the sealing cover (arrow).

※ Wet the sealing surface with loctite (type No.262).

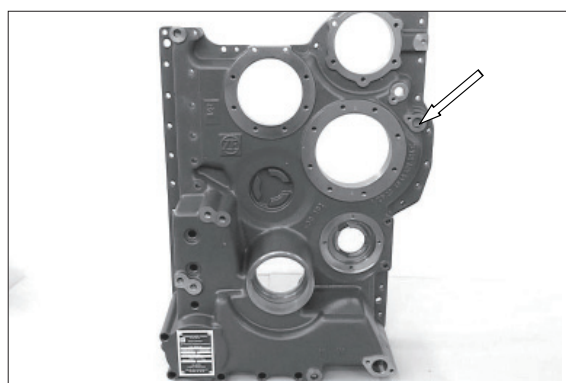


Figure 242

- (2) Insert the O-ring into the annular groove of the cover and fasten the cover by means of hexagon screws.

※ Wet the thread of the hexagon screws with loctite (type No.574). Observe the installation position of the cover, see figure.

• Torque limit : 2.35 kgf · m (16.7 lbf · ft)

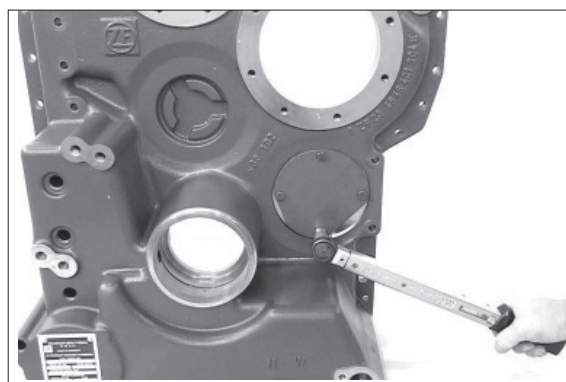


Figure 243

- (3) Wet the mounting face with sealing compound (loctite, type No.574).

By means of the lifting tackle place the housing cover on the transmission housing until contact.

※ Special tool

Lifting tackle

5870 281 055

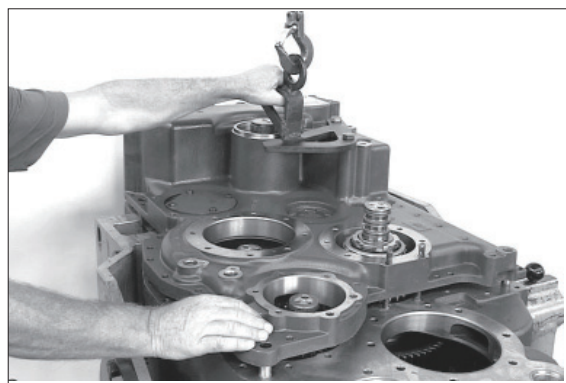


Figure 244

- (4) Install both cylindrical pins (arrow 1 and 2) and the slotted pin (arrow 3).

Then fasten the housing cover by means of hexagon and cap screws.

- Torque limit M10/8.8 :

4.69 kgf · m (33.9 lbf · ft)

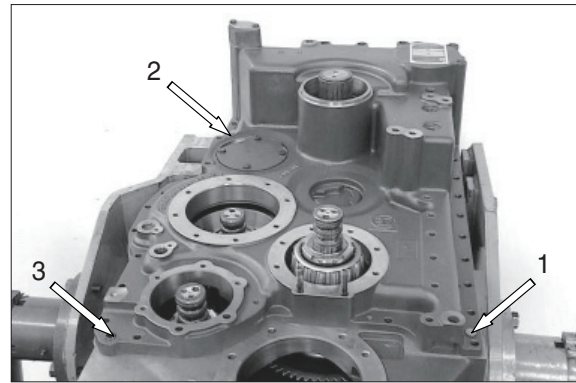


Figure 245

### Adjust the bearing preload of clutch K4/K3 = 0.0~0.05 mm (figure 248~250)

- ※ For installation of a new bearing cover, both finished bores have to be sealed by means of a plug.

Finished bores are located opposite (180°) to each other, also see arrow/figure 246 and 247.

1 Bearing cover-K4/K3

2 Plug (konig)

(S) Special tool

- ※ Special tool

Hand mounting tool 5870 320 014

Ratchet spanner 5870 320 018

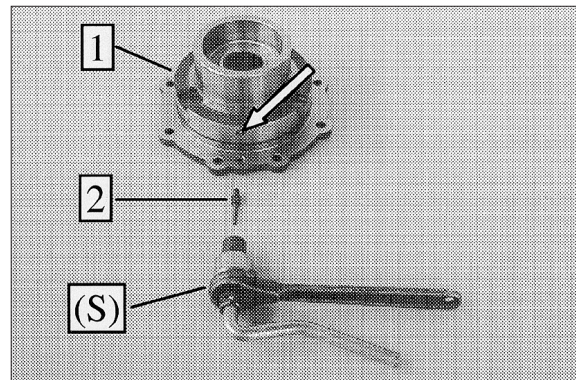


Figure 246

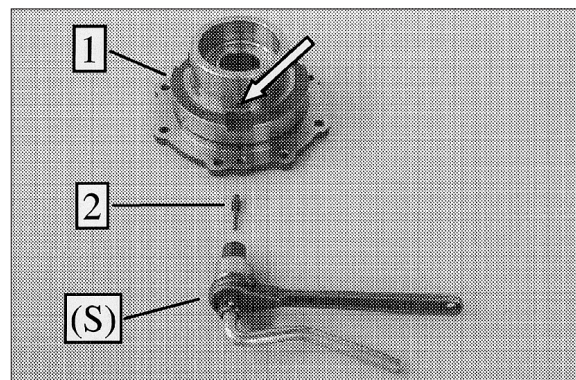


Figure 247



### Housing dimension :

- (1) Press on equally the bearing inner ring and determine Dimension I, from the mounting face to the bearing inner ring.

Dimension I e.g ..... 43.65 mm

- ※ Take several measuring points and determine the mean value.

Then remove the bearing inner ring again.

- ※ Special tool

Measuring shaft 5870 200 022

Digital depth gauge 5870 200 072

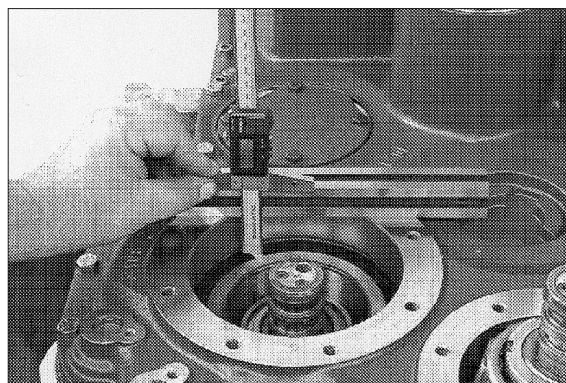


Figure 248

### Cover dimension :

- (2) Determine Dimension II, from the mounting face until contact/bearing inner ring.

Dimension II e.g ..... 42.12 mm

- ※ Special tool

Straightedge 5870 200 022

Gauge blocks 5870 200 067

Digital depth gauge 5870 200 072

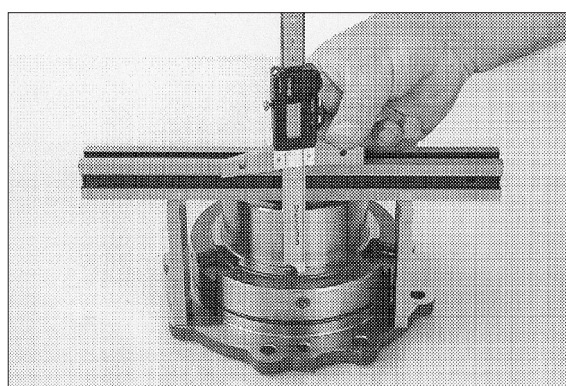


Figure 249

### Example :

Dimension I ..... 43.65 mm

Dimension II ..... - 42.12 mm

Difference ..... = 1.53 mm

Bearing preload ..... e.g. + 0.02 mm

Resulting shim(s) ..... s = 1.55 mm

- (3) Put on the shim.

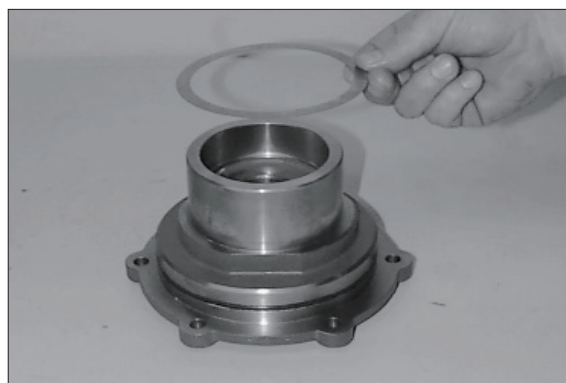


Figure 250

- (4) Heat the bearing inner ring and place it until contact.

### ▲ Use safety gloves.

- ※ Install the bearing inner ring after cooling down subsequently (press).



Figure 251



- (5) Grease the rectangular rings (3EA, arrows) and centrally align them.

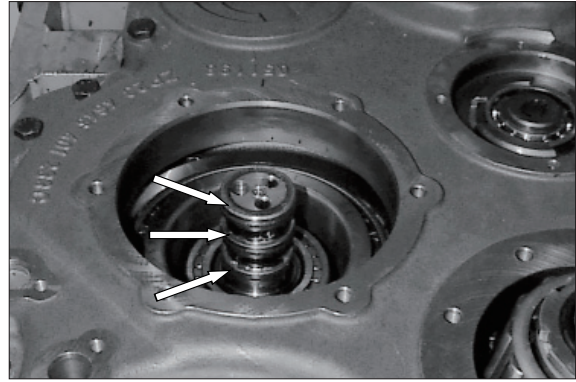


Figure 252

- (6) Install the O-ring (arrow) and grease it.  
Heat the inner diameter of the bearing cover (bearing seat).

※ Special tool

Hot-air blower 230V 5870 221 500

Hot-air blower 115V 5870 221 501



Figure 253

- (7) Install two adjusting screws.  
Assemble the bearing cover and tighten it equally until contact by means of hexagon screws.

• Torque limit (M10/8.8) :

4.69 kgf · m (33.9 lbf · ft)

※ Observe the radial installation position.

※ Special tool

Adjusting screws 5870 204 007

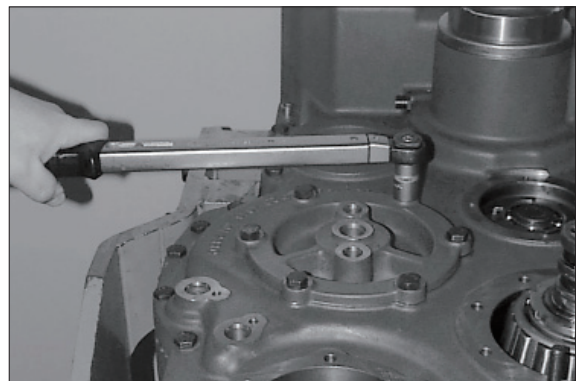


Figure 254

- (8) Check the function of **both** clutches by means of compressed air.

※ In case of a decisive pressure loss, the possible cause might be the breakage of one or several rectangular rings (see arrow , figure 252).

Replace the rectangular rings, if required.

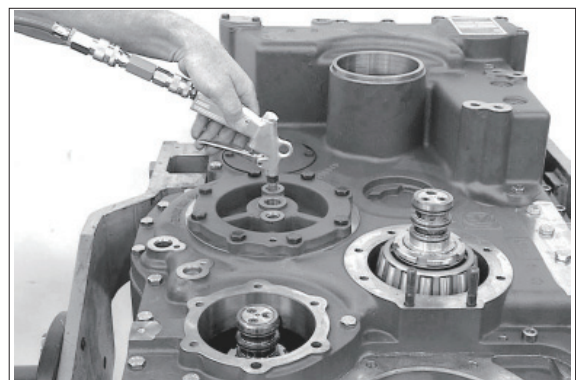


Figure 255

**Adjust the bearing preload of clutch KR/K2  
= 0.0~0.05 mm (figure 258~262)**

※ For installation of a new bearing cover, both finished bores have to be sealed by means of a plug.

Finished bores are located opposite (18°) to each other, also see arrow/Figure 256 and 257.

1 Bearing cover-KR/K2

2 Plug

(S) Special tool

※ Special tool

Hand mounting tool 5870 320 014

Ratchet spanner 5870 320 018

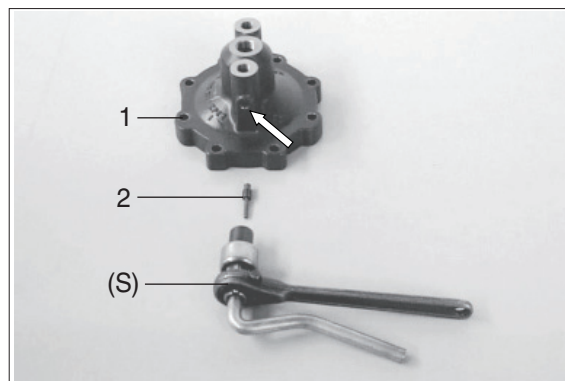


Figure 256

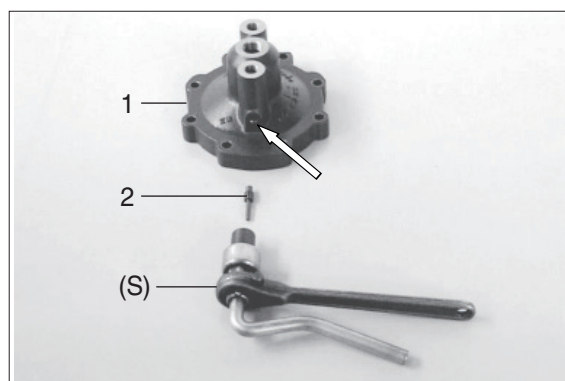


Figure 257

(1) Install both studs (arrows).

※ Wet the thread with loctite (type No. 243).

• Torque limit (M10) :  
1.33 kgf · m (9.59 lbf · ft)

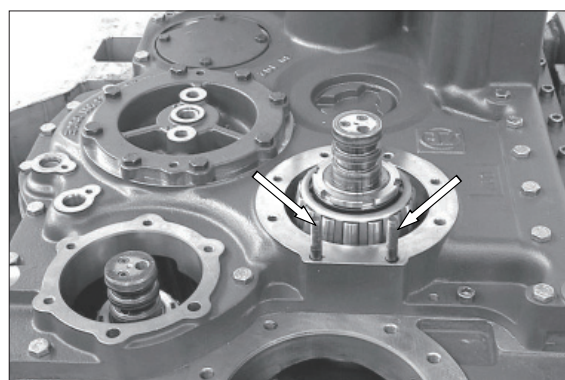


Figure 258

(2) Install the bearing outer ring until contact.

※ Pay attention to exact contact.

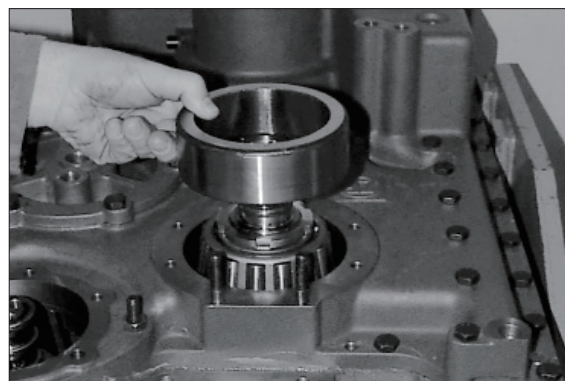


Figure 259

### Housing dimension :

- (3) Determine Dimension I, from the bearing outer ring to the mounting face.

Dimension I e.g ..... 16.13 mm

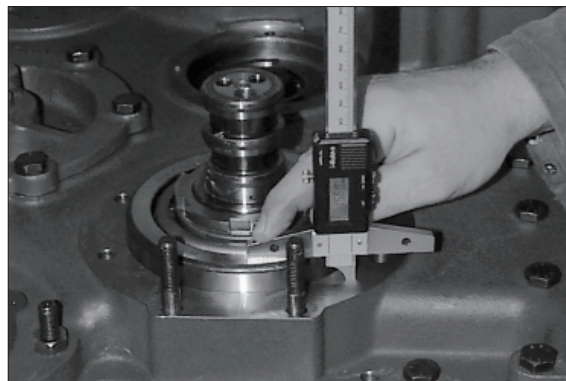


Figure 260

### Cover dimension :

- (4) Determine Dimension II, from the contact/ bearing outer ring to the mounting face.

Dimension II e.g ..... 17.75 mm

※ Special tool

Digital depth gauge 5870 200 072

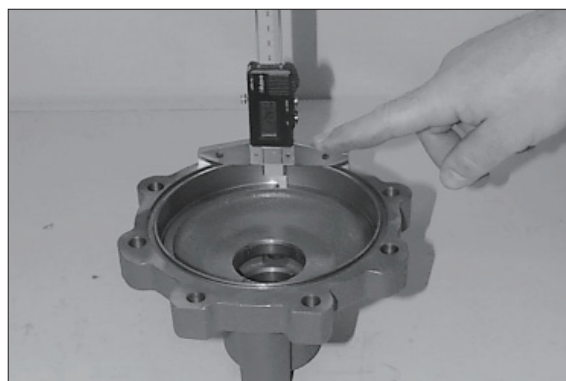


Figure 261

### Example :

Dimension II ..... 17.75 mm

Dimension I ..... - 16.13 mm

Difference ..... = 1.62 mm

Bearing preload ..... e.g. + 0.03 mm

Resulting shim (s) ..... s = 1.65 mm

- (5) Fix the shim with assembly grease into the cover. Install the O-ring (arrow).

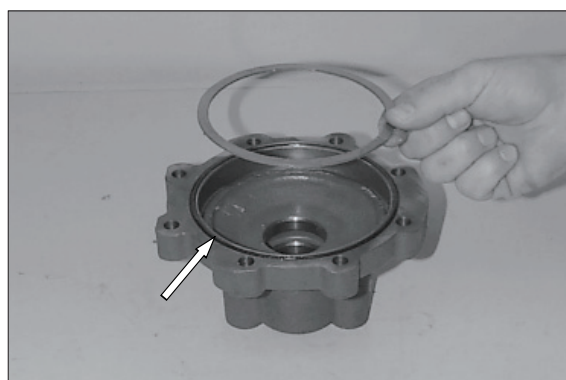


Figure 262

- (6) Grease the rectangular rings (arrows) and centrally align them.

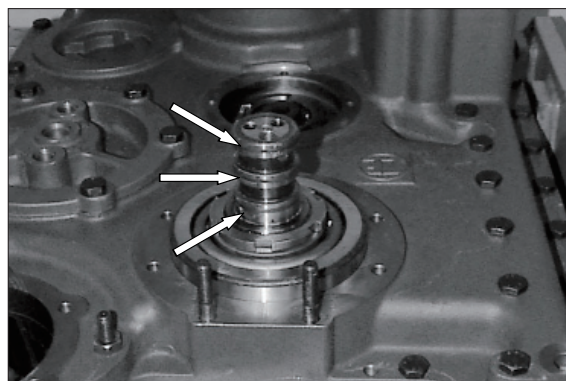


Figure 263

(7) Pull the bearing cover equally until contact.

• Torque limit (M10/8.8) :

4.69 kgf · m (33.9 lbf · ft)

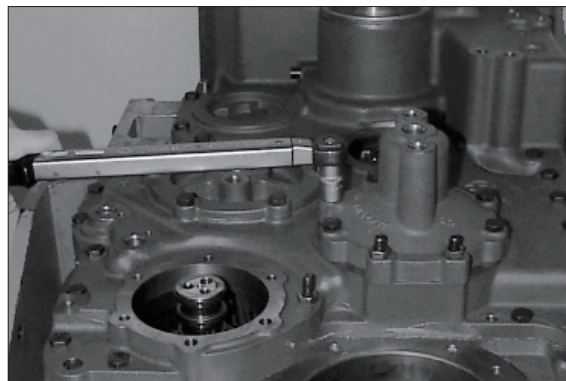


Figure 264

(8) Check the function of both clutches by means of compressed air.

※ In case of a decisive pressure loss, the possible cause might be the breakage of one or several rectangular rings (see figure 263).

Replace the rectangular rings, if required.

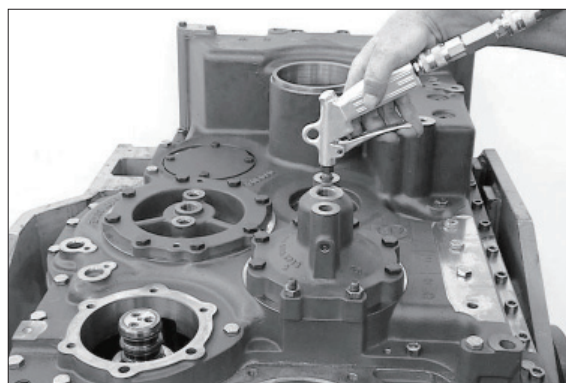


Figure 265



**Adjust the bearing preload of clutch KV/K1  
= 0.0~0.05 mm (figure 267~270)**

※ For installation of a new bearing cover, both finished bores have to be sealed by means of a plug.

Installation position, see arrows/figure 266.

1 Bearing cover-KV/K1

2 Plug

(S) Special tool

※ Special tool

Hand mounting tool 5870 320 014

Ratchet spanner 5870 320 018

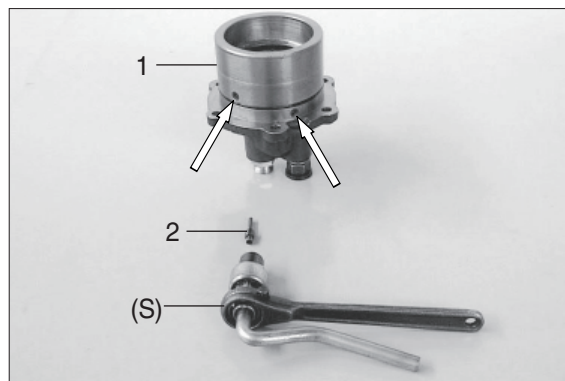


Figure 266

- (1) Put the bearing outer ring over the bearing inner ring.

Housing dimension :

Press on equally the bearing outer ring and determine Dimension I, from the mounting face to the bearing outer ring.

Dimension I e.g ..... 52.67 mm

※ Take several measuring points and determine the mean value.

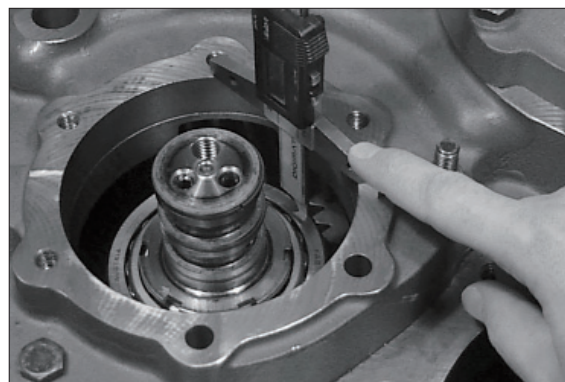


Figure 267

- (2) Put the ring with the chamfer showing downwards into the bearing cover.



Figure 268

Cover dimension :

- (3) Determine Dimension II, from the mounting face to the ring.

Dimension II e.g ..... 50.75 mm

※ Special tool

Digital depth gauge ..... 5870 200 072

Gauge blocks ..... 5870 200 067

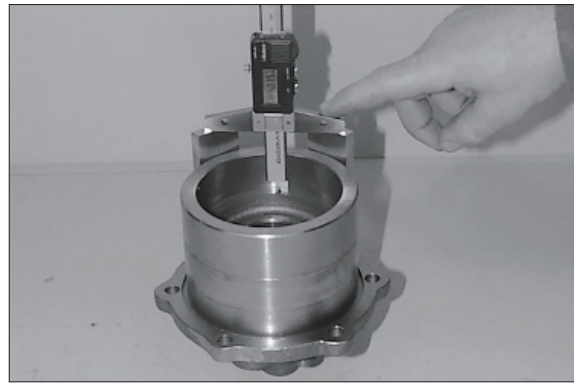


Figure 269

Example :

Dimension I ..... 52.67 mm

Dimension II ..... - 50.75 mm

Difference ..... e.g. 1.92 mm

Bearing preload ..... + 0.03 mm

Resulting shim (s) ..... s = 1.95 mm

- (4) Put in the shim.



Figure 270

- (5) Install the bearing outer ring until contact.  
Assemble the O-ring (arrow).



Figure 271

- (6) Grease the rectangular rings (arrows) and centrally align them.

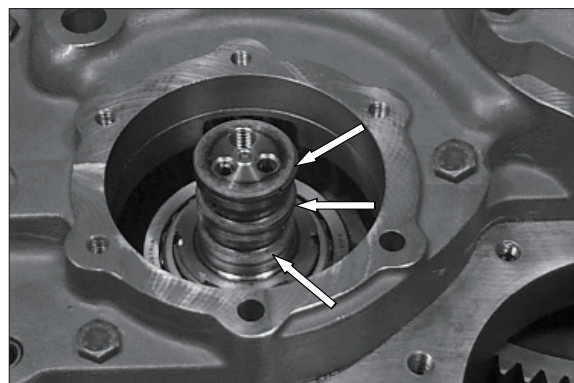


Figure 272

(7) Heat the bearing bore.

※ Special tool

Hot-air blower 230V                    5870 221 500

Hot-air blower 115V                  5870 221 501

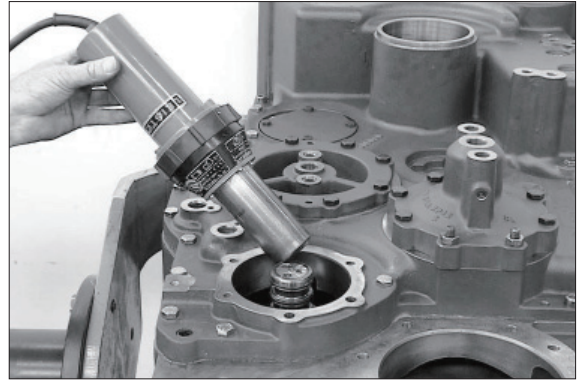


Figure 273

(8) Install two adjusting screws.

Place the bearing cover until contact and  
fasten it by means of hexagon screws.

※ Observe the radial installation position,  
see figure.

※ Special tool

Adjusting screws                    5870 204 007

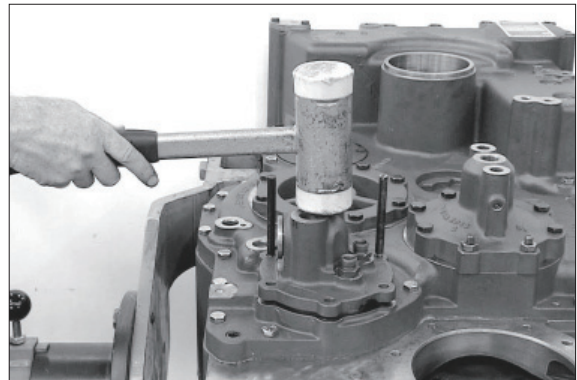


Figure 274

(9) Check the function of both clutches by  
means of compressed air.

※ In case of a decisive pressure loss, the  
possible cause might be the breakage of  
one or several rectangular rings (see  
arrow, figure 272).  
Replace the rectangular ring (s), if  
required.

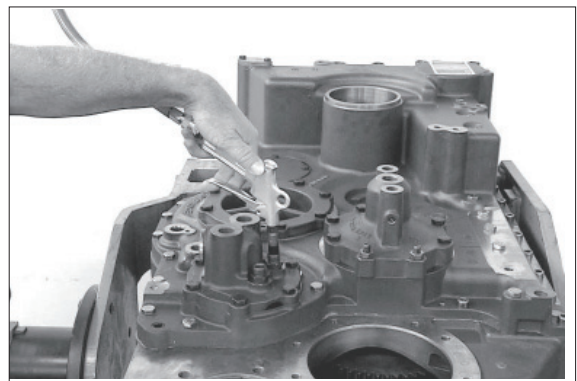


Figure 275



## Output

### Installation of the output shaft

(1) Heat the inner diameter of the output gear.

※ Special tool

Hot-air blower 230V                      5870 221 500

Hot-air blower 115V                    5870 221 501

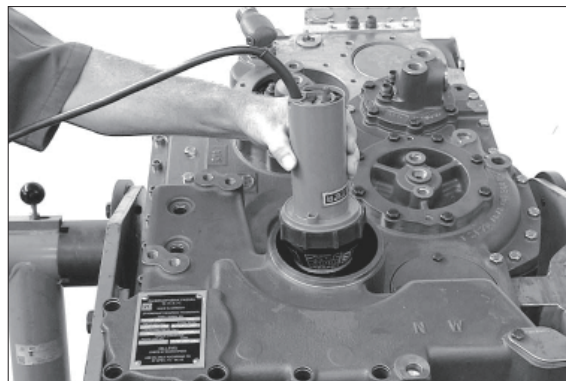


Figure 276

(2) Assemble the output shaft with the long gearing showing downwards until contact.

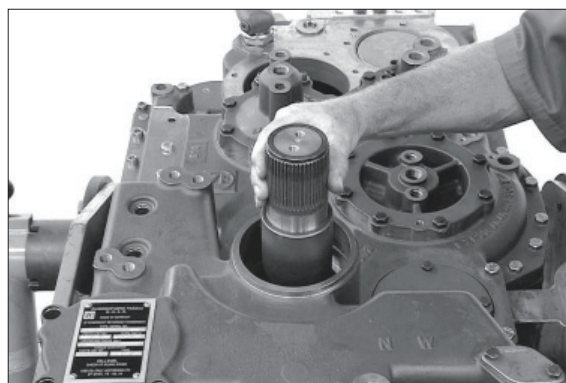


Figure 277

(3) Rotate the transmission housing into the vertical position (90°).

By means of the mounting tool the output shaft has preliminarily to be fixed axially (figure 278 and 279) at the convert-er side.

※ Special tool

Mounting tool                              5870 048 265

Then rotate the transmission housing back again (90°).



Figure 278

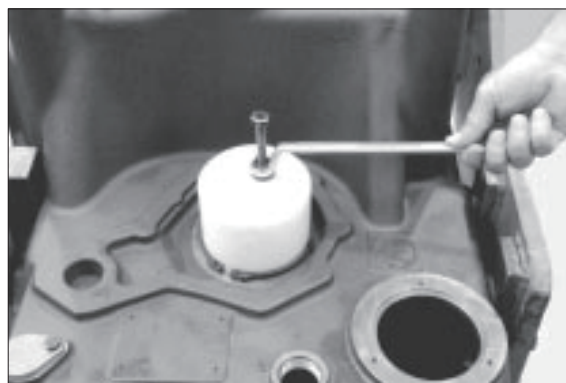


Figure 279

**Adjust the axial play of the output bearing  
= 0.3~0.5 mm (figure 280~282)**

- (4) Determine Dimension I, from plane face/  
housing to end face/output shaft.

Dimension I e.g ..... 66.90 mm

※ Special tool

Digital depth gauge 5870 200 072



Figure 280

- (5) Measure Dimension II, from plane face/  
housing to contact face/ball bearing.

Dimension II e.g ..... 64.20 mm

Example :

Dimension I ..... 66.90 mm

Dimension II ..... - 64.20 mm

Difference ..... = 2.70mm

Required axial play ..... e.g. - 0.40 mm

(0.3~0.5 mm)

Resulting shim ..... s = 2.30 mm

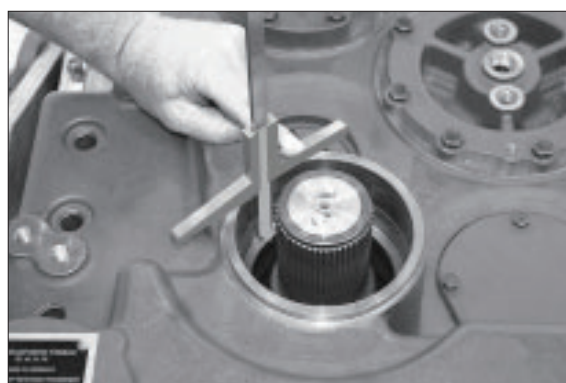


Figure 281

- (6) Install the shim.

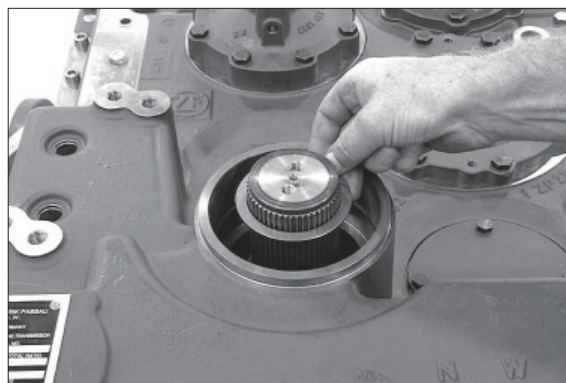


Figure 282

- (7) Install the ball bearing (figure 283) and  
pull it until contact by means of the output  
flange (figure 284).

Then remove the output flange again.

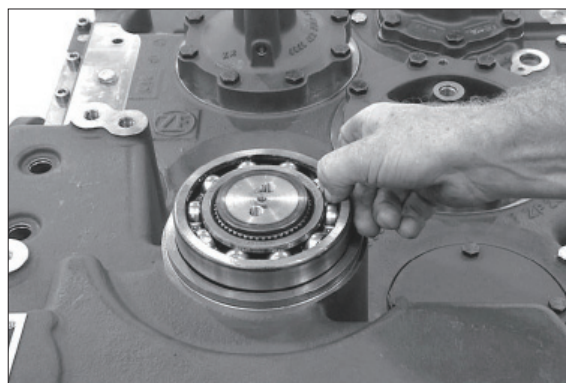


Figure 283

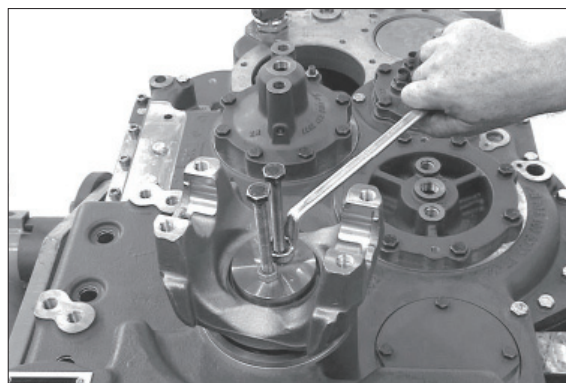


Figure 284

(8) Fasten the ball bearing by means of retaining ring.

※ Clamping pliers 5870 900 021

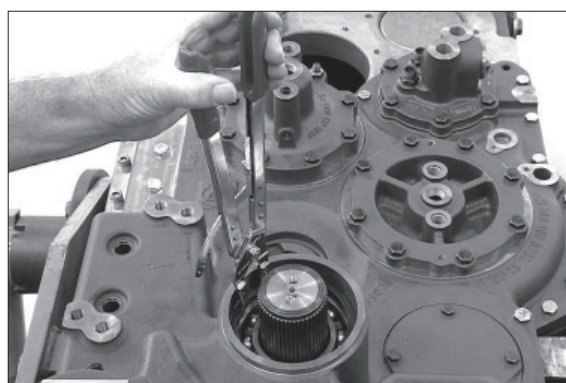


Figure 285

(9) Remove the converter-side mounting tool again.

Install the shaft seal, (arrow) with the sealing lip showing to the oil sump.

※ Using of the specified mounting tool (S), results in the exact installation position (without retaining ring = 20 mm).  
Grease the sealing lip.

※ Special tool  
Mounting tool 5870 048 265

※ Depending on the version different shaft seals can be used :  
Outer diameter rubber-coated-wet it with spirit. Outer diameter metallic-wet it with sealing compound (loctite, type No. 574).

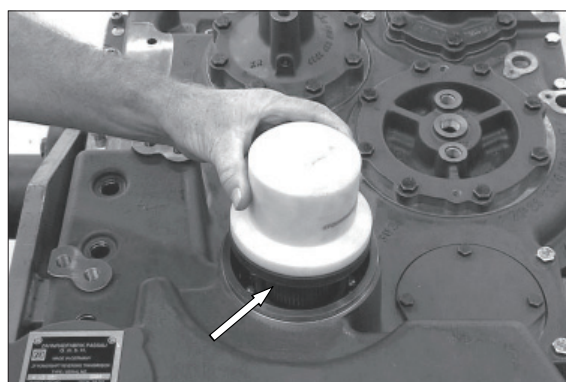


Figure 286



Adjust gap size  $X = 0.3 \sim 0.8 \text{ mm}$   
(figure 289~292) :

- X     Gap size
- 1     Shim
- 2     O-ring.

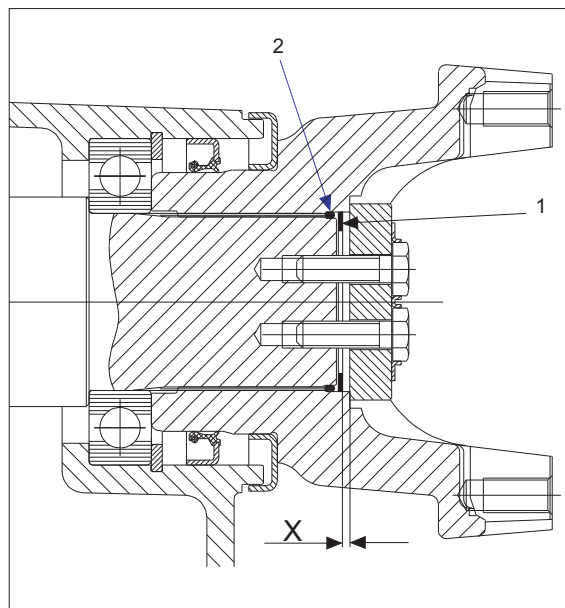


Figure 289

- (1) Install the output flange until contact.

Measure Dimension I, from the plane face of the output flange to the end face of the output shaft.

Dimension I e.g. ....37.00 mm

※ Special tool

Digital depth gauge                      5870 200 072

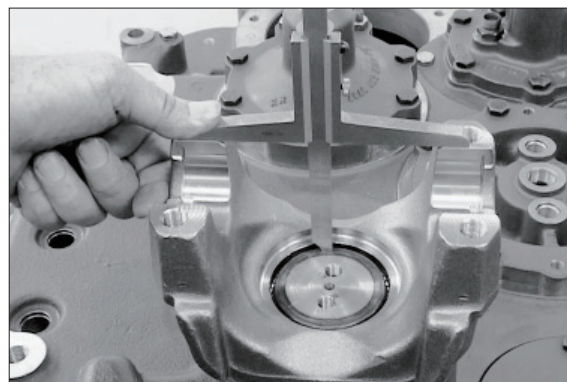


Figure 290

- (2) Measure Dimension II, from the plane face to the collar of the output flange.

Dimension II e.g. .... 36.00 mm

Example :

Dimension I ..... 37.00 mm

Dimension II ..... - 36.00 mm

Difference ..... = 1.00 mm

Gap size X ..... e.g. - 0.50 mm  
(0.3~0.8 mm)

Resulting shim ..... s = 0.50 mm

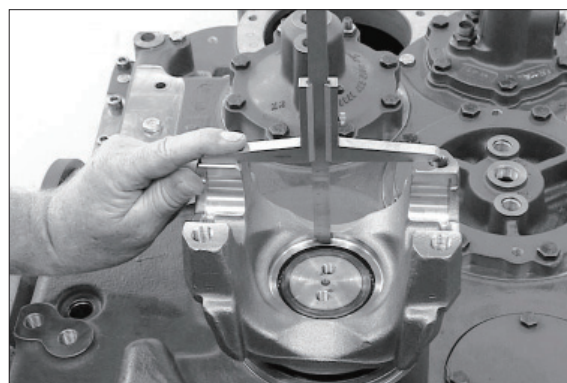


Figure 291

- (3) Place the O-ring (arrow) into the space between output flange and shaft (see also figure 289) and put on the shim.

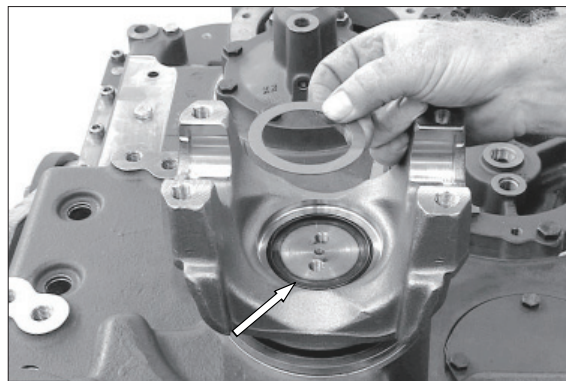


Figure 292

- (4) Put on the washer and fasten the output flange by means of hexagon screws.

- Torque limit (M10/8.8) :  
4.69 kgf · m (33.9 lbf · ft)

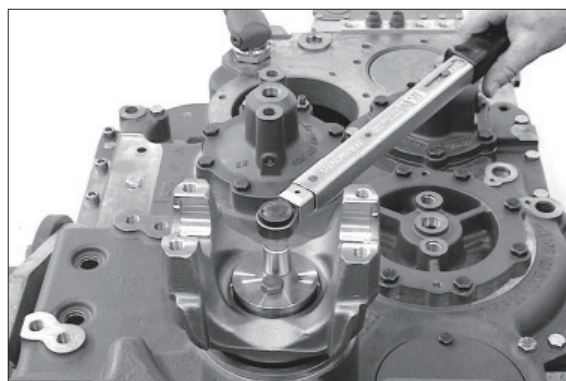


Figure 293

- (5) Fasten the hexagon screws by means of the lock plate.

- ※ Specail tool
- Mounting tool 5870 057 009
- Handle 5870 260 002

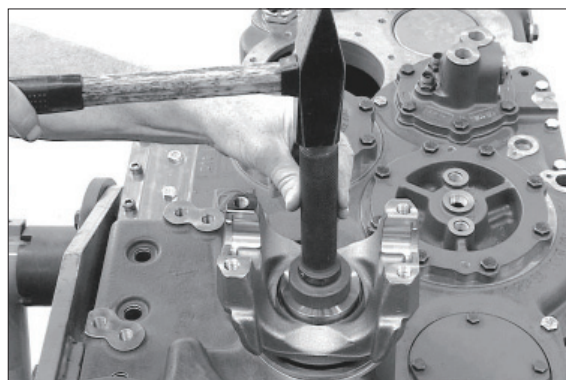


Figure 294

### Output flange - parking brake

- (1) Press on the screen sheet (arrow) until contact.

※ The installation position of the screen sheet is identical with the output flange.

Pressing bush 5870 506 138

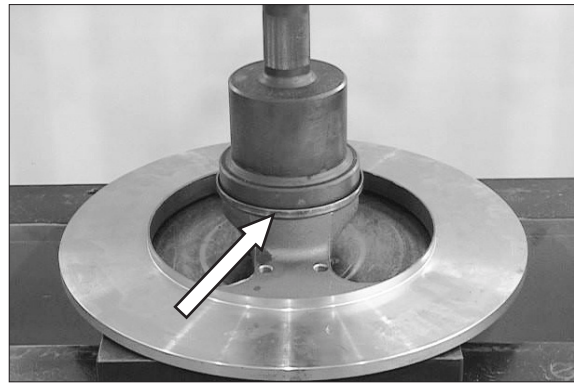


Figure 295

- (2) Install the output flange-brake disk until contact.

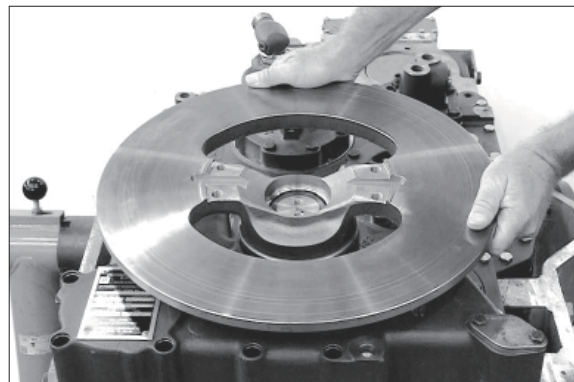


Figure 296

### Mount the brake (figure 297~301)

**▲ For working on the brake system, the instructions and specifications of the brake manufacturer are mandatory.**

- (3) Remove the screw cap and loosen the locking nut (wrench size 30).

Unscrew the adjusting screw in counterclockwise direction until a dimension  $> 13.0$  mm (brake disc shim) results (figure 297).

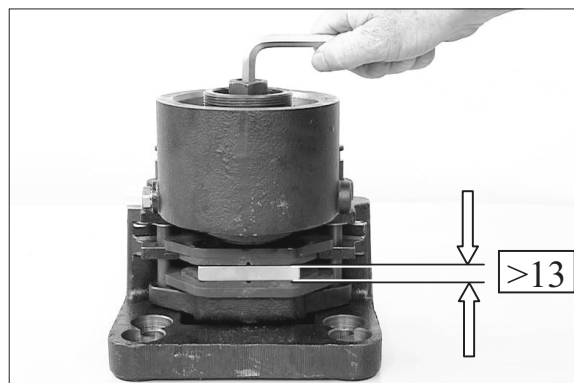


Figure 297

- (4) Position the brake and fasten it with cap screws.

Tightening torque M14/8.8) :  $12.7 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
 $(92.2 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft})$

Socket spanner 5870 656 047

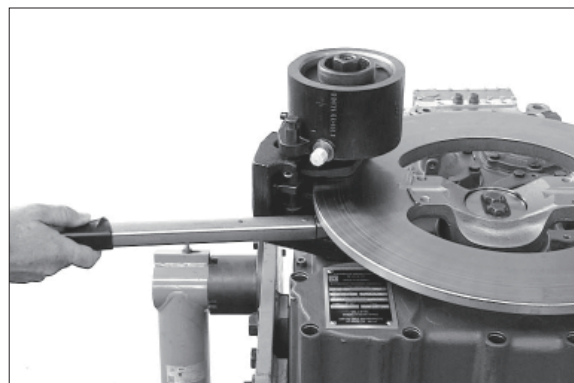


Figure 298

**Adjust the nominal clearance = 2.0 mm** (figure 299~301)

- (5) Make the pressure connection and apply the required release pressure = 150 bar to the brake (cup spring set preloaded). Fasten the adjusting screw in clockwise direction until both brake lining carriers contact the brake disc (turning of the adjusting screw is then not possible or admissible any more without a higher application of force).

Then turn back the adjusting screw by 4/5 turns in counterclockwise direction. 4/5 turns is equal to a nominal clearance of 2.0 mm.

- (6) Keep the adjusting screw positioned and fix it by means of a lock nut.

HP-Pump	5870 287 007
Mini-measuring hub	5870 950 102

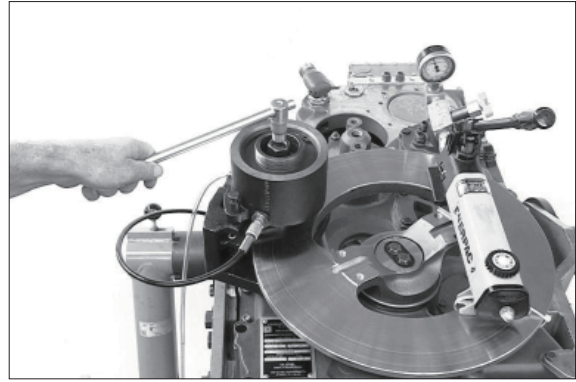


Figure 299

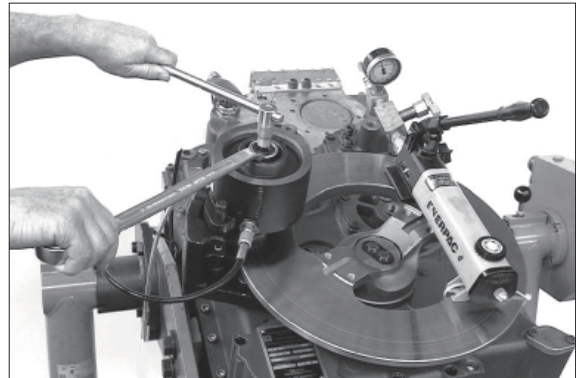


Figure 300

- (7) Put new O-Ring into the screw cap and grease it.  
Install the screw cap.

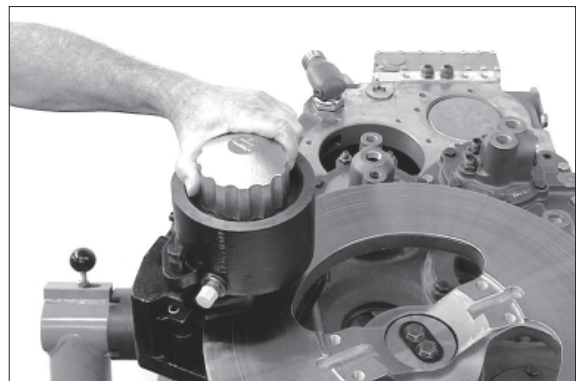


Figure 301



### Output Flange (converter side)

(1) Install the shaft seal (arrow) with the sealing lip showing to the oil sump.

- ※ Using of the specified mounting tool, results in the exact installation position (with retaining ring = 7.0 mm). Grease the sealing lip.

※ Special tool  
Mounting tool 5870 048 265

- ※ Depending on the version different shaft seals can be used :  
Outer diameter rubber-coated-wet it with spirit. Outer diameter metallic-wet it with sealing compound (loctite, type No. 574).

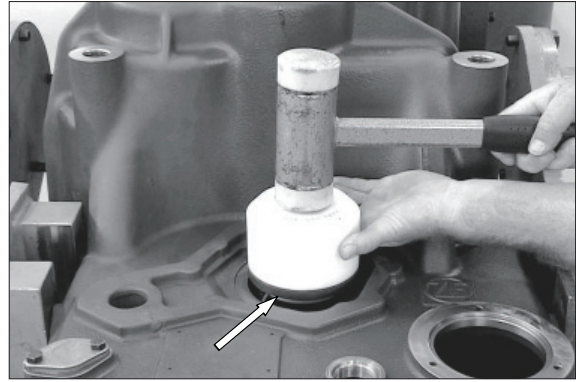


Figure 302

(1) Press the screen sheet (arrow) over the collar of the output flange until contact.

- ※ Observe the installation position, see figure 304.

※ Special tool  
Pressing bush 5870 506 138

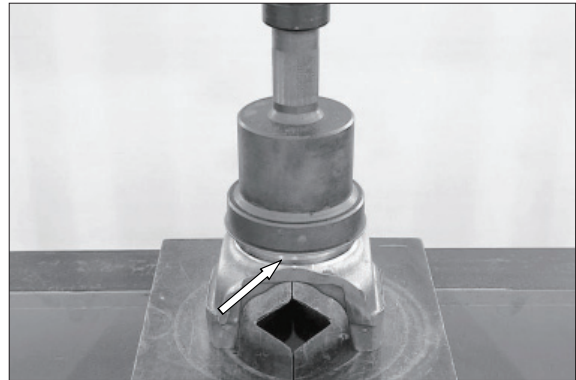


Figure 303

- 1 Screen sheet
- 2 Output flange

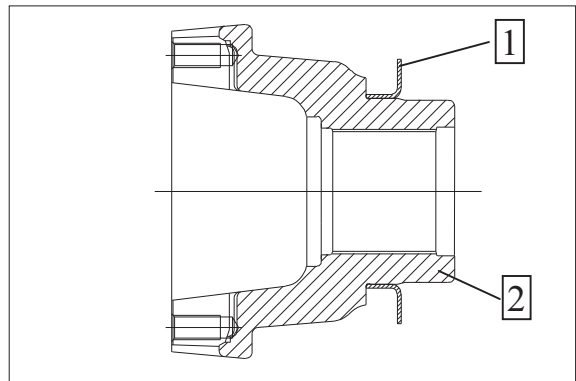


Figure 304

(2) Install the output flange until contact.

- ※ Setting of the gap size as well as fixing of the output flange is identical with the installation of the output flange at the transmission rearside, see figure 289~294.



Figure 305

### Installation of the idler shaft

(1) Align the layshaft gear and the single components centrally.  
Heat the layshaft gearing (figure 306).

- ※ Special tool  
Hot-air blower 230V                    5870 221 500  
Hot-air blower 115V                  5870 221 501



Figure 306

(2) Install the adjusting screw.

- ※ Special tool  
Adjusting screws                    5870 204 007

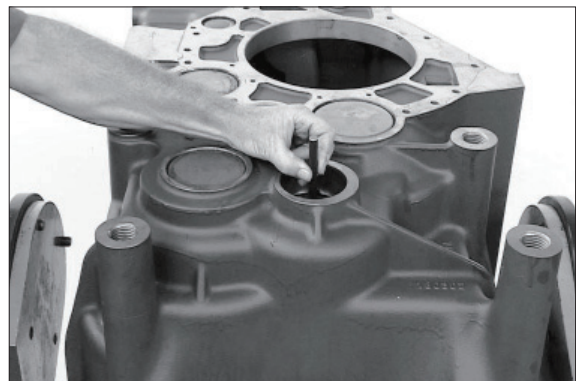


Figure 307

(3) Install the idler shaft until contact.

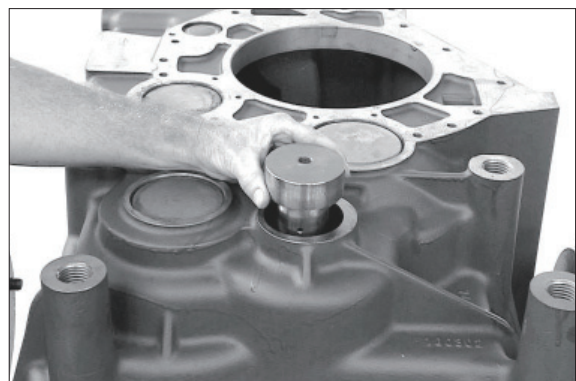


Figure 308

- (4) Remove the adjusting screw and fasten the axle by means of hexagon screw.

※ Wet the thread of the hexagon screw with Loctite (type No. 243).

• Torque limit (M10/8.8) :  
4.69 kgf · m (33.9 lbf · ft)

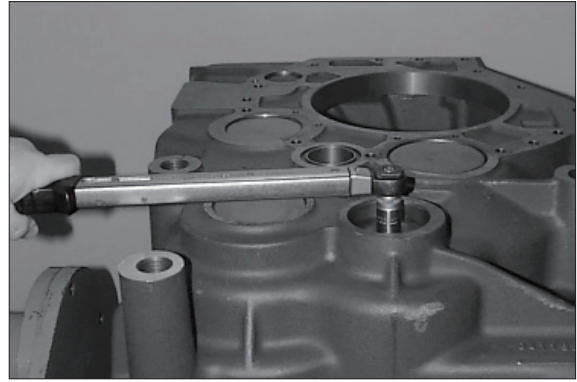


Figure 309

- (5) Insert the sealing covers (arrow), with the concave side showing downwards, flush to the housing surface.

※ Wet contact face with loctite (type No. 262).

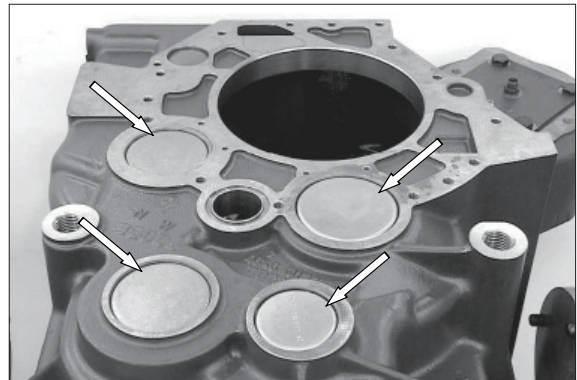


Figure 310

### Transmission pump

(with 2nd/3rd or 4th power take-off)

- (1) Press the needle sleeve (arrow), with the reinforced coating towards the press-in tool until contact.

Mounting tool	5870 058 041
Handle	5870 260 002

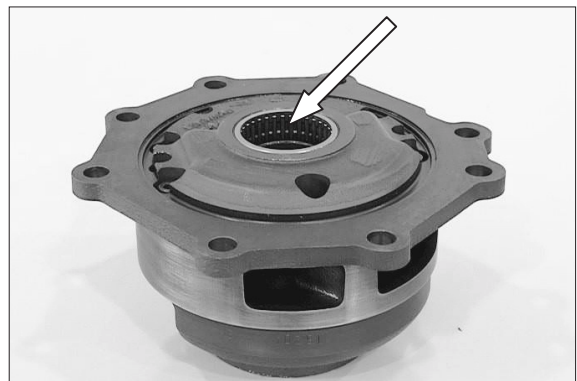


Figure 311

- (2) Locate the bearing outer ring until contact.



Figure 312

(3) Install the O-Ring (arrow) and grease it.

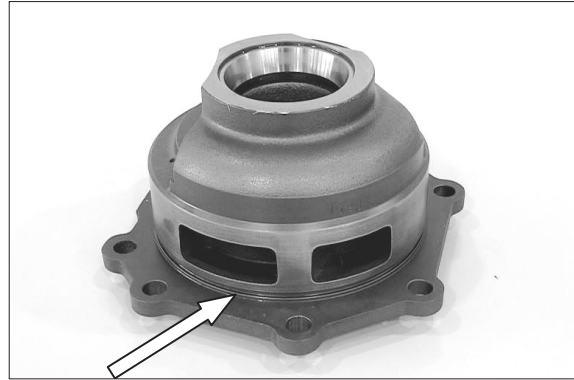


Figure 313

(4) Heat the housing bore.

Preheating bush	5870 801 006
Hot-air blower 230 V	5870 221 500
Hot-air blower 115 V	5870 221 501

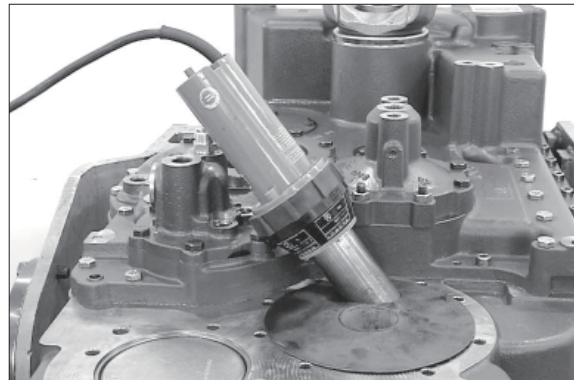


Figure 314

(5) Install two adjusting screws and assemble the pump until contact.

※ Observe the radial installation position.

Adjusting screws	5870 204 021
------------------	--------------

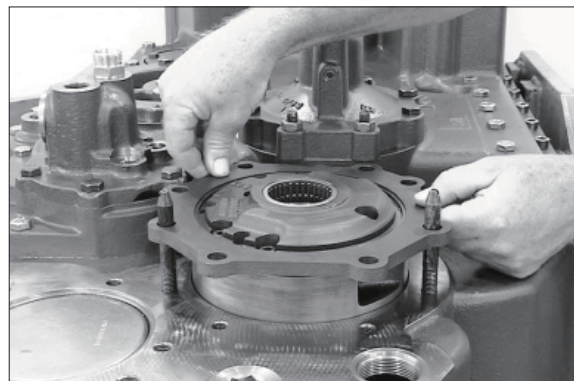


Figure 315

(6) Put the O-Ring (arrow) into the annular groove of the pump flange.

※ Depending on the transmission version, differences as regards the version and fastening of the pump flange are possible. Obligatory is the respective parts list.

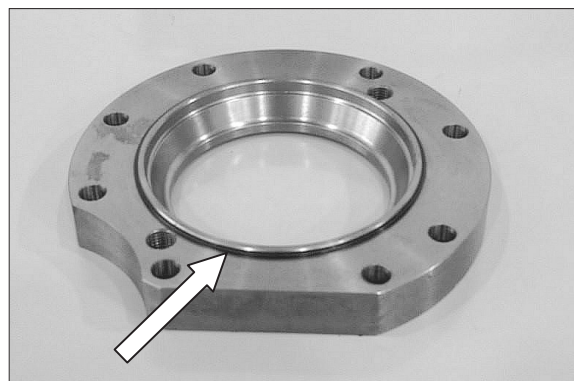


Figure 316



(7) Fasten the pump flange and pump respectively by means of cap screws.

※ Wet thread of both cap screws (position, see arrows) with loctite, type No. 574 (through holes).

※ Tightening torque (M12/8.8) : 8.06 kgf · m  
(58.3 lbf · ft)

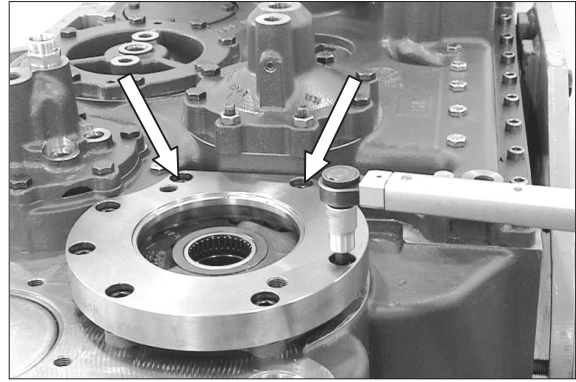


Figure 317

(8) Rotate the transmission housing by 180°.

Snap the V-rings (3X) into the recess of the driver (internal gearing).

Install the key (arrow).



Figure 318

(9) Install shim  $s = 2.0$  mm and locate the bearing inner ring until contact.



Figure 319

(10) Install shim  $s = 2.0$  mm.



Figure 320

(11) Install the driver by means of clamping plate until contact and fasten it by means of cap screw.

※ Tightening torque M10/8.8, DIN 6912) :  
3.26 kgf · m (23.6 lbf · ft)

※ Wet thread of the cap screw with loctite  
(Type No. 243).

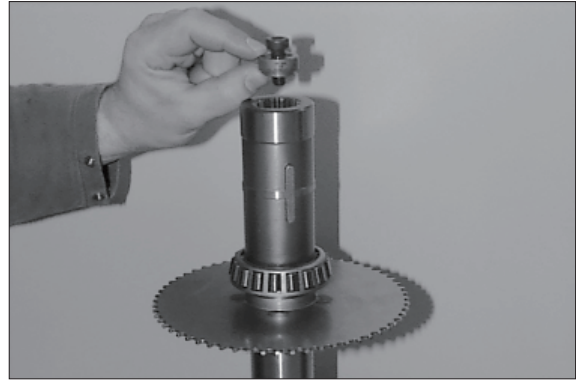


Figure 321

(12) Press the bearing inner ring until contact.

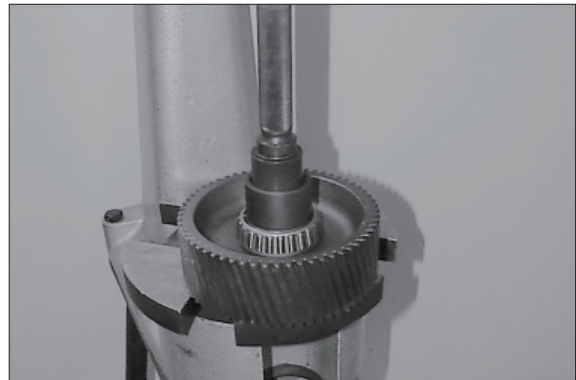


Figure 322

(13) Snap in the retaining ring (arrow) and install the input gear.

Set of external pliers 5870 900 015

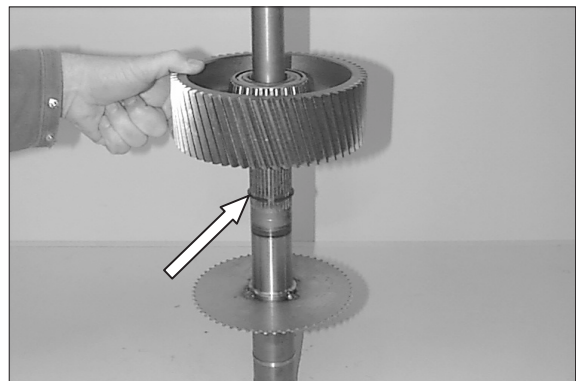


Figure 323

(14) Snap-in and lock the rectangular ring (arrow).

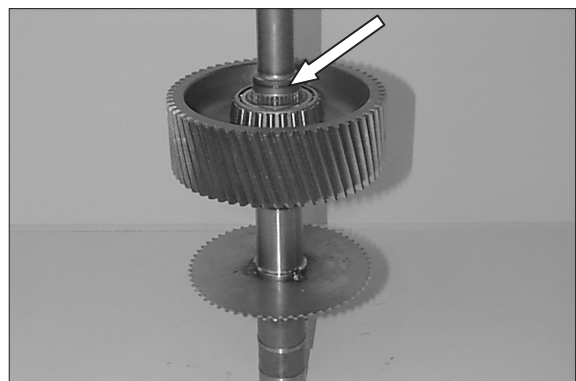


Figure 324

(15) Install the preassembled input shaft until contact.

※ Pay attention to align the key to the keyway.

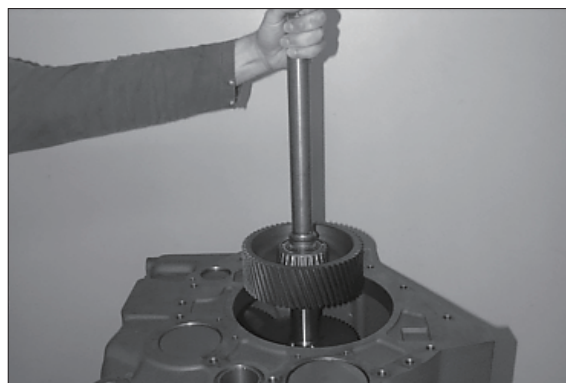


Figure 325

**Adjust the axial play of the input shaft bearing = 0.0~0.05 mm (figure 326~328) :**

(16) Put on the gasket.

Put on the bearing outer ring, press it on equally and determine Dim. I, from the mounting face (gasket) to the bearing outer ring.

Dim I e.g. .... 128.50 mm

※ Take several measuring points and determine the mean value.

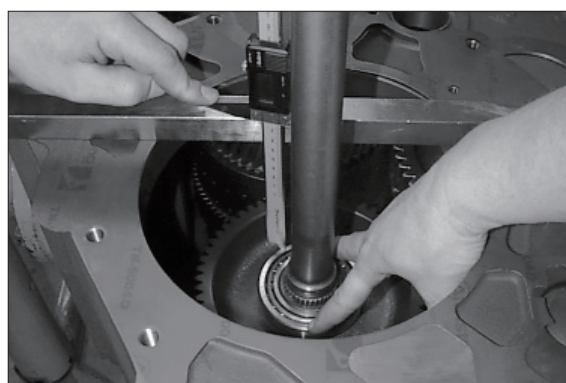


Figure 326

(17) Measure Dim II, from the mounting face/ converter bell to the mounting face/ bearing outer ring.

Dim II e.g. .... 127.46 mm

Straightedge 5870 200 022

Gauge blocks 5870 200 080

Digital depth gauge 5870 200 072

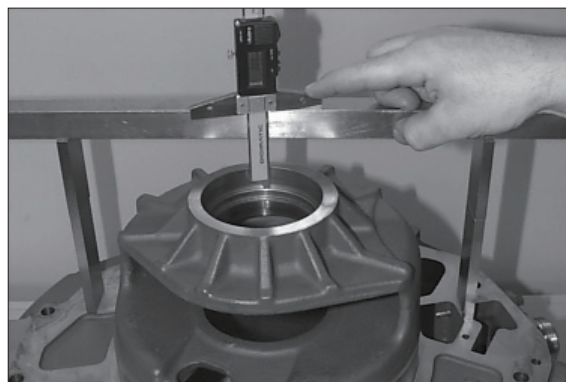


Figure 327

**Example :**

Dim I ..... 128.50 mm

Dim II ..... - 127.46 mm

Difference ..... = 1.04 mm

Axial play ..... - 0.04 mm

**resulting shim(s) s = 1.00 mm**

Put in the shim and locate the bearing inner ring until contact.



Figure 328



## Transmission pump

(with 1st power take-off)

- (1) Press the needle sleeve (arrow), with the reinforced coating towards the press-in tool until contact.

※ Special tool

Mounting tool

5870 058 041

Handle

5870 260 002

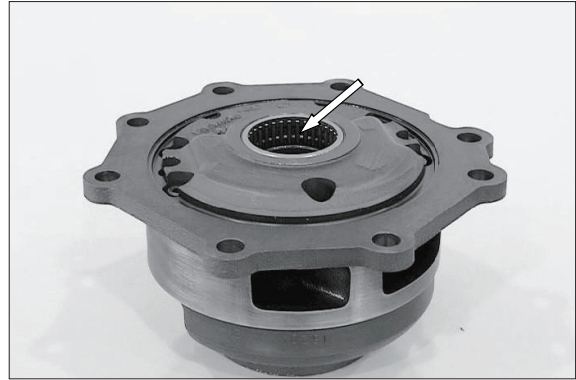


Figure 329

- (2) Snap the V-Rings (3EA) into the recess of the driver (internal gearing). Install the key (arrow).



Figure 330

- (3) Press the ball bearing over the collar of the driver until contact.



Figure 331

- (4) Install the ball bearing and driver respectively and press it until contact.

※ Pay attention to align the key to the keyway.



Figure 332

(5) Fasten the ball bearing by means of retaining ring.

※ Special tool

Set of internal pliers 5870 900 013



Figure 333

(6) Install the O-ring (arrow) and grease it.



Figure 334

(7) Heat the housing bore.

※ Special tool

Preheating bush 5870 801 006

Hot-air blower 230V 5870 221 500

Hot-air blower 115V 5870 221 501

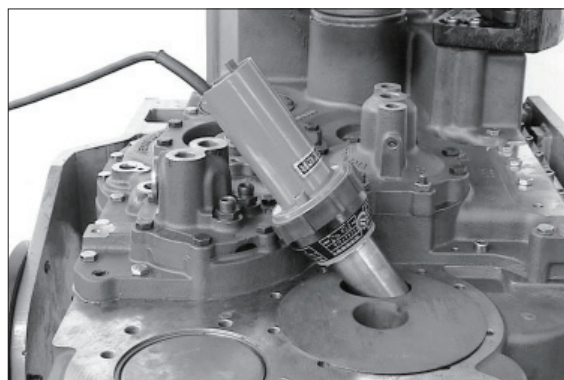


Figure 335

(8) Install two adjusting screws and assemble the pump until contact.

※ Observe the radial installation position.

※ Special tool

Adjusting screws 5870 204 021

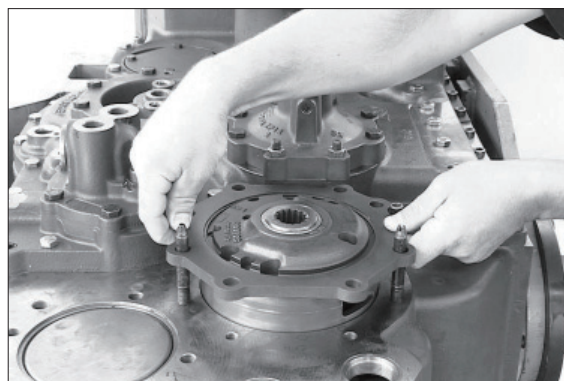


Figure 336

(9) Put the O-ring (arrow) into the annular groove of the pump flange.

- ※ Depending on the transmission version, differences as regards the version and fastening of the pump flange are possible. Obligatory is the respective parts list.

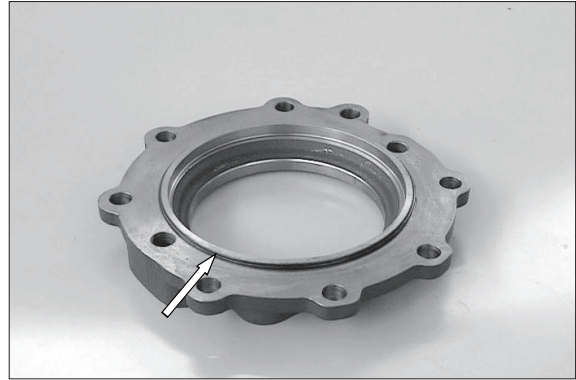


Figure 337

(10) Fasten the pump flange and the pump respectively by means of hexagon screws.

- ※ Wet thread of both hexagon screws (position, see arrows) with Loctite, Type No. 574 (through holes).

• Torque limit (M12/8.8) :

8.06 kgf · m (58.3 lbf · ft)

Then rotate the transmission housing by 90°.

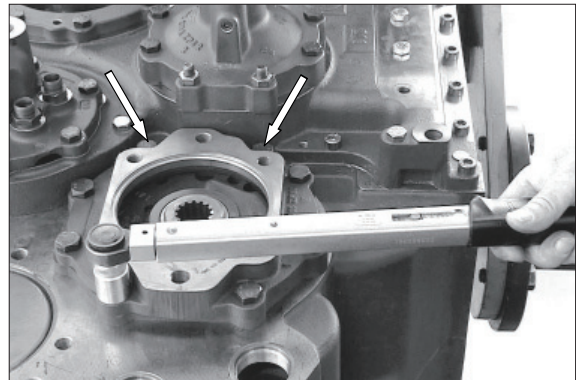


Figure 338

(11) Snap-in and lock the rectangular ring (arrow).

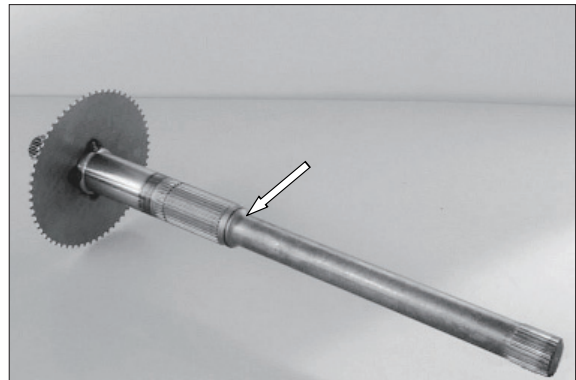


Figure 339

(12) Install both shims (each 2.0 mm thick)

- ※ Use assembly grease.

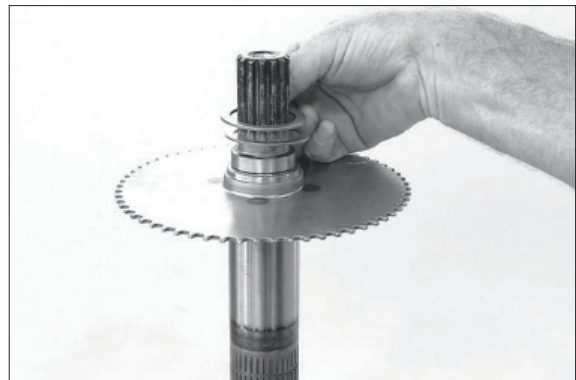


Figure 340

(13) Heat the bevel bearing inner ring.

※ Special tool

Hot-air blower 230V                      5870 221 500

Hot-air blower 115V                     5870 221 501

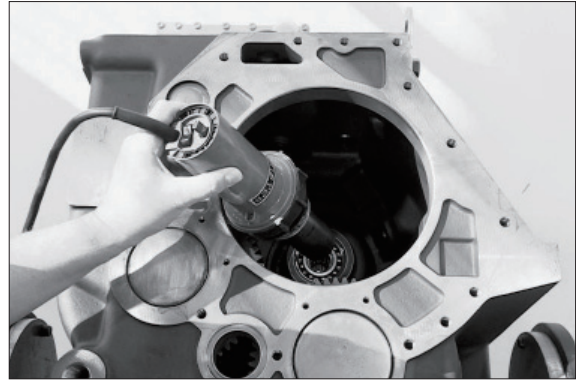


Figure 341

(14) Install the input shaft until contact.

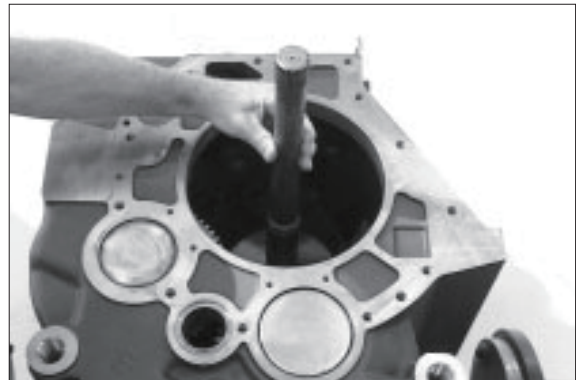


Figure 342

(15) Fasten the input shaft by means of clamping plate and cap screw (arrow).

· Torque limit (M10/8.8) :

3.26 kgf · m (23.6 lbf · ft)

※ Wet thread of the cap screw with loctite (type No. 243).

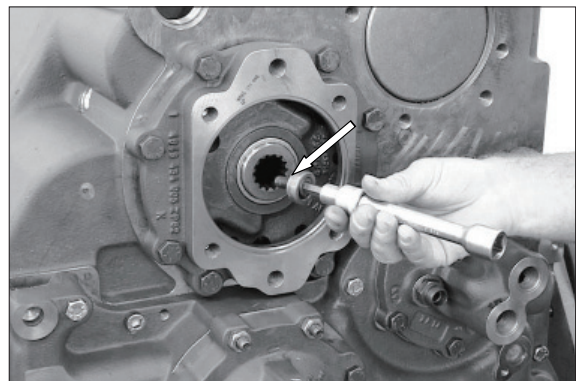


Figure 343



### Input-Converter Bell

※ To install a new converter bell the finished bores (3EA) have to be sealed with plugs. Installation position, see arrow, figure 344.

※ Special tool

Lever riveting tongs                      5870 320 016

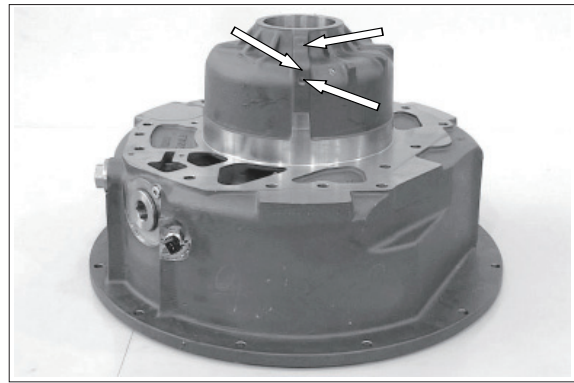


Figure 344

(1) Locate the bearing outer ring into the housing bore until contact and install the bearing inner ring, see arrow.



Figure 345

(2) Install the spur gear (arrow) with the long collar showing upwards and position it.



Figure 346

(3) Heat the spur gear bore (arrow).

※ Special tool

Hot-air blower 230V                      5870 221 500

Hot-air blower 115V                      5870 221 501



Figure 347

- (4) Install the input shaft until contact.

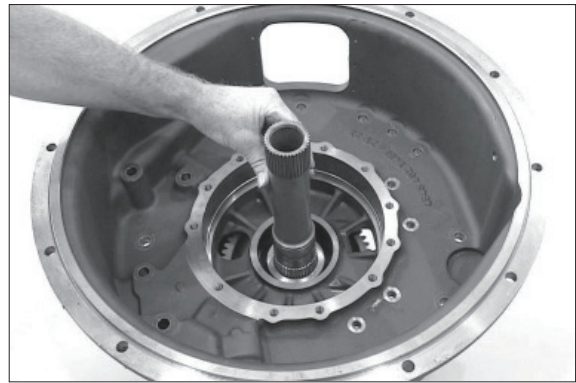


Figure 348

- (5) Heat the bearing inner ring and install it until contact.

▲ Use safety gloves.

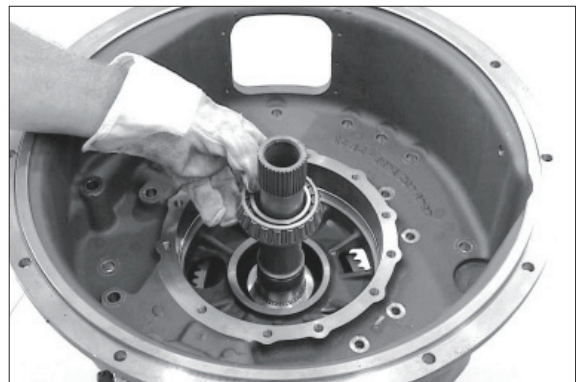


Figure 349

- (6) Install the bearing outer ring until contact.



Figure 350

- (7) Snap in the rectangular ring (arrow) into the annular groove of the input shaft and lock it.  
Then grease the rectangular ring and centrally align it.

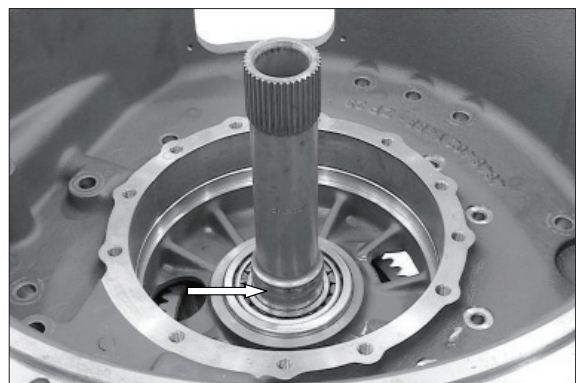


Figure 351

- (8) Install the converter safety valve (arrow 1) and fasten it by means of slotted pin (arrow 2).

※ Flush-mount slotted pin to recess.

Put the O-ring (arrow 3) into the annular groove.

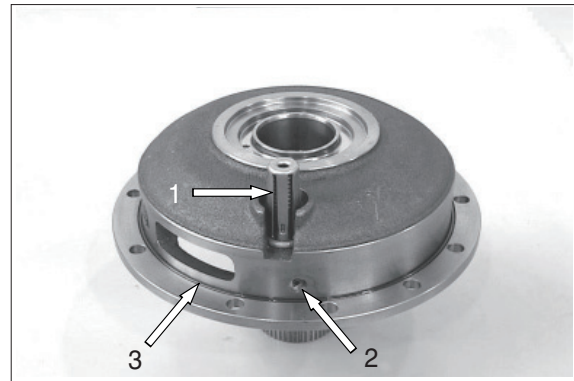


Figure 352

- (9) Press the needle bearing (arrow), with the reinforced coating towards the press-in tool into the bore of the bearing cover until contact.

※ Special tool

Mounting tool 5870 058 051

Handle 5870 260 002

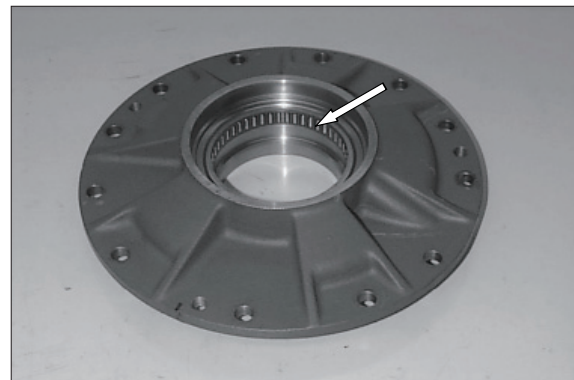


Figure 353

- (10) Flush-mount the shaft seal (arrow) with the sealing lip showing (downwards) to the oil sump.

※ Wet the outer diameter with spirit.  
Grease the sealing lip.

※ Special tool

Mounting tool 5870 048 030

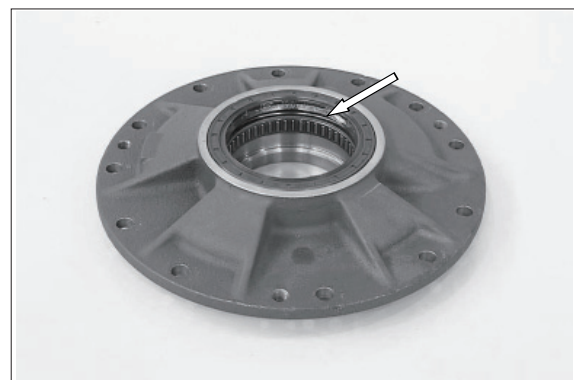


Figure 354

※ Make the following steps (figure 355~358) in direct time sequence to secure the precise contact of the oil supply flange.

- (11) Heat the housing bore.

※ Special tool

Preheating bush 5870 801 006

Hot-air blower 5870 221 500

Hot-air blower 5870 221 501



Figure 355



(12) Install two adjusting screws and put in the oil supply flange until contact.

※ Observe the radial installation position.

※ Special tool

Adjusting screws 5870 204 007

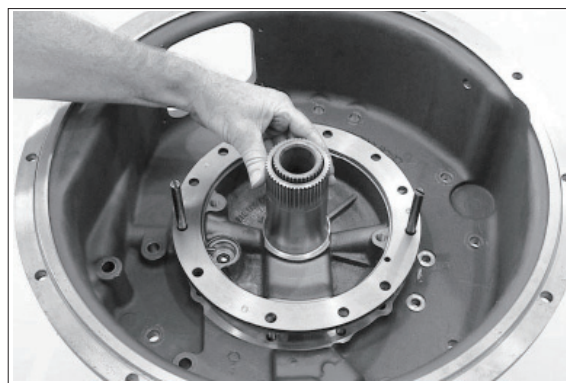


Figure 356

(13) Place the O-ring (arrow) with assembly grease into the annular groove of the bearing cover.

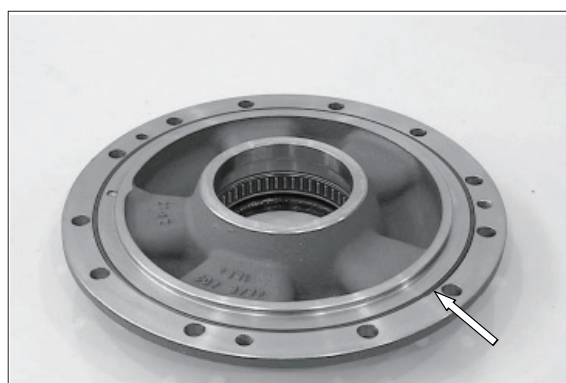


Figure 357

(14) Put on the bearing cover and fasten it by means of hexagon screws.

· Torque limit (M10/8.8) :

4.69 kgf · m (33.9 lbf · ft)

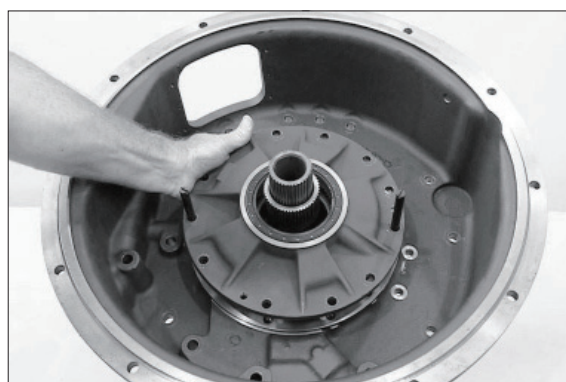


Figure 358

(15) Install the single components according to the opposite figure.

1 Screw plug : 15.3 kgf · m (110 lbf · ft)

2 Screw plug : 2.55 kgf · m (18.4 lbf · ft)

3 Temperature sensor :

2.55 kgf · m (18.4 lbf · ft)

and screw plug respectively (depending on the version) : 3.57 kgf · m (25.8 lbf · ft)

※ Always install new O-ring.

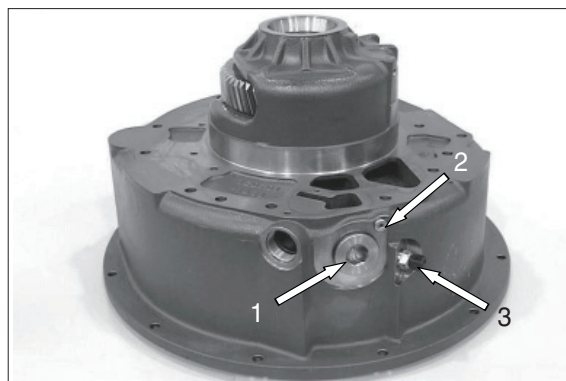


Figure 359

**Converter pressure back-up valve**  
(figure 360~361)

- (1) Install the slotted pin (6×50 mm) until contact.



Figure 360

- (2) Assemble piston and compression spring. Provide screw plug with a new O-ring and install it.

- Torque limit (M36×1.5) :  
13.3 kgf · m (95.9 lbf · ft)

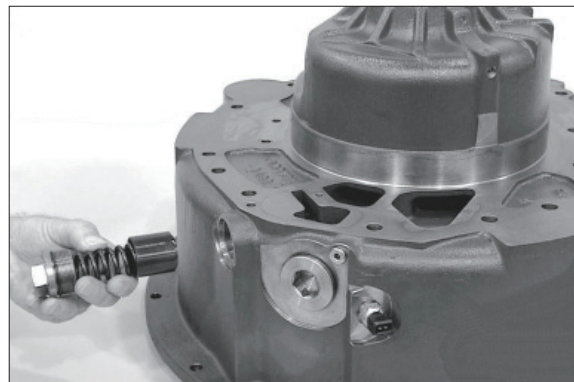


Figure 361

- (3) Fasten the gasket and cover plate by means of hexagon screws (install the washers).

- Torque limit (M6/8.8) :  
0.97 kgf · m (7.0 lbf · ft)



Figure 362

- (4) Install two adjusting screws and put on the gasket (arrow 1). Put the O-ring (arrow 2) into the annular groove.

- ※ Special tool
- Adjusting screws 5870 204 021

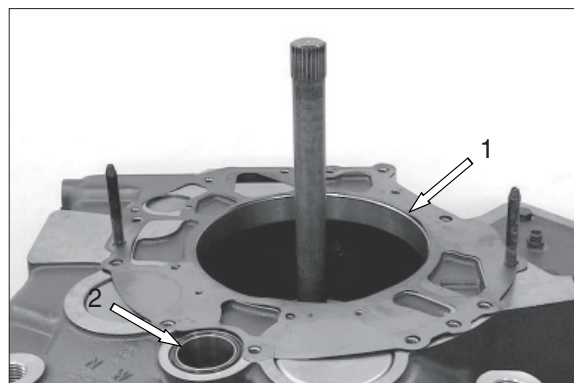


Figure 363

(5) Install the converter bell by means of lifting tackle until contact.

※ Slight rotary motions of the input shaft facilitate the installation (protect teeth from damage). Observe the radial installation position.

※ Special tool

Lifting tackle 5870 281 047

Eyebolts assortment 5870 204 002



Figure 364

(6) Fasten the converter bell by means of hexagon screws.

• Torque limit (M8/10.9) :

3.47 kgf · m (25.1 lbf · ft)

• Torque limit (M12/10.9) :

11.7 kgf · m (84.8 lbf · ft)

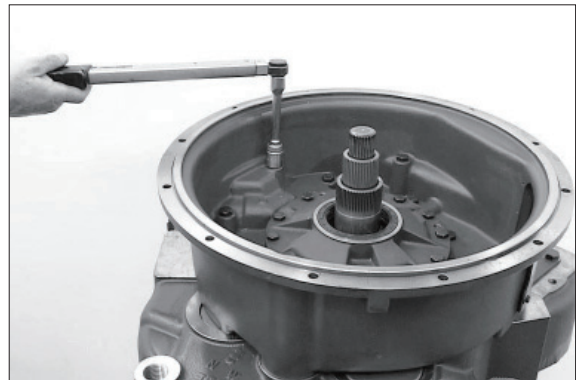


Figure 365

(7) Fasten flexible plate (3EA) by means of hexagon screws (install the washers).

※ Wet thread of the hexagon screws with Loctite (type No. 243).

• Torque limit (M10/8.8) :

4.69 kgf · m (33.9 lbf · ft)

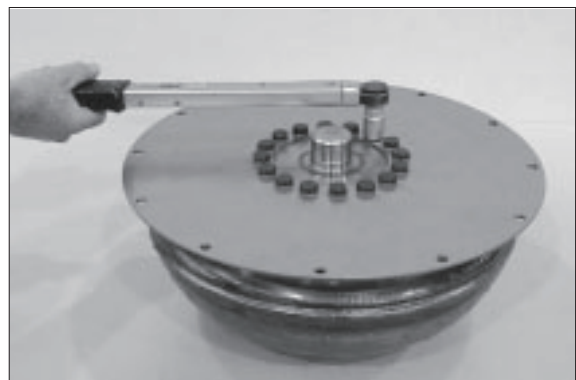


Figure 366

(8) Install the rectangular ring (arrow) into the annular groove and lock it. Then grease the rectangular ring and centrally align it.

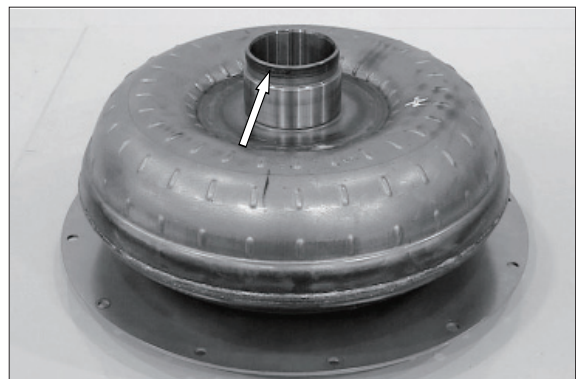


Figure 367

(9) Assemble converter by means of lifting tackle until contact (figure 368).

※ At a control dimension < 43 mm, the exact installation position of the converter is ensured, see Figure 369.

※ Special tool

Eyebolts assortment 5870 204 002

Lifting chain 5870 281 047

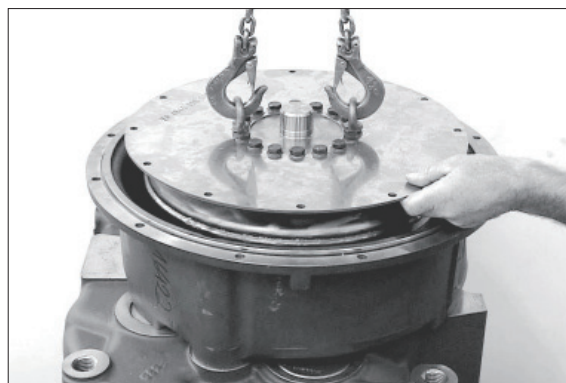


Figure 368

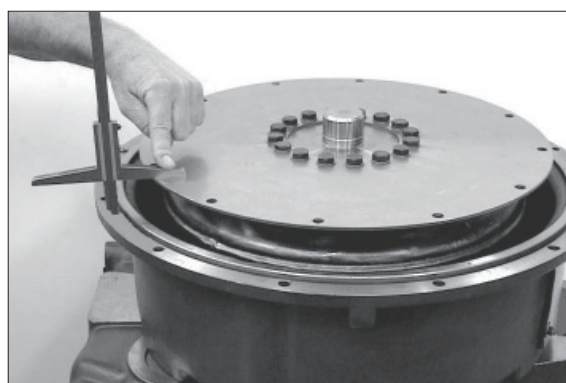


Figure 369

⚠ Until installation of the transmission, fix the converter axially, see figure 370.

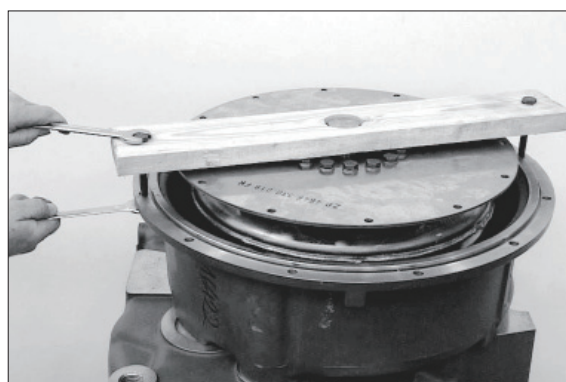


Figure 370



## Coarse Filter

(1) Install filter (assy) into the housing bore.

※ Oil the sealing (arrow).

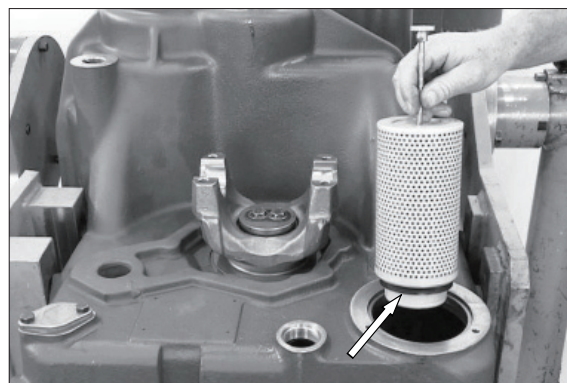


Figure 371

(2) Fasten the cover by means of hexagon screws (install the washers).

※ Install the new O-ring (arrow).

• Torque limit (M8/8.8) :

2.35 kgf · m (17.0 lbf · ft)

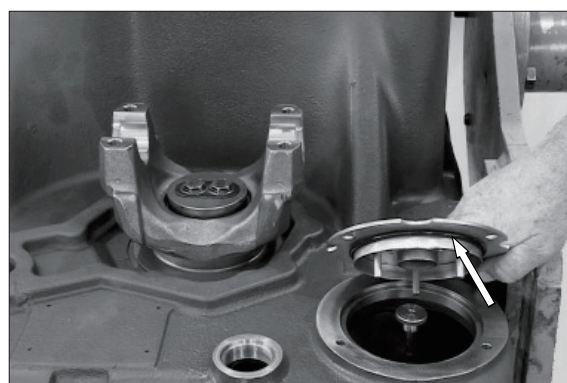


Figure 372

## Inductive and speed transmitters

(1) Following sketches show the installation position of the single inductive and speed transmitters.

14	Inductive transmitter	n-Turbine
9	Inductive transmitter	n-Engine
5	Inductive transmitter	n-Internal speed input
13	Speed transmitter	n-Output

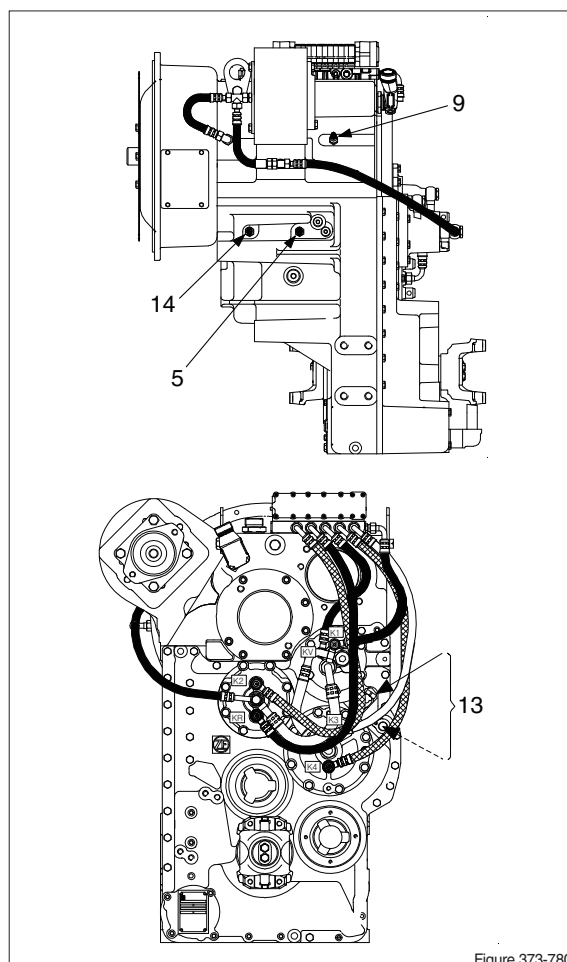


Figure 373-780

※ The following figures describe the installation and setting respectively of the inductive transmitter n-Engine (9).

Installation of the inductive transmitter n-Turbine (14) and n-internal speed input (5) is to be made analogously.

Observe the different setting dimensions "X" :

▲ Inductive transmitter n-Engine (9)

$X = 0.5^{+0.3}_{-0}$  mm

Inductive transmitter n-Turbine (14)

$X = 0.5^{+0.3}_{-0}$  mm

Induct. transmitter n-int. speed input (5)

$X = 0.3 \pm 0.1$  mm

Adjust Dimension "X" by means of shim ring (s) (figure 376~381)

(1) Measure Dimension I on the inductive transmitter, from contact face to screw-in face.

※ Dimension I e.g ..... 30.00 mm

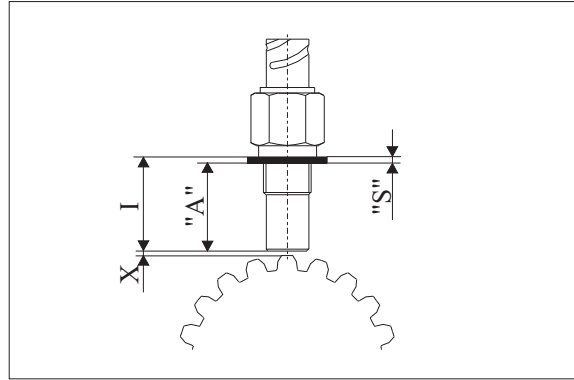


Figure 375



Figure 376

(2) Turn in the counting disc radially until one tooth tip is centrally to the inductive transmitter bore.

Turn the plug gauge until contact.

Locate anvil at the tooth tip and lock it by means of threaded pin (figure 377 and 378).

※ Special tool

Plug gauge 5870 200 104

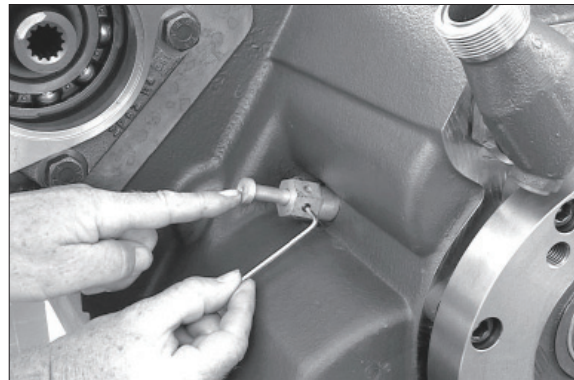


Figure 377

※ Special tool

Plug gauge 5870 200 104

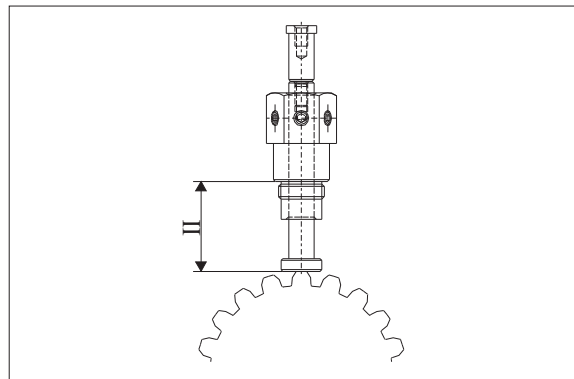


Figure 378



- (3) Turn out the plug gauge and determine Dimension II (also see figure 378).

Dimension II e.g ..... 30.10 mm

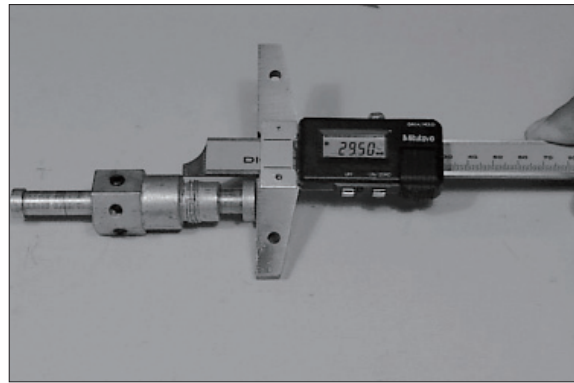


Figure 379

Example "A<sub>1</sub>" :

Dimension II	<u>30.10 mm</u>
Dimension X (0.5 <sup>+0.3</sup> mm)	- <u>0.60 mm</u>
Results in installation dimension A	<u>= 29.50 mm</u>

Example "A<sub>2</sub>" :

Dimension I	<u>30.00 mm</u>
Installation dimension A	- <u>29.50 mm</u>
Results in shim ring (s)	<u>s = 0.50 mm</u>

- (4) Install the adequate shim ring (s) and wet the thread (arrow) with Loctite (type No. 574).

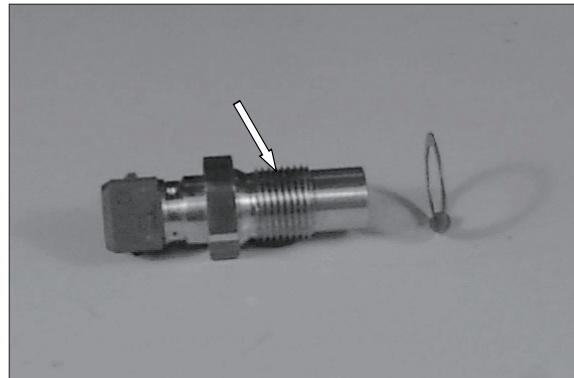


Figure 380

- (5) Install the inductive transmitter n-Engine (9), see arrow.

· Torque limit : 3.06 kgf · m (22.1 lbf · ft)

Set and install the inductive transmitter n-Turbine (14) and n-internal speed input (5) analogously.

- ※ Observe the different setting dimensions. Installation position of the single inductive transmitters, also see figure 373.

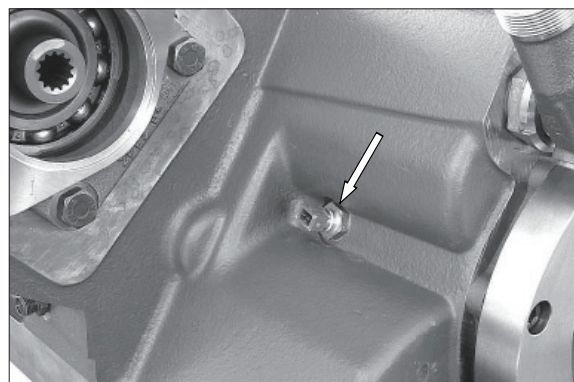


Figure 381

Install speed transmitter n-Output/Speedo  
(13) (figure 382~387)

- 1 Housing
- 2 Spur gear K3
- 3 Disc carrier
- 13 Speed transmitter (hall sensor)
- X** Setting dimension "X" =  $1.0 \pm 0.5$  mm

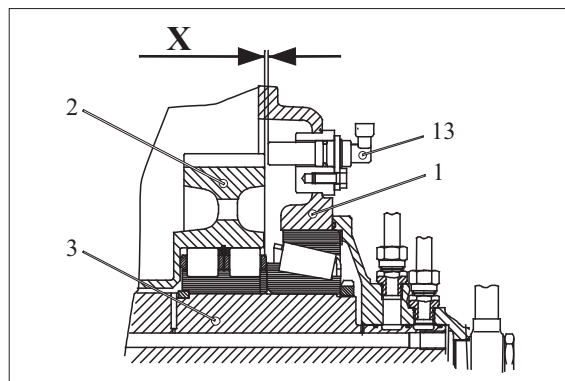


Figure 382

(1) Opposite figure shows the speed transmitter (hall sensor).



Figure 383

(2) Determine Dimension I, from the housing face to spur gear K3.

Dimension I e.g ..... 39.70 mm

※ Special tool

Digital depth gauge 5870 200 072

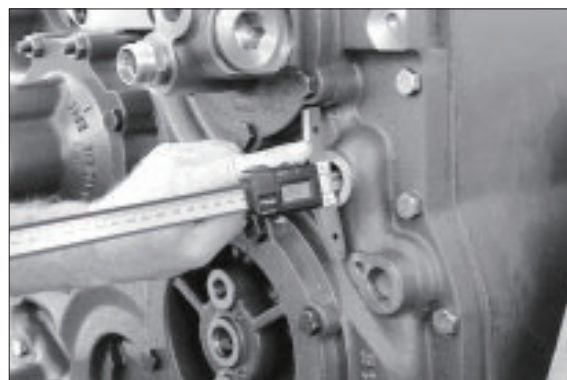


Figure 384

(3) Measure Dimension II, from the contact face to the mounting face.

Dimension II e.g ..... 40.00 mm

※ Special tool

Digital depth gauge 5870 200 072

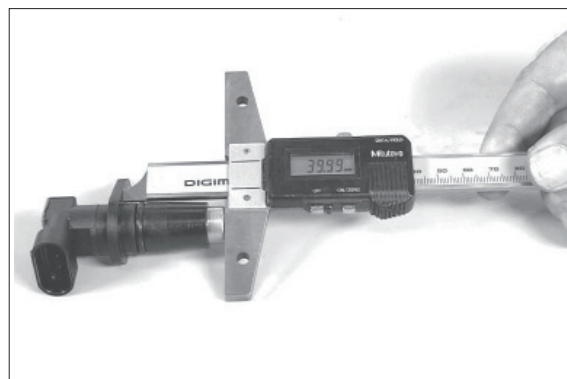


Figure 385

Example "B<sub>1</sub>" :

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \text{Dimension I} & & 39.70 \text{ mm} \\ \text{Dimension X}(1.0+0.5\text{mm}) & - & 1.20 \text{ mm} \\ \hline \text{Results in installation dimension} & & = 38.50 \text{ mm} \end{array}$$

Example "B<sub>2</sub>" :

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \text{Dimension II} & & 40.00 \text{ mm} \\ \text{Installation dimension A} & - & 38.50 \text{ mm} \\ \hline \text{Results in shim(s)} & s = & 1.50 \text{ mm} \end{array}$$

- (4) Install shims (3EA, s = 0.50 mm) and grease the O-ring (arrow).

- (5) Fasten the speed transmitter by means of cap screw.

- Torque limit (M8/8.8) :  
2.35 kgf · m (17.0 lbf · ft)

※ Installation position of the speed transmitter, also see figure 382.

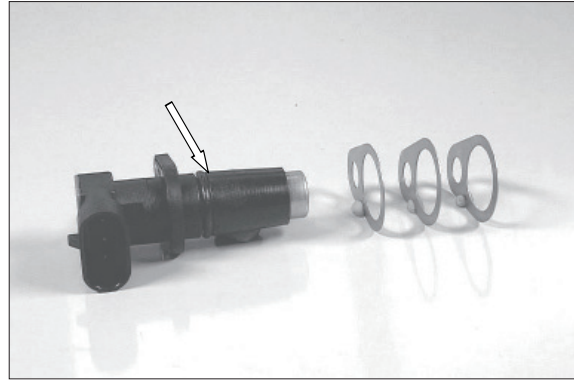


Figure 386

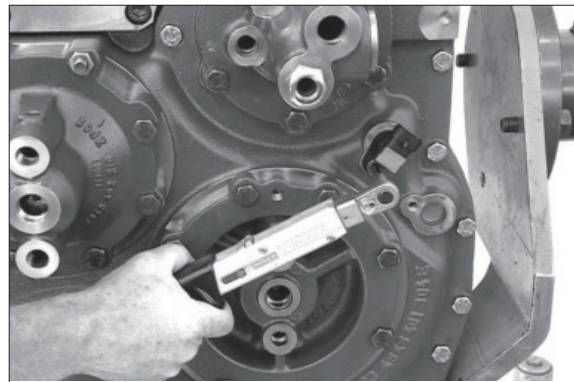


Figure 387

### 3. AXLE

#### 1) DISASSEMBLY

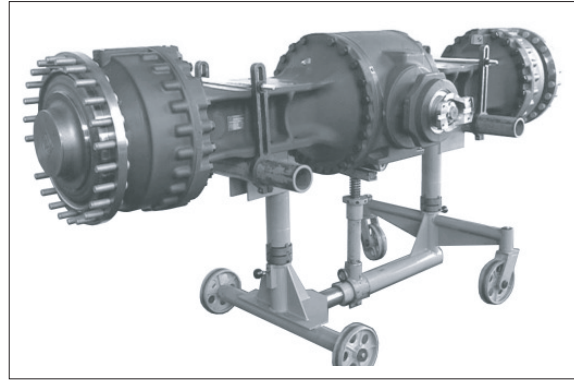
##### (1) Disassembly output and brake

- ① Fix axle to assembly truck.

Assembly truck	5870 350 000
Fixtures	5870 350 077
Clamping brackets	5870 350 075
Support	5870 350 125

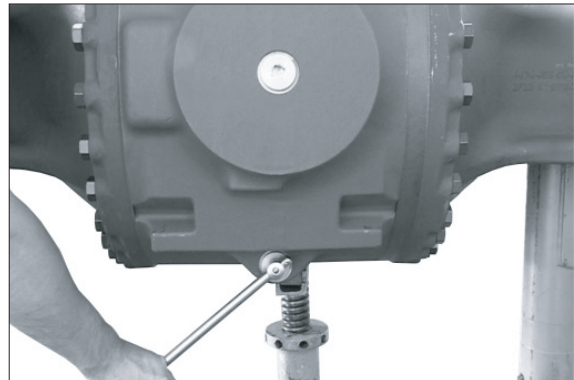
- ※ Before clamping the axle fully turn in the support.

Position axle first onto the two fixtures, secure with clamping brackets and then unbolt the support until contact with the axle is obtained.

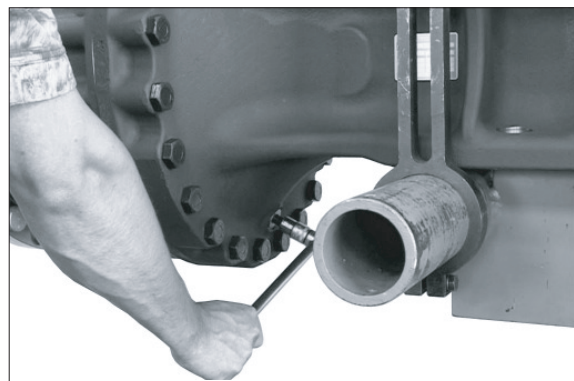


7809AX01

- ② Loosen screw plugs (3EA, see figure AX02 and AX03) and drain oil from the axle.



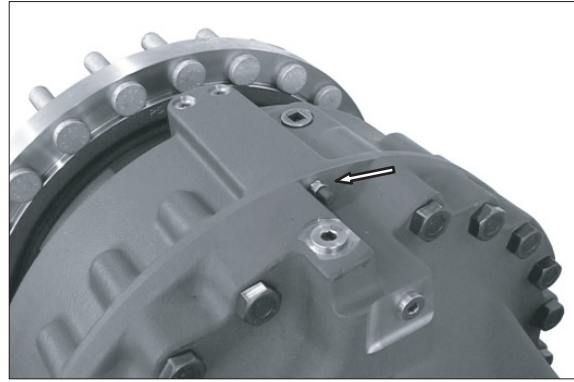
7809AX02



7809AX03

③ Remove the breather valve (see arrow).

※ To avoid any damage, the breather valve must be removed when separating the output.

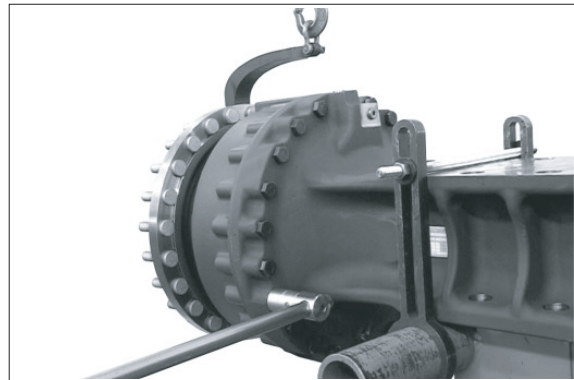


7809AX04

④ Secure the output with the lifting device and loosen hexagon screws. Then separate the output assy from the axle housing.

Load carrying device      AA00 685 875

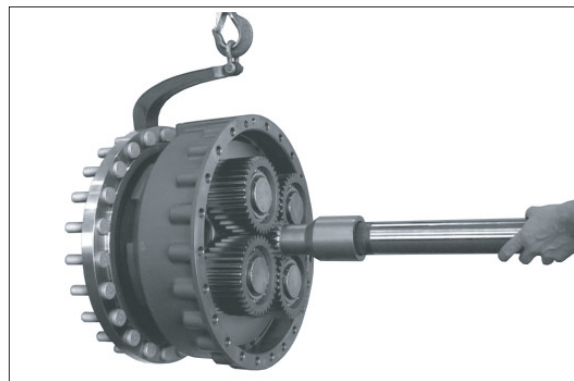
※ Fix the load carrying device with wheel nuts.



7809AX05

⑤ Pull stub shaft and sun gear shaft.

※ Pay attention to potentially releasing shim(s).

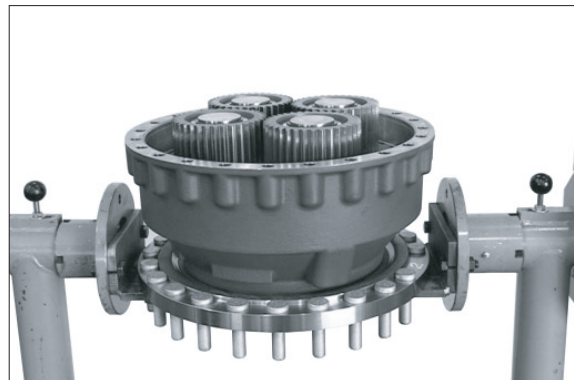


7809AX06

⑥ Fix output to assembly truck.

Assembly truck      5870 350 000

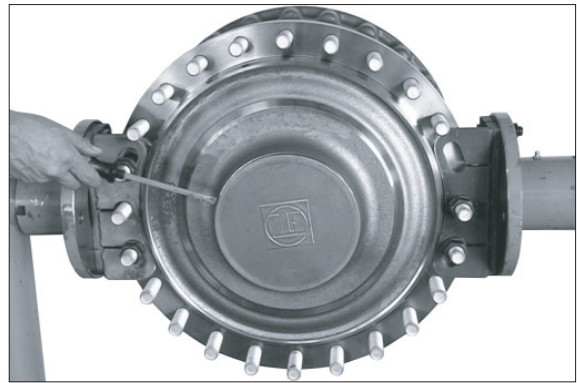
Fixtures (2EA)      5870 350 113



7809AX07

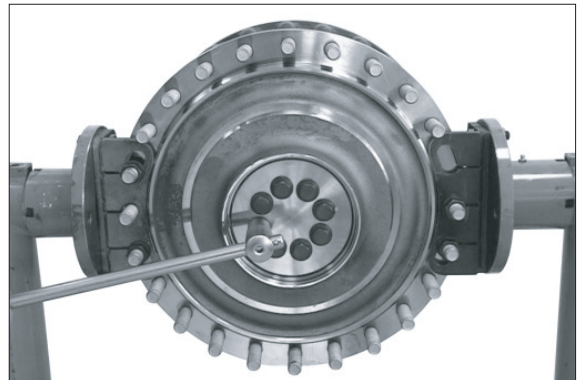


- ⑦ Use a lever to remove the cover from the output shaft.



7809AX08

- ⑧ Loosen locking screws and remove the releasing cover.



7809AX09

- ⑨ Lift the planetary carrier out of the brake housing by means of the lifting device.

- Rear axle (planetary carrier with 3 planetary gears)
 

Internal extractor	5870 300 019
Eye bolt	5870 204 073
- Front axle (planetary carrier with 4 planetary gears)
 

Internal extractor	5870 300 008
Eye nut	AA00 680 376



7809AX10

- ⑩ Pull the tapered roller bearing from the planetary carrier.

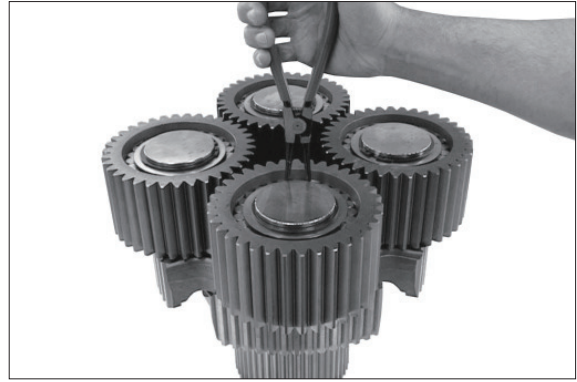
- |                   |              |
|-------------------|--------------|
| Rapid grip        | AA00 693 459 |
| Basic tool        | 5873 004 001 |
| Clamping cylinder | 5873 003 016 |
| Pump              | 5870 287 010 |



7809AX70



⑪ Disengage retaining ring.



7809AX71

⑫ Pull off planetary gear.

Extractor	AA00 696 012
Clamping cylinder	5873 003 016
Pump	5870 287 010



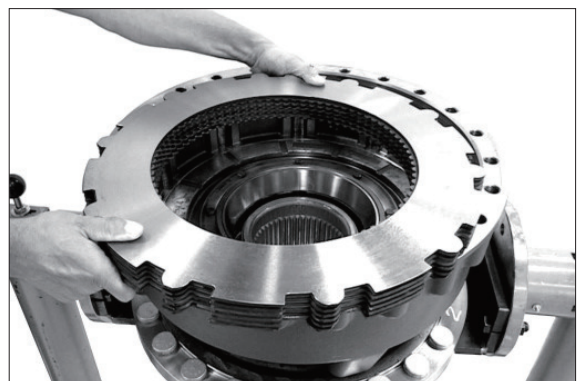
7809AX72

⑬ Lift the end plate out of the brake housing.



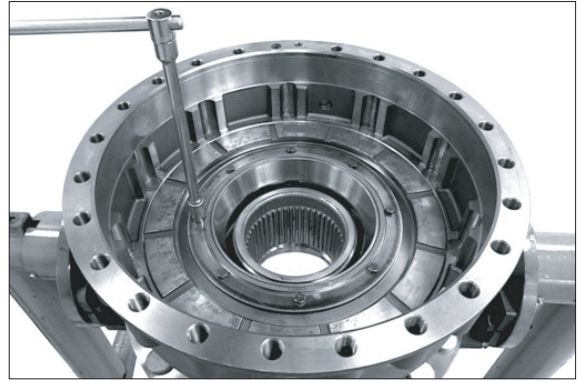
7809AX73

⑭ Lift the disk package out of the brake housing.



7809AX12

- ⑮ Loosen hexagon screws, remove releasing disk and cup spring.



7809AX13

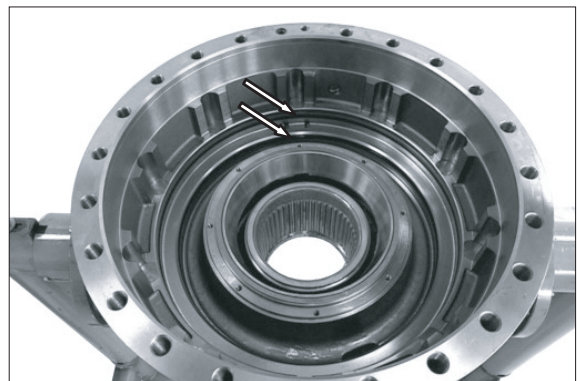
- ⑯ Mount breather valve and press piston out of the brake housing by means of compressed air.



7809AX14

- ⑰ If necessary, remove guide ring, back-up rings and grooved rings out of the annular grooves of the brake housing (see arrows).

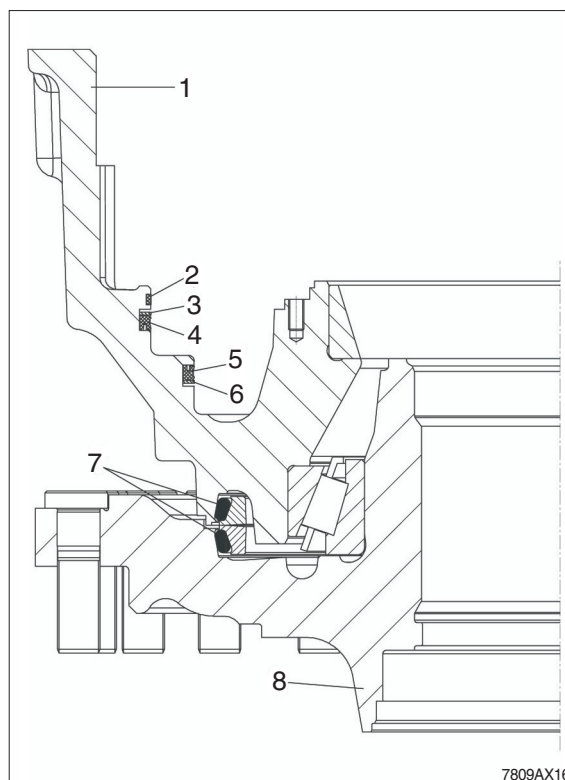
※ For the installation position of the single parts please also refer to the following sketch.



7809AX15

**Legend to sketch :**

- 1 = Brake housing
- 2 = Guide ring
- 3 = Back-up ring
- 4 = Grooved ring
- 5 = Grooved ring
- 6 = Back-up ring
- 7 = Slide ring seal
- 8 = Output shaft



7809AX16

- ⑮ Lift the brake housing from the output shaft by means of the lifting device.



7809AX17

- ⑯ Use a lever to remove the slide ring seal from the brake housing.

If necessary, force out both bearing outer rings.

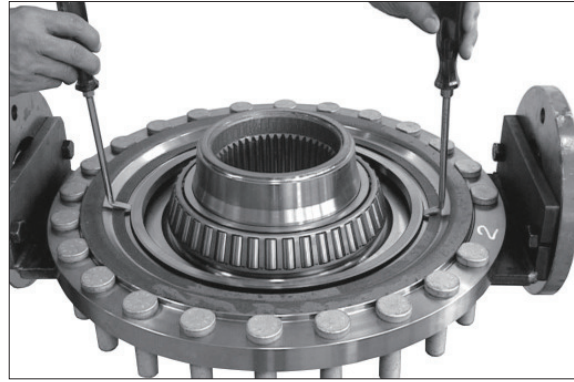
Resetting device                      5870 400 001



7809AX18

- ② Use a lever to remove the slide ring seal from the output shaft.

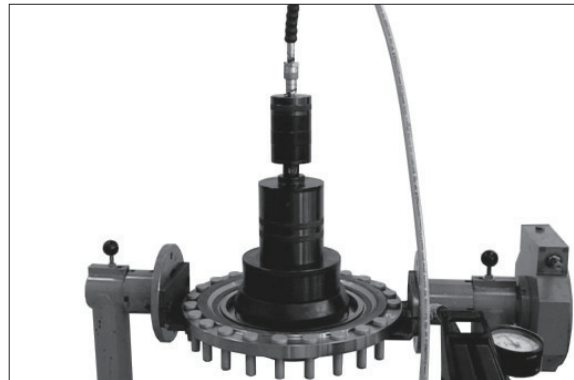
Resetting device                      5870 400 001



7809AX74

- ③ Pull the tapered roller bearing from the output shaft.

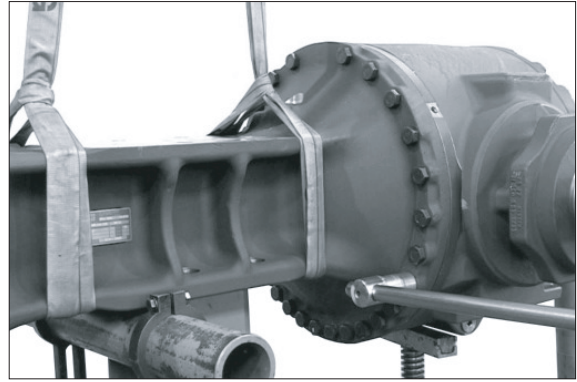
Gripping device                      AA00 633 495  
Adapter ring                          AA00 633 500  
Basic tool                              5873 004 001  
Pressure piece                        AA00 696 181  
Clamping cylinder                    5873 003 016  
Pump                                    5870 287 010



7809AX75

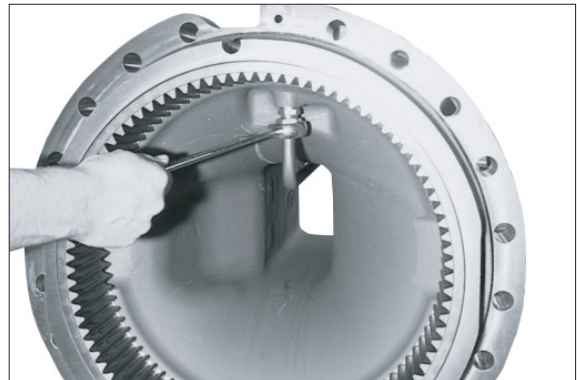
## (2) Disassembly axle housing

- ① Secure axle housing with the lifting device and loosen the hexagon screws. Then separate the axle housing from the axle drive housing.



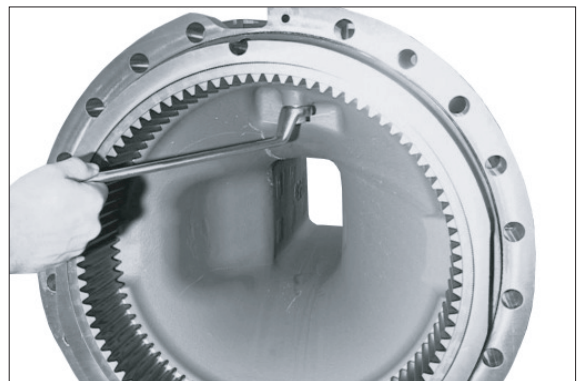
7809AX19

- ② Loosen the threaded connections and remove the releasing brake tube.



7809AX20

- ③ Loosen both screw necks.



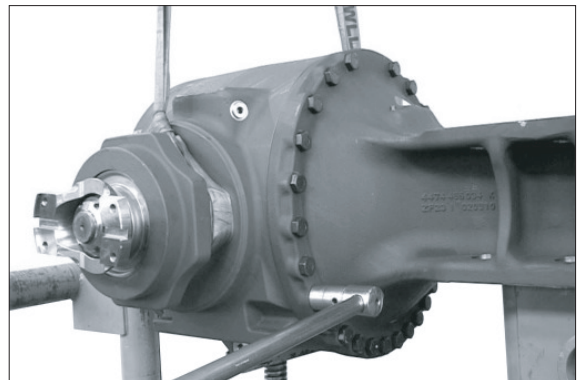
7809AX21

## (3) Disassembly axle drive housing

- ① Secure axle drive housing with the lifting device and loosen the hexagon screws. Then separate the axle drive housing from the axle housing.

Eyebolt (M20)  
Thread insert

5870 204 086  
AA00 677 715



7809AX22



- ② Fix axle drive housing to the assembly truck.

Assembly truck	5870 350 000
Fixtures (2EA)	5870 350 113



7809AX76

- ③ Loosen cylindrical screws and lift the releasing bearing housing with the lifting device.

Inner extractor	5870 300 008
Eye bolt	AA00 680 376



7809AX77

- ④ Pull the bearing outer ring (see arrow) out of the bearing hole and remove the shim behind.



7809AX78

- ⑤ Press the piston out of the bearing housing by means of compressed air.



7809AX79



- ⑥ Lift differential out of the axle drive housing with the lifting device.

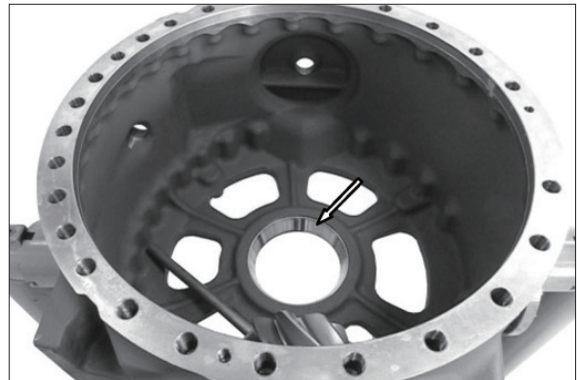
Inner extractor                      5870 300 008  
Eye nut                              AA00 680 376

- ※ Disassembly of the various differentials is described as of page 3-234.



7809AX80

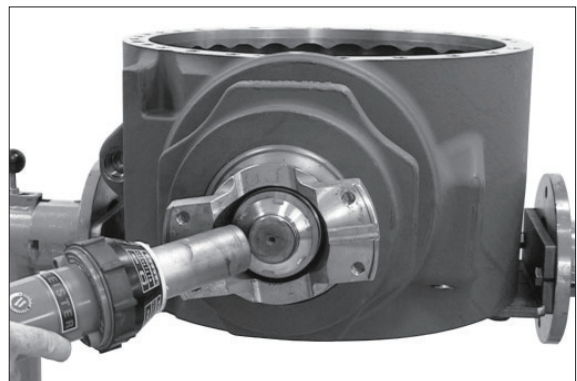
- ⑦ Pull the bearing outer ring (see arrow) out of the bearing hole and remove the shim behind.



7809AX81

- ⑧ Heat slotted nut by means of hot-air blower.

- ※ Slotted nut is secured with Loctite # 262.



7809AX82

- ⑨ Loosen the slotted nut and remove the shim behind.

Wrench                                5870 401 093  
Fixing device                      AA00 695 905  
Clamping device                5870 240 002



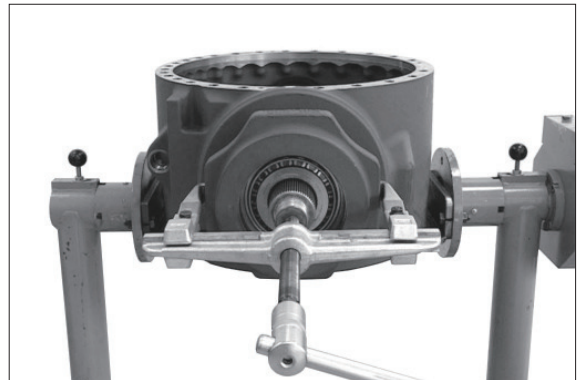
7809AX83

- ⑩ Pull input flange from the input pinion and use a lever to lift the shaft seal ring behind out of the axle drive housing.



7809AX84

- ⑪ Use a two-armed puller to press the input pinion out of the axle drive housing and remove the releasing tapered roller bearing.



7809AX85

- ⑫ Remove the spacer and pull the tapered roller bearing from the input pinion.

Gripping device	AA00 253 881
Basic tool	5873 003 000
Clamping cylinder	5873 003 016
Pump	5870 287 010



7809AX86

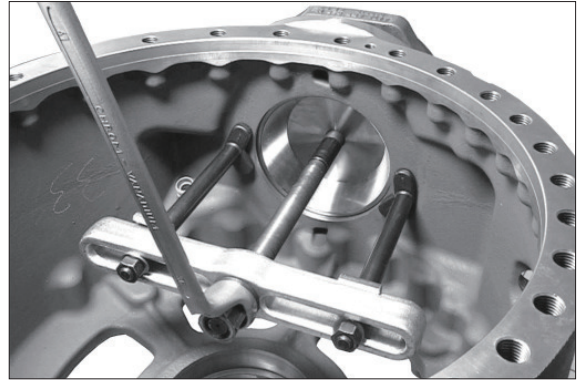
- ⑬ Loosen the threaded connection and remove the releasing oil tube.



7809AX87

- ⑭ If necessary pull the internal bearing outer ring out of the axle drive housing and remove the shim behind.

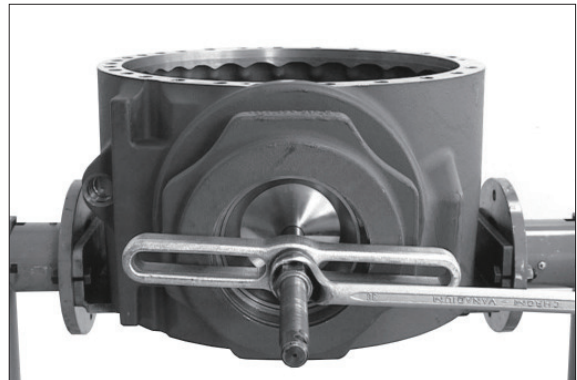
Assembly device	AA00 696 770
Counter support	5870 300 020



7809AX88

- ⑮ If necessary pull the external bearing ring out of the axle drive housing.

Assembly device	AA00 696 770
Counter support	5870 300 020

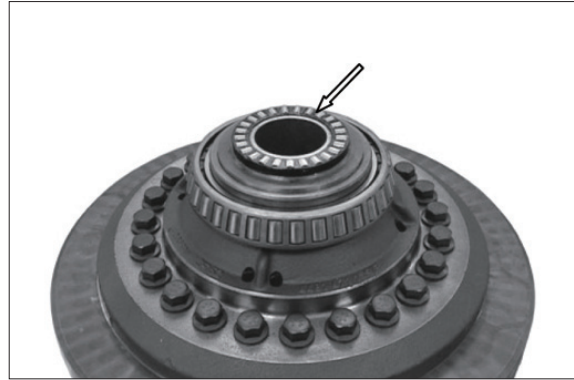


7809AX89

#### (4) Disassembly differentials

##### Disassembly multi-disk differential lock

- ① Remove axial roller cage (arrow).



7809AX90

- ② Pull both tapered roller bearings from the differential.

##### Crown wheel side

Rapid grip AA00 303 274

Basic tool 5873 004 001

Pressure piece AA00 694 360

##### Opposite side

Grab sleeve 5873 004 026

Basic tool 5873 004 001

Clamping cylinder 5873 003 016

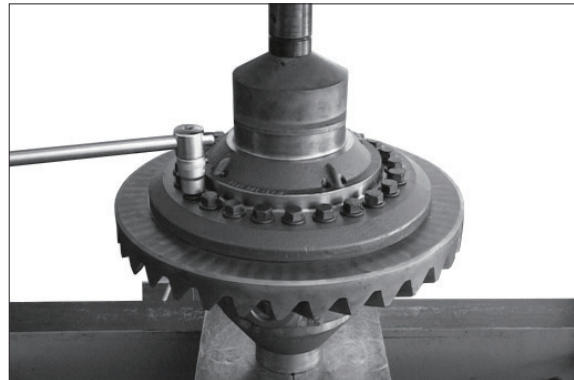
Pump 5870 287 010



7809AX91

- ③ Preload the differential by means of the press and loosen the locking screws.

Pressure piece AA00 694 360



7809AX92

- ④ Lift the differential cover from the differential housing by means of the lifting device.

Inner extractor 5870 300 008

Eye nut AA00 680 376

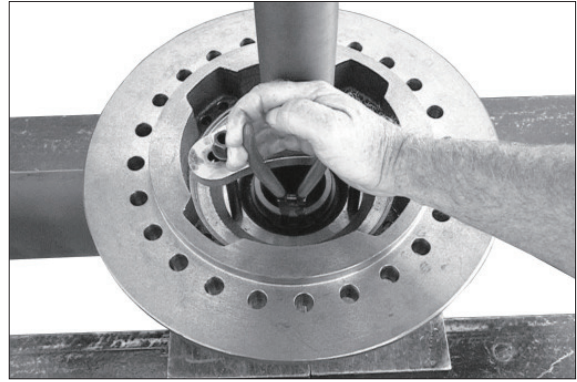


7809AX93



- ⑤ Preload the compression spring by means of the press and disengage the retaining ring.

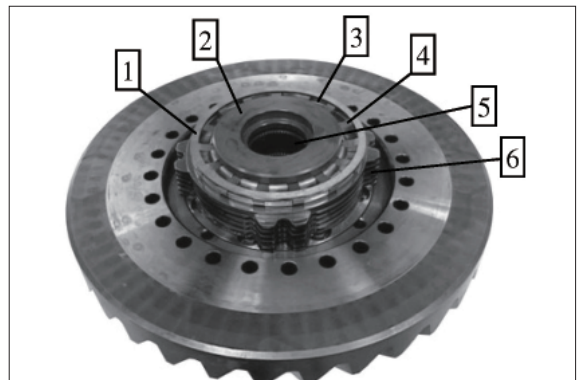
Then pull the sliding sleeve out of the differential cover and remove the releasing compression springs.



7809AX94

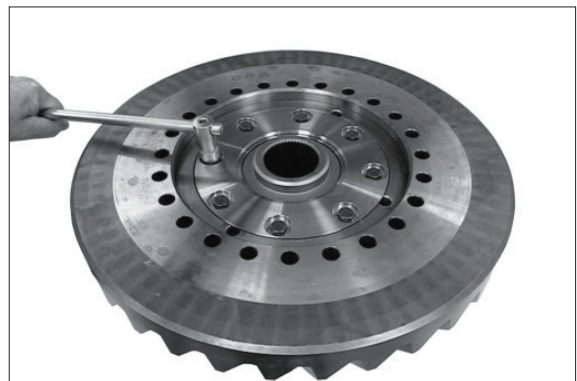
- ⑥ Remove single parts.

1 = Disk  
2 = Pressure piece  
3 = Cage  
4 = Lever (15EA)  
5 = Disk carrier  
6 = Disk package



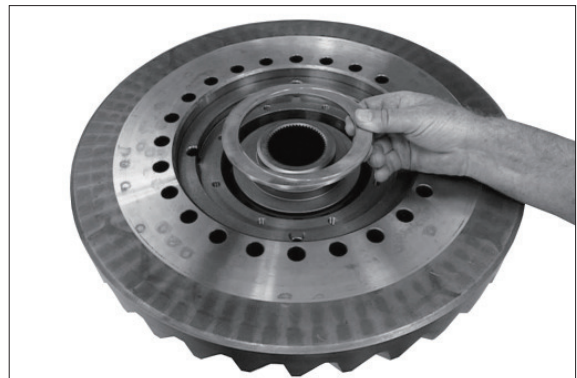
7809AX95

- ⑦ Loosen hexagon screws and remove the releasing disk.



7809AX96

- ⑧ Remove thrust washer and axle bevel gear from the differential housing.



7809AX97

- ⑨ Force out slotted pins (4EA).



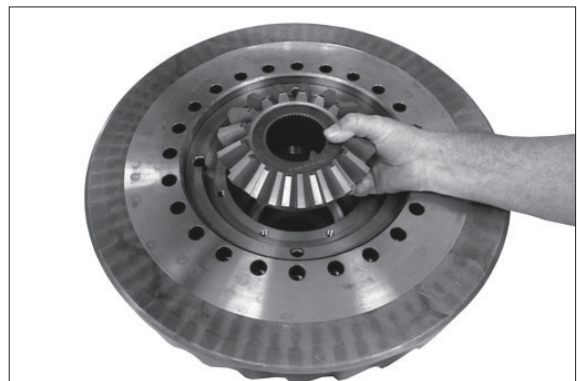
7809AX98

- ⑩ Pull spider shafts (4EA) and remove the releasing spider gears with the thrust washers from the differential housing.



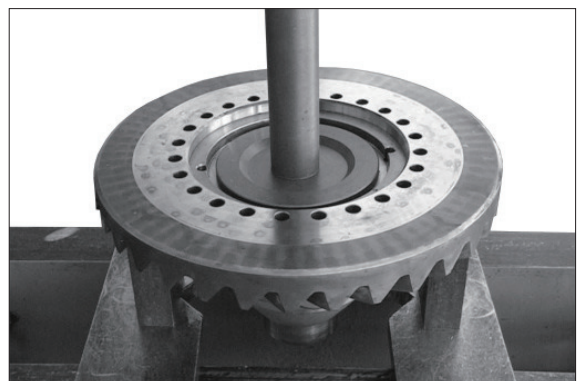
7809AX99

- ⑪ Remove the axle bevel gears and the shims behind.



7809AX100

- ⑫ Support the crown wheel and force out the differential housing.



7809AX101



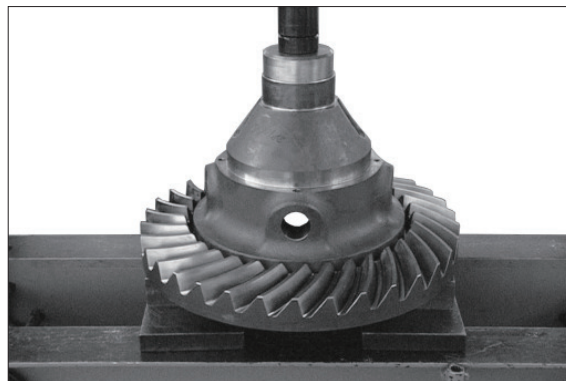
## 2) ASSEMBLY

### (1) Assembly differentials

#### Assembly multi-disk differential lock

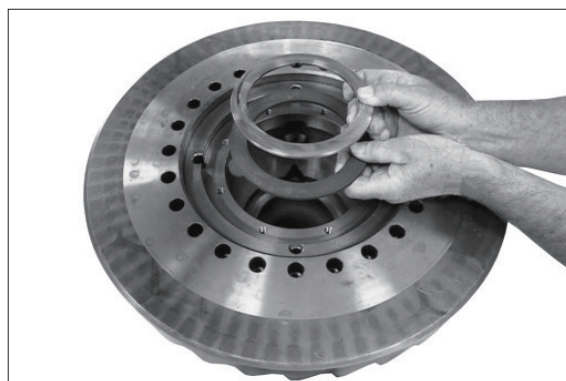
- ① Mount two adjusting screws and press the heated crown wheel onto the differential housing until contact is obtained.

Adjusting screws                      5871 204 040



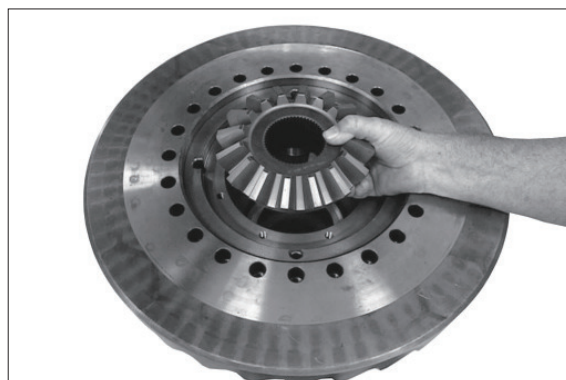
7809AX102

- ② Insert disk and thrust washer into the differential housing



7809AX103

- ③ Insert axle bevel gear.

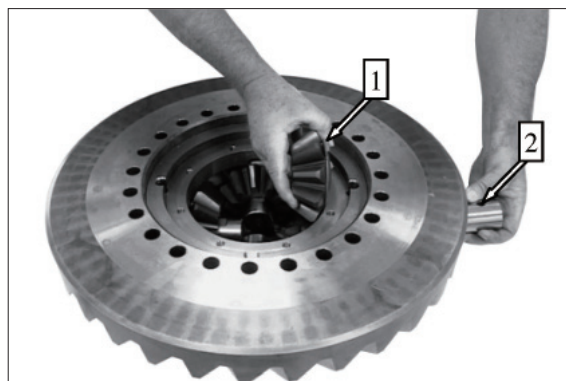


7809AX104

- ④ Insert spider gears with thrust washers into the differential housing and fix them with the spider shaft.

※ Thrust washers must be positioned with the tabs (see arrow 1) in the recesses of the differential housing.

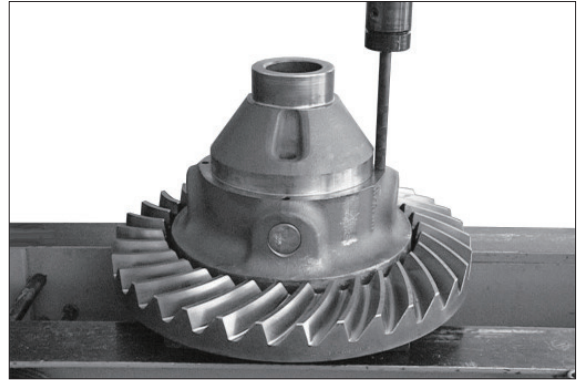
Pay attention to radial installation position of the spider shafts (fixing holes, arrow 2).



7809AX105

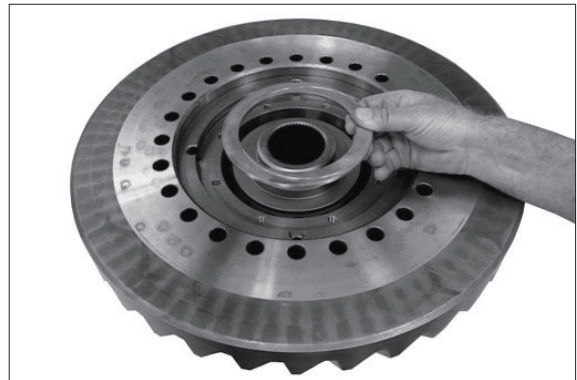
- ⑤ Fix spider shafts with slotted pins (2 pieces / hole).

※ Press the slotted pins with 180° offset openings into flush position.



7809AX106

- ⑥ Mount second axle bevel gear and thrust washer.



7809AX107

- ⑦ Mount disk and fix it with hexagon screws.

· Tightening torque (M10/10.9) :  
5.1 kgf · m (36.9 lbf · ft)

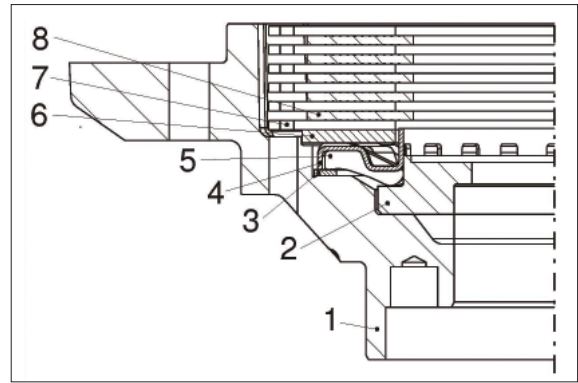


7809AX108

### Setting of disk package

- ⑧ Premount single parts according to the adjacent sketch.

1 = Differential cover  
 2 = Pressure piece  
 3 = Disk  
 4 = Cage  
 5 = Lever (15EA)  
 6 = End plate  
 7 = Outer disks (optional)  
 8 = Inner disks

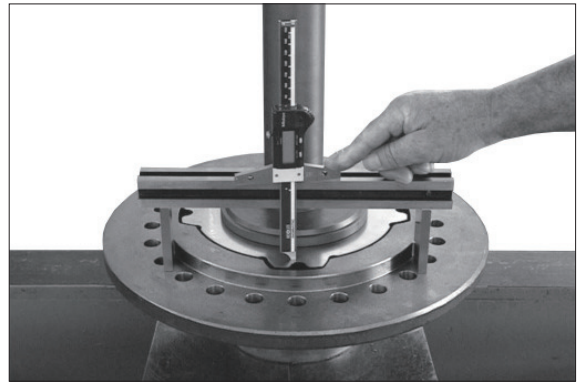


7809AX109

- ⑨ Preload disk package with an axial force of  $F = 7$  ton.

Then check the **setting dimension A** =  $15.5_{-0.2}$  mm from the mounting face of the differential cover to the plane face of the outer disk (see also below sketch).

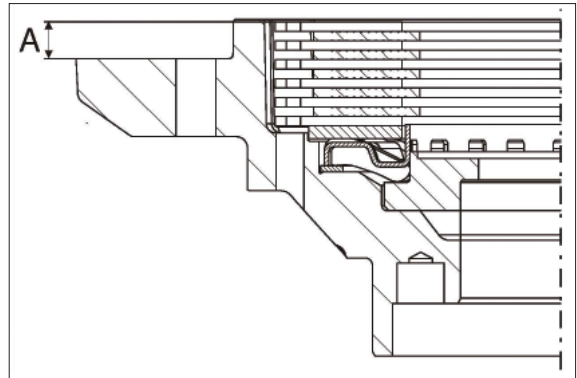
- ※ Any deviation from the specified setting dimension must be corrected with a corresponding outer disk.



7809AX110

### Legend to sketch:

A = Setting dimension =  $15.5_{-0.2}$  mm



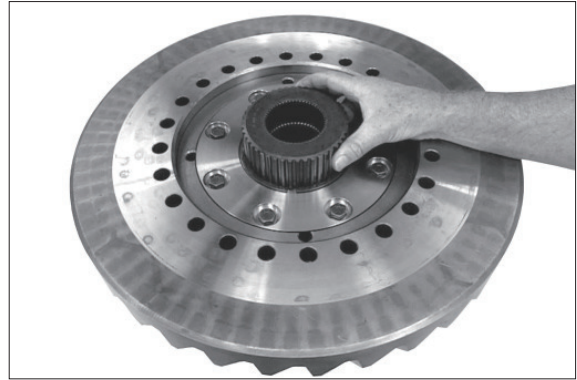
7809AX111

- ⑩ Engage the snap ring (see arrow) into the annular groove of the disk carrier.



7809AX112

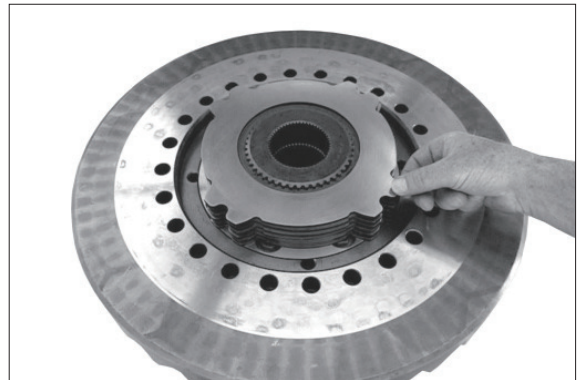
- ⑪ Insert the premounted disk carrier onto the axle bevel gear.



7809AX113

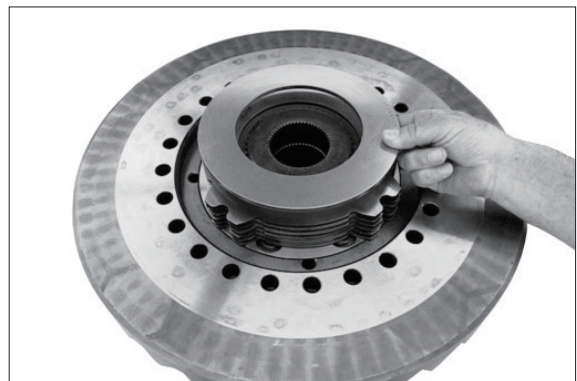
- ⑫ Mount outer and inner disks.

- ※ For the number of disks and disk arrangement please refer to the parts manual.
- ※ Pay attention to the radial installation position of the disk package, as shown on the adjacent figure.



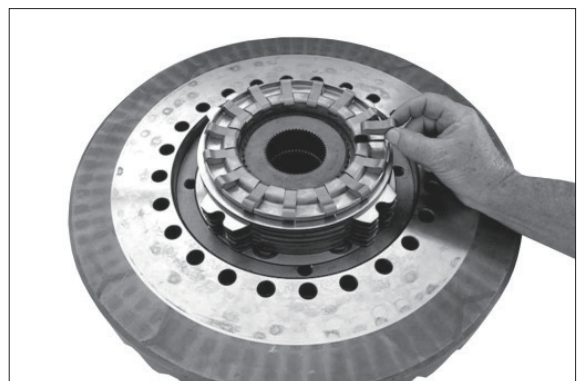
7809AX114

- ⑬ Insert end plate.



7809AX115

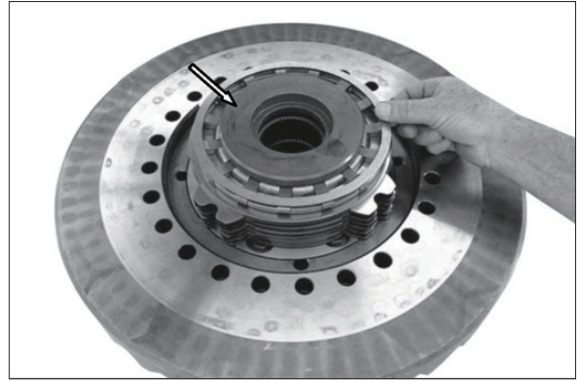
- ⑭ Mount cage and lever (15EA).



7809AX116

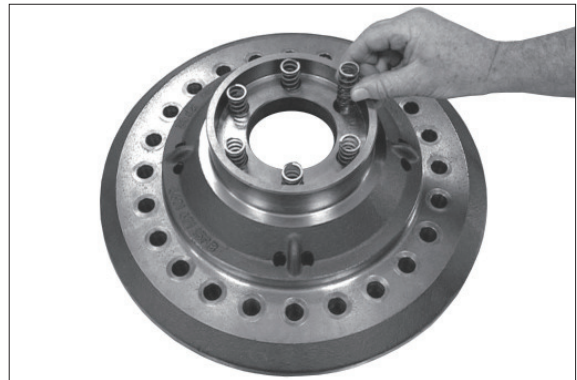


- ⑮ Insert pressure piece (see arrow) and install disk.



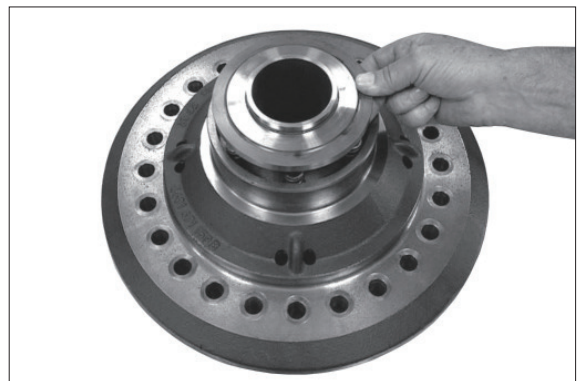
7809AX117

- ⑯ Insert compression springs (6EA) into the differential cover.



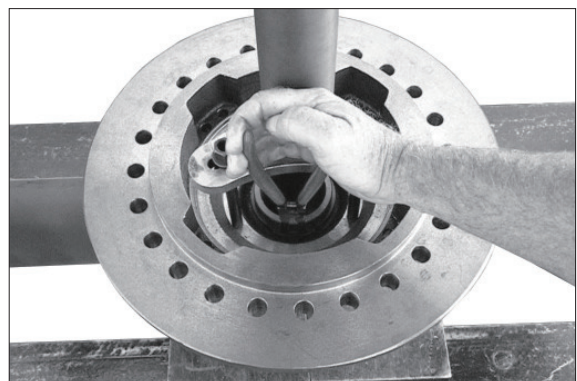
7809AX118

- ⑰ Insert sliding sleeve.



7809AX119

- ⑱ Preload the compression springs by means of the press and engage the retaining ring into the annular groove of the sliding sleeve.



7809AX120

- ①⑨ Mount two adjusting screws and insert the differential cover by means of the lifting device.

Adjusting screws	5870 204 040
Inner extractor	5870 300 008
Eye nut	AA00 680 376

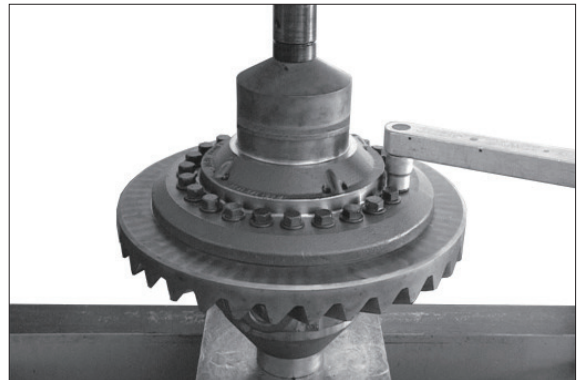


7809AX121

- ②⑩ Preload the differential by means of the press and bolt with **new** locking screws.

· Tightening torque (M16/12.9) :  
40.7 kgf · m (295 lbf · ft)

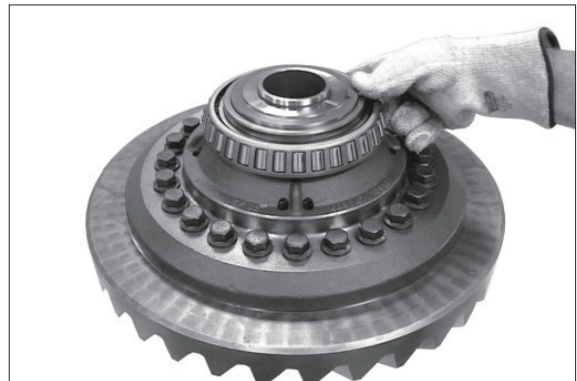
Pressure piece AA00 694 360



7809AX122

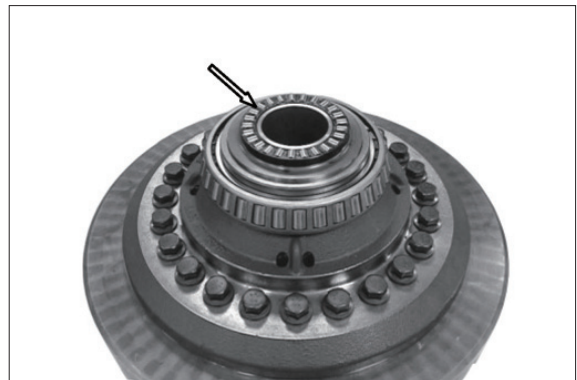
- ②⑪ Heat both tapered roller bearings and insert until contact is obtained.

※ Adjust tapered roller bearing after cooling down.



7809AX123

- ②⑫ Insert axial roller cage (see arrow).



7809AX124



## (2) Assembly axle drive housing

- ※ If crown wheel or input pinion are damaged, both parts must be jointly replaced.

In case of a new installation of a complete bevel gear set pay attention to an identical mating number of input pinion and crown wheel.

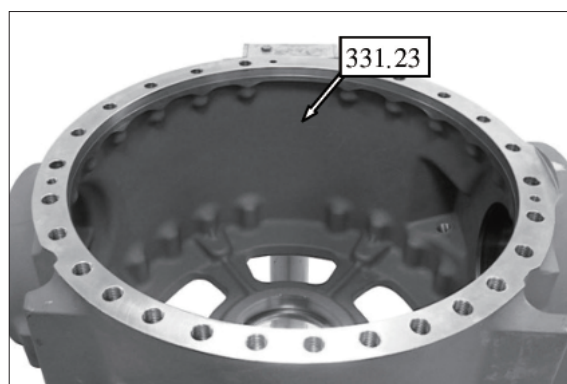
### Determination of shim thickness to obtain a correct contact pattern

- ※ The following measuring procedures must be carried out with utmost accuracy.

Inaccurate measurements lead to an incorrect contact pattern requiring an additional disassembly and reassembly of input pinion and differential.

- ① Read dimension I from the axle drive housing.

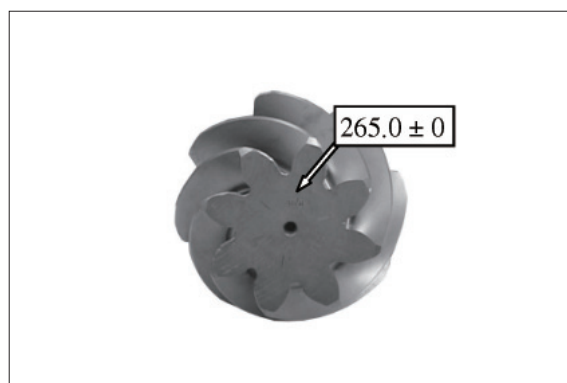
Dimension I e.g ..... 331.25 mm



7809AX125

- ② Read dimension II (pinion dimension).

Dimension II e.g ..... 265.00 mm



7809AX126

- ③ Determine dimension III (bearing width).

Dimension III e.g. .... 63.60 mm

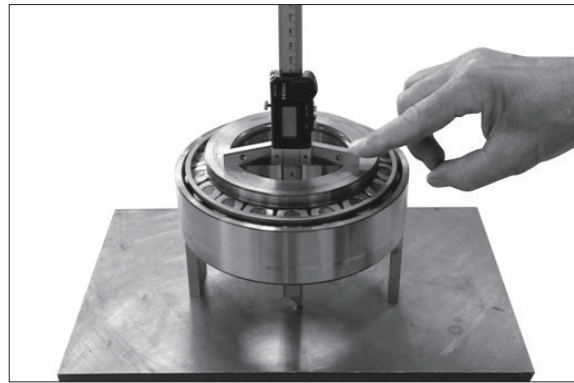
Calculation example A :

Dimension I ..... 331.25 mm

Dimension II ..... - 265.00 mm

Dimension III ..... - 63.60 mm

Difference = shim                      s = 2.60 mm



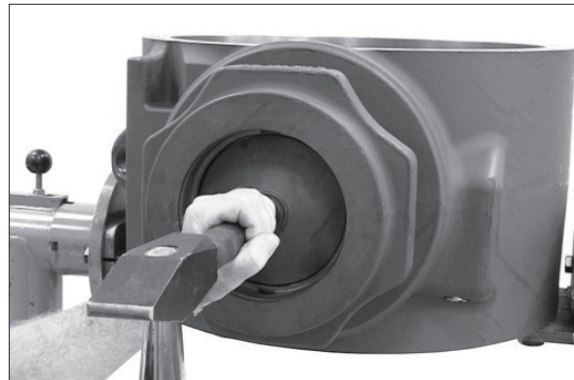
7809AX127

### Reassembly of input pinion

- ① Undercool the external bearing outer ring and insert it into the axle drive housing until contact is obtained.

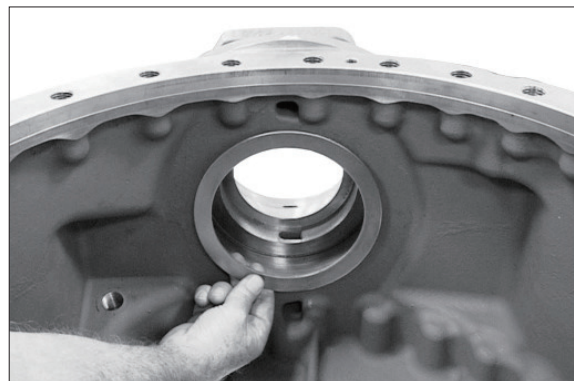
Driver tool                      5870 050 007

Handle                          5870 260 004



7809AX128

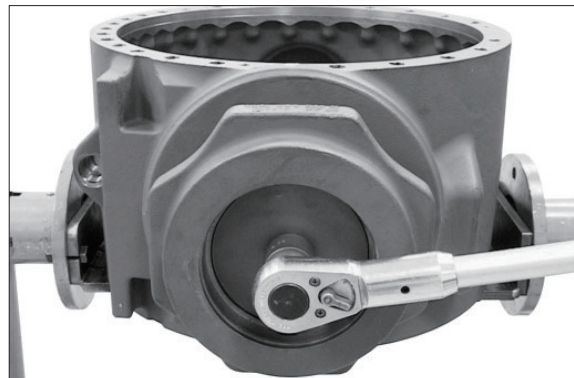
- ② Insert the determined shim e.g. s = 2.60 mm into the housing hole.



7809AX129

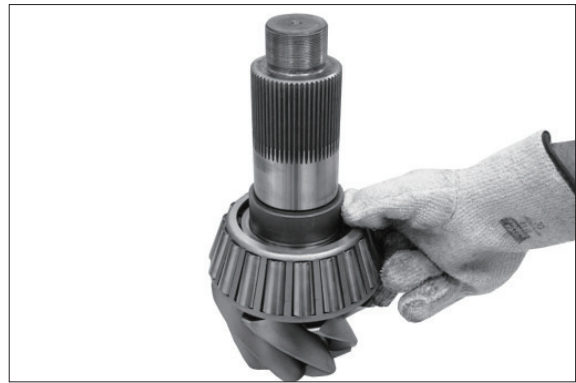
- ③ Undercool the internal bearing outer ring and bring it into contact position in the housing hole by using the assembly fixture.

Assembly fixture                      AA00 623 955



7809AX130

- ④ Heat the tapered roller bearing and insert it into the input pinion until contact is obtained.



7809AX131

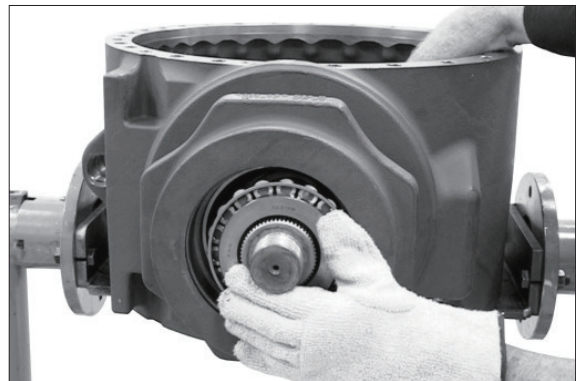
**Setting of rolling torque of input pinion bearing 0.1~0.5 kgf·m (without shaft seal ring)**

- ⑤ Insert spacer (e.g.  $s = 7.13 \text{ mm}$ ).
- ※ According to our experience the necessary rolling torque is obtained when reusing the spacer which has been removed during disassembly (e.g.  $s = 7.13 \text{ mm}$ ).
- A later check of the rolling torque, however, is absolutely necessary.



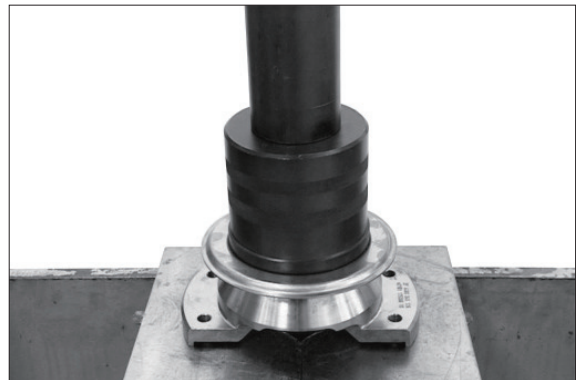
7809AX132

- ⑥ Insert the preassembled input pinion into the axle drive housing and insert the heated tapered roller bearing until contact is obtained.



7809AX133

- ⑦ Press the protection plate onto the input flange (see arrow) until contact is obtained.
- ※ Do not fit the shaft seal ring until the contact pattern has been checked.



7809AX134

- ⑧ Insert input flange and fix it by means of disk and slotted nut.

• Tightening torque :

122 kgf · m (885 lbf · ft)

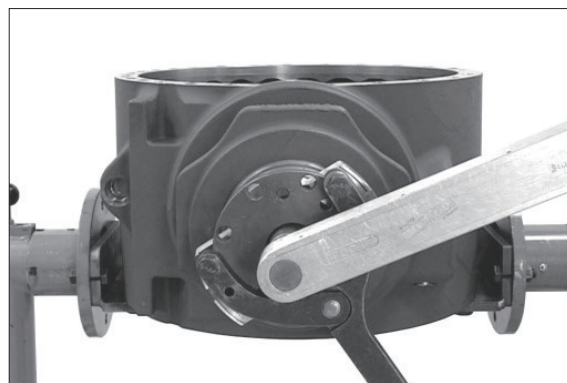
Wrench 5870 401 093

Fixing device AA00 695 905

Clamping device 870 240 002

- ※ Preliminarily mount slotted nut without Loctite.

- ※ While tightening rotate the input pinion several times in both directions.



7809AX135

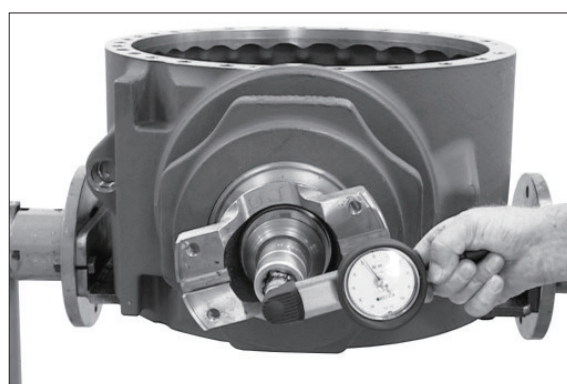
- ⑨ Check rolling torque (0.15~0.51 kgf·m without shaft seal ring).

- ※ When installing new bearings try to achieve the upper value of the rolling torque.

- ※ In case of deviations from the necessary rolling torque correct with a corresponding spacer (figure AX132, page 3-245) as specified below.

Insufficient rolling torque - install thinner spacer ring.

Excessive rolling torque - install thicker spacer ring.



7809AX136

- ⑩ Mount threaded connection.

• Tightening torque :

10.2 kgf · m (73.8 lbf · ft)



7809AX137

⑪ Mount oil tube.

- Tightening torque :  
10.2 kgf · m (73.8 lbf · ft)



7809AX138

⑫ Grease O-rings (see arrows) and insert them into the annular grooves of the piston.



7809AX139

⑬ Insert piston (see arrow) into the bearing housing until contact is obtained.



7809AX140



### Determination of shims for setting of bearing rolling torque (differential housing) and backlash (bevel gear set)

- ※ Determine the required shims on the basis of the read value (deviation/test dimension) and the corresponding specifications of the table below: (KRS – SET – RIGHT) (KRS = bevel gear set):

① Deviation see crown wheel rear side.

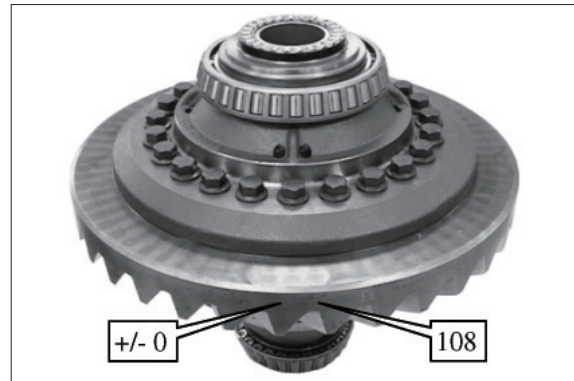
The test dimension 108 is stamped into the crown wheel rear side. If no + or – deviation is indicated, this value corresponds to the actual value 0 in the table below. According to this value, the required shims are allocated in the table below.

- ※ Any + or – deviation of the test dimension caused by production is also marked on the crown wheel rear side (e.g. - 20 or - 10 or 10 or 20) .

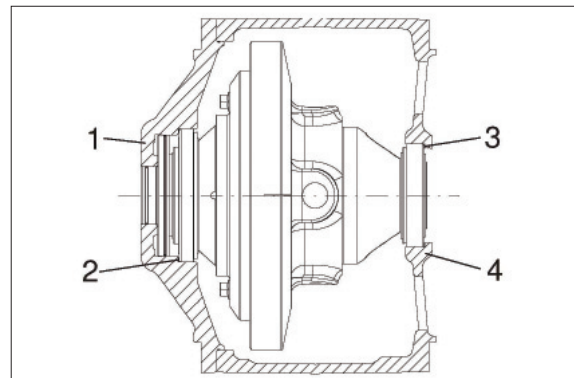
In accordance with this deviation, the required shims are allocated in the table below.

Legend to sketch:

- 1 = Bearing housing
- 2 = Shim (crown wheel side)
- 3 = Shim (differential carrier side)
- 4 = Axle drive housing



7809AX141

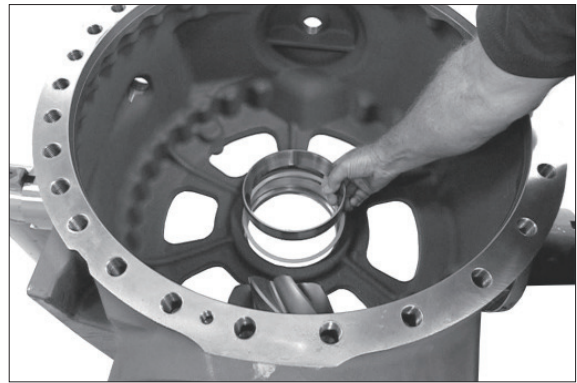


7809AX142

Shims for differential						
Crown wheel marking	- 30	- 20	- 10	0	10	20
Deviation	- 0.3	- 0.2	- 0.1	0	0.1	0.2
<b>Shim diff cage side shim thickness</b>	<b>1.1</b>	<b>1.2</b>	<b>1.3</b>	<b>1.4</b>	<b>1.5</b>	<b>1.6</b>
Shim P/No.	ZGAQ-03681	ZGAQ-03676	ZGAQ-03677	ZGAQ-03678	ZGAQ-03679	ZGAQ-03680
<b>Shim crown wheel side shim thickness</b>	<b>1.7</b>	<b>1.6</b>	<b>1.5</b>	<b>1.4</b>	<b>1.3</b>	<b>1.2</b>
Shim P/No.	ZGAQ-03687	ZGAQ-03686	ZGAQ-03685	ZGAQ-03684	ZGAQ-03683	ZGAQ-03682



- ② Insert the determined shim (e.g.  $s = 1.4$  mm) into the hole of the axle drive housing and reset until contact with the bearing outer ring is obtained.



7809AX143

- ③ Cover some drive and coast flanks of the crown wheel with marking ink. Then insert the premounted differential into the axle drive housing.

Inner extractor	5870 300 008
Eye nut	AA00 680 376



7809AX144

- ④ Insert the determined shim (e.g.  $s = 1.4$  mm) into the bearing housing and reset the bearing outer ring until contact is obtained.



7809AX145

- ⑤ Place the premounted bearing housing onto the axle drive housing by means of the lifting device.

Inner extractor	5870 300 008
Eye nut	AA00 680 376

- ※ Preliminarily mount the bearing housing without O-ring.



7809AX146

- ⑥ Fix the bearing housing by means of cylindrical screws (3EA).

• Tightening torque (M12/10.9) :  
5.1 kgf · m (36.9 lbf · ft)

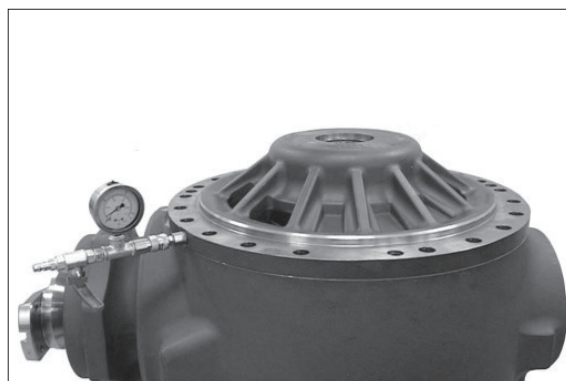


7809AX147

### Leakage test of lock

- ⑦ Pressurize the lock ( $p = 1$  bar), close shut-off valve and remove air line.

※ No noticeable pressure loss is allowed to occur within 10 sec.



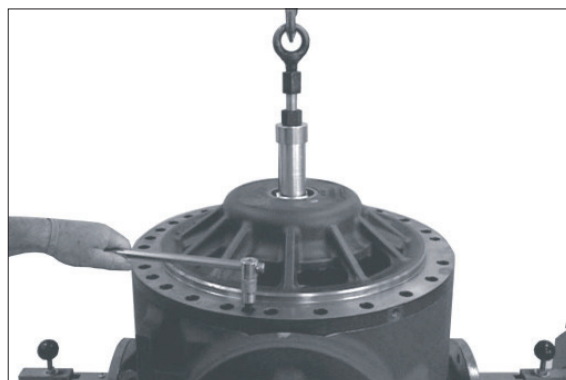
7809AX148

- ⑧ By rotating the input flange, roll crown wheel over the input pinion in both directions several times.

Then remove the bearing housing again and lift the differential out of the axle drive housing.

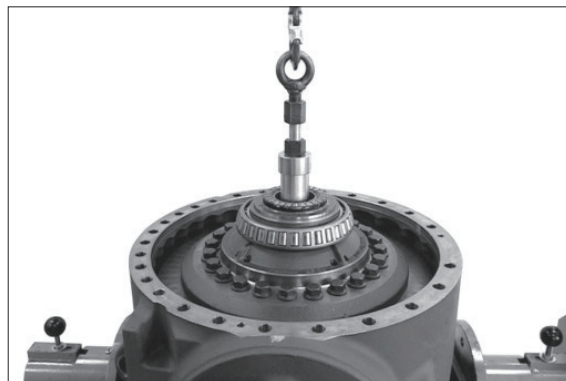
Compare the obtained contact pattern with contact pattern.

※ In case of any contact pattern deviation, a measuring error was made when determining the shim (Figure AX129, page 3-244), which must be corrected by all means.



7809AX149

- ⑨ After the contact pattern check insert the differential again into the axle drive housing.

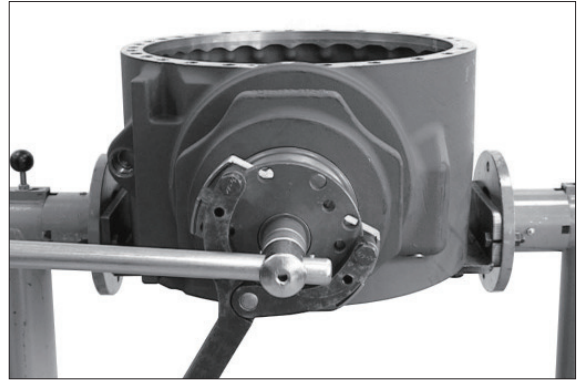


7809AX150

## Reassembly of shaft seal ring (figure AX151~153)

- ⑩ Loosen slotted nut and pull the input flange from the input pinion.

Wrench	5870 401 093
Fixing device	AA00 695 905
Clamping device	5870 240 002

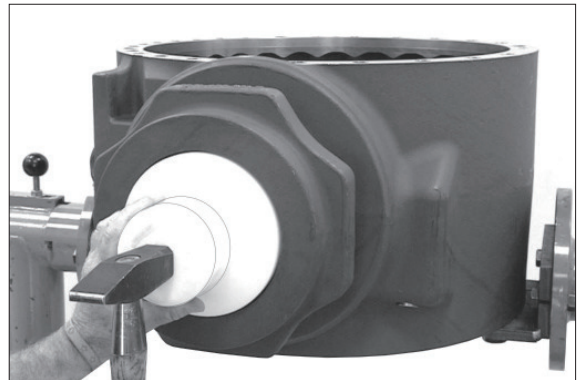


7809AX151

- ⑪ Mount the shaft seal ring with the seal lip showing to the oil chamber.

Driver tool	AA00 623 986
-------------	--------------

- ※ The exact installation position of the shaft seal ring is obtained when using the specified driver tool.
- ※ Wet the outer diameter of the shaft seal ring with spirit directly before installation and fill the space between seal and dust lip with grease.



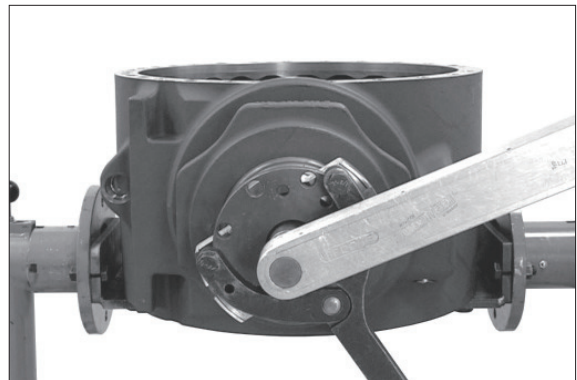
7809AX152

- ⑫ Insert input flange and finally tighten by means of disk and slotted nut.

· Tightening torque :  
122 kgf · m (12.5 lbf · ft)

Wrench	5870 401 093
Fixing device	AA00 695 905
Clamping device	5870 240 002

- ※ Cover the thread of the slotted nut with loctite #262.



7809AX153

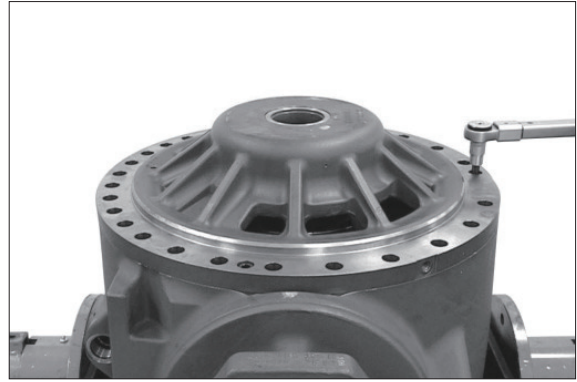
- ⑬ Grease O-ring (see arrow) and insert it into the annular groove of the bearing housing.



7809AX154

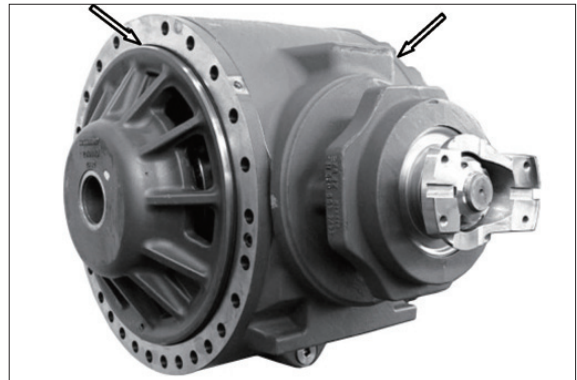
- ⑭ Insert the bearing housing by means of the lifting device and finally tighten it with cylindrical screws.

· Tightening torque (M12/10.9) :  
5.1 kgf · m (36.9 lbf · ft)



7809AX155

- ⑮ Grease O-rings (see arrows) and insert them on both sides of the axle drive housing.



7809AX156

- ⑯ Mount two adjusting screws and bring axle drive housing in contact position with the axle housing by using the lifting device.

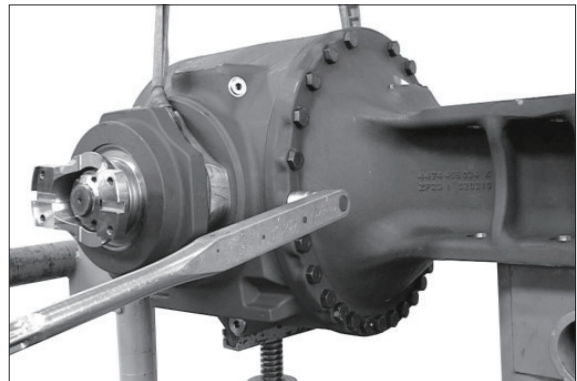
Then fix the axle drive housing with hexagon screws.

· Tightening torque (M20/10.9) :  
57.1 kgf · m (413 lbf · ft)

Adjusting screws (M20) 5870 204 024

Eye bolt (M20) 5870 204 086

Thread insert AA00 677 715



7809AX157

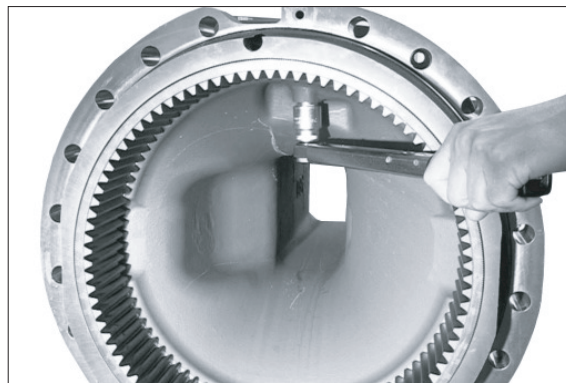
- ※ After mounting the axle drive housing unbolt the support until contact is obtained.



### (3) Assembly axle housing

① Mount both fittings.

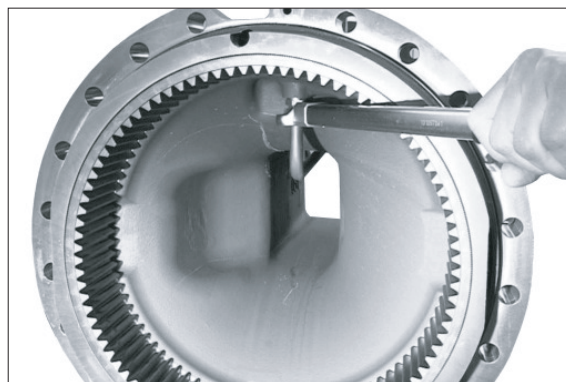
- Tightening torque : 3.67 kgf · m  
(26.6 lbf · ft)



7809AX158

② Mount brake tube.

- Tightening torque : 10.2 kgf · m  
(73.8 lbf · ft)



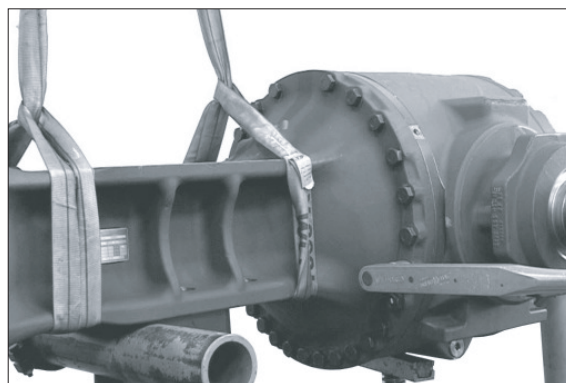
7809AX159

③ Mount two adjusting screws and bring the axle housing into contact position with the axle drive housing by using the lifting device.

Then fix the axle housing by means of hexagon screws.

- Tightening torque (M20/10.9) :  
57.1 kgf · m (413 lbf · ft)

Adjusting screws (M20) 5870 204 024



7809AX160

- ※ After assembling the axle housing secure the axle with clamping brackets.

#### (4) Assembly output and brake

- ① Pull in wheel stud into the output shaft until contact is obtained.

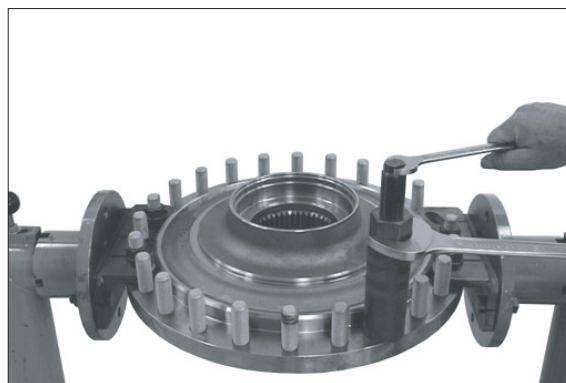
Wheel stud puller - basic tool

5870 610 001

Insert (M22x1.5)

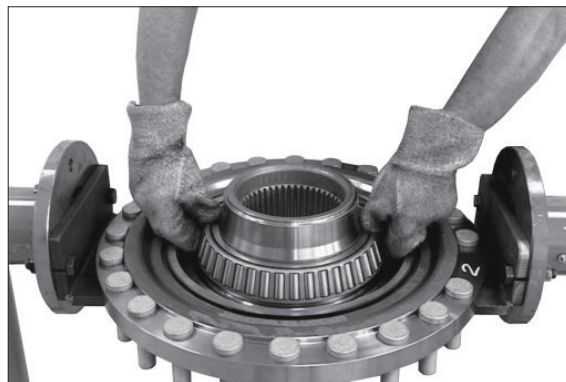
5870 610 002

- ※ Special tool may only be used for repair solution when exchanging individual wheel studs with mounted output shaft. When using a new output shaft, mount the wheel studs with the press.



7809AX28

- ② Heat tapered roller bearing and insert it into the output shaft until contact is obtained.



7809AX29

- ② Wet O-ring of the slide ring seal and locating hole with spirit.

Snap **new** slide ring seal (1) into the output shaft.

Then mount **new** slide ring seal (part 2) accordingly into the brake housing.

- ※ For the installation position of the seal please also refer to sketch AX34, page 3-256.

- ※ The surface of the slide ring seal may not have any grooves, scratches or other types of damage. Take care that the sealing surface is parallel to the housing face.

The O-rings must be mounted evenly into the locating hole and must not bulge out of the hole. Risk of injury - Metal rings have extremely sharp edges. Wear protective gloves.



7809AX30



7809AX31



- ③ Insert the premounted brake housing by means of the lifting device over the output shaft until contact is obtained.

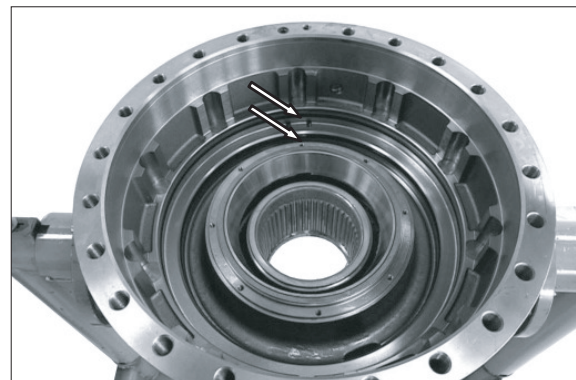
※ Before clamping the seal rings to installation dimension, clean the sliding surfaces and apply an oil film. We recommend to use a leather cloth soaked with oil.



7809AX31

- ④ Insert back-up rings and grooved rings into the annular grooves of the brake housing (see arrows).

※ Pay attention to the installation position; please also refer to sketch AX34, page 3-256.



7809AX32

- ⑤ Clean the annular groove of the brake housing with spirit. Then insert the guide ring into the annular groove (see also the following sketch) and fix it with loctite #415 at its extremities (see arrows).

※ The full circumference of the guide ring must be in an exact contact position.

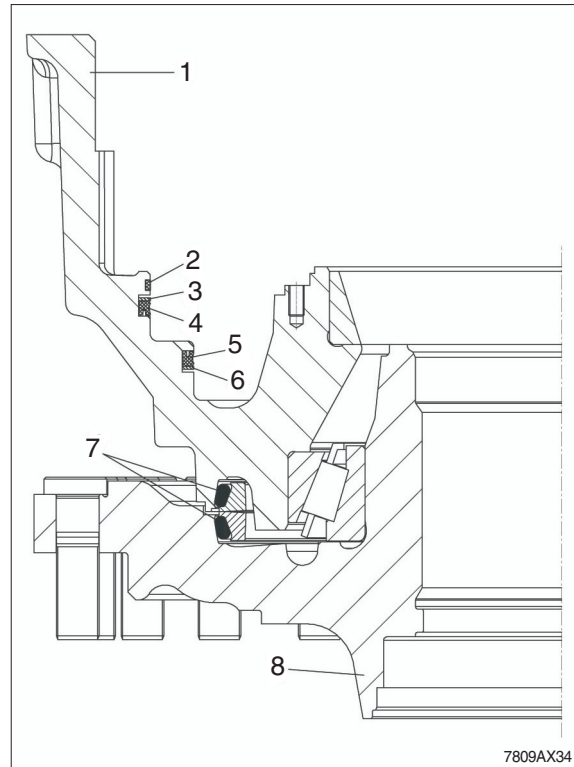
※ Upon installation the orifice of the guide ring must show upwards (12 o'clock).



7809AX33

**Legend to sketch:**

- 1 = Brake housing
- 2 = Guide ring
- 3 = Back-up ring
- 4 = Grooved ring
- 5 = Grooved ring
- 6 = Back-up ring
- 7 = Slide ring seal
- 8 = Output shaft

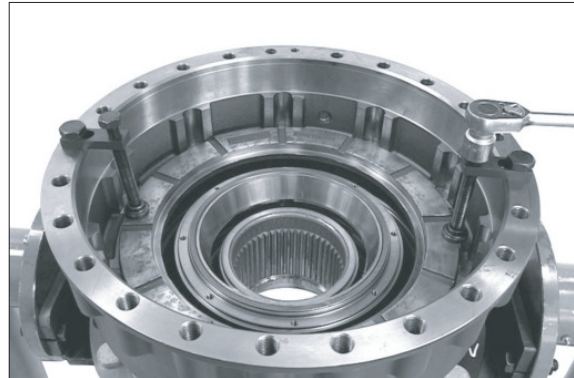


7809AX34

- ⑥ Insert the piston into the brake housing and carefully install with the fixing device until contact is obtained.

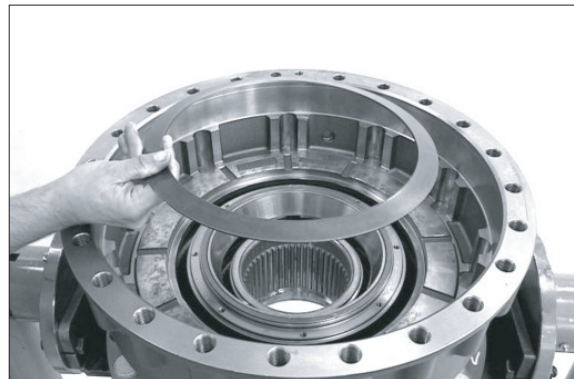
Fixing device                      AA00 680 530

- ※ Sufficiently oil seal surface of piston/ back-up rings, grooved rings and guide ring (W-10 oils to be used).



7809AX35

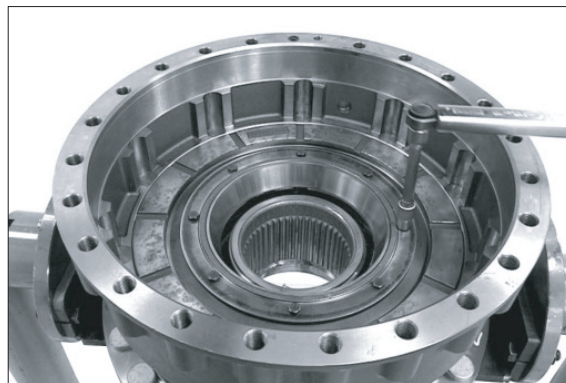
- ⑦ Insert cup spring into the piston with the convex side showing upwards.



7809AX36

- ⑧ Insert disk and fix it by means of hexagon screws.

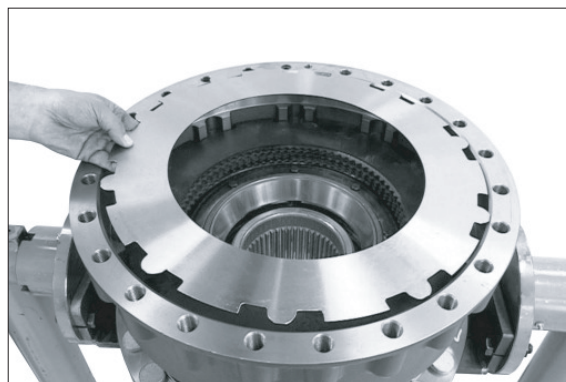
· Tightening torque (M8/10.9) :  
3.47 kgf · m (25.1 lbf · ft)



7809AX37

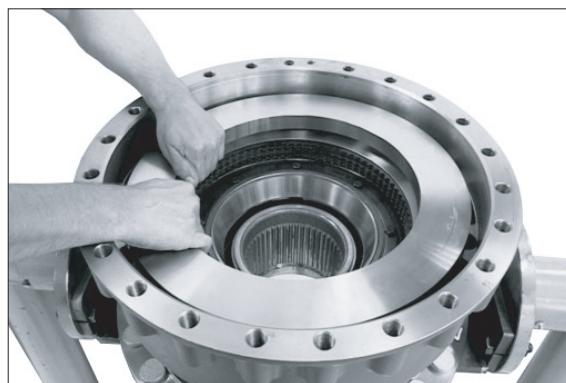
- ⑨ Mount outer and inner disks.

※ For the number of disks and the disk arrangement please refer to the relating spare parts list.



7809AX38

- ⑩ Insert end plate.



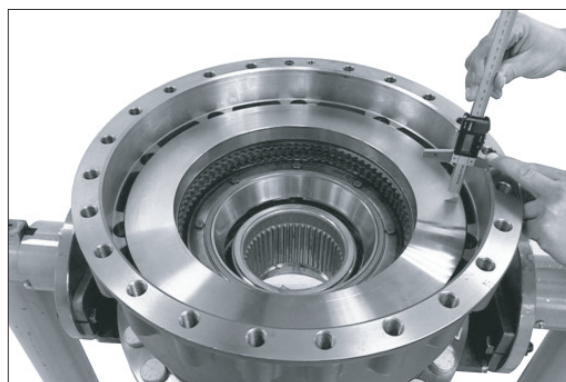
7809AX39

**Setting of installation dimension 57.25~57.79 mm**

- ⑪ Measure installation dimension from the mounting face of the brake housing to the front face of the end plate.

Installation dimension e.g . . . . . 57.50 mm

※ Any deviation from the necessary installation dimension must be corrected with an appropriate outer disk (see spare parts manual).



7809AX40

- ⑫ Press stop bolt into the cover until contact is obtained.

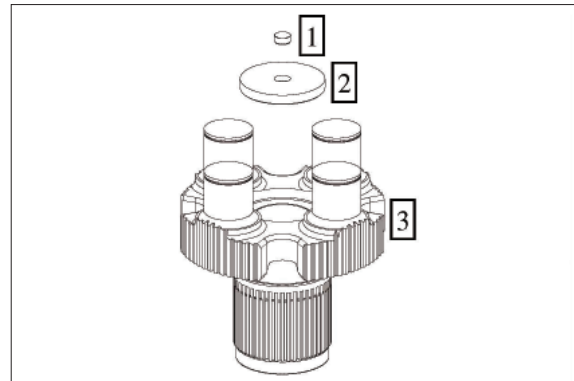
Then insert the premounted cover into the planetary carrier until contact is obtained.

**Legend to sketch:**

1 = Stop bolt

2 = Cover

3 = Planetary carrier



7809AX161

- ⑬ Insert the cylindrical roller bearing into the planetary gear – for this purpose press the cylindrical roller bearing through the packaging sleeve until the snap ring engages into the annular groove of the planetary gear.

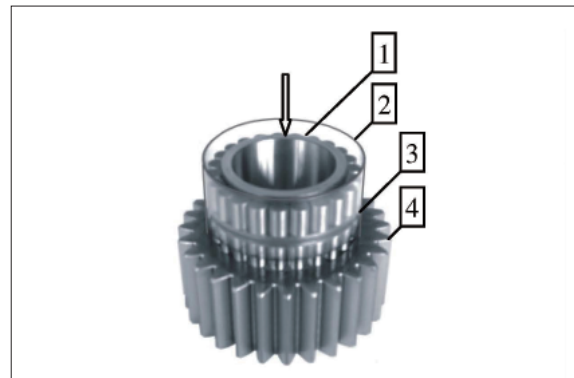
※ Use packaging sleeve to facilitate assembly.

1 = Cylindrical roller bearing

2 = Packaging sleeve

3 = Snap ring

4 = Planetary gear



7809AX162

- ⑭ Heat bearing inner rings and insert the premounted planetary gears with large radius facing the planetary carrier (downwards) until contact is obtained.

※ Adjust bearing inner rings after cooling down.

Then fix planetary gears by means of retaining rings.



7809AX163

- ⑮ Heat tapered roller bearing and install it to the planetary carrier until contact is obtained.



7809AX164



- ⑩ Wet front face (contact face bearing inner ring, arrow 1) and profile (teeth, arrow 2) in the output shaft with anti-corrosive agent.



7809AX41

- ⑪ Align disk package centrally and radially. Then insert the planetary carrier by means of the lifting device into the teeth of the output shaft until contact is obtained.

- Rear axle (planetary carrier with 3 planetary gears)

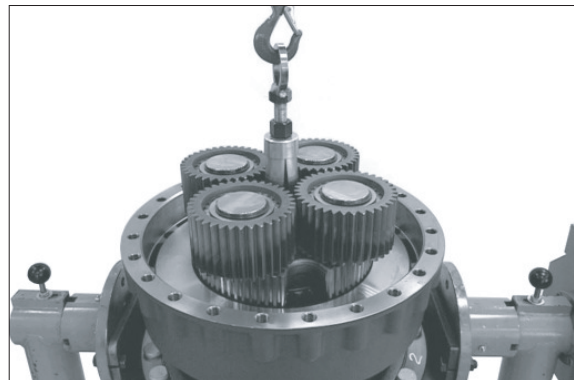
Inner extractor 5870 300 019

Eye bolt 5870 204 073

- Front axle (planetary carrier with 4 planetary gears)

Inner extractor 5870 300 008

Eye nut AA00 680 376

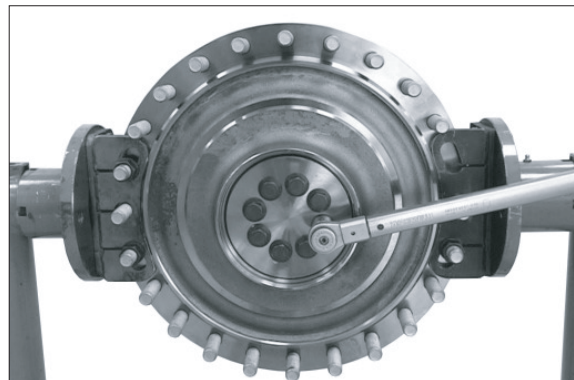


7809AX42

- ⑫ Pivot output 90°. Insert disk and fix planetary carrier with **new** locking screws.

- ※ Tighten locking screws successively with a tightening torque of 20.4 kgf · m (147.5 lbf · ft).

Then retighten the locking screws successively with a tightening torque of 51 kgf · m (369 lbf · ft).



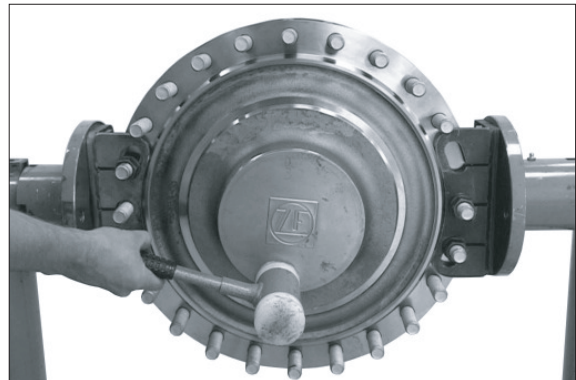
7809AX43

- ①⑨ Install O-ring (see arrow) to the cover.



7809AX44

- ②⑩ Insert the cover into the output shaft until contact is obtained.



7809AX45

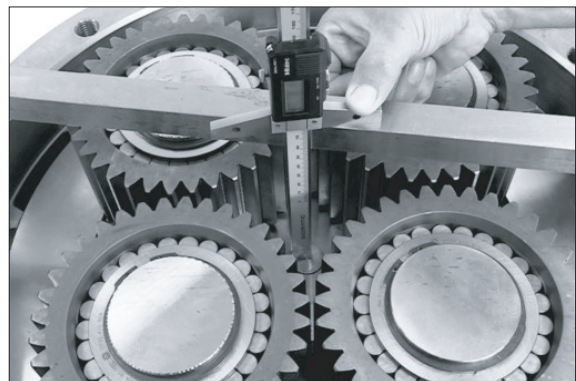
**Set the axial play of the sun gear shaft  
0.5~2.0 mm**

- ②⑪ Determine dimension I, from the mounting face of the brake housing to the front face of the stop bolt.

Dimension I e.g. .... 58.60 mm

Gauge blocks 5870 200 066

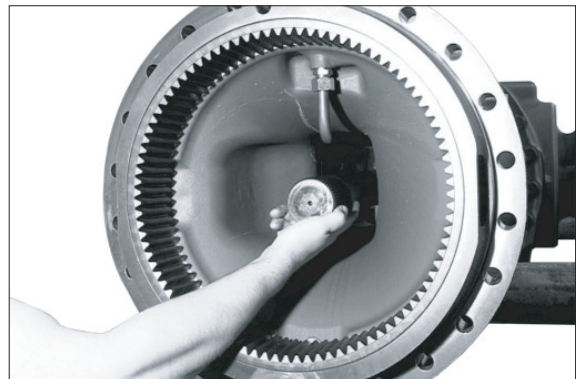
Straightedge 5870 200 022



7809AX46

- ②⑫ Insert stub shaft into the teeth of the axle bevel gear until contact is obtained.

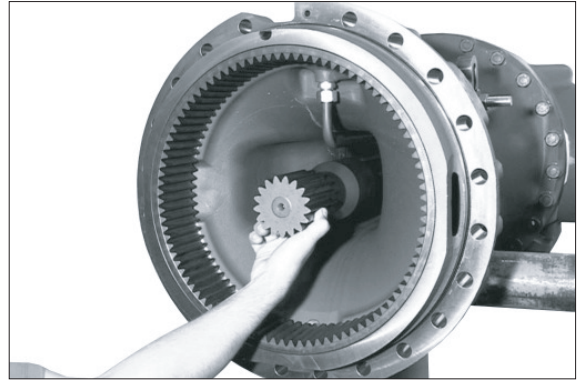
- ※ Pay attention to the installation position;  
mount the stub shaft with the long teeth  
showing to the differential.



7809AX47



- ② Insert the sun gear shaft until contact is obtained.



7809AX48

- ③ Measure dimension II, from the front face of the sun gear shaft to the mounting surface of the axle housing.

Dimension II e.g. .... 56.60 mm

Straightedge 5870 200 022

**Calculation example :**

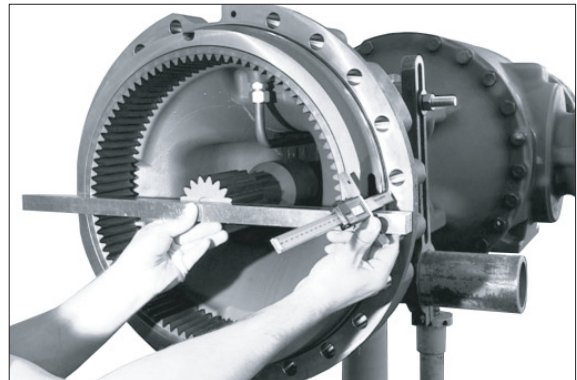
Dimension I ..... 58.60 mm

Dimension II ..... - 56.60 mm

Difference ..... 2.00 mm

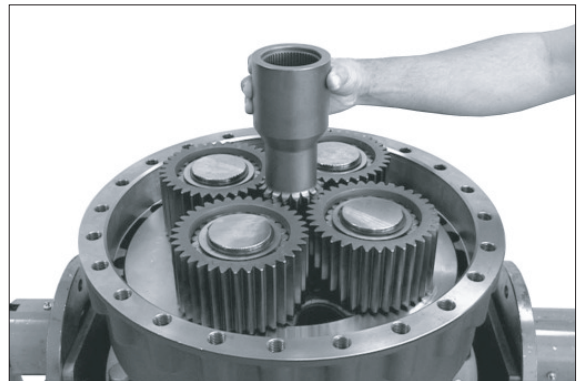
Required axial play e.g. .... - 1.00 mm

**Difference = shim e.g. s = 1.00 mm**



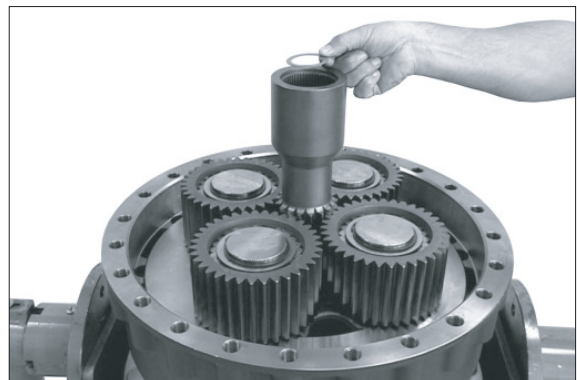
7809AX49

- ④ Insert sun gear shaft into the planetary carrier.



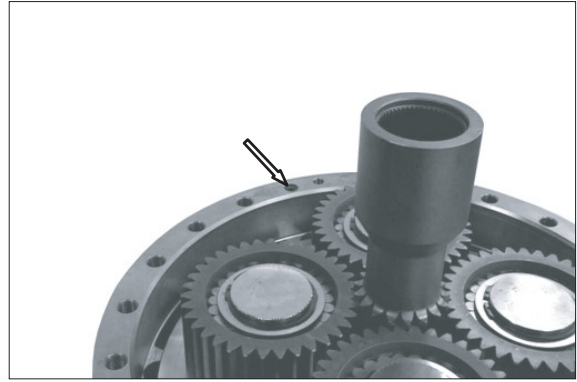
7809AX50

- ⑤ Fix determined shim e.g.  $s = 1.00$  mm with grease into the sun gear shaft.



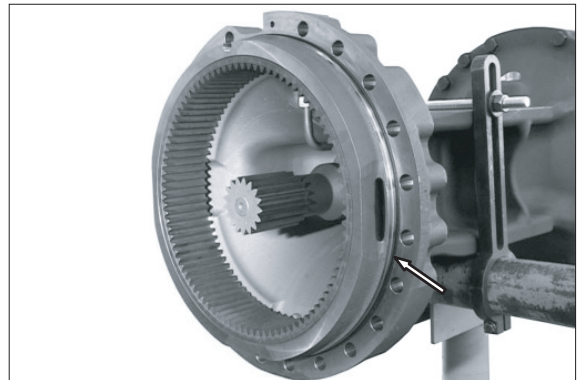
7809AX51

- ②⑥ Fix O-ring (see arrow) with grease into the countersink of the brake housing.



7809AX52

- ②⑦ Grease O-ring (see arrow) and install it to the axle housing.



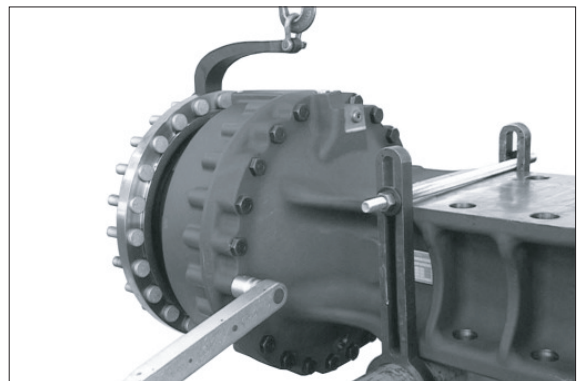
7809AX53

- ②⑧ Mount two adjusting screws and use the lifting device to bring the output into contact position with the axle housing. Then fix the output by means of hexagon screws.

· Tightening torque (M20/10.9) ;  
57.1 kgf · m (413 lbf · ft)

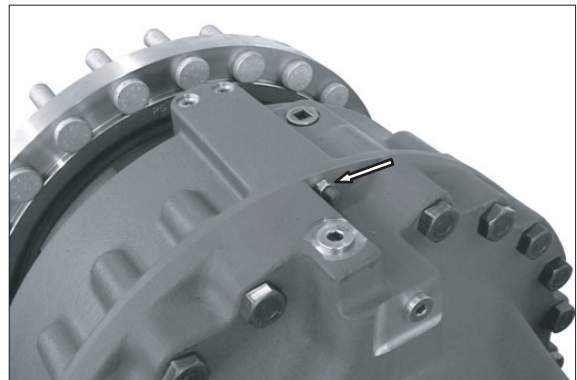
Adjusting screws (M20) 5870 204 024  
Load-carrying device AA00 685 875

- ※ Fix load carrying device with wheel stud.



7809AX54

- ②⑨ Mount breather (see arrow).



7809AX55

③⑩ Check brake hydraulics for leakages.

- ※ Before starting the test, completely breathe the brake hydraulics.  
Then pressurize the brake temporarily (5EA) with  $p = 100$  bar max.

**High-pressure test :**

Build up test pressure  $p = 100_{-10}$  bar max. and close connection to HP pump via shut-off valve.

A pressure drop of max. 2 % (2 bar) is permissible during a 5 minute testing time.

**Low-pressure test :**

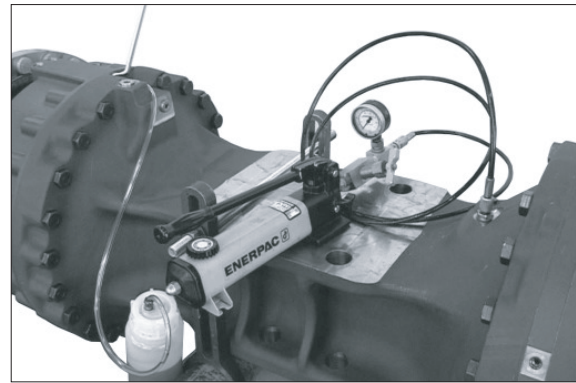
Reduce test pressure  $p = 5$  bar and close shut-off valve.

No pressure drop is allowed during a 5 minute testing time.

**Test media :**

Engine oils SAE 10-W

HP pump	5870 287 007
Clutch	0501 207 939
Reduction (M18x1.5)	5870 950 161
Oil collector bottle	5870 286 072



7809AX56

③⑪ Check operability of differential hydraulic lock

Build up pressure  $p = 20$  bar max. and close connection to HP pump via shut-off valve.

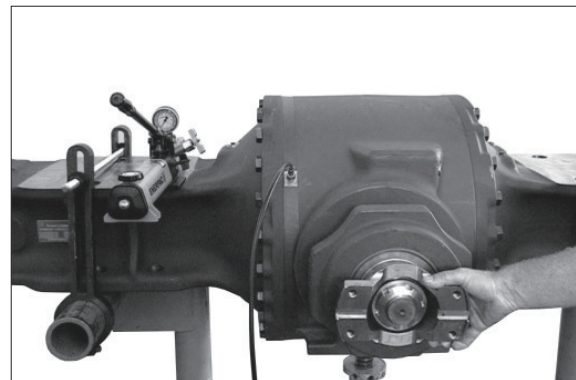
**Lock on:**

When rotating the input flange, both outputs must have the same direction of rotation.

**Lock off:**

When rotating the input flange one side holds or has the opposite direction of rotation.

- ※ Prior to putting the axle into operation, fill it with oil according to the related lubrication and maintenance instructions.



7809AX165

## SECTION 4 BRAKE AND FAN SYSTEM

Group 1	Structure and Function .....	4-1
Group 2	Operational Checks and Troubleshooting .....	4-30
Group 3	Tests and Adjustments .....	4-37
Group 4	Disassembly and Assembly .....	4-39

# SECTION 4 BRAKE AND FAN SYSTEM

## GROUP 1 STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION

### 1. OUTLINE

The variable displacement piston pump supplies the hydraulic oil that is required in order to operate the brake and the hydraulic fan system. Oil flows from pump to the cut-off valve.

The cut-off valve controls the flow of oil from the pump to the brake accumulators and also controls the flow of oil to the hydraulic fan motor.

The cut-off valve contains a priority valve. The brake system has priority. The oil flows to the brake accumulators while the accumulators are charged. After the accumulators are fully charged, the oil then flows to the hydraulic fan system.

The accumulator has pre-charged gas and an inlet check valve to maintain a pressurized volume of oil for reserving brake system.

The oil through the accumulator flows to the brake valves. The brake valve is a closed center design, dual circuit operated by a pedal.

The front and rear brakes will operate simultaneously with only one brake pedal depressed.

The hydraulic fan system is used to meet the cooling requirements. The hydraulic fan system controls the fan speed through the pump output pressure. The desired pressure level can be set by varying the solenoid current.

The hydraulic fan system contains directional valve that reverses the direction of fan.

The brake and hydraulic fan system contains the following components :

- Fan & brake pump
- Cut-off valve
- Brake valve
- Accumulators
- Pressure sensors and switch
- Fan motor
- Directional valve

## FULL POWER HYDRAULIC BRAKE SYSTEM

**ADVANTAGES** - The full power hydraulic brake system has several advantages over traditional brake actuation systems. These systems are capable of supplying fluid to a range of very small and large volume service brakes with actuation that is faster than air brake systems. Figure represents a time comparison between a typical air/hydraulic and full power hydraulic brake actuation system.

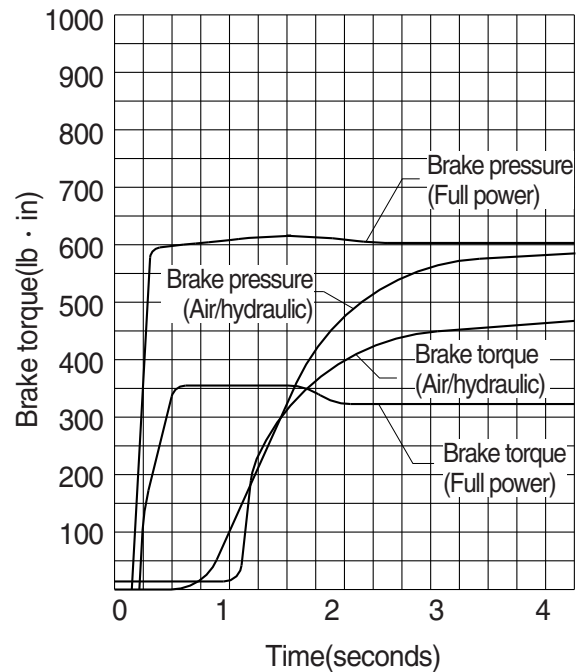
Full power systems can supply significantly higher brake pressures with relatively low reactive pedal forces. The reactive pedal force felt by the operator will be proportional to the brake line pressure being generated. This is referred to as brake pressure modulation.

Another key design feature of full power systems is the ability to control maximum brake line pressure. In addition, because these systems operate with hydraulic oil, filtration can be utilized to provide long component life and low maintenance operation.

Because these systems are closed center, by using a properly sized accumulator, emergency power-off braking that is identical to power-on braking can be achieved. These systems can be either dedicated, where the brake system pump supplies only the demands of the brake system or non-dedicated, where the pump supplies the demands of the brake system as well as some secondary down stream hydraulic device.

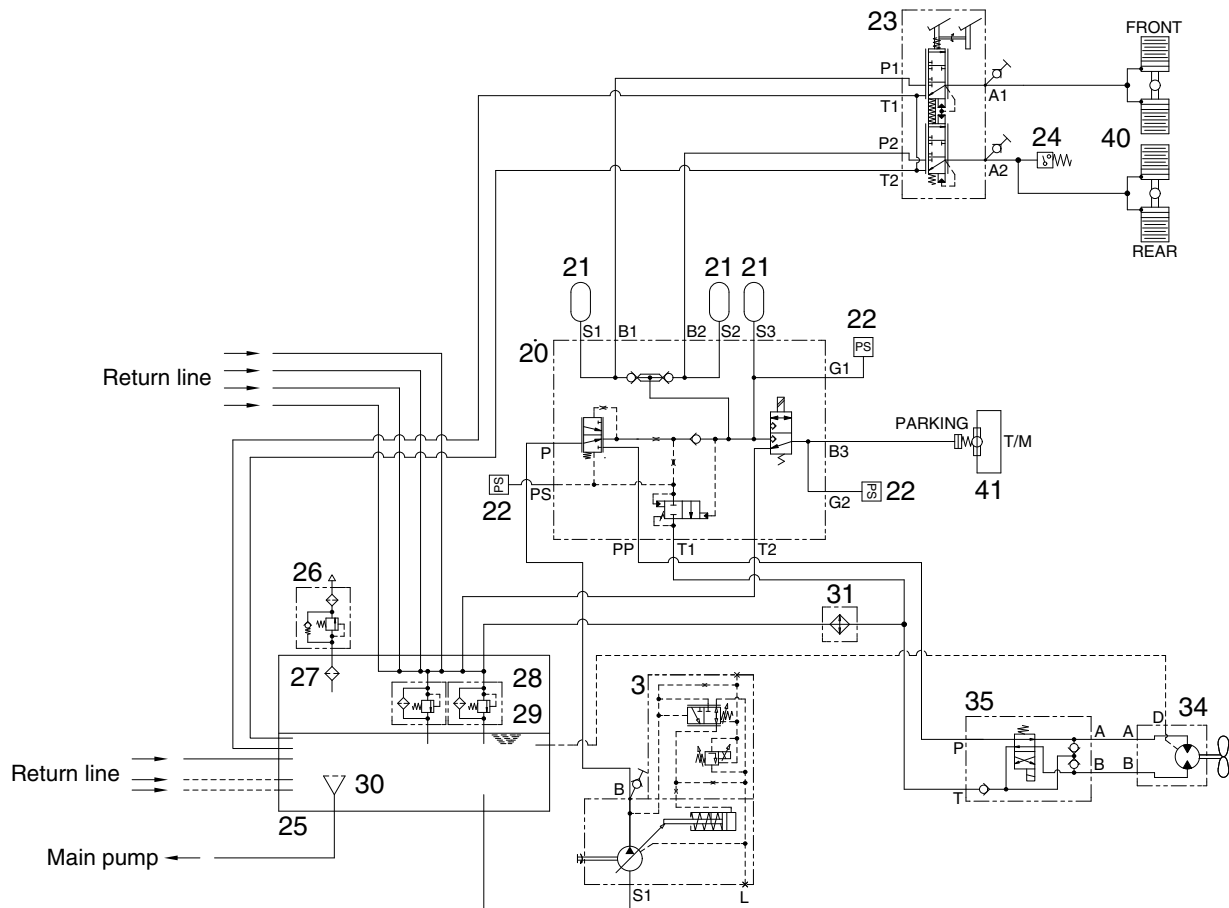
Another important note is that all seals within these system must be compatible with the fluid medium being used.

**Response time  
Full power brake actuation VS  
Air/Hydraulic brake actuation**





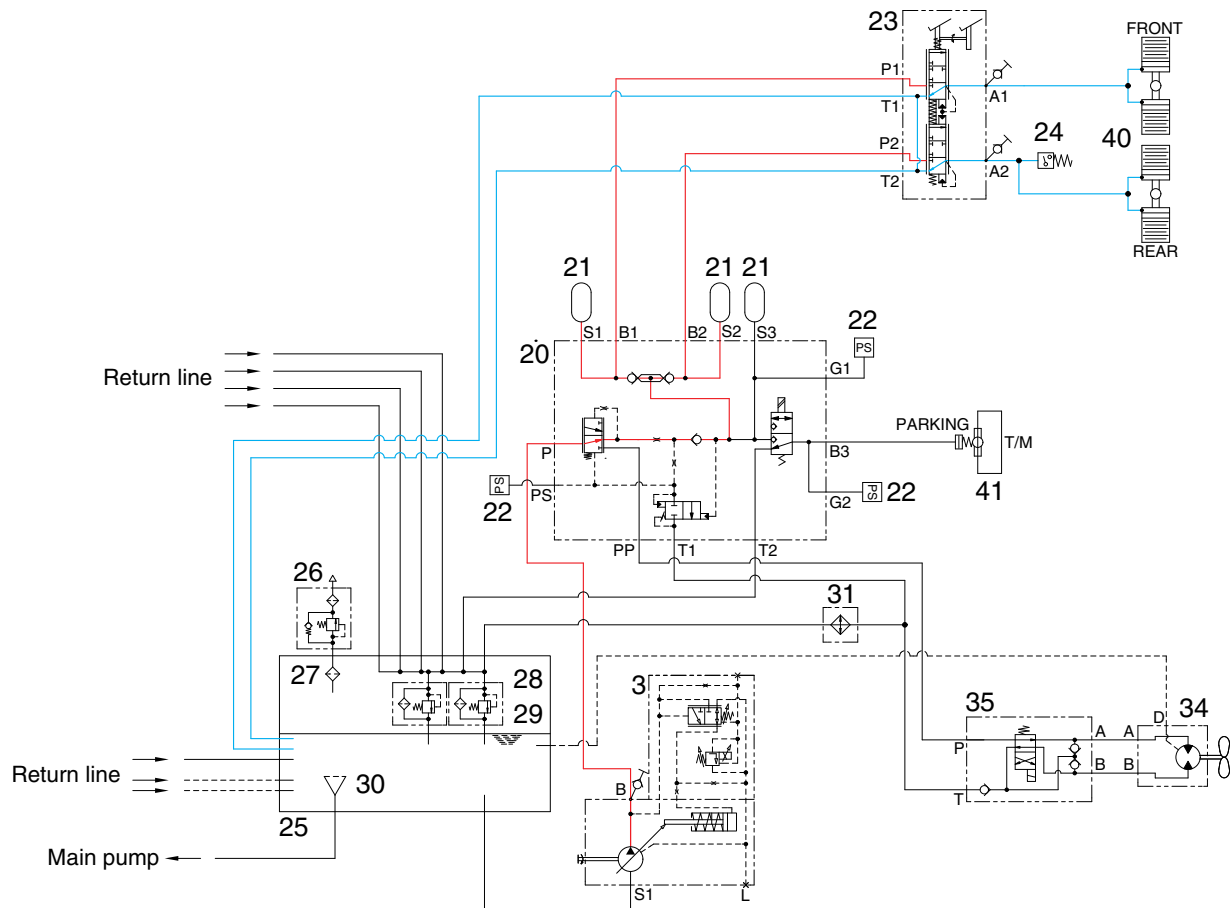
## 2. HYDRAULIC CIRCUIT



9804BS01

- |    |                  |    |                |    |                      |
|----|------------------|----|----------------|----|----------------------|
| 3  | Fan & brake pump | 25 | Hydraulic tank | 31 | Oil cooler           |
| 20 | Cut-off valve    | 26 | Air breather   | 34 | Fan motor            |
| 21 | Accumulator      | 27 | Strainer       | 35 | Directional valve    |
| 22 | Pressure sensor  | 28 | Return filter  | 40 | Axle                 |
| 23 | Brake valve      | 29 | Bypass valve   | 41 | Parking brake at T/M |
| 24 | Pressure switch  | 30 | Strainer       |    |                      |

### 1) SERVICE BRAKE RELEASED



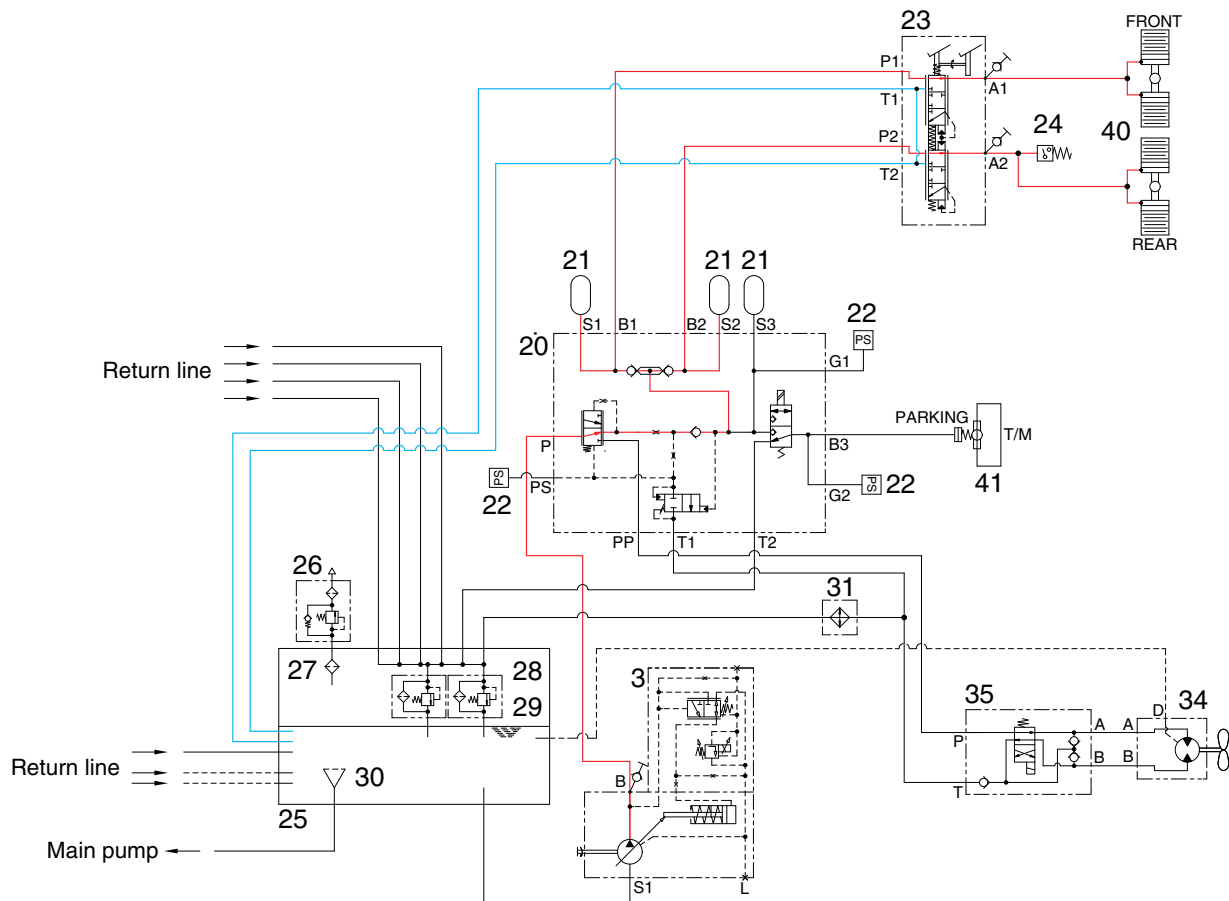
9804BS02

When the pedal of brake valve (23) is released, the operating force is eliminated by the force of the spring, and the spool is returned.

When the spool removes up, the drain port is opened and the hydraulic oil in the piston of axles return to the tank (25).

Therefore, the service brake is kept released.

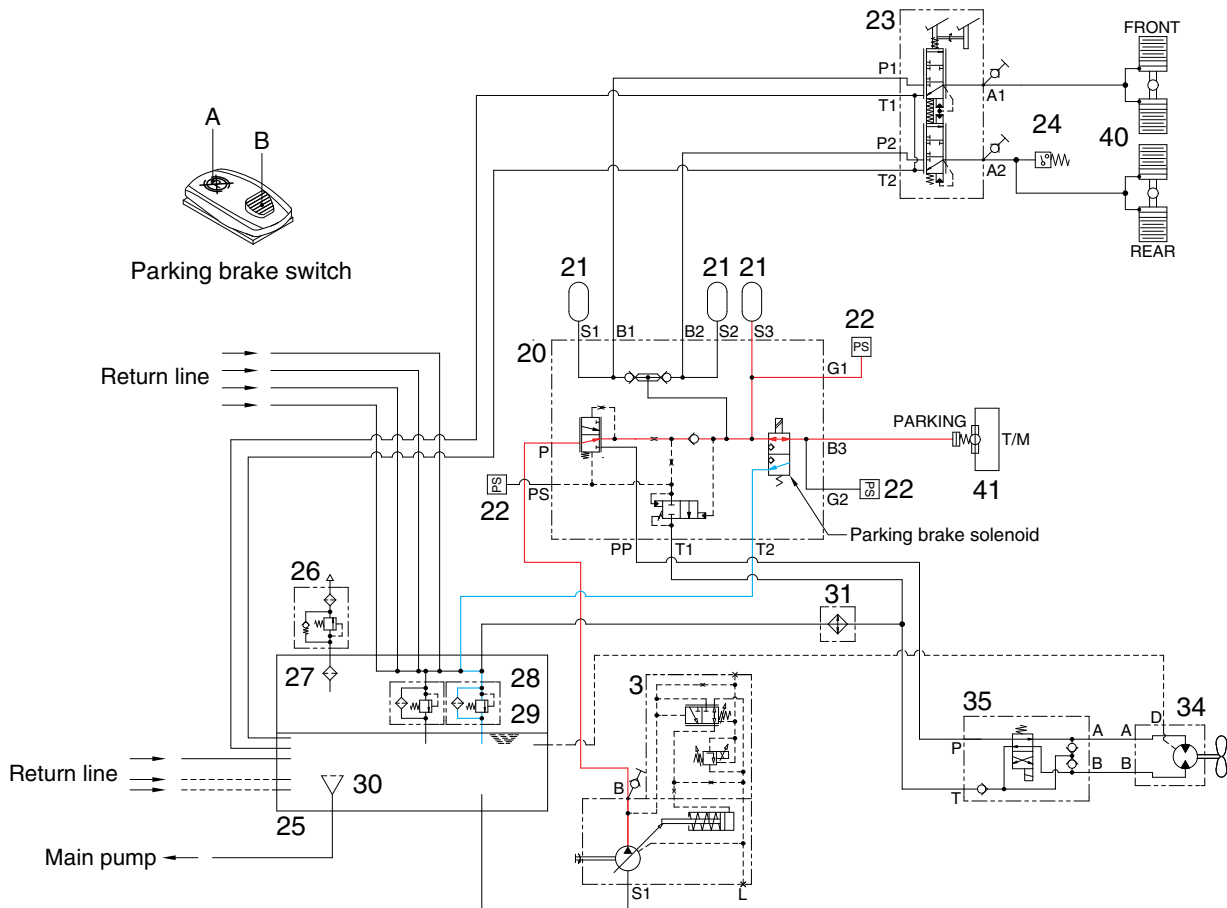
## 2) SERVICE BRAKE OPERATED



9804BS03

When the pedal of brake valve (23) is depressed, the operating force overcomes the force of the spring, and is transmitted to the spool. When the spool moves down, the inlet port is opened, and at the same time the hydraulic oil controlled the pressure level by the cut-off valve (20) enters the piston in the front and rear axles. Therefore, the service brake is applied.

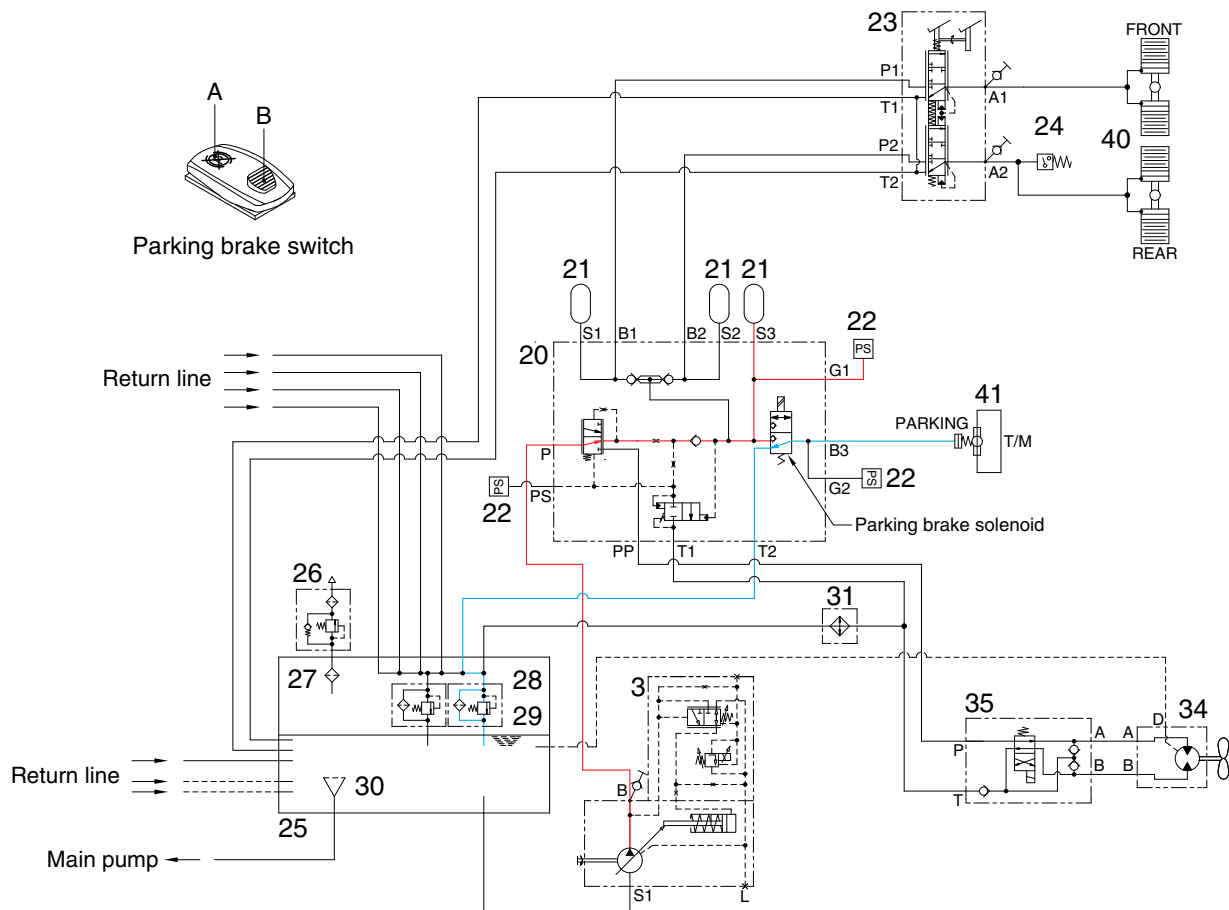
### 3) PARKING BRAKE RELEASED



9804BS04

When the parking brake switch is pressed A position, the solenoid valve is energized and the hydraulic oil controlled the pressure level by the cut-off valve enters the parking brake. It overcomes the force of the spring and pushes the piston rod. This releases the brake. Therefore, the hydraulic oil pressure is applied to the parking brake piston through the solenoid valve and the parking brake is kept released.

#### 4) PARKING BRAKE OPERATED

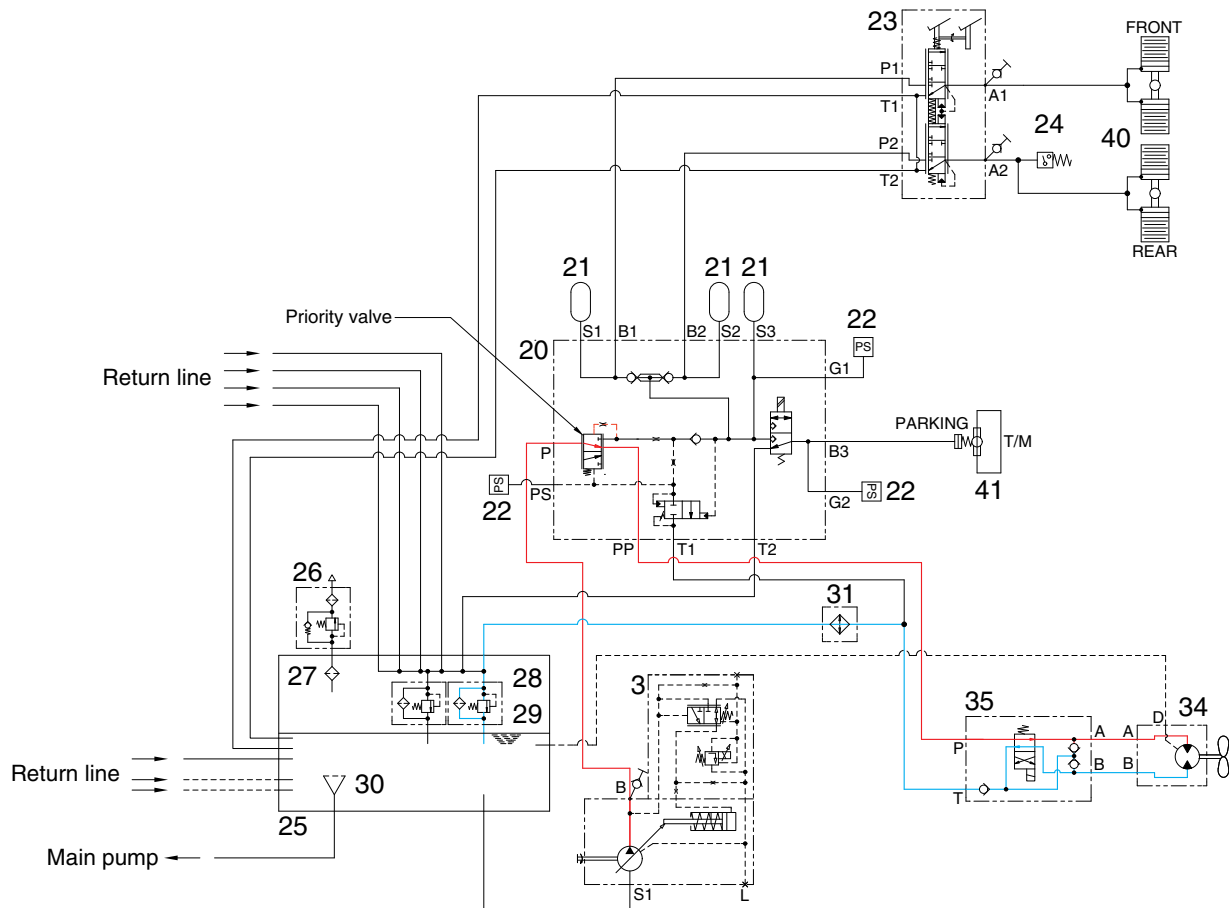


9804BS05

When the parking brake switch is pressed B position, the solenoid valve is deenergized and the valve opens the drain port.

At the same time, the hydraulic oil in the parking brake returns to the tank through the solenoid valve. When the piston rod is returned by the force of the spring, the parking brake is applied.

## 5) FAN MOTOR OPERATED

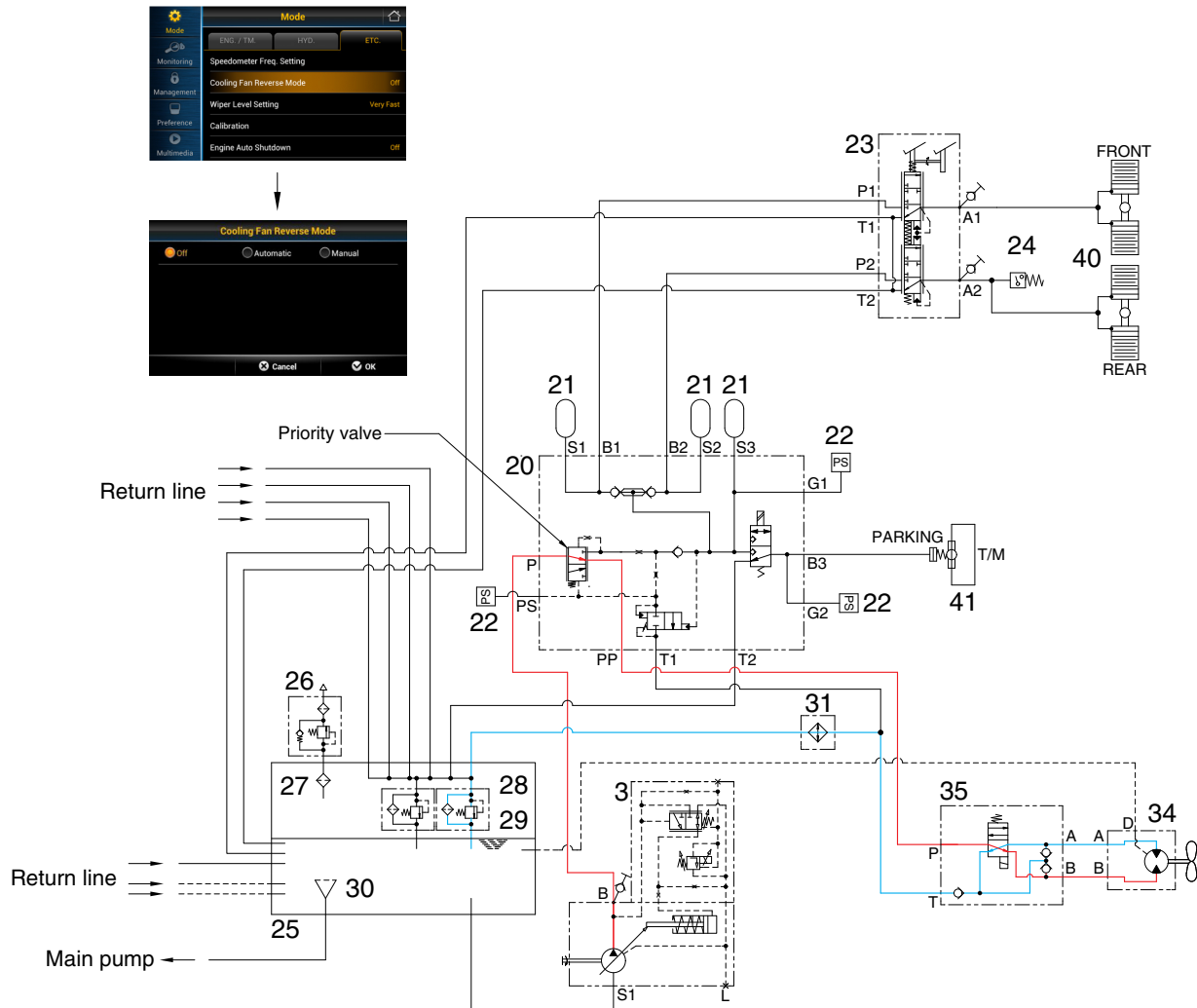


770F4BS06

When the brake accumulators are fully charged, the priority valve switches position and the oil is directed to hydraulic fan motor through directional valve (35). The flow of the oil causes fan motor (34) to rotate the fan blade. The rotation of the fan forces cool air to flow through the cooler.



## 6) DIRECTIONAL VALVE OPERATED

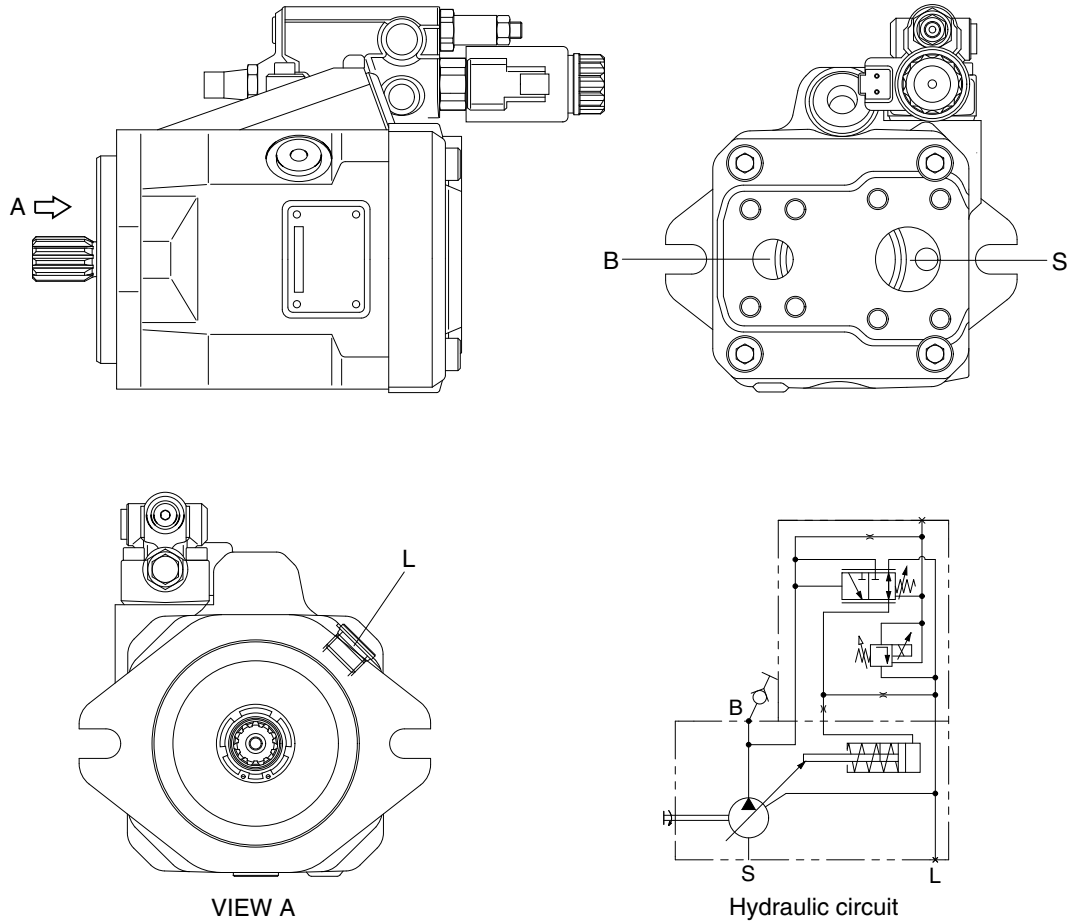


9804BS07

When the cooling fan reverse mode is selected manual or automatic mode, the solenoid valve in the directional valve (35) is energized and the flow of the oil is changed. The rotation of the fan is reversed to clear the radiators.

### 3. FAN AND BRAKE PUMP

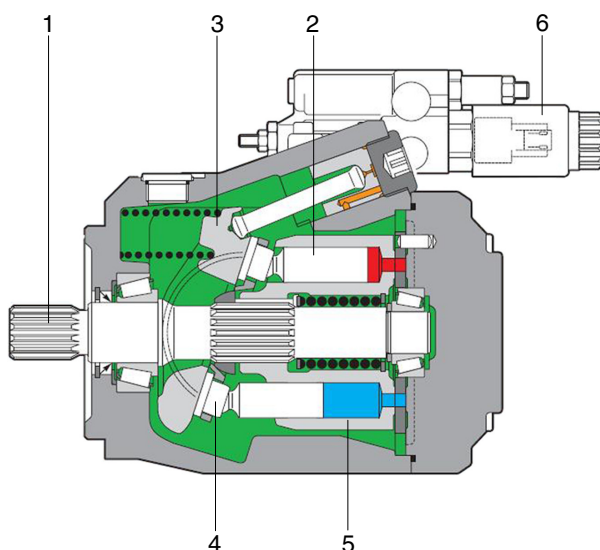
#### 1) STRUCTURE



Port	Port name	Port size
B	Delivery port	SAE 3/4"
S	Suction port	SAE 1 1/4"
L	Drain port	3/4-16UNF-2B

7809A4BS30

## 2) OPERATION



7609A4BS31

The pump is a variable displacement piston pump. This pump has a maximum delivery pressure of 250 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>. The axial piston type pump is used to supply oil flow to the cut off valve. The oil is pressurized by the movement of rotary group in the pump.

When the engine is in operation, the drive shaft (1) is driven by the gears in the engine with rotary group. There are nine piston assemblies (2) in rotary group.

Each piston inside cylinder (5) is held against swashplate (3) by piston shoe (4). Swashplate can be any angle between the maximum angle and the neutral angle. The angle of swashplate determines the amount of oil that is pushed out of each cylinder.

The neutral angle is perpendicular with drive shaft (1). When swashplate(3) is at the neutral angle, pistons (2) do not move in and out of rotating cylinder. Therefore, no oil is drawn into the pump and no oil is pushed out of the pump. The pump has zero displacement and zero flow.

When swashplate (3) is at the maximum angle, pistons (2) move in and out of cylinder. The movement of the pistons allows the maximum amount of oil to be drawn into the cylinder. The pump will produce the maximum displacement.

The swashplate (3) angle is controlled by command current signal to control valve solenoid (6). The pump output pressure level can be set by the solenoid current. When the solenoid current signal drops toward a zero value, the pump output pressure level is the maximum.

### ※ FAN SYSTEM OPERATION

When the brake system pressure is below minimum pressure ( $125 \pm 5$  bar), it has the high priority than the fan system. Pump flow to the fan motor is blocked while brake system is charged.

However, The fan system has controlled pump when the brake system pressure is charged.

The fan speed solenoid valve (6) controls the pressure (fan speed) of pump when the brake system is fully charged.

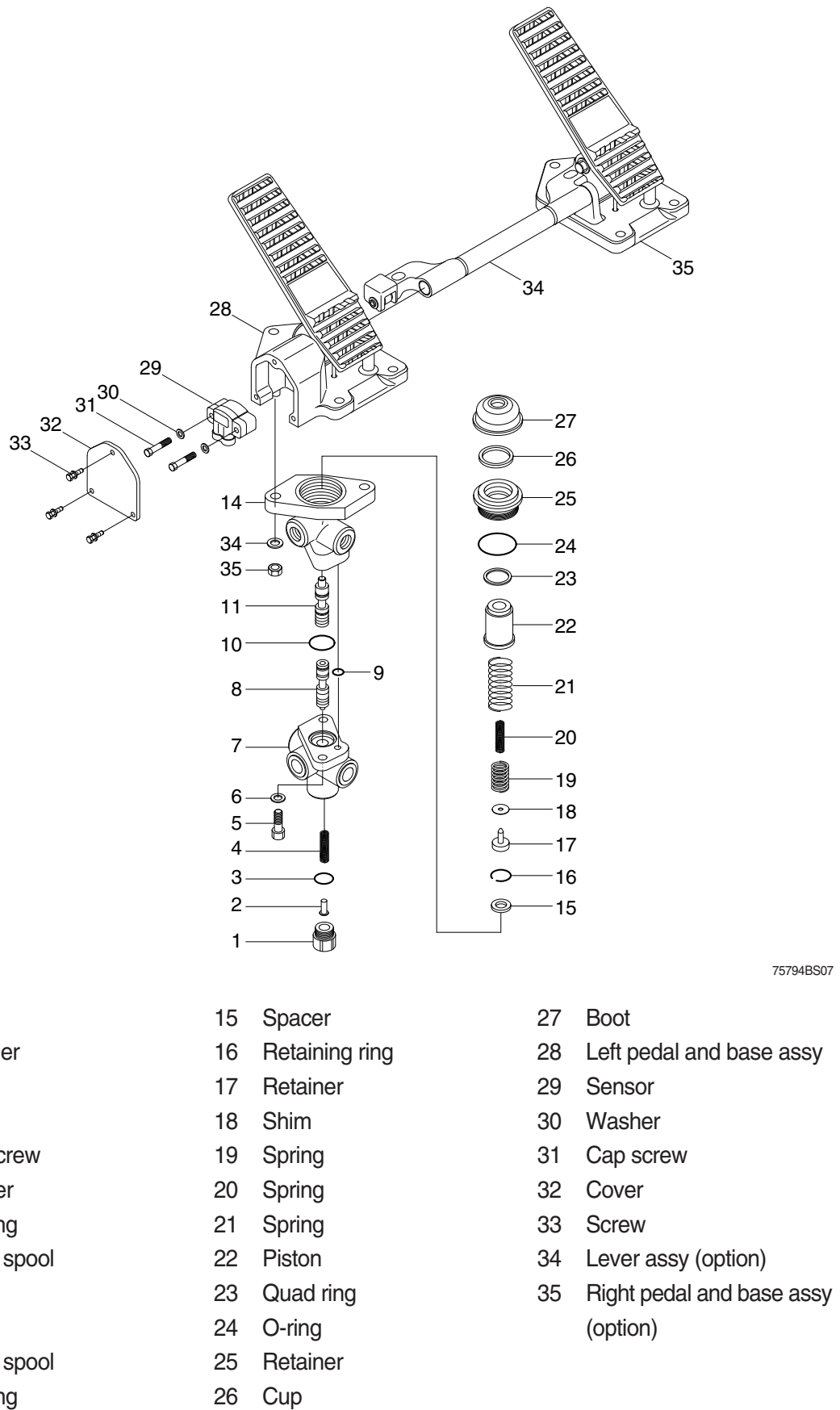
The fan speed solenoid valve (6) is a proportional solenoid. As current to the fan speed solenoid increases, pump output pressure decreased, therefore, the fan motor rotates slower.

When the current of the fan speed solenoid valve (6) is reduced, the output pressure is increased.

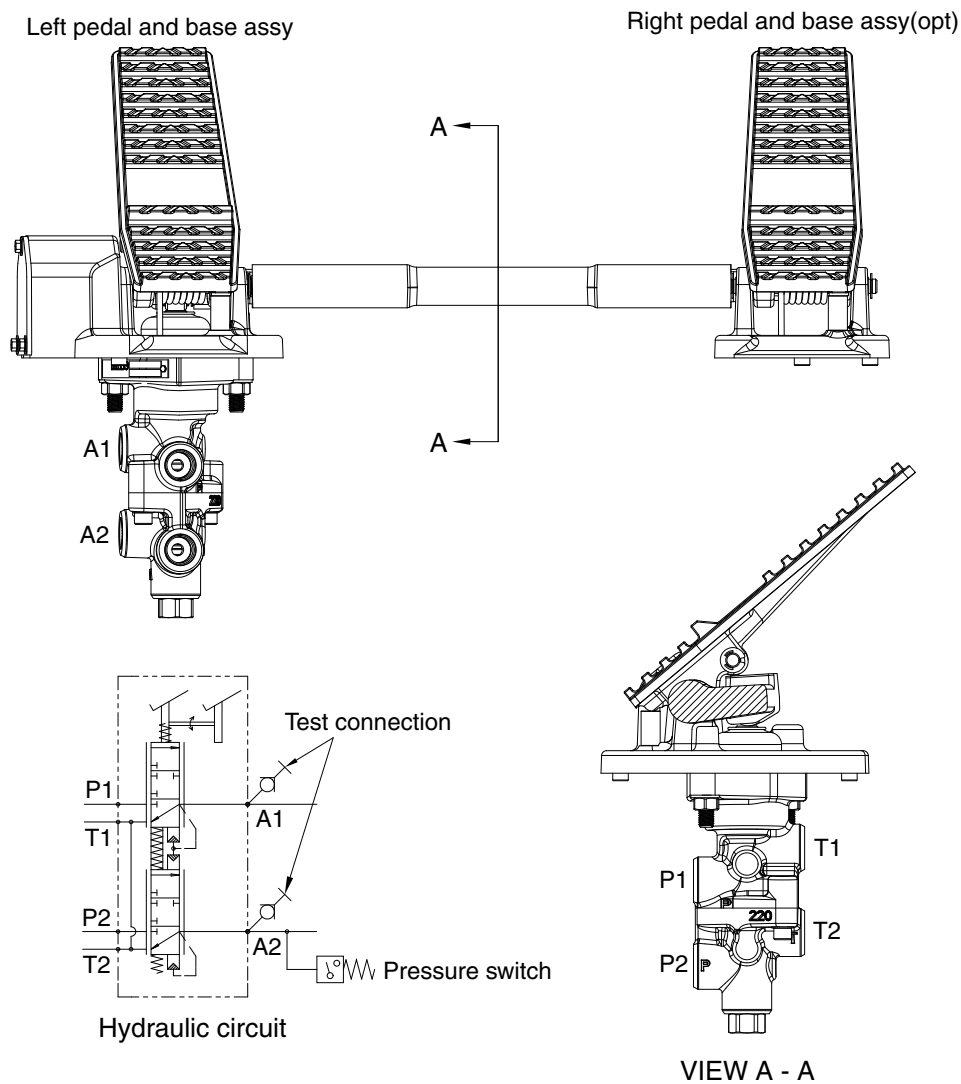
The pump will be stroked and the pump will send maximum flow to the fan motor, thus, the fan motor is turning faster.

## 4. BRAKE VALVE

### 1) STRUCTURE



2) OPERATION



Port	Port name	Port size
P1, P2	Pressure port	3/4-16UNF
T1, T2	Return port	3/4-16UNF
A1, A2	Brake cylinder port	3/4-16UNF

75794BS08

· Brake pressure specification :  $80 \pm 5$  bar ( $1160 \pm 70$  psi)

**(1) Purpose**

The purpose of the brake valve is to sensitively increase and decrease the braking pressure when the brake pedal is actuated.

**(2) Ready position**

When the braking system is ready for operation, its accumulator pressure acts directly on ports (P1, P2) of the brake valve. A connection is established between ports (A1, A2) and ports (T1, T2) so that the wheel brake ports (A1, A2) are pressureless via the returns ports (T1, T2).

**(3) Partial braking**

When the brake valve is actuated, an amount of hydraulic pressure is output as a ratio of the foot force applied.

The spring assembly (21) beneath base (28) is designed in such a way that the braking pressure changes depending on the angle. In the lower braking pressure range, the machine can be slowed sensitively.

When the braking process is commenced, the upper spool is mechanically actuated via spring assembly (21), and the lower spool is actuated hydraulically by spool. As spools (11, 8) move downward, they will first close returns (T1, T2) via the control edges, thus establishing a connection between accumulator ports (P1, P2) and ports (A1, A2) for the wheel brake cylinders. The foot force applied now determines the output braking pressure. The control spools (11, 8) are held in the control position by the force applied (Spring assembly above the spools and the hydraulic pressure below the spool (Balance of forces).

After output of the braking pressure, spools (11, 8) are in a partial braking position, causing ports (P1, P2) and ports (T1, T2) to close and holding the pressure in ports (A1, A2).

**(4) Full braking position**

When pedal is fully actuated, end position of the brakes is reached and a connection established between accumulator ports (P1, P2) and brake cylinder ports (A1, A2). Returns (T1, T2) are closed at this point.

When the braking process is ended, a connection is once again established between brake cylinder ports (A1, A2) and return ports (T1, T2), closing accumulator ports (P1, P2).

The arrangement of spools in the valve ensures that even if one braking circuit fails the other remains fully operational. This is achieved by means of the mechanical actuation of both spools and requires slightly more pedal travel.

**(5) Failure of a circuit**

In the event of the lower circuit failing, the upper circuit will remain operational. Spring assembly (21) will mechanically actuate spool. In the event of the upper circuit failing, the lower circuit will remain operational since the lower spool (8) is mechanically actuated by spring assembly (21) and spool (11).

**(6) Installation requirements**

Return lines (T1, T2) must be connected directly to the tank.

The connecting lines must be installed in such a way as to permit proper bleeding.



#### **(7) Maintenance of the brake valve**

No special maintenance beyond the legal requirements is necessary.

When using high-pressure cleaners on the machine, please make sure that the water jet is not aimed directly at the brake valve (to prevent damaging the bellows).

- △ **For safety reasons the whole of the brake valve must be replaced if parts other than those listed above are damaged.**

#### **(8) Repair work**

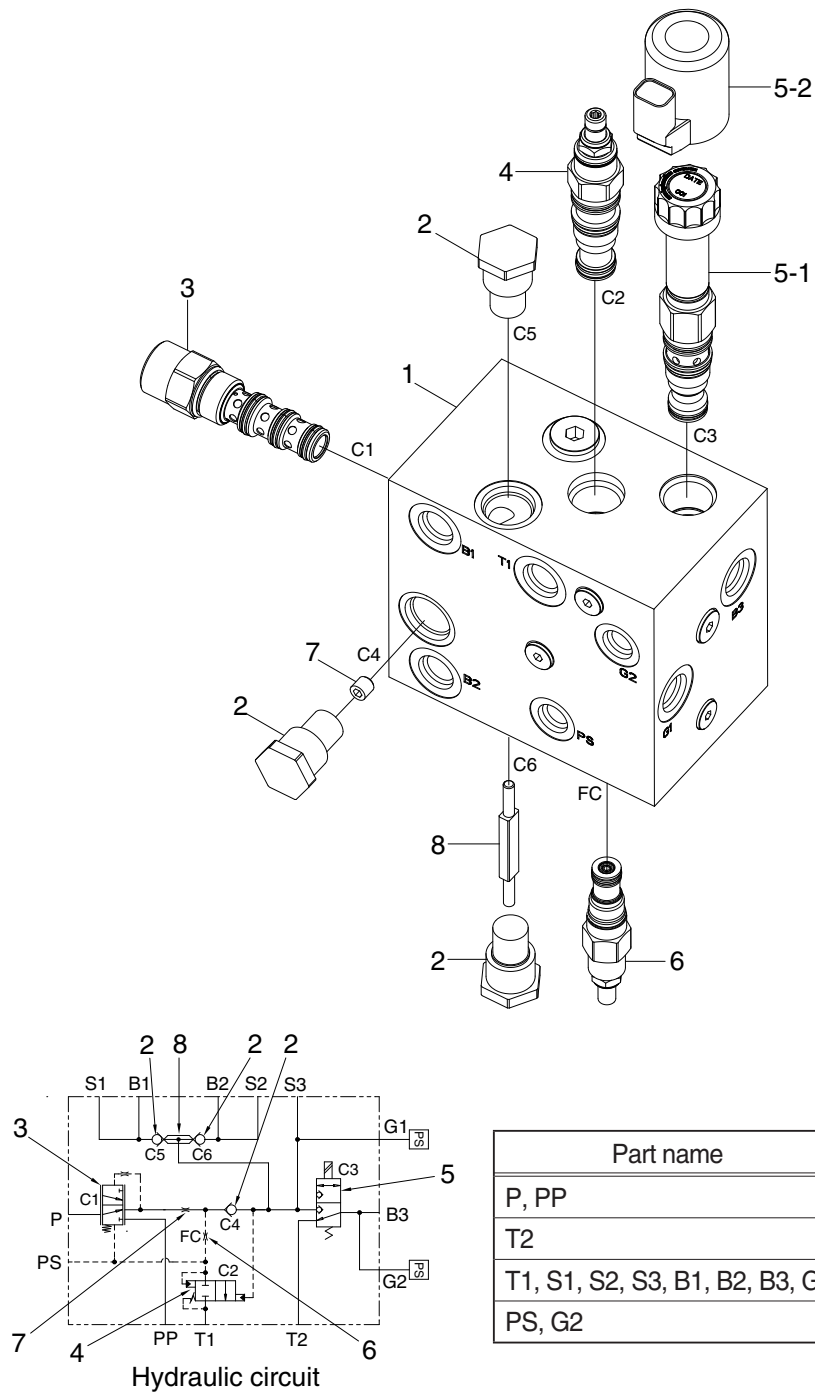
- △ When working on the braking system, always make sure that there is absolutely no pressure in the system. Even when the engine is switched off there will be some residual pressure in the system.
- ※ When doing repair work, make sure your environment is very clean.  
Immediately close all open ports on the components and on pipes using plugs.

#### **(9) Replacing the complete actuating mechanism**

Carefully clamp the unit vertically in a fixture. The actuating mechanism can be removed by taking out the three bolts. Make sure that spring assembly (21) does not fall out. When installing the new actuating mechanism, make sure that spring assembly (21) is fitted in the right order. Tighten the three bolts (5).

## 5. CUT-OFF VALVE

### 1) STRUCTURE



- 1 Block
- 2 Check valve
- 3 Priority valve

- 4 Unload valve
- 5-1 Solenoid valve
- 5-2 Coil

- 6 Fixed orifice with compensated
- 7 Orifice
- 8 Bar

## 2) OPERATION

The unloading valve (4) controls the minimum and maximum pressure of the braking system. When the service brake pressure is below the maximum pressure ( $125 \pm 5$  bar), the unloading valve (4) is blocked and PS pilot pressure (brake priority pressure) increases.

As soon as PS pilot pressure raises up above 15 bar, pump controller current is reduced by MCU (pressure sensor detects brake priority pressure, and pump supply flow and pressure in order to meet the brake system).

The pressure sensor at PS port detect whether brake system needs to be charged.

Priority valve spring and pilot pressure (brake priority pressure) pushed priority spool to the upward.

Therefore, full pump flow directly goes to the brake system in order to satisfy the demand of the brake system.

Pump flow goes through the following components : orifice (7), check valve (2), shuttle valve (8).

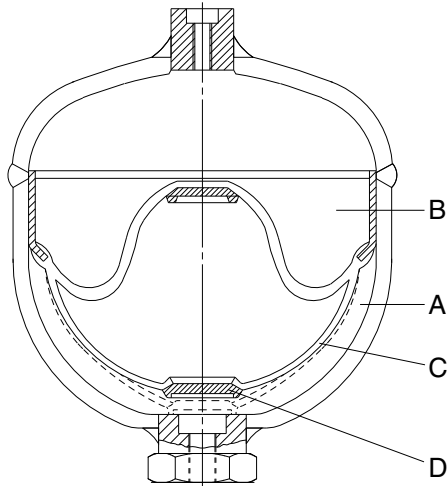
Brake failure pressure sensor at G1 port detects pressure in the brake accumulators.

When the pressure is lower than 100 bar, the sensor activates warning lamp on the cluster in order to check brake system.

When brake system pressure reaches the maximum brake system pressure ( $150 \text{ bar} \pm 5 \text{ bar}$ ), unloading valve (4) opens, pilot pressure (brake priority pressure) of priority valve is low by draining the spring side of priority valve (3) to hydraulic tank through unloading valve (4).

## 6. BRAKE ACCUMULATOR

### 1) STRUCTURE



75794BS09

Item	31LL-40020 (item20)
Diameter	167 mm
Mounting height	219 mm
Norminal volume	2.0 ℓ
Priming pressure	50 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup>
Operating medium	Oil
Operating pressure	Max 210 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup>
Thread	M22 × 1.5
Priming gas	Nitrogen

A Fluid portion

B Gas portion

C Diaphragm

D Valve disk

### 2) OPERATION

#### (1) Purpose

Fluids are practically incompressible and are thus incapable of accumulating pressure energy. In hydropneumatic accumulators, the compressibility of a gas is utilized to accumulate fluid. The compressible medium used in the accumulators is nitrogen.

In braking systems, the purpose of the accumulators is to store the energy supplied by the hydraulic pump. They are also used as an energy reserve when the pump is not working, as a compensator for any losses through leakage, and as oscillation dampers.

#### (2) Operation

The accumulator consists of a fluid portion (A) and a gas portion (B) with a diaphragm (C) as a gas-tight dividing element. The fluid portion (A) is connected to the hydraulic circuit, causing the diaphragm accumulator to be filled and the gas volume to be compressed as the pressure rises. When the pressure falls, the compressed gas volume will expand, thus displacing the accumulated pressure fluid into the circuit.

The diaphragm bottom contains a valve disk (D) which, if the diaphragm accumulator is completely empty, closes the hydraulic outlet, thus preventing damage to the diaphragm.

#### (3) Installation requirements

The accumulators can be fitted in the hydraulic circuit, directly on a component or in blocks on suitable consoles.

They should be fitted in as cool a location as possible.

Installation can be in any position.

#### (4) Maintenance of the accumulator

No special maintenance beyond the legal requirements is necessary.

The accumulator should be checked annually. It should be replaced if the initial gas pressure has fallen by more than 30% (please refer to Performance testing and checking of the accumulator).

#### (5) Disposal of the accumulator

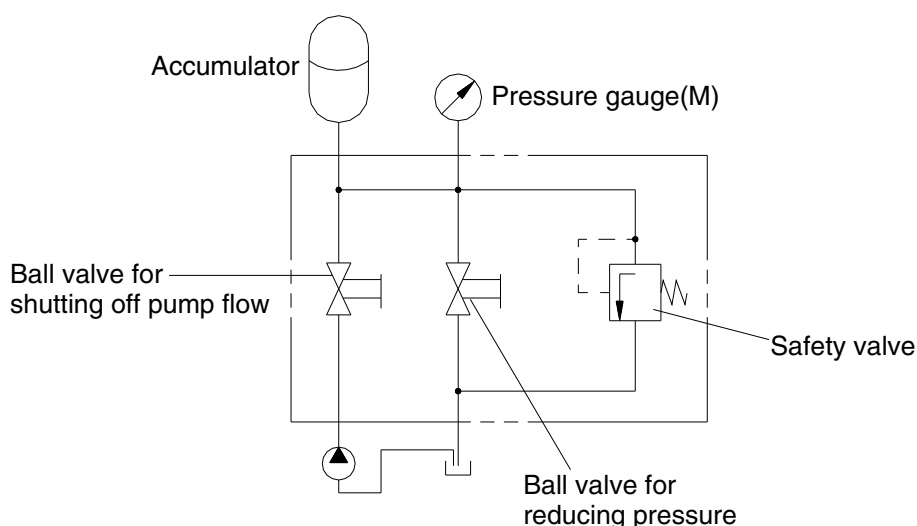
Before the accumulator is scrapped, its gas filling pressure must be reduced. For this purpose, drill a hole through gas chamber (B) using a drill approx. 3mm in diameter. The gas chamber is located on the side opposite the threaded port above the welding seam around the center of the accumulator.

※ Wear safety goggles when doing this job.

#### (6) Performance testing and checking of the accumulator

The accumulator is gradually pressurized via the test pump; until the initial gas pressure is reached, the hydraulic pressure in the accumulator will rise abruptly. This is apparent from gauge **M**. If the initial gas pressure is more than 30% below the prescribed value, the accumulator needs to be replaced. If the measuring process needs to be repeated, wait for intervals of 3 minutes between the individual tests. Any accumulator whose initial gas pressure is insufficient must be scrapped following the instructions under **Disposal of the accumulator**.

The amount of initial gas pressure can also be checked from the vehicle. Start the vehicle's engine. The pump will now supply oil to the accumulators. Until the initial gas pressure is reached, the hydraulic pressure in the accumulator will rise abruptly. This is apparent from the gauge in the cab. If the initial gas pressure is more than 30% below the prescribed value, that initial pressure lies outside the permissible range for **at least one** of the accumulators fitted in the vehicle. This accumulator can be traced only by using the method described above, i.e. all accumulators have to be individually tested. The accumulator whose initial gas pressure is insufficient must be replaced and scrapped following the instruction under **Disposal of the accumulator**.



75794BS10

#### (7) Repair work

△ When working on the braking system, always make sure that there is absolutely no pressure in the system. Even when the engine is switched off there will be some residual pressure in the system.

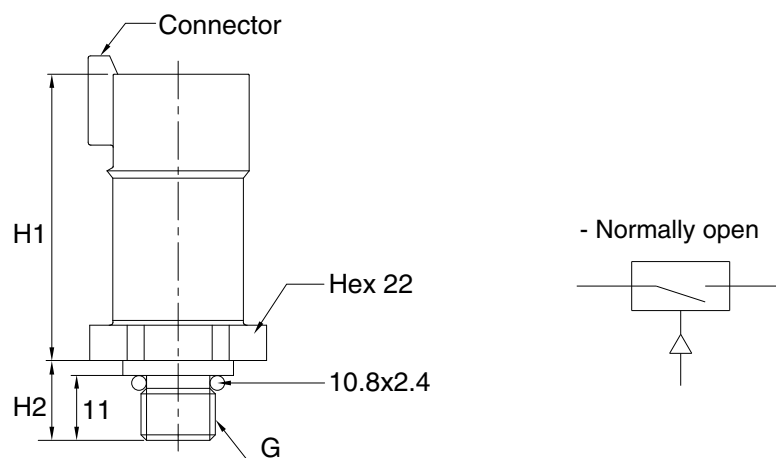
※ When doing repair work, make sure your environment is very clean.

Immediately close all open ports on the components and on pipes using plugs.

△ For safety reasons the accumulators need to be replaced as a whole if damaged.

## 7. PRESSURE SENSOR AND SWITCH

### 1) STRUCTURE



7609A4BS12

### 2) TECHNICAL DATA

Item	Type	Medium	G	H1 mm	H2 mm	Adjusting range kgf/cm <sup>2</sup>	Actuating pressure kgf/cm <sup>2</sup>	Voltage V
Parking pressure sensor	-	Oil	PF 1/4"	45	12.5	0 ~ 200	100 ± 5	Max 30
Charging pressure sensor	-	Oil	PF 1/4"	45	12.5	0 ~ 200	100 ± 5	Max 30
Brake priority pressure sensor	-	Oil	PF 1/4"	45	12.5	0 ~ 200	100 ± 5	Max 30
Brake stop pressure switch	NO	Oil	PF 1/4"	45	12.5	1 ~ 10	5 ± 1	Max 32

NO : Normally open

3) Tightening torque : 3.5 kgf · m (25.3 lbf · ft)



## **2) OPERATION**

### **(1) Purpose**

The pressure switches are used to visually or audibly warn the driver of the pressure within the system.

### **(2) Make contact / circuit closer**

The pressure switch can be fitted in the braking system or directly on one of its components.

The system pressure acts on an absorption area within the switch, making an electrical contact as the pressure on that area is increased. The resulting current is used to activate a warning facility, for instance.

### **(3) Break contact / circuit breaker**

The pressure switch can be fitted in the braking system or directly on one of its components.

The system pressure acts on a absorption area within the switch, breaking an electrical contact as the pressure on that area is increased. The current is now broken, e.g. to deactivate a warning facility.

### **(4) Installation requirements**

No special measures need to be taken.

### **(5) Maintenance of the pressure switch**

No special maintenance beyond the legal requirements is necessary.

When using high-pressure cleaners on the vehicle, please make sure that the water jet is not directed at the pressure switch (corrosion of contacts).

### **(6) Repair work**

△ When working on the braking system, always make sure that there is absolutely no pressure in the system. Even when the engine is switched off there will be some residual pressure in the system.

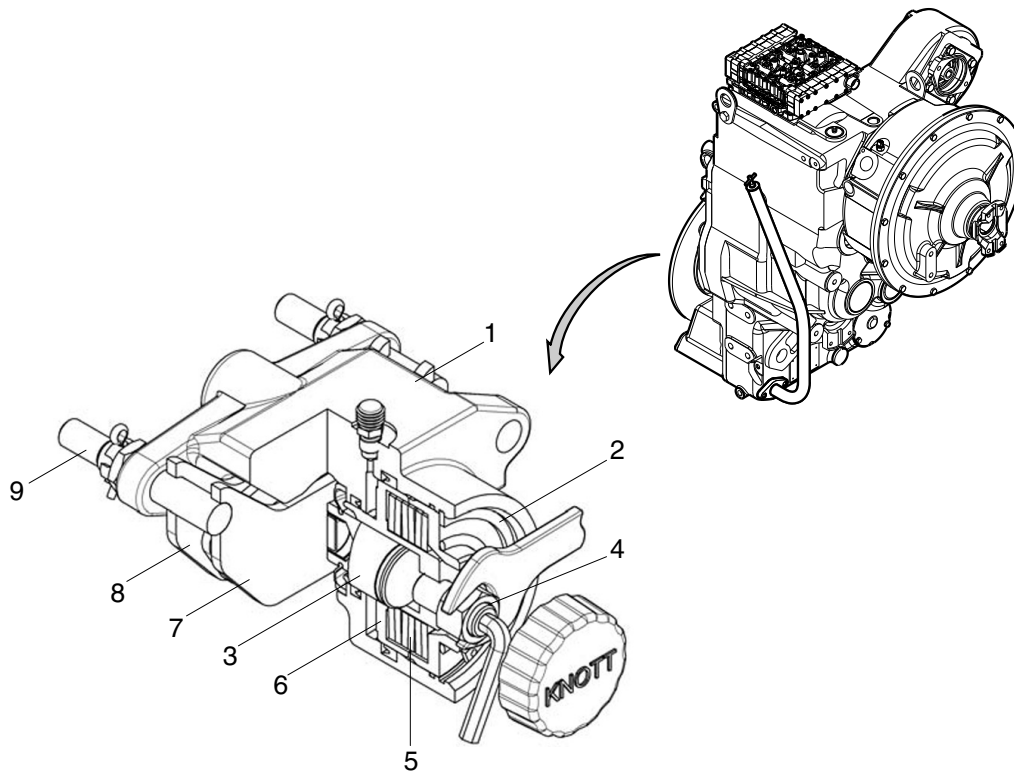
※ When doing repair work, make sure your environment is very clean.

Immediately close all open ports on the components and on pipes using plugs.

※ For safety reasons the pressure switch needs to be replaced as a whole if damaged.

## 8. PARKING BRAKE SYSTEM

### 1) STRUCTURE



78094BS21

1	Housing	4	Adjust screw	7	Lining pad
2	Pressure ring	5	Bank of cup springs	8	Lining pad
3	Thrust bolt	6	Piston	9	Gliding bolt

### 2) OPERATION

The two identical brake pads and slide freely on the guide bolt, which is fastened in the housing. The guide bolts are guided in an additional brake anchor plate which in turn is screwed onto the vehicle, i.e. its axle.

On actuation, the brake generates a clamping force at the brake lining pads, which cause a tangential force/braking moment to be generated at the brake disk, the extent of which depends on the coefficients of friction generated by the linings.

The clamping force is generated by the bank of cup springs, during which the piston is moved together with the adjusting screw, the thrust bolt and the brake pad towards the brake disk.

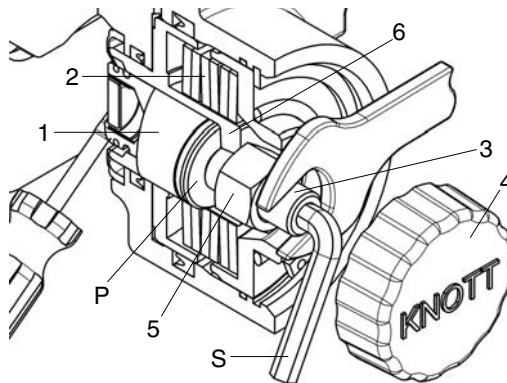
When the brake pad comes into contact with the brake disk, the reaction force shifts the housing onto the guide bolts until the brake pad is also pressed against the brake disk.

The brake is released by complete pre-tensioning of the bank of cup springs. During this process, through application of the necessary release pressure after overcoming the cup spring force, the piston must move back until it comes to rest against the pressure ring.

The clamping force diminishes with wear of the brake lining and brake disk. The brake must be adjusted at the latest at the times indicated by the adjusting specification followings.

### 3) MOUNTING AND BASIC SETTING REGULATIONS

Basic brake setting is required after mounting new brake lining plates or brake disks, as well as during all repair stages and in the event of insufficient braking performance.



100D7BS112

- |   |                     |   |           |   |               |
|---|---------------------|---|-----------|---|---------------|
| 1 | Thrust bolt         | 4 | Screw cap | P | Even surface  |
| 2 | Bank of cup springs | 5 | Lock nut  | S | Socket wrench |
| 3 | Adjusting screw     | 6 | Piston    |   |               |

※ All mounting and basic setting work must be carried out on the brake when cold.

#### (1) Mounting the brake

- ① Stand the vehicle on an even surface and secure against rolling away.
- ② Release the screw cap.
- ③ Release the lock nut (size 24 or 30) and turn the adjusting screw anticlockwise using a size 8 or 10 socket wrench until the pressure bolt comes to rest against the even surface of the piston. In this status, the brake can be mounted onto the brake disk and fastened.
- ④ Mount the pressure connection again.  
Apply the necessary release pressure to the brake until the bank of cup springs is completely pre-tensioned. Following carry out the following page basic setting regulation.

## (2) Basic setting regulation

- ① Turn the adjusting screw manually clockwise until both brake pads make contact with the brake disk. Then it is not longer possible to turn the adjusting screw without exerting a major amount of force.
- ② Turn the adjusting screw anticlockwise in order to set the following rated clearances.

Adjusting screw	Clearance (mm)		Turns
M20 (SW 10)	Min.	1.0	2/5
	Clearance	2.0	4/5
	Max.	3.0	1 1/5

- ③ Hold the adjusting screw in position with a hexagonal socket wrench and lock with lock nut.
- ④ Mount the screw cap and tighten as far as possible manually.
- ⑤ Mount the pressure connection in accordance with the instructions of the axle.

※ For bleeding the piston chamber use the socket spanner size 13 for the bleeding valve.

## (3) Adjusting regulations

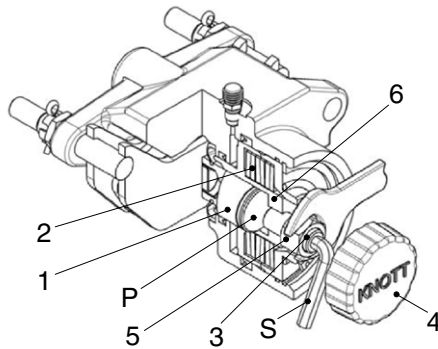
During this adjusting process, the parking brake must be released, i.e. the bank of cup springs must be completely pre-tensioned.

- ① Stand the vehicle on an even surface and secure against rolling away.
- ② Release the parking brake by using the required release pressure.
- ③ Release the screw cap and unscrew.
- ④ Release the lock nut (size 24 or 30) and turn the adjusting screw with socket wrench size 8 or 10 manually clockwise until the two brake pads make contact with the brake disk.
- ⑤ Turn the adjusting screw anti-clockwise and set the clearance specified in the above table.
- ⑥ Hold the adjusting screw in position with the hexagonal socket wrench and lock with the lock nut.
- ⑦ Mount the screw cap and tighten as far as possible manually.

※ Actuate the brake valve several times and check the braking efficiency of the parking brake on a slope.

#### 4) EMERGENCY RELEASE OF THE PARKING BRAKE

After the failure of the pressure release the parking brake by using following manual procedure.



100D7BS117

- |   |                     |   |           |   |               |
|---|---------------------|---|-----------|---|---------------|
| 1 | Thrust bolt         | 4 | Screw cap | P | Even surface  |
| 2 | Bank of cup springs | 5 | Lock nut  | S | Socket wrench |
| 3 | Adjusting screw     | 6 | Piston    |   |               |

- (1) The vehicle has to be secured against rolling away.
- (2) Release the screw cap and unscrew
- (3) Release the lock nut (size 24 or 30) and turn the adjusting screw with socket wrench size 8 or 10 manually counter-clockwise until the brake disc is free.

**⚠ For the emergency release is an actuation torque of 40Nm respectively 70Nm required.**

- (4) Mount the lock nut and the screw cap and tighten both as far as possible manually. (protection against dirt)

**⚠ Now, the vehicle do not have any brake function. The vehicle must be secured against moving away with proper means. Before putting the vehicle into operation again, the brake has to be adjusted again. Refer to previous page. "Assembly and basic setting regulations".**

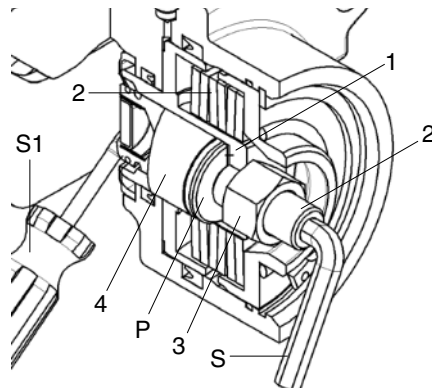
## 5) MAINTENANCE AND REPAIR WORK

### (1) Maintenance and exchange of brake pads

The brake pads themselves are maintenance free. All that is required here is a check for damaged parts, as well as inspection to ensure that the brake disk remains easy running.

The thickness of the brake lining must be subjected to a visual inspection at regular intervals, which depend on vehicle usage, but every six months at the latest. In the event of a minimal residual lining thickness, these intervals must be reduced accordingly in order to avoid major damage to the brake or disk.

Min. residual thickness 2.0 mm per lining pad (8 mm carrier plate thickness).



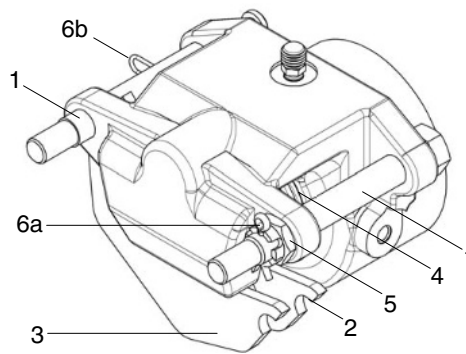
100D7BS113

- |   |                 |    |                      |
|---|-----------------|----|----------------------|
| 1 | Piston          | S  | Socket wrench        |
| 2 | Adjusting screw | S1 | Screwdriver          |
| 3 | Lock nut        | P  | Inside of the piston |
| 4 | Thrust bolt     |    |                      |

※ Only original spare lining plates may be used. If any other spare parts are used, no warranty claims will be accepted either for the brakes or their functional characteristics.

- ① Stand the vehicle on an even surface and secure against rolling away.
- ② Release the parking brake by applying the required release pressure.
- ③ Release the screw cap and unscrew.
- ④ Release the lock nut (size 24 or 30) and turn the adjusting screw with socket wrench size 8 or 10 manually clockwise until it lies flush with the inside of the piston.
- ⑤ Press back the thrust bolt using a suitable screwdriver until it has contact with the piston.





100D7BS114

- |   |                  |    |                 |
|---|------------------|----|-----------------|
| 1 | Guide bolt       | 5  | Castellated nut |
| 2 | Lining pad       | 6a | Safety splint   |
| 3 | Lining pad       | 6b | Safety clip     |
| 4 | Permanent magnet |    |                 |

⑥ Depending on the free space available, release one of the two guide bolts, removing the safety splint, unscrewing the castellated nut and pulling the guide bolt out of the brake anchor plate. Now, the brake lining pads can be removed tangentially to the brake disk.

※ In the event of minimal clearance, i.e. it is not possible for space reasons to exchange the brake lining plate in accordance with these instructions, the brake must be removed completely. To do this, pull both guide bolts out of the brake anchor plate.

**⚠ Check the pressure hose. If the pressure hose is too short, it must be unscrewed to remove the brake. Before the pressure hose can be released the brake must be emergency released.**

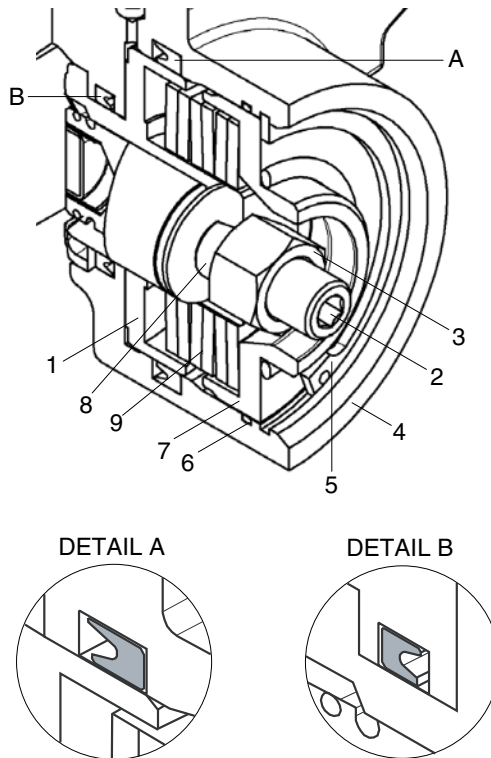
⑦ Exchange the brake pads and insert the guide bolts into the brake anchor plate. If you have removed the complete brake you have to mount the brake on both guide bolts again, now.

⑧ Check both permanent magnets if they still have sufficient magnetic force to hold the brake lining plates. Should this not be the case, the permanent magnets must also be changed by using a suitable screw driver.

⑨ Secure the guide bolt with the castellated nut and the safety splint respective safety clip.

**⚠ After mounting new brake lining plates or their repair, the brake must be correctly set in accordance with the instructions "Adjusting regulations".**

## (2) Changing the seal



100D7BS115

1	Piston	5	Circlip	9	Bank of cup spring
2	Adjusting screw	6	Seal	A	Detail of the seal
3	Lock nut	7	Guide bolt	B	Detail of the seal
4	Housing	8	Thrust bolt		

※ Faulty seals must be exchanged in accordance with the instructions below.

- ① Stand the vehicle on an even surface and secure against rolling away.
- ② Release the parking brake by applying the necessary release pressure.
- ③ Release the screw cap and unscrew.
- ④ Release the lock nut (size 24 or 30) and turn the adjusting screw with socket wrench size 8 or 10 manually counter clockwise until the adjuster screw is flush with the inner side of the piston.
- ⑤ Push back the thrust bolt until it has contact with the piston. Following actuate the hand brake valve (no pressure must be in the piston chamber). The bank of cup springs is now completely depressurized.
- ⑥ Unscrew the pressure hose and remove the brake.
- ⑦ Release the circlip and remove the pressure ring of the housing.
- ⑧ Release the bank of cup springs and the piston.

**▲ Pay attention to the mounting direction of the seal rings, otherwise leaks can occur.**

**▲ Use for mounting the new seal rings a suitable mounting needle with rounded edge. Be careful.**

- ⑨ Change all seals and mount the parts of the brake in other way round order. By mounting the piston, the sliding and sealing surfaces must be greased lightly using lubricating grease to DIN 51825. The dust protection cap is fitted with a vulcanized-in steel ring which is used to press it through the locating hole. For exchanging, "lever out" the ring using a suitable tool. The new dust protection cap must be pressed in with the aid of a suitable mounting ring and screw clamps or a lever press.

**(2) General**

Any discovered defects or damage to parts not listed here must naturally be repaired or replaced using original parts.

For any other information not contained in these instructions or for more detailed instructions, please contact Hyundai dealer.

## GROUP 2 OPERATIONAL CHECKS AND TROUBLESHOOTING

### 1. OPERATIONAL CHECKS

This procedure is designed so the mechanic can make a quick check of the system using a minimum amount of diagnostic equipment. If you need additional information, read **structure and function**, Group 1.

A location will be required which is level and has adequate space to complete the checks.

The engine and all other major components must be at operating temperature for some checks.

Locate system check in the left column and read completely, following the sequence from left to right. Read each check completely before performing.

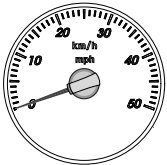
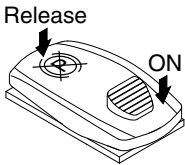
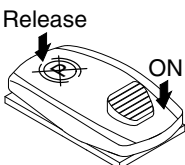
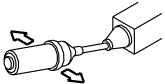
At the end of each check, if no problem is found (OK), that check is complete or an additional check is needed. If problem is indicated (NOT OK), you will be given repair required and group location.

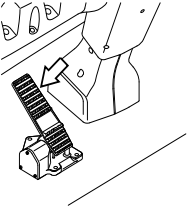

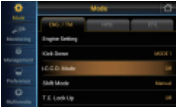
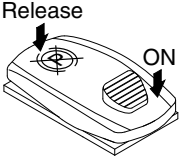
If verification is needed, you will be given next best source of information:

Chapter 2 : Troubleshooting




Group 3 : Tests and adjustments

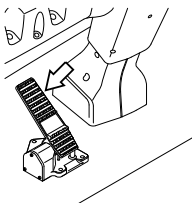

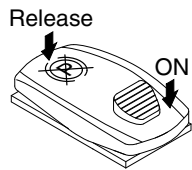
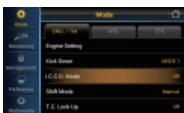
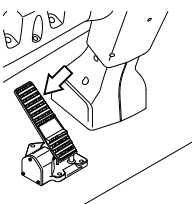
※ Hydraulic oil must be at operating temperature for these checks (refer to page 6-54).

Item	Description	Service action
<b>Parking brake capacity check</b> Seat belt must be worn while doing this check to prevent possible injury when machine stops suddenly.	   <p>Start engine.</p> <p>Fasten seat belt.</p> <p>Release parking brake and put transmission in 2nd gear forward.</p> <p>Drive machine at 8 km/hr and switch parking brake ON.</p> <p><b>LOOK/FEEL</b> : Machine must come to a stop within 2 meters (6 feet) when parking brake is engaged at 8 km/hr.</p> <p>Transmission must shift to neutral.</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Check completed.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> Inspect parking brake. Go to group 3.</p>
<b>Parking brake transmission lockout check</b> Engine running.	   <p>Turn parking brake to ON.</p> <p>Place transmission in 1st forward.</p> <p>Slowly increase engine speed to high idle.</p> <p><b>LOOK</b> : Machine must not move.</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Check completed.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> Go to transmission control circuit in section 3.</p>

Item	Description	Service action
<b>Service brake pump flow check</b> ※ Hydraulic oil must be at operating temperature for the check. Engine OFF.	 <p>Stop engine.</p> <p>Operate brake pedal approximately 20 times.</p> <p>Start engine and run at low idle.</p> <p>Record number of seconds required for low brake pressure indicator lamp to go out.</p> <p><b>LOOK</b> : Indicator lamp must go out in less than 10seconds from time engine starts.</p> <p><b>NOTE</b> : Indicator will not come on approximately 1 second after starting engine.</p> 	<p><b>OK</b> Check completed.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> Check for brake circuit leakage. Go to next page.</p> <p><b>IF OK</b> Install a cap on line connected to inlet of brake valve and repeat pump flow check.</p> <p>If time does not decrease, check for worn brake pump.</p>
<b>Service brake capacity check</b> Engine running.	 <p>Select I.C.C.O. mode to OFF.</p> <p>Apply service brakes, release park brake and put transmission in 2nd forward.</p> <p>Increase engine speed to high idle.</p> <p><b>LOOK</b> : Machine may not move or move at a very slow speed.</p> <p>Repeat check three times to ensure accurate results.</p> 	<p><b>OK</b> Check completed.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> Check brake pressure.</p> <p><b>IF OK</b> Inspect brake disk.</p>



Item	Description	Service action
<b>Brake accumulator precharge check</b> ※ The axles and hydraulic oil must be at operating temperature for this check.	 <p>Start and run engine for 30 seconds.</p> <p>Stop engine and turn start switch to ON and wait 5 seconds.</p> <p><b>NOTE</b> : Engine oil pressure lamp will be on due to no engine oil pressure.</p> <p>Count the number of times the brake pedal can be fully depressed before the low brake pressure warning lamp comes ON.</p>  <p><b>LOOK</b> : Warning lamp should not come ON in 1~5 applications.</p> <p>Start engine and operate at low idle.</p> <p>Observe cluster while applying brake pedal with maximum force.</p> <p><b>LOOK/LISTEN</b> : Brake pressure indicator must not come ON.</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Check completed.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> Make sure brake pedal is not binding and keeping brakes partially engaged.</p> <p>Bleed brakes in group 3.</p> <p>Check brake system pressure.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> If light comes ON with engine running, accumulator has lost it's charge. Inspect and recharge accumulator.</p>
<b>Brake system leakage check</b>	 <p>Start engine and wait 30 seconds.</p> <p>Stop engine.</p> <p>Wait 2 minutes.</p> <p>Turn start switch to ON and wait 5 seconds.</p> <p><b>LOOK</b> : Brake oil pressure warning lamp must not come ON within 2 minutes after stopping engine.</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Check completed.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> If brake leakage is indicated with brakes released, check leakage at accumulator inlet check valve and brake valve. If brake leakage is indicated with brakes applied, check for leakage at brake valve and brake pistons.</p> <p>Check individual component leakage.</p>

Item	Description	Service action
<b>Service brake pedal check</b>	 <p>Slowly depress brake pedal.</p> <p>Listen for a hissing noise that indicates oil is flowing to brake pistons.</p> <p><b>LISTEN/FEEL</b> : A hissing noise must be heard when pedal is depressed.</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Check completed.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> Inspect for debris under brake pedal.</p>
<b>Service and parking brake system drag checks</b> Engine running	 <p>Position machine on gradual slope.</p> <p>Lower bucket approximately 50 mm (2 in) from ground.</p> <p>Release parking and service brakes.</p>  <p><b>LOOK</b> : Machine must move or coast.</p> <p><b>NOTE</b> : If machine does not move, check brake pedals to be sure they fully release when feet are removed from pedals.</p> <p>Drive machine at high speed for about 5 minutes.</p> <p>Brake drag is indicated if brake areas in differential case are hot.</p> <p><b>NOTE</b> : Observe parking brake.</p> <p>If disk is hot, parking brake drag is indicated.</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Check completed.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> Adjust park brake.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> Check floor mat interference to pedal or debris build-up.</p> <p><b>IF OK</b> Check for brake pressure when brake is released.</p> <p>Go to brake pressure test.</p>
<b>Clutch cut-off check</b>	 <p>Select I.C.C.O. mode to ON.</p> <p>Release parking brake.</p> <p>Run engine at half speed in 1st forward.</p>  <p>Firmly depress brake pedal.</p> <p><b>FEEL</b> : Transmission must disengage when brake pedal is depressed at 30% of pedal stroke.</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Check completed.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> Adjust I.C.C.O. mode.</p>

## 2. TROUBLESHOOTING

### 1) SERVICE BRAKE

Diagnose malfunction charts are arranged from most probable and simplest to verify, to least likely, more difficult to verify. Remember the following steps when troubleshooting a problem :

Step 1. Operational check out procedure (see section 1)

Step 2. Operational checks (in this group)

Step 3. Troubleshooting

Step 4. Tests and adjustments (see group 3)

Problem	Cause	Remedy
<b>Poor or no brakes</b>	Brake accumulator charge low. Brake pump standby pressure low. Brake pressure low. Air in system. Worn brake surface material. Leakage in brake valve. Leakage in brake piston seal.	Do brake accumulator check. Do brake pump standby pressure test. Do brake valve pressure test. Bleed brakes. Inspect brake surface material. Do brake valve leakage test. Check for an over filled differential. Apply brakes and check for leakage from check plug. ※ It is normal for the oil level to be slightly above the check plug.
<b>Aggressive brakes</b>	Internal restriction in circuit. Brake valve malfunction. Low oil level.	Remove lines and components. Disassemble and inspect. Check oil level.
<b>Brakes drag</b>	Brake pedal not returning properly. Debris holding valve partially open in brake valve. Warped brake disk. Stuck brake piston.	Inspect floor mat and pedal. Do brake valve pressure test. Inspect brake disk. Repair.
<b>Brakes lock up</b>	Brake valve malfunction.	Clean or replace brake valve.

Problem	Cause	Remedy
<b>Brakes chatter</b>	Air in brake system. Worn brake surface material. Wrong oil in differential.	Do brake bleed procedure. Inspect brake surface material. Drain.Refill.
<b>Hissing noise when brake pedal is held with engine stopped</b>	Leakage in brake valve, or brake piston.	Do brake system leakage test.
<b>Brake pressure warning light will not go out or stays on excessively long after start-up</b>	Malfunction in brake low pressure warning switch. Brake accumulator pressure too low. Low brake pump standby pressure setting. Leakage in pressure reducing manifold block. Leakage in brake system. Worn brake pump. Leakage in parking brake solenoid.	Replace switch. Recharge accumulator. Do brake pump standby pressure test. Do pressure reducing valve manifold leakage test. Do brake system components leakage tests. Do brake pump flow test. Do parking brake pressure test.

## 2) PARKING BRAKE MALFUNCTIONS

Problem	Cause	Remedy
<b>Brake will not hold</b>	Pads not adjusted correctly. Malfunctioning parking brake solenoid. Worn brake disk and / or brake pads. Brake piston hangs up in bore.	Adjust parking brake. Inspect and replace. Disassemble, inspect, repair. Remove and inspect. Repair.
<b>Brake disk overheats</b>	Pads out of adjustment. Brake not released.	Adjust parking brake. Release parking brake. Disassemble, inspect brake. Repair if necessary. Inspect for loosen or broken lines between brake pressure switch and indicator on dash.
<b>Parking brake indicator in monitor does not come on when brake applied</b>	Faulty wiring or switch.	Inspect for loose or broken lines between brake pressure switch and indicator on dash. Inspect for a faulty indicator on dash. Replace if necessary.
<b>Brake will not apply</b>	Pads out of adjustment. Malfunctioning wiring, switch, or solenoid. Restriction between brake valve and brake.	Adjust parking brake. Check electric circuit. Remove hose and inspect. Replace.

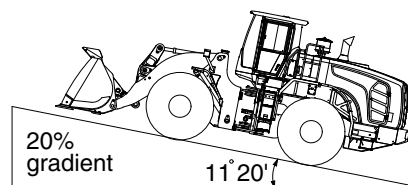
## GROUP 3 TESTS AND ADJUSTMENTS

### 1. PARKING BRAKE PERFORMANCE

#### 1) MEASUREMENT CONDITION

- (1) Tire inflation pressure : Specified pressure
- (2) Road surface : Flat, dry, paved surface with 1/5 (11°20') gradient.
- (3) Machine : In operating condition

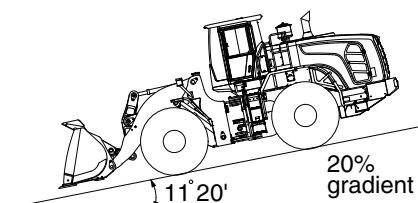
Item	Standard value
Parking brake performance	Keep machine on 20% (11°20') gradient



9804BS17

#### 2) MEASURING PROCEDURE

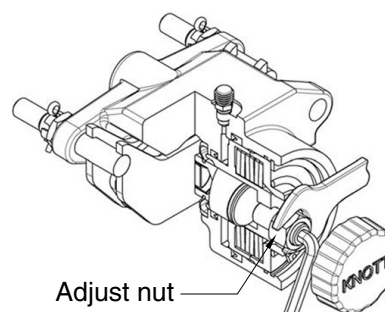
- (1) Start the engine and drive the machine straight up a 1/5 gradient with the bucket unloaded.
- (2) Depress the service brake, place the gear selector lever in neutral, then stop the engine.
- (3) Turn the parking brake switch ON, then slowly release the service brake pedal and the machine must be kept stopped.
  - ※ The measurement must be made with the machine facing either up or down the slope.



9804BS18

### 2. ADJUSTMENT OF PARKING BRAKE

- (1) External brake inspection
  - Inspect for wear of brake pad
- (2) Refer to the PARKING BRAKE SYSTEM on the page 4-22.



75794BS22

### 3. HYDRAULIC BRAKE BLEEDING PROCEDURE

**⚠ Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury. Avoid the hazard by relieving pressure before disconnecting hydraulic or other lines. Tighten all connections before applying pressure.**

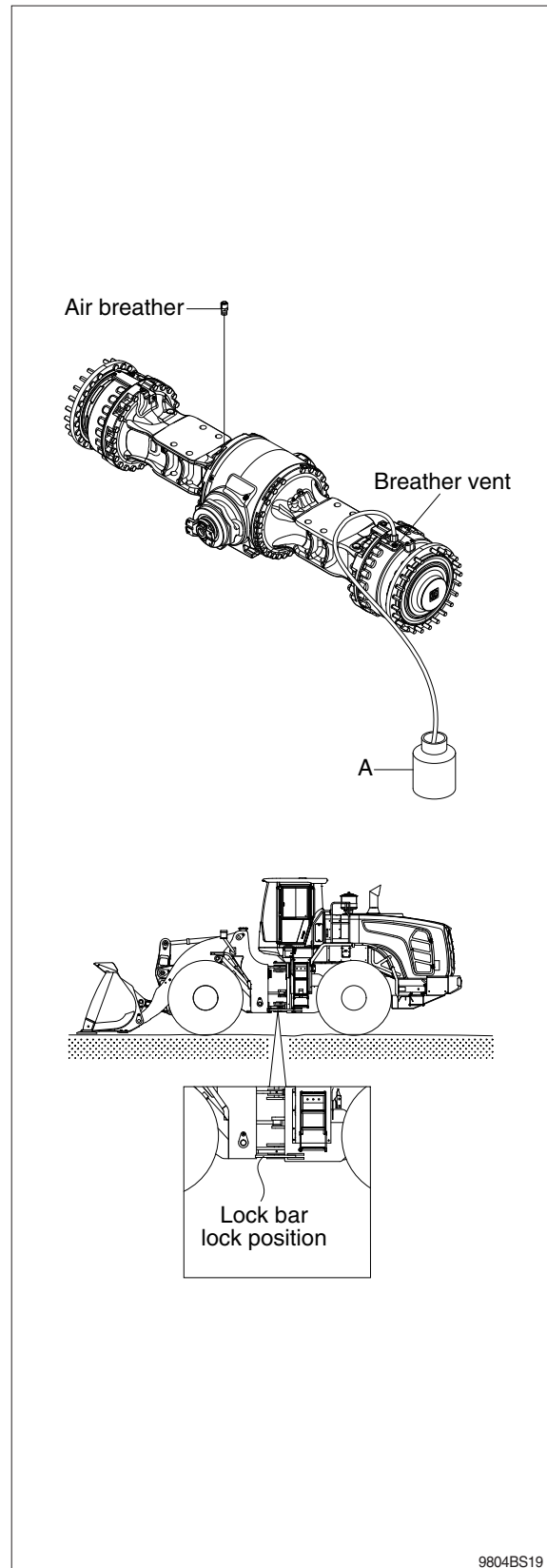
**Search for leaks with a piece of cardboard. Protect hands and body from high pressure fluids.**

※ If an accident occurs, see a doctor immediately. Any fluid injected into the skin must be surgically removed within a few hours or gangrene may result.

Doctors unfamiliar with this type of injury should reference a knowledgeable medical source.

Two people are required to bleed brake system oil, one to operate brake valve and other to open and close bleed screws.

- 1) Install frame locking bar. Engage parking brake.
- 2) Put a clear plastic tube on bleed screw to route low to hydraulic oil tank filler tube or container (A).
- 3) Start engine and run at low idle.
- 4) Push and hold brake pedal down until brake bleeding procedure is complete.
  - ※ If bubbles continue for more than 2 minutes, stop bleeding procedure. Check for and correct problem, then continue.
- 5) Open on bleed screw on differential and axle assembly until hydraulic oil starts to flow. Close bleed screw when oil is free of air. Release brake pedal.
- 6) Repeat steps 1)~5) for each bleed screw.
- 7) Push either brake pedal and hold down.
- 8) Check hydraulic oil level.



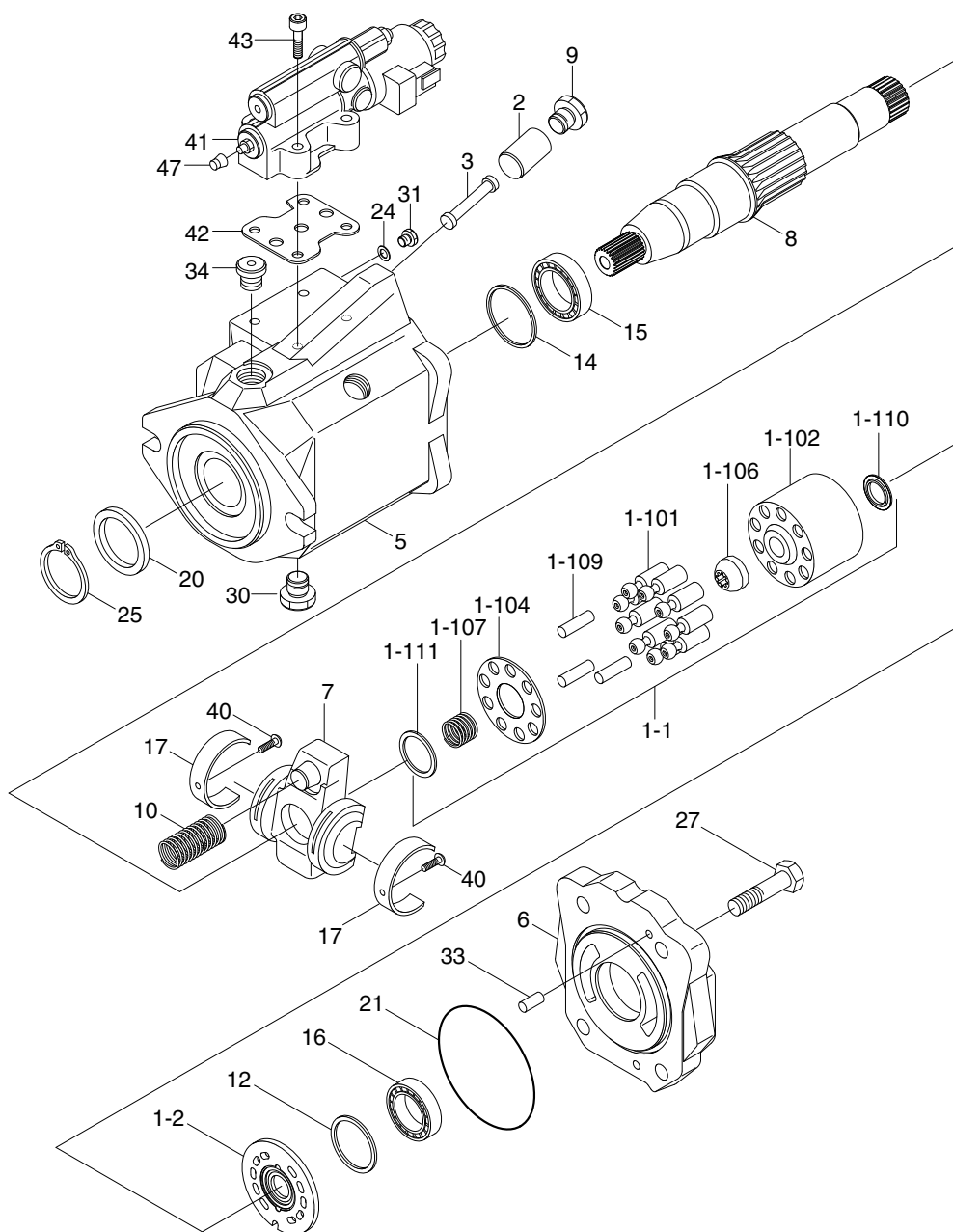
9804BS19



## GROUP 4 DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

### 1. FAN AND BRAKE PUMP

#### 1) STRUCTURE



7809A4BS11

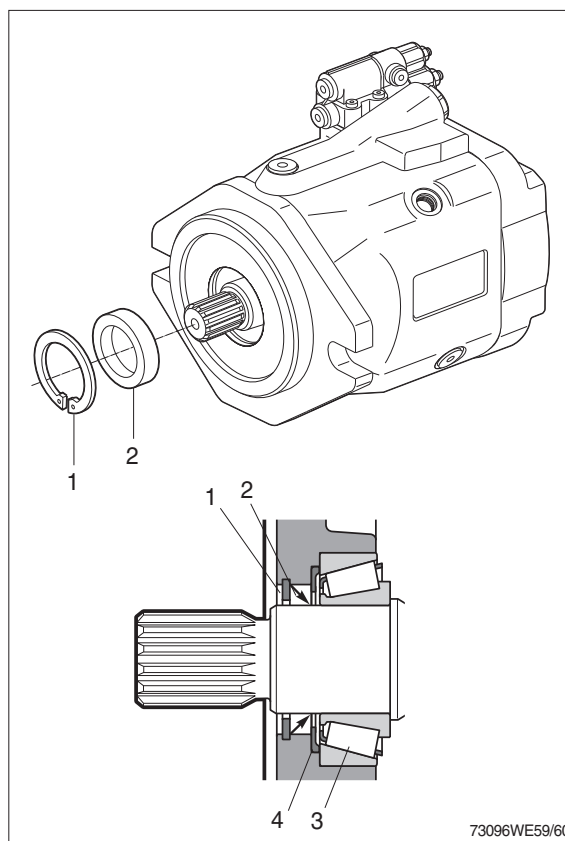
1-1 Rotary group	3 Piston rod	17 Liner bearing
1-101 Piston	5 Pump housing	20 Shaft seal ring
1-102 Cylinder	6 Port plate	21 O-ring
1-104 Retaining plate	7 Swash plate	24 Kantseal ring
1-106 Retaining ball	8 Drive shaft	25 Retaining ring
1-107 Spring	9 Locking screw	27 Socket screw
1-109 Pressure pin	10 Spring	31 Double break off pin
1-110 V-ring	12 Adjustment shim	33 Cylinder pin
1-111 Back-up plate	14 Stop ring	41 Control valve
1-2 Control plate	15 Tapered roller bearing	42 Gasket
2 Control piston	16 Tapered roller bearing	43 Socket screw

## 2) GENERAL REPAIR GUIDELINES

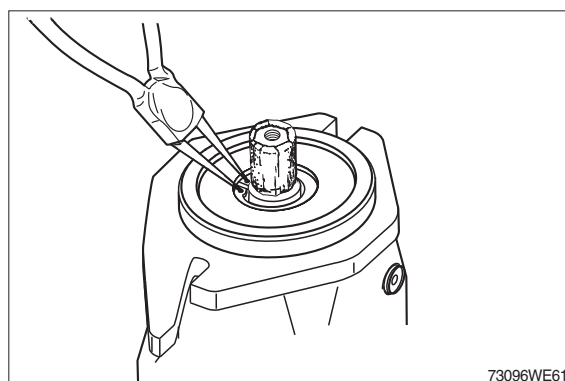
- ※ Observe the following guidelines when carrying out repairs on hydraulic pumps.
- (1) Close off all openings of the hydraulic unit.
- (2) Replace all of the seals.  
Use only original spare parts.
- (3) Check all sealing and sliding surfaces for wear.
- ※ Re-work of the sliding surfaces by using, for example abrasive paper, can damage the surface.
- (4) Fill the hydraulic pump with hydraulic oil before commissioning.

## 3) SEALING THE DRIVE SHAFT

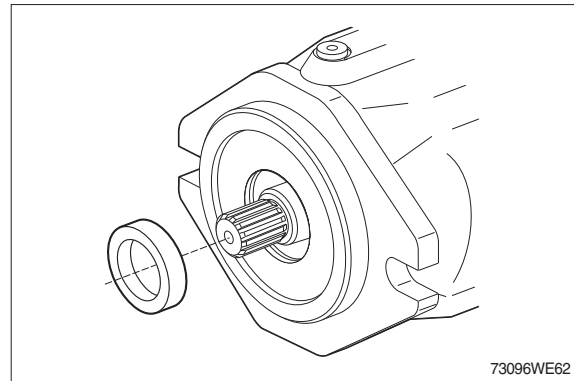
- |   |                |   |            |
|---|----------------|---|------------|
| 1 | Retaining ring | 2 | Shaft seal |
| 3 | Bearing        | 4 | Stop ring  |



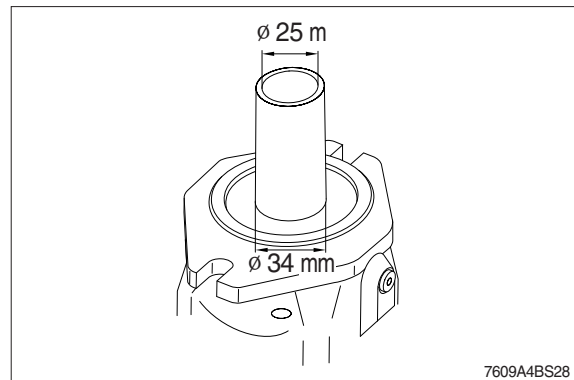
- (1) Protect the drive shaft.  
Wrap the drive shaft with tape.  
Remove the retaining ring.  
Remove shaft seal to front.



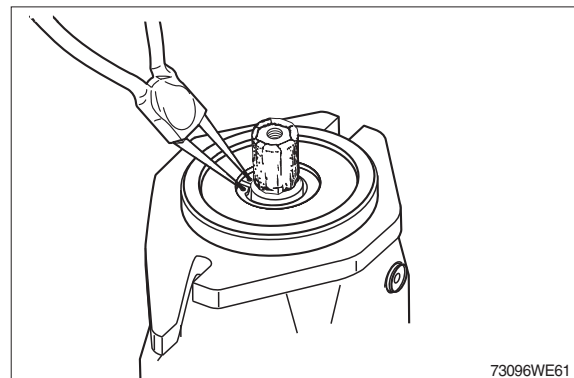
- ※ Change the shaft seal and check its sliding surface (drive shaft) and housing, grease the sealing ring.  
Visual check shaft seal and housing.



- (2) Assembling of the sealing ring carefully down to the stop ring.

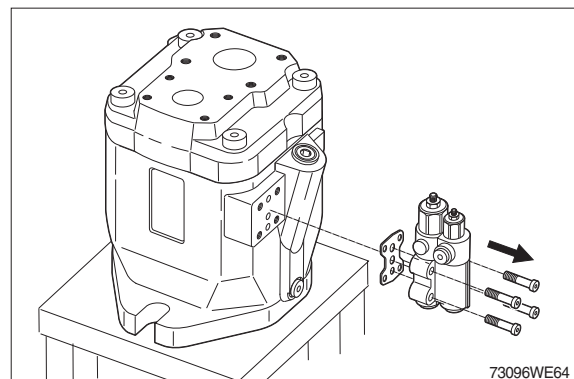


- (3) Assemble the retaining ring (circlip).
- ※ Visual check to ensure that the circlip is correctly located in the groove.

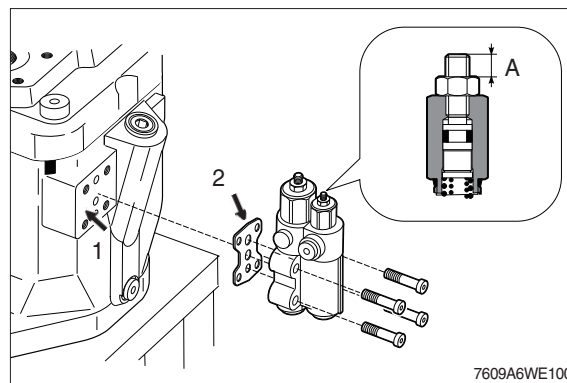


#### 4) SEALING THE CONTROL VALVE

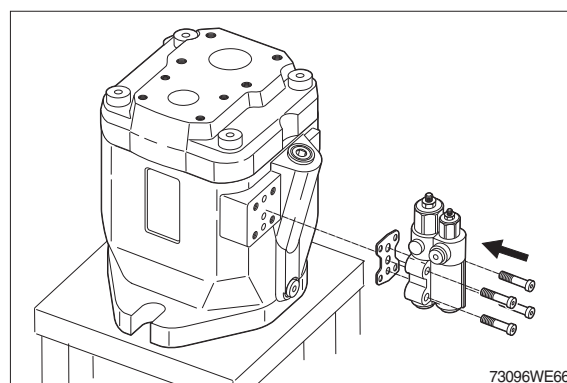
- (1) Remove the control valve.



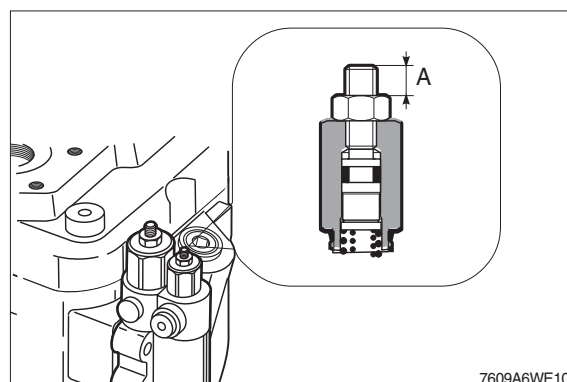
- (2) Measure dimension *A* and note down.  
 Check sealing surface (1).  
 Replace gasket (2).



- (3) Assemble control valve.  
 Tighten the bolts.  
 · Tightening torque : 1.58 kgf · m  
 (11.4 lbf · ft)

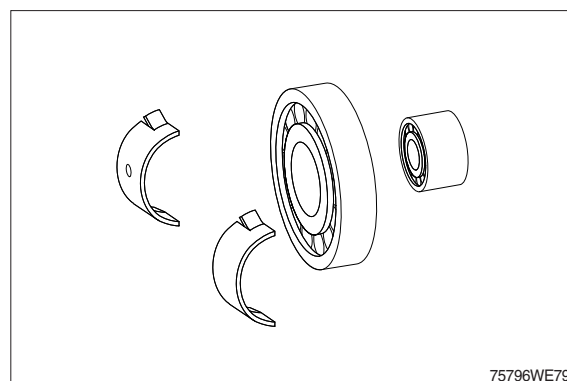


- (4) Check dimension *A*.



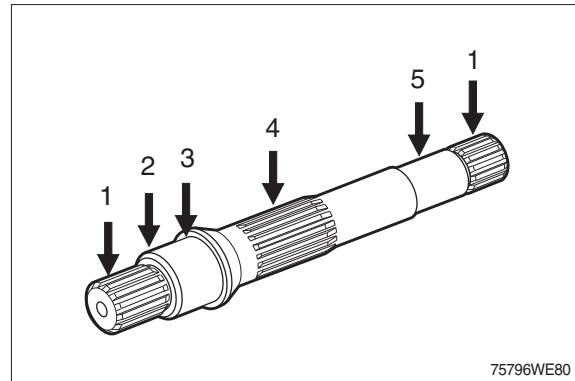
## 5) INSPECT HINTS

- (1) Renew all bearings.



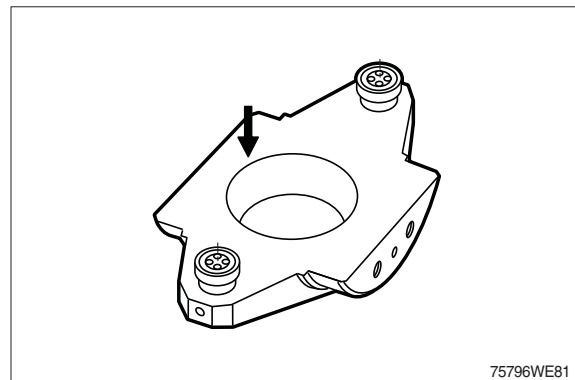
(2) Check :

- 1 Wear on splines, rust
- 2 Drive shaft seal wear grooves
- 3 Bearing seat
- 4 Splines for cylinder drive
- 5 Bearing seat



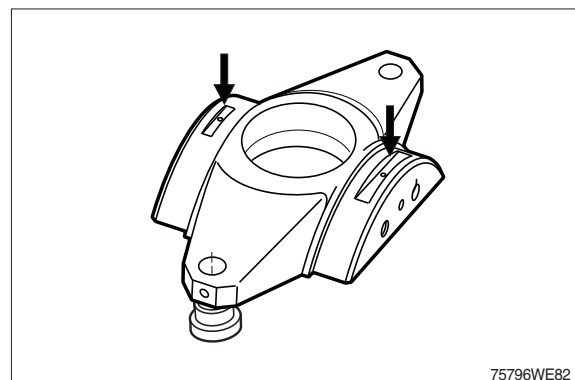
(3) Check :

Sliding surface free of grooves.



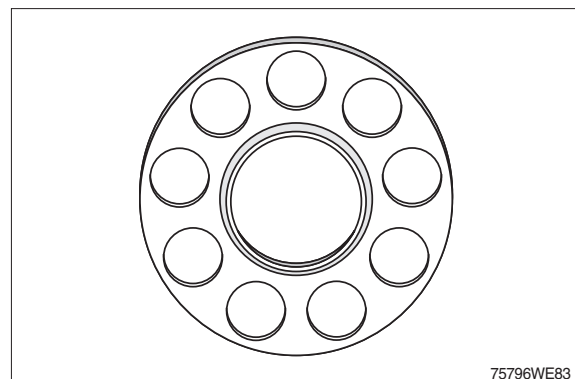
(4) Check :

Bearing surfaces.



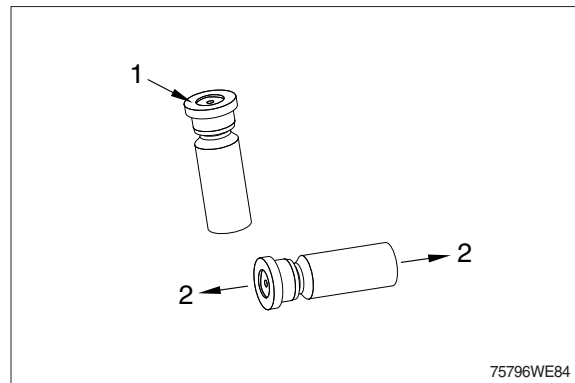
(5) Check :

That the retaining plate is free of grooves and that there is no wear in the slipper pad area.



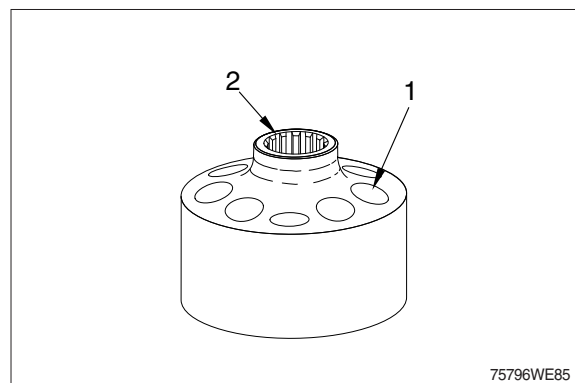
(6) Check :

Check to see that there are no scratches or metal deposits on the sliding surface (1) and that there is no axial play (2) (Pistons must only be replaced as a set).

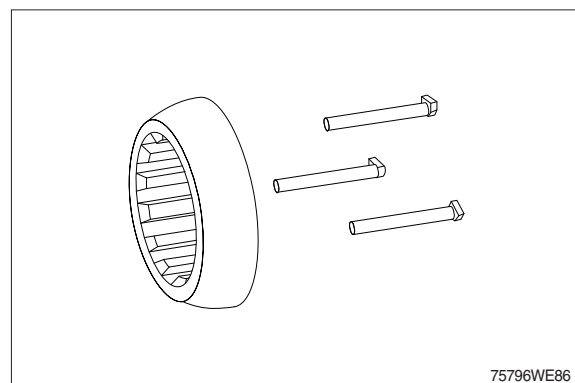


(7) Check :

- 1 Cylinder bores
- 2 Splines

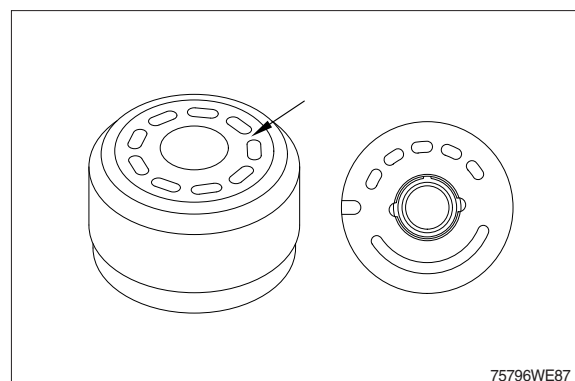


(8) Free of grooves, no signs of wear.



(9) Check :

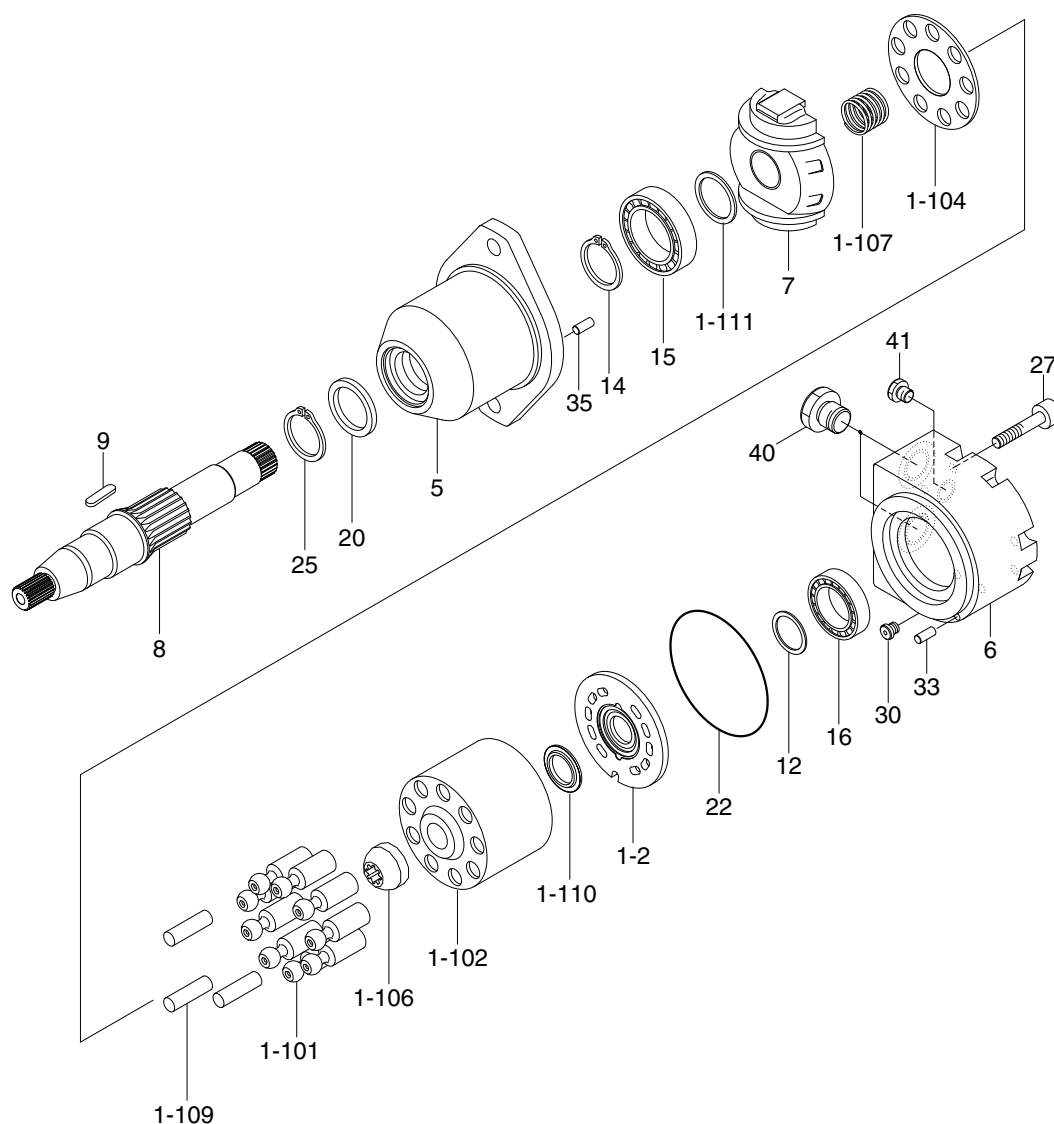
Cylinder sliding surface free of grooves, no wear, no embedded foreign particles. That there are no scratches on the control plate. (Only replace them as a set).





## 2. FAN MOTOR

### 1) STRUCTURE

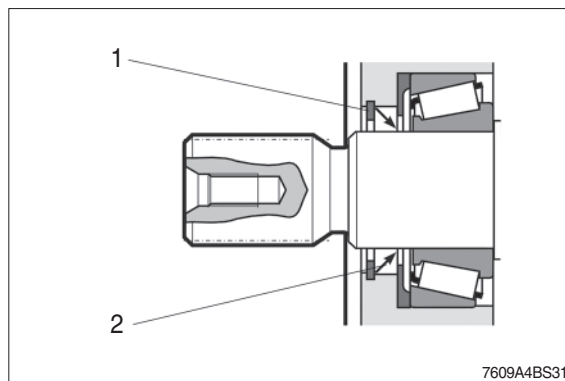


7809A4BS20

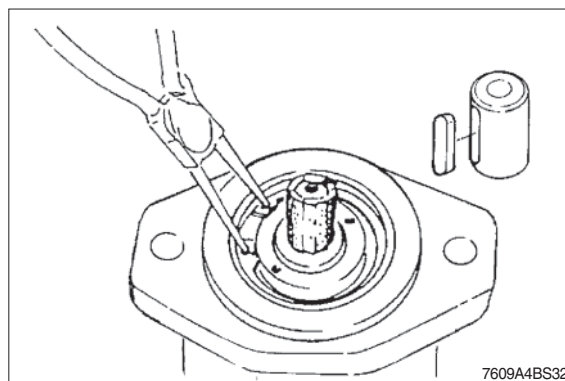
1-1 Rotary group	5 Motor housing	22 O-ring
1-101 Piston	6 Port plate	25 Retaining ring (circlip)
1-102 Cylinder	7 Cam plate (swash plate)	27 Socket bolt
1-104 Retaining plate	8 Drive shaft	30 Locking screw
1-106 Retaining ball	9 Shaft key	33 Cylinder pin
1-107 Spring	12 Adjustment shim	35 Cylinder pin
1-109 Pressure pin	14 Stop ring	40 Screw
1-110 V-ring	15 Tapered roller bearing	41 Screw
1-111 Back-up plate	16 Tapered roller bearing	
1-2 Control plate	20 Shaft seal	

## 2) SEALING THE DRIVE SHAFT

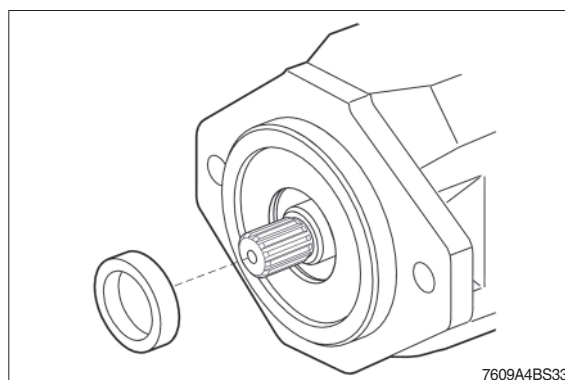
- (1) 1 Circlip
- 2 Shaft seal



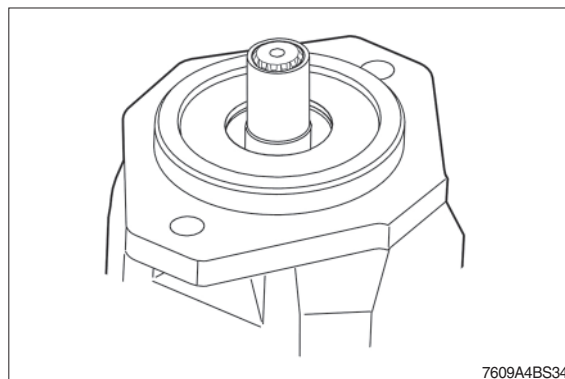
- (2) Remove key.  
Protect the drive shaft.  
Remove the circlip.



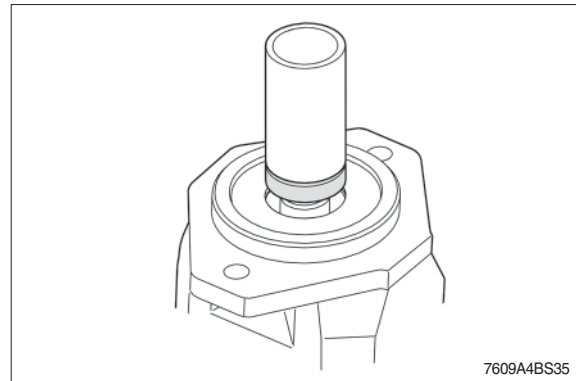
- (3) Change the shaft seal and check its  
sliding surface (drive shaft) and housing,  
grease the sealing ring.



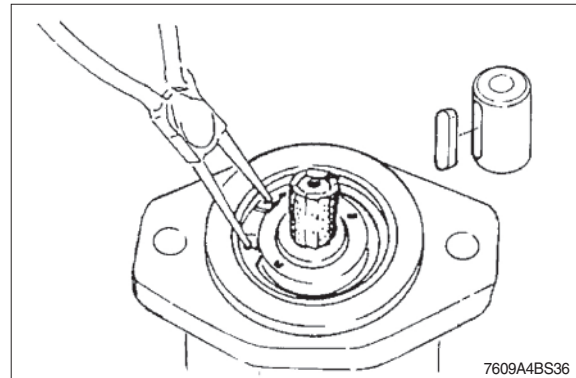
- (4) Use installation tool or plastic strip for  
assembling seal.



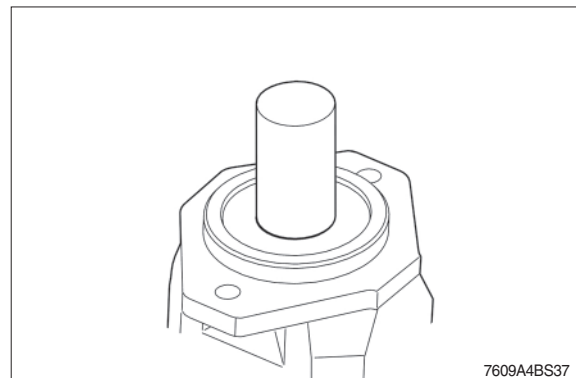
- (5) Use a suitable pipe to mount the shaft seal, but don't push it too deep. If the shaft ring touches the bearing ring you will damage the seal ring.



- (6) Assemble the circlip.



- (7) Assemble the circlip in the correct position.



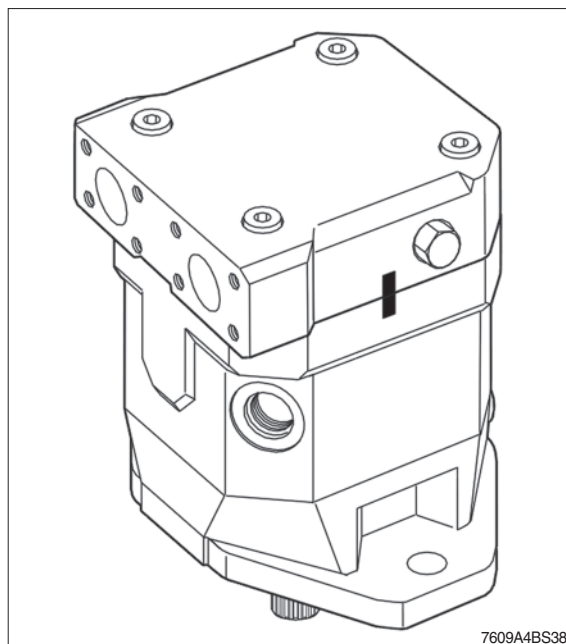
※ This discription shows how th change the drive shaft seal but it isn't the way of serial assembly.

The seal is assembled together with the taper roller bearing from inside the motor housing normally to get a secure sealing condition. If you decide to repair the motor in the shown way be very careful while handling so that the drive shaft wouldn't be damaged during disassembly of the shaft seal.

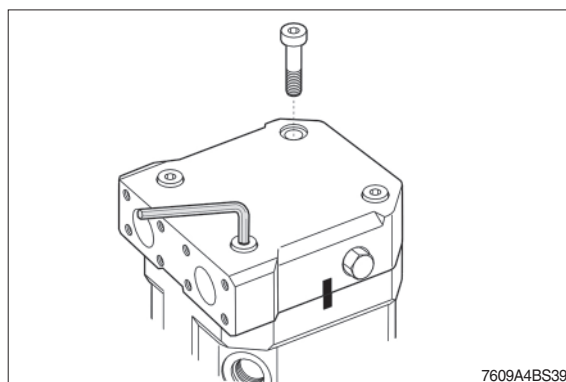
### 3) DISASSEMBLE THE MOTOR

(1) Disassembly position.

Mark the location of the port plate on the housing.

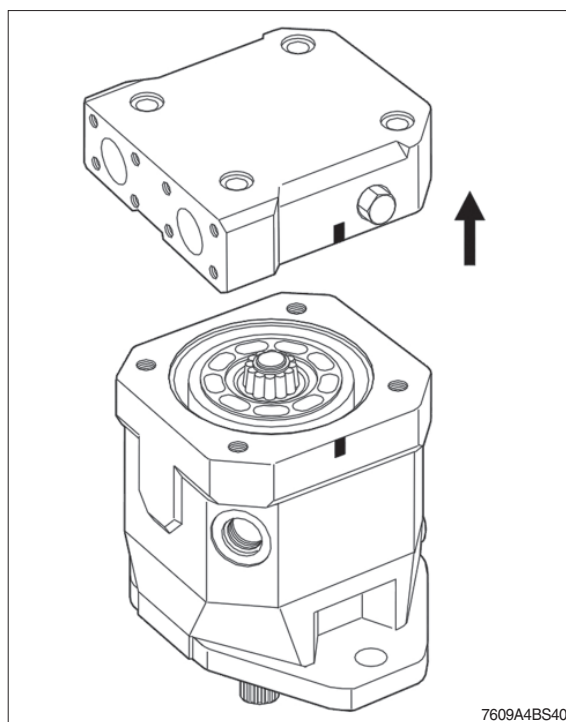


(2) Remove the port plate fixing bolts crosswise.

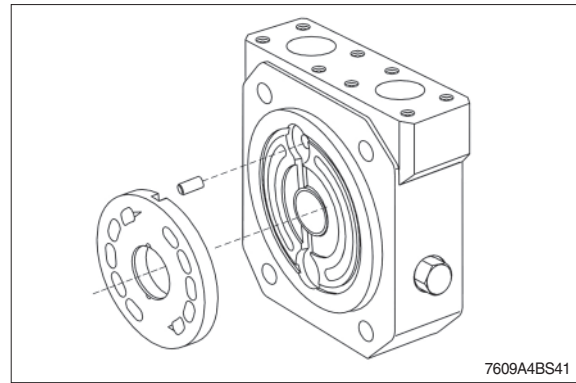


(3) Remove the port plate.

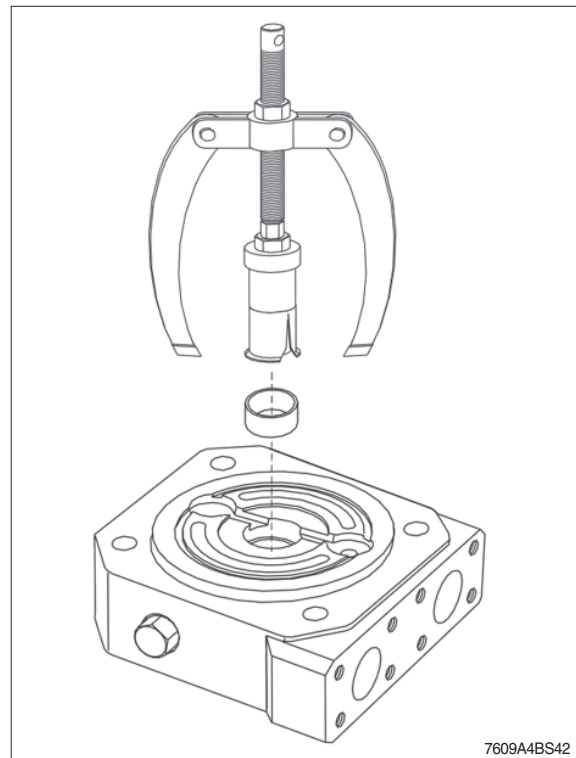
※ Control plate can drop down-hold tight.



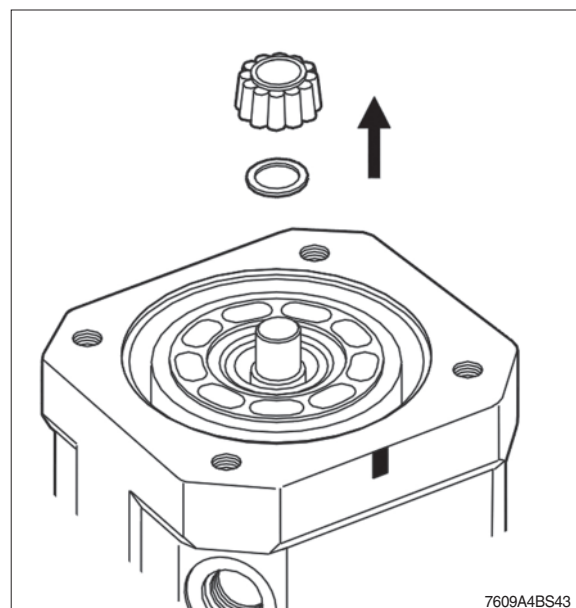
(4) Remove control plate.



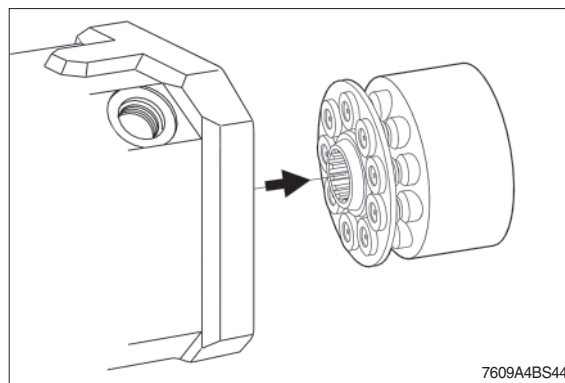
(5) Remove bearing outer ring with withdrawal tool.  
Do not damage the sealing surface.



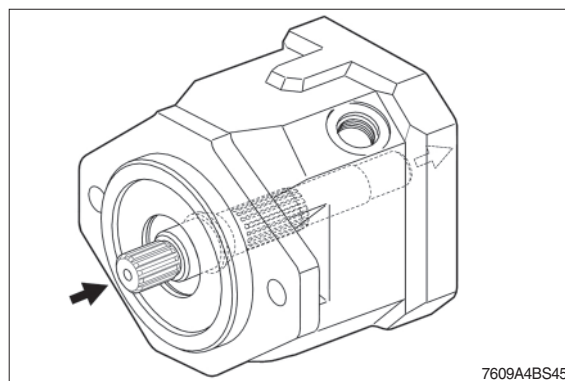
(6) Disassemble the taper roller bearing (near by port plate).  
Remove the adjustment shim.



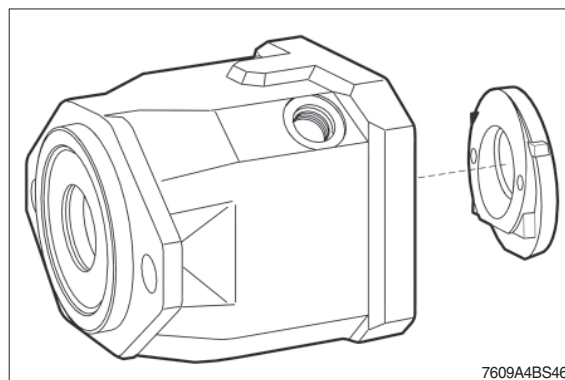
- (7) Remove the rotary group in a horizontal position.



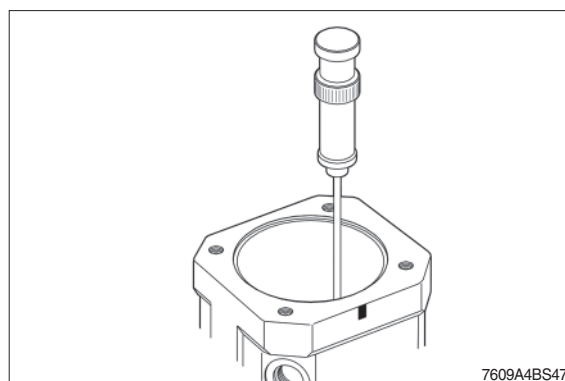
- (8) Remove the drive shaft to rear side.



- (9) Remove swash plate with special tool (see the next figure).

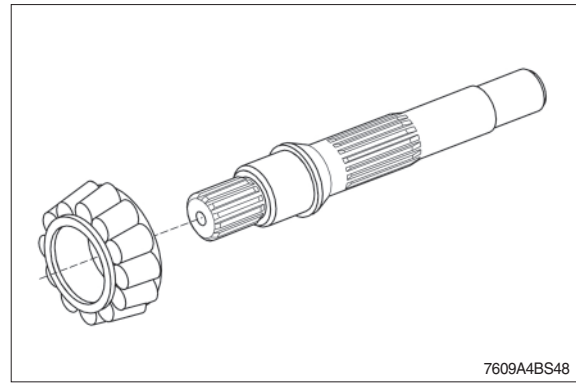


- (10) Loosen the swash plate with a slide hammer (a small hook - diameter 6 mm - catches the end of the swash plate at the bottom).

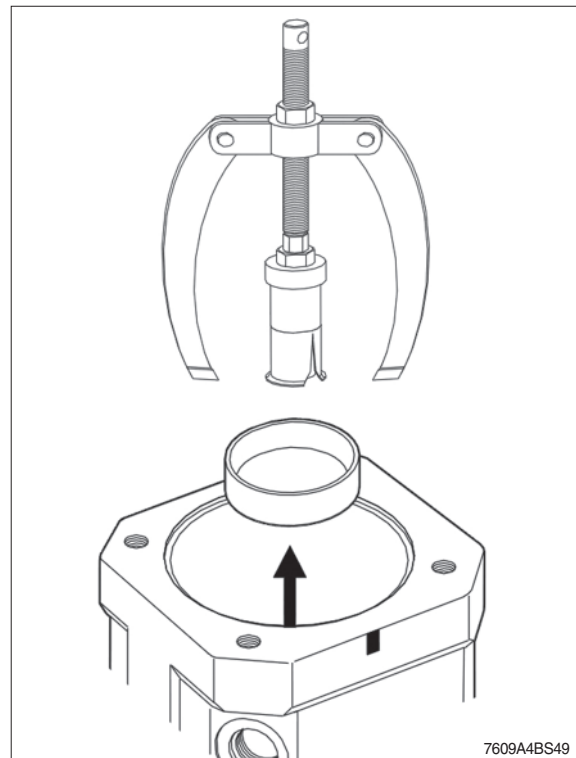




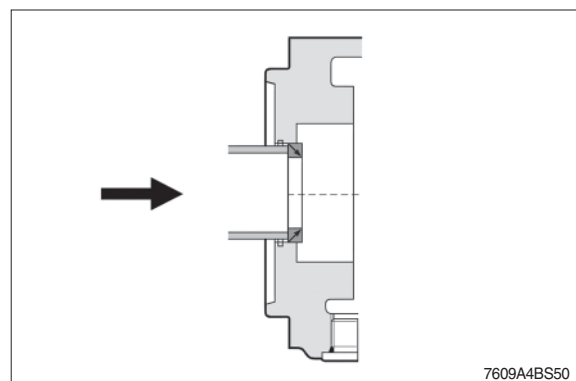
(11) Press down bearing.



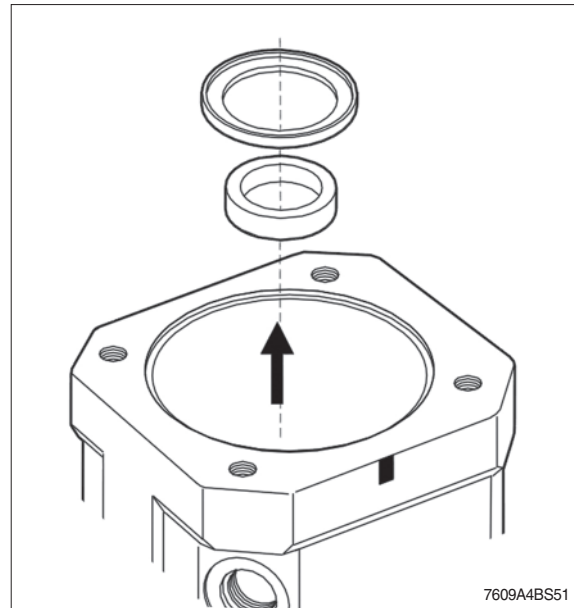
(12) The external front bearing ring is pulled out of the pump housing.



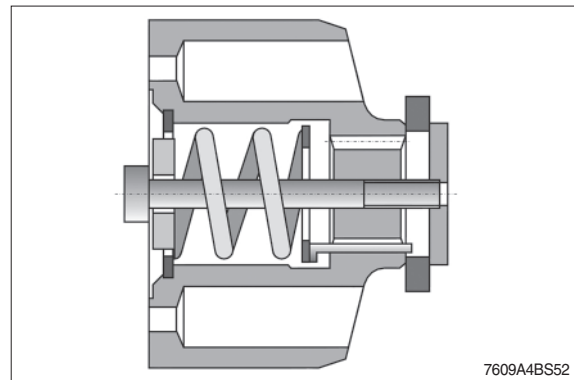
(13) Disassemble circlip and shaft seal.



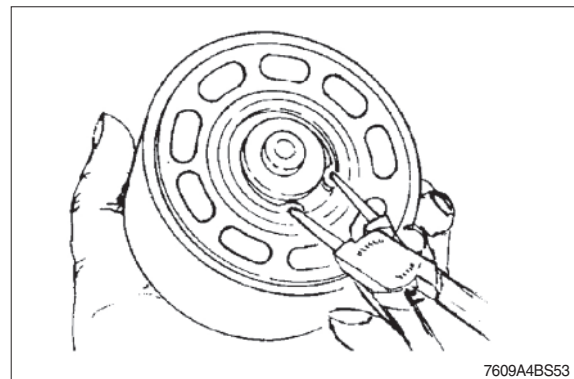
(14) Remove shaft seal and shim.



(15) Pre-tension the spring using a suitable device.

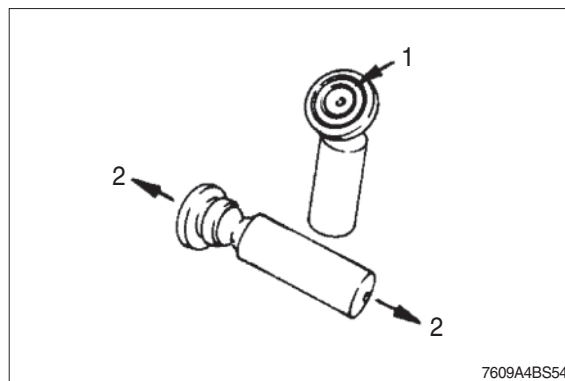


(16) Remove circlip.  
Remove spring and pressure pins.

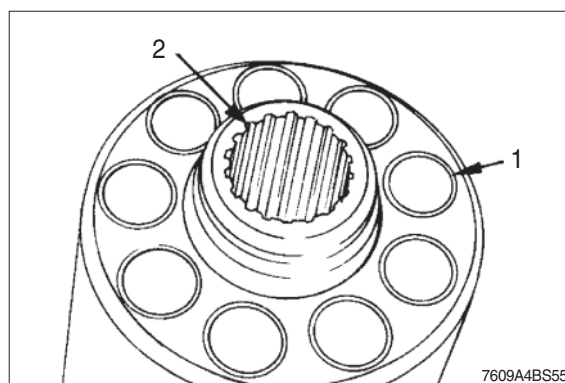


#### 4) INSPECTION HINTS

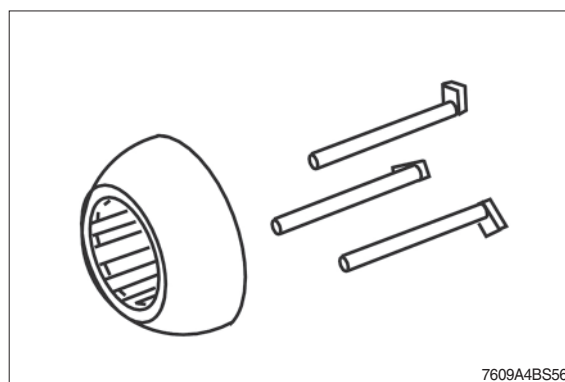
- (1) Check to see that there are no scratches or metal deposits on the sliding surface (1), and that there is no axial play (2), (pistons must only be replaced as a set).



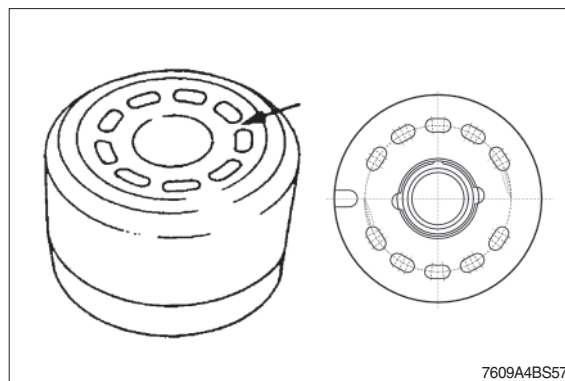
- (2) Check cylinder bores (1) and splines (2).



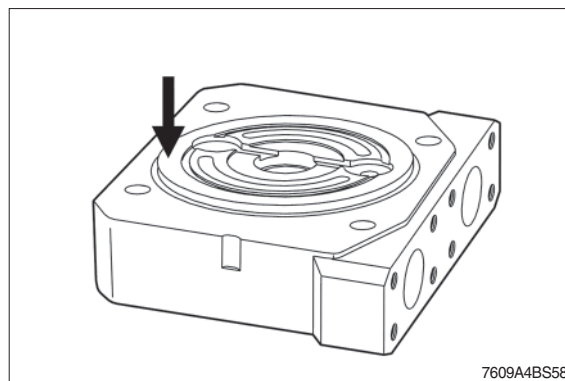
- (3) Free of grooves, no signs of wear.



- (4) Cylinder sliding surface free of grooves, no wear, no embedded foreign particles. That there are no scratches on the control plate. (Only replace them as a set).

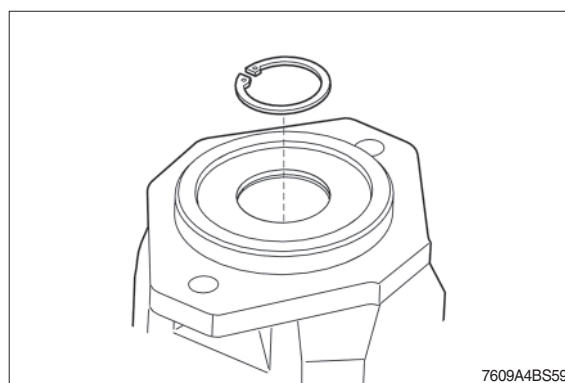


- (5) Mounting surface - control plate undamaged.

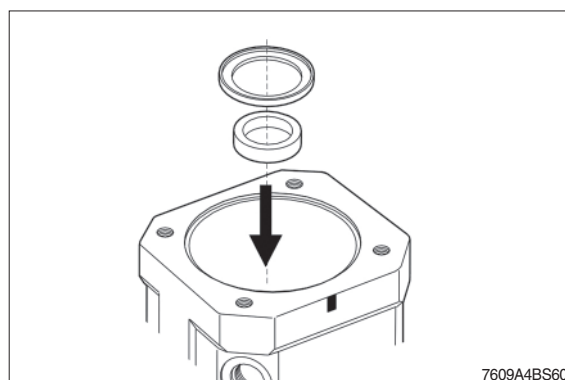


## 5) MOTOR ASSEMBLY

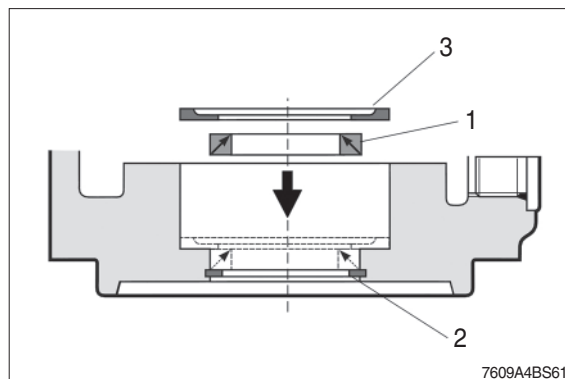
- (1) Fit the circlip into the housing.



- (2) Assemble shaft seal and shim against circlip.

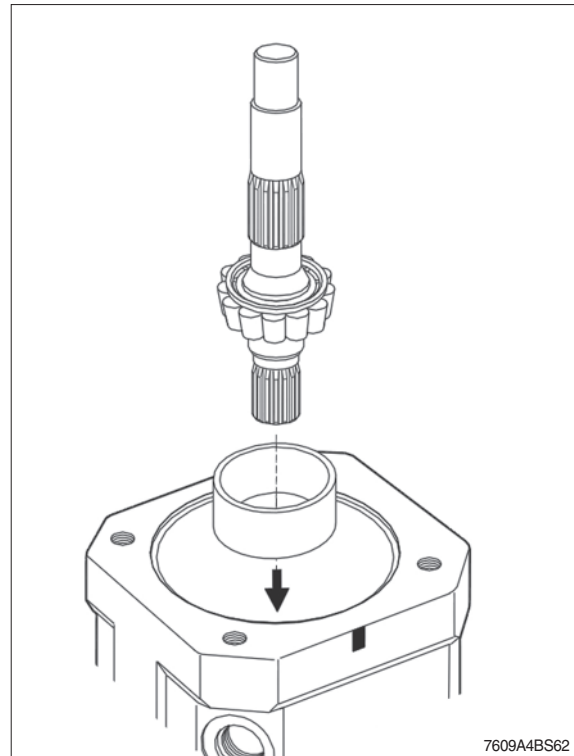


- (3) Assembly of the shaft seal (1) against the safety ring (2) back up the shim (3) down to the seal ring.

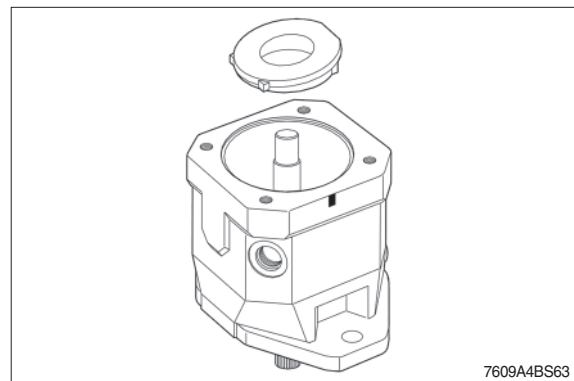


(4) Press outer bearing ring into housing.  
Shaft seal with pre-assembled bearing into housing.

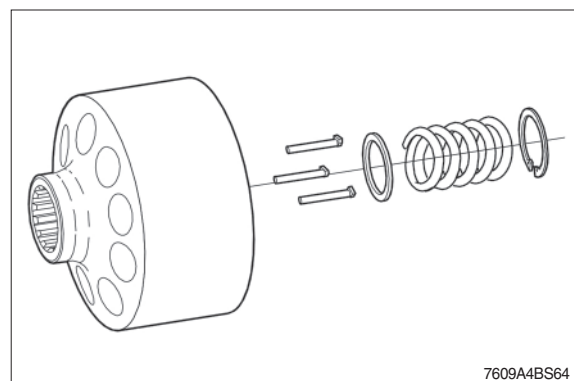
※ Protect splines of the shaft with plastic strip against damage of the seal lip.



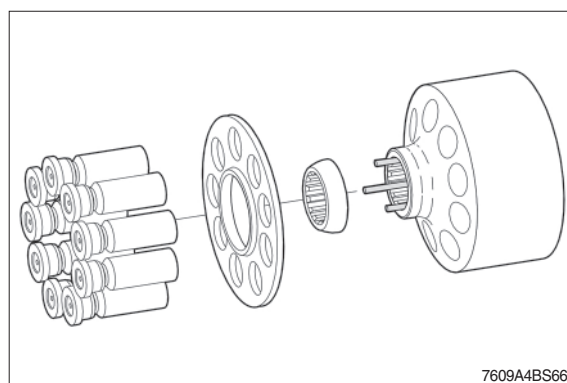
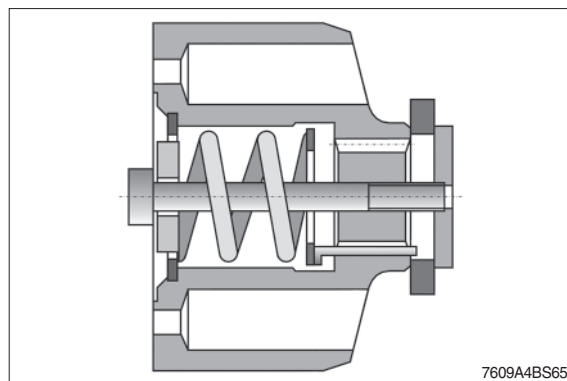
(5) Assemble swash plate.



(6) Fit pressure pins using an assembly aid.

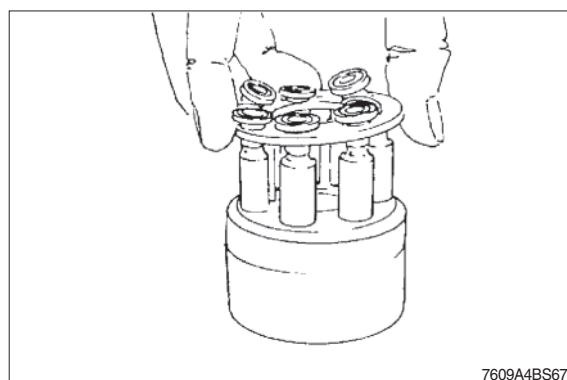


- (7) Pre-tension the spring using a suitable device.



- (8) Assemble piston with retaining plate.

※ Oil piston and slipper pad.

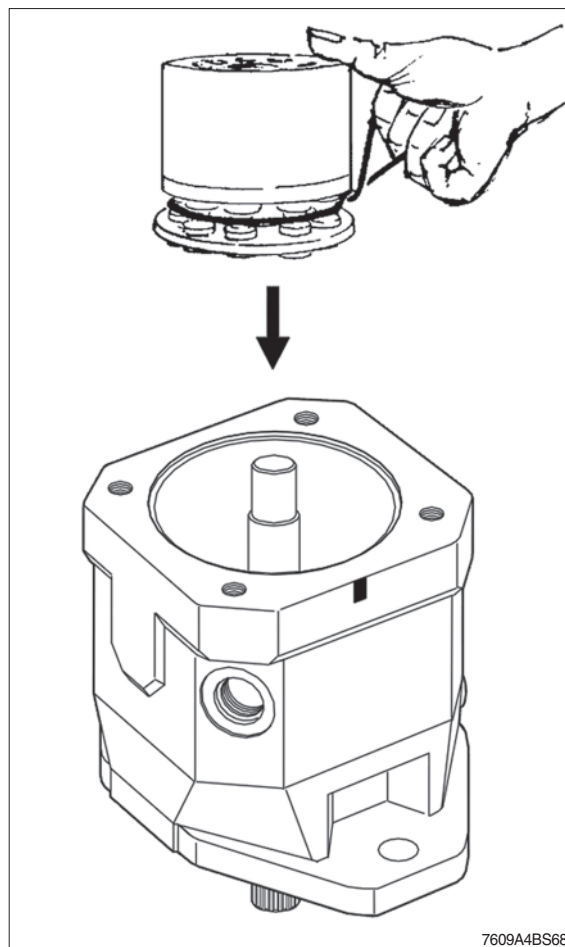




(9) Fit rotary group.

※ Assembly aid :

Hold the pistons by using an O-ring.



(10) Fit bearing (1) in port plate.

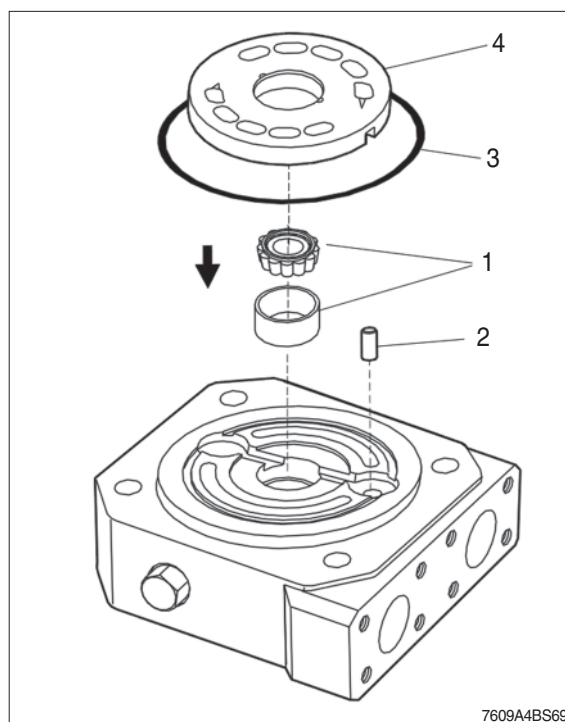
Fit cylindrical pin (2).

Fit O-ring (3).

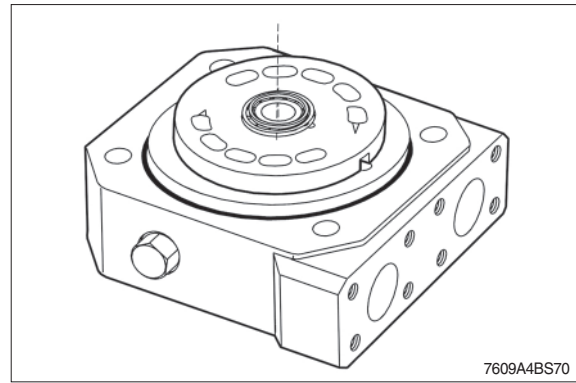
Fit control plate (4).

※ Assembly :

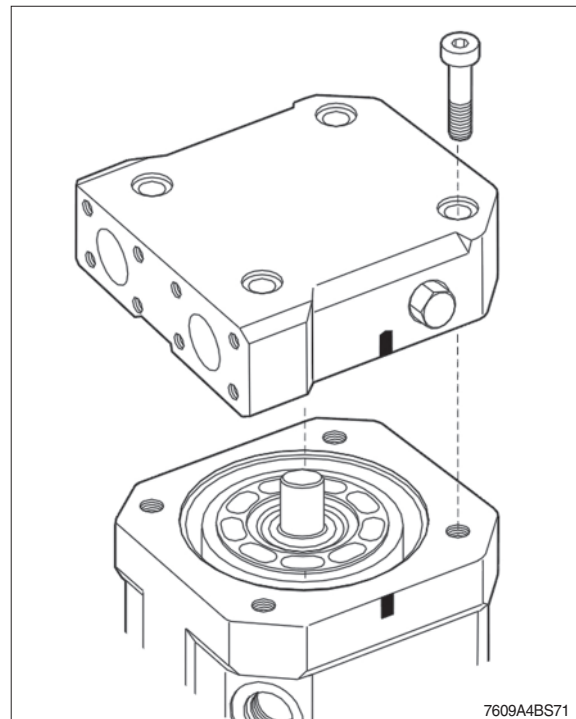
Hold the components in place with grease.



- (11) Fit control plate.  
Assembly aid : Grease



- (12) Fit the port plate and fix it with the bolts crosswise.



# SECTION 5 STEERING SYSTEM

Group 1	Structure and Function .....	5-1
Group 2	Operational Checks and Troubleshooting .....	5-18
Group 3	Tests and Adjustments .....	5-26
Group 4	Disassembly and Assembly .....	5-34

# SECTION 5 STEERING SYSTEM

## GROUP 1 STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION

### 1. OUTLINE

The steering system of this machine consists of a variable displacement piston pump supplying a load sensing steering system and a closed center loader system.

This system offers faster response from the priority valve of flow amplifier and the pump. Also it offers advantages in connection with cold start up and improvements in system stability.

The components of the steering system are :

- Steering pump
- Flow amplifier
- Steering unit
- Steering cylinders

The flow amplifier contains a directional valve, an amplification stage, a priority valve, a pilot pressure relief valve and shock and suction valve.

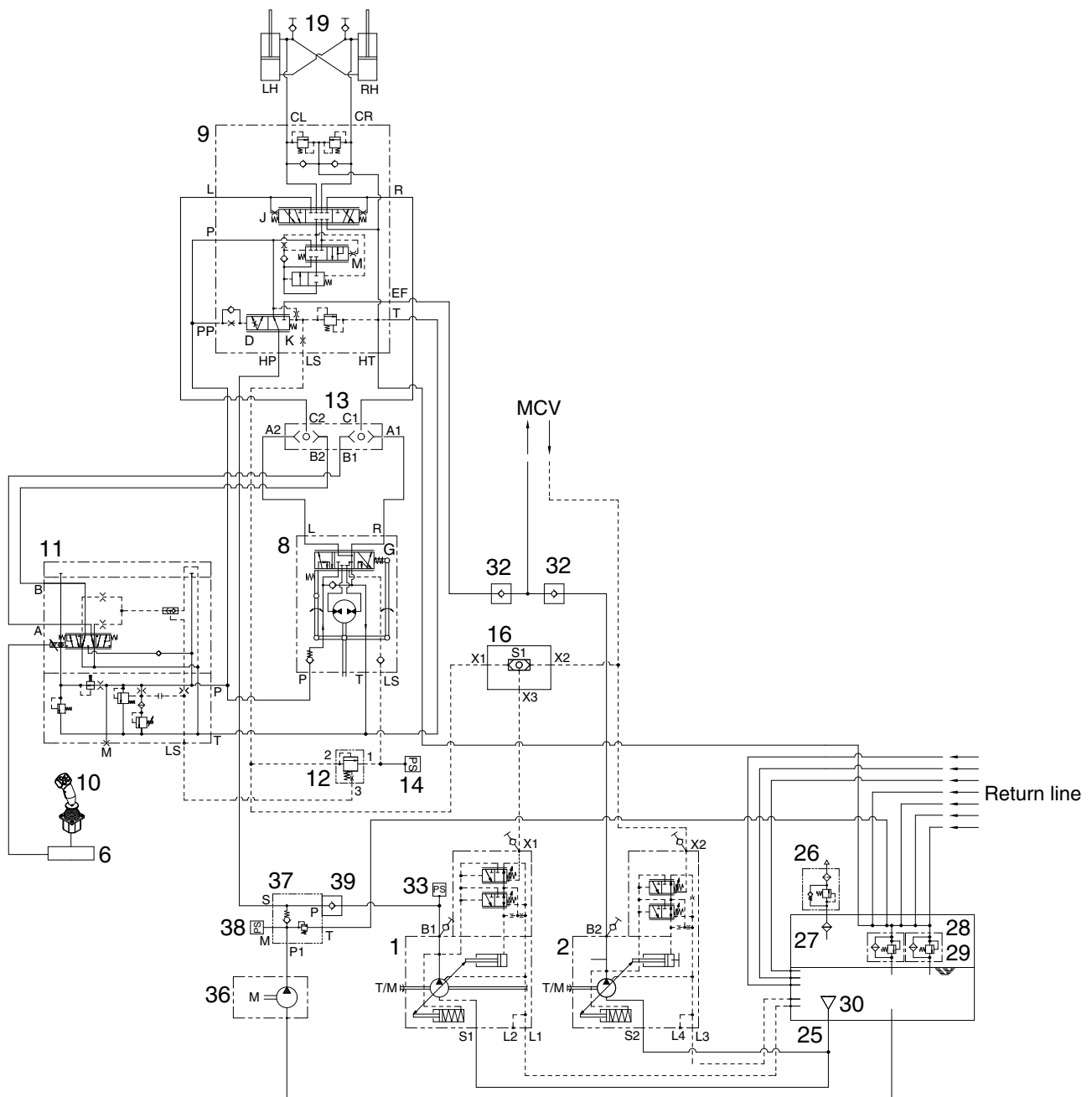
The steering pump draws hydraulic oil from the hydraulic tank.

Outlet flow from the pump flows to the priority valve of flow amplifier. The priority valve of flow amplifier preferentially supplies flow, on demand, to the steering unit. When the machine is steered, the steering unit routes flow to the steering cylinders to articulate the machine.

When the machine is not being steered, or if pump flow is greater than steering flow, the priority valve supplies flow to the loader system.

That is, output flow from the steering pump enters into the main control valve for the operation of the attachment.

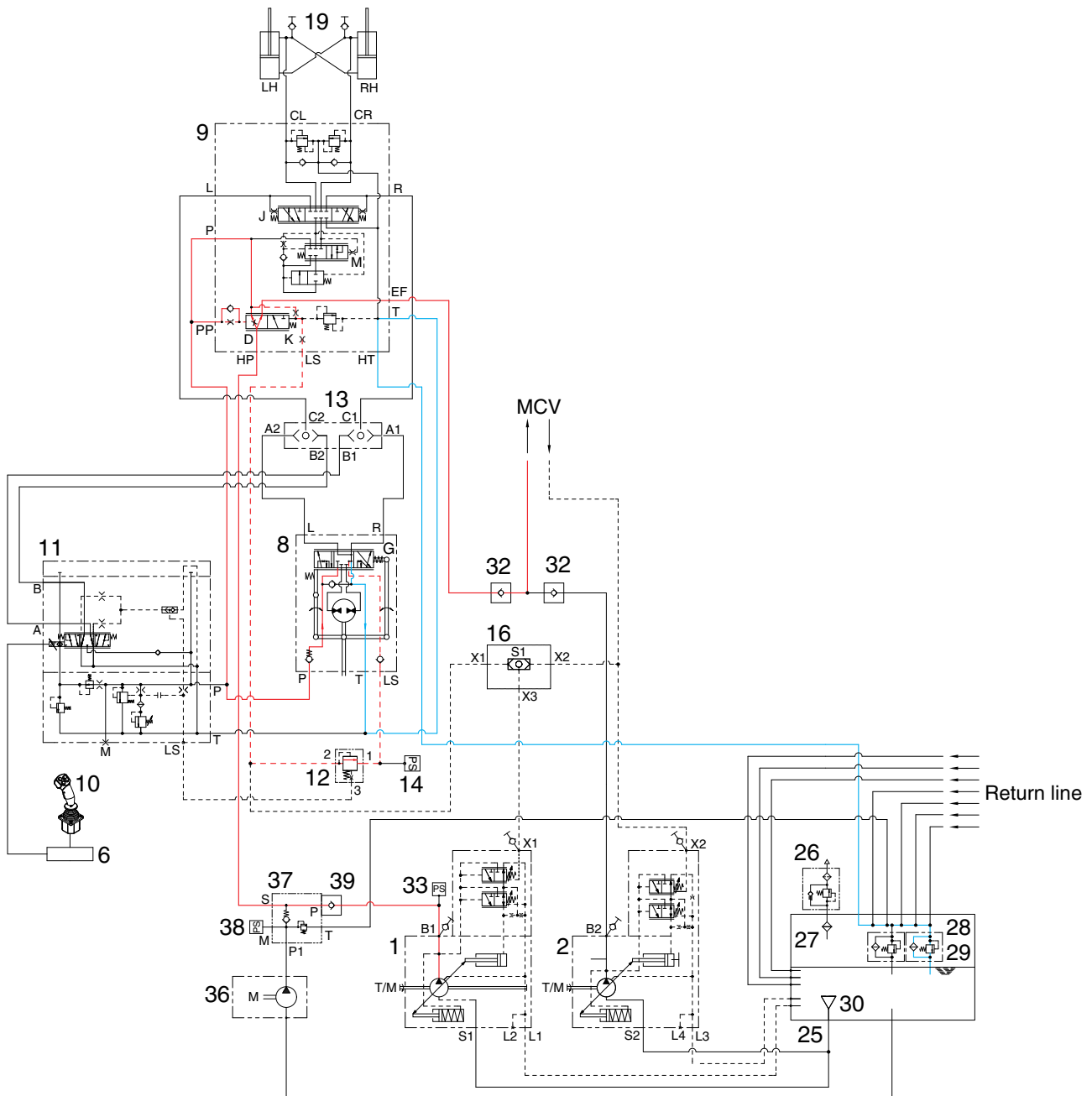
## 2. HYDRAULIC CIRCUIT



9805SE01

- |    |                                |    |                        |    |                          |
|----|--------------------------------|----|------------------------|----|--------------------------|
| 1  | Steering pump                  | 13 | Shuttle valve (option) | 29 | Bypass valve             |
| 2  | Loader pump                    | 14 | Pressure sensor (opt)  | 30 | Strainer                 |
| 6  | EH controller                  | 16 | Shuttle valve          | 32 | Check valve              |
| 8  | Steering unit                  | 19 | Steering cylinder      | 33 | Pressure sensor          |
| 9  | Flow amplifier                 | 25 | Hydraulic tank         | 36 | Motor pump (option)      |
| 10 | Joystick steering lever (opt)  | 26 | Air breather           | 37 | Check block (option)     |
| 11 | Proportional valve (option)    | 27 | Strainer               | 38 | Pressure sensor (option) |
| 12 | LS compensating valve (option) | 28 | Return filter          | 39 | Check valve (option)     |

## 1) NEUTRAL

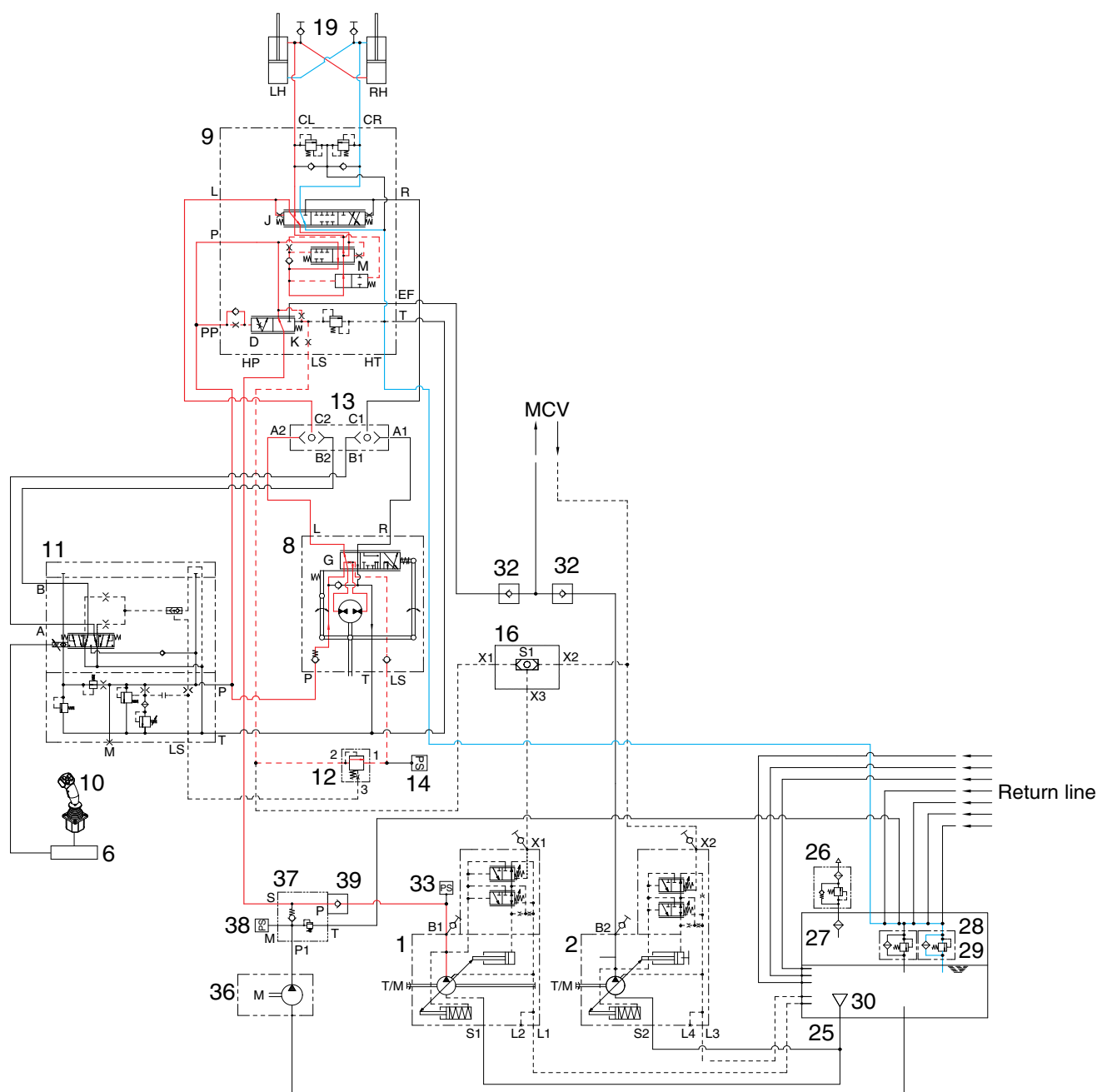


9805SE02

- The steering wheel is not being operated so control spool (G) does not move.
- The oil from the steering pump enters port HP of the priority valve of flow amplifier and the inlet pressure oil moves the spool (D) to the right.
- Almost all of pump flow goes to the loader system (main control valve) through the EF port and partly flows into the hydraulic tank (24) through the control spool (G).  
This small flow is useful to prevent the thermal shock problem of the steering unit (8).



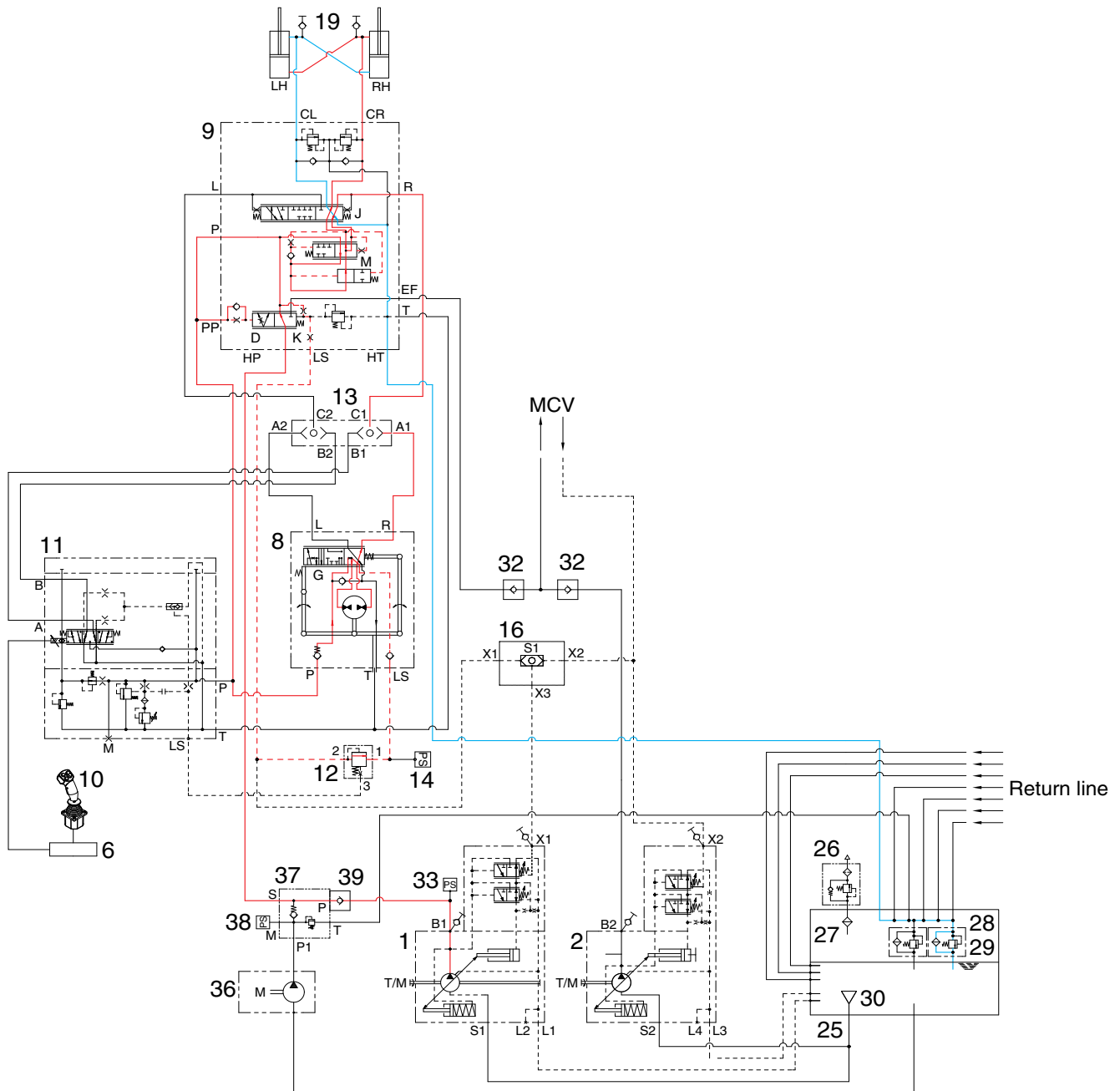
## 2) LEFT TURN



9805SE03

- When the steering wheel is turned to the left, the spool (G) within steering unit (8) connected with steering column shaft is pushed to the right direction.
- The oil discharged from the pump flows into HP port of flow amplifier (9).
- The delivered oil passes through the main orifice of steering unit (8), through the priority valve spool (D) of flow amplifier (9). The position of priority spool (D) is determined when the pressure difference between front and rear of main orifice is balanced with control spring (K) force.
- The oil supplied through the directional spool (J) from the steering unit (8) is combined with the direct oil from the priority valve spool (D) in the amplifier spool (M). The amplified oil flows into the small chamber of the left steering cylinder and large chamber of the right steering cylinder respectively.
- Oil returned from left and right cylinder returns to hydraulic tank through directional spool (J) of flow amplifier (9).
- When the above operation is completed, the machine turns to the left.

### 3) RIGHT TURN



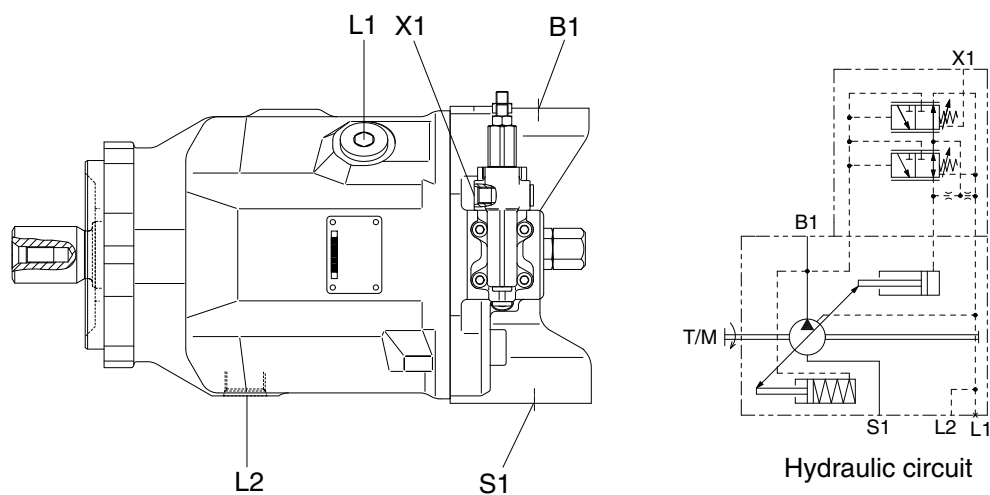
9805SE04

- When the steering wheel is turned to the right, the spool (G) within steering unit (8) connected with steering column shaft is pushed to the right direction.
- The oil discharged from the pump flows into HP port of flow amplifier (9).
- The delivered oil passes through the main orifice of steering unit (8), through the priority valve spool (D) of flow amplifier (9). The position of priority spool (D) is determined when the pressure difference between front and rear of main orifice is balanced with control spring (K) force.
- The oil supplied through the directional spool (J) from the steering unit (8) is combined with the direct oil from the priority valve spool (D) in the amplifier spool (M). The amplified oil flows into the small chamber of the right steering cylinder and large chamber of the left steering cylinder respectively.
- Oil returned from left and right cylinder returns to hydraulic tank through directional spool (J) of flow amplifier (9).
- When the above operation is completed, the machine turns to the right.

### 3. STEERING PUMP

#### 1) STRUCTURE (1/2)

This steering pump is variable displacement piston pump.

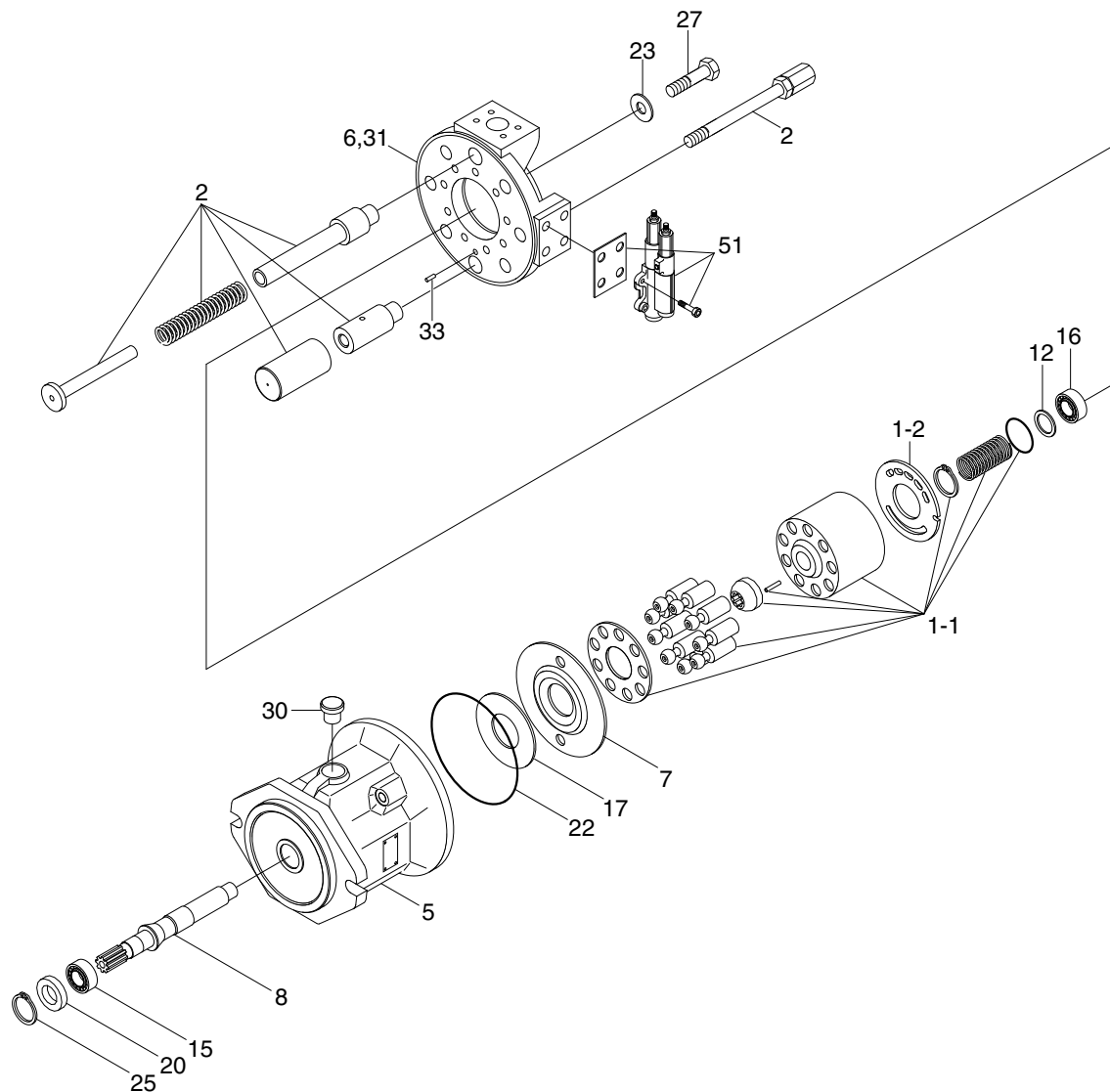


78096WE88-1

Port	Port name	Port size
B1	Pressure port	SAE 1 1/4"
S1	Suction port	SAE 2 1/2"
L1, L2	Case drain port	1 5/16-12UN
X1	Pilot pressure port	7/16-20UNF

※ **Function, disassembly and assembly** : Refer to page 6-11~18 and 6-64~76.

## STRUCTURE (2/2)



78096WE11

- |     |                         |    |                      |    |                      |
|-----|-------------------------|----|----------------------|----|----------------------|
| 1   | Rotary group            | 8  | Drive shaft          | 23 | O-ring               |
| 1-1 | High speed rotary group | 12 | Adjustment shim      | 25 | V-ring               |
| 1-2 | Control plate           | 15 | Taper roller bearing | 27 | Socket screw         |
| 2   | Adjusting piece         | 16 | Taper roller bearing | 30 | Locking screw        |
| 5   | Pump housing            | 17 | Bearing liner        | 31 | Double break-off pin |
| 6   | Port plate              | 20 | Shaft seal ring      | 33 | Cylinder pin         |
| 7   | Swash plate             | 22 | O-ring               | 51 | Control valve        |

## 1) STRUCTURE



- 5-8

## **2) OPERATION**

### **(1) Introduction**

The flow amplifier contains a directional valve, an amplification stage, a priority valve, a pilot pressure relief valve and shock and suction valves.

The flow amplifier amplifies the oil flow from the steering unit cylinder ports L or R by an amplification factor of 8. The amplified oil flow is directed from the flow amplifier ports CL or CR to the steering cylinder. The amplified flow is proportional to the rate of the steering wheel rotation. If the oil flow from the pump fails, the flow amplifier cuts off the amplification.

### **(2) Priority valve**

The priority valve is used in load sensing systems where the same pump supplies oil to both steering system and working hydraulics.

The steering system always has first priority.

The pressure on the LS connection is almost zero during measuring (steering unit in neutral position).

### **(3) Shock valves**

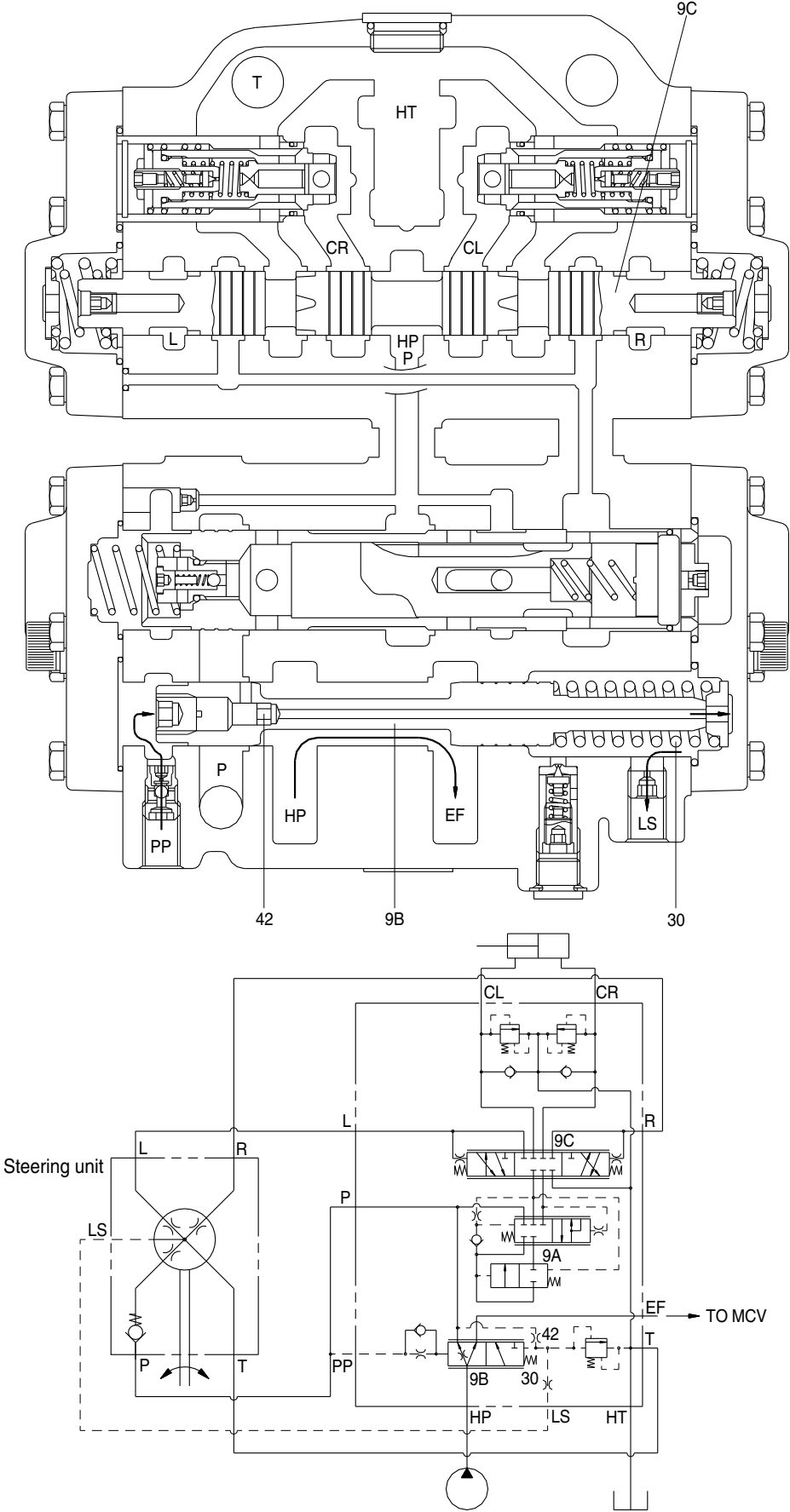
The shock valves protect the flow amplifier against shock from external forces on the steering cylinders. The shock valves in flow amplifier limit the maximum pressure drop from CL to HT and from CR to HT.

### **(4) HP-HT ports characteristic**

The pilot pressure relief valve protects the steering unit against excess pressure. The pilot pressure relief valve together with the priority valve limit the maximum steering pressure HP-HT.



(5) Neutral



7707A5SE100

In neutral position, the oil passes from the pump across the integrated priority valve (9B) in the flow amplifier for discharge through the EF port. With the steering unit in neutral, flow through it is blocked and all flow through the priority valve (9B) in flow amplifier is directed out the EF port to the loader control valve.

With the engine off, the priority valve spool (9B) is pushed to the left by the spring (30). The passage to the EF port is blocked while the passage to the P port is open.

When the machine is first started, all pump flow is routed to the steering unit which blocks the flow. With the flow blocked, the pressure increases.

Steering inlet pressure is supplied through the dynamic orifice (42) in the spool. This causes the priority valve spool (9B) to shift to the right against the spring (30) and open the EF port.

As long as the steering unit is in neutral, just enough pressure is maintained at the steering unit to keep the priority valve spool (9B) shifted to the right.

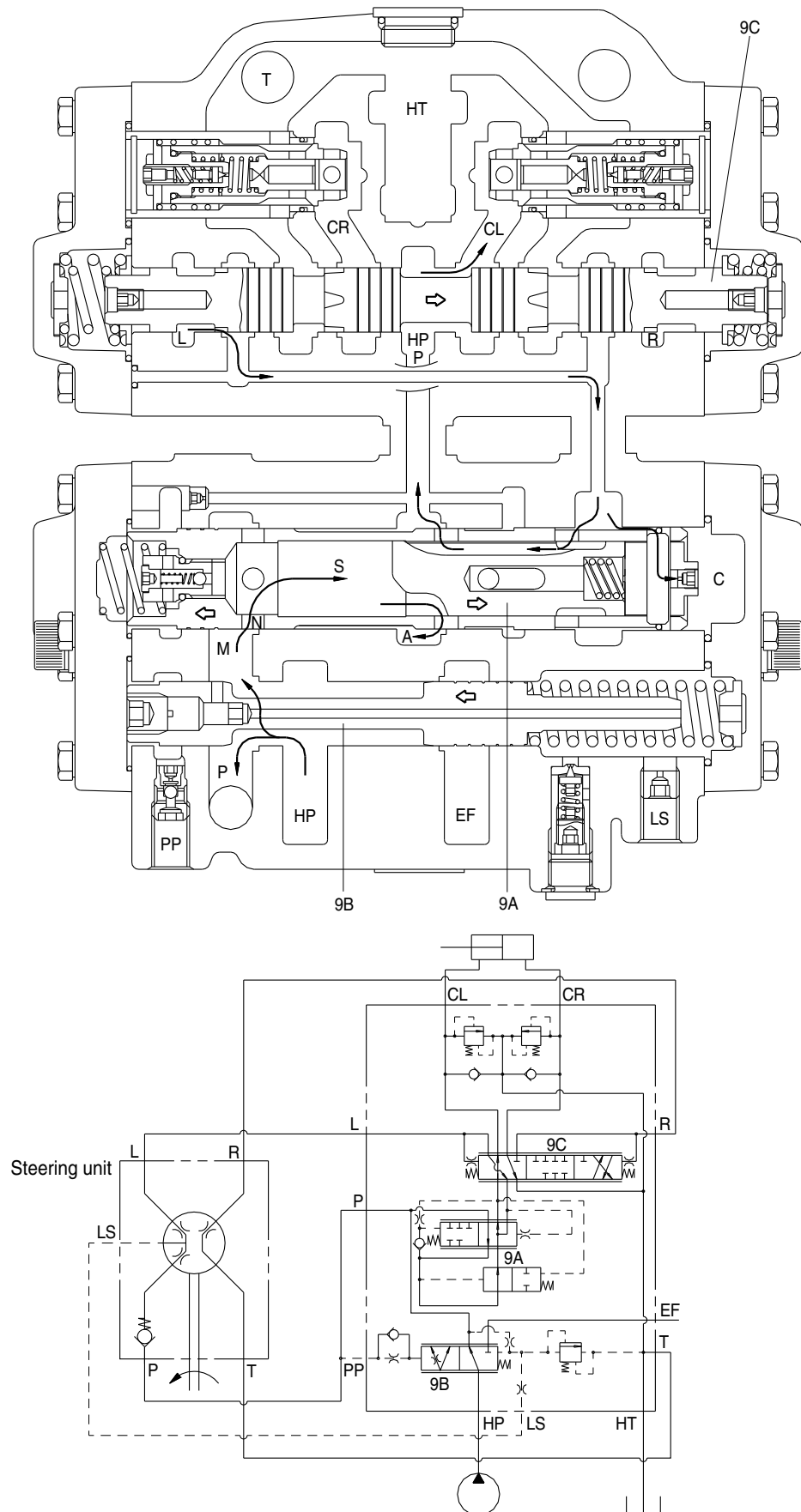
The operating pressure in the loader system has no effect on the operation of the priority valve (9B) of flow amplifier. With the loader actuated in relief, the priority valve (9B) will not shift until the machine is steered.

Flow through the priority valve spool (9B) passes from the P port through the orifice (42) and into the LS port. It flows through the steering unit LS passage which is routed to return when the steering unit is in neutral. This provides a warm-up circuit for the steering unit to prevent binding of the steering unit due to oil temperature extremes.

In neutral position, also the directional valve (9C) is in its center position.

This means that knock and impacts from the cylinder are not transmitted to the steering unit. The flow amplifier is thus of the non-reaction type.

## (6) Mid-turn



7707A5SE101

If the steering wheel is turned to the left, a LS signal is passed to the priority valve (9B). The priority valve (9B) is reversed so that more oil is passed across the P port to the steering unit for discharge through the L port of the flow amplifier.

The directional valve (9C) is reversed through the pressure being transmitted across the boring in the spool whereby the spool is moved the right.

The opening shall allow connection between the pilot flow and the pressure control/amplifier valve (9A).

The pilot pressure from the orifice in chamber C moves the valve to the left and passage for the pilot flow therefore is possible out of hole F.

The main flow passes from the priority valve (9B) to the circular channel M. As the amplifier spool is moved to the left, the passage will now be open across the holes N to the chamber S.

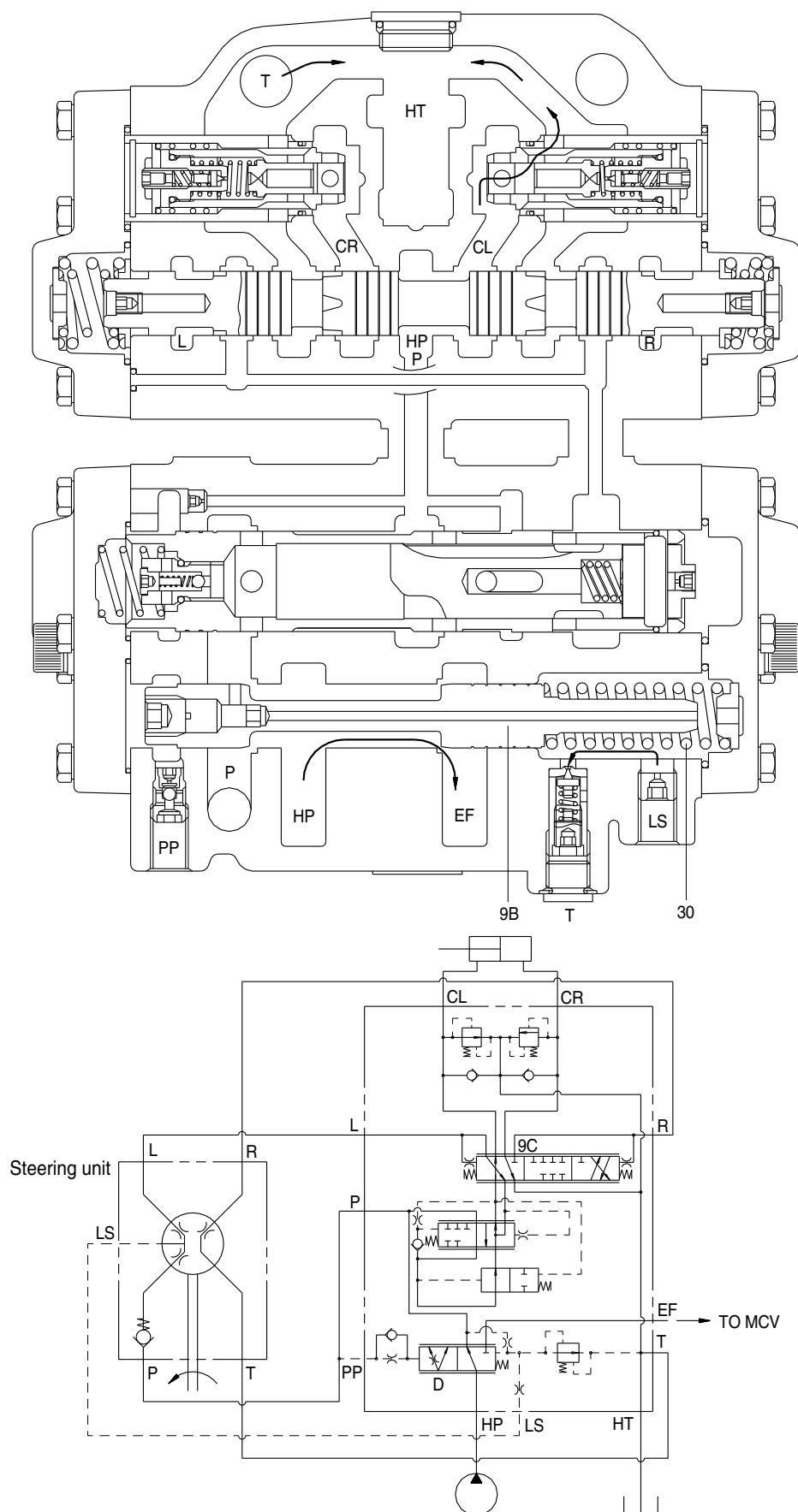
The spool goes to a position so that the pressure in chamber S equals the pressure in chamber C.

The passage is now open for the main flow through the priority valve (9B) across the holes A.

The main flow and pilot flow merge and is passed across the directional valve (9C) to the steering cylinder through CL port.

The return oil passes across the directional valve (9C) to the hydraulic tank.

## (7) Full turn



7707A5SE102

When the machine is steered to a full turn, the frames bottom against the steering stops. To limit steering system pressure, a relief system is built into the priority valve assembly (9B).

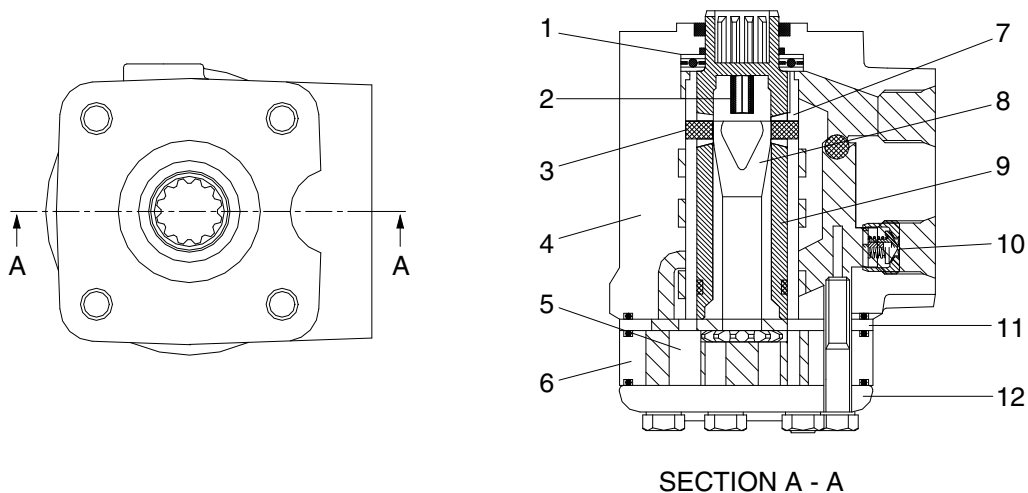
When the frames bottom is stopped, the pressure in the steering cylinders increases. This pressure is sensed at the LS port. When the pressure in the LS port increases enough to push priority valve spool (9B) off its seat, oil in the load sensing circuit flows to return through the T port. Load sensing pressure is limited to the pressure setting of the relief valve.

Pressure to the steering unit (pilot pressure), which is sensed at the left end of the priority valve spool (9B) in flow amplifier, continues to increase until it can move the spool to the right against the load sensing pressure plus spring (30) force. At this time, all oil flows out of the EF port to the loader control valve.

If the loader attachment is being operated while steering, the loader function will slow until the machine reaches the steering stops. At that time, the loader cycle speed will increase until the machine is steered again.

## 4. STEERING UNIT

### 1) STRUCTURE



7607SE17

1	Bearing	5	Gear wheel	9	Spool
2	Neutral position spring	6	Gear rim	10	Check valve
3	Cross pin	7	Sleeve	11	Distributor plate
4	Housing	8	Cardan shaft	12	End cover

### 2) OPERATION

The steering unit consists of a rotary valve and a rotary meter.

Via a steering column the steering unit is connected to the steering wheel of the machine.

When the steering wheel is turned, oil is directed from the steering system pump via the rotary valve (spool and sleeve) and rotary meter (gear wheel set) to the cylinder ports L or R, depending on the direction of turn. The rotary meter meters the oil flow to the steering cylinder in proportion to the angular rotation of the steering wheel.

Spool (9) is connected directly to the drive shaft of steering wheel. It is connected to sleeve (7) by cross pin (3) (not in contact with the spool when the steering wheel is at neutral) and neutral position spring (2).

Cardan shaft(8) is meshed at the top with cross pin (3) and forms one unit with sleeve (7).

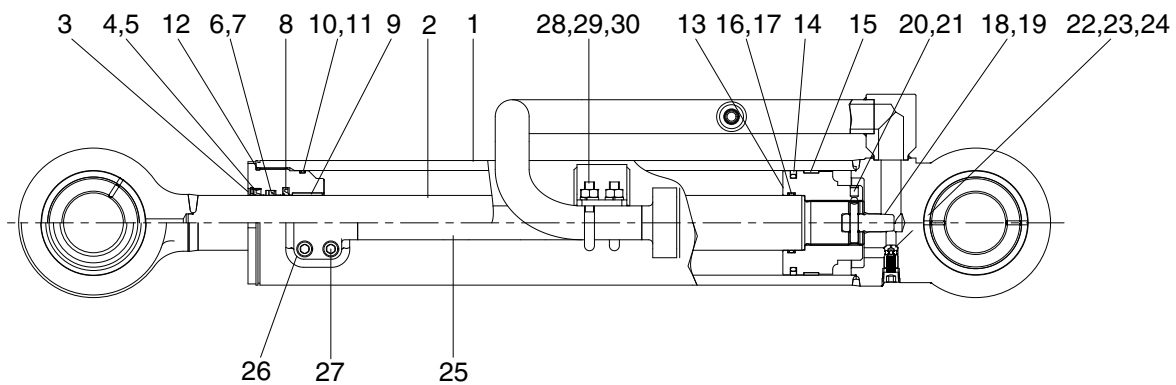
At the same time, it is meshed with gear rim (5) of the gerotor set by spline.

There are four ports in valve body. They are connected to the pump circuit, tank circuit, and the head, and left and right steering cylinder. In addition, the pump port and tank port are connected inside the body by the check valve. Therefore, if there is any failure in the pump of engine, oil can be sucked in directly from the tank through the check valve.



## 5. STEERING CYLINDER

### 1) STRUCTURE



9805SE05

1	Tube assembly	12	O-ring	23	Spring
2	Rod assy	13	Piston	24	Socket plug
3	Gland	14	Piston seal	25	Pipe assembly
4	Dust wiper	15	Wear ring	26	O-ring
5	Retaining ring	16	O-ring	27	Hexagon bolt
6	Rod seal	17	Back-up ring	28	U-bolt
7	Back-up ring	18	Cushion plunger	29	Hexagon nut
8	Buffer ring	19	Paraller pin	30	Spring washer
9	Bearing	20	Steel ball	31	Bearing
10	O-ring	21	Set screw	32	Retaining ring
11	Back-up ring	22	Check valve		

### 2) OPERATION

This machine use to cross connected cylinder for steering operation.

The steering cylinder use a gland (3) to remove piston and sealed seals. Dust wiper (4) located on the inside of the gland protects cylinder inner parts from dust. The piston (13) is fastened to the rod (2).

The piston uses a single wear ring (15) with a piston seal (14) to seal between the piston and tube. The gland seals against the tube with two O-rings. The rod is sealed against the gland with a rod seal (6).

## GROUP 2 OPERATIONAL CHECKS AND TROUBLESHOOTING

### 1. OPERATIONAL CHECKS

This procedure is designed so the service man can make a quick check of the steering system using a minimum amount of diagnostic equipment. If you need additional information, refer to structure and function in group 1.

A location will be required which is level and has adequate space to complete the checks.

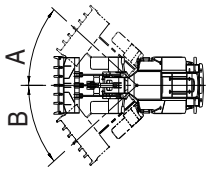
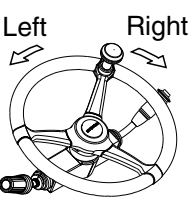
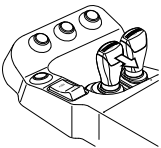
The engine and all other major components must be at operating temperature for some checks.

Locate system check in the left column and read completely, following this sequence from left to right. Read each check completely before performing.

At the end of each check, if no problem is found (OK), that check is complete or an additional check is needed. If problem is indicated (NOT OK), you will be give repair required and group location. If verification is needed, you will be give next best source of information :

- Chapter 2 : Troubleshooting
- Group 3 : Tests and adjustments

※ Hydraulic oil must be at operating temperature for these checks (refer to page 6-54).

Item	Description	Service action
<b>Steering unit check</b>  	<p>Run engine at low idle.</p> <p>Turn steering wheel until frames are at maximum right (A) and then left (B) positions.</p> <p><b>LOOK</b> : Frames must move smoothly in both directions.</p> <p>When steering wheel is stopped, frames must stop.</p> <p><b>FEEL</b> : Excessive effort must not be required to turn steering wheel.</p> <p><b>NOTE</b> : It is normal for steering to drift from stops when steering wheel is released.</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Check completed.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> Go to next check.</p>
<b>Steering system leakage check</b> Heat hydraulic oil to operating temperature. Run engine at high idle.	 <p>Turn steering wheel rapidly until frames are against stop.</p> <p>Hold approximately 2 kg on steering wheel.</p> <p>Count steering wheel revolutions for 1 minute.</p> <p>Repeat test in opposite direction.</p> <p><b>LOOK</b> : Steering wheel should rotate less than 7 rpm.</p> <p><b>NOTE</b> : Use good judgment; Excessive steering wheel rpm does not mean steering will be affected.</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Check completed.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> Do steering system leakage test in group 3 to isolate the leakage.</p>
<b>Priority valve (in flow amplifier) low pressure check</b>	<p>Park machine on a hard surface.</p> <p>Hold brake pedal down.</p> <p>Run engine at high idle.</p> <p>Steer machine to the right and left as far as possible.</p> <p><b>LOOK</b> : Machine must turn at least half way to the right and left stops.</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Check completed.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> Do flow amplifier pressure test in group 3.</p>
<b>Priority valve (in flow amplifier) high pressure check</b>  Run engine at high idle.	 <p>Steer to steering stop and release steering wheel.</p> <p>Roll bucket back and hold over relief and observe engine rpm.</p> <p>Turn steering wheel to steering stop and hold, observe engine rpm.</p> <p><b>LOOK</b> : Steering stall engine rpm must be higher than hydraulic stall rpm.</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Check completed.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> Priority pressure is set too high. Do flow amplifier pressure test in group 3.</p>

## 2. TROUBLESHOOTING

※ Diagnose malfunction charts are arranged from most probable and simplest to verify, to least likely, more difficult to verify. Remember the following steps when troubleshooting a problem :

Step 1. Operational check out procedure (see group 3 in section 1)

Step 2. Operational checks (in this group)

Step 3. Troubleshooting

Step 4. Tests and adjustments (see group 3)

Problem	Cause	Remedy
<b>No steering</b>	Low oil level.	Add recommended oil.
	Failed steering pump.	Remove and inspect return filter for metal pump particles.
	Failed main pump drive.	Do main pump flow test.
	Stuck priority valve spool.	Remove and inspect priority valve spool.
	Broken priority valve spring.	Remove and inspect spring.
	Relief valve in flow amplifier stuck open.	Do relief cartridge leakage test in group 3.
<b>No hydraulic functions steering normal</b>	Stuck open system relief valve.	Replace relief valve.
	Locked safety valve.	Unlock safety valve.
	Plugged pilot line filter.	Inspect and replace.
	Failed hydraulic pump.	Remove and inspect the pump.
	Low secondary pressure of RCV.	Check the pressure and replace if necessary.

Problem	Cause	Remedy
<b>Slow or hard steering</b>	Too much friction in the mechanical parts of the machine.  Cold oil.  Low priority valve pressure setting.  Worn hydraulic pump.  Sticking priority valve spool.  Broken priority valve spring.	Lubricate bearings and joints of steering column or repair if necessary. Check steering column installation.  Warm the hydraulic oil.  Do priority valve pressure test. Clean or replace cartridge in flow amplifier.  Do hydraulic pump performance check .  Remove and inspect.  Remove and inspect.
<b>Constant steering to maintain straight travel</b>	Air in system.  Leakage in steering system.  Worn steering unit.    Leaf spring without spring force or broken.  Spring in double shock valve broken.  Gear wheel set worn.  Cylinder seized or piston seals worn.	Check for foamy oil.  Do steering system leakage check.  Do steering system leakage check. Do steering unit neutral leakage test in group 3.  Replace leaf springs.  Replace shock valve.  Replace gear wheel set.  Replace defects parts.
<b>Slow steering wheel movement will not cause any frame movement</b>	Leakage in steering unit gerotor.  Worn steering unit gerotor.	Do steering system leakage check.  Do steering leakage check.
<b>Steering wheel can be turned with frames against steering stop</b>	Leakage in steering system.	Do steering system leakage check.
<b>Steering wheel turns with no resistance and causes no frame movement</b>	Broken steering column or splined coupling.  Lack of oil in steering unit.  Leakage in steering system.	Remove and inspect.  Start engine and check steering operation.  Do steering system leakage test in group 3.

Problem	Cause	Remedy
<b>Erratic steering</b>	Air in oil. Low oil level. Sticking priority valve spool. Loose cylinder piston. Damaged steering unit.	Check for foamy oil. Add recommended oil. Remove and inspect spool. Remove rod to inspect piston. Remove and inspect.
<b>Spongy or soft steering</b>	Air in oil. Low oil level.	Check for foamy oil. Add recommended oil.
<b>Free play at steering wheel</b>	Loose steering wheel nut. Worn or damaged splines on steering column or unit.	Tighten. Inspect.
<b>Steering unit binding or steering wheel does not immediately return to neutral when released</b>	Binding in steering column or misalignment of column. High return pressure. Contamination in steering unit. Large particles of contamination in steering unit.	Inspect. Check for a pinched or damaged return line. Inspect hydraulic filter for contamination. Repair cause of contamination. Flush hydraulic system. Inspect hydraulic filter for contamination. Repair cause of contamination. Flush hydraulic system.
<b>Steering unit locks up</b>	★ Thermal shock  Worn or damaged steering unit.	Do priority valve LS port flow test in group 5. This oil flow provides a warm -up flow to steering unit when not using the steering. Repair or replace steering unit.
<b>Abrupt steering wheel oscillation</b>	Improperly timed gerotor gear in steering unit.	Time gerotor gear.
<b>Steering wheel turns by itself</b>	Lines connected to wrong port.	Reconnect lines.
<b>Vibration in steering system or hoses jump</b>	High priority valve setting.	Do priority valve pressure test.
<b>Neutral position of steering wheel cannot be obtained, i.e. there is a tendency towards "motoring"</b>	Steering column and steering unit out of line. Too little or no play between steering column and steering unit input shaft. Pinching between inner and outer spools.	Align the steering column with steering unit. Adjust the play and, if necessary, shorten the splines journal. Contact the nearest service shop.

★ Thermal shock is caused by a large temperature differential(Approx. 30°C, 50°F) between the steering valve and hydraulic oil. If the steering is not operated for a long period of time and the orifice in the bottom of the priority valve spool is plugged, the steering valve may bind up when the steering is operated if the hydraulic oil is hot enough.

Problem	Cause	Remedy
<b>"Motoring" effect.</b> <b>The steering wheel can turn on its own.</b>	Leaf springs are stuck or broken and have therefore reduced spring force.	Replace leaf springs.
	Inner and outer spools pinch, possibly due to dirt.	Clean steering unit or contact the nearest service shop.
	Return pressure in connection with the reaction between differential cylinder and steering unit too high.	Reduce return pressure.
	Oil is needed in the tank.	Fill with clean oil and bleed the system.
	Steering cylinder worn.	Replace or repair cylinder.
	Gear wheel set worn.	Replace gear wheel set.
	Spacer across cardan shaft forgotten.	Install spacer.



Problem	Cause	Remedy
<b>Backlash</b>	Cardan shaft fork worn or broken. Leaf springs without spring force or broken. Worn splines on the steering column.	Replace cardan shaft. Replace leaf springs. Replace steering column.
<b>"Shimmy" effect. The steered wheels vibrate. (Rough tread on tires gives vibrations)</b>	Air in the steering cylinder.  Mechanical connections or wheel bearings worn. High priority valve setting pressure.	Bleed cylinder. Find and remove the reason for air collection. Replace worn parts. Set pressure as regular value.
<b>Steering wheel can be turned slowly in one or both directions without the steered wheels turning.</b>	One or both shock valves are leaky or are missing in steering valve.	Clean or replace defective or missing valves.
<b>Steering is too slow and heavy when trying to turn quickly.</b>	Insufficient oil supply to steering unit, pump defective or number of revolutions too low. Relief valve setting too low. Relief valve sticking owing to dirt. Spool in priority valve sticking owing to dirt. Too weak spring in priority valve.	Replace pump or increase number of revolutions. Adjust valve to correct setting. Clean the valve. Clean the valve, check that spool moves easily without spring. Replace spring by a stronger.
<b>"Kick back" in steering wheel from system. Kicks from wheels.</b>	Fault in the system.	Contact authorized man or shop.

Problem	Cause	Remedy
<b>Heavy kick-back in steering wheel in both directions.</b>	Wrong setting of cardan shaft and gear-wheel set.	Correct setting as shown in this manual.
<b>Turning the steering wheel activates the steered wheels opposite.</b>	Hydraulic hoses for the steering cylinders have been switched around.	Connect lines to correct ports.
<b>Hard point when starting to turn the steering wheel</b>	Spring force in priority valve too weak. Oil is too thick (cold).	Replace spring by a stronger. Let motor run until oil is warm.
<b>Too little steering force (possibly to one side only).</b>	Pump pressure too low. Too little steering cylinder. Piston rod area of the differential cylinder too large compared with piston diameter.	Correct pump pressure. Fit a larger cylinder. Fit cylinder with thinner piston rod or 2 differential cylinders.
<b>Leakage at either input shaft, end cover, gear-wheel set, housing or top part.</b>	Shaft defective. Screws loose. Washers or O-rings defective.	Replace shaft seal. Tighten screws. Replace.

## GROUP 3 TESTS AND ADJUSTMENTS

### 1. HYDRAULIC OIL CLEAN UP PROCEDURE USING PORTABLE FILTER CADDY

- ※ Service equipment and tool.
  - Portable filter caddy
  - Two 3658 mm (12 ft) × 1" I.D. 100R1 hoses with 3/4 M NPT ends
  - Quick disconnect fittings
  - Discharge wand
  - Various size fittings and hoses
- ※ Brake system uses oil from hydraulic oil tank. Flush all lines in the steering system.  
Disassemble and clean major components for steering system.  
Steering components may fail if steering system is not cleaned after hydraulic oil tank contamination.
- 1) If hydraulic system is contaminated due to a major component failure, remove and disassemble steering cylinders to clean debris from cylinders.
- 2) Install a new return filter element. Clean filter housing before installing new element.
- ※ For a failure that creates a lot of debris, remove access cover from hydraulic oil tank. Drain and clean hydraulic oil tank of fill the specified oil to hydraulic oil tank through upper cover.
- 3) To minimize oil loss, pull a vacuum in hydraulic oil tank using a vacuum pump. Connect filter caddy suction line to drain port at bottom of hydraulic oil tank using connector. Check to be sure debris has not closed drain port.
- 4) Put filter caddy discharge line into hydraulic oil tank filter hole so end is as far away from drain port as possible to obtain a thorough cleaning of oil.

- 5) Start the filter caddy. Check to be sure oil is flowing through the filters.  
Operate filter caddy approximately 10 minutes so oil in hydraulic oil tank is circulated through filter a minimum of four times.
  - ※ Hydraulic oil tank capacity 186 l (49.1U.S. gal).Leave filter caddy operating for the next steps.
- 6) Start the engine and run it at high idle.
  - ※ For the most effective results, cleaning procedure must start with the smallest capacity circuit then proceed to the next largest capacity circuit.
- 7) Operate all functions, one at a time, through a complete cycle in the following order: clam, steering, bucket, and boom. Also include all auxiliary hydraulic functions.  
  
Repeat procedure until the total system capacity has circulated through filter caddy seven times, approximately 30 minutes.  
Each function must go through a minimum of three complete cycles for a through cleaning for oil.
  - ※ Filtering time for machines with auxiliary hydraulic functions must be increased because system capacity is larger.
- 8) Stop the engine. Remove the filter caddy.
- 9) Install a new return filter element.
- 10) Check oil level in hydraulic oil tank ; Add oil if necessary.

## 2. TEST TOOLS

### 1) CLAMP-ON ELECTRONIC TACHOMETER INSTALLATION

- Service equipment and tools

Tachometer

A : Clamp on tachometer.

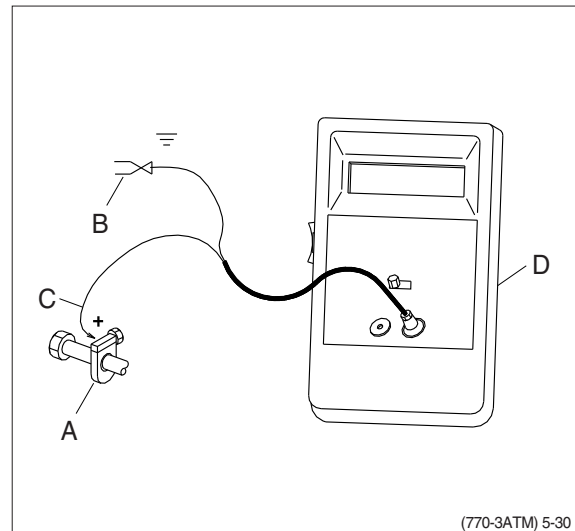
Remove paint using emery cloth and connect to a straight section of injection line within 100 mm (4in) of pump.

Finger tighten only-do not over tighten.

B : Black clip (-). Connect to main frame.

C : Red clip (+). Connect to transducer.

D : Tachometer readout. Install cable.



### 2) DIGITAL THERMOMETER INSTALLATION

- Service equipment and tools

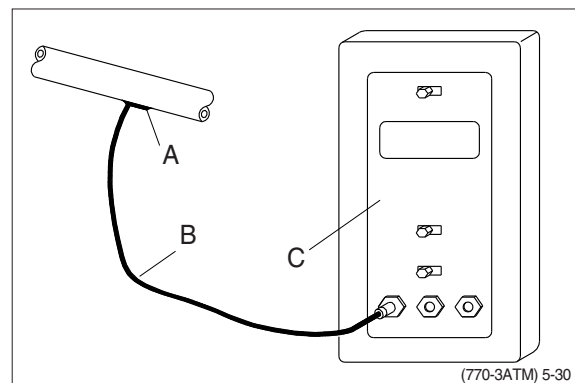
Digital thermometer

A : Temperature probe.

Fasten to a bare metal line using a tie band. Wrap with shop towel.

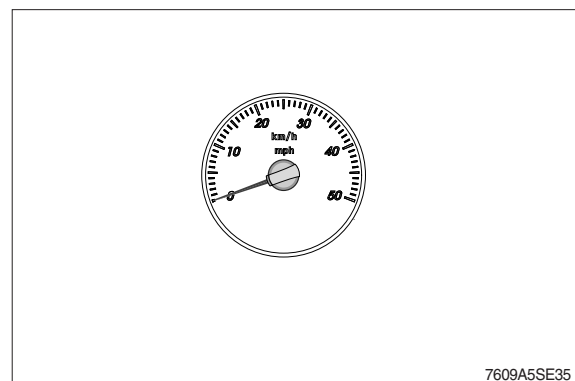
B : Cable.

C : Digital thermometer.



### 3) DISPLAY MONITOR TACHOMETER

The display monitor tachometer is accurate enough for test work.



### 3. STEERING SYSTEM RESTRICTION TEST

- **SPECIFICATION**

Oil temperature       $45 \pm 5^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $113 \pm 9^{\circ}\text{F}$ )  
Engine speed          High idle  
Maximum pressure    2.1MPa (21 bar, 300psi)  
at flow amplifier

- **GAUGE AND TOOL**

Gauge 0~7 MPa (0~70 bar, 0~1000 psi) 2EA

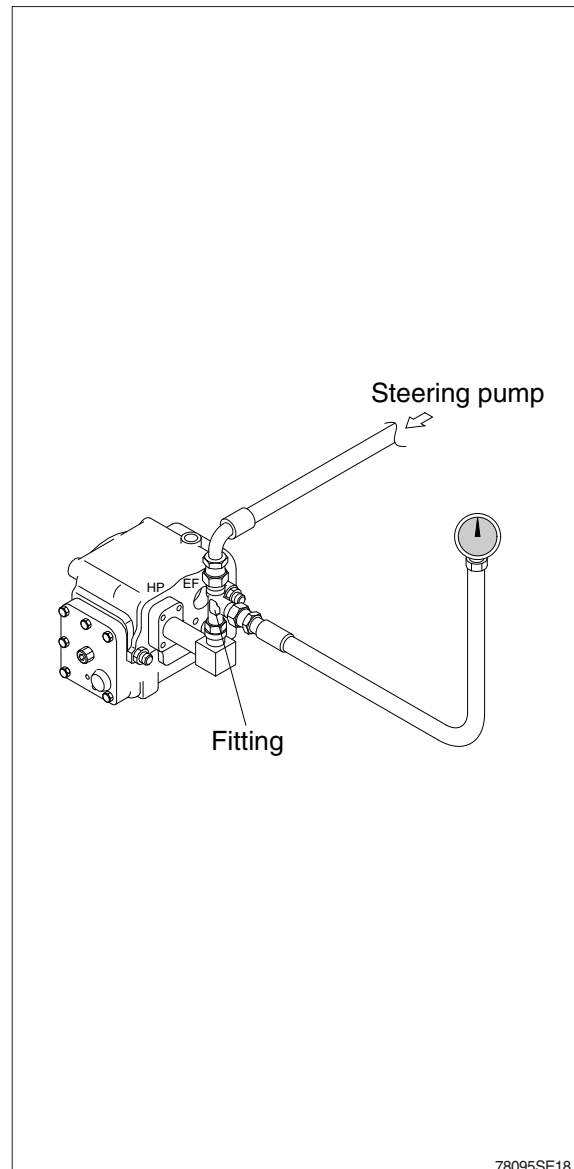
- This test will check for restrictions in the steering system which can cause overheating of hydraulic oil.

- 1) Install temperature reader.  
(see temperature reader installation procedure in this group).
- 2) Heat hydraulic oil to specifications.  
(see hydraulic oil warm up procedure at page 6-54).
- 3) Connect fitting and install gauge.

**⚠ Do not operate steering or loader functions or test gauge may be damaged.**

- 4) Run engine at specification and read pressure gauges.

If pressure is more than specification at the flow amplifier, inspect flow amplifier for a priority valve spool. Make sure orifice plugs installed in ends of priority valve spool. Check for plugged orifice in flow amplifier LS port.



#### 4. STEERING UNIT LEAKAGE TEST

- **SPECIFICATION**

Oil temperature  $45 \pm 5^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $113 \pm 9^{\circ}\text{F}$ )

Engine speed High idle

Maximum leakage  $7.5 \text{ l/min}$  ( $2 \text{ gpm}$ )

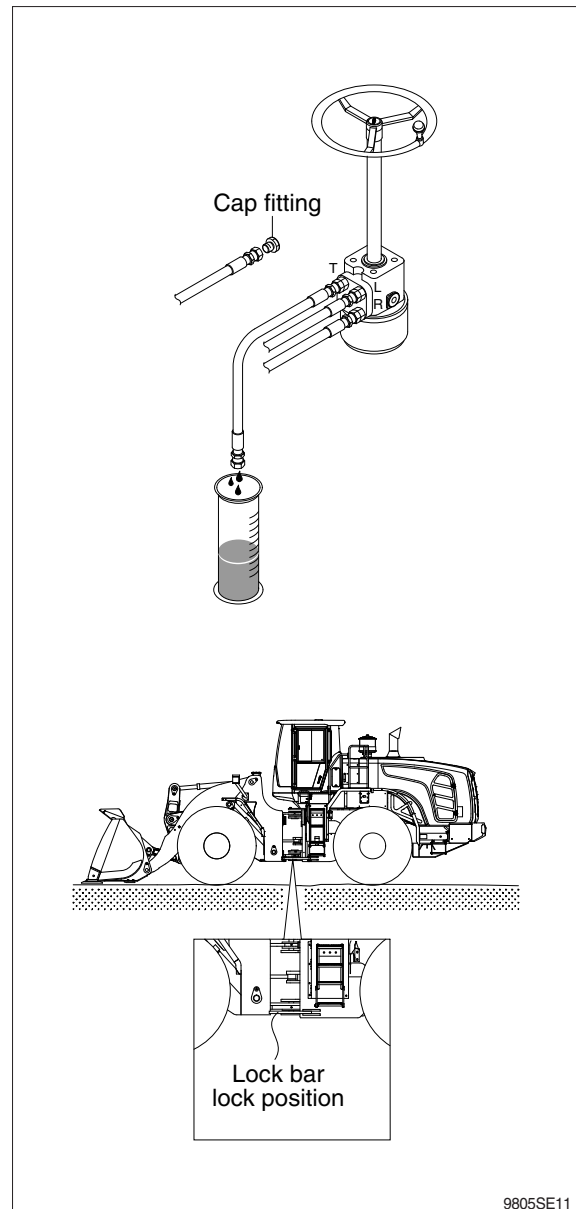
- **GAUGE AND TOOL**

Temperature reader

Measuring container (approx.  $20 \text{ l}$ )

Stop watch

- 1) Install frame locking bar to prevent machine from turning.
- 2) Install temperature reader.  
(see temperature reader installation procedure in this group).
- 3) Heat hydraulic oil to specifications.  
(see hydraulic oil warm up procedure at page 6-54).
- 4) Disconnect return hose from fitting.  
Install cap fitting.
- 5) Run engine at specifications. Rotate steering wheel against locking bar using approximately  $1.2 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$  of force.  
Measure oil flow from return hose for 1 minute.
- 6) Leakage is greater than specifications, repair or replace steering unit.



9805SE11



## 5. FLOW AMPLIFIER PRESSURE TEST

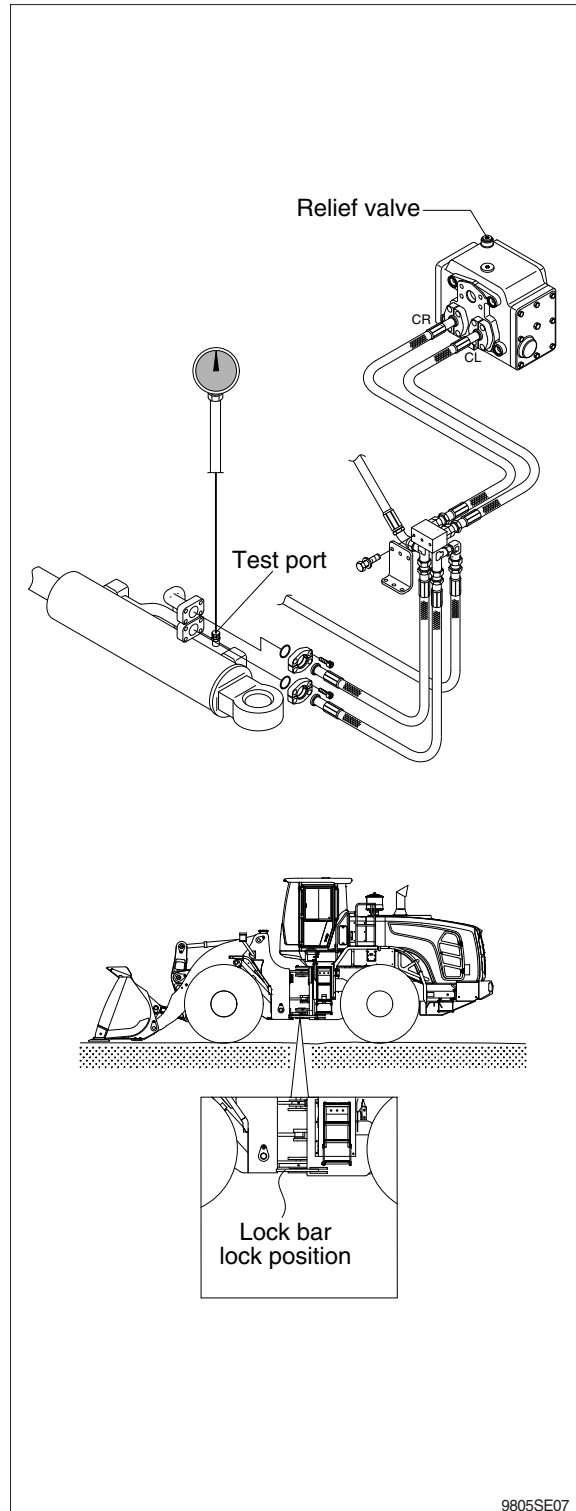
### • SPECIFICATION

Oil temperature	$45 \pm 5^{\circ}\text{C}$ ( $113 \pm 9^{\circ}\text{F}$ )
Engine speed	High idle
Oil pressure	20.1~21.1 MPa (205~215 bar, 2900~3100 psi)

### • GAUGE AND TOOL

Gauge 0~35 MPa (0~350 bar, 0~5000 psi)  
Temperature reader

- 1) Connect gauge to test port.
- 2) Install temperature reader (see installation procedure in this group).
- 3) Install frame locking bar.
- 4) Heat hydraulic oil to specifications.  
(see hydraulic oil warm up procedure at page 6-54)
- 5) Run engine at specifications and turn steering wheel rapidly hold approximately 22N (5lb force) pressure on wheel with frames locked.
  - ※ If steering wheel is turned slowly, it will continue to with the frames locked. This will give an incorrect pressure reading.  
If steering wheel continues to turn rapidly with the frames locked, steering system leakage is indicated.
- 6) Read pressure gauge. This is the flow amplifier relief pressure.
- 7) If pressure is not to specification, turn adjusting screw in relief cartridge using a hex head wrench to adjust pressure.  
If pressure cannot be adjusted to specification, disassemble and inspect flow amplifier.



## 6. FLOW AMPLIFIER LS PORT FLOW TEST

### · SPECIFICATION

Oil temperature  $45 \pm 5^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $113 \pm 9^{\circ}\text{F}$ )  
Engine speed Low idle  
LS port flow (approx.) 1 m l /min

### · GAUGE AND TOOL

Temperature reader  
Measuring container  
Stop watch

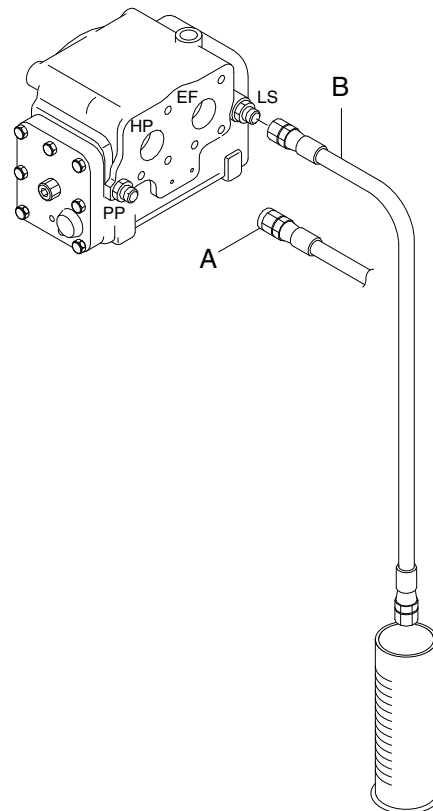
Flow amplifier LS port flow test will check for a plugged or missing orifice in the bottom of the priority valve spool. A plugged orifice will block warm up flow to the steering unit which can cause thermal shock (see for an explanation of thermal shock page 5-22).

A missing orifice can cause the pump to be loaded to high pressure at all times causing overheating.

- 1) Install temperature reader (see temperature reader installation procedure in this group.)
- 2) Heat hydraulic oil to specifications (see hydraulic oil warm up procedure at page 6-54).
- 3) Disconnect line from LS port and install plug (A).
- 4) Connect line (B) to flow amplifier.
- 5) Start engine and run at specification.
- 6) Measure flow from LS port for 1 minute.
- 7) If flow is low, low steering system neutral pressure or a plugged orifice in bottom priority valve spool is indicated.

If flow is high, remove priority valve spool and inspect for a missing orifice.

Do hydraulic system restriction test in this group.



7707SE19

## 7. FLOW AMPLIFIER RELIEF CARTRIDGE LEAKAGE TEST

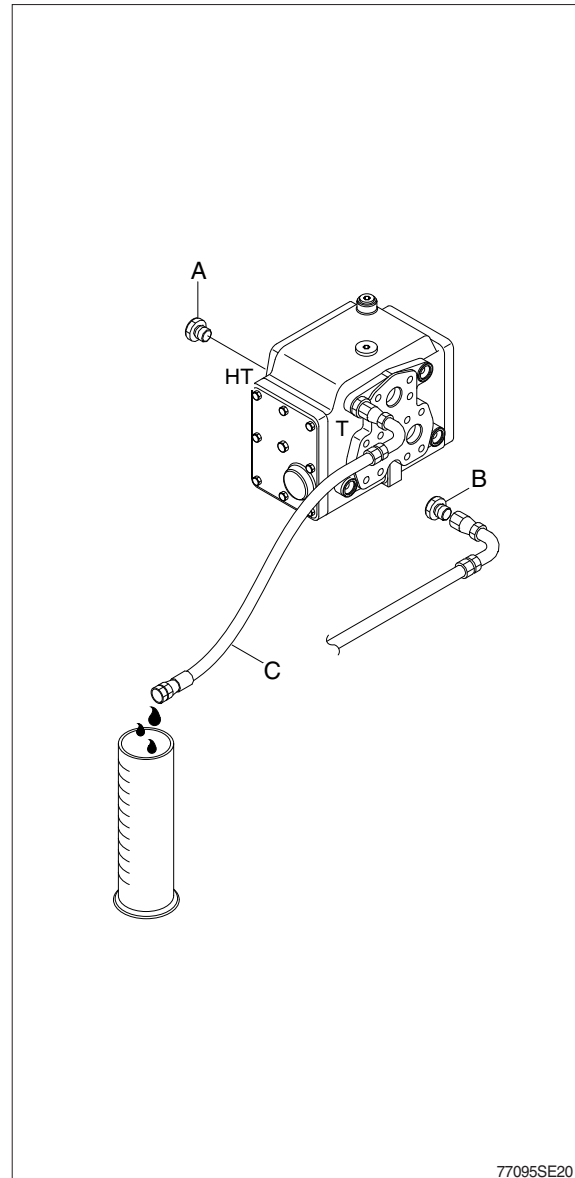
### · SPECIFICATION

Oil temperature  $45 \pm 5^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $113 \pm 9^{\circ}\text{F}$ )  
Engine speed High idle  
Maximum leakage 1 m l /min (16 drops per min)

### · GAUGE AND TOOL

Temperature reader  
Measuring container  
Stop watch

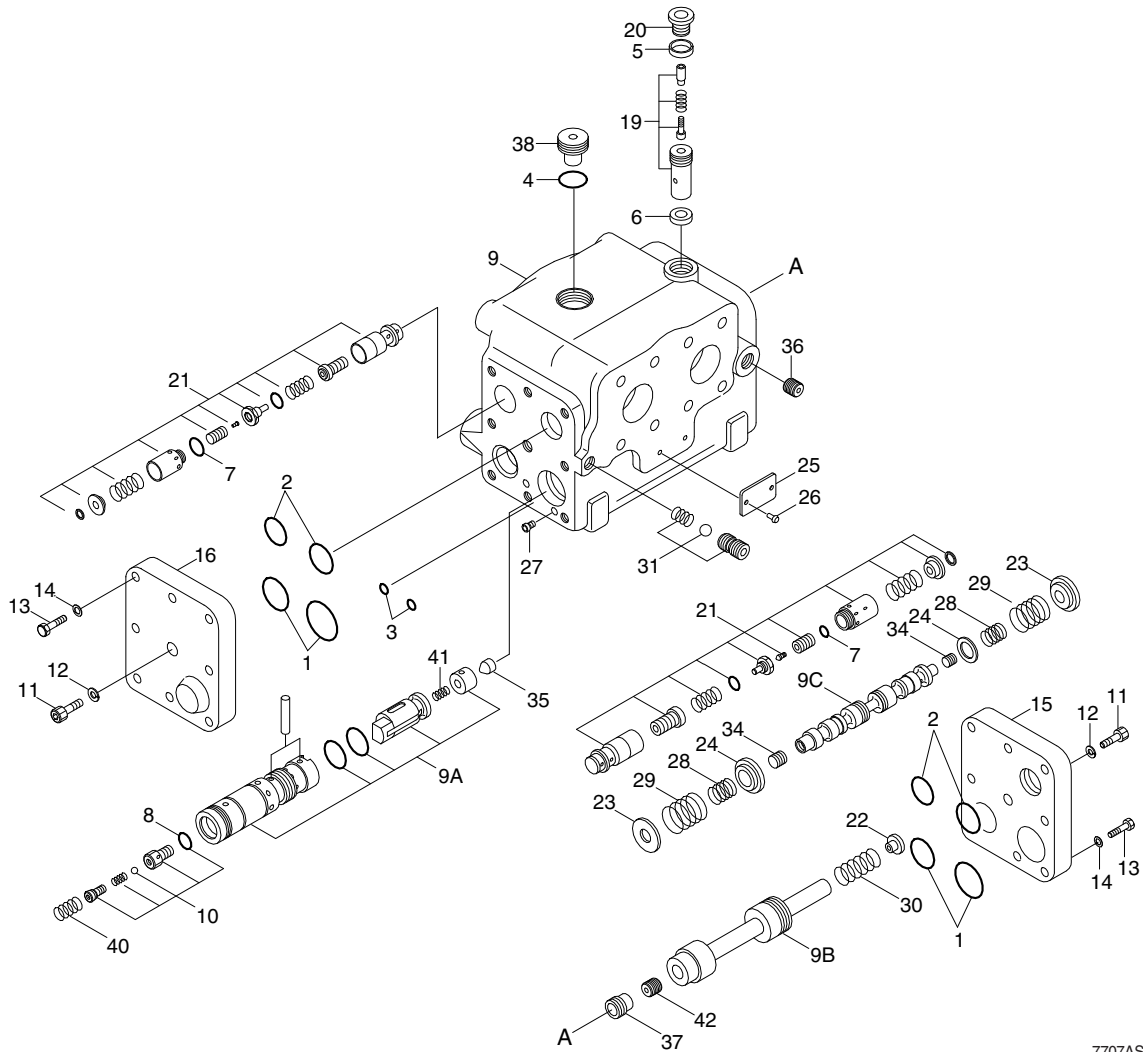
- 1) Install temperature reader.  
(see temperature reader installation procedure in this group).
- 2) Heat hydraulic oil to specifications.  
(see hydraulic oil warm up procedure at page 6-54).
- 3) Install plug (A) in HT port.  
Disconnect line from T port on flow amplifier.  
Install plug (B) in line.
- 4) Connect line (C) to flow amplifier.
- 5) Start engine and run at specification.
- 6) Measure oil leakage from T port.
- 7) If leakage is more than specification, disassemble and inspect cartridge for damage or debris.



## GROUP 4 DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

### 1. FLOW AMPLIFIER

#### 1) STRUCTURE

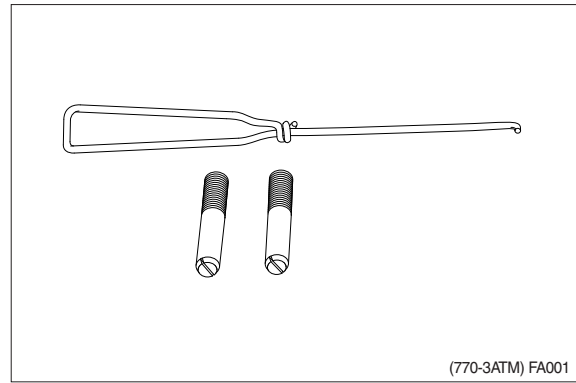


7707ASE09

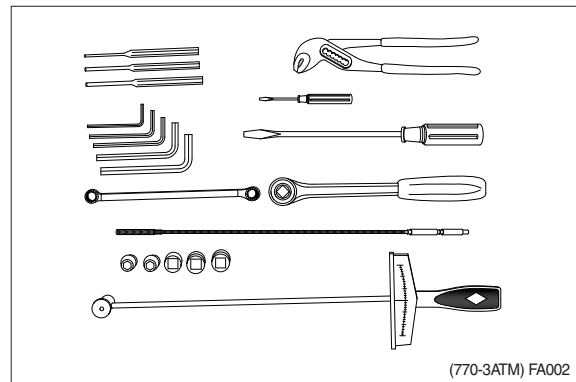
1	O-ring	12	Spring washer	28	Spring
2	O-ring	13	Screw	29	Spring
3	O-ring	14	Spring washer	30	Spring
4	O-ring	15	End cover	31	Throttle check valve
5	Washer	16	End cover	34	Orifice
6	Washer	19	Relief valve	35	Orifice
7	O-ring	20	Plug	36	Orifice
8	O-ring	21	Shock, suction valve	37	Plug
9	Housing	22	Spring seat	38	Plug
9A	Amplifier valve	23	Spring seat	40	Spring
9B	Priority valve	24	Spring guide	41	Spring
9C	Directional valve	26	Name plate	42	Orifice
10	Check valve	27	Orifice		
11	Screw				

## 2) TOOLS

- Guide screws : M8 × 1.0
- Hook : Wire



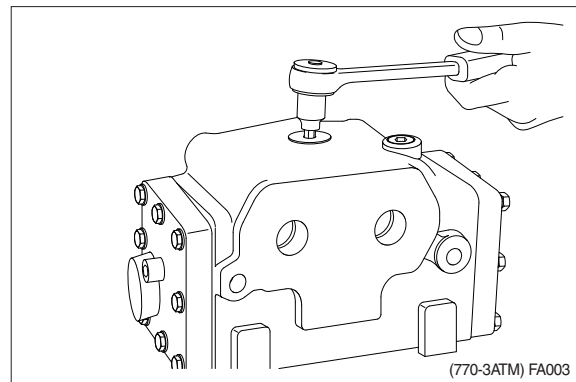
- Hexagon keys : 4, 5, 6, 8 and 10 mm
- Ratchet for socket spanners
- Hex socket for external : 13, 17 & 19 mm
- Hex socket for internal : 8 & 10 mm
- Multigrip pliers
- Ring spanner: 13 mm
- Screwdrivers : 3 and 10 mm
- Steel Mandrels : 3, 5 and 8 mm
- Torque wrench : 12.2 kgf · m (88 lbf · ft)
- Magnetic rod



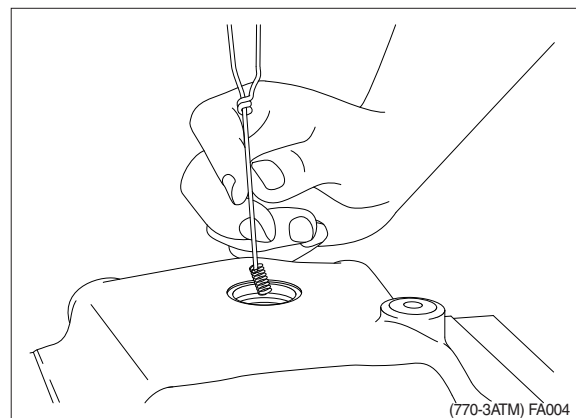
## 3) DISASSEMBLY

### (1) Disassembly counter pressure valve

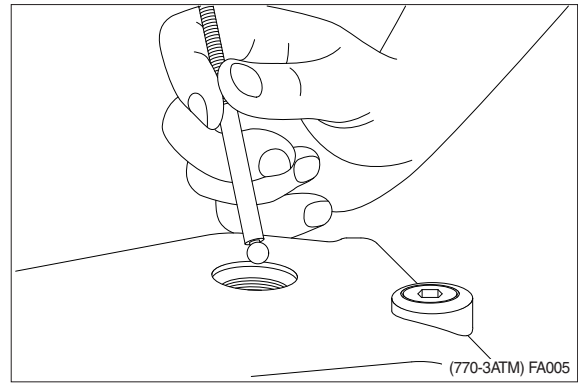
- ① Unscrew plug with O-ring (hexagon socket for 8 mm internal hexagon).



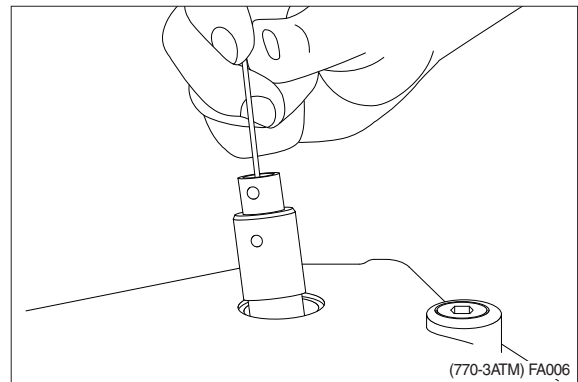
- ② Take out small spring (hook).



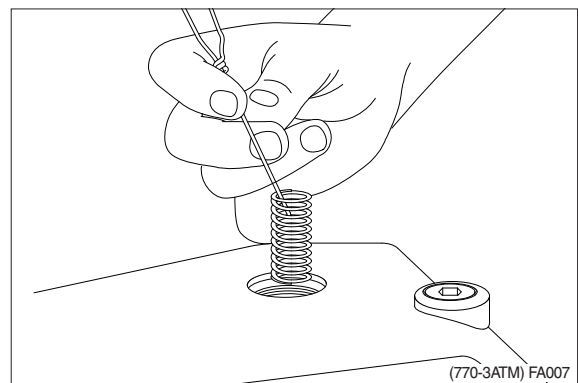
③ Take out ball (magnetic rod).



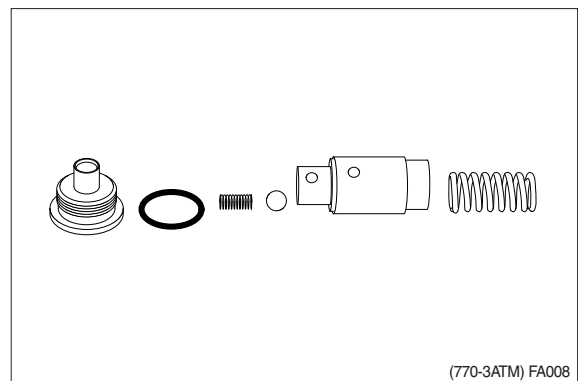
④ Take out piston.



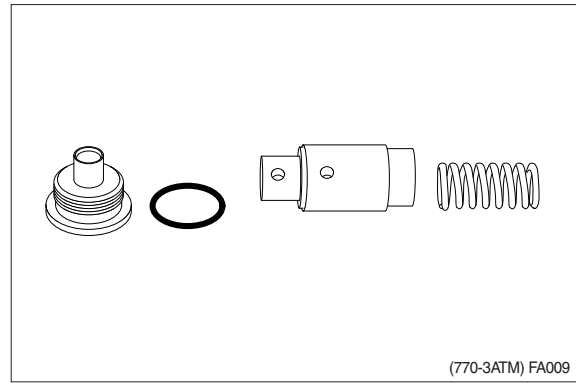
⑤ Take out spring.



⑥ Counter pressure valve shown disassembled.

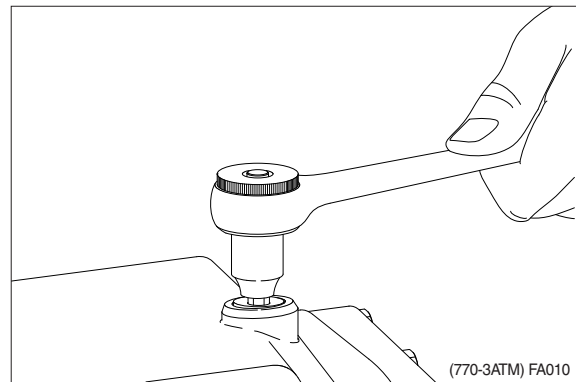


- ⑦ Counter pressure valve with orifice shown disassembled.

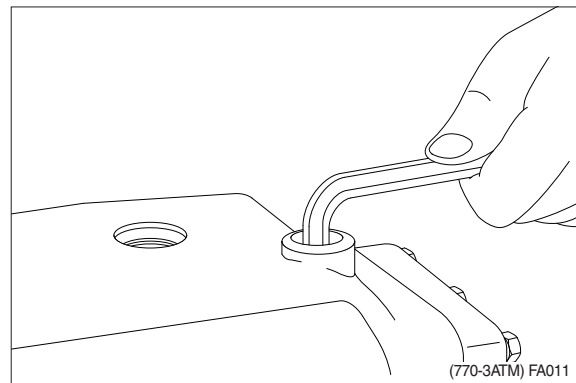


**(2) Removing pressure relief valve**

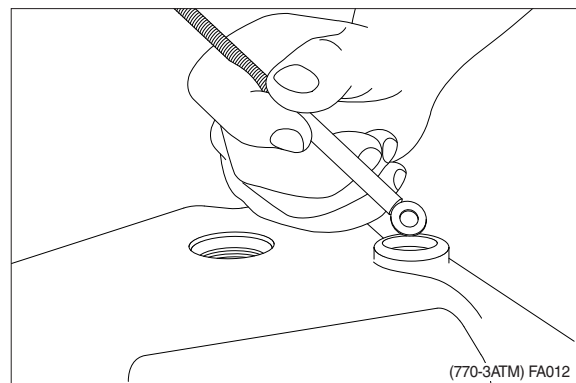
- ① Unscrew plug with washer (hexagon socket for 8 mm internal hexagon).



- ② Screw pressure relief valve out (10 mm hexagon key).



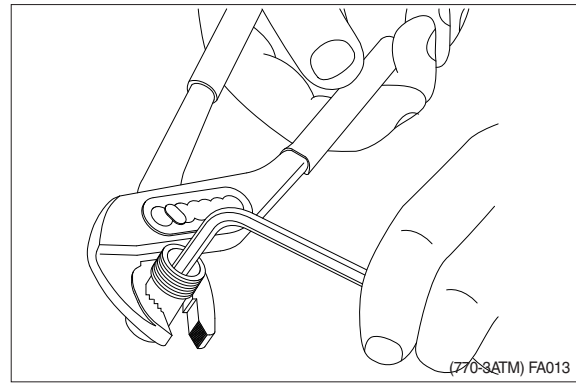
- ③ Take out washer (magnetic rod).



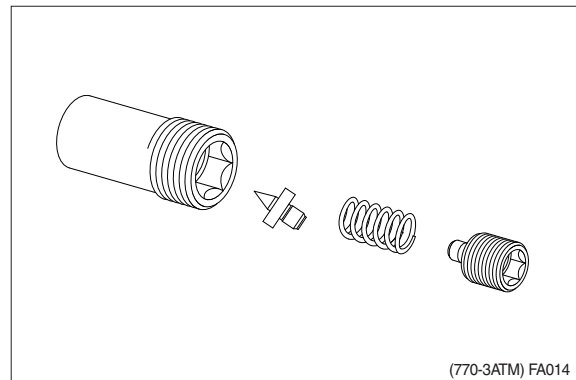


### (3) Disassembly pressure relief valve

- ① Hold cartridge (multigrip pliers) and screw the adjustment screw out (5 mm hexagon key).

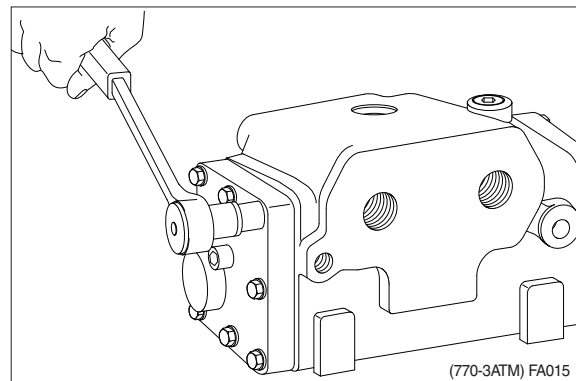


- ② Pressure relief valve shown disassembled.

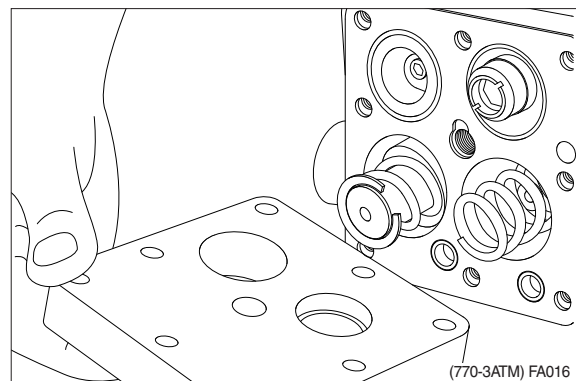


### (4) Removing end cover at PP-connection

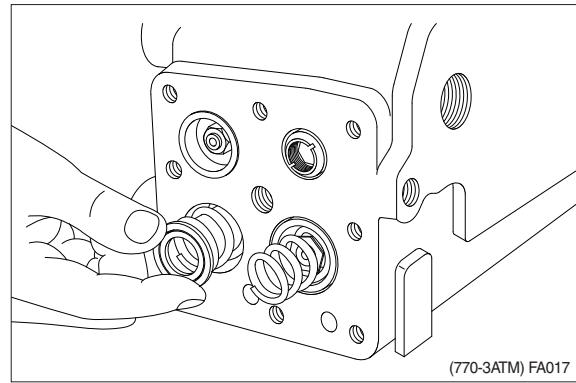
- ① Unscrew screws with spring washer using hexagon socket for 13 mm external hexagon and 10 mm internal hexagon.



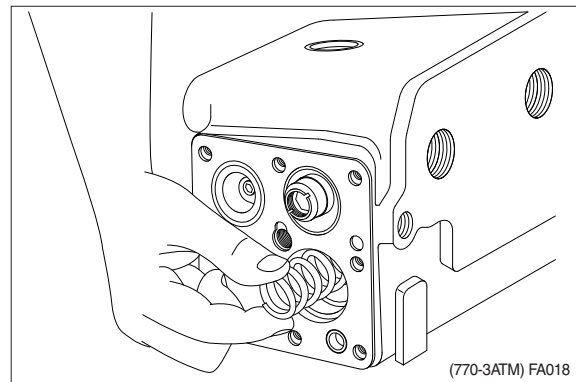
- ② Remove end cover.



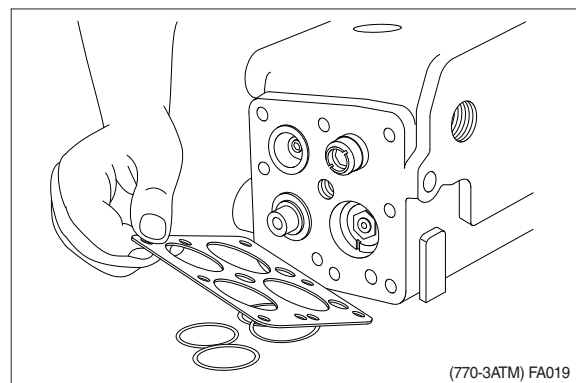
- ③ Remove stop and 2 springs.



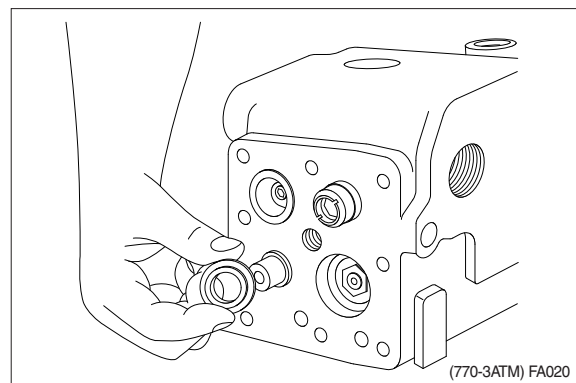
- ④ Remove spring.



- ③ Remove plate and 6 O-rings.

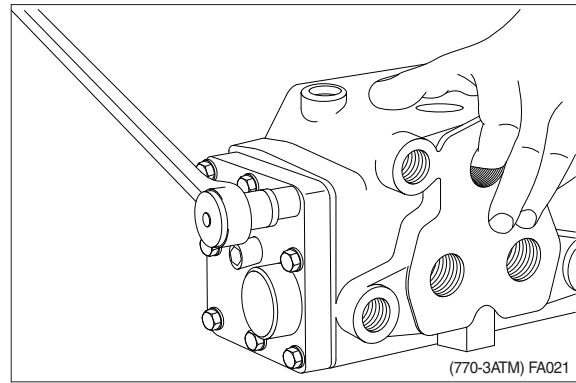


- ④ Remove spring guide.

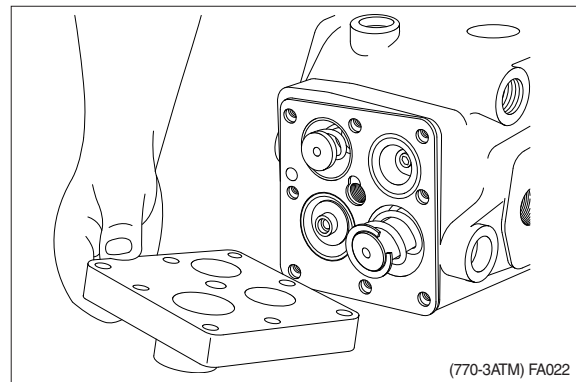


### (5) Removing end cover at LS-connection

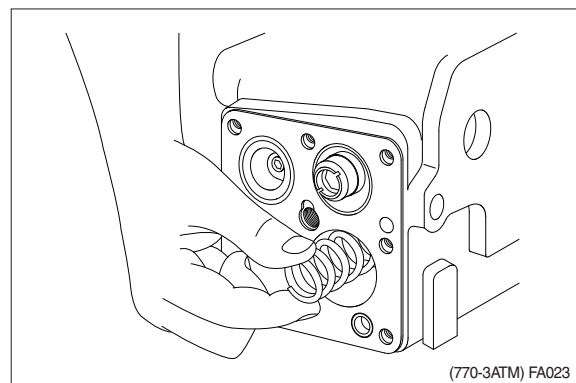
- ① Unscrew screws with spring washer using hexagon socket for 13 mm external hexagon and 10 mm internal hexagon.



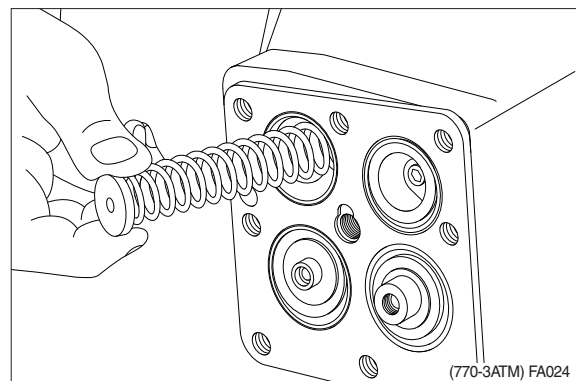
- ② Remove end cover.



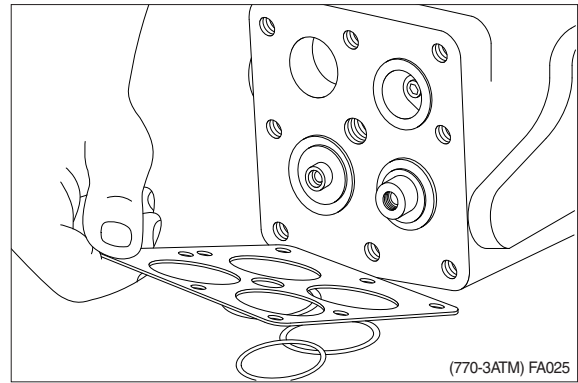
- ③ Remove stop and 2 springs.



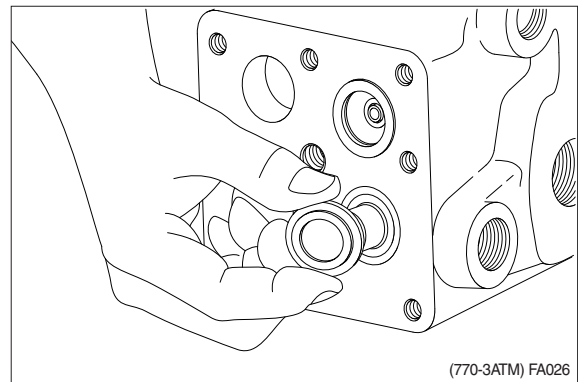
- ④ Remove stop and spring.



- ⑤ Remove plate and 4 O-rings.

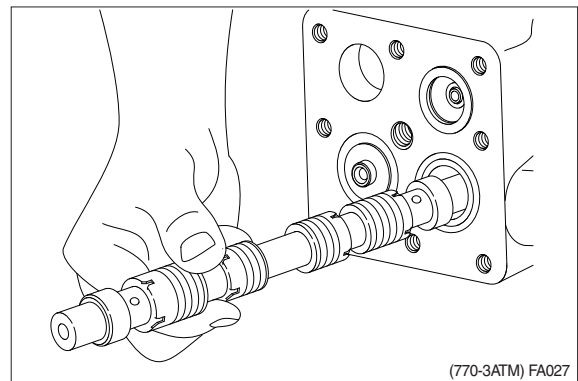


- ⑥ Remove spring guide.

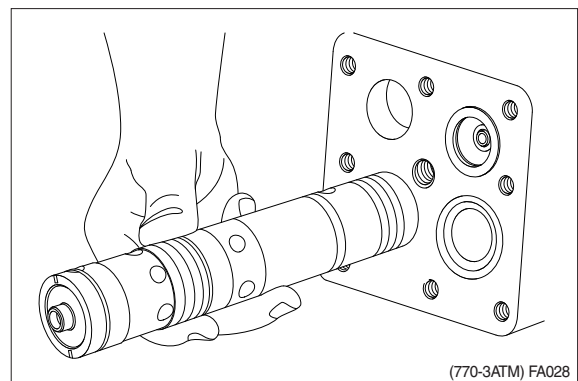


## (6) Removing spools

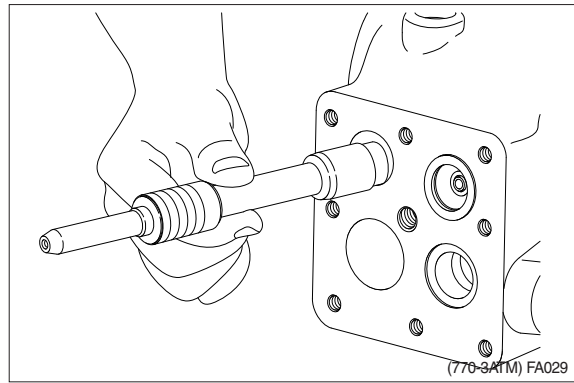
- ① Remove directional spool.



- ② Remove amplifier spool.

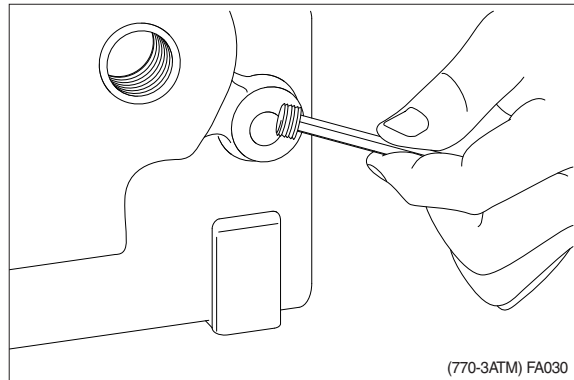


- ③ Remove priority valve spool.

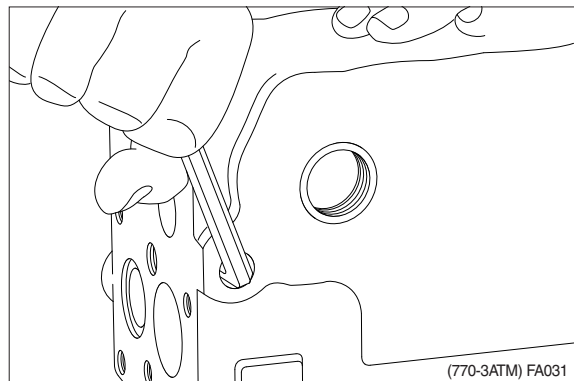


**(7) Removing orifices and throttle check valve**

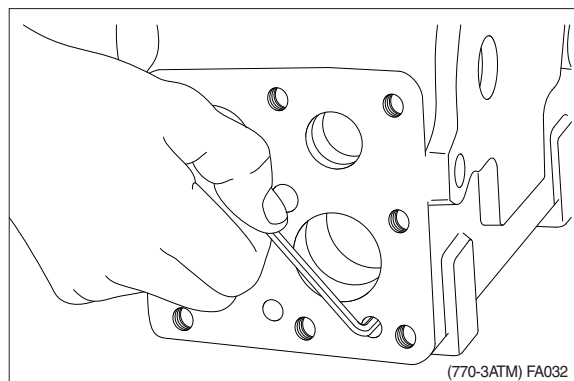
- ① Unscrew orifice in LS-connection with 6 mm hexagon key.



- ② Unscrew throttle check valve in PP-connection with 6mm hexagon key.

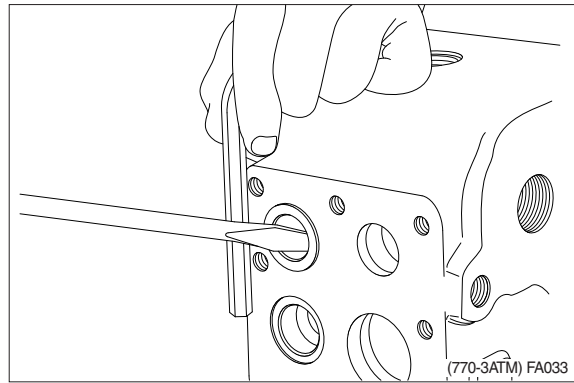


- ③ Unscrew orifice in housing with 4 mm hexagon key.



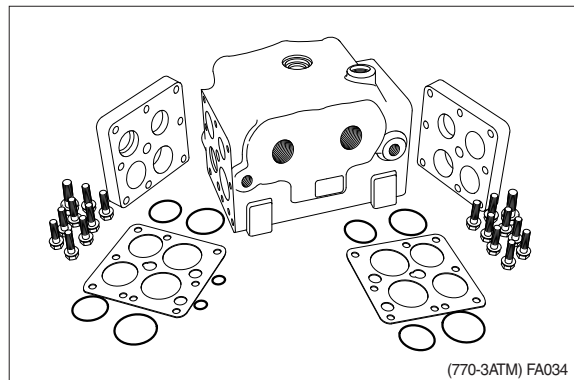
## (8) Removing shock valves

- ① Remove shock valve with screwdriver and hexagon key.

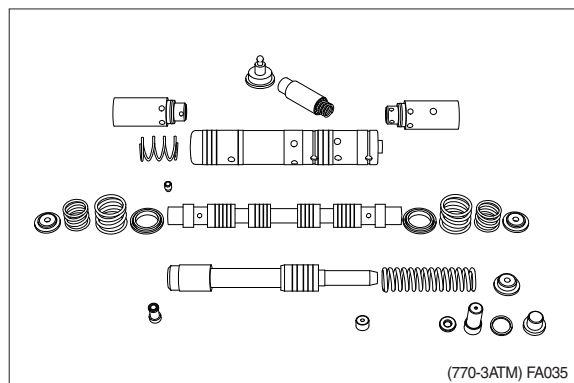


## (9) Overview of disassembled parts

- ① Housing and end cover with accessories.

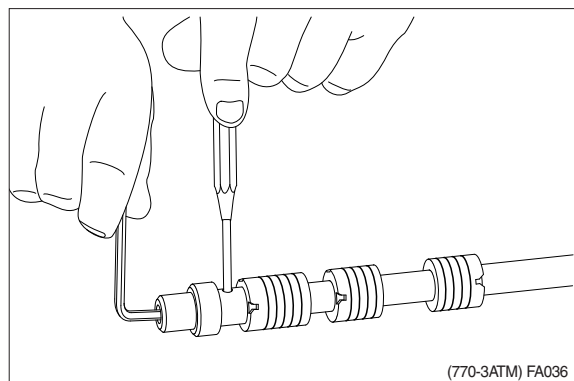


- ② Spool with accessories.

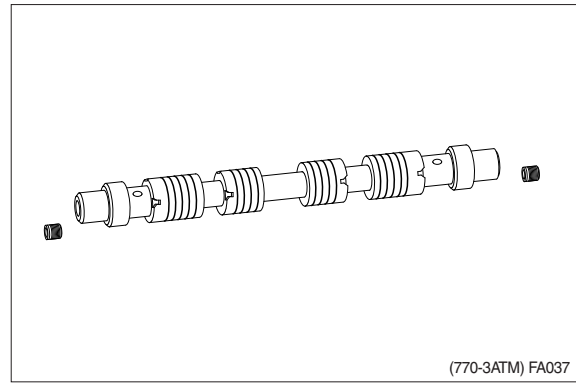


## (10) Disassembly of directional spool

- ① Unscrew orifice with 4 mm hexagon key. Use a mandrel.

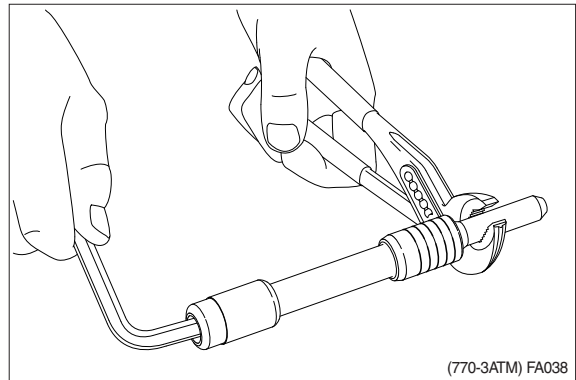


- ② Directional spool shown disassembled.

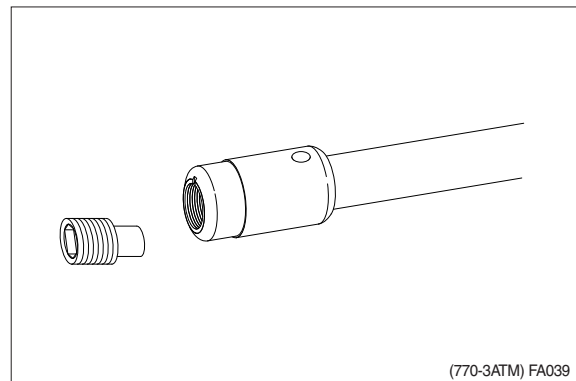


### (11) Disassembly of priority valve spool

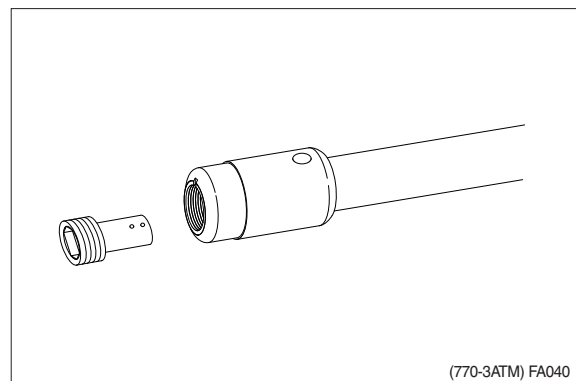
- ① Unscrew plug or throttle check valve with 8 mm hexagon key.



- ② Priority valve spool with plug for external PP shown disassembled.



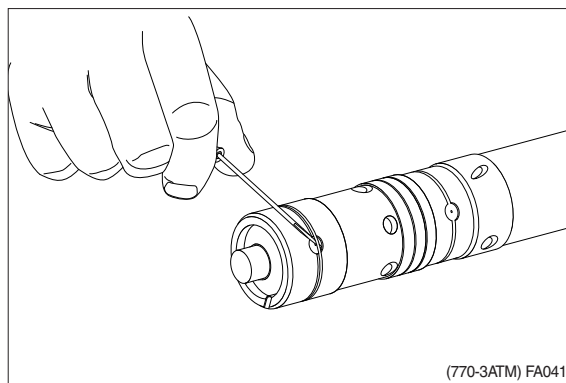
- ③ Priority valve spool with throttle check valve for internal PP shown disassembled.



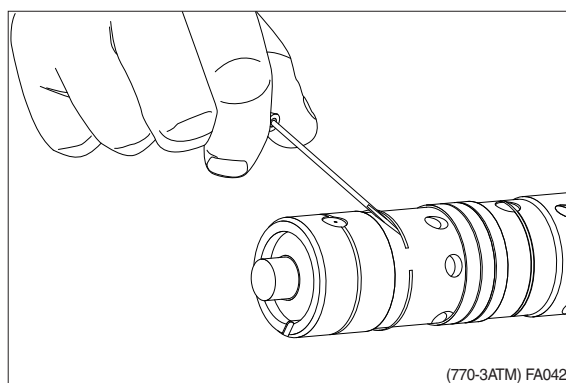


## (12) Disassembly of amplifier spool

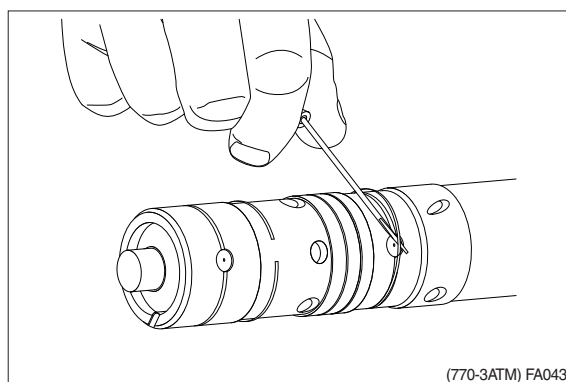
- ① Carefully remove the spring ring from the recess with 3mm screwdriver.
- ※ Avoid damage to the spring ring.



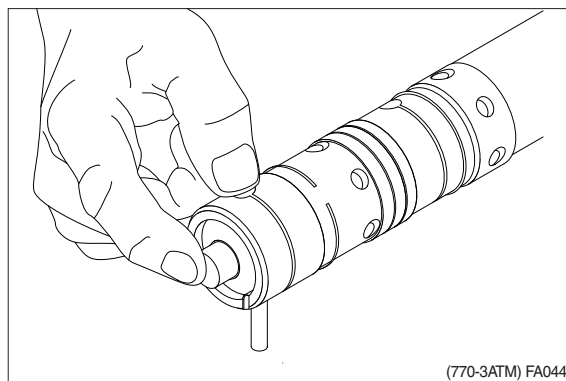
- ② Carefully guide the spring ring back.



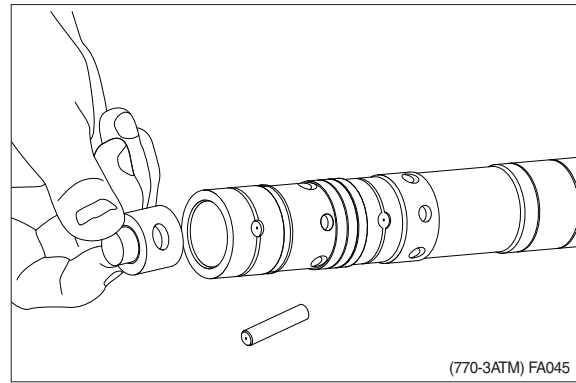
- ③ Carefully take the spring ring from the recess and guide it back with 3mm screwdriver.
- ※ Avoid damage to the spring ring.



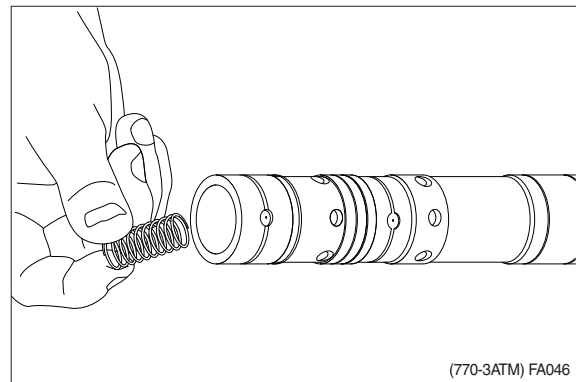
- ④ Press pin out gently with finger.



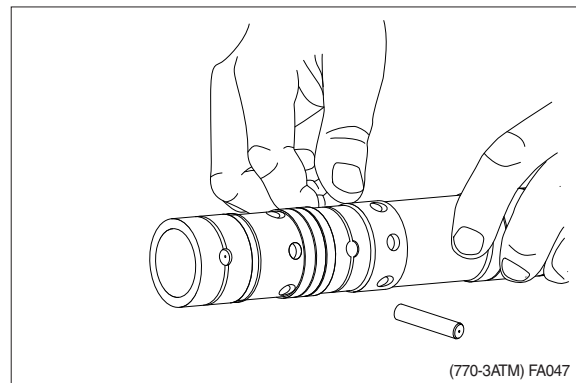
⑤ Take out plug.



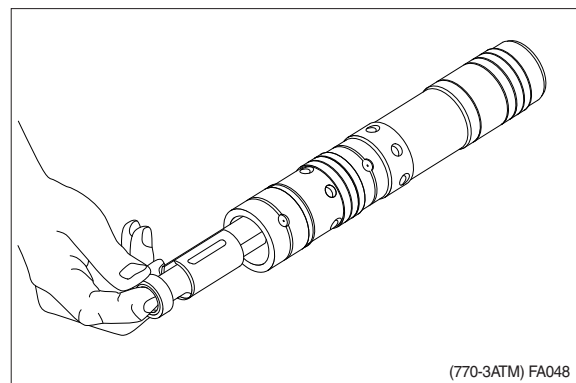
⑥ Take out spring.



⑦ Take out pin 3mm screwdriver.

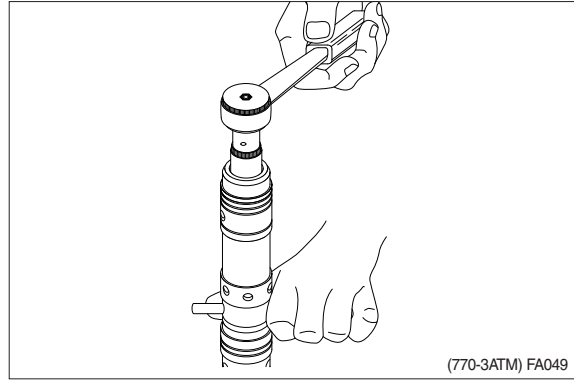


⑧ Take out inner spool.

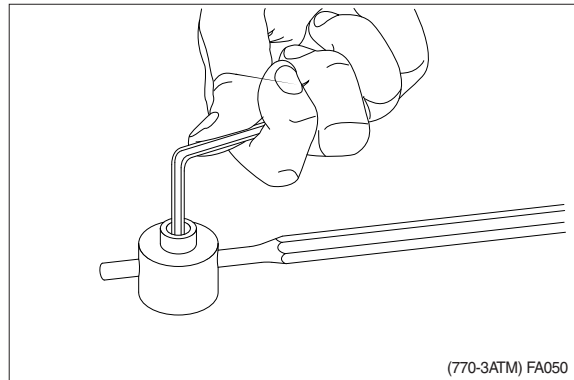


- ⑨ Unscrew check valve with hexagon socket for 17 mm external hexagon and mandrel in the pin hole.

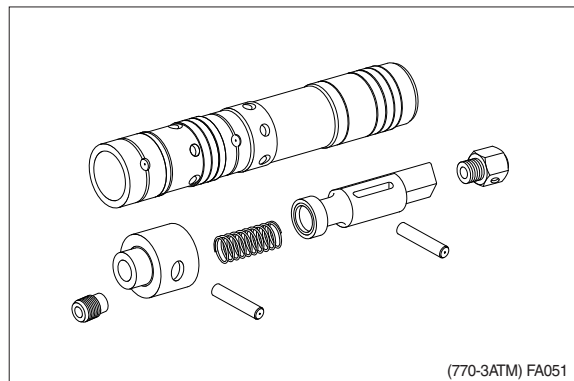
※ Avoid damaging the spool surface.



- ⑩ Unscrew orifice out of plug with 4 mm hexagon key. Use a mandrel.

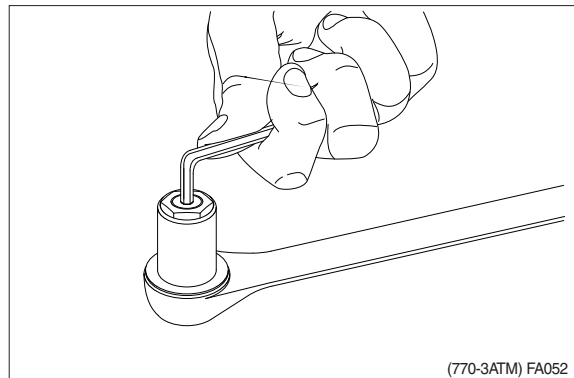


- ⑪ Amplifier spool shown disassembled.

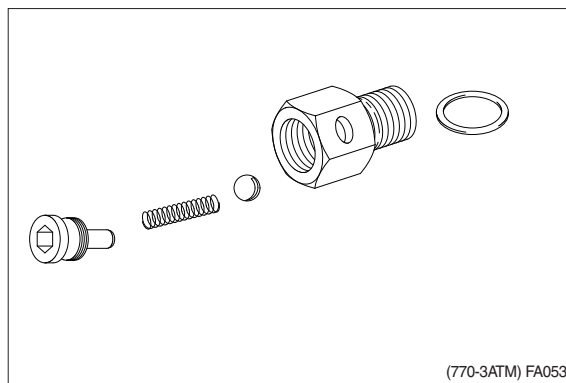


### (13) Disassembly of check valve

- ① Unscrew plug with 4 mm hexagon key and hexagon socket for 17 mm external hexagon.

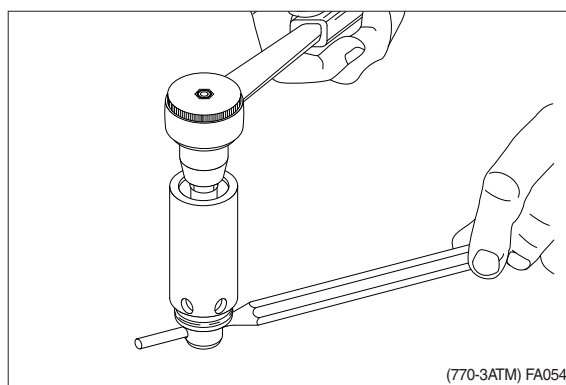


- ② Check valve shown disassembled.

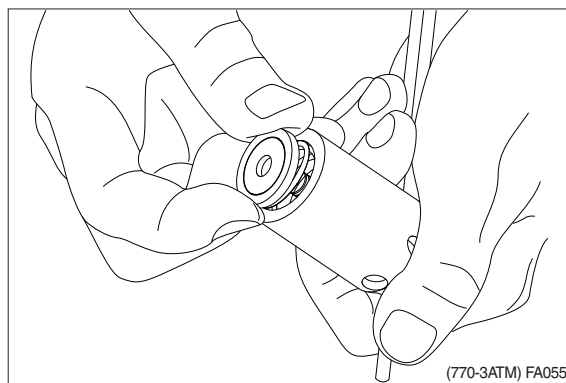


**(14) Disassembly of shock valve / suction valve**

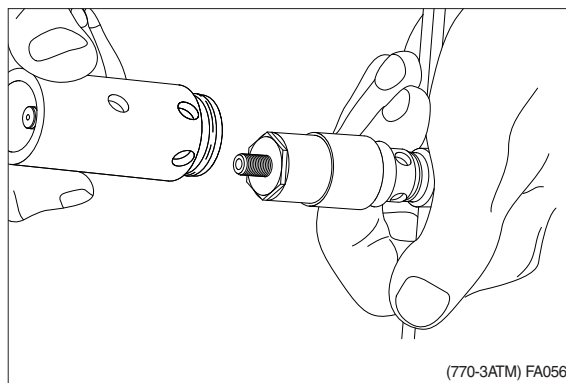
- ① Unscrew locknut with hexagon socket for 13 mm external hexagon. Use a mandrel.
- ※ When readjusting shock valve hold locknut with 13 mm ring spanner.



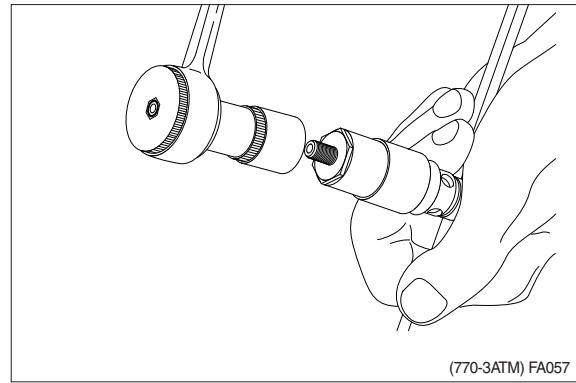
- ② Take out disc and spring.



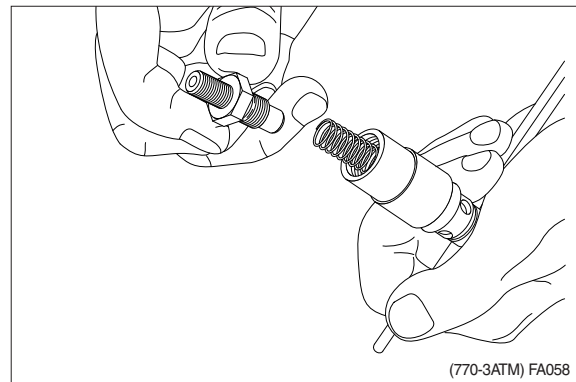
- ③ Take off housing.



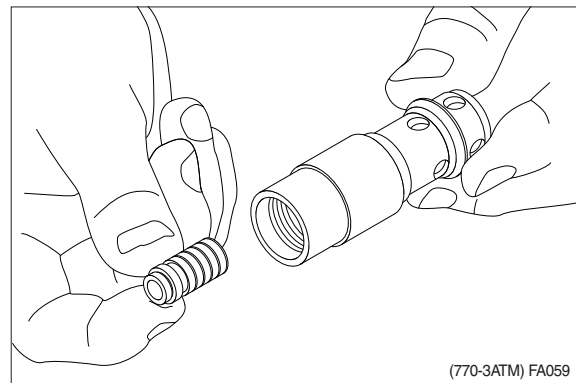
- ④ Unscrew pilot valve with hexagon socket for 19 mm external hexagon. Use a mandrel.



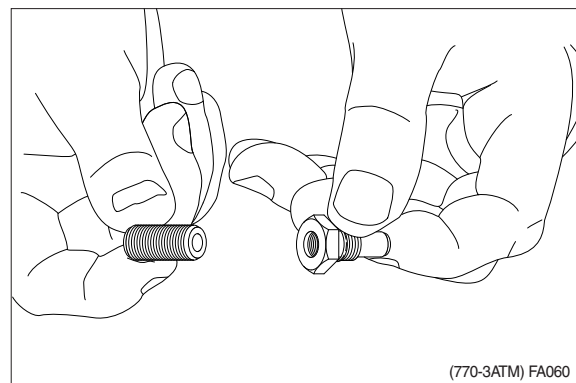
- ⑤ Take out pilot valve and spring.



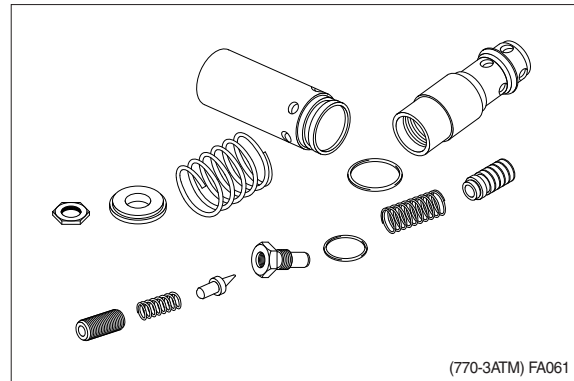
- ⑥ Take out spool.



- ⑦ Unscrew adjustment screw and take out spring and ball.



- ⑧ Shock valve / suction valve shown disassembled.



※ **Cleaning**

Clean all parts carefully with low aromatic kerosene.

※ **Inspection and replacement**

Replace all gaskets and sealing washers. Check all other parts carefully and replace if necessary.

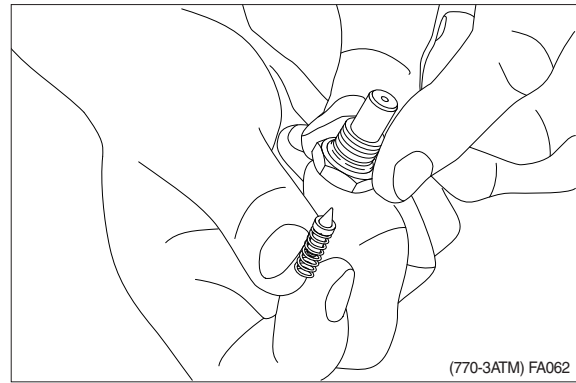
※ **Lubrication**

Before assembly, lubricate all parts with hydraulic oil.

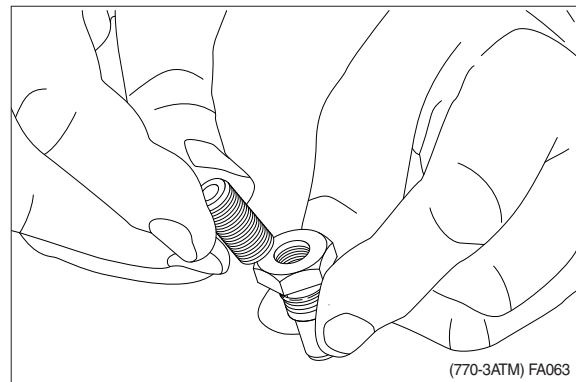
#### 4) ASSEMBLY

##### (1) Assembly of shock valve / suction valve

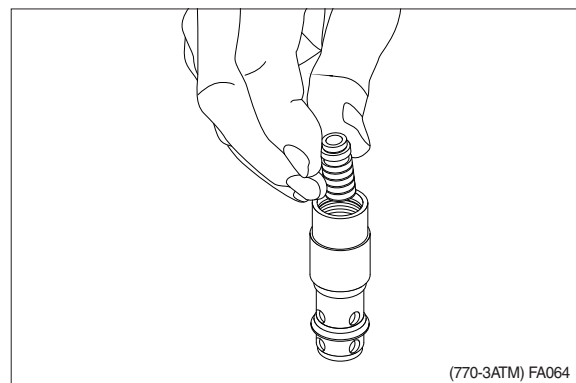
- ① Guide spring with cone into housing.



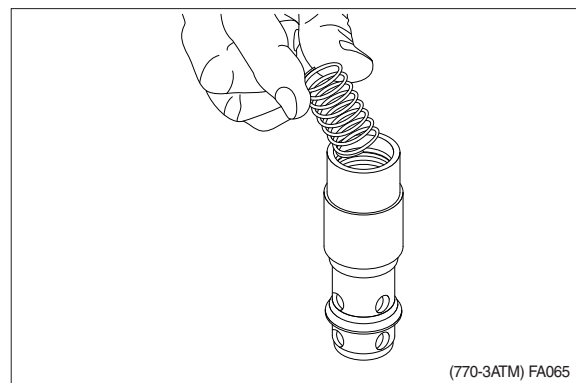
- ② Fit adjustment screw.



- ③ Fit spool.

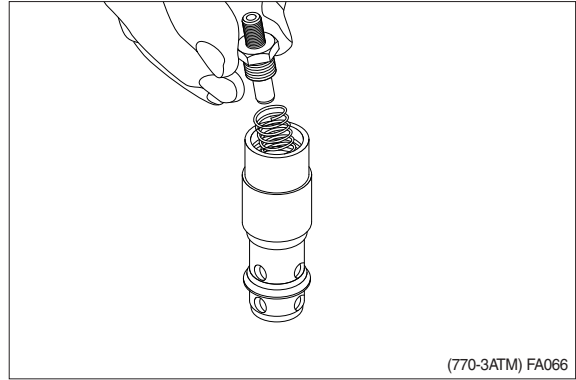


- ④ Fit spring.

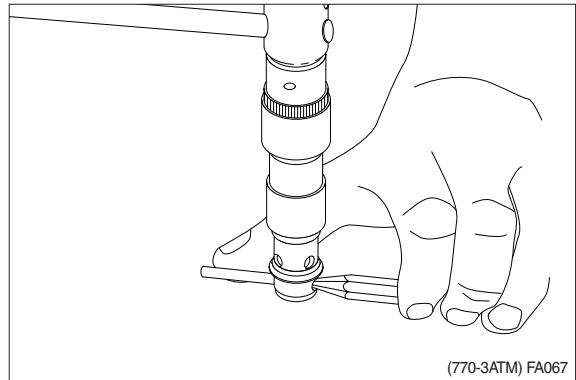




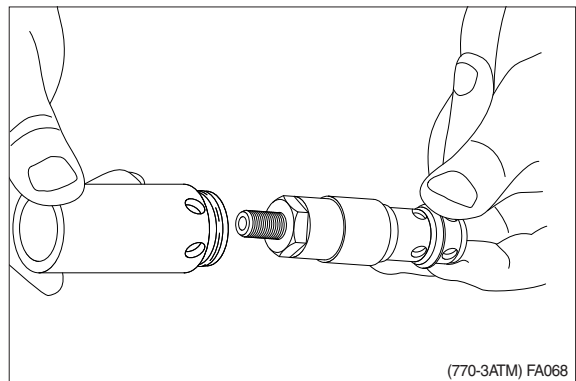
- ⑤ Fit pilot valve.  
Remember O-ring.



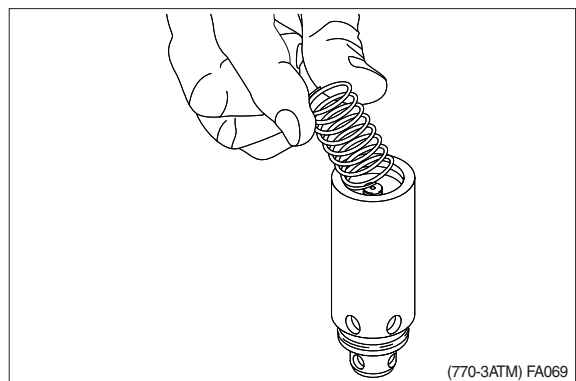
- ⑥ Tighten with torque wrench for 19 mm external hexagon. Use a mandrel.  
• Tightening torque :  $2 \pm 0.5 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $14.5 \pm 3.6 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )



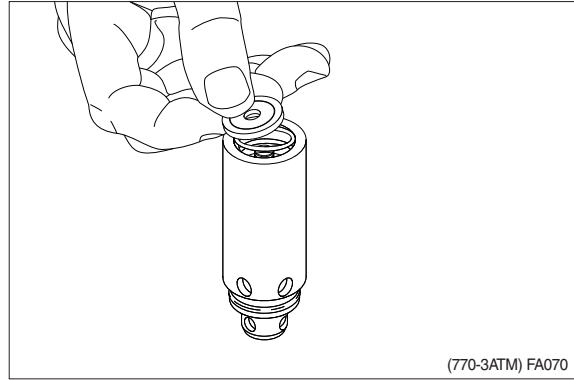
- ⑦ Fit housing.



- ⑧ Fit spring.

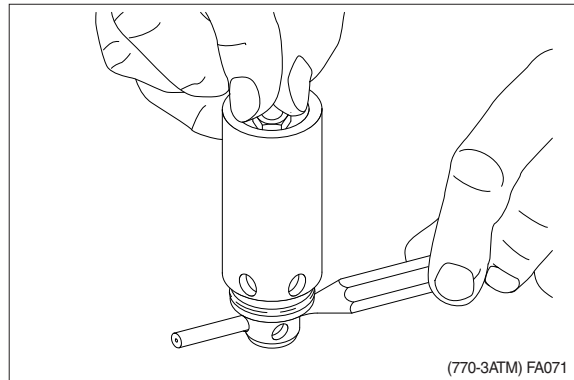


- ⑨ Fit disc.



- ⑩ Fit locknut.

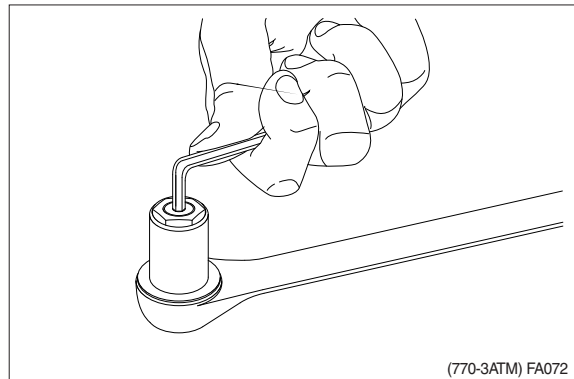
- Tightening torque :  $1.5 \pm 0.2 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $10.8 \pm 1.4 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )



## (2) Assembly of check valve

- ① Fit ball, spring and plug.

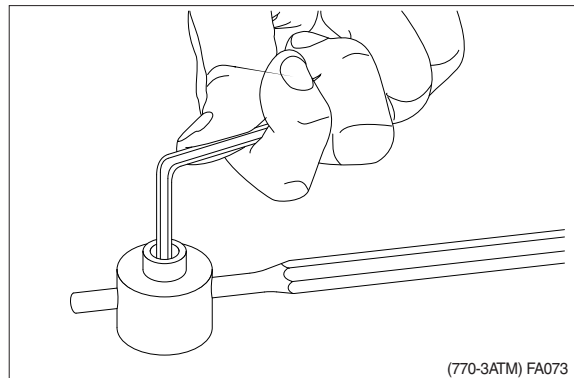
- Tightening torque :  $0.5 \pm 0.1 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $3.6 \pm 0.7 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )



## (3) Assembly of amplifier spool

- ① Fit orifice in plug.

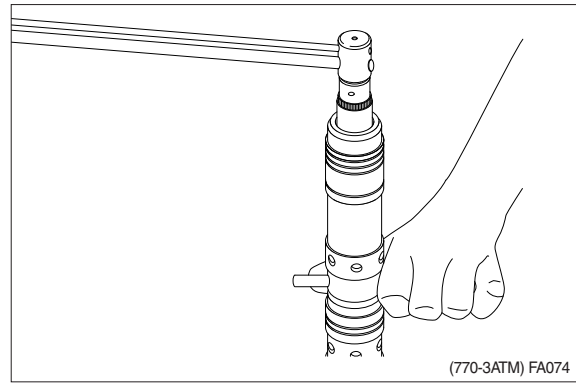
- Tightening torque :  $0.5 \pm 0.1 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $3.6 \pm 0.7 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )



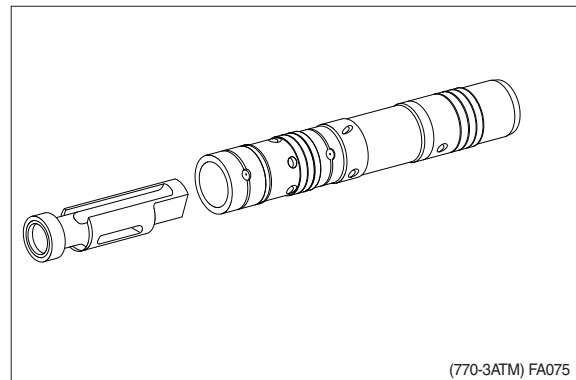
② Fit check valve.

- Tightening torque :  $2 \pm 0.3 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $14.5 \pm 2.2 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )

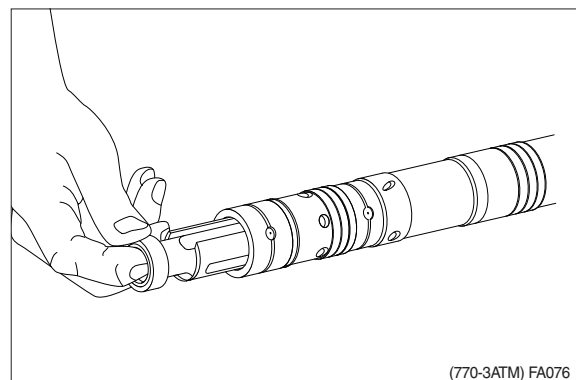
※ Avoid damaging spool surface.  
Remember O-ring.



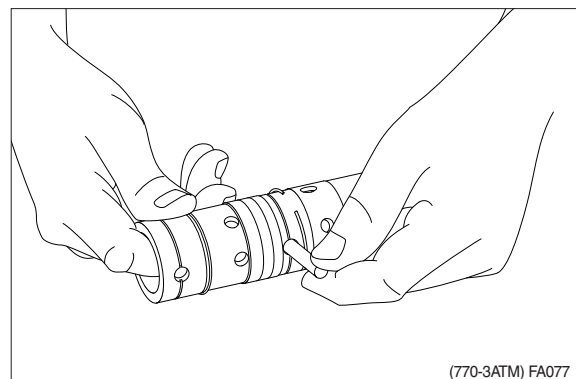
③ Place inner spool in the correct position.



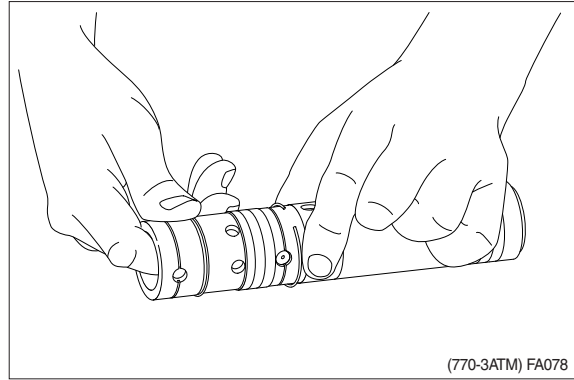
④ Guide inner spool in.



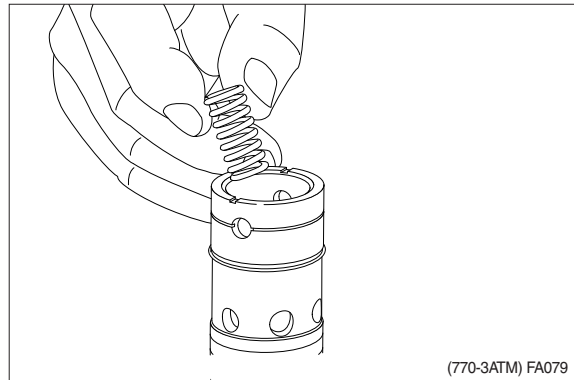
⑤ Fit pin.



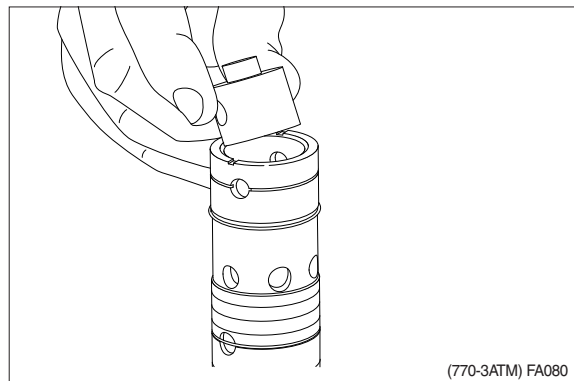
- ⑥ Push spring ring into position. Place spring ring into the recess with ends facing away from pin holes.



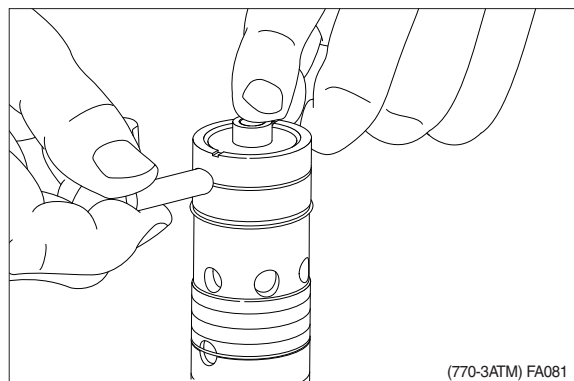
- ⑦ Fit spring.



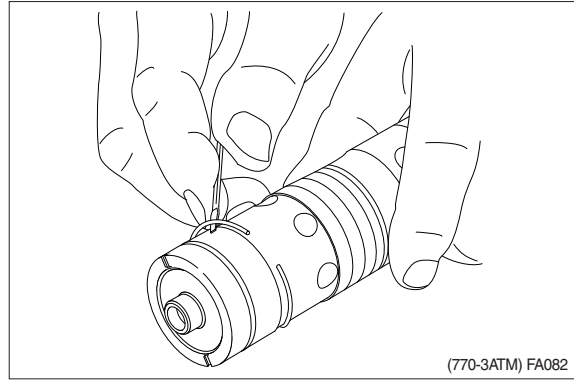
- ⑧ Fit plug.



- ⑨ Fit pin.

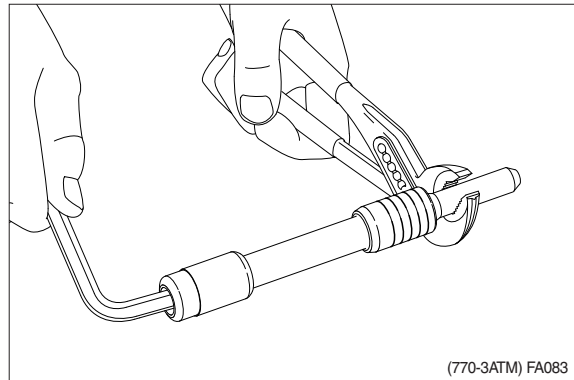


- ⑩ Push spring ring into position. Place spring ring into the recess with ends facing away from pin holes.



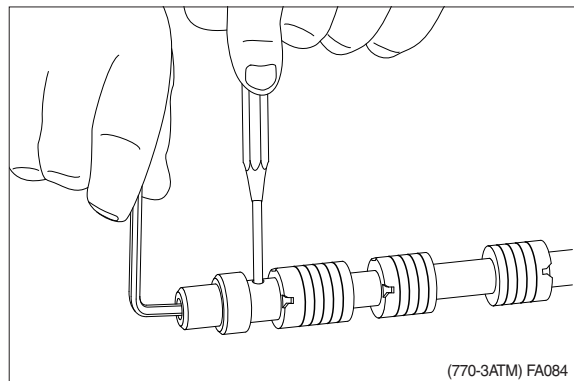
#### (4) Assembly of priority valve spool

- ① Fit plug or throttle check valve.  
External PP : Plug.  
Internal PP : Throttle check valve.  
· Tightening torque :  $1 \pm 0.3 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $7.2 \pm 2.2 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )



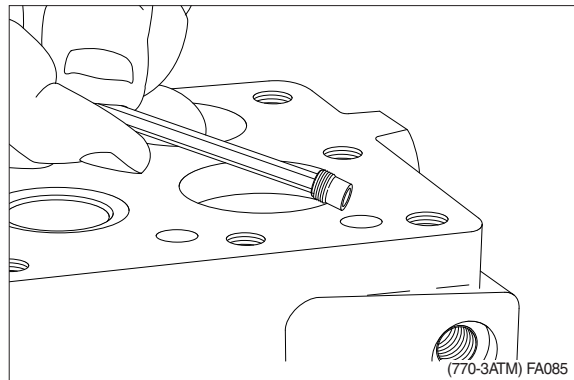
#### (5) Assembly of directional spool

- ① Screw in orifice.  
· Tightening torque :  $0.5 \pm 0.1 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $3.6 \pm 0.7 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )



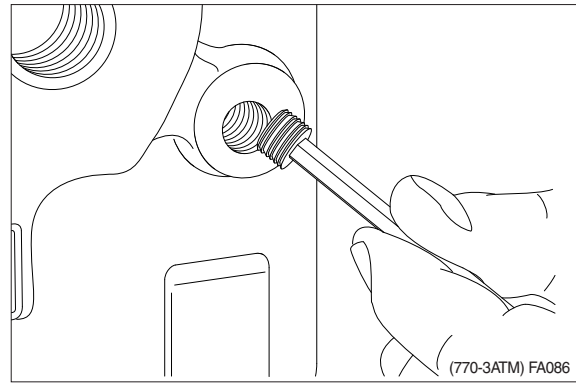
#### (6) Installation of orifice and throttle check valve

- ① Fit orifice in housing.  
· Tightening torque :  $0.5 \pm 0.1 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $3.6 \pm 0.7 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )



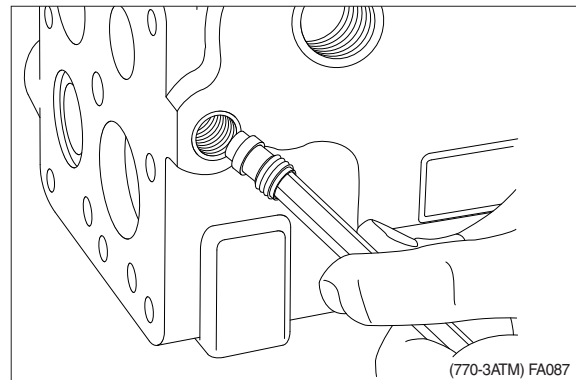
② Fit orifice in LS - connection.

- Tightening torque :  $1 \pm 0.3 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $7.2 \pm 2.2 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )



③ Fit throttle check valve in PP - connection.

- Tightening torque :  $1 \pm 0.3 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $7.2 \pm 2.2 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )



※ Comments on flow amplifiers with internal PP :

1. 1/4 BSP. F in PP - connection.

Fit washer and plug.

- Tightening torque :  $4.1 \pm 0.3 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $29.7 \pm 2.2 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )

2. 7/16 - 20 UNF in PP - connection.

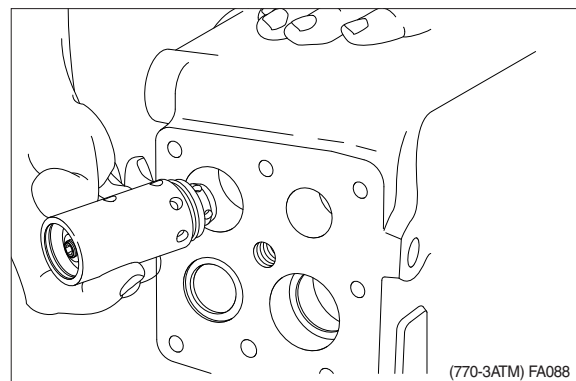
Fit O-ring and plug.

- Tightening torque :  $1.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $10.8 \pm 3.6 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )

**(7) Installation of shock valves**

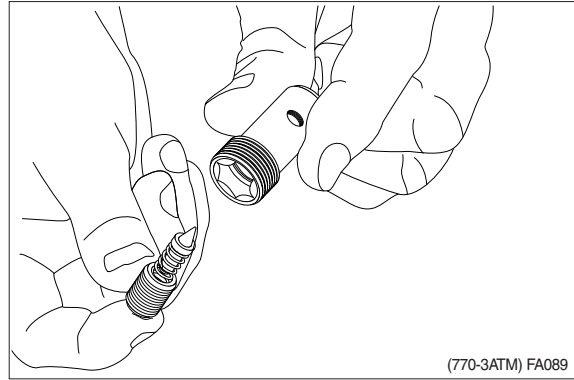
① Guide shock valve in and secure it by hand.

Remember O-ring.

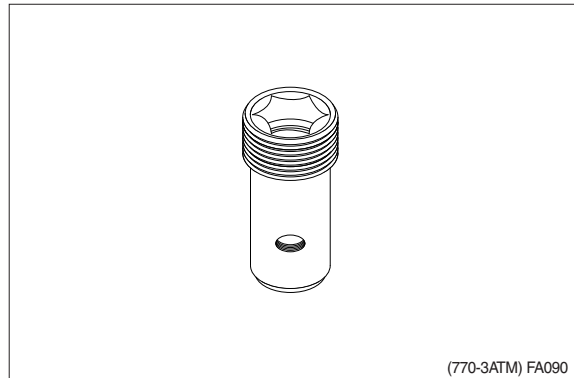


### (8) Assembly of pressure relief valve

- ① Guide adjustment screw, spring and cone up into the cartridge.

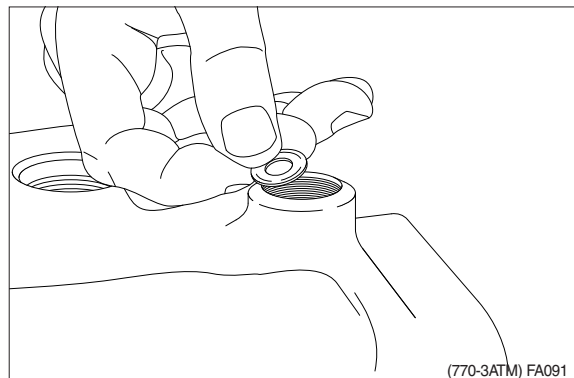


- ② Screw the adjustment screw so far in that the 10 mm hexagon key fully engages.

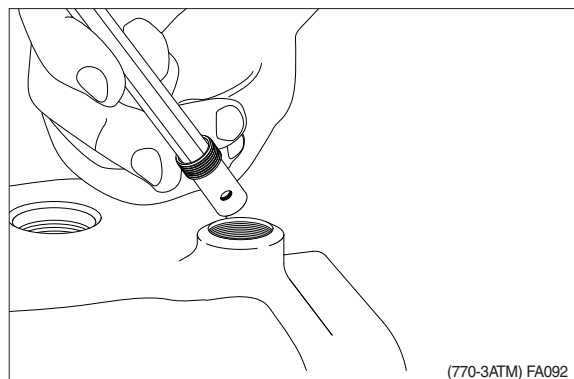


### (9) Installation of pressure relief valve

- ① Let the washer drop into the hole.

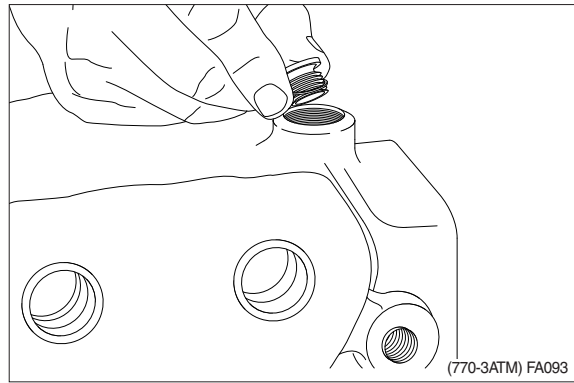


- ② Fit pressure relief valve.
  - Tightening torque :  $3.1 \pm 0.3 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $22.4 \pm 2.2 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )



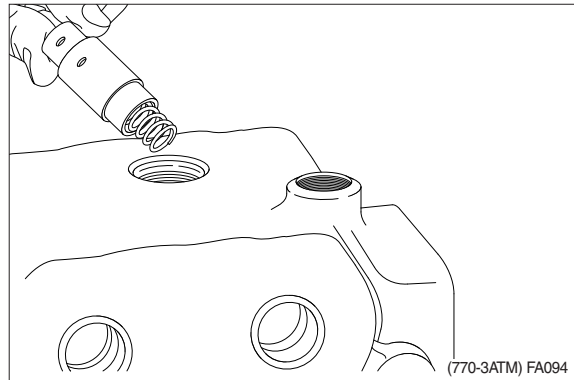


- ③ Fit plug with washer.  
 • Tightening torque :  $6 \pm 0.5 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
 ( $44.1 \pm 3.6 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )

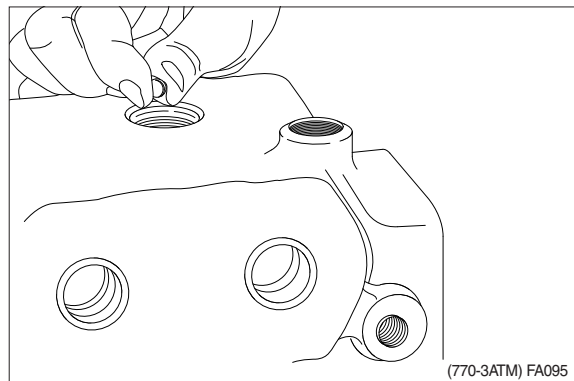


#### (10) Installation of back pressure valve

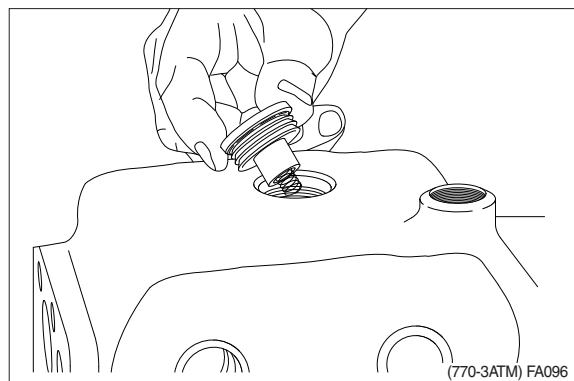
- ① First fit spring in piston with vaseline.  
 Fit assembled piston and spring.



- ② Let the ball drop down.

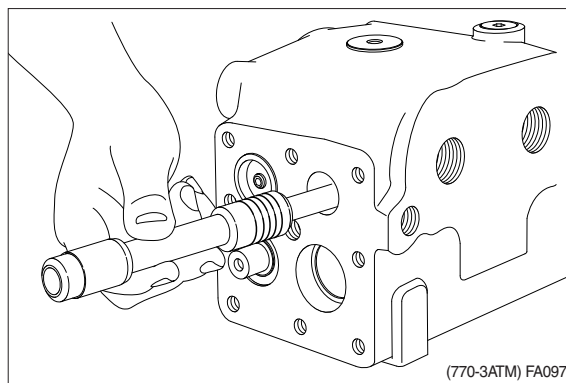


- ③ Fit spring in plug with vaseline.  
 Fit assembled plug and spring.  
 Remember O-ring.  
 • Tightening torque :  $2.6 \pm 0.3 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
 ( $18.8 \pm 2.2 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )

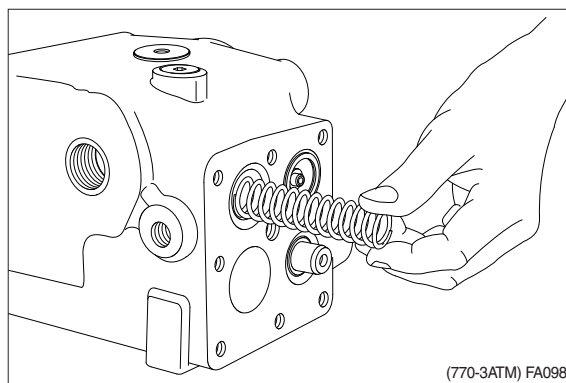


### (11) Installation of spools

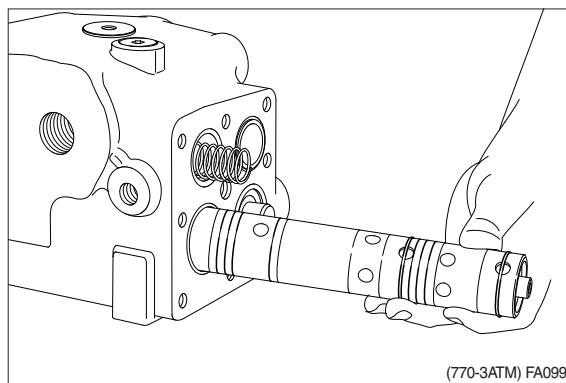
- ① Fit directional spool.  
Fit priority valve spool.  
※ Spring control must be placed in correct position against LS - connection.



- ② Fit spring.  
※ Spring must be by the LS - connection.

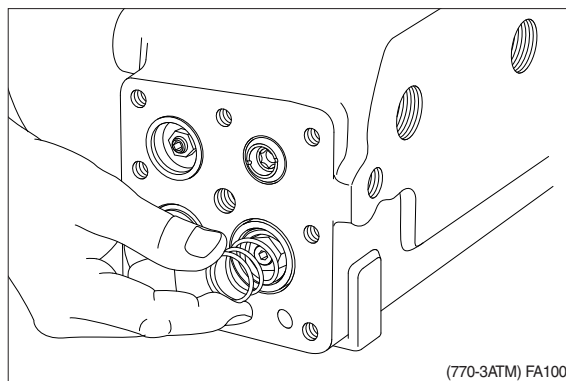


- ③ Fit amplifier spool.  
※ The orifice must be placed in correct position against LS - connection.

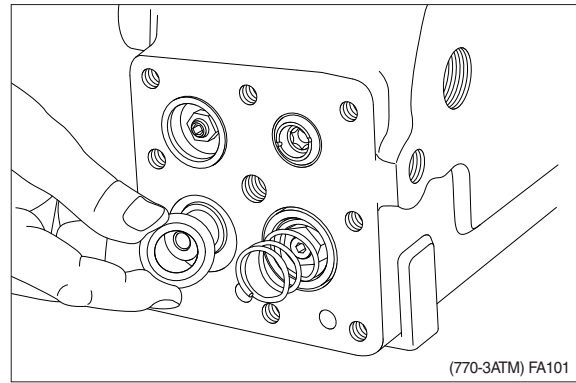


### (12) Installation of end cover at PP - connection

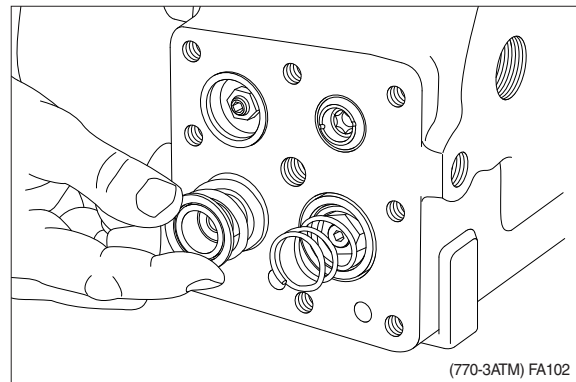
- ① Fit spring with vaseline on amplifier  
※ spool.  
The spring must be fitted at the PP - connection.



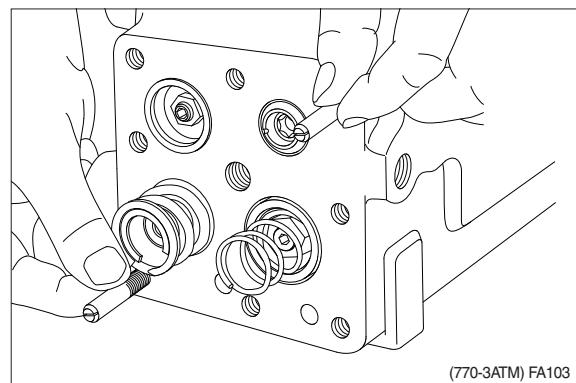
- ② Fit spring guide with vaseline.



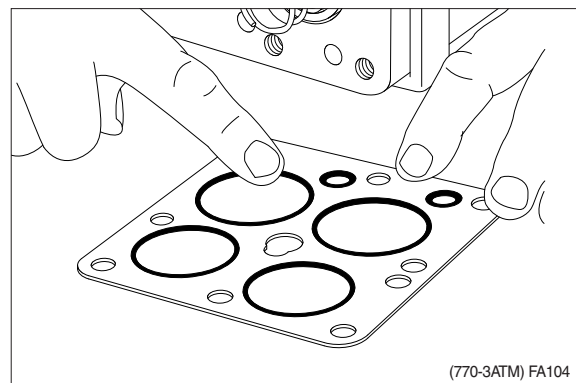
- ③ Fit large and small springs with vaseline.



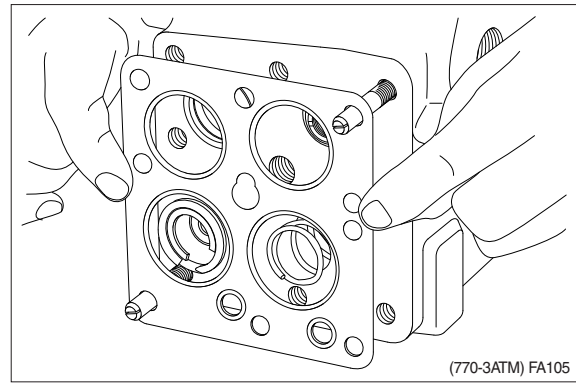
- ④ Fit guide screws.



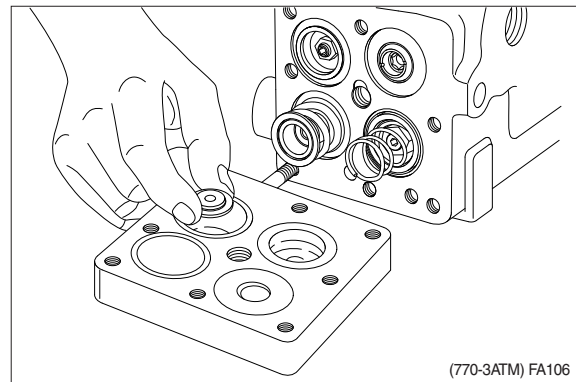
- ⑤ Fit 4 large and 2 small O-rings.



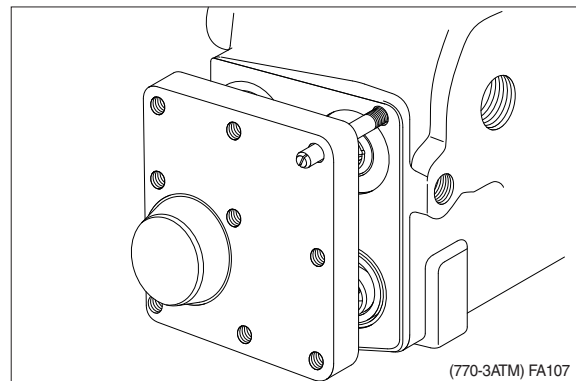
- ⑥ Guide plate in.



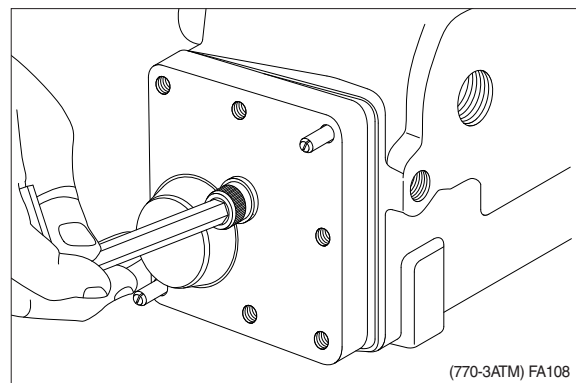
- ⑦ Fit stop (thickness : 5 mm) in end cover with vaseline.



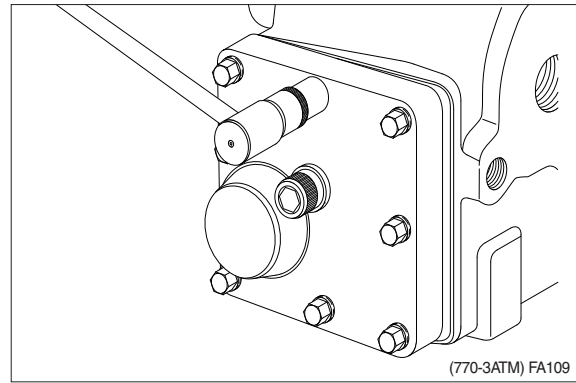
- ⑧ Guide end cover in.



- ⑨ Fit screw with spring washer.

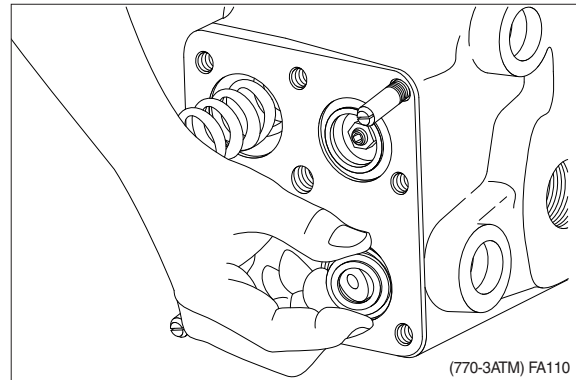


- ⑩ Fit screws with spring washer.
- Tightening torque :  $2.6 \pm 0.5 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $18.8 \pm 3.6 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )
  - Tightening torque :  $8.2 \pm 1 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
for large screw ( $59.3 \pm 7.2 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )

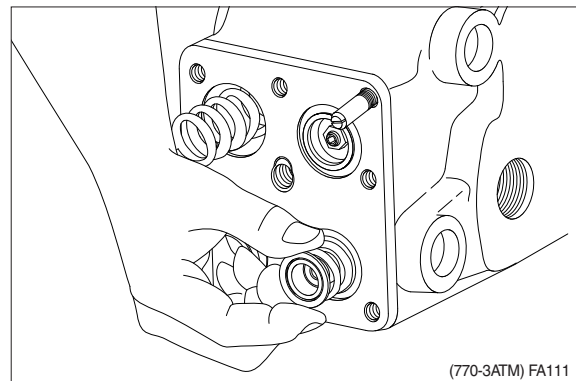


### (13) Installation of end cover at LS - connection

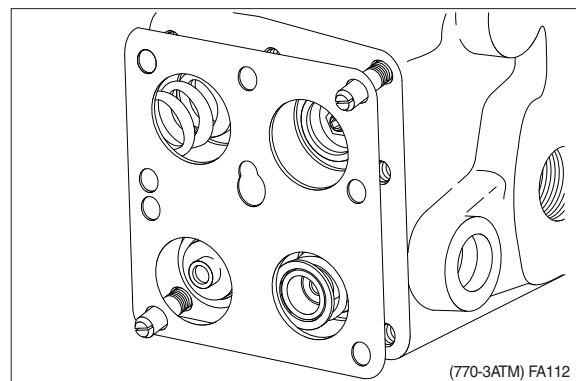
- ① Fit guide screws.  
Fit remote control with vaseline.



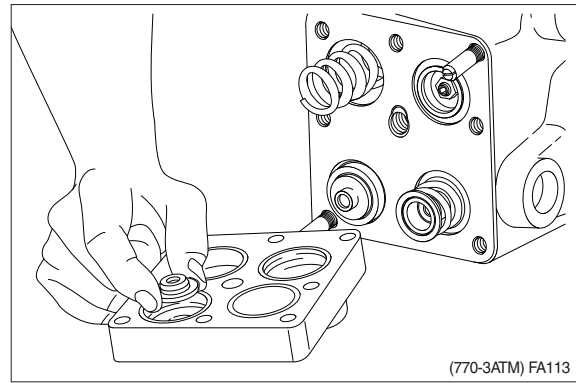
- ② Fit large and small springs with vaseline.



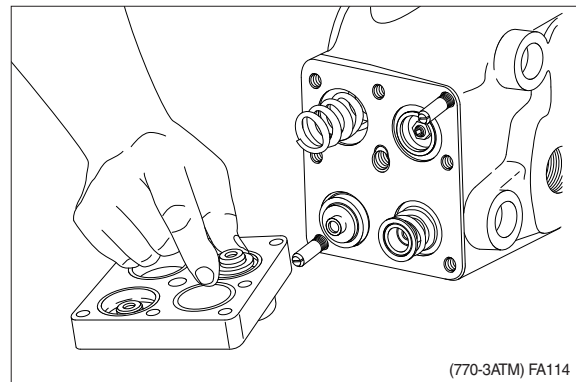
- ③ Guide in plate with 4 O-rings.



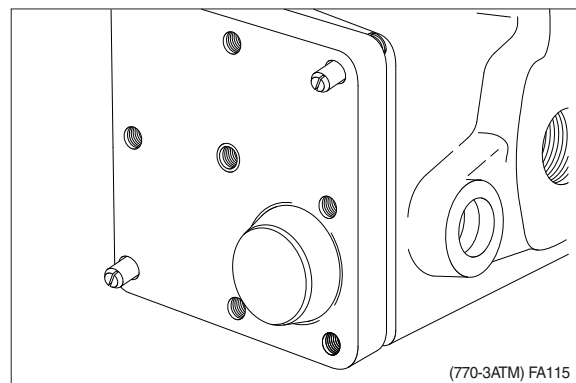
- ④ Fit stop for priority valve spool (thickness : 8 mm) with vaseline.



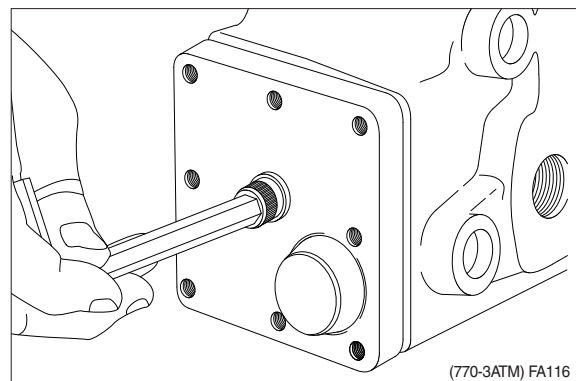
- ⑤ Fit stop for directional spool (thickness : 5 mm) with vaseline.



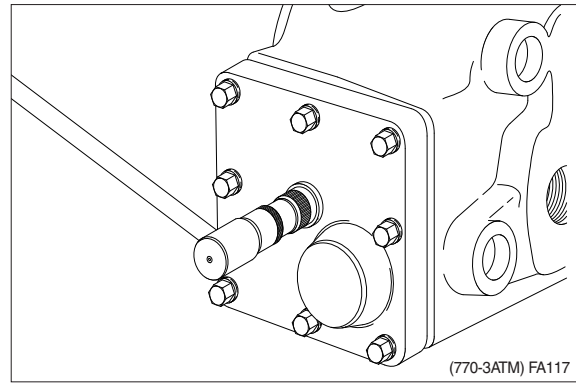
- ⑥ Guide in end cover.



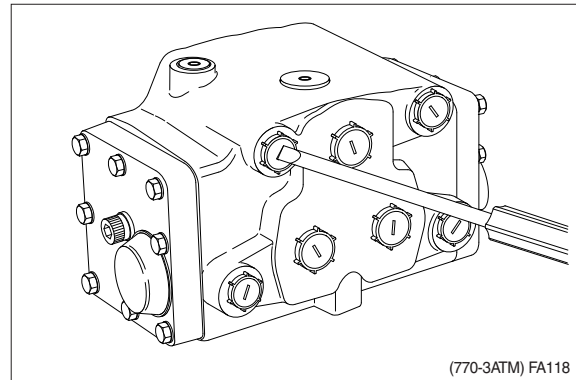
- ⑦ Fit large screw with spring washer.



- ⑧ Fit screws with spring washers.
- Tightening torque :  $2.6 \pm 0.5 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $18.8 \pm 3.6 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )
  - Tightening torque :  $8.2 \pm 1 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
for large screw ( $59.3 \pm 7.2 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )



- ⑨ Fit plastic plugs.

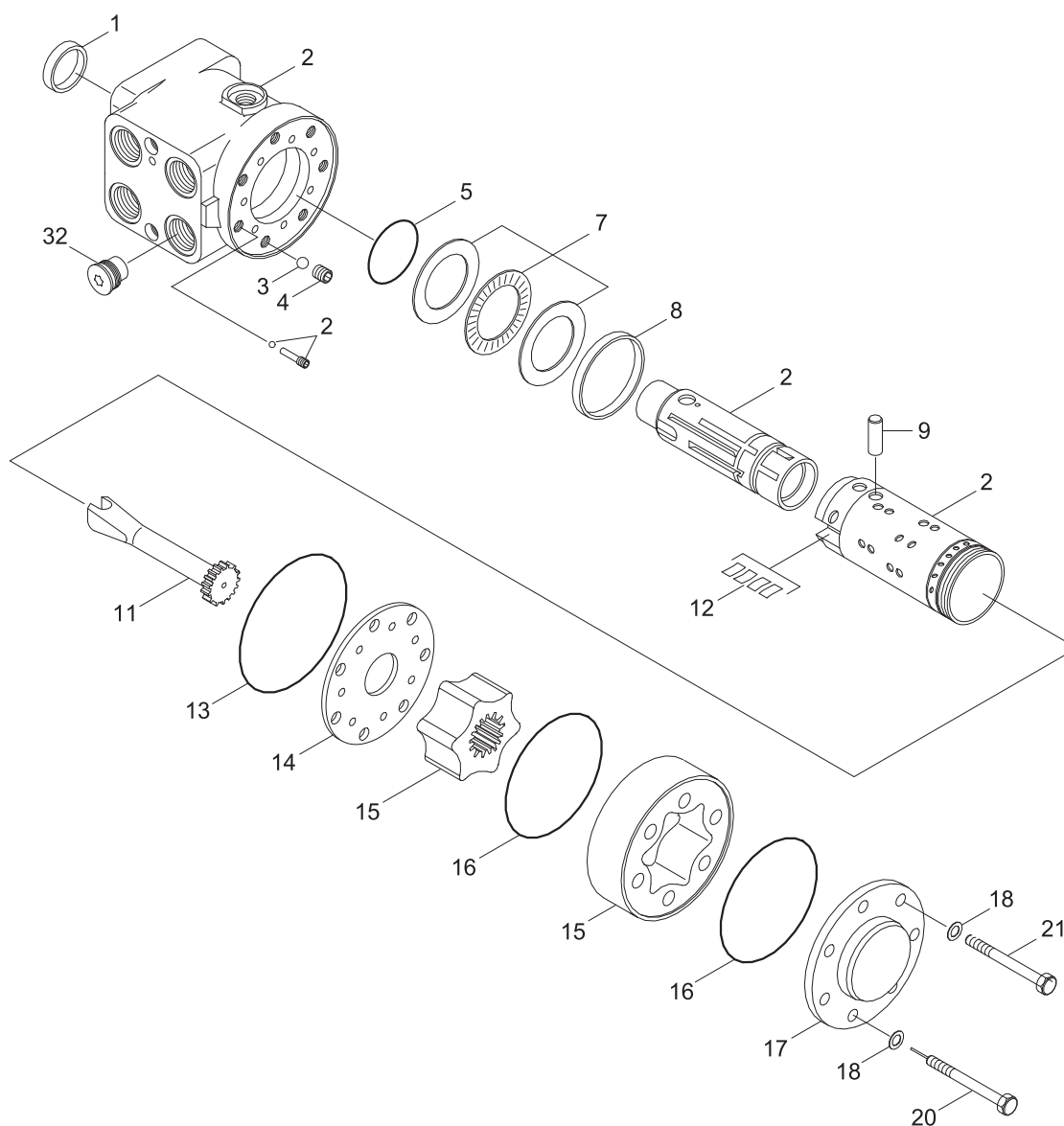


This completes assembly.



## 2. STEERING UNIT

### 1) STRUCTURE

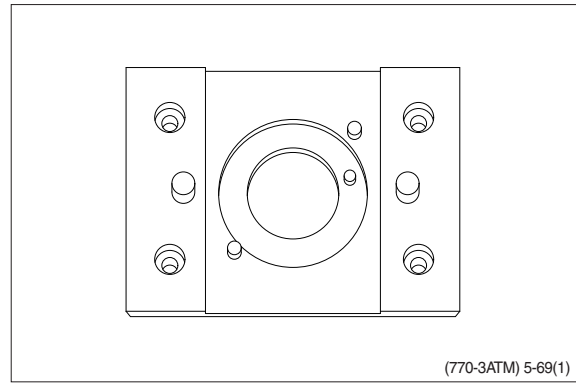


7707SE21

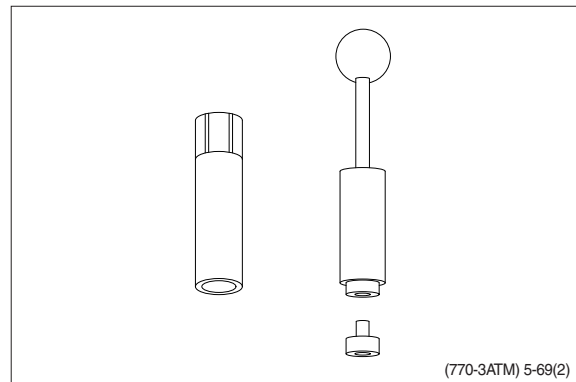
1	Dust seal ring	9	Cross pin	17	End cover
2	Housing, Spool, sleeve	11	Shaft	18	Washer
3	Ball	12	Spring set	20	Pin screw
4	Bushing	13	O-ring	21	Screw
5	Lip seal	14	Distributor plate	32	Check valve
7	Bearing assy	15	Gearwheel set		
8	Ring	16	O-ring		

## 2) TOOLS

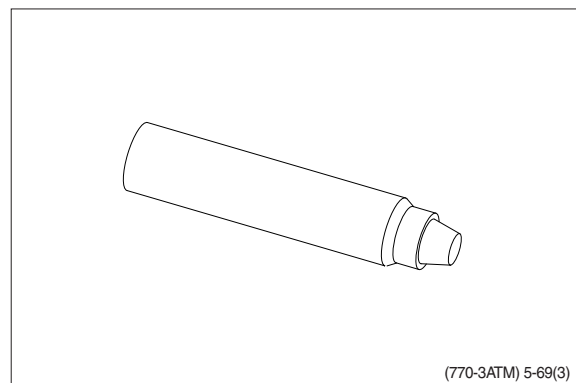
(1) Holding tool.



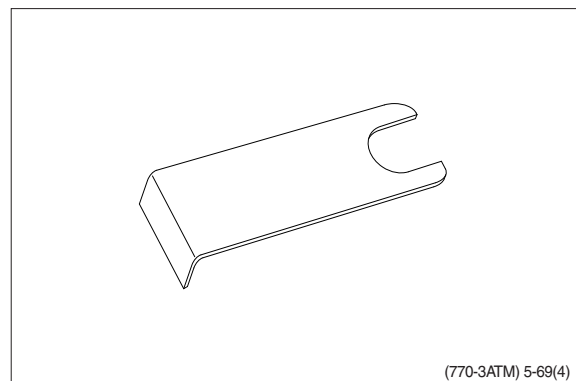
(2) Assembly tool for O-ring and kin-ring.



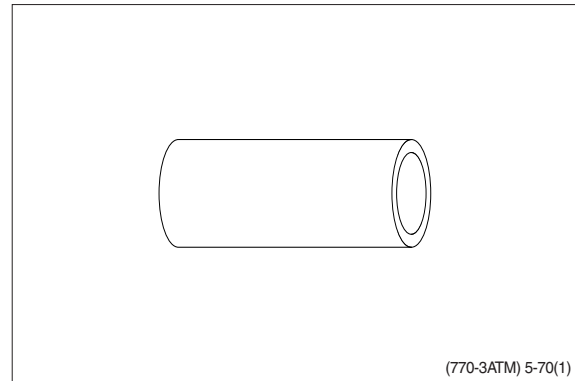
(3) Assembly tool for lip seal.



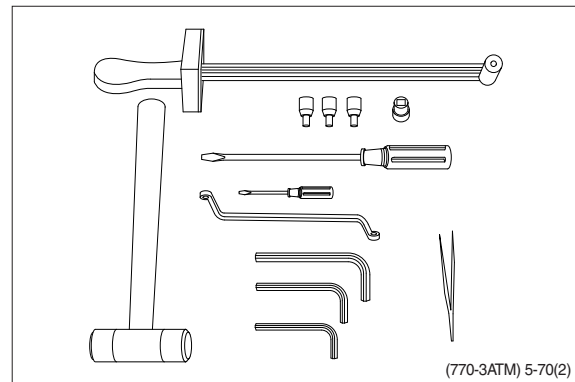
(4) Assembly tool for cardan shaft.



(5) Assembly tool for dust seal.

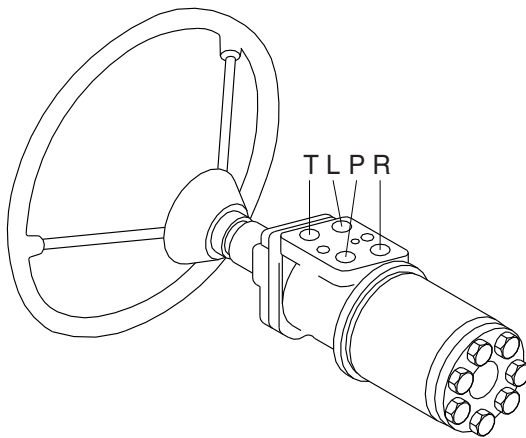


(6) Torque wrench 0~7.1 kgf · m  
(0~54.4 lbf · ft)  
13 mm socket spanner  
6, 8 mm and 12 mm hexagon sockets  
12 mm screwdriver  
2 mm screwdriver  
13 mm ring spanner  
6, 8 and 12 mm hexagon socket spanners  
Plastic hammer  
Tweezers



### 3) TIGHTENING TORQUE AND HYDRAULIC CONNECTIONS

#### (1) Hydraulic connections



L : Left port  
R : Right port  
T : Tank  
P : Pump

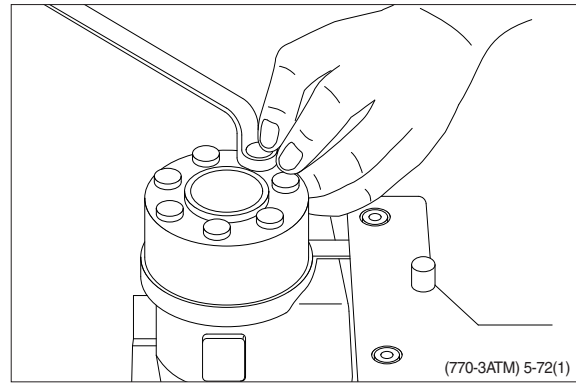
(770-3ATM) 5-71

#### (2) Tightening torque

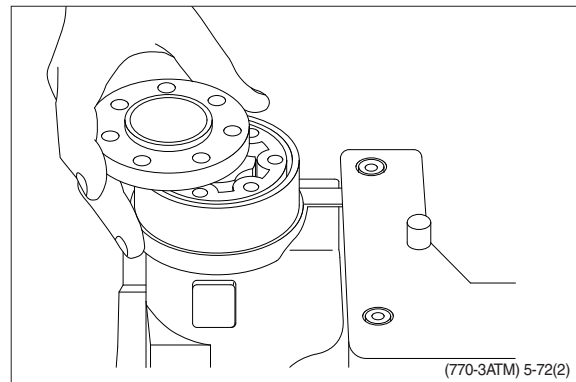
Screwed connection	Max. tightening torque [ kgf · m (lbf · ft) ]			
	With cutting edge	With copper washer	With aluminum washer	With O - ring
1/4 BSP.F	4.1 (29.7)	2.0 (14.5)	3.1 (22.4)	-
3/8 BSP.F	6.1 (44.1)	2.0 (14.5)	5.1 (36.9)	-
1/2 BSP.F	10.2 (73.8)	3.1 (22.4)	8.2 (59.3)	-
7/16-20 UNF	-	-	-	2.0 (14.5)
3/4-16 UNF	-	-	-	6.1 (44.1)
M 12×1.5	4.1 (29.7)	2.0 (14.5)	3.1 (22.4)	2.0 (14.5)
M 18×1.5	7.1 (51.4)	2.0 (14.5)	5.1 (36.9)	5.1 (36.9)
M 22×1.5	10.2 (73.8)	3.1 (22.4)	8.2 (59.3)	7.1 (51.4)

#### 4) DISASSEMBLY

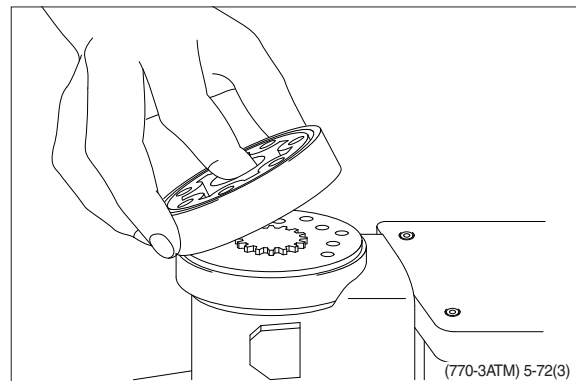
- (1) Disassemble steering column from steering unit and place the steering unit in the holding tool.  
Screw out the screws in the end cover(6-off plus one special screw).



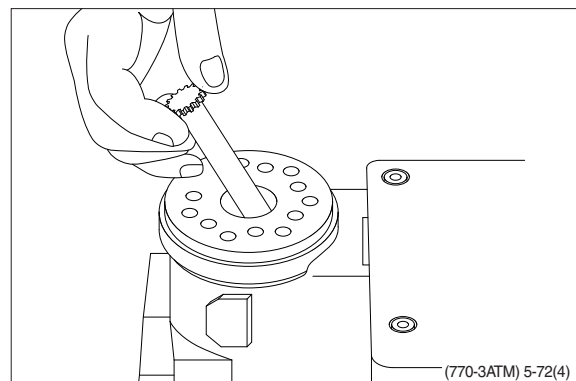
- (2) Remove the end cover, sideways.



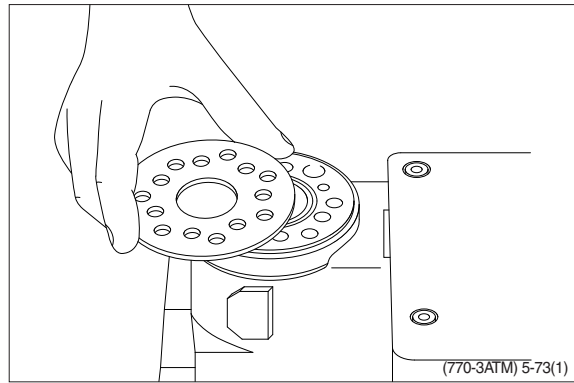
- (3) Lift the gearwheel set (with spacer if fitted) off the unit.  
Take out the two O-rings.



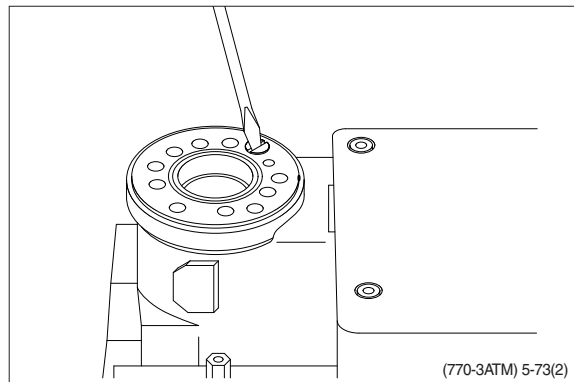
- (4) Remove cardan shaft.



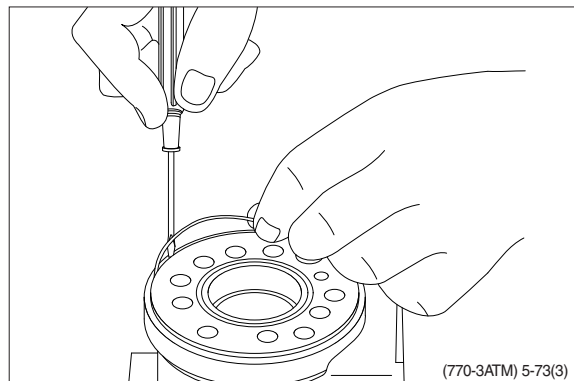
(5) Remove distributor plate.



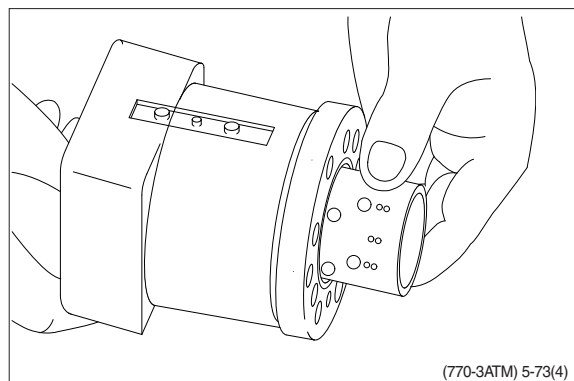
(6) Screw out the threaded bush over the check valve.



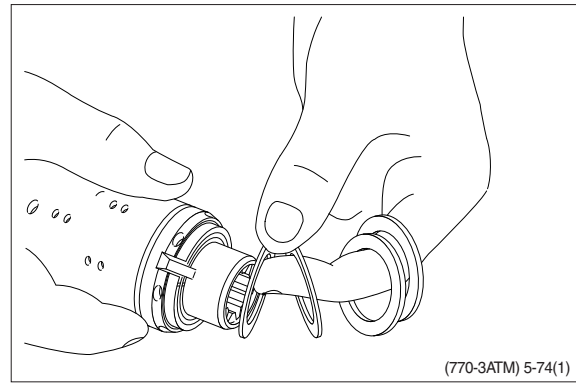
(7) Remove O-ring.



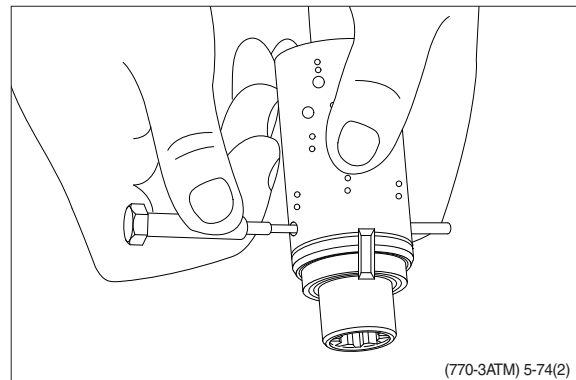
(8) Take care to keep the cross pin in the sleeve and spool horizontal. The pin can be seen through the open end of the spool. Press the spool inwards and the sleeve, ring, bearing races and needle bearing will be pushed out of the housing together.



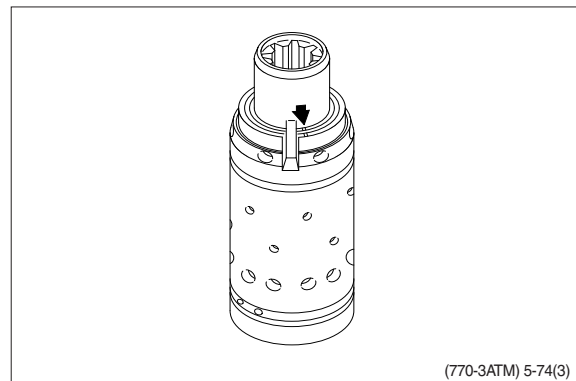
- (9) Take ring, bearing races and needle bearing from sleeve and spool. The outer (Thin) bearing race can sometimes "stick" in the housing, therefore check that it has come out.



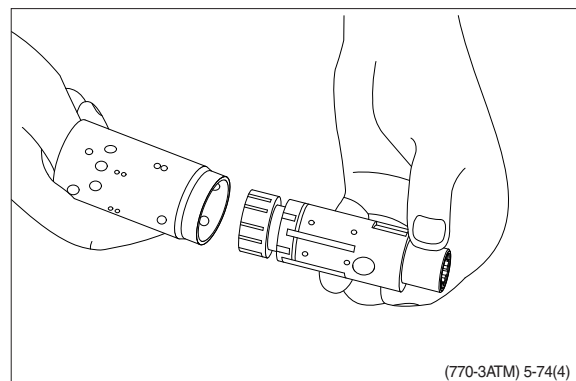
- (10) Press out the cross pin. Use the special screw from the end cover.



- ※ A small mark has been made with a pumice stone on both spool and sleeve close to one of the slots for the neutral position springs (see drawing). If the mark is not visible, remember to leave a mark of your own on sleeve and spool before the neutral position springs are disassembled.

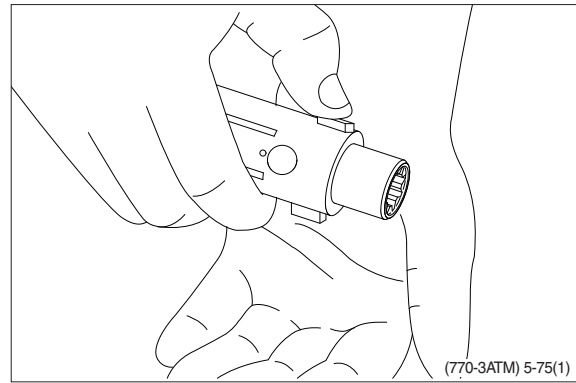


- (11) Carefully press the spool out of the sleeve.

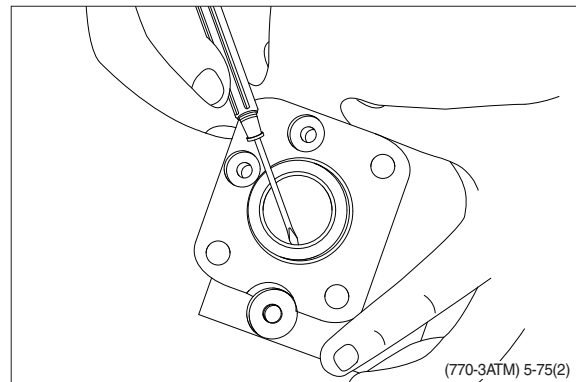




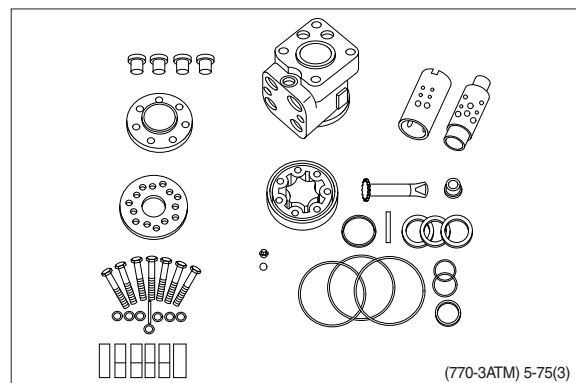
- (12) Press the neutral position springs out of their slots in the spool.



- (13) Remove dust seal and O-ring.



- (14) The steering unit is now completely disassembled.



※ **Cleaning**

Clean all parts carefully in Shellsol K or the like.

※ **Inspection and replacement**

Replace all seals and washers. Check all parts carefully and make any replacements necessary.

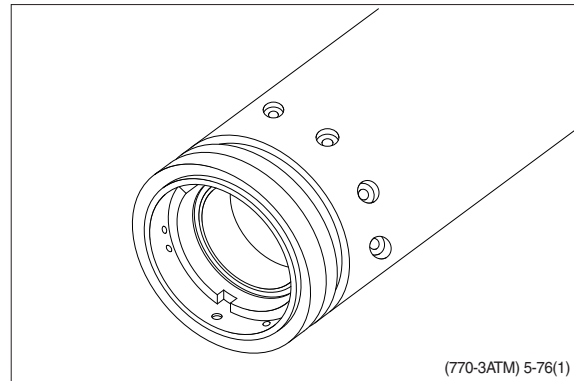
※ **Lubrication**

Before assembly, lubricate all parts with hydraulic oil.

## 5) ASSEMBLY

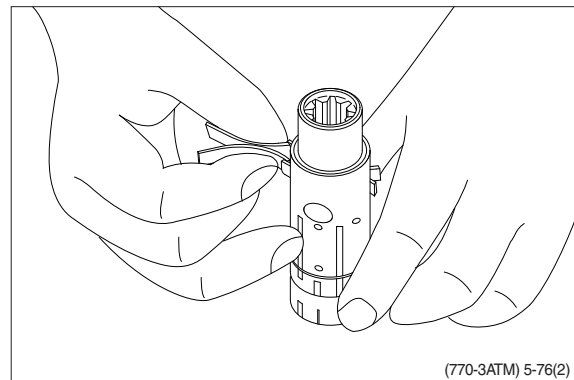
(1) Assemble spool and sleeve.

- ※ When assembling spool and sleeve only one of two possible ways of positioning the spring slots is correct. There are three slots in the spool and three holes in the sleeve in the end of the spool / sleeve opposite to the end with spring slots. Place the slots and holes opposite each other so that parts of the holes in the sleeve are visible through the slots in the spool.



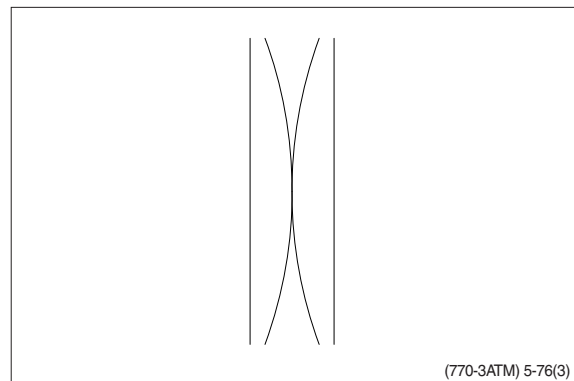
(2) Place the two flat neutral position springs in the slot.

Place the curved springs between the flat ones and press them into place (see assembly pattern).

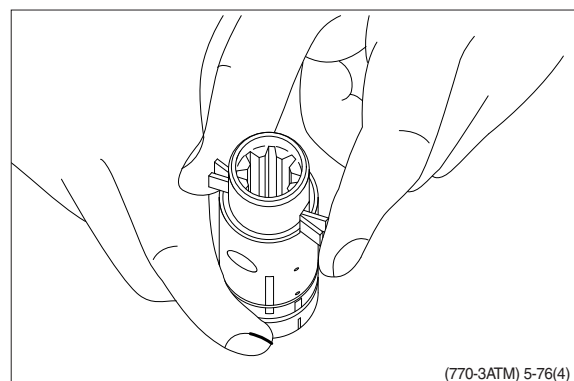


※ Assembly pattern.

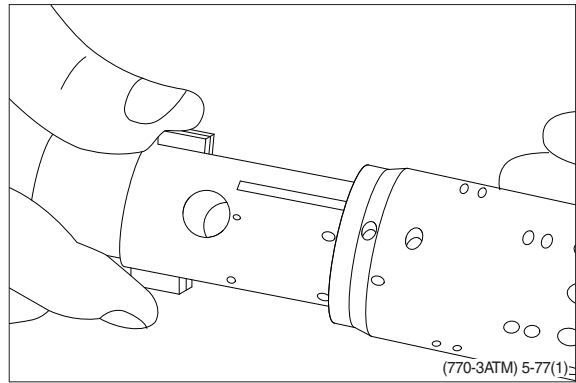
- Weak springs (blue)
  - 2 - off flat, blue : Part no. 150-0748
  - 2 - off curved, blue : Part no. 150-0749
- Blue set
  - Spare set : Part no. 150-4265



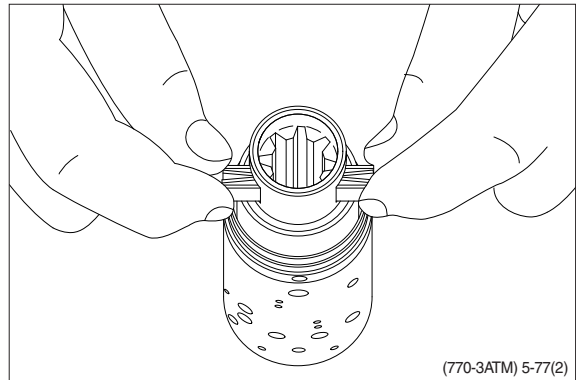
(3) Line up the spring set.



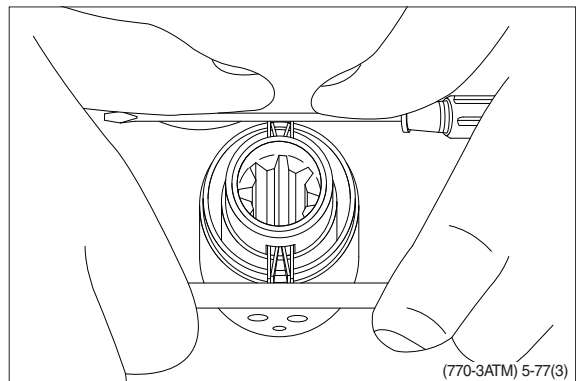
- (4) Guide the spool into the sleeve. Make sure that spool and sleeve are placed correctly in relation to each other (see page 3-76, No.(1)).



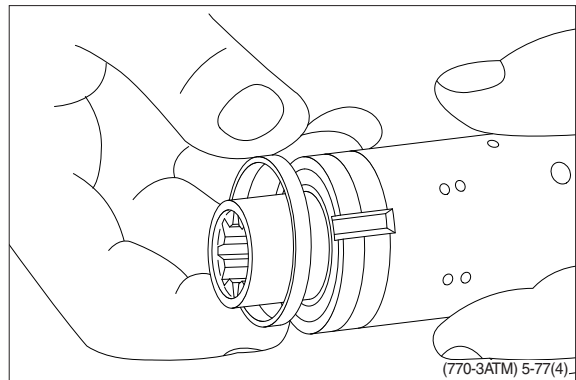
- (5) Press the springs together and push the neutral position springs into place in the sleeve.



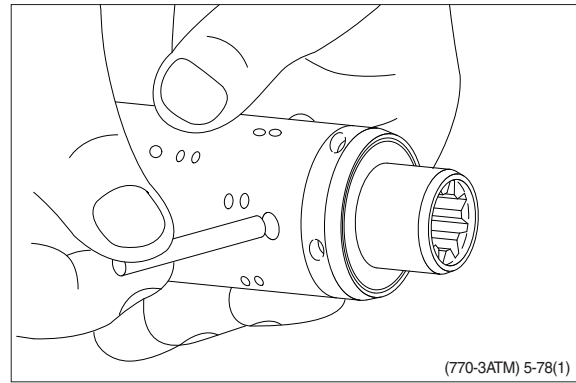
- (6) Line up the springs and center them.



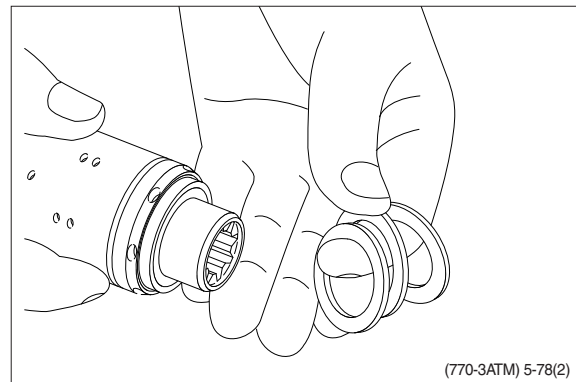
- (7) Guide the ring down over the sleeve.  
※ The ring should be able to rotate free of the springs.



(8) Fit the cross pin into the spool / sleeve.

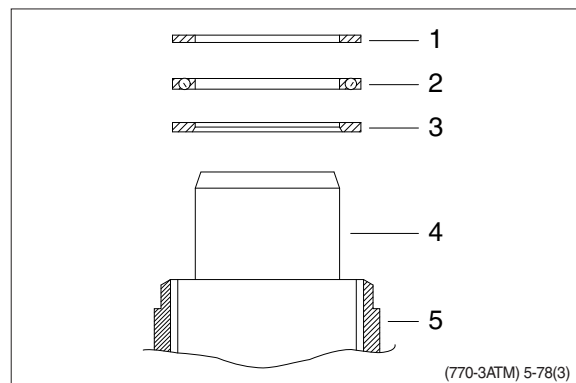


(9) Fit bearing races and needle bearing as shown on below drawing.



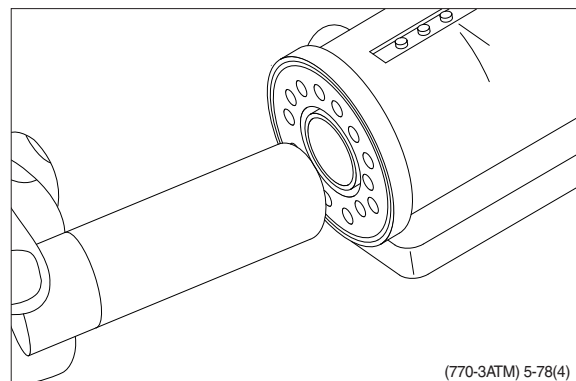
※ Assembly pattern for standard bearings

- 1 Outer bearing race
- 2 Needle bearing
- 3 Inner bearing race
- 4 Spool
- 5 Sleeve

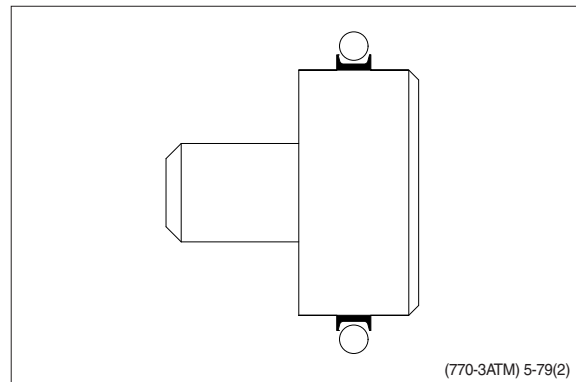
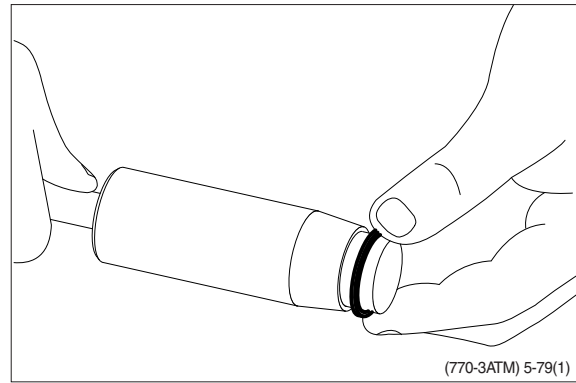


Installation instruction for O-ring

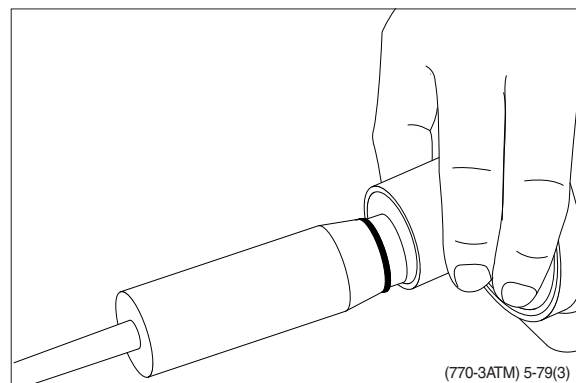
(10) Turn the steering unit until the bore is horizontal. Guide the outer part of the assembly tool into the bore for the spool / sleeve.



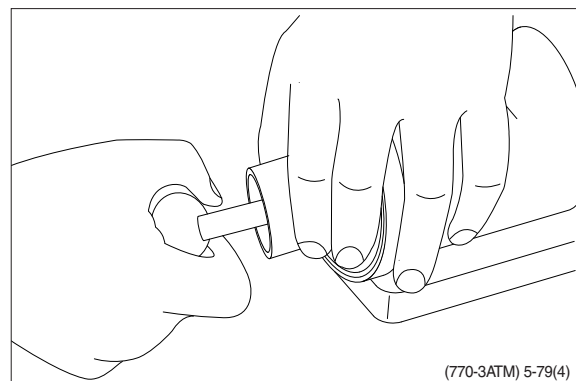
- (11) Grease O-ring with hydraulic oil and place them on the tool.



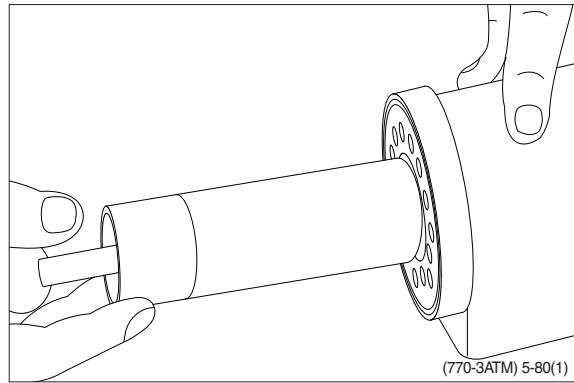
- (12) Hold the outer part of the assembly tool in the bottom of the steering unit housing and guide the inner part of the tool right to the bottom.



- (13) Press and turn the O-ring into position in the housing.

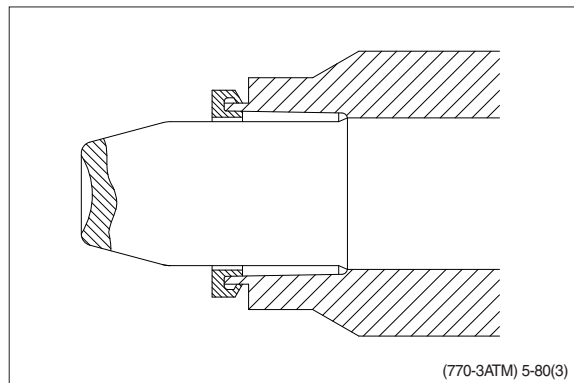
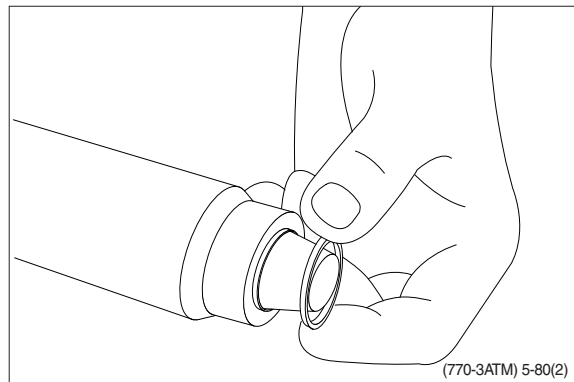


- (14) Draw the inner and outer parts of the assembly tool out of the steering unit bore, leaving the guide from the inner part in the bore.

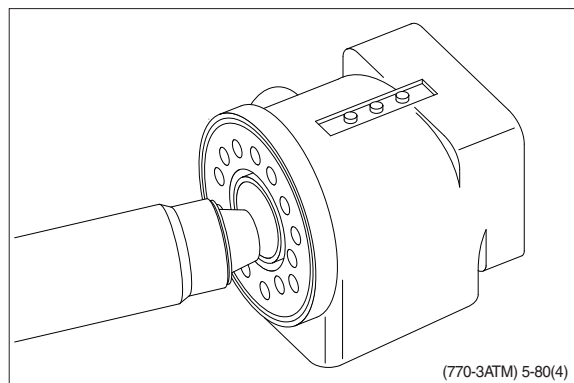


#### Installation instructions for lip seal

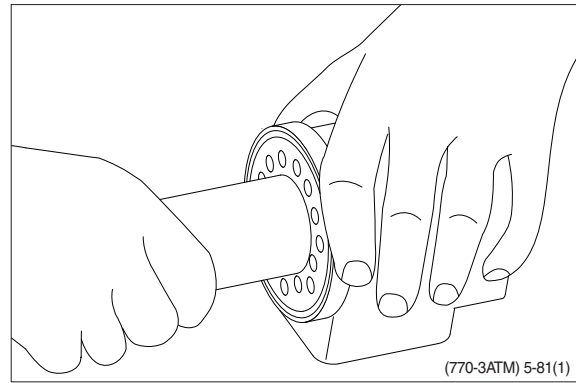
- (15) Lubricate the lip seal with hydraulic oil and place it on the assembly tool.



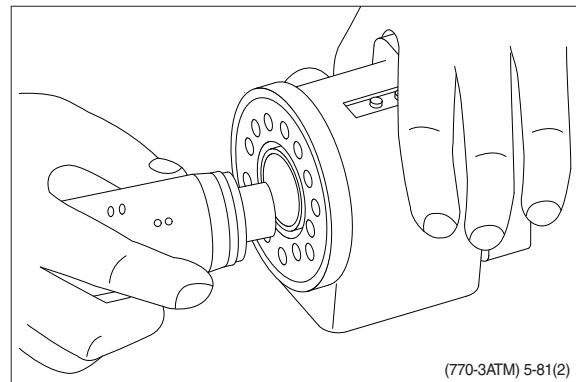
- (16) Guide the assembly tool right to the bottom.



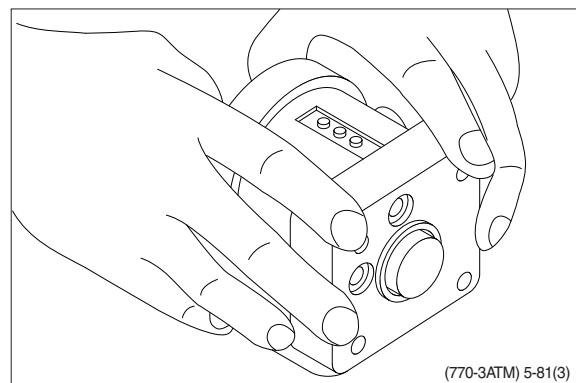
- (17) Press and turn the lip seal into place in the housing.



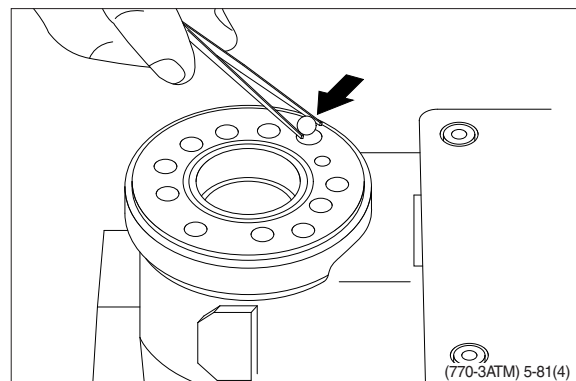
- (18) With a light turning movement, guide the spool and sleeve into the bore.  
※ Fit the spool set holding the cross pin horizontal.



- (19) The spool set will push out the assembly tool guide. The O-ring are now in position.

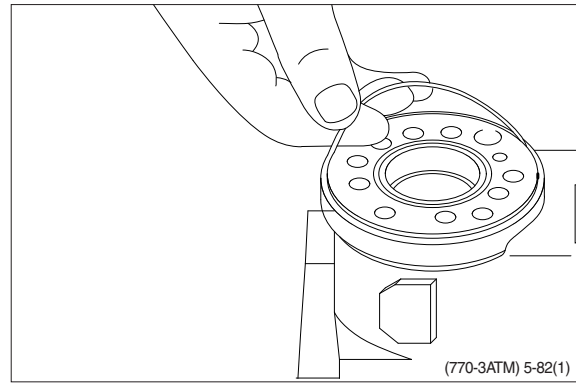


- (20) Turn the steering unit until the bore is vertical again. Put the check valve ball into the hole indicated by the arrow.

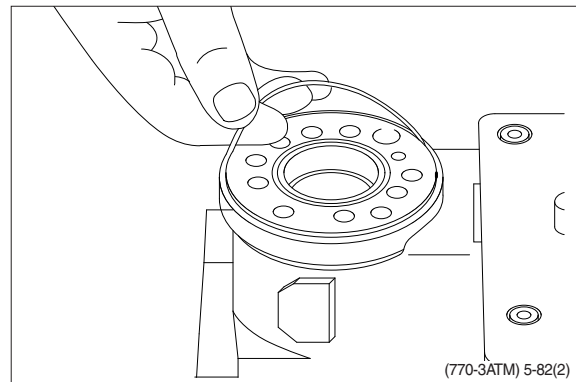




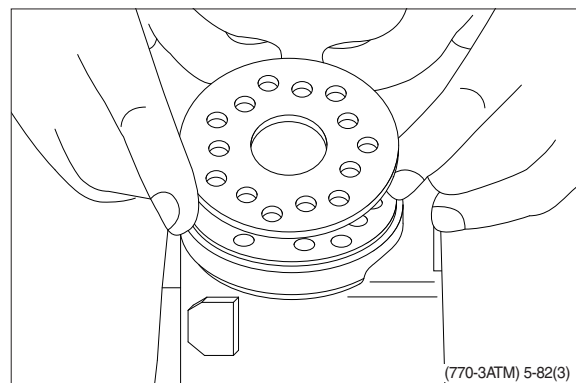
- (21) Screw the threaded bush lightly into the check valve bore. The top of the bush must lie just below the surface of the housing.



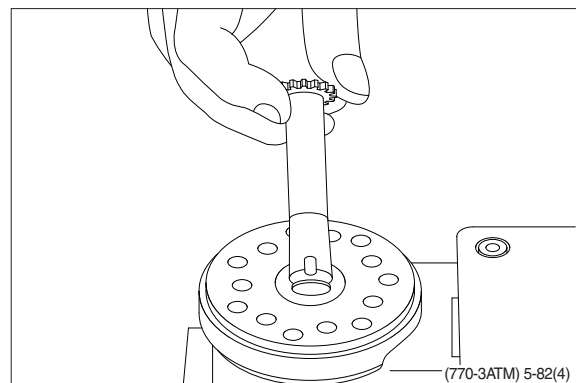
- (22) Grease the O-ring with mineral oil approx. viscosity 500 cSt at 20° C .



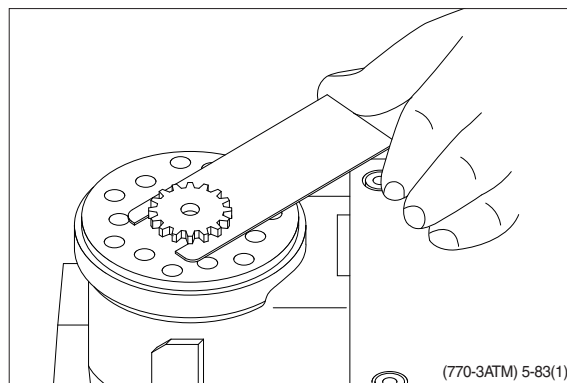
- (23) Place the distributor plate so that the channel holes match the holes in the housing.



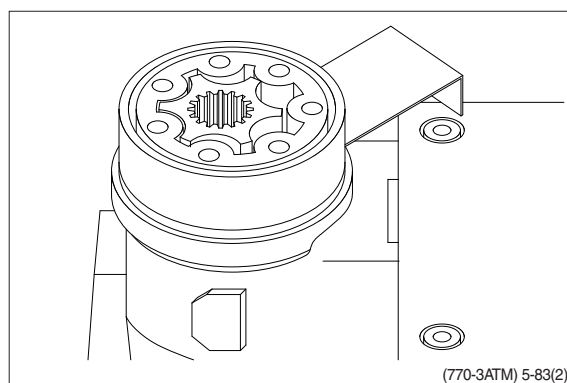
- (24) Guide the cardan shaft down into the bore so that the slot is parallel with the connection flange.



- (25) Place the cardan shaft as shown - so that it is held in position by the mounting fork.



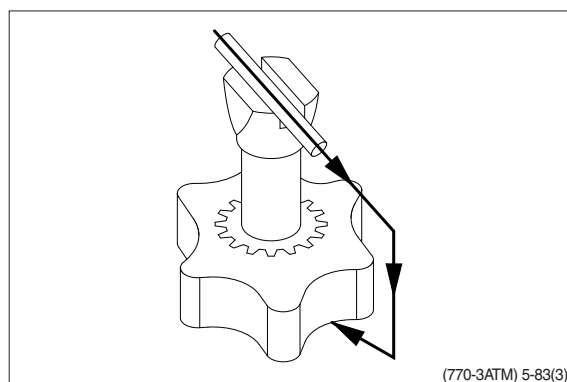
- (26) Grease the two O-rings with mineral oil approx. viscosity 500 cSt at 20° C and place them in the two grooves in the gear rim. Fit the gearwheel and rim on the cardan shaft.



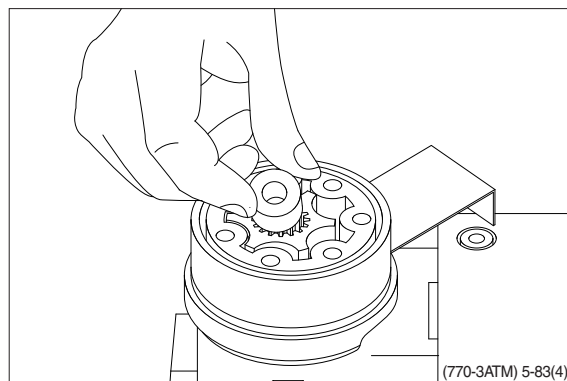
- (27) Important

Fit the gearwheel (rotor) and cardan shaft so that a tooth base in the rotor is positioned in relation to the shaft slot as shown.

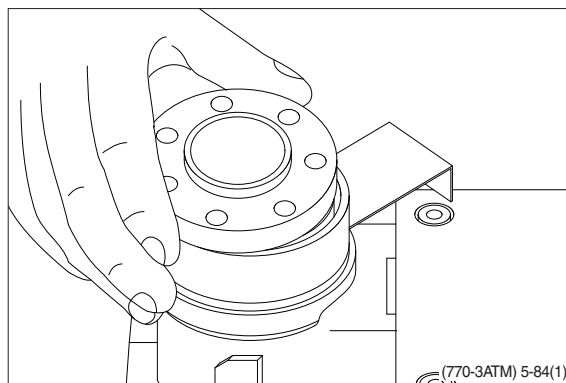
Turn the gear rim so that the seven through holes match the holes in the housing.



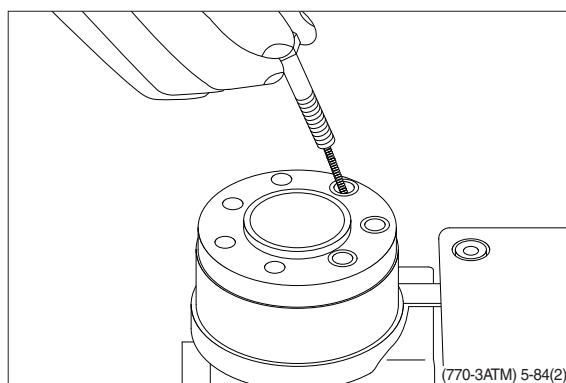
- (28) Fit the spacer, if any.



(29) Place the end cover in position.

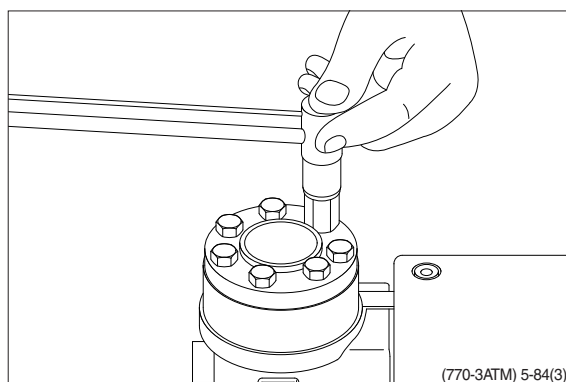


(30) Fit the special screw with washer and place it in the hole shown.

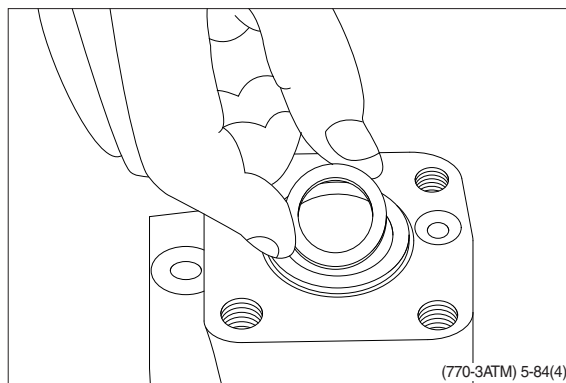


(31) Fit the six screws with washers and insert them. Cross-tighten all the screws and the rolled pin.

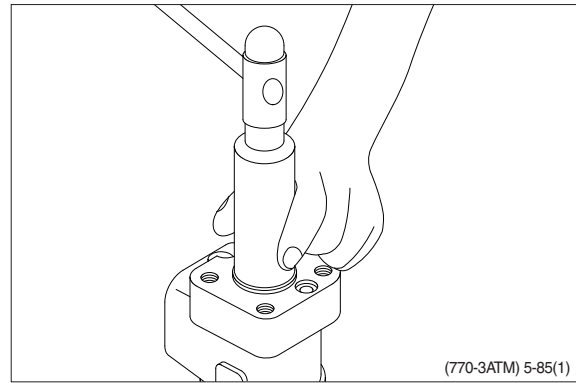
- Tightening torque :  $3.1 \pm 0.6 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $22.4 \pm 4.3 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )



(32) Place the dust seal ring in the housing.

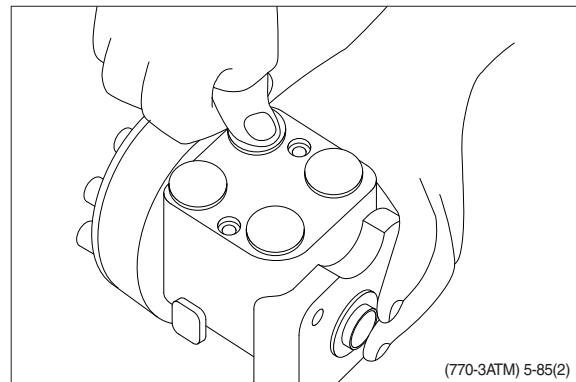


(33) Fit the dust seal ring in the housing.



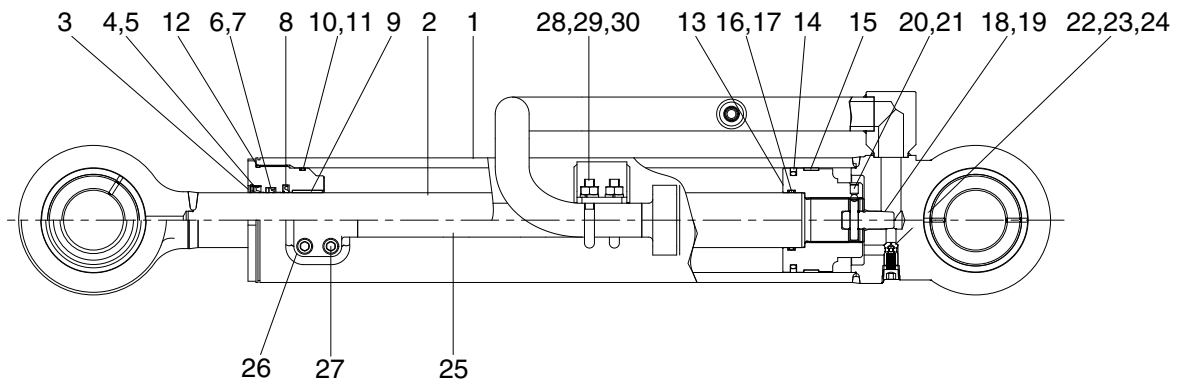
(34) Press the plastic plugs into the connection ports.

※ Do not use a hammer!



### 3. STEERING CYLINDER

#### 1) STRUCTURE

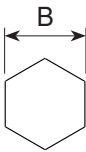


78095SE05

1	Tube assembly	12	O-ring	23	Spring
2	Rod assy	13	Piston	24	Plug
3	Gland	14	Piston seal	25	Pipe assy
4	Dust wiper	15	Wear ring	26	O-ring
5	Retaining ring	16	O-ring	27	Hexagon nut
6	Rod seal	17	Back-up ring	28	U-bolt
7	Back-up ring	18	Cushion plunger	29	Hexagon nut
8	Buffer ring	19	Parallel pin	30	Spring washer
9	Bushing	20	Steel ball	31	Spherical bearing
10	O-ring	21	Set screw	32	Retaining ring
11	Back-up ring	22	Check valve		

## 2) TOOLS AND TIGHTENING TORQUE

### (1) Tools

Tool name	B	Remark
L-wrench	5	
Spanner	70	
Wrench	For gland	
(-) Driver	Small and large sizes	
Torque wrench	Capable of tightening with the specified torques	

### (2) Tightening torque

Part name	Item	Size	Torque	
			kgf · m	lbf · ft
Gland	3	M110×2	88±9	637±65
Piston	13	M 45×2	75±8	542±58
Set screw	21	M 8×1.5	2.0±0.2	14.4±1.4
Plug	24	PT 3/8	7.0±0.7	50.6±5.06

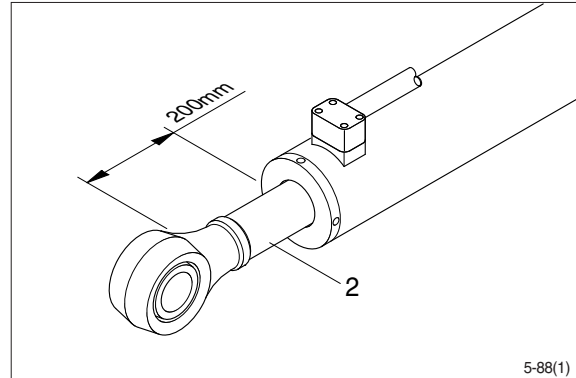
### 3) DISASSEMBLY

#### (1) Remove cylinder head and piston rod

① Hold the clevis section of the tube in a vise.

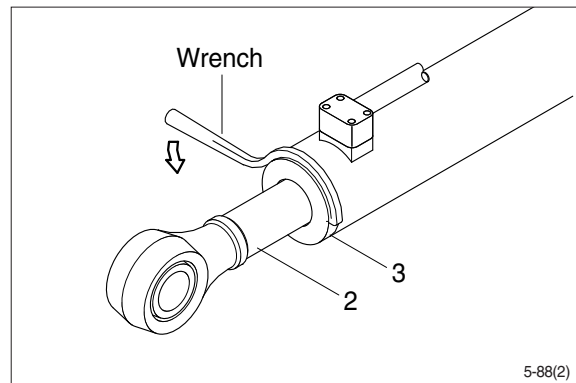
※ Use mouth pieces so as not to damage the machined surface of the cylinder tube. Do not make use of the outside piping as a locking means.

② Pull out piston rod (2) about 200 mm (7.8 in). Because the piston rod is rather heavy, finish extending it with air pressure after the oil draining operation.



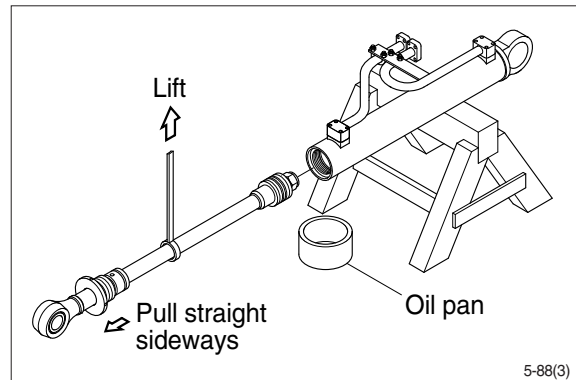
③ Loosen and remove the gland (3).

※ Cover the extracted piston rod (2) with rag to prevent it from being accidentally damaged during operation.



④ Draw out gland (3) and piston rod (2) assembly together from cylinder tube (1).

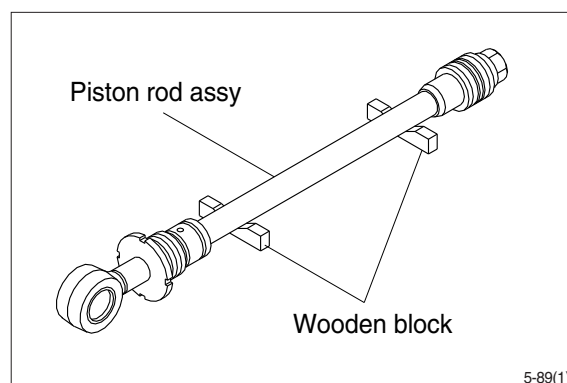
※ Since the piston rod assembly is heavy in this case, lift the tip of the piston rod (2) with a crane or some means and draw it out. However, when piston rod(2) has been drawn out to approximately two thirds of its length, lift it in its center to draw it completely.





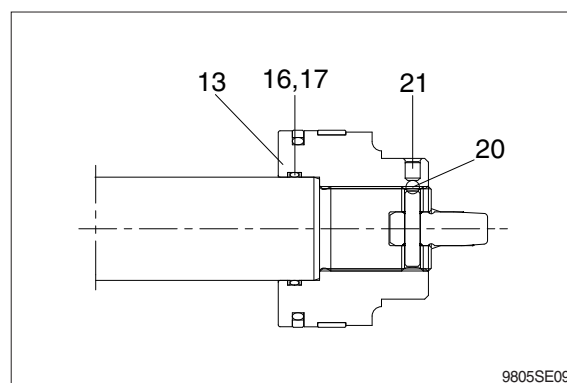
- ※ Note that the plated surface of piston rod (2) is to be lifted. For this reason, do not use a wire sling and others that may damage it, but use a strong cloth belt or a rope.

- ⑤ Place the removed piston rod assembly on a wooden V-block that is set level.
- ※ Cover a V-block with soft rag.

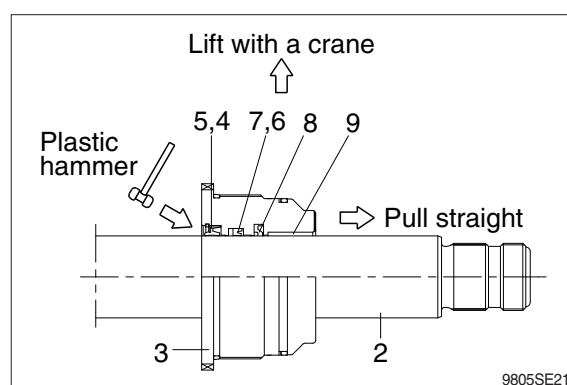


## (2) Remove piston and gland assembly

- ① Remove the set screw (21) and steel ball (20).
- ② Remove piston assembly (13), back up ring (17) and O-ring (16).

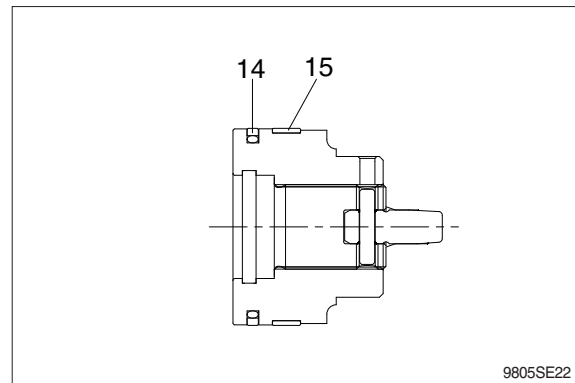


- ③ Remove the gland (3) assembly from piston rod (2).
  - ※ If it is too heavy to move, move it by striking the flanged part of gland (3) with a plastic hammer.
  - ※ Pull it straight with gland assembly lifted with a crane.
- Exercise care so as not to damage the lip of rod bushing (9) and packing (4,5,6,7,8) by the threads of piston rod (2).



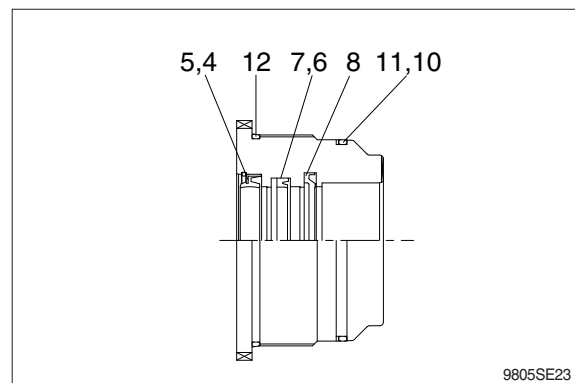
### (3) Disassemble the piston assembly

- ① Remove wear ring (15) and piston seal (14).
- ※ Exercise care in this operation not to damage the grooves.



### (4) Disassemble gland assembly

- ① Remove back up ring (11), and O-ring (10).
  - ② Remove O-ring (12).
  - ③ Remove retaining ring (5) and dust wiper (4).
  - ④ Remove back up ring (7), rod seal (6) and buffer ring (8).
- ※ Exercise care in this operation not to damage the grooves.
- ※ Do not remove seal and ring, if does not damaged.

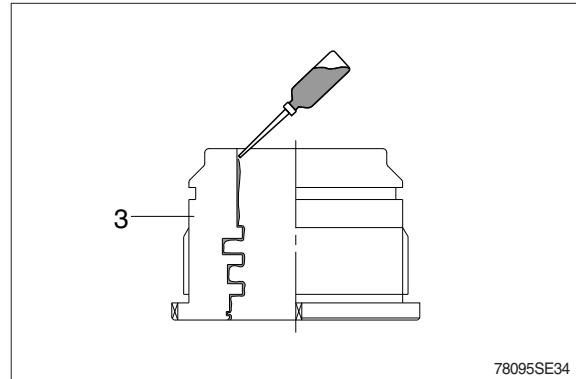


#### 4) ASSEMBLY

##### (1) Assemble gland assembly

※ Check for scratches or rough surfaces if found smooth with an oil stone.

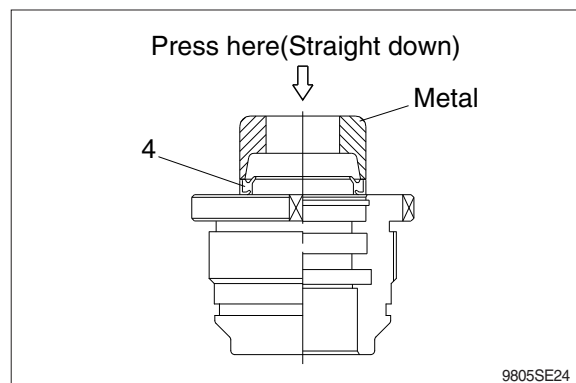
- ① Coat the inner face of gland (3) with hydraulic oil.



- ② Coat dust wiper (4) with grease and fit dust wiper (4) to the bottom of the hole of dust wiper.

At this time, press a pad metal to the metal ring of dust seal.

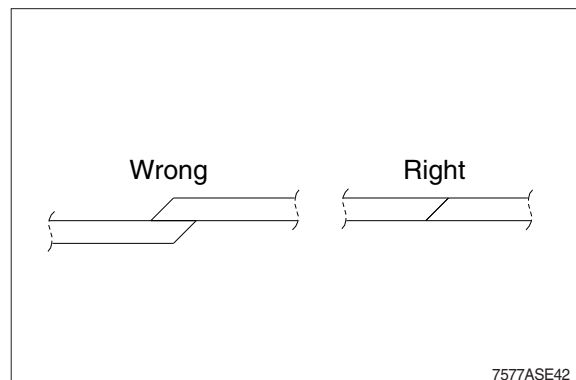
- ③ Fit retaining ring (5) to the stop face.



- ④ Fit back up ring (7) and rod seal (6), and buffer ring (8) to corresponding grooves, in that order.

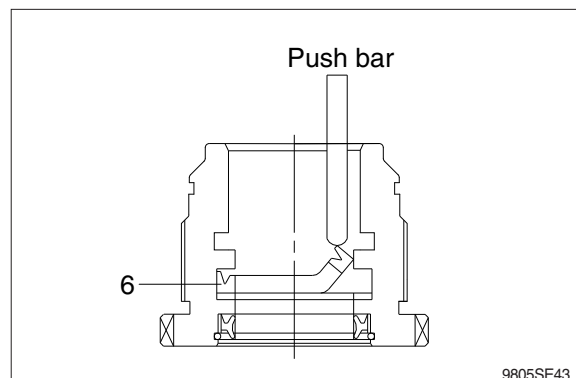
※ Coat each packing with hydraulic oil before fitting it.

※ Insert the backup ring until outside of it is inserted into groove.

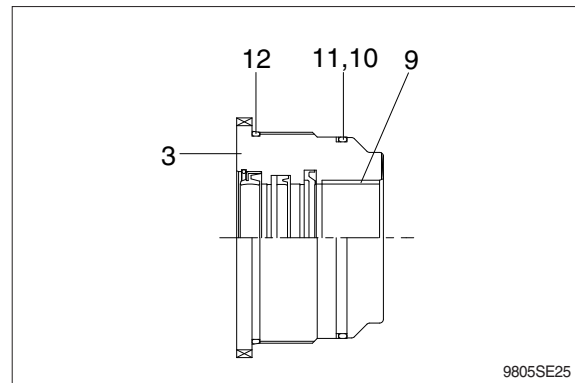


※ Rod seal (6) has its own fitting direction. Therefore, confirm it before fitting them.

※ Fitting rod seal (6) up side down may damage its lip. Therefore check the correct direction that is shown in figure.

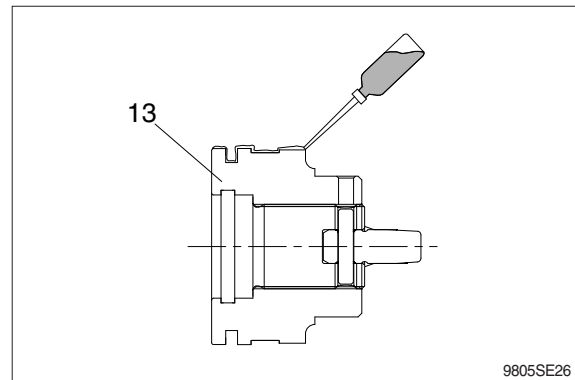


- ⑤ Fit back up ring (10) to gland (3).
- ※ Put the backup ring in the warm water of 30~50°C.
- ⑥ Fit O-ring (10,12) to gland (3).
- ⑦ Fit bushing (9) to gland (3).

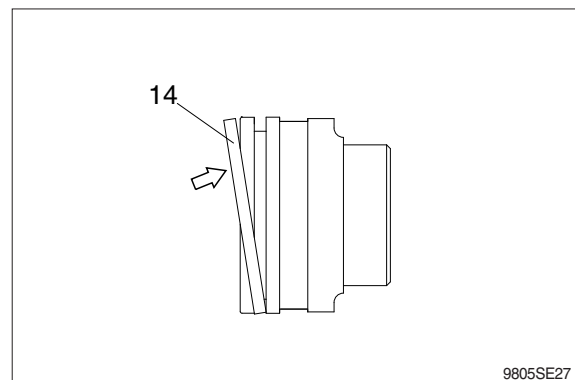


## (2) Assemble piston assembly

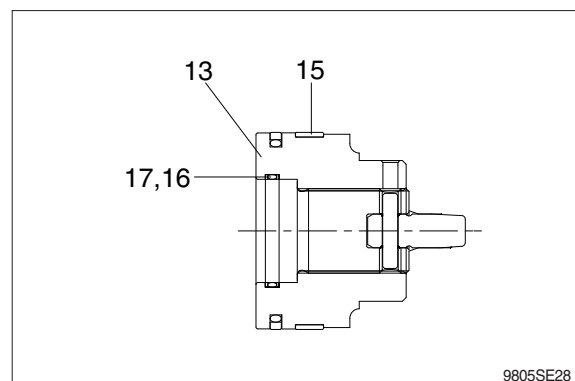
- ※ Check for scratches or rough surfaces.
- ① If found smooth with an oil stone.  
Coat the outer face of piston (13) with hydraulic oil.



- ② Fit piston seal (14) to piston
- ※ Put the piston seal in the warm water of 60~100°C for more than 5 minutes.
- ※ After assembling the piston seal, press its outer diameter to fit in.

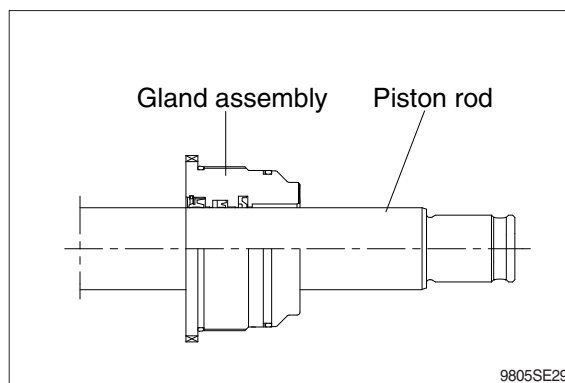


- ③ Fit wear ring (15) to piston (13).
- ④ Fit back up ring (17) and O-ring (16) to piston (13).

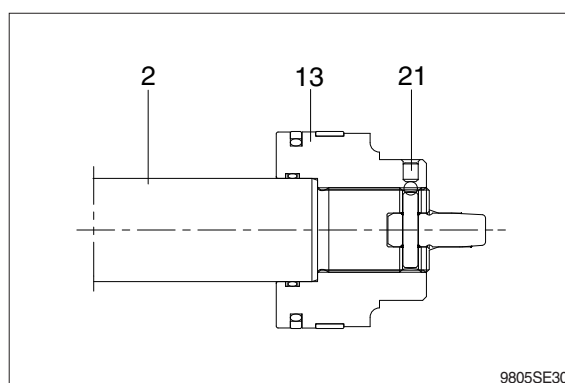


### (3) Install piston and gland assembly

- ① Fix the piston rod assembly to the work bench.
- ② Apply hydraulic oil to the outer surface of piston rod (2), the inner surface of piston and gland.
- ③ Insert gland assembly to piston rod (2).

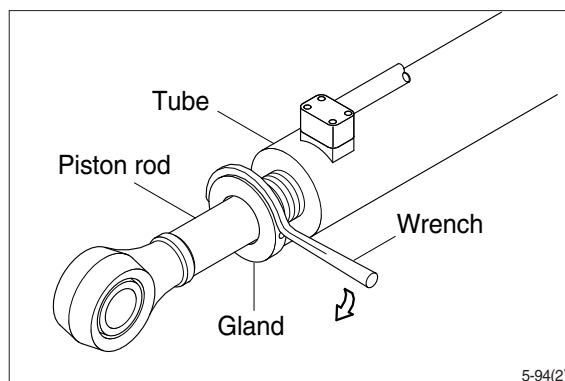
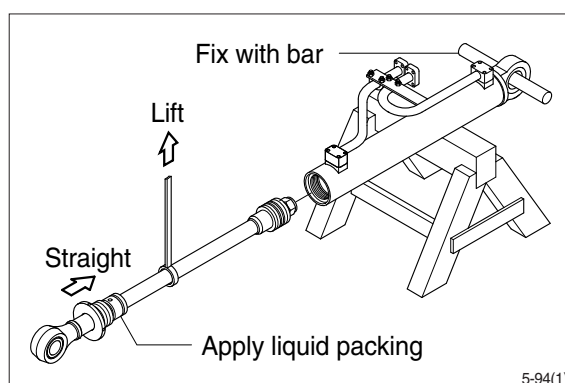


- ④ Fit piston assembly to piston rod.
- ⑤ Tighten piston (13) to piston rod (2).
  - Tightening torque :  $75 \pm 8 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $542 \pm 57.9 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )
- ⑥ Tighten set screw (21) to piston (13).
  - Tightening torque :  $2.0 \pm 0.2 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $14.5 \pm 1.45 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )



### (4) Overall assemble

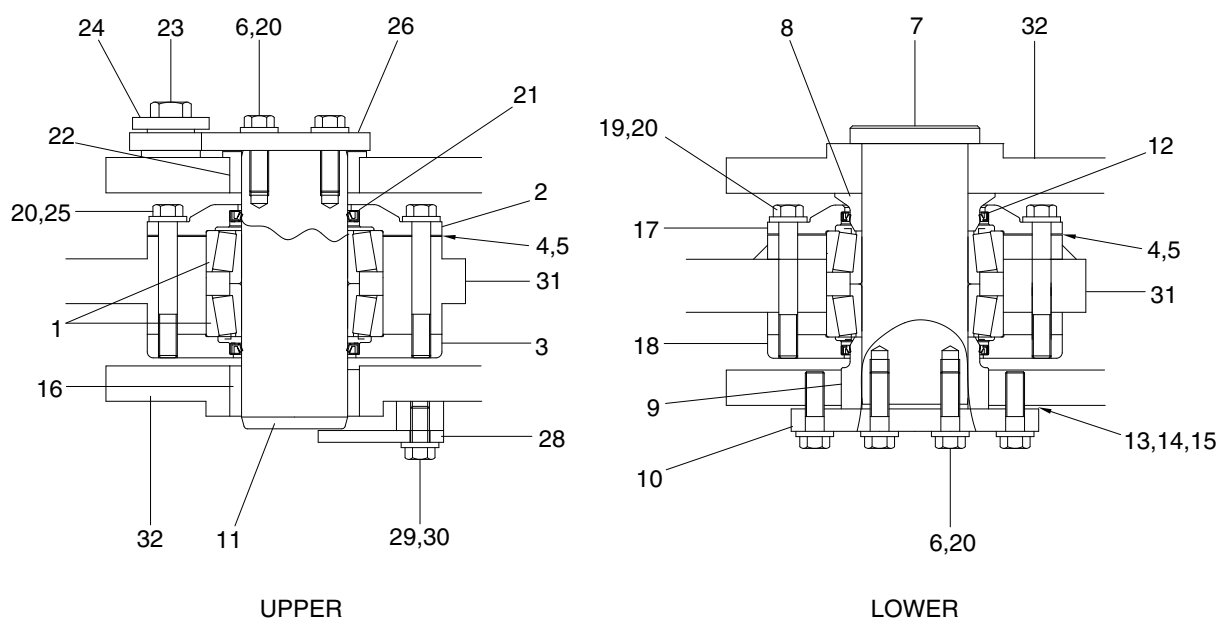
- ① Place a V-block on a rigid work bench. Mount the cylinder tube assembly on it and fix the assembly by passing a bar through the clevis pin hole to lock the assembly.
- ② Insert the piston rod assembly in to the cylinder tube assembly, while lifting and moving the piston rod assembly with a crane.
  - ※ Be careful not to damage piston seal by thread of cylinder tube.
- ③ Fit gland to the tube.
  - Tightening torque :  $88 \pm 9 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $637 \pm 65 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )



## 4. CENTER PIVOT PIN

### 1) CONSTRUCTION

Figure shows the construction of the center pivot pin assembly. This assembly serves to connect the front frame with the rear frame; two sets of assemblies are provided, one each for the upper and lower parts. The numbers in parentheses following the parts name denote the item numbers shown in the figure in the disassembly and assembly procedures.



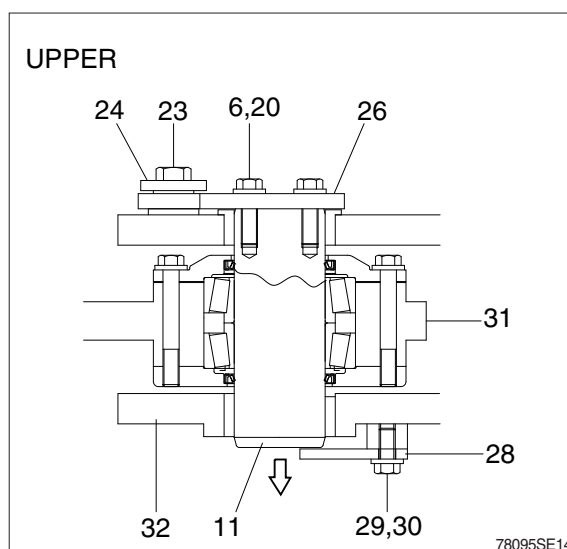
78095SE13

1	Bearing	12	Dust seal	23	Hexagon bolt
2	Cover	13	Shim (0.1 t)	24	Hardened washer
3	Cover	14	Shim (0.5 t)	25	Hexagon bolt
4	Shim (0.1 t)	15	Shim (2.0 t)	26	Plate
5	Shim (0.5 t)	16	Bushing	28	Plate
6	Hexagon bolt	17	Cover	29	Hexagon bolt
7	Pin	18	Cover	30	Hardened washer
8	Collar	19	Hexagon bolt	31	Front frame
9	Collar	20	Hardened washer	32	Rear frame
10	Plate	21	Dust seal		
11	Pin	22	Bushing		

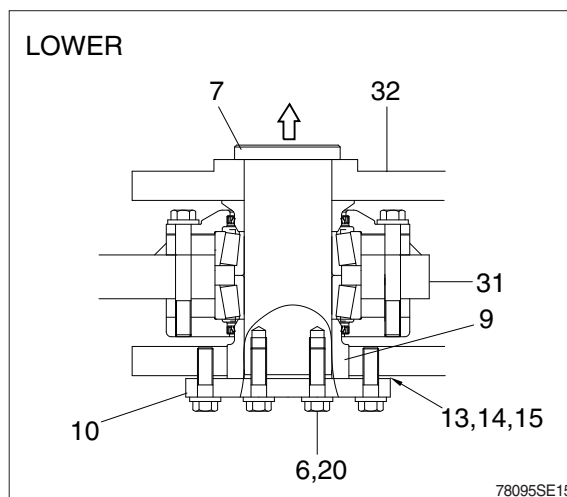
## 2) DISASSEMBLY

After supporting the front frame and the rear frame as horizontally as possible using wood blocks and jacks, disassemble as follows: In order to facilitate the disassembly/assembly of the center pivot pins, remove the drive shaft, hydraulic line and steering cylinder first.

- (1) Maintain the horizontal level of front frame (31) and rear frame (32), and then remove hexagon bolt (6, 23, 29), washer (20, 24) and plate (26, 28).
- (2) Take out upper pin (11) to the downside using a metal punch.



- (3) Maintain the front frame horizontal level, remove hexagon bolts (6) and then remove the plate (10) and shims (13, 14, 15).
- (4) Take out lower pin (7) to the upside using a metal punch carefully.
- (5) Jack up or lifting the front frame (31) slightly, the collar (9) protrudes over the rear frame. Remove the collar (9).
- (6) Lift the frame by passing the slinging wire rope at four positions of front frame, in order to separate it from the rear frame.
- (7) Support the front frame safely.

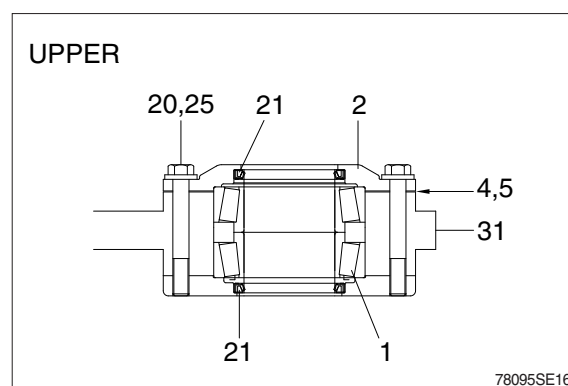




(8) Remove bolt (25), washer (20) and then take out cover (2) and shims (4, 5).

(9) Take out dust seal (21) from the cover (2).

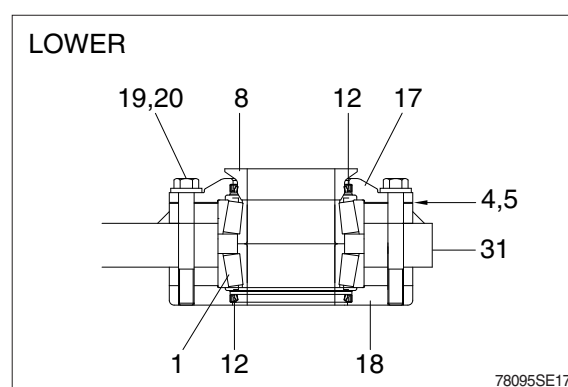
(10) Remove the bearing (1), and dust seal (21).



(11) Remove bolt (19), washer (20) and then take out cover (17, 18) and shims (4, 5).

(12) Take out the dust seal (12) from the cover (17, 18).

(13) Remove the bearing (1) and collar (8).



### 3) INSPECTION

(1) Check the bearing sliding surface for excessive wear, scorching or scratches; replace if necessary.

(2) Replace all dust seals (12, 21) with new ones.

(3) Grind any pins (7, 11) dented with an oilstone or replace any pins abrasive excessively.

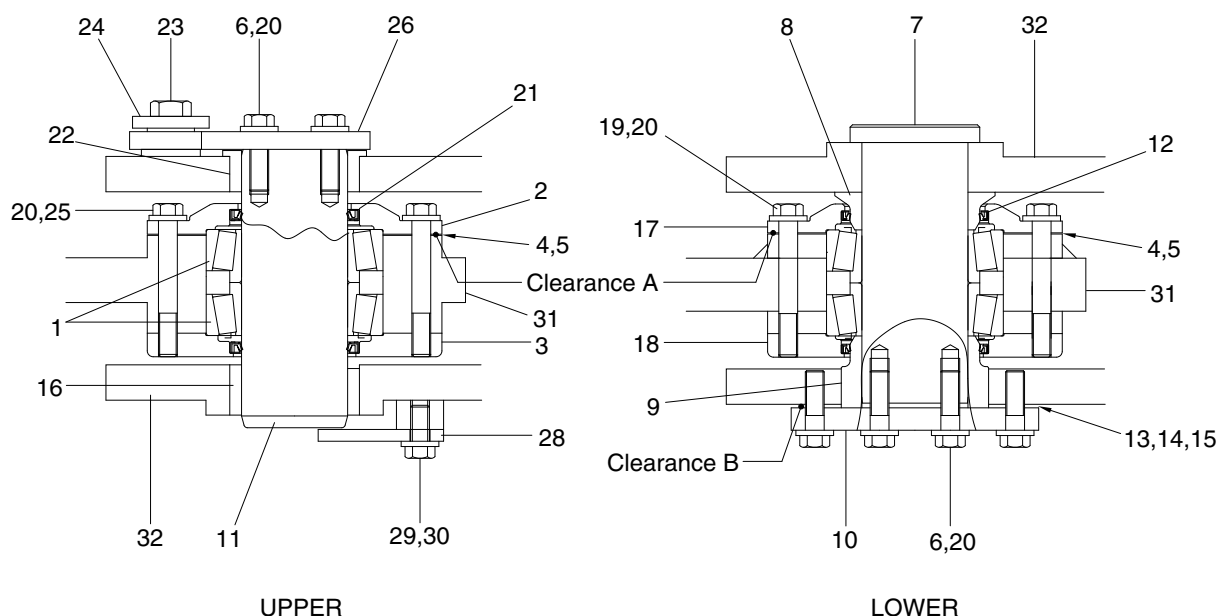
(4) Check inside cover (2, 3, 17, 18) and collar (8, 9) for dents or scratches; if any damage is found, correct with a grinder or replace.

(5) The serviceable limit of pins and bushings is shown in the table below.

Unit : mm

Item No.	Name	Std dimension	Serviceable limit			Remedy
			Outer dia	Inner dia	Clearance	
7, 11	Pin	Upper :100 Lower : 105	99.5/104.5		0.8	Replace
1	Tapered roller bearing			100.5/105.5		
8, 9	Collar			100.5/105.5		
12, 21	Dust seal	When removed				Replace

#### 4) ASSEMBLY



78095SE19

Assemble the center pivot group by reversing the order of disassembly while paying close attention to the following.

- (1) Put the dust seal (12,21) into cover (2, 3, 17, 18).
  - ※ Apply grease to the lip of the dust seal. Insert the dust seal so that the dust seal lip faces out and punch four places on the outer circumference of the seal to lock it.
- (2) Lower the temperature of the lower bearing cup to  $-75 \pm 5^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $-103 \pm 9^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) and install it to front frame until it contacts the bottom of the frame.
- (3) Place the cover (3, 18).
- (4) Coat lightly with oil and install lower bearing in bore in front frame. Coat lightly with oil and install upper bearing in bore in upper front frame.
- (5) Place the cover (2, 17) and hold in place with bolt (19, 25). At this time, adjust shims (4, 5) to press the shoulder of bearing (1) against retainer.
  - **Adjustment method of clearance A**
  - ① Install bearing (1) and cover (2, 17) without shim (4, 5)  
Install four of bolt (19, 25) so that each bolt is separated by 90 degrees.
    - Tightening torque :  $2.0 \sim 3.0 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$  ( $14.5 \sim 21.7 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )
  - ② Adjust shims (4, 5) in order to control the clearance A.
    - Clearance A : Below 0.1 mm
    - Shim thickness : 0.1 mm, 0.5 mm
  - ③ Measure bearing preload and confirm the value.
    - Bearing preload :  $1.2 \sim 2.5 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$  ( $8.7 \sim 18.1 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )

- (5) Apply grease to lower collar (8) and insert it to the lower of roller bearing.
- (6) After setting the bearing so that its upper surface is horizontal, tighten the all the bolt (19, 25).  
After tightening, confirm that tapered roller bearing moves lightly ; if does not move smoothly, add shims (4, 5).
- Tightening Torque : 35~43 kgf · m (253~311 lbf · ft)
  - Apply loctite #243.
- (7) Move the front frame and join it to the rear frame so that match the pin hole at the center.
- (8) Apply grease to pin (11), bushing (22) and insert it into tapered roller bearing (1).
- (9) Apply grease to lower collar (9) and insert it to the lower of roller bearing through rear frame (32).
- (10) Apply grease to pin (7) and insert it into tapered roller bearing (1).
- (11) Before tightening bolt (6), adjust shims (13, 14, 15) in order to control the clearance between the plate (21) and rear frame (32).
- **Adjustment method of clearance B**
  - ① Install pin (7) and plate (10) without shim (13, 14, 15).  
Install four of bolt (6) so that each bolt is separated by 90 degrees.
    - Tightening torque : 2.0~3.0 kgf · m (14.5~21.7 lbf · ft)
  - ② Adjust shims in order to control the clearance B.
    - Clearance B : 0.1~0.2 mm
    - Shim thickness : 0.1 mm, 0.5 mm, 2.0 mm
- (12) Tighten the all the bolts (6).
- Tightening Torque : 35~43 kgf · m (253~311 lbf · ft)
  - Apply loctite #243.

## 5) TROUBLESHOOTING

Trouble	Probable cause	Remedy
Shock is felt when steering	Capscrew for fixing steering valve is loose	Retighten
	Faulty center pivot pin mounting bolts	Retighten
	Center pivot pins have worn out	Readjust or replace
	Faulty hydraulic system	See hydraulic system
Shock is felt when moving backward or forward	Fault fixing of connecting capscrews	Retighten
	Center pins have worn out	Readjust or replace
	Bearings of support unit have worn out	Retighten
	Drive shaft damaged	See drive system
	Faulty transmission	See transmission system

# SECTION 6 WORK EQUIPMENT

Group 1	Structure and Function .....	6-1
Group 2	Operational Checks and Troubleshooting .....	6-39
Group 3	Tests and Adjustments .....	6-50
Group 4	Disassembly and Assembly .....	6-64

# SECTION 6 WORK EQUIPMENT

## GROUP 1 STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION

### 1. HYDRAULIC SYSTEM OUTLINE

The loader hydraulic system is a pilot operated, closed center system which is supplied with flow from the variable displacement piston main hydraulic pump.

The loader system components are :

- Loader pump
- Main control valve
- Bucket cylinder
- Boom cylinders
- Remote control valve (Pilot control valve, EH type)
- Safety valve

Flow from the steering pump not used by the steering system leaves the flow amplifier EF port. It flows to the inlet port plate of two section or three section block type main control valve.

The main control valve is load pressure independent flow distribution system which routes flow to the boom, bucket or auxiliary cylinders (not shown) when the respective spools are shifted.

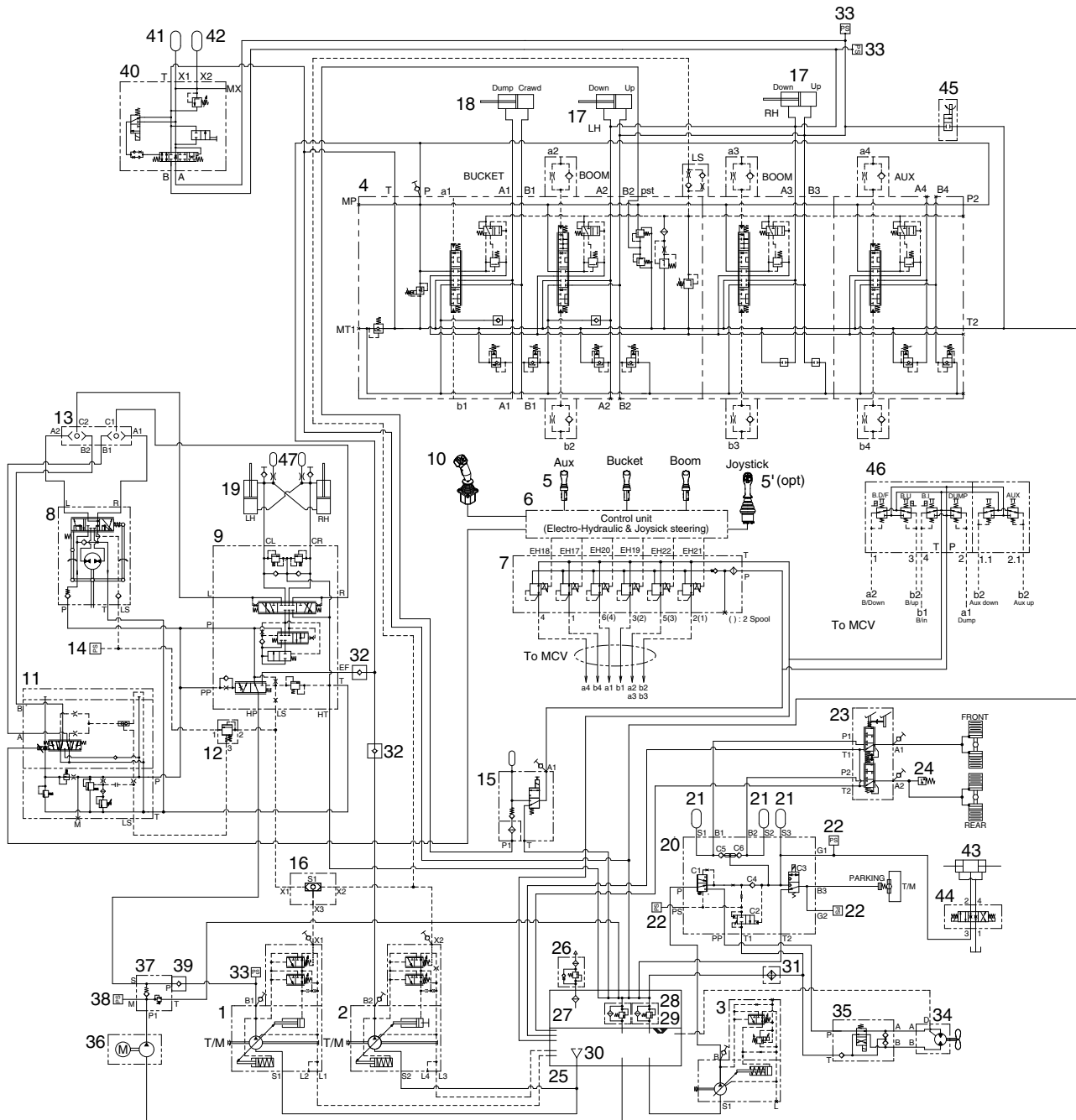
Flow from the loader pump is routed to the main control valve where pump outlet pressure is reduced to pilot circuit pressure. The main control valve flow to the remote control valve.

The remote control valve routed flow to either end of each spool valve section in the main control valve to control spool stroke.

A accumulator mounted on safety valve supplies a secondary pressure source to operated remote control valve so the boom can be lowered if the engine is off.

The return circuit for the main hydraulic system have return filter inside the hydraulic tank. The return filter uses a filter element and a bypass valve. The bypass valve is located in the upside of filter.

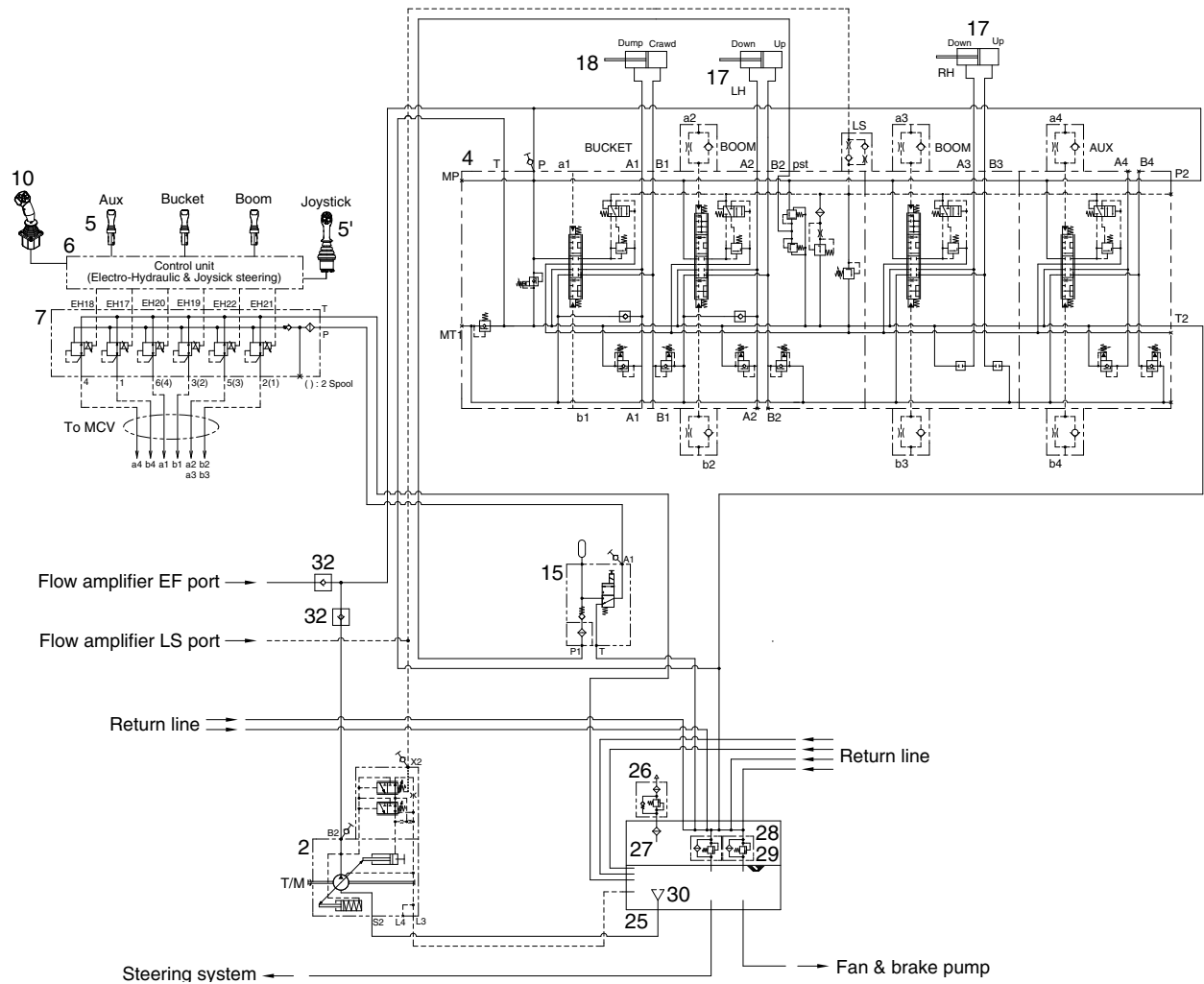
## 2. HYDRAULIC CIRCUIT



9806WE01

- |       |                               |    |                   |    |                              |
|-------|-------------------------------|----|-------------------|----|------------------------------|
| 1     | Steering pump                 | 17 | Boom cylinder     | 33 | Pressure sensor              |
| 2     | Loader pump                   | 18 | Bucket cylinder   | 34 | Fan motor                    |
| 3     | Fan & brake pump              | 19 | Steering cylinder | 35 | Directional valve            |
| 4     | Main control valve            | 20 | Cut-off valve     | 36 | Pump motor (opt)             |
| 5, 5' | RCV (EH type, FNR type)       | 21 | Accumulator       | 37 | Check block (opt)            |
| 6     | Control unit                  | 22 | Pressure sensor   | 38 | Pressure sensor (opt)        |
| 7     | EH control block              | 23 | Brake valve       | 39 | Check valve (opt)            |
| 8     | Steering unit                 | 24 | Pressure switch   | 40 | Ride control valve (opt)     |
| 9     | Flow amplifier                | 25 | Hydraulic tank    | 41 | Accumulator (opt)            |
| 10    | Joystick steering lever (opt) | 26 | Air breather      | 42 | Accumulator (opt)            |
| 11    | Proportional valve (opt)      | 27 | Strainer          | 43 | Quick coupler cylinder (opt) |
| 12    | LS compensating valve (opt)   | 28 | Return filter     | 44 | Solenoid valve (opt)         |
| 13    | Shuttle valve (opt)           | 29 | By pass valve     | 45 | Manual boom lowering valve   |
| 14    | Pressure sensor (opt)         | 30 | Strainer          | 46 | HYD control block (opt)      |
| 15    | Safety valve                  | 31 | Hyd oil cooler    | 47 | Accumulator                  |
| 16    | Shuttle valve                 | 32 | Check valve       |    |                              |

### 3. WORK EQUIPMENT HYDRAULIC CIRCUIT

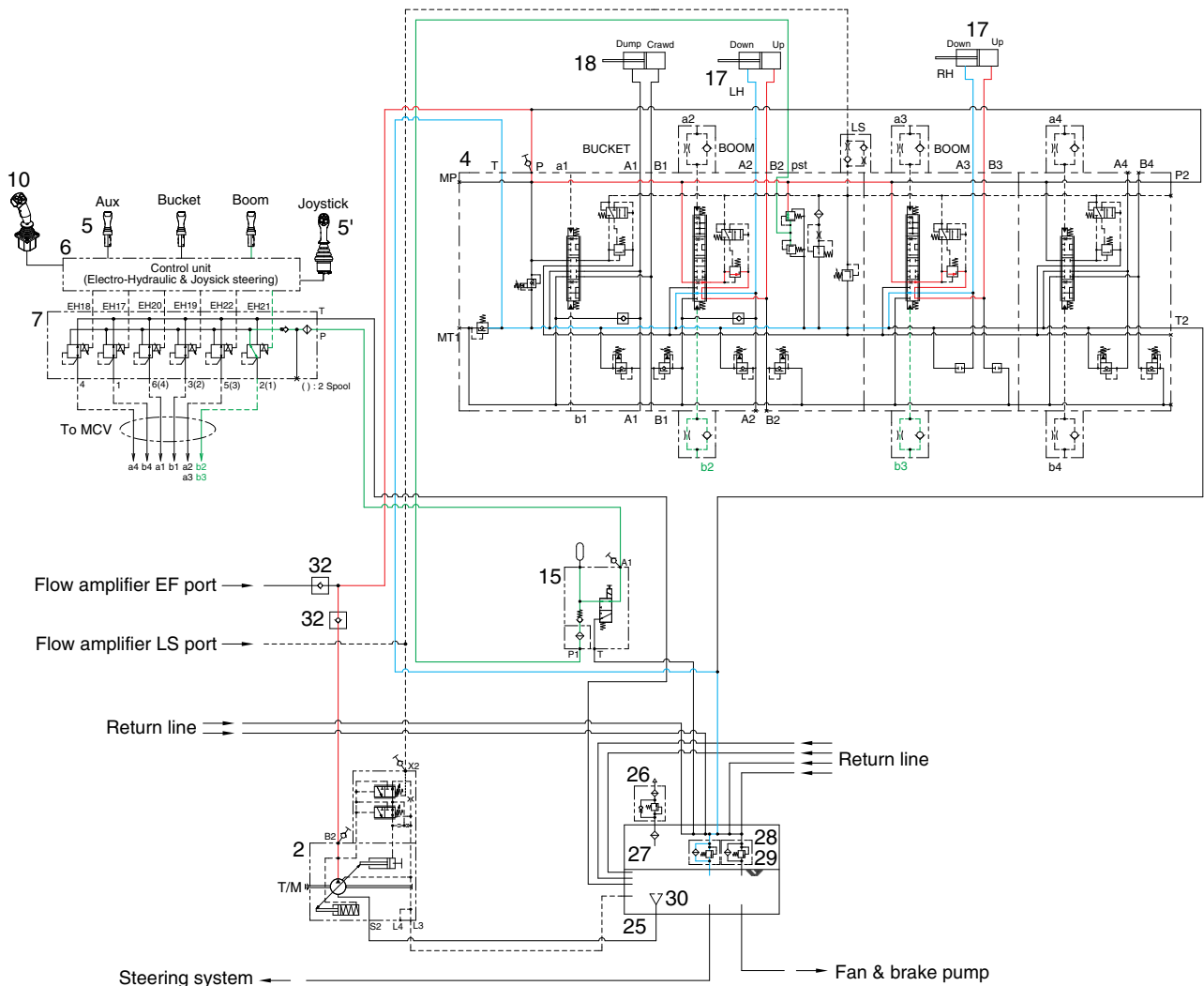


9806WE02

- |       |                               |    |                 |    |               |
|-------|-------------------------------|----|-----------------|----|---------------|
| 2     | Loader pump                   | 15 | Safety valve    | 28 | Return filter |
| 4     | Main control valve            | 17 | Boom cylinder   | 29 | Bypass valve  |
| 5, 5' | RCV (EH type, FNR type)       | 18 | Bucket cylinder | 30 | Strainer      |
| 6     | Control unit                  | 25 | Hydraulic tank  | 32 | Check valve   |
| 7     | EH control block              | 26 | Air breather    |    |               |
| 10    | Joystick steering lever (opt) | 27 | Strainer        |    |               |



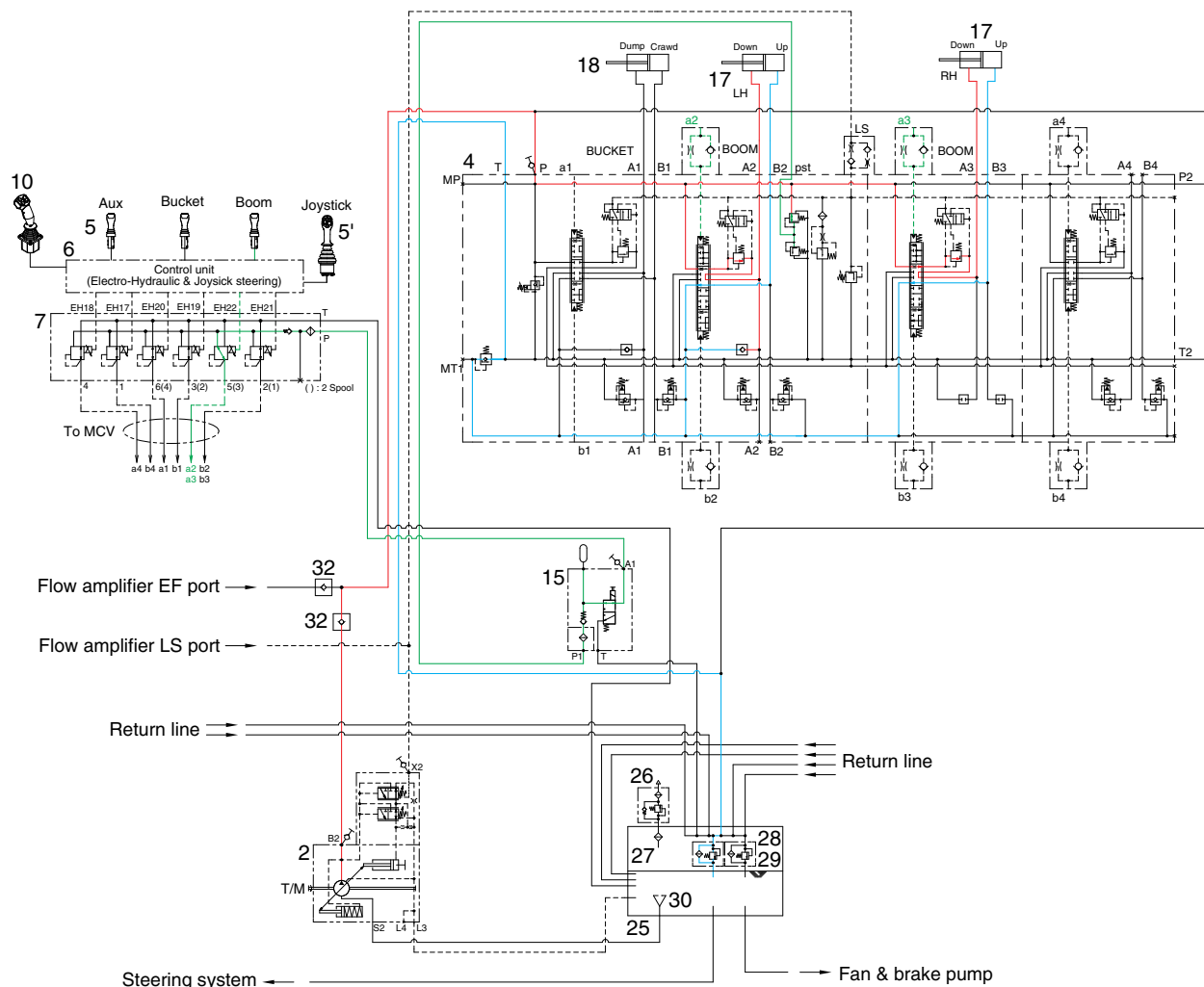
## 1) WHEN THE RCV LEVER IS IN THE RAISE POSITION



9806WE03

- When the EH RCV lever (5, boom) is pulled back, the boom spool is moved to raise position by pilot oil pressure from EH control block (7).
- The oil from loader pump (2) flows into main control valve (4) and then goes to the large chamber of boom cylinder (17) by pushing the load check valve of the boom spool.
- The oil from the small chamber of boom cylinder (17) returns to hydraulic oil tank (25) through the boom spool at the same time.
- When this happens, the boom goes up.

## 2) WHEN THE RCV LEVER IS IN THE LOWER POSITION

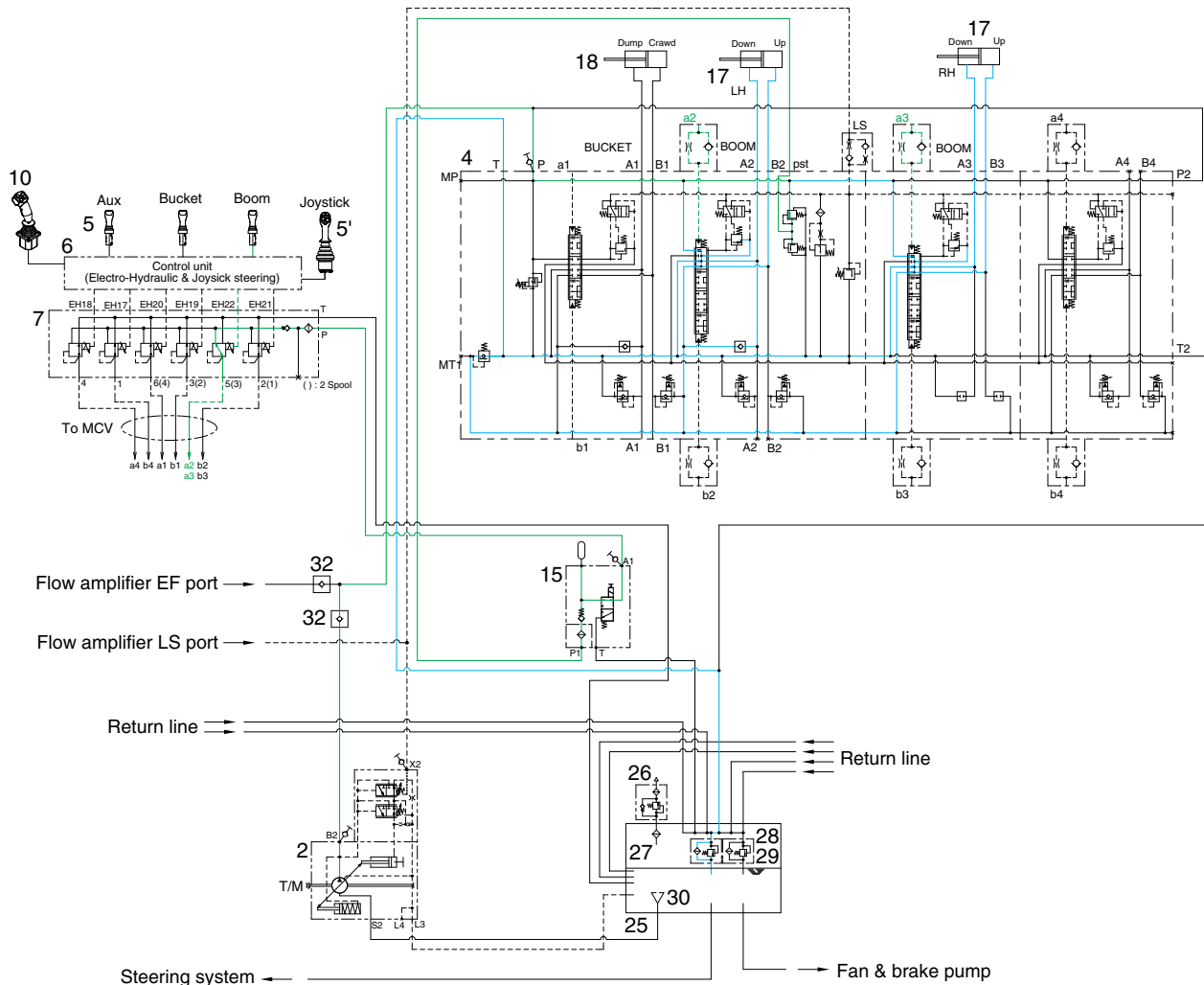


9806WE04

- When the EH RCV lever (5, boom) is pushed forward, the boom spool is moved to lower position by pilot pressure from EH control block.
- The oil from loader pump (2) flows into main control valve (4) and then goes to small chamber of boom cylinder (17) by pushing the load check valve of the boom spool.
- The oil returned from large chamber of boom cylinder (17) returns to hydraulic tank (25) through the boom spool at the same time.
- When the lowering speed of boom is faster, the return oil from the large chamber of boom cylinder combines with the oil from the pump through the regeneration check valve, and flows into the small chamber of the cylinder.

This prevents cylinder cavitation by the negative pressure when the pump flow cannot match the boom down speed.

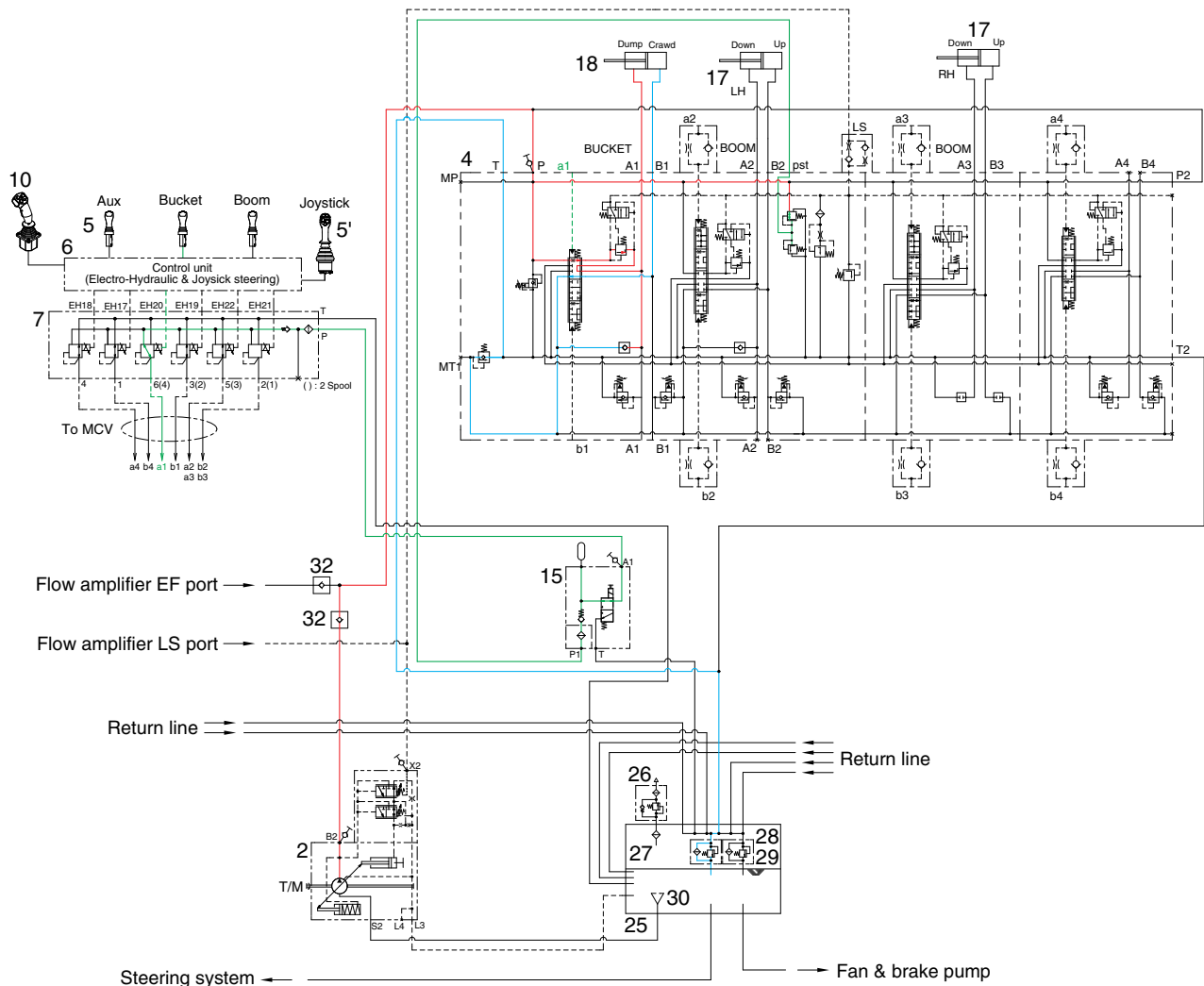
### 3) WHEN THE RCV LEVER IS IN THE FLOAT POSITION



9806WE05

- When the EH RCV lever (5, boom) is pushed further forward from the lower position, the pilot pressure reaches to 13~15bar, then the boom spool is moved to floating position.
- The work ports (A2), (B2), (A3), (B3) and the small chamber and the large chamber are connected to the return passage, so the boom will be lowered due to it's own weight.
- In this condition, when the bucket is in contact with the ground, it can be move up and down in accordance with the shape of the ground.

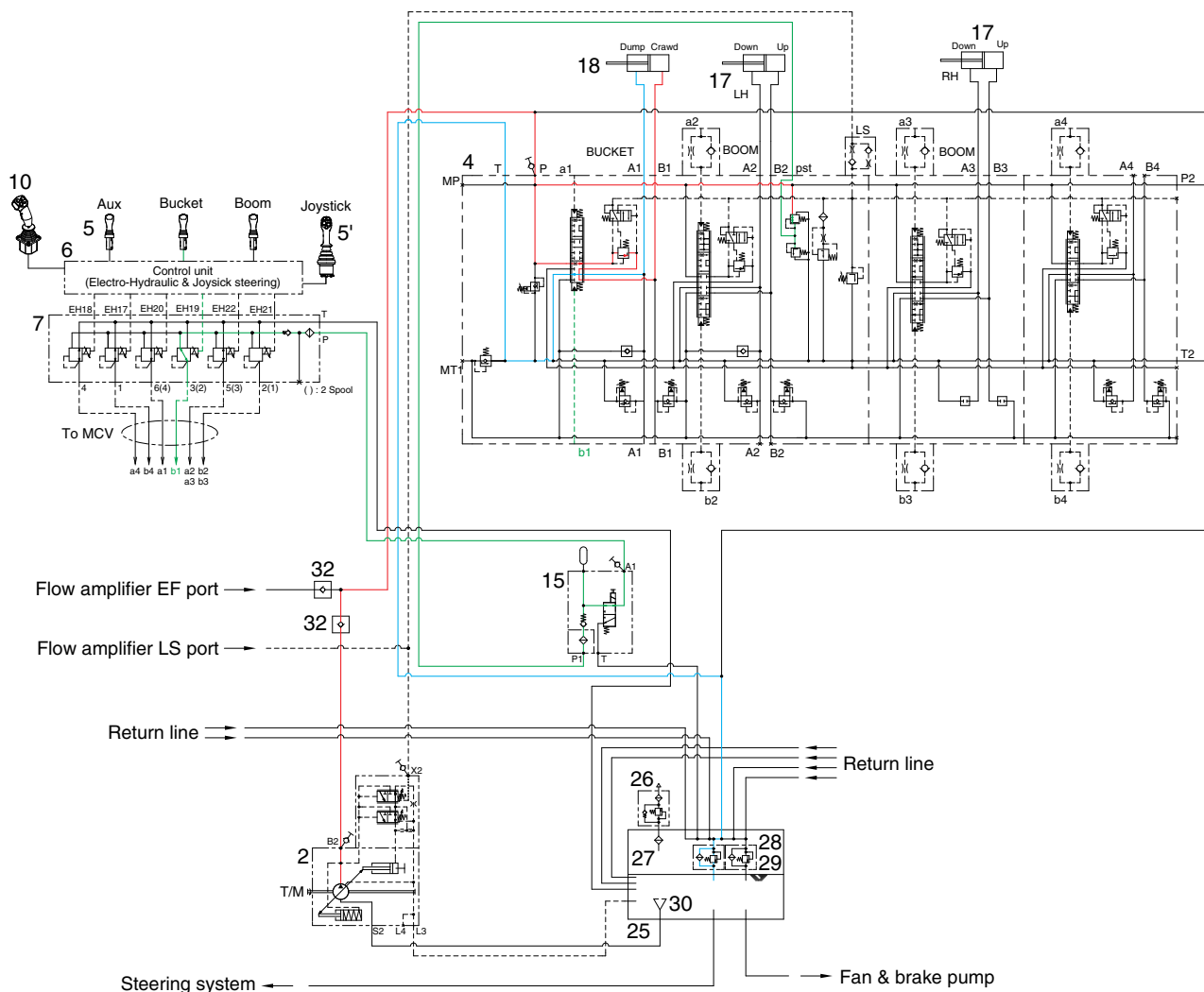
#### 4) WHEN THE RCV LEVER IS IN THE DUMP POSITION



9806WE06

- If the EH RCV lever (5, bucket) is pushed right, the bucket spool is moved to dump position by pilot oil pressure from EH control block.
- The oil from loader pump (2) flows into main control valve (4) and then goes to the small chamber of bucket cylinder (18) by pushing the load check valve of the bucket spool.
- The oil at the large chamber of bucket cylinder (18) returns to hydraulic tank (25).
- When this happens, the bucket is dumped.
- When the dumping speed of bucket is faster, the oil returned from the large chamber of bucket cylinder combines with the oil from the pump, and flows into the small chamber of the cylinder. This prevents cylinder cavitation by the negative pressure when the pump flow cannot match the bucket dump speed.

## 5) WHEN THE RCV LEVER IS IN THE ROLL BACK (retract) POSITION



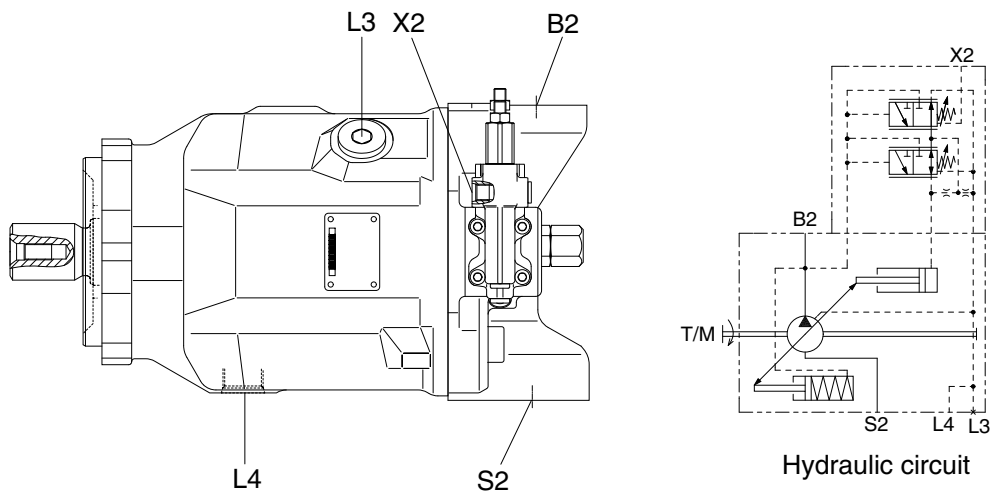
9806WE07

- If the EH RCV lever (5, bucket) is pulled left, the bucket spool is moved to roll back position by pilot pressure from EH control block.
- The oil from loader pump (2) flows into main control valve (4) and then goes to the large chamber of bucket cylinder by pushing the load check valve of the bucket spool.
- The oil at the chamber of bucket cylinder (18) returns to hydraulic tank (25).
- When this happens, the bucket roll back.

#### 4. MAIN PUMP (LOADER PUMP)

##### 1) STRUCTURE (1/2)

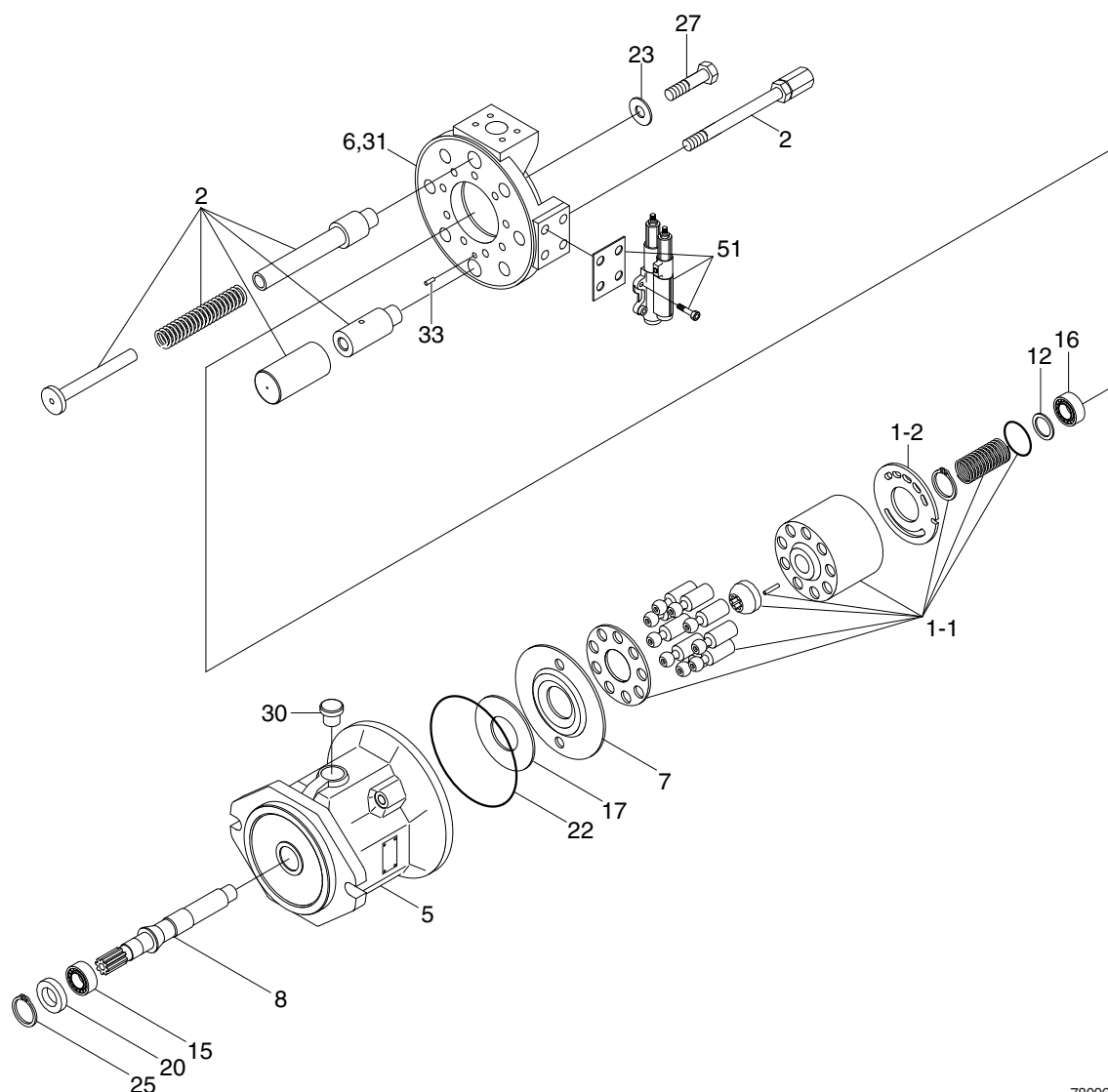
This loader pump is variable displacement piston pump.



78096WE88

Port	Port name	Port size
B2	Pressure port	SAE 1 1/4"
S2	Suction port	SAE 2 1/2"
L3, L4	Case drain port	1 5/16-12UN
X2	Pilot pressure port	7/16-20UNF

• STRUCTURE (2/2)

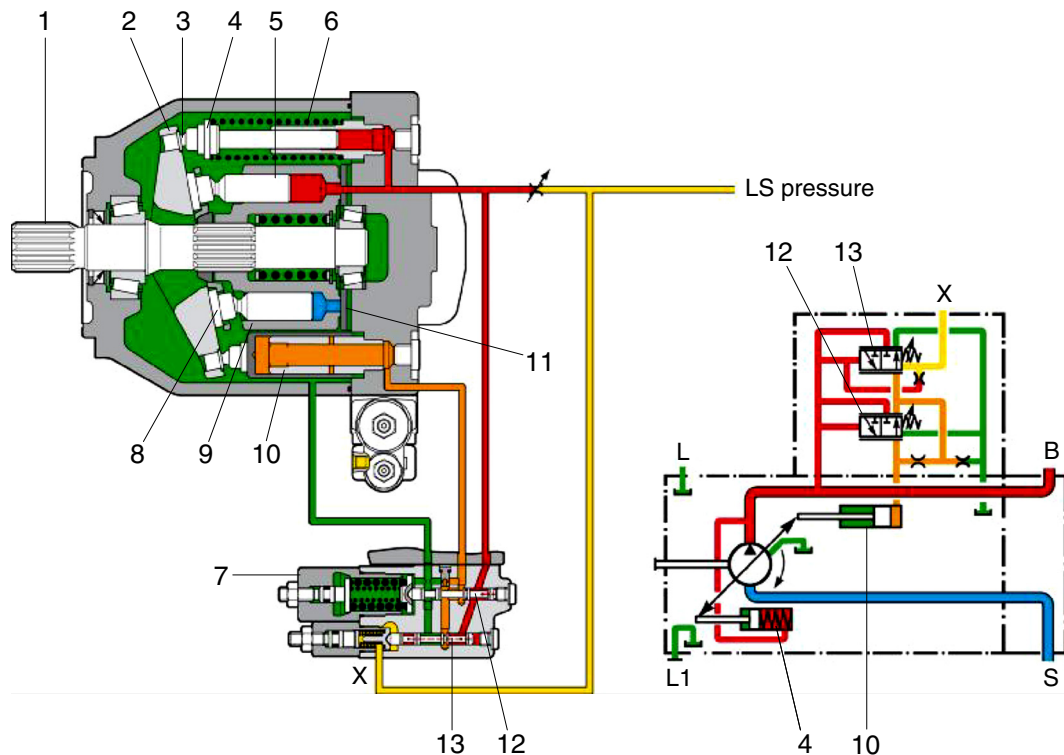


78096WE11

1	Rotary group	8	Drive shaft	23	O-ring
1-1	High speed rotary group	12	Adjustment shim	25	V-ring
1-2	Control plate	15	Taper roller bearing	27	Socket screw
2	Adjusting piece	16	Taper roller bearing	30	Locking screw
5	Pump housing	17	Bearing liner	31	Double break-off pin
6	Port plate	20	Shaft seal ring	33	Cylinder pin
7	Swash plate	22	O-ring	51	Control valve



## 2) FUNCTION



75796WE33

1	Drive shaft	6	Counter spring	11	Control plate
2	Swash plate	7	Pressure & flow compensator valve	12	Pressure compensator spool
3	Shoe plate	8	Piston shoe	13	Flow compensator spool
4	Counter piston	9	Cylinder		
5	Piston	10	Control piston		

The steering pump and loader pump are variable displacement piston pump. The steering pump and loader pump are flow controlled by LS signal. When the steering and loader are not being used, the pumps are at low pressure standby.

The load sensing pressure that is sensed from steering and loader hydraulic systems flows to flow compensator spool (13). This spool keeps the pump output at a level that is necessary to fulfill the requirements for the system flow and for the pressure.

The pressure compensator spool (12) also limits maximum system pressure. The pressure compensator spool (12) prevents damage to the steering and loader hydraulic components from excessive pressure.

The swivel angle of the pumps is controlled by counter piston (4) and control piston (10). Counter spring (6) cause swash plate (2) to move at maximum displacement or causes swash plate (2) to upstroke.

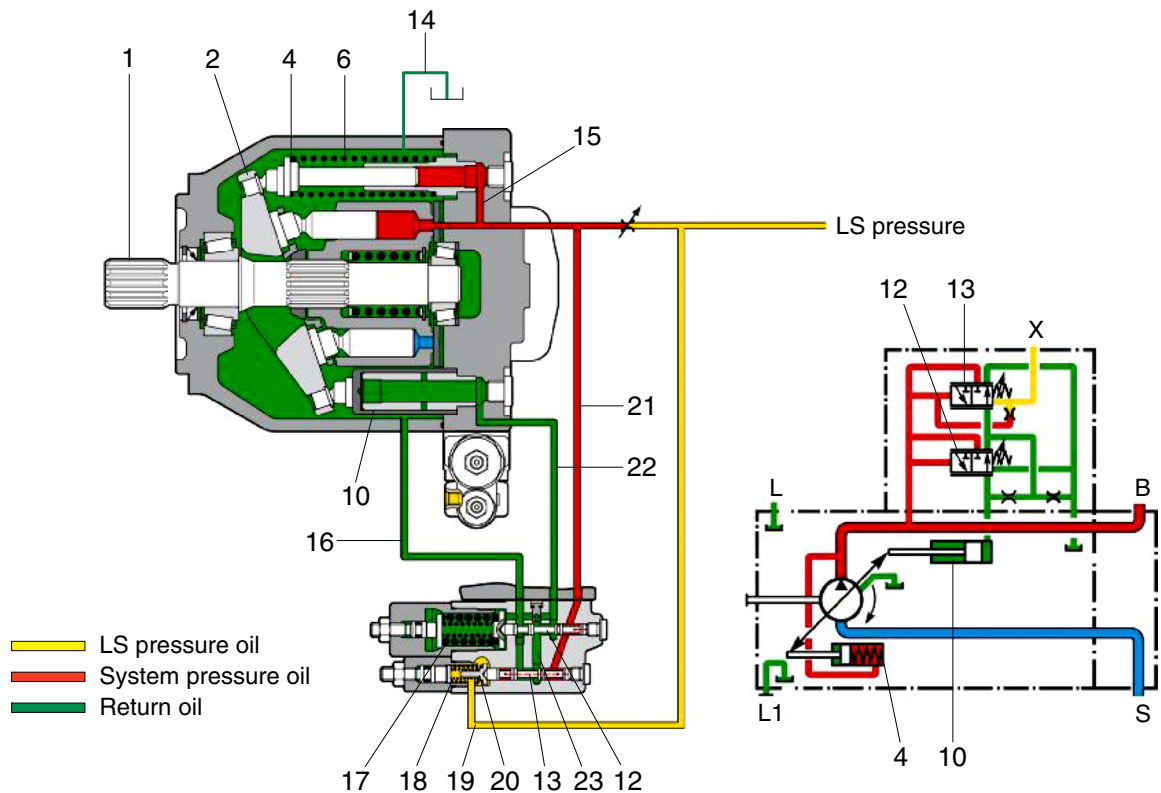
Control piston (10) has a larger area (diameter) than counter piston (4). Control piston (10) causes swash plate (2) to destroke the pump.

Flow compensator spool (13) and/or pressure compensator spool (12) changes pump output by regulating the pump discharge pressure that is acting on control piston (10).

Control piston (10) diameter is larger than counter piston (4) diameter, the oil pressure that is acting against control piston (10) overcomes the force of counter spring (6). The oil pressure then causes the pump to destroke.

Pressure and flow compensator valve (7) also controls the maximum output of pump pressure. When steering and loader pressure rises above pressure compensator setting, pressure compensator spool (12) overrides flow compensator spool (13). This causes the pump to destroke.

## (1) Upstroking



75796WE35

1 Drive shaft	13 Flow compensator spool	19 LS line from the metering pump
2 Swash plate	14 Case drain	20 Cavity
4 Counter piston	15 Passage	21 Passage
6 Counter spring	16 Passage	22 Passage
10 Control piston	17 Spring	23 Cavity
12 Pressure compensator spool	18 Spring	

Upstroking of the pump occurs as flow demand from loader and steering system.

The increased flow demand causes a LS pressure in LS line (19). The LS pressure in LS line (19) combines with the force of spring (18) in cavity (20).

The force of spring (18) causes pump pressure to be higher than the LS pressure (19).

If the combination of LS pressure and of spring force is greater than the pump discharge pressure, this difference pressure causes spool (13) to move right. As spool (13) moves right, the spool (13) blocks the flow of supply oil to control piston (10). Pump swash plate (2) is controlled by pressure and flow as much as hydraulic system requests.

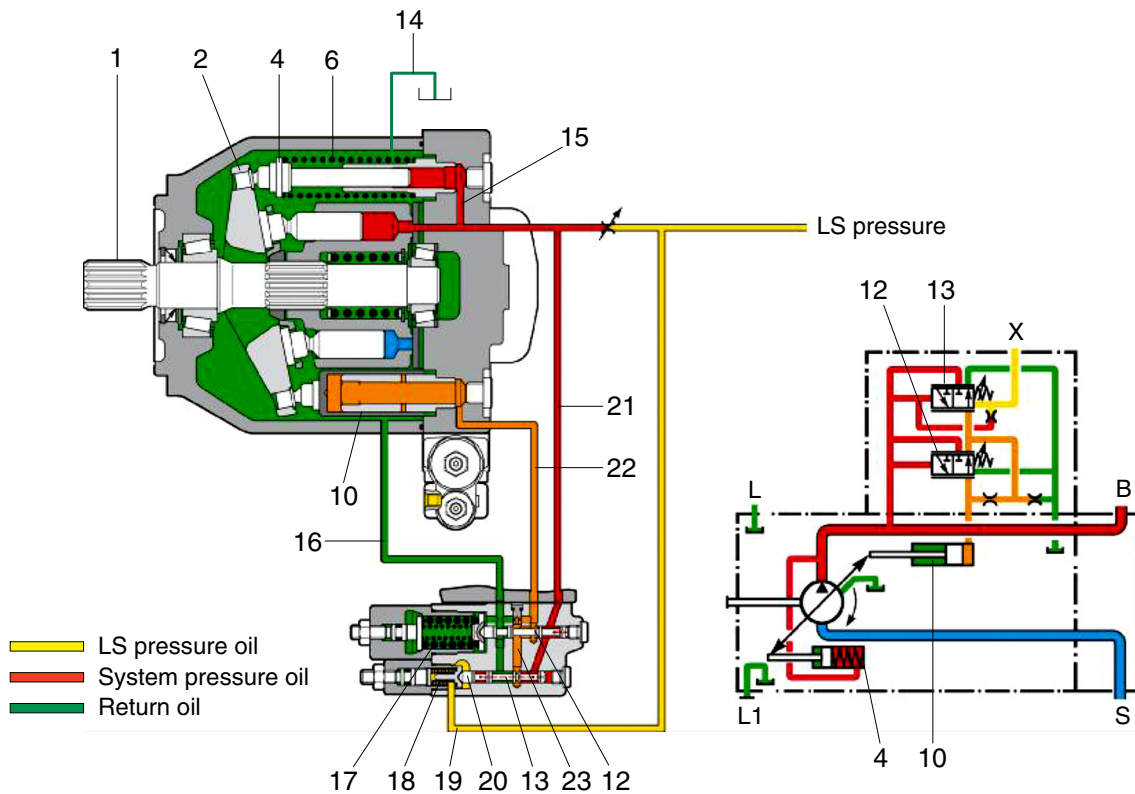
When the oil flow to control piston (10) is blocked, the pilot oil in passage (22) drains to passage (23). The oil then flows past pressure compensator spool (12) and through passage (16) into the housing and via the drain line (14) to tank.

Supply oil flows through passage (15) to counter piston (4). The oil acts against counter piston (4). The oil combines with the force of counter spring (6). This causes swash plate (2) to upstroke.

This also causes the pump flow to increase. As flow requirements are satisfied, the pump output pressure increase. The pressure increases until the pressure in passage (15) moves flow compensator spool (13) up to be satisfied with system requirement for pressure and flow.

• Pump discharge pressure = force of spring (18) + LS pressure (19)

## (2) Destroking



75796WE34

1	Drive shaft	13	Flow compensator spool	19	LS line from the metering pump
2	Swash plate	14	Case drain	20	Cavity
4	Counter piston	15	Passage	21	Passage
6	Counter spring	16	Passage	22	Passage
10	Control piston	17	Spring	23	Cavity
12	Pressure compensator spool	18	Spring		

The decreased flow demand causes a LS pressure in line (19). The LS pressure in line (19) combines with the force of spring (18) in cavity (20).

This combination of LS pressure and of spring force is less than the pump pressure in passage (21). This causes flow compensator spool (13) to move left.

Pump oil now flows through passage (15). The oil then flows past flow compensator spool (13), through passage (22), and then to control piston (10).

The pump pressure behind control piston (10) is now greater than the combined force of counter piston(4) and of counter spring (6). The angle of swash plate (2) decreases.

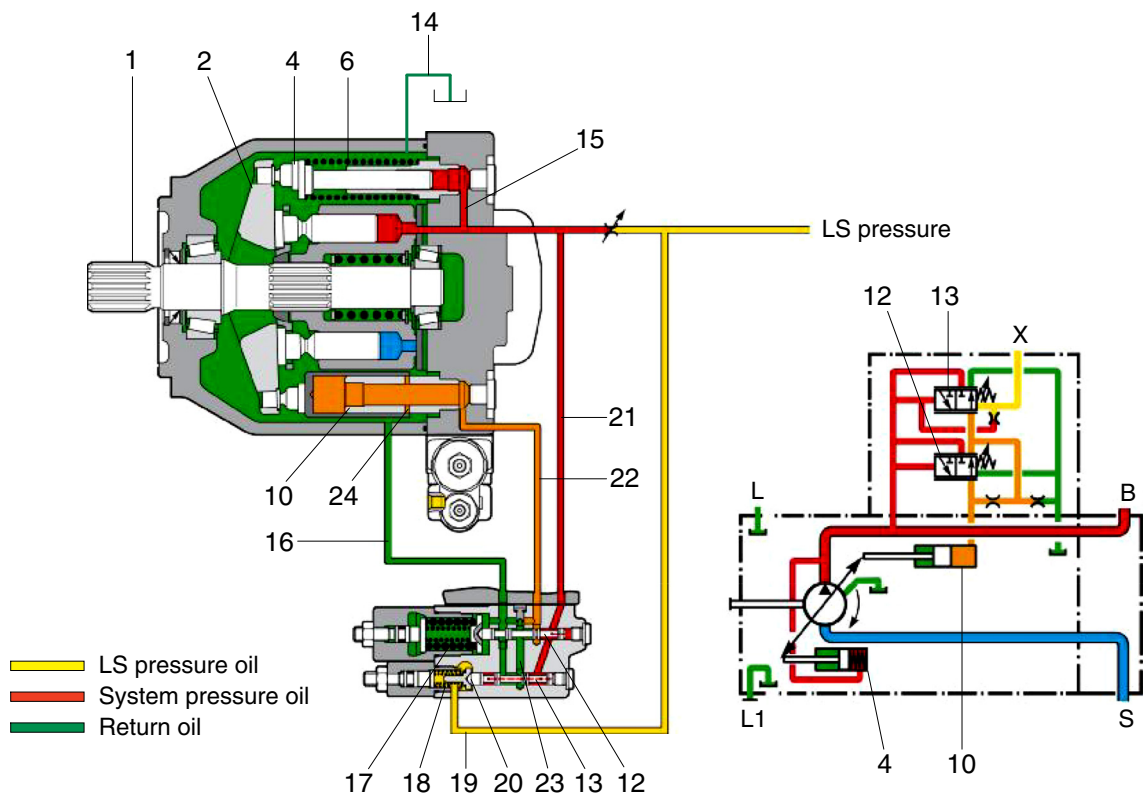
This decreases the pump output and the system pressure.

When the lower flow requirements are met, flow compensator spool (13) moves right up to the balanced position. Swash plate (2) maintains an angle that is sufficient to provide the lower required pressure. If the operator does not turn the steering wheel and does not move RCV, then the pump will return to low pressure standby.

※ Control piston → Changes pump displacement ; influenced by controller.

Counter piston → Helps to change pump displacement but no possible to control this piston.

### (3) Low pressure standby



1 Drive shaft	13 Flow compensator spool	19 LS line from the metering pump
2 Swash plate	14 Case drain	20 Cavity
4 Counter piston	15 Passage	21 Passage
6 Counter spring	16 Passage	22 Passage
10 Control piston	17 Spring	23 Cavity
12 Pressure compensator spool	18 Spring	24 Cross-drilled hole

Low pressure standby constitutes the following condition: a running engine and inactive steering and loader. There are no flow demands on the pump or pressure demands on the pump. Therefore, there is no LS pressure in line (19).

Before you start the engine, counter spring (6) holds swash plate (2) at the maximum angle. As the pump begins to turn, oil begins to flow and pressure increases in the system.

Because of close centered steering control valve and close centered loader hydraulic system.

As this pressure increase, the pressure pushes flow compensator spool (13) against spring (18). This causes flow compensator spool (13) to move left. This opens passage (23) in order to allow pressure oil to flow to control piston (10).

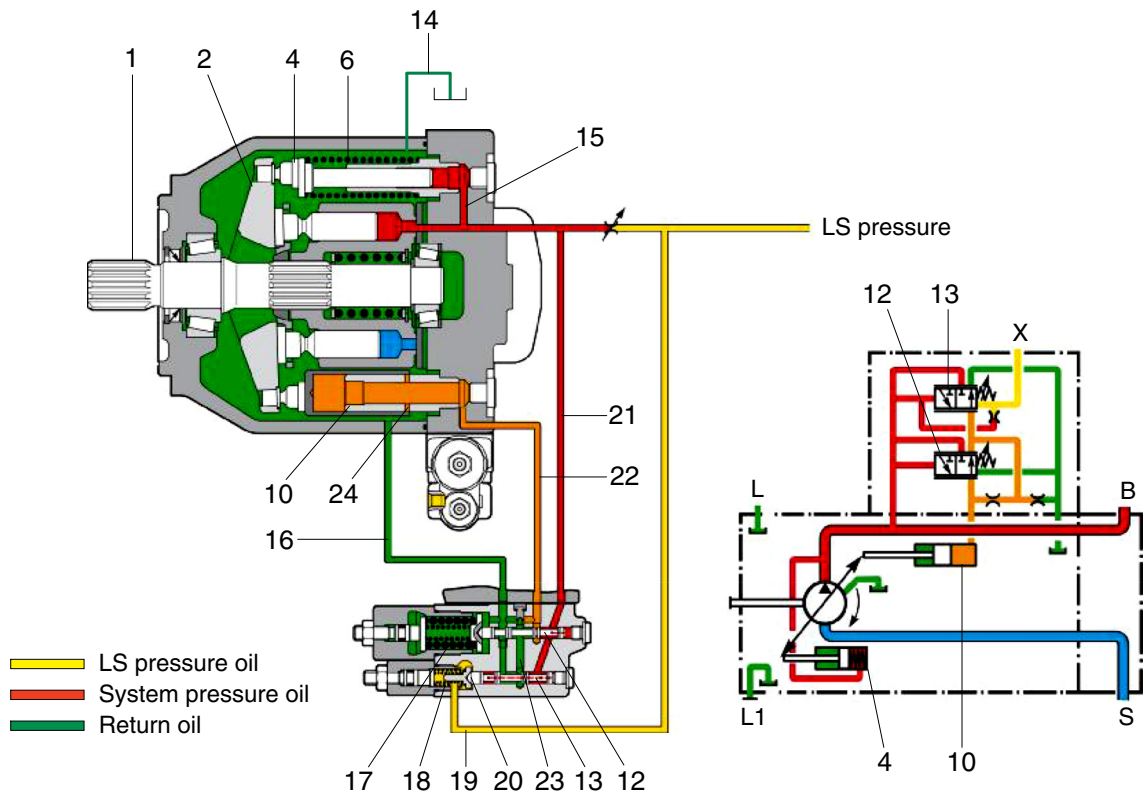
The oil acts against control piston (10) in order to overcome the force of counter spring (6). The oil causes control piston (10) to move to the left.

When control piston (10) moves to the left, the piston moves swash plate (2) toward the minimum angle. Control piston (10) continues to move to the left until cross-drilled hole (24) allows the oil to drain to the case.

Cross-drilled hole (24) limits the maximum travel of control piston (10) to the left. The pump supplies a sufficient amount of flow that compensates for system leakage. The pump also supplies a sufficient amount of flow that compensates for leakage to the pump case. The leakage to the pump case is a result of the cross-drilled hole. The pump maintains low pressure standby. Low pressure standby pressure should not exceed 40 bar (580 psi).

- ※ Low pressure standby will vary in the same pump as the system leakage or the pump leakage increases. The pump will upstroke slightly in order to compensate for the increasing leakage. Control piston (10) will cover more of the cross-drilled hole.

#### (4) High pressure stall



- |                               |                           |                                   |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 Drive shaft                 | 13 Flow compensator spool | 19 LS line from the metering pump |
| 2 Swash plate                 | 14 Case drain             | 20 Cavity                         |
| 4 Counter piston              | 15 Passage                | 21 Passage                        |
| 6 Counter spring              | 16 Passage                | 22 Passage                        |
| 10 Control piston             | 17 Spring                 | 23 Cavity                         |
| 12 Pressure compensator spool | 18 Spring                 |                                   |

When the hydraulic system stalls under load or when the cylinders reach the end of the stroke, the main system pressure increases. But LS pressure (19) is regulated by LS relief valve on steering system and loader system. The pressure difference between discharged pump and LS pressure equal to spring (18). It means no flow is necessary. Therefore, discharged pressure push flow compensator spool (13) left. Supply oil now flows past flow compensator spool (13) and through passage (23). The oil flows past flow compensator spool (13) and into passage (22). The oil then flows to control piston (10).

Pump swash plate (2) will be minimum displacement if the operator does not turn the steering wheel and RCV, then the pump will return to low pressure standby.



## (5) Adjustment of flow control

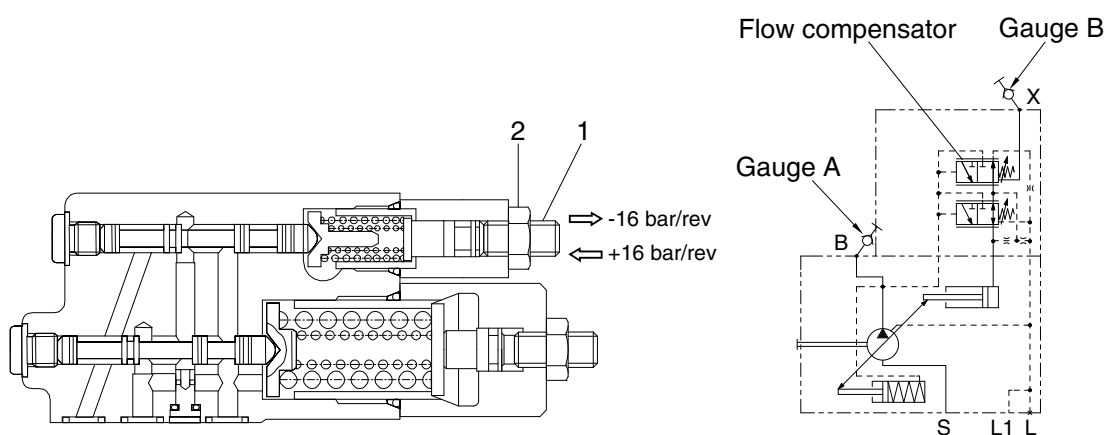
Flow compensator setting must be carried out following procedures and conditions.

### ① Conditions

- Engine is running (at high or low idle).
- RCV is operated slowly (example : Boom up).
- Pressure gauges are installed.
- ※ Discharge pump flow should be less than max pump flow.

### ② Procedures

- Loosening the hexagon nut (2).
- Adjusting screw (1) of flow controller by tightening or loosening the screw (1).
  - Flow setting :  $\Delta P = \text{Gauge A} - \text{Gauge B}$
  - Specification : Steering pump (27 bar)/Loader pump (22 bar)



75796WE37

## (6) Adjustment of pressure control

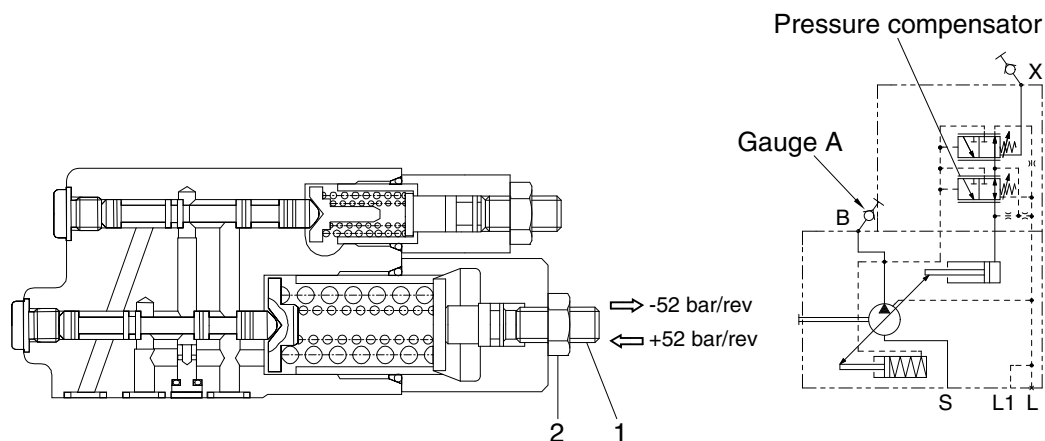
Pressure compensator setting must be carried out following procedures and conditions.

### ① Conditions

- Engine is running.
- System is at relief condition.

### ② Procedures

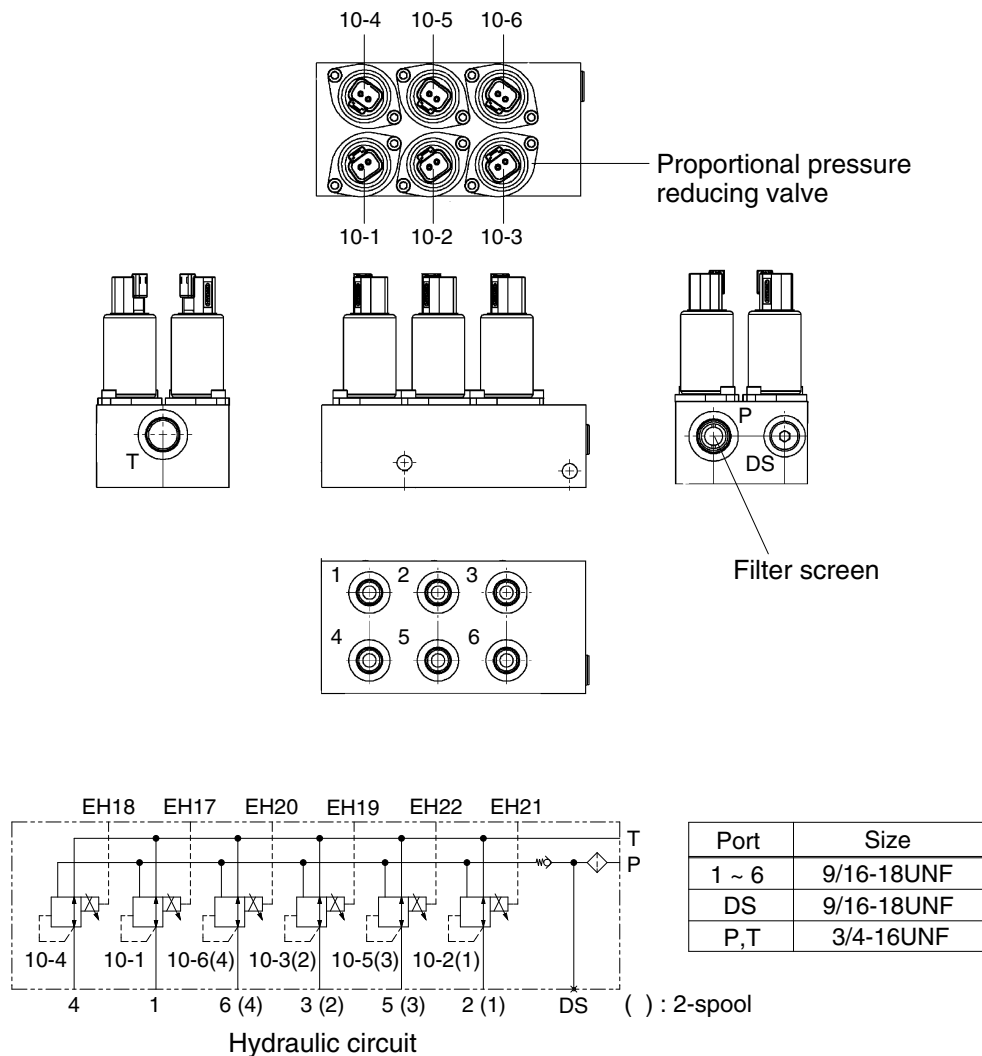
- Loosening the hexagon nut (2).
- Adjusting screw (1) of pressure controller by tightening or loosening the screw (1).
  - Maximum pressure setting = Gauge A
  - Specification : Steering pump (250 bar)/Loader pump (300 bar)



75796WE38

## 5. EH (electro hydraulic) CONTROL BLOCK

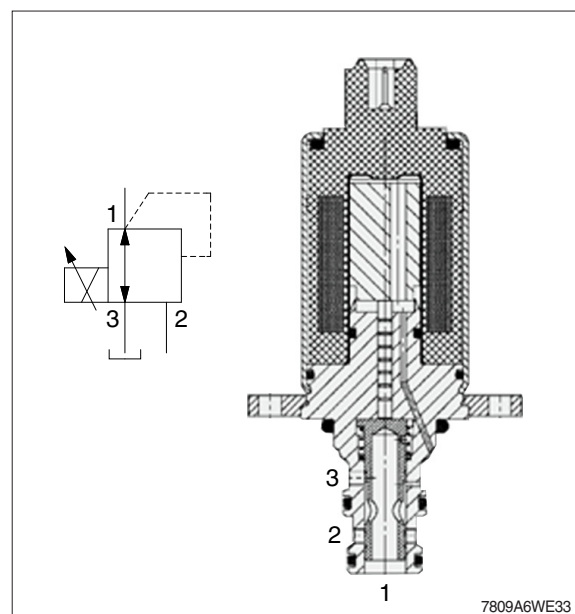
### 1) STRUCTURE



760F6WE33

### 2) OPERATION

The proportional pressure reducing valve (10-1~6) is a direct-acting spool-type valve. When de-energized, port 2 is closed and port 1 (delivery) is connected to port 3 (tank). When the inlet pressure fluctuates it provides an almost constant outlet pressure depending on the energization of the coil. When the control current increases, the coil solenoid exerts a force on the control piston which is proportional to the control current and thereby defines the regulated pressure at port 1. This setting is proportional to the control current. Pressures at tank port 3 are additive to the set pressure. If, as a result of external factors, the pressure at port 1 rises above the preset pressure, the valve opens from port 1 to tank port 3.

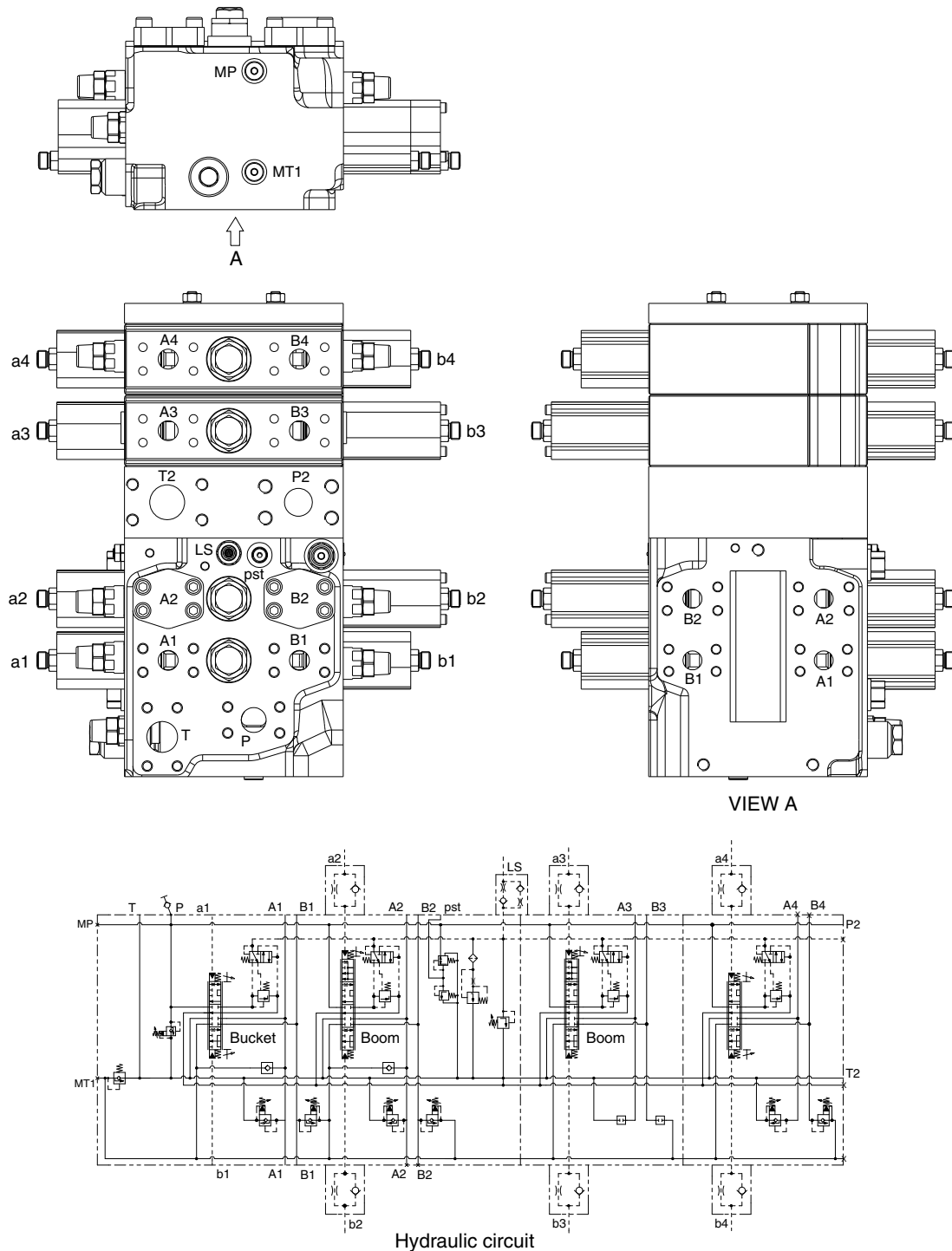


7809A6WE33

## 6. MAIN CONTROL VALVE

### 1) STRUCTURE (1/3)

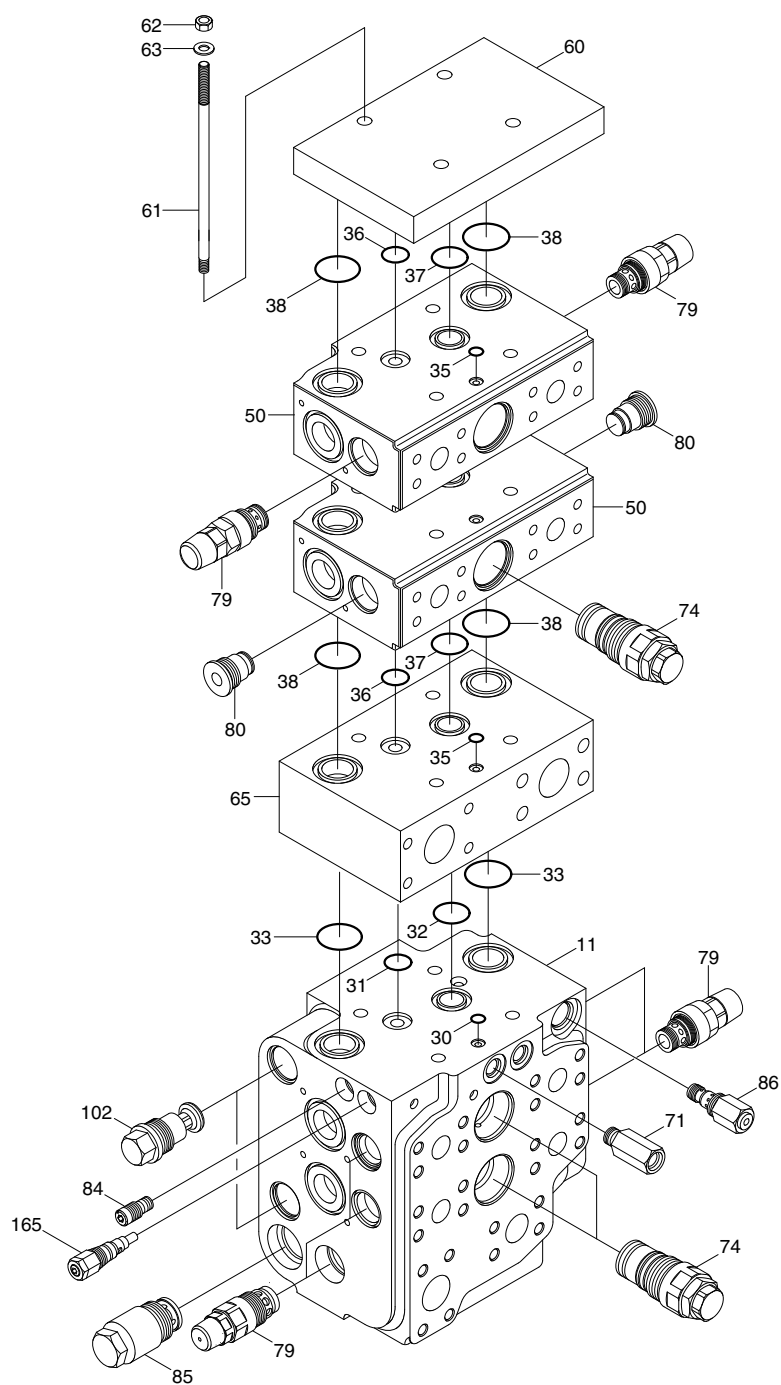
- Type : Closed center, Load pressure - Independent - Flow - Distribution



98096WE10

Port	Port name	Port size	Port	Port name	Port size
P	From main pump	SAE 1"	a2, b2	Boom pilot port	11/16-16UN
T	To hydraulic tank	SAE 1 1/4"	a3, b3	Auxiliary pilot port	11/16-16UN
A1, B1	To bucket cylinder port	SAE 3/4"	LS	Load sensing port	9/16-18UNF
A2, B2, A3, B3	To boom cylinder port	SAE 3/4"	Pst	To RCV P port	9/16-18UNF
a1, b1	Bucket pilot port	11/16-16UN	-	-	-

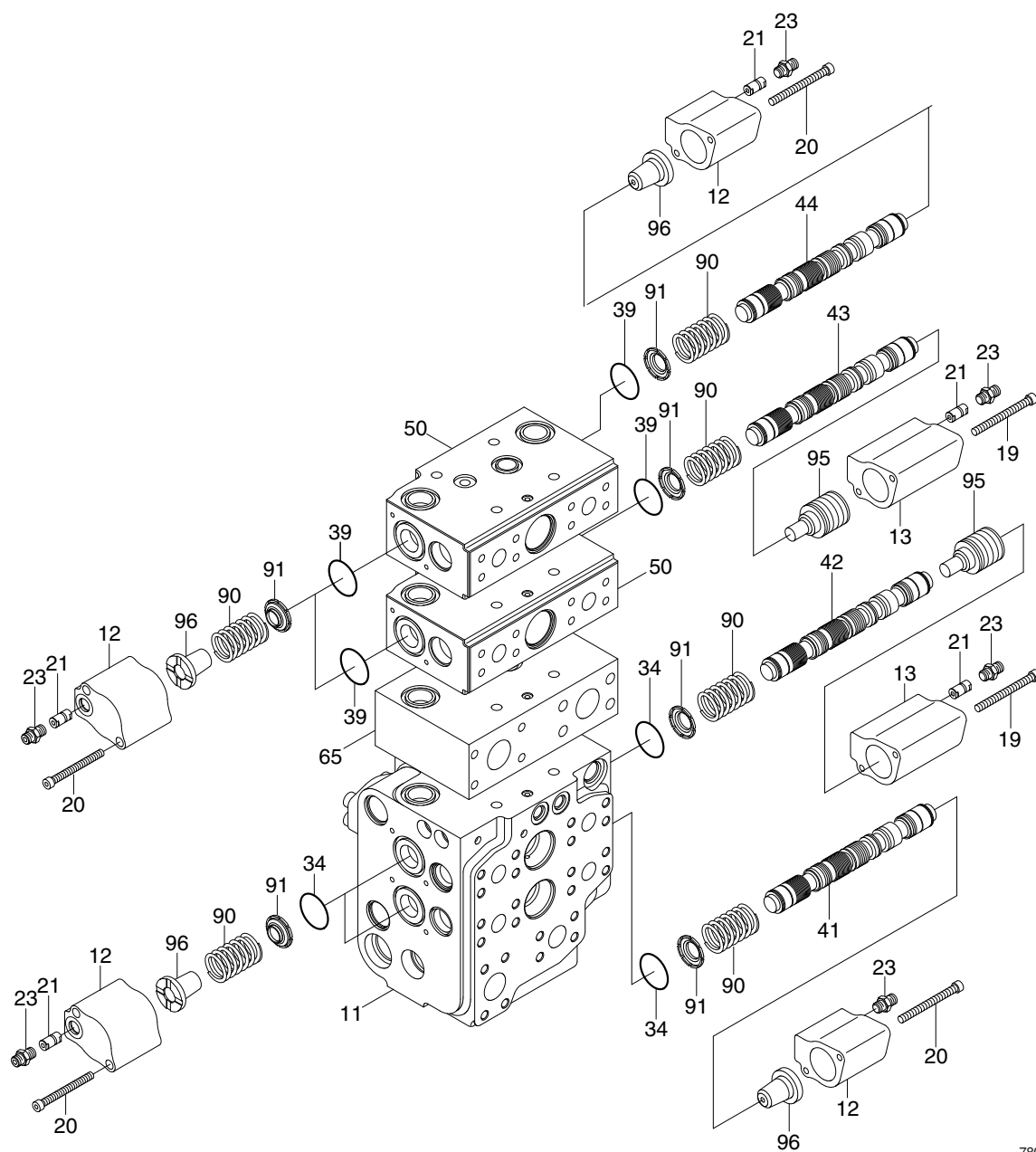
## STRUCTURE (2/3)



78096WE13

11	Housing	38	O-ring	74	Compensator valve
30	O-ring	50	Housing	79	Pressure valve
31	O-ring	60	Plate	80	Plug screw
32	O-ring	61	Stud	84	Flow regulator
33	O-ring	62	Hexagon nut	85	Precharge valve
35	O-ring	63	Washer	86	Pressure reducing valve
36	O-ring	65	Sandwich plate	102	Locking screw
37	O-ring	71	Shuttle valve	165	Pressure relief valve

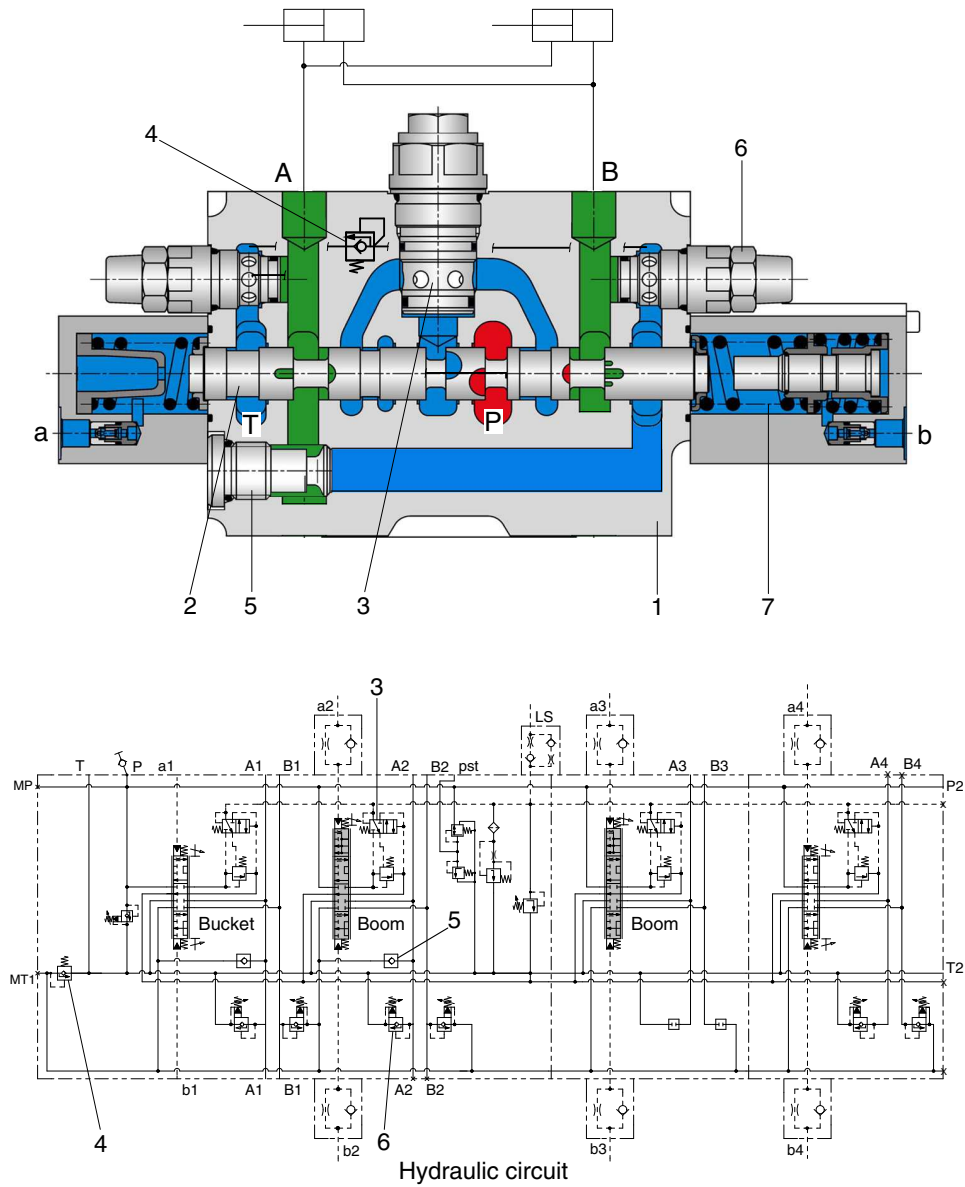
### STRUCTURE (3/3)



78096WE14

11	Housing	34	O-ring	65	Sandwich plate
12	Cover	39	O-ring	90	Compression spring
13	Cover	41	Spool	91	Spring retainer
19	Bolt	42	Spool	95	Spring retainer
20	Bolt	43	Spool	96	Spring retainer
21	Throttle check valve	44	Spool		
23	Threaded steel pipe fitting	50	Housing		

## 2) FUNCTION



98096WE15

- |                        |                            |                  |
|------------------------|----------------------------|------------------|
| 1 Housing              | 4 Counter balance valve    | 7 Spring chamber |
| 2 Spool                | 5 Regeneration check valve |                  |
| 3 Pressure compensator | 6 Port relief valve        |                  |

**(1) Control block**

Proportional direction valve to the LUDV principle (Load pressure - Independent - Flow - Distribution)

**(2) Actuator control**

At the spool (2) the direction and volume of flow is determined that flows to the actuator connections (A or B).

The spring chambers (7) are supplied with pilot pressure either via the pilot connections a and b hydraulic control.

The value of the pilot pressure within the spring chamber (7) determines the stroke of the spool (2).

The pressure compensator (3) controls the pressure differential at the spool (2) and therefore, the flow to the actuators (A, B).

**(3) Loader pressure compensation (LUDV)**

The control block works to the LUDV principle. In this load - sensing version the pressure compensators (3) are located between the spool (2) and the actuator connections (A, B).

The highest load pressure of all of the actuators involved is applied to all of the pressure compensators. In parallel it is also applied to the pump.

If the pump flow is insufficient for all of the functions, then all work movements are reduced in speed by the same ratio.

**(4) Pressure safety, actuator connections**

Large nominal size port relief valve (6) with combined anti-cavitation functions protect the actuators from overloads and cavitation.

**(5) Float position**

The float position is obtained by means of a 4-position spool.

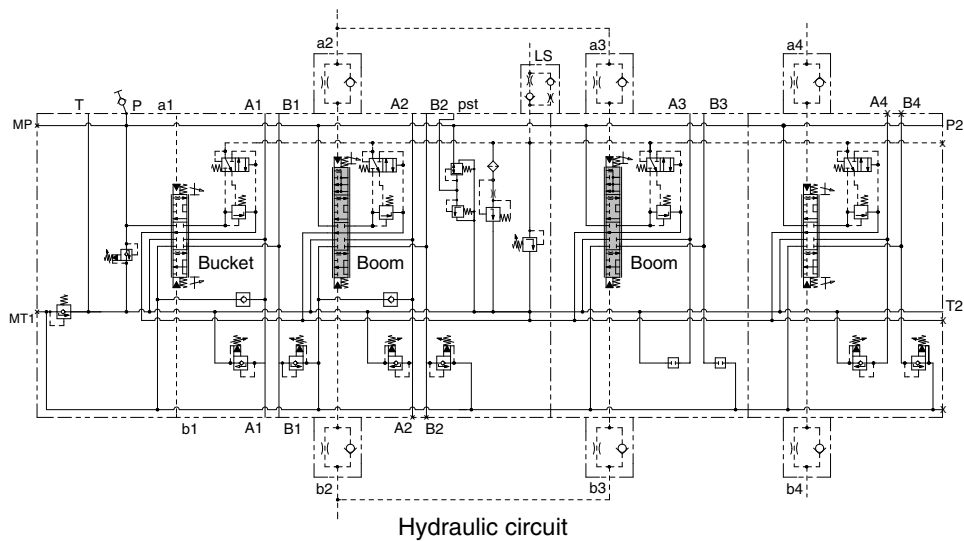
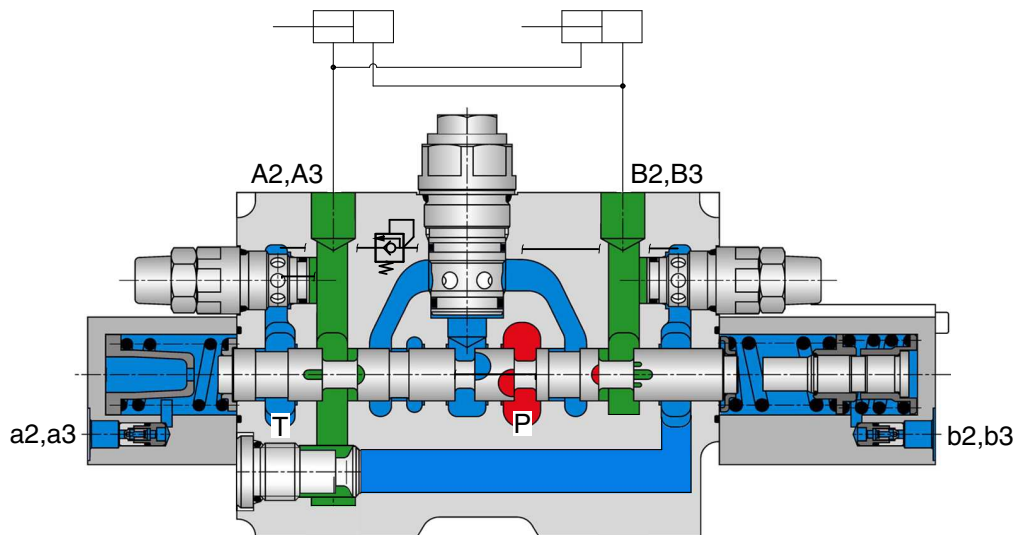
**(6) Regeneration**

To prevent cavitation, with negative loads (e. g. dump or lowering), the tank port is pre-loaded via counter balance valve (4) and is fed with oil via the regeneration check valve (5) downstream of the pressure compensator.



### 3) BOOM SECTION OPERATION

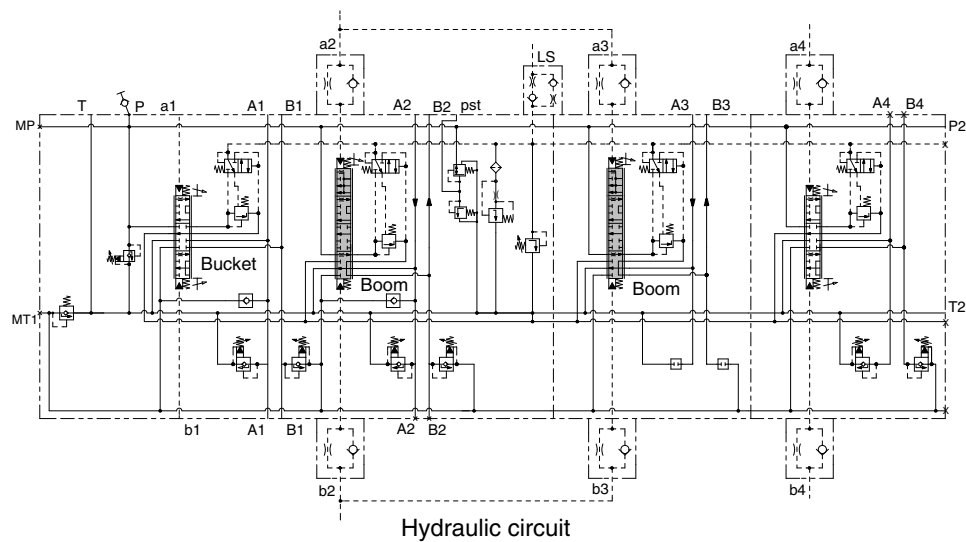
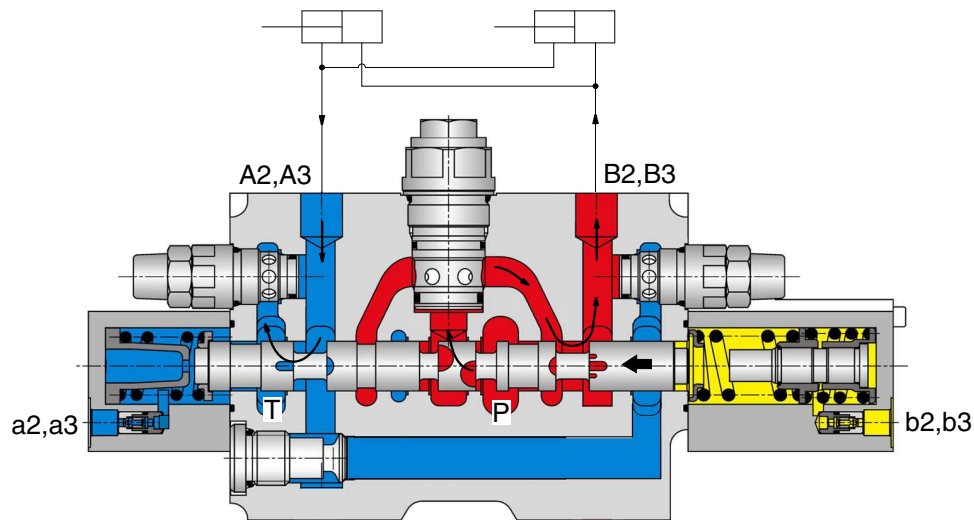
#### (1) Spool in neutral



98096WE51

When the boom spool is in neutral position, oil from the pump will be blocked.  
Then, the pumps are at low pressure stand by.

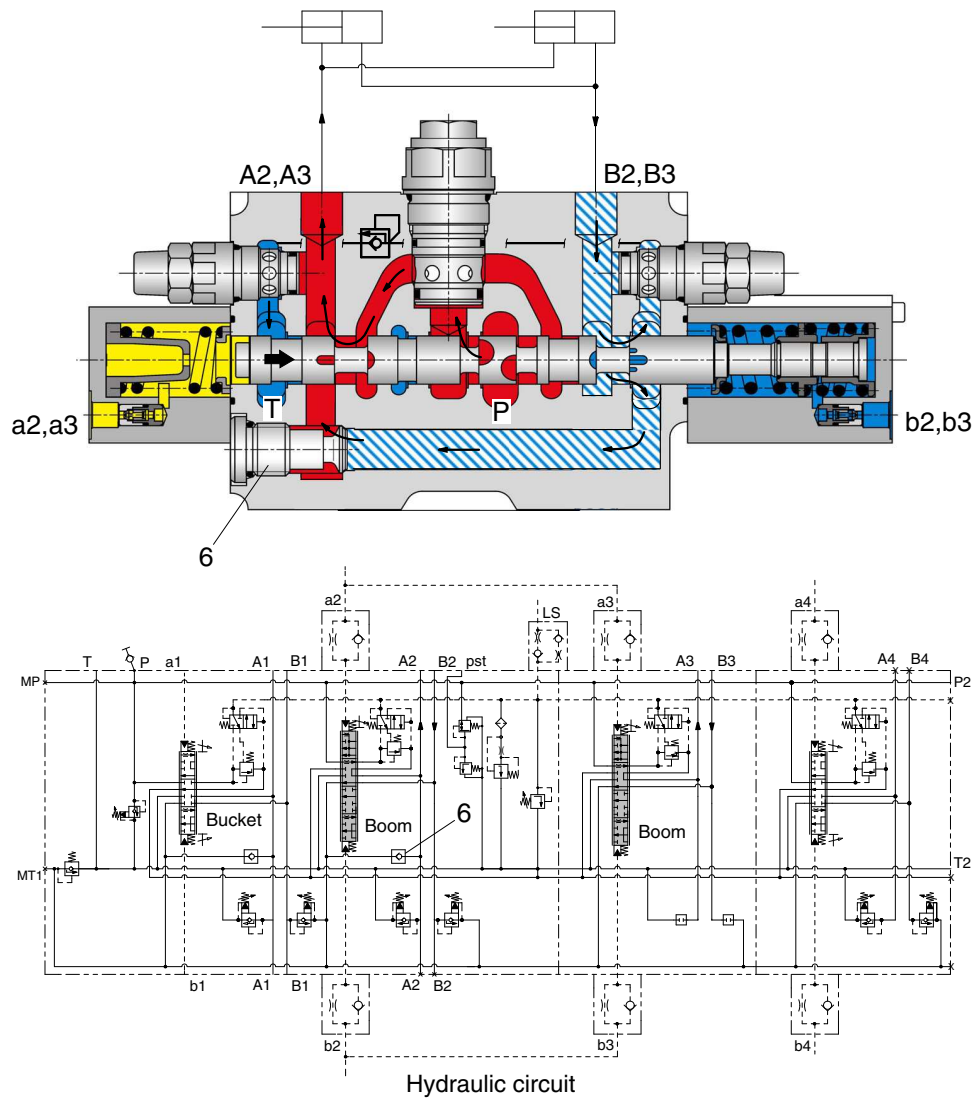
## (2) Boom raise position



98096WE52

When the pilot pressure is led to the port b2, b3 the boom spool moved to raise position. Oil from the pump flows to the cylinder port B2, B3 and oil from the cylinder flows into the tank passage through the cylinder port A2, A3.

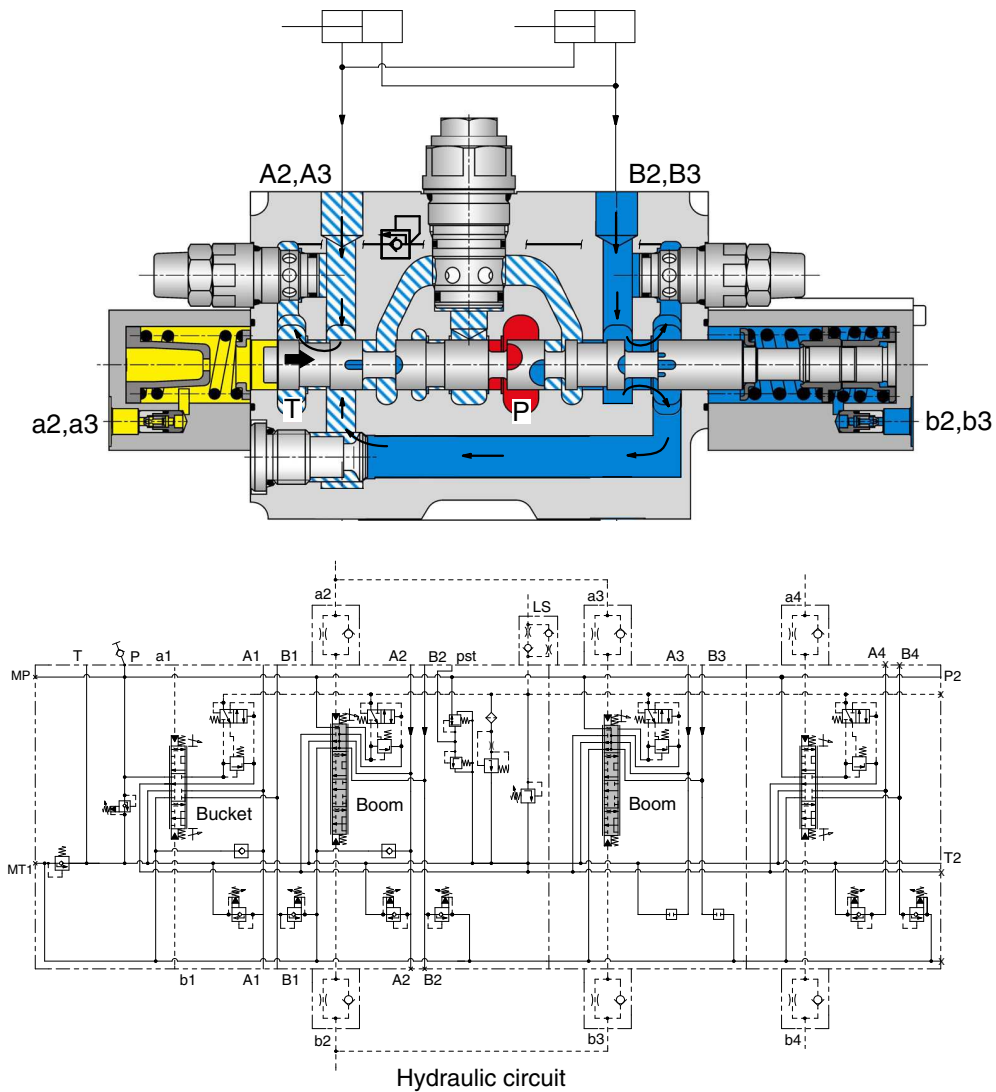
### (3) Boom lower position



98096WE53

When the pilot pressure is led to the port a2, a3, the boom spool moved to lower position. Oil from the pump flows to the cylinder port A2, A3 and oil from the cylinder flows into the tank passage through the cylinder port B2, B3. When the lowering speed of boom is faster, the return oil from the large chamber of boom cylinder combines with the oil from the pump through regeneration check valve (6), and flows into the small chamber of the cylinder. This prevents cylinder cavitation by the negative pressure when the pump flow cannot match the boom down speed.

#### (4) Boom float position

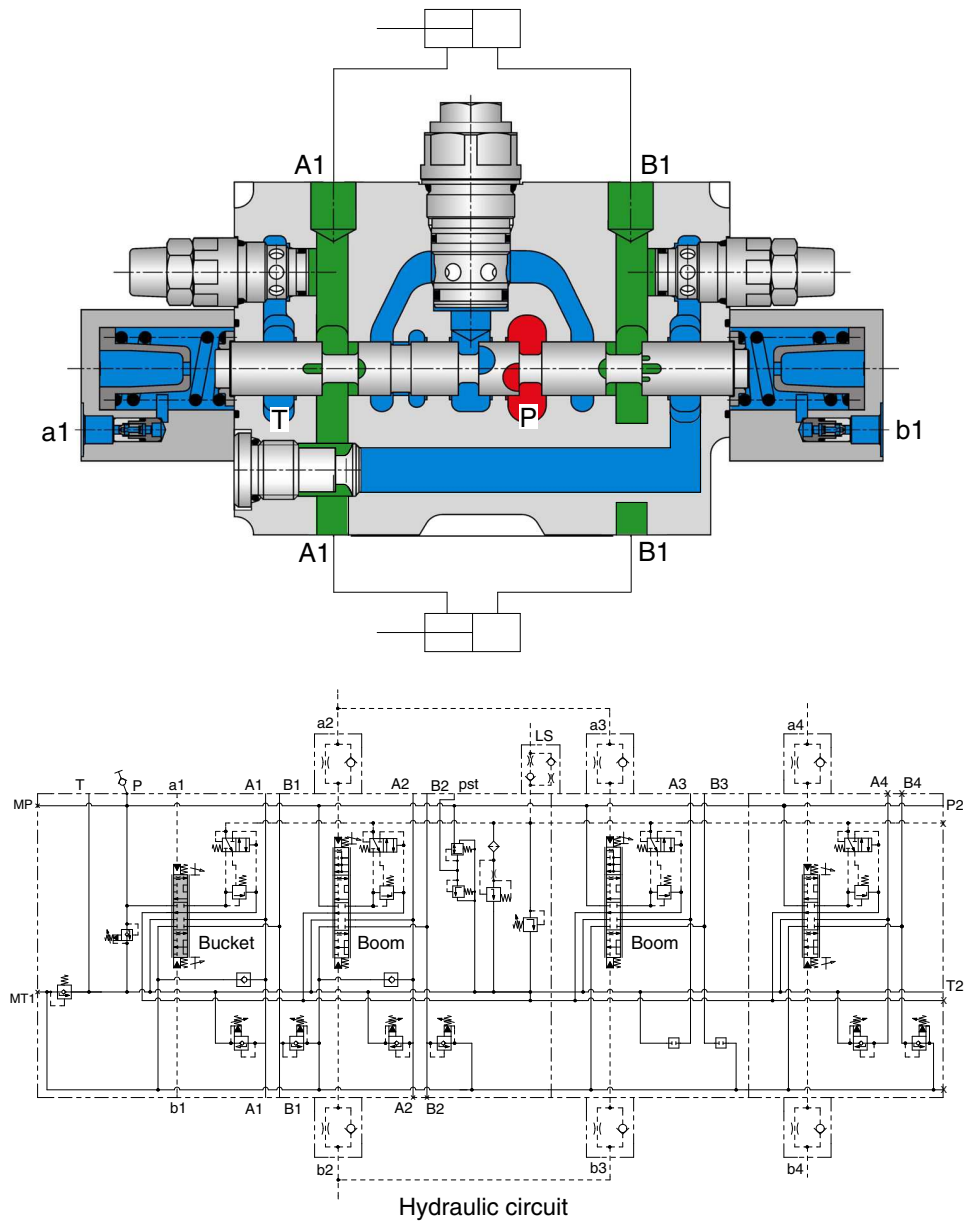


98096WE54

When the boom spool is located in float position, the oil from the pump will be blocked. The cylinder ports (A2, A3, B2, B3) are connected to the tank passage, so the boom will be lowered due to its own weight.

#### 4) BUCKET SECTION OPERATION

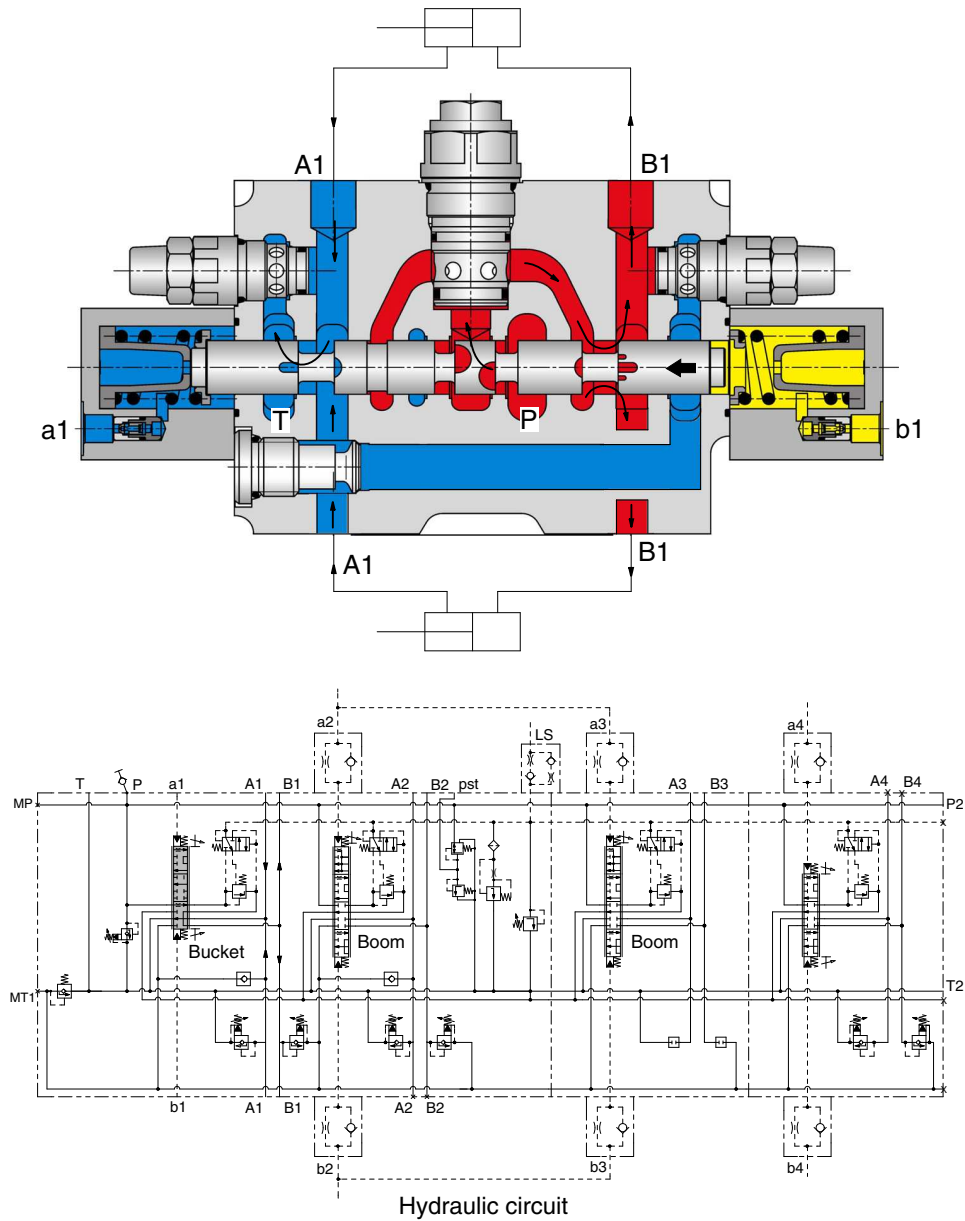
##### (1) Spool in neutral



98096WE55

When the bucket spool is in neutral position, oil from the pump will be blocked.  
Then, the pumps are at low pressure standby.

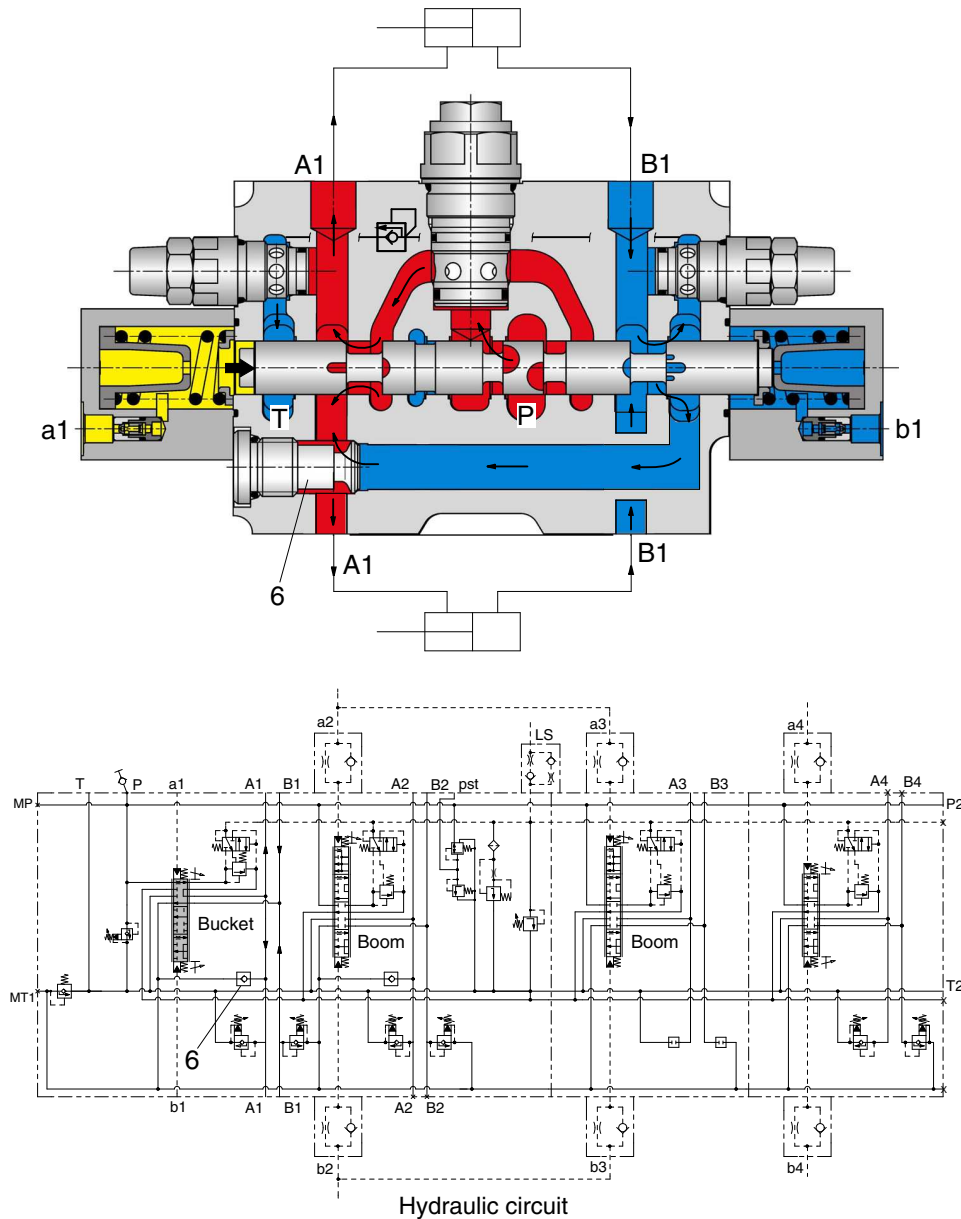
## (2) Bucket rollback position



98096WE56

When the pilot pressure is led to the port b1, the bucket spool moved to rollback position. Oil from the pump flows to the cylinder port B1 and oil from the cylinder flows into the tank passage through the cylinder port A1.

### (3) Bucket dump



98096WE57

When the pilot pressure is led to the port a1, the bucket spool moved to dump position.

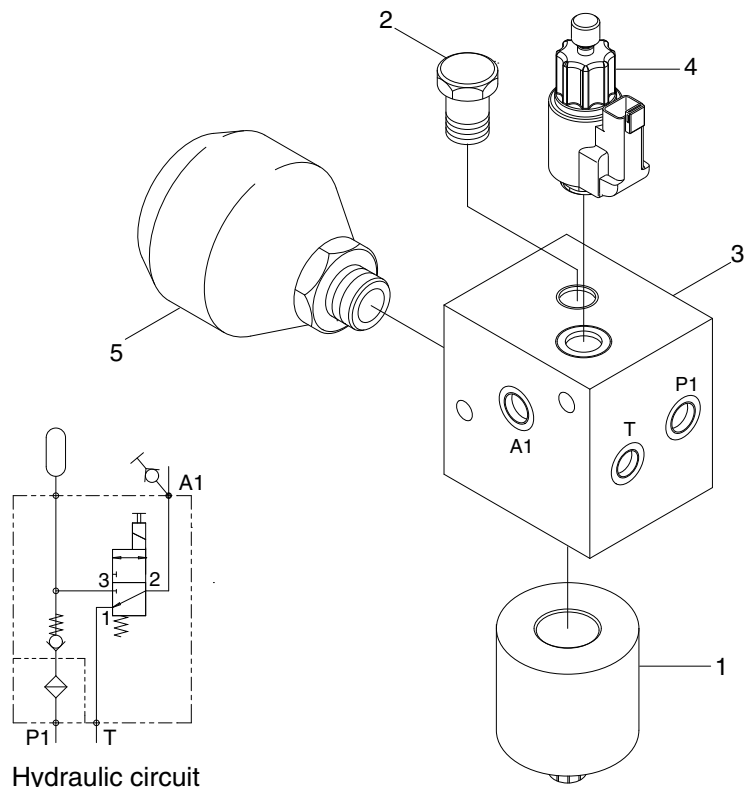
Oil from the pump flows to the cylinder port A1, through the load holding valve and oil from the cylinder flows into the tank passage through the cylinder port B1.

When the dumping speed of bucket is faster, the return oil from the large chamber of bucket cylinder combines with the oil from the pump through regeneration check valve (6), and flows into the small chamber of the cylinder. This prevents cylinder cavitation by the negative pressure when the pump flow cannot match the bucket dump speed.



## 7. SAFETY VALVE

### 1) STRUCTURE



Port	Port name	Port size
P1	From MCU	PF 3/8"
A1	Supply to RCV lever	PF 1/4"
T	To hydraulic tank	PF 1/4"

75796WE16

- 1 Bowl and element assy
- 2 Check valve
- 3 Cartridge

- 4 Solenoid valve
- 5 Accumulator

### 2) OPERATION

This valve is used to cut off the pilot circuit.

When the pilot cut off switch in the cab is pressed to ON position, the solenoid valve is activated and then the pilot oil flow into the pilot circuit.

The accumulator satisfied short term peak power demands and is a source of emergency power in case of main circuit pressure failures.

## 8. BOOM AND BUCKET CYLINDER

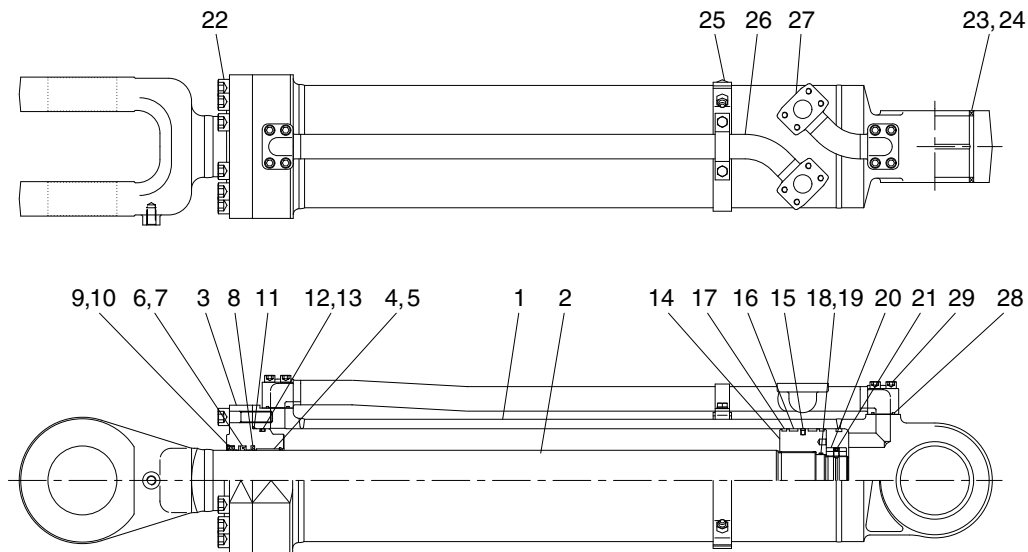
The boom cylinders are two unit and the bucket cylinder is one unit. They use a bolt on rod guide.

The piston (14) threads on to the rod (2) and is retained by a nut (20) and set screw (21).

The piston seals against the tube (1) with piston seal (15). Two wear rings (16) are located on each side of the piston seal.

The gland (3, the rod guide) seals against the tube with an O-ring (12). The cylinder thread seals against the rod with a lip type buffer ring (8) and a rod seal (5). A dust wiper (9) cleans the rod when it is retracted.

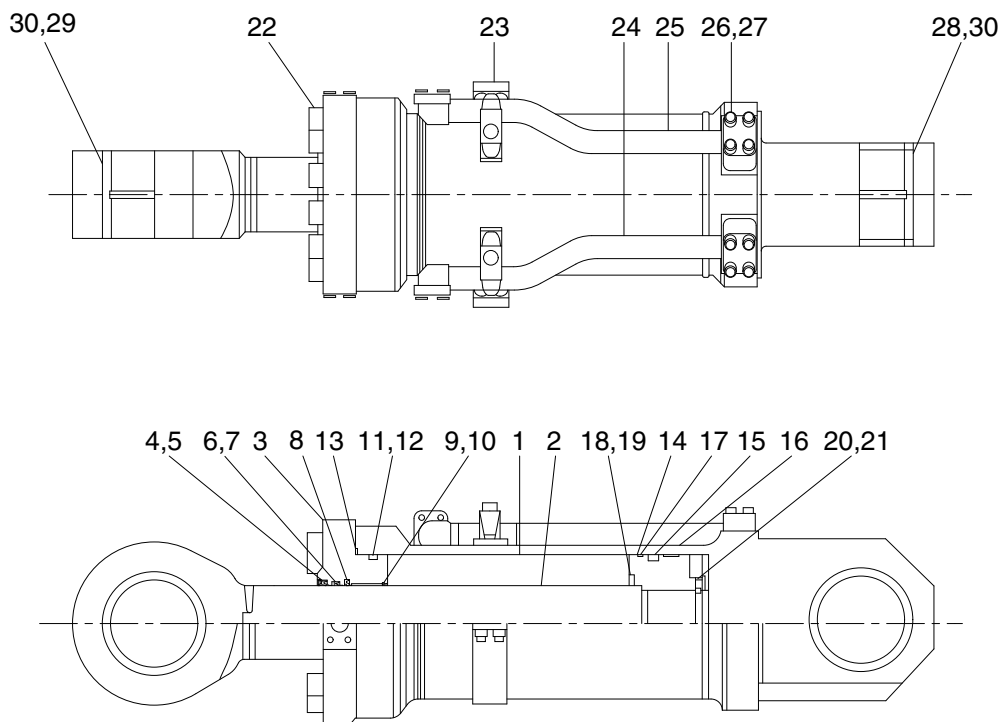
### 1) BOOM CYLINDER



78096WE17

1	Tube assembly	11	O-ring	21	Set screw
2	Rod assembly	12	O-ring	22	Bolt
3	Gland	13	Back up ring	23	Bushing
4	Bushing	14	Piston	24	Dust seal
5	Snap ring	15	Piston seal	25	Band
6	Rod seal	16	Wear ring	26	Pipe assembly
7	Back up ring	17	Dust ring	27	Pipe assembly
8	Buffer ring	18	O-ring	28	O-ring
9	Dust wiper	19	Back up ring	29	Bolt
10	Snap ring	20	Lock nut		

## 2) BUCKET CYLINDER



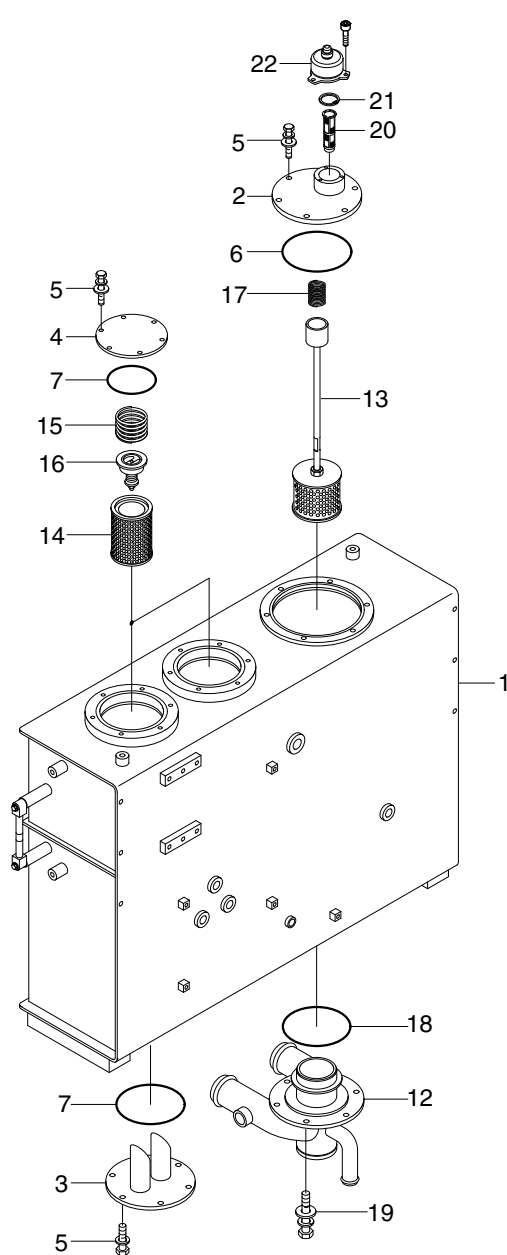
9806WE18

1	Tube assembly	11	O-ring	21	Set screw
2	Rod assembly	12	Back up ring	22	Bolt
3	Gland	13	O-ring	23	Band assembly
4	Dust wiper	14	Piston	24	Pipe assembly
5	Snap ring	15	Piston seal	25	Pipe assembly
6	Rod seal	16	Wear ring	26	Bolt
7	Back up ring	17	Dust ring	27	O-ring
8	Buffer ring	18	O-ring	28	Pin bushing
9	Bushing	19	Back up ring	29	Pin bushing
10	Snap ring	20	Steel ball	30	Dust seal

## 9. HYDRAULIC OIL TANK

### 1) STRUCTURE

- The oil from the hydraulic tank is sent from the pump through main control valve to the cylinders. In the return circuit, the oil from various parts merges.
- A part of oil is cooled in the oil cooler, passes through the hydraulic filter and returns to the hydraulic tank (1).
- If the hydraulic return oil filter becomes clogged, return filter bypass valve (16) acts to allow the oil to return directly to the hydraulic tank (1). This prevents damage to the hydraulic filter (14). The bypass valve (16) is also actuated when negative pressure is generated in the circuit.



- 1 Hydraulic tank wa
- 2 Cover
- 3 Cover
- 4 Cover
- 5 Bolt
- 6 O-ring
- 7 O-ring
- 8 Bolt
- 12 Suction pipe
- 13 Strainer
- 14 Return filter
- 15 Spring
- 16 Bypass valve
- 17 Spring
- 18 O-ring
- 19 Bolt
- 20 Strainer
- 21 Retaining ring
- 22 Air breather
- 23 Sight gauge

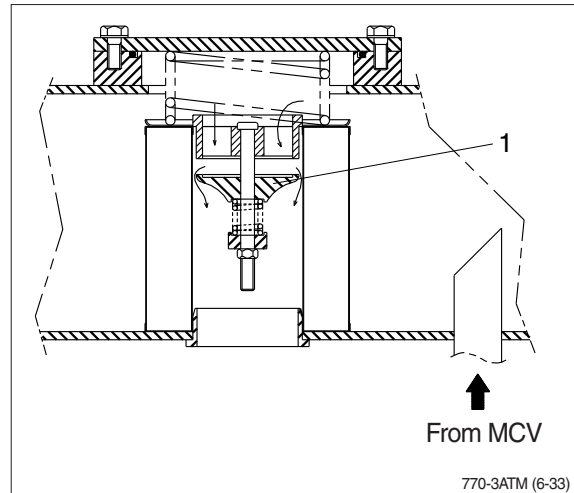
9806WE22

## 2) RETURN OIL FILTER BYPASS VALVE

### (1) When the filter is clogged

Bypass valve (1) is opened and the oil returns directly to the tank without passing through the filter.

- Bypass valve set pressure : 1.36 kg/cm<sup>2</sup>  
(19.3 psi)



## 3) AIR BREATHER

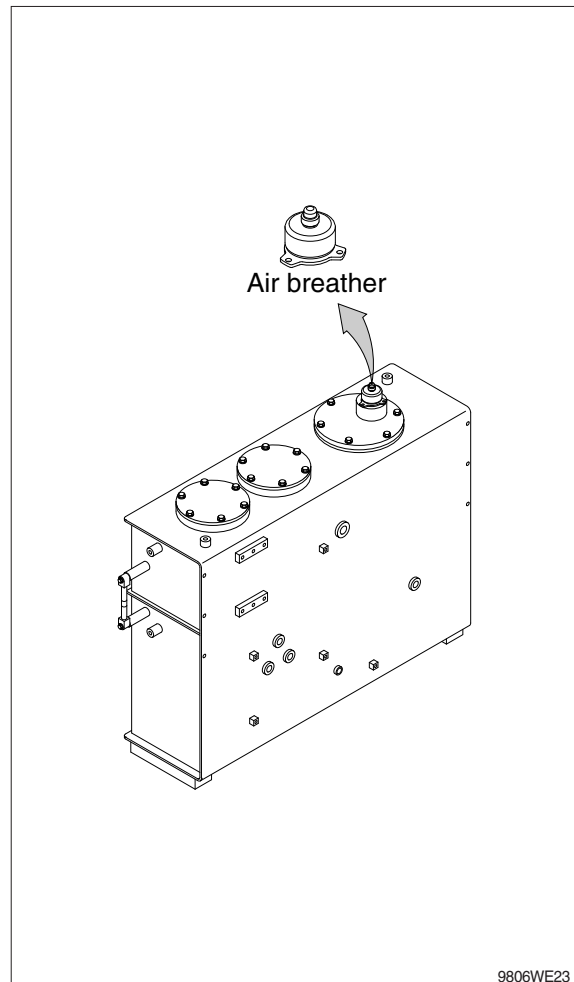
The air breather is equipped with the capacity to perform three functions simultaneously-as an air filter, breathing valve, and as a lubrication opening.

### (1) Preventing negative pressure inside the tank

The tank is a pressurized sealed type, so negative pressure is formed inside the hydraulic tank when the oil level drops during operations. When this happens, the difference in pressure between the tank and the outside atmospheric pressure opens the poppet in the breather, and air from the outside is let into the tank or prevent negative pressure.

### (2) Preventing excessive pressure inside the tank

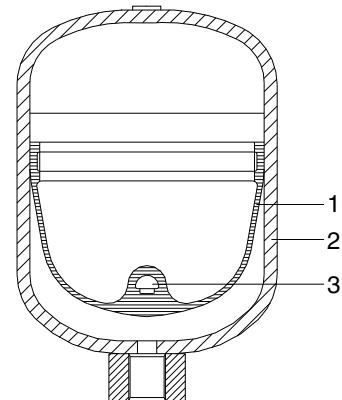
When the hydraulic cylinder is being used, the oil level in the hydraulic system increases and as temperature rises. If the hydraulic pressure rises above the set pressure, breather is actuated to release the hydraulic pressure inside the tank.



## 10. ACCUMULATOR

The accumulator is installed at the safety valve. When the boom is left the raised position, and the control levers are operated with the engine stopped the pressure of the compressed nitrogen gas inside the accumulator sends pilot pressure to the control valve to actuate it and allow the boom and bucket to come down under their own weight.

Type of gas	Nitrogen gas (N <sub>2</sub> )
Volume of gas	0.75 l (0.2 U.S.gal)
Charging pressure of gas	16 kg/cm <sup>2</sup> (228 psi)
Max actuating pressure	128 kg/m <sup>2</sup> (1820 psi)



- 1 Diaphragm
- 2 Steel pressure vessel
- 3 Closure button

7803AWE56

## 11. RIDE CONTROL SYSTEM (option)

### 1) ACCUMULATORS

#### (1) Pre-charging

Use an inert gas such as nitrogen for pre-charging accumulator.

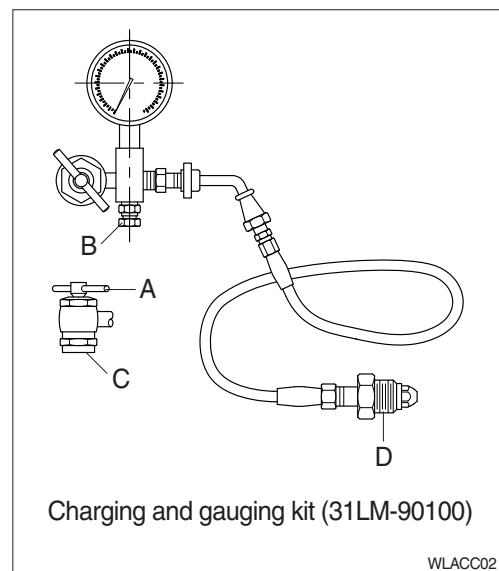
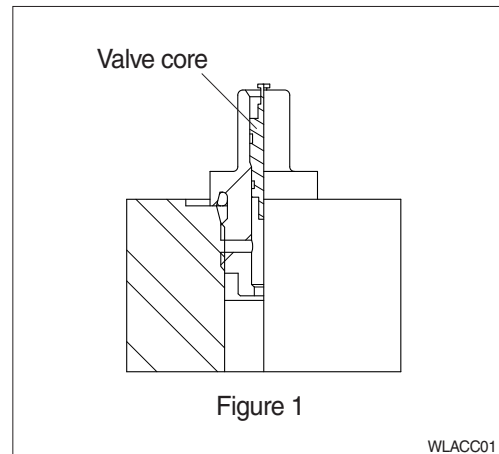
- ※ Do not use oxygen or shop air.
- ※ Nitrogen source and all components must be rated for a pressure at least as high as the nitrogen source.

#### Accumulator having gas valve as per figure 1.

- ① Remove gas valve guard and gas valve cap.
- ② Back gas chuck "T" handle (A) all the way out (counter clockwise) before attaching charging & gauging kit to accumulator gas valve.
- ③ Close bleed valve (B).
- ④ Making sure not to loop or twist the hose, attach swivel nut (C) to gas valve and tighten 11.5~17 kgf·cm (10~15 lbf·ft).
- ⑤ Turn gas chuck "T" handle (A) until the gauge starts showing the pressure in the accumulator. Do not turn the "T" handle all the way down, as it will damage the valve core.
- ⑥ Crack open nitrogen bottle valve (D) and **slowly** fill accumulator. Shut off when gauge indicates desired pre-charge.
- ⑦ Let the pre-charge set for 10 to 15 minutes. This will allow the gas temperature to stabilize. If the desired pre-charge is exceeded, close nitrogen bottle valve (D), then slowly open bleed valve (B). Do not reduce pre-charge by depressing valve core with a foreign object. High pressure may rupture rubber valve seat.
- ⑧ When finished pre-charging accumulator, turn "T" handle (A) all the way out on gas chuck, then open bleed valve (B).
- ⑨ Hold gas valve to keep from turning, loosen swivel nut (C), remove assembly. Check for pre-charge leak using a common leak reactant.
- ⑩ Replace gas valve cap 11.5~17 kgf·cm (10~15 lbf·ft) and valve guard. (Gas valve cap serves as a secondary seal.)

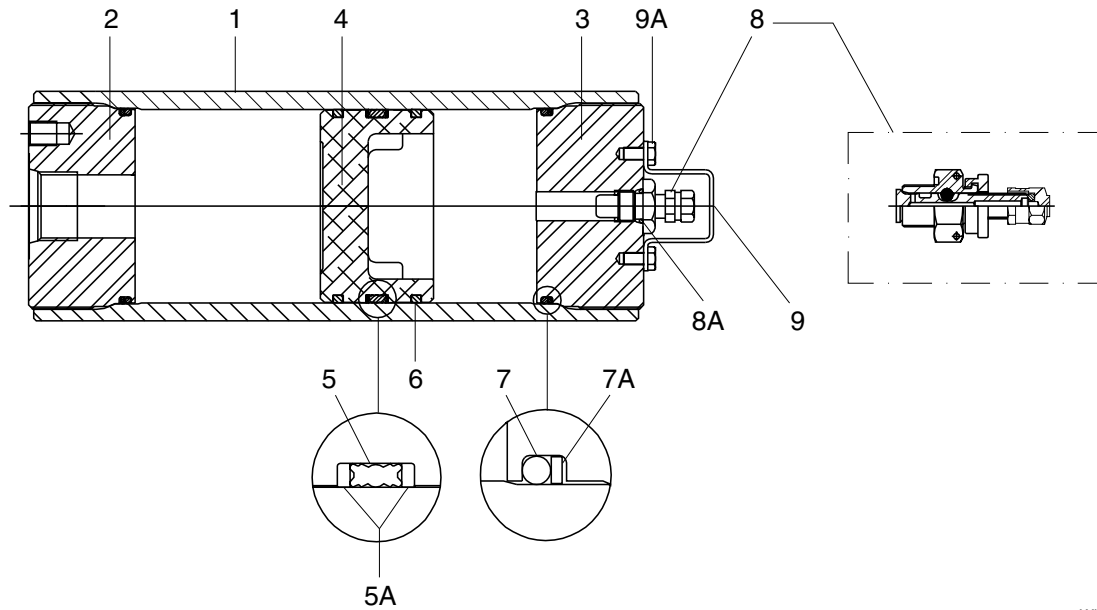
#### (2) Pre-charge checking procedure

Using appropriate valve in the hydraulic system, discharge all oil from accumulator and allow piston to bottom against hydraulic end cap.





### (3) Structure



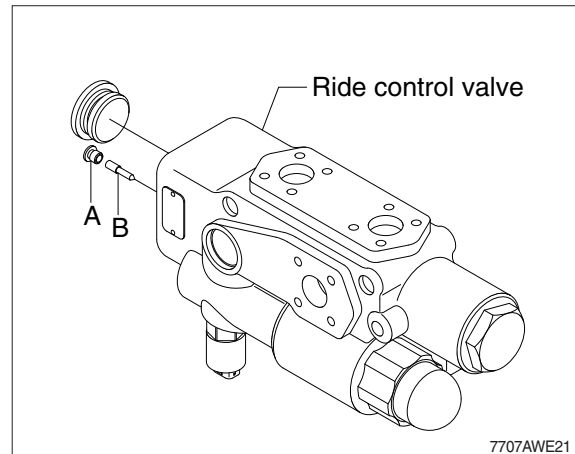
WLACC03

- |                 |                             |                     |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| 1 Body          | 5A V-O-ring back-up washers | 8A Gas valve O-ring |
| 2 Hydraulic cap | 6 Piston ring (piston)      | 9 Gas valve guard   |
| 3 Gas cap       | 7 O-ring                    | 9A Screw            |
| 4 Piston        | 7A O-ring back-up washer    |                     |
| 5 V-O-ring      | 8 Gas valve                 |                     |

## 2) REMOVE FROM HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

### ▲ Attention

- 1) Before carrying out any maintenance work the accumulators must be unloaded (zero pressure).
- 2) For this, unscrew the plug (A) then rotate the drain screw (B), located under the plug (A), 2 turns anti-clockwise with 3 mm L-wrench.
- 3) The lifting system must firstly be secured against lowering.
- 4) After carrying out maintenance work, screw the plug (A) and drain screw (B).
  - Tightening torque
  - A : 0.51 kgf · m (3.69 lbf · ft)
  - B : 0.36 kgf · m (2.58 lbf · ft)



## GROUP 2 OPERATIONAL CHECKS AND TROUBLESHOOTING

### 1. OPERATIONAL CHECKS

This procedure is designed so the mechanic can make a quick check of the system using a minimum amount of diagnostic equipment. If you need additional information, read structure and function, Group 1.

A location will be required which is level and has adequate space to complete the checks.

The engine and all other major components must be at operating temperature for some checks.

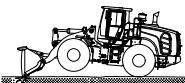
Locate system check in the left column and read completely, following the sequence from left to right. Read each check completely before performing.

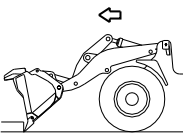
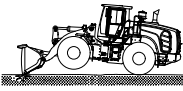
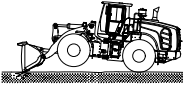
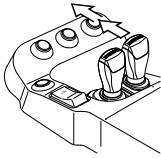
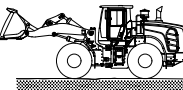
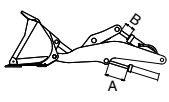
At the end of each check, if no problem is found (OK), that check is complete or an additional check is needed. If problem is indicated (NOT OK), you will be given repair required and group location.

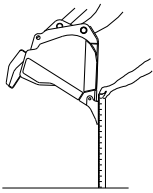
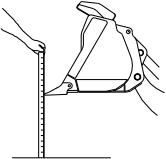
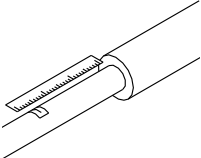
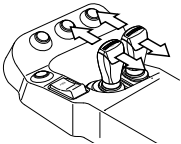
If verification is needed, you will be given next best source of information:

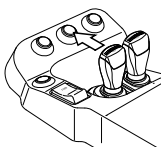
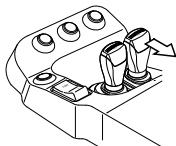
- Chapter 2 : Troubleshooting
- Group 3 : Tests and adjustments

※Hydraulic oil must be at operating temperature for these checks (refer to page 6-54).

Item	Description	Service action
<b>Hydraulic system warm-up procedure</b> Run engine at high idle.	Hold a hydraulic function over relief to heat oil. (don't keep relief condition over 5 seconds at a time)  Periodically cycle all hydraulic functions to distribute warm oil.  Repeat procedure until oil is at operating temperature.  <b>FEEL</b> : Hydraulic reservoir must be uncomfortable to hold your hand against. (approximately 40 ~50°C)	<b>OK</b> Check completed.
<b>Hydraulic pump performance check</b> Heat hydraulic oil to operating temperature. Run engine at high idle.	With bucket flat on ground, actuate boom raise. Time how long it takes to raise boom to full height.  <b>LOOK</b> : Boom must raise to full height in less than 7 seconds.	<b>OK</b> Check completed.  <b>NOT OK</b> Go to priority valve (in flow amplifier) high pressure check at page 5-31.  <b>IF OK</b> Do steering system leakage check at page 5-30.  <b>IF OK</b> Do main hydraulic pump flow test at page 6-55.
<b>Control valve lift check</b> Run machine at low idle.	 With bucket partially dumped, lower boom to raise front of machine.  Slowly move boom control lever (RCV lever) to boom lower position.  Slowly move bucket control lever to bucket dump position.  <b>LOOK</b> : Boom must not raise before moving down.  Bucket must not rollback before dumping.	<b>OK</b> Check complete.  <b>NOT OK</b> Repair lift checks in loader control valve.

Item	Description	Service action
<b>Bucket rollback circuit relief valve check</b>	 <p>Position bucket at a 45° angle against an immovable object.</p> <p>Engage transmission in 3rd speed forward.</p> <p><b>LOOK</b> : Bucket angle must not change.</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Check complete.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> Replace boom lower check valve.</p>
<b>Bucket dump circuit relief valve low pressure check</b>	 <p>Raise front of machine which bucket at 45° angle.</p> <p>Backdrag with bucket while observing bucket angle.</p> <p><b>LOOK</b> : Bucket must not rollback</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Go to next check.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> Do loader system and circuit relief valve test at page 6-59.</p>
<b>Pilot control valve float check</b> Run engine at low idle.	 <p>With the bucket partially dumped, lower boom to raise front of machine.</p> <p>Push control lever to the float detent position and release lever.</p>  <p><b>LOOK</b> : Front of machine lower to the ground and valve must remain in float position when lever is released.</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Check complete.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> Do pilot control valve pressure test in group 3.</p>
<b>Boom cylinder and bucket cylinder drift check</b> Heat hydraulic oil to operating temperature.	 <p>Set the boom and bucket horizontal, then stop the engine.</p> <p>Stop the engine, wait for 5 minutes, then start measuring.</p> <p>Measure the amount the lift and dump cylinder rods retract during 15 minutes. (unloaded bucket)</p>  <p>A : Retraction of boom cylinder rod</p> <p>B : Retraction of bucket cylinder rod</p> <p>Boom cylinder must drift less than 30 mm</p> <p>Bucket cylinder must drift less than 18 mm</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Check complete.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> Go to next check.</p>

Item	Description	Service action
<b>Boom cylinder leakage check</b> Heat hydraulic oil to operating temperature.	 <p>Dump bucket until teeth or cutting edge is perpendicular to the ground.</p> <p>Raise boom until cutting edge is about 1 m (3 ft) above ground.</p> <p>Stop engine. Measure drift from tooth or cutting edge to ground for 1 minute.</p> <p>Wait 10 minutes.</p> <p>Measure drift from tooth or cutting edge to ground for 1 minute.</p> <p><b>LOOK</b> : Compare the drift rate between the first measurement and the second measurement.</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Drift is approximately the same between first and second measurement.</p> <p>Repair loader control valve or circuit relief valve.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> If drift is considerably less on second measurement, repair cylinder.</p>
<b>Bucket cylinder leakage check</b> Heat hydraulic oil to operating temperature.	 <p>Raise bucket about 1 m (3 ft) off ground with bucket level.</p> <p>Stop engine. Place a support under boom.</p> <p>Measure drift from tooth or cutting edge to ground for 1 minute.</p> <p>Wait 10 minutes.</p> <p>Measure drift from tooth or cutting edge to ground for 1 minute.</p> <p><b>LOOK</b> : Compare the drift rates between the first measurement and the second measurement.</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Drift is approximately the same between first and second measurement.</p> <p>Repair loader control valve or circuit relief valve at page 6-59.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> Drift is considerably less on second measurement.</p> <p>Repair cylinder.</p>
<b>Check valve of safety valve leakage check</b> Heat hydraulic oil to operating temperature.	 <p>Put bucket level and position about 1.2 m (4 ft) above ground.</p> <p>Place a piece of tape on cylinder rod at least 51 mm (2 in) from rod guide.</p> <p>Run engine at low idle in safety-release position.</p> <p><b>LOOK</b> : Bucket must not drift up.</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Check complete.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> Check or replace safety valve.</p>
<b>Pilot control valve (RCV lever) check</b>	 <p>Stop engine. Turn key switch to OFF position.</p> <p>Move control lever to all positions and then release.</p> <p><b>LOOK</b> : Lever must return to neutral when released from all positions.</p>	<p><b>OK</b> Check completed.</p> <p><b>NOT OK</b> Repair pilot control valve.</p>

Item	Description		Service action
<b>Bucket leveler (positioner) check</b> Run engine at low idle.		Position bucket fully dumped just above ground level. Move control lever to bucket leveler detent position and release. <b>LOOK</b> : Bucket must rollback to the level position and control lever must return to neutral. If bucket is in a rolled back position when key is turned ON, control lever must be returned to neutral manually if placed in the bucket leveler detent position. After bucket is dumped once, bucket leveler will work normally.	<b>OK</b> Check complete. <b>NOT OK</b> Do bucket leveler checks.
<b>Boom height kickout check</b> Run engine at low idle.		Position bucket flat on ground. Move control lever to boom raise detent position and release. <b>LOOK</b> : Boom must raise to the set height and stop. Control lever must return to neutral.	<b>OK</b> Check complete. <b>NOT OK</b> Do boom height kickout check.
<b>Cycle time check</b> Heat hydraulic oil to operating temperature. Run engine at high idle.	Function	Operating condition. Bucket flat on ground to full height. Full height to level ground. Boom at full height. Boom at full height. Frame stop to frame stop.	Maximum cycle time 6.6 sec 4.0 sec 1.3 sec 2.0 sec 4.5 turns  <b>OK</b> Check complete. <b>NOT OK</b> Go to slow hydraulic functions in group 2.

## ※ MEASURING BOOM AND BUCKET CYCLE TIME

### 1) MEASUREMENT CONDITION

- Coolant temperature : Inside operating range
- Steering position : Neutral
- Hydraulic temperature : 40~50°C
- Bucket : Unloaded
- Engine speed : High idling

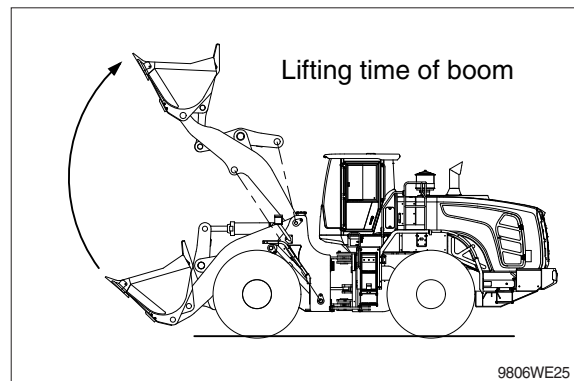
### 2) MEASURING TOOL

- Stop watch (1EA)

### 3) MEASURING PROCEDURE

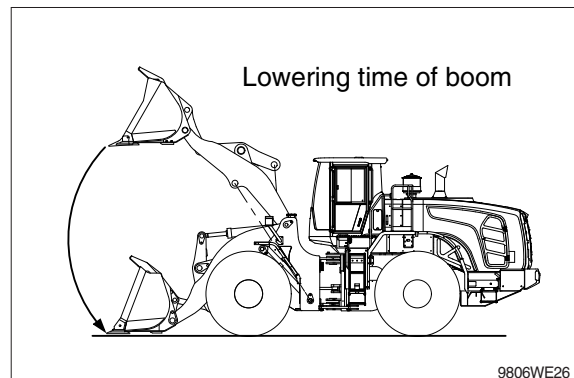
#### (1) LIFTING TIME OF BOOM

Set the bucket near the maximum tilt back position and at the lowest position on the ground. Raise the bucket and measure the time taken for bucket to reach the maximum height of the boom.



#### (2) LOWERING TIME OF BOOM

Set the bucket horizontal with the boom at the maximum height, lower the bucket and measure the time taken for the bucket to reach the lowest position on the ground.

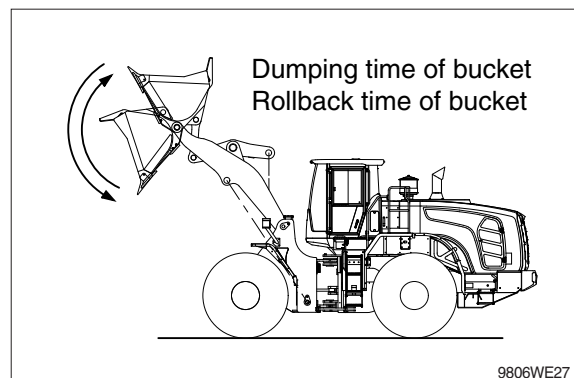


#### (3) DUMPING TIME OF BUCKET

Raise the boom to the maximum height and measure the time taken for the bucket to move from the maximum tilt back position to the maximum dump position.

#### (4) ROLL BACK TIME OF BUCKET

Raise the boom to the maximum height and measure the time taken for the bucket to reach the maximum tilt back position.





## 2. TROUBLESHOOTING

※ Diagnose malfunction charts are arranged from most probable and simplest to verify, to least likely, more difficult to verify. Remember the following steps when troubleshooting a problem :

Step 1. Operational check out procedure (see section 1)

Step 2. Operational checks (see group 2)

Step 3. Troubleshooting

Step 4. Tests and adjustments (see group 3)

Problem	Cause	Remedy
<b>Noisy hydraulic pump</b>	Low oil supply or wrong viscosity. Plugged or pinched suction line. Air in oil.  Plugged suction strainer. Loose or missing hydraulic line clamps. Hydraulic lines in contact with frame. Worn or damaged pump.	Fill reservoir with recommended oil. Clean or replace line. Check for foamy oil. Tighten connections. Replace O-rings and or lines. Inspect and clean strainer in reservoir. Tighten or replace clamps. Inspect and repair. Do hydraulic pump performance check in group 2. Do hydraulic pump flow test in group 3.
<b>No or Slow hydraulic functions</b>	Failed or worn hydraulic pump. Cold oil. Slow engine speed.  Suction line air leak. Low oil supply. Wrong oil viscosity. Oil leaking past cylinders or control valve. Blocked or damaged line.  Faulty pilot control valve (RCV).  Binding loader control valve (MCV) spool. Faulty flow amplifier.	Do performance check. Warm oil up. Adjust engine speed. Check high idle speed. Check for foamy oil. Add recommended oil. Use recommended oil. Check cylinder drift in group 2.  Inspect lines.  Do pilot control valve (RCV) pressure test in group 3. Inspect valve.  Check priority valve, orifice of flow amplifier specification.

Problem	Cause	Remedy
<b>No steering or hydraulic function</b>	Low oil level. Failed hydraulic pump.	Add recommended oil. Remove and inspect return filter for metal pump particles.
<b>No hydraulic functions steering normal</b>	Failed hydraulic pump.  Failed line filter. Faulty safety valve.  Stuck open port relief valve.	Remove and inspect return filter for metal pump particles, or replace the pump.  Remove and inspect line filter for RCV. Safety valve leakage test or ON, OFF function test.  Replace relief valve.
<b>Boom float function does not work</b>	Low pilot control pressure.  Faulty pilot control valve (RCV). Loader control valve (MCV) spool binding in bore.	Do pressure reducing valve pressure test in group 3.  Replace relief valve. Do pressure reducing valve pressure test in group 3.
<b>One hydraulic function does not work.</b>	Faulty pilot control valve (RCV).  Stuck open port relief valve. Oil leaking past cylinder packings.  Blockage in oil lines or valve.  Loader control valve (MCV) spool stuck in bore.	Do pilot control valve pressure test. Inspect and repair valve.  Replace relief valve. Do boom and bucket cylinder leakage test in group 3.  Inspect lines for damage. Disconnect and inspect lines for internal blockage.  Inspect and repair valve.
<b>Low hydraulic power</b>	Leakage within work circuit.  Low system relief valve (main relief valve) setting. Low port relief valve setting.  Leaking system relief valve. Worn hydraulic pump.  Faulty pilot control valve (RCV).	Do cylinder drift check in group 2.  Do loader system and port relief valve pressure test in group 3. Do loader system and port relief valve pressure test in group 3.  Remove and inspect valve. Do hydraulic pump performance check in group 2. Do pilot control valve pressure test in group 3.

Problem	Cause	Remedy
<b>Function drifts down</b>	Leaking cylinders. Leaking seals in circuit relief valve (port relief valve) or valve stuck open. Leaking loader control valve (MCV).	Do cylinder leakage checks in group 3. Inspect seals. Replace relief valve. Repair or replace valve section.
<b>Boom drifts up</b>	Leakage in boom down spool.	Remove and inspect boom down spool.
<b>Boom down does not work (engine off)</b>	Safety valve not operated. Stuck pilot control valve. Faulty line filter. Accumulation not operated. MCV spool stuck.	Operate valve. Inspect. Remove and inspect filter. Inspect. Inspect and repair valve.
<b>Oil overheats</b>	Low oil viscosity in hot weather. Excessive load. Holding hydraulic system over relief. Leakage in work circuit.  Plugged fins in oil cooler. Internally plugged oil cooler. Incorrect system or circuit relief valve setting. Restriction in oil lines or loader control valve (MCV). Malfunctioning steering valve.  Leaking system main relief valve.  Worn hydraulic pump (internal leakage).	Use recommended oil. Reduce load. Reduce load. Do boom and bucket cylinder leakage test in group 3. Inspect and clean oil cooler. Do hydraulic oil cooler restriction test. Do loader system and circuit relief valve pressure test in group 3. Inspect for dented or kinked lines.  Do hydraulic system restriction test in group 3. Do hydraulic system restriction test in group 3. Remove and inspect valve and seals. Do hydraulic pump performance check in group 2.
<b>Function drops before raising when valve is activated</b>	Stuck open lift check valve.	Do control valve lift check in group 2.

Problem	Cause	Remedy
<b>Hydraulic oil foams</b>	Low oil level. Wrong oil. Water in oil. Loose or faulty suction lines (air leak in system).	Add recommended oil. Change to recommended oil. Change oil. Tighten or install new lines.
<b>Remote control valve (RCV) leaking</b>	Leaking plunger seals.	Remove, inspect and replace plunger seals.

※ Followings are general precautions for the hydraulic system and equipment.

- 1) Every structure has its limit of strength and durability. The relief valve is installed to limit the pressure on the hydraulic equipment and protect various parts of the wheel loader from possible damage. Therefore, never change the preset pressure of the relief valve unless absolutely necessary.
- 2) Since the hydraulic equipment is built with precision, the presence of only the slightest amount of dust and / or other particles in the hydraulic circuit might cause wear and/or damage, resulting in unstable functions and/or damage, resulting in unstable functions and/or unexpected accidents. Therefore, always keep hydraulic oil clean. Periodically, check the filter in the return circuit and replace the element as necessary.
- 3) Extract about 200cc of hydraulic oil from the tank as a sample every 6 months. If possible, have it analyzed by a specialist to confirm that the oil can still be used. Never extract the oil for sampling until the oil temperature has become the normal operating temperature. Since the replacement period varies depending on operating conditions, refer to **Operator's Manual** and change oil.
- 4) Should the equipment get damaged due to the presence of metal particles and/or foreign matter in the circuit drain out the hydraulic oil and carry out flushing. Also, replace the filter element and clean the hydraulic tank. Change the hydraulic oil entirely.
- 5) When checking the filter, if found metal particles in the element, drain out the hydraulic oil entirely, flush the whole circuit, and then fill with new oil. The presence of metal particles may indicate internal damage to the equipment. In such a case, check carefully before flushing, and repair or replace as required.
- 6) To add and/or change the hydraulic oil, always use recommended oil. (Refer to the list of recommended oils and lubricants at page 1-20, **Recommended lubricants**.) Never mix oil of different makes of kinds.
- 7) To change the hydraulic oil, use a clean vessel and funnel for pouring it into the tank. Never use cloth because it might cause the presence of lint in the circuit.
- 8) When removing the hydraulic equipment, be sure to put plugs or caps on hoses, tube lines and ports. Also, enter mating marks for later identification.

- 9) Disassemble and/or assemble the hydraulic equipment only in a clean place free of dust. When disassembling, be careful about the interchangeability of parts, and clean the disassembled parts with pure and clean mineral cleansing oil. Clean the internal passages as well. After the parts have dried, wipe them off with a clean lint-free cloth.
- 10) When overhauling the hydraulic equipment replace all O-rings, backup rings, etc. with new ones. Assemble O-rings with grease or vaseline applied.
- 11) After installing the equipment, add more hydraulic oil to make up for that lost during disassembly.
- 12) Tighten joints correctly. Loose joints will cause the hydraulic oil to leak. If the oil leaks, the tank oil level drops and air gets sucked in, so the pump will break down. Also loose joints in suction lines will take air in and might cause abnormal noise, malfunction or damage to pumps.

## GROUP 3 TESTS AND ADJUSTMENTS

### 1. HYDRAULIC OIL CLEAN UP PROCEDURE USING PORTABLE FILTER CADDY

- ※ Service equipment and tool
  - Portable filter caddy
  - Two 4000 mm × 1in 100R1 Hoses
  - Quick disconnect fittings.
  - Discharge wand
  - Various size fittings.
- ※ Brake system uses oil from hydraulic oil tank. Flush all lines in the brake, pilot, steering system and cut off system. Disassemble and clean major components for brake and steering system. Remove and clean pilot caps from main control valve.  
Brake and steering components may fail if brake and steering system is not cleaned after hydraulic oil tank contamination.
- 1) If hydraulic system is contaminated due to a major component failure, remove and disassemble steering cylinders to clean debris from cylinders.
- 2) Install a new return filter element. Inspect filter housing before installing new element.
- ※ For a failure that creates a lot of debris, remove access cover from hydraulic oil tank. Drain and clean hydraulic oil tank of fill the specified oil to hydraulic oil tank through upper cover.
- 3) To minimize oil loss, pull a vacuum in hydraulic oil tank using a vacuum pump. Connect filter caddy suction line to drain port at bottom of hydraulic oil tank using connector. Check to be sure debris has not closed drain port.
- 4) Put filter caddy discharge line into hydraulic oil tank filler hole so end is as far away from drain port as possible to obtain a thorough cleaning of oil.

- 5) Start the filter caddy. Check to be sure oil is flowing through the filters.  
Operate filter caddy approximately 10 minutes so oil in hydraulic oil tank is circulated through filter a minimum of four times.  
※ Hydraulic oil tank capacity : 186 l (49.1 U.S. gal)  
Leave filter caddy operation for the next steps.
- 6) Start the engine and run it at high idle.  
※ For the most effective results, cleaning procedure must start with the smallest capacity circuit then proceed to the next largest capacity circuit.
- 7) Operate all functions, one at a time, through a complete cycle in the following order: Clam, steering, bucket, and boom. Also include all auxiliary hydraulic functions. Repeat procedure until the total system capacity has circulated through filter caddy seven times, approximately 30 minutes. Each function must go through a minimum of three complete cycles for a thorough cleaning for oil.  
※ Filtering time for machines with auxiliary hydraulic functions must be increased because system capacity is larger.
- 8) Stop the engine. Remove the filter caddy.
- 9) Install a new return filter element.
- 10) Check oil level in reservoir; Add oil if necessary.




## 2. BOOM HEIGHT KICKOUT ADJUSTMENT

The bucket can be adjusted to a height desired by using the boom kick-out device.


- ▲ Park the machine on level ground and block the tires to prevent sudden movement of the machine.
- ▲ Press the parking brake switch.
- ▲ Fix the front and rear frames by using the safety lock bar.
- ▲ Do not work underneath the work equipment.

### 1) ADJUSTMENT OF THE BOOM KICKOUT AND BUCKET LEVELER


#### (1) Lift kickout position

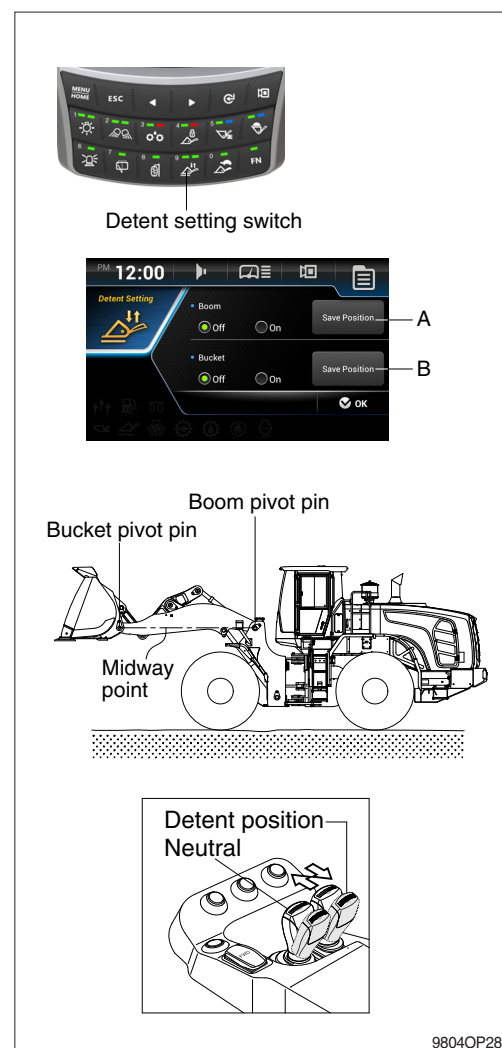
To set the lift kickout, raise the bucket to the desired position above the midway point. Then push icon (  , A) for 2~3 seconds. The boom will return to the programmed position when the raise detent is activated and the boom is below the kickout position.

#### (2) Lower kickout position

To set the lower kickout, lower the bucket to the desired position below the midway point. Then push icon (  , A) for 2~3 seconds. The boom will return to the programmed position when the float detent is activated and the boom is at least a foot above the kickout position.

#### (3) Bucket leveler position

To set the bucket leveler, roll back the bucket to the desired position. Then push icon (  , B) for 2~3 seconds. The bucket will return to the programmed position when the roll back detent is activated and the bucket is below the leveler position.



### 3. TEST TOOLS

#### 1) CLAMP-ON ELECTRONIC TACHOMETER INSTALLATION

- Service equipment and tools

Tachometer

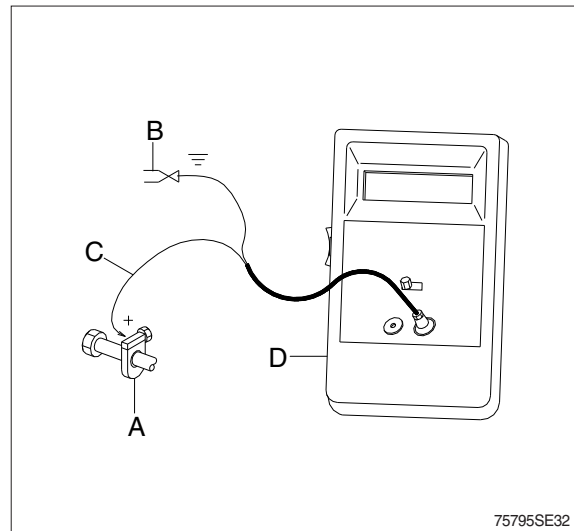
A : Clamp on tachometer.

Remove paint using emery cloth and connect to a straight section of injection line within 100 mm (4 in) of pump. Finger Tighten only-do not over tighten.

B : Black clip (-). Connect to main frame.

C : Red clip (+). Connect to transducer.

D : Tachometer readout. Install cable.



#### 2) DIGITAL THERMOMETER INSTALLATION

- Service equipment and tools

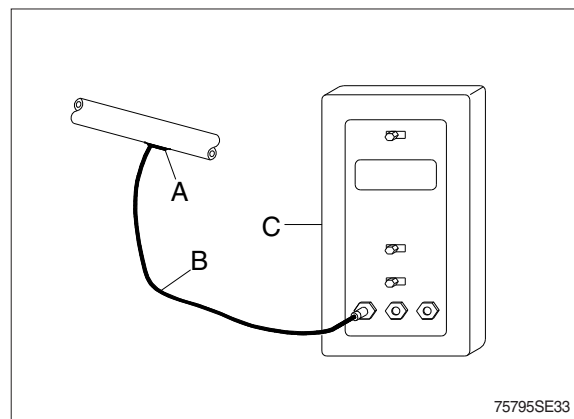
Digital thermometer

A : Temperature probe.

Fasten to a bare metal line using a tie band. Wrap with shop towel.

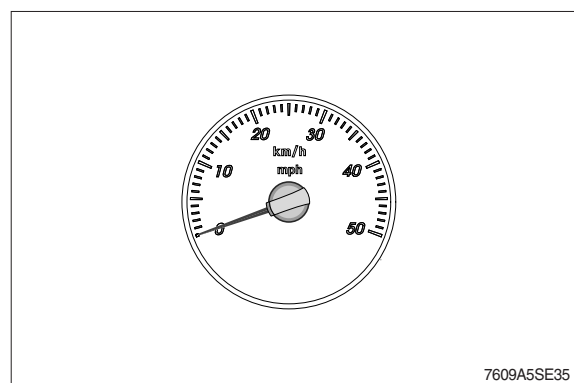
B : Cable.

C : Digital thermometer.



#### 3) DISPLAY MONITOR TACHOMETER

The display monitor tachometer is accurate enough for test work.



#### 4. HYDRAULIC OIL WARM UP PROCEDURE

- 1) Install temperature reader (see temperature reader installation procedure in this group).
- 2) Run engine at high idle.
- 3) Hold a hydraulic function over relief to heat the oil.
- 4) Periodically cycle all hydraulic functions to distribute warm oil.
- 5) Heat oil to test specification (approx. 45°C).

#### ※ Ride control system (option)

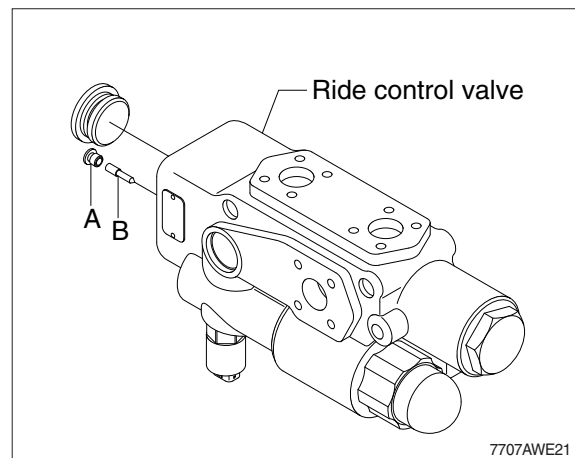
##### ▲ Attention

- 1) Before carrying out any maintenance work the accumulators must be unloaded (zero pressure).
- 2) For this, unscrew the plug (A) then rotate the drain screw (B), located under the plug (A), 2 turns anti-clockwise with 3 mm L-wrench.
- 3) The lifting system must firstly be secured against lowering.
- 4) After carrying out maintenance work, screw the plug (A) and drain screw (B).

· Tightening torque

A : 0.51 kgf · m (3.69 lbf · ft)

B : 0.36 kgf · m (2.58 lbf · ft)



7707AWE21

## 5. MAIN HYDRAULIC PUMP FLOW TEST

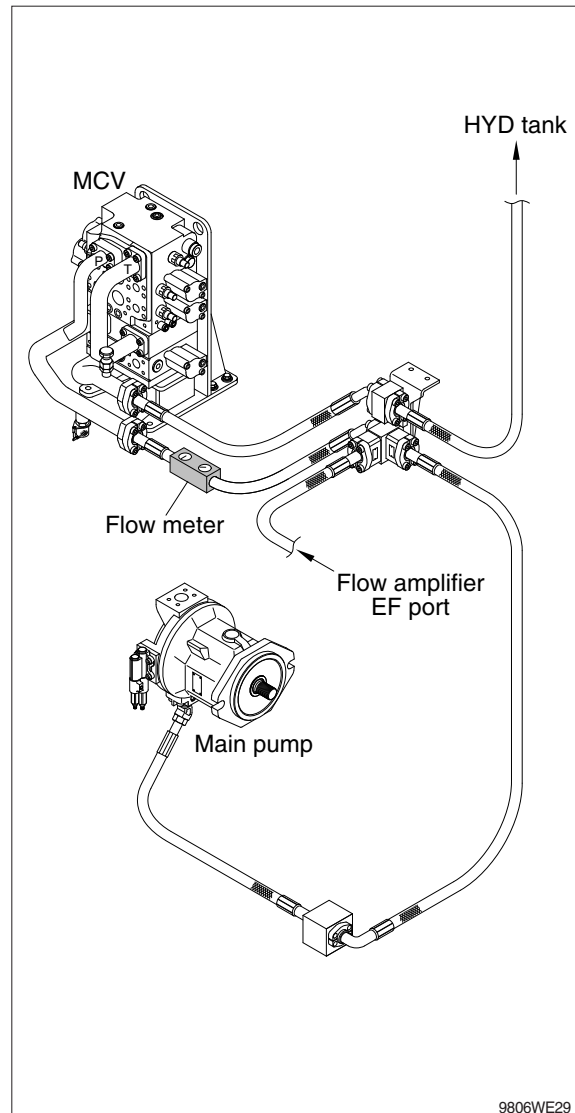
### · SPECIFICATION

Oil temperature	$45 \pm 5^{\circ}\text{C}$ ( $113 \pm 9^{\circ}\text{F}$ )
Engine speed	$2100 \pm 25$ rpm
Test pressure	$280 \pm 5$ bar (3980 psi)
Maximum pump flow	$397 \text{ l/min}$ (105 gpm) (steering+loader pump)

### · FLOW METER, GAUGE AND TOOL

Gauge 0~35 MPa (0~350 bar, 0~5000 psi)  
Temperature reader

- 1) Make test connections.
- 2) Install temperature reader.  
(see temperature reader installation procedure in this group)
- 3) Heat hydraulic oil to specifications.  
(see hydraulic oil warm up procedure in this group)
- 4) Run engine at test specifications.
- 5) Close flow meter loading valve to increase pressure to test specifications.
- 6) Read flow meter.
- 7) If flow is below specifications, check suction line and suction pressure for abnormality before removing pump.



## 6. LOADER SYSTEM AND PORT RELIEF VALVE PRESSURE TEST

### · SPECIFICATION

Oil temperature (40~50°C)

Relief valve	Engine speed	Relief pressure
System (M)	Low	280 ± 5 kg/cm <sup>2</sup> (3980 ± 70 psi)
Boom raise (U)	Low	340 ± 10 kg/cm <sup>2</sup> (4840 ± 140 psi)
Bucket rollback (R)	Low	340 ± 10 kg/cm <sup>2</sup> (4840 ± 140 psi)
Bucket dump (D)	Low	300 ± 10 kg/cm <sup>2</sup> (4270 ± 140 psi)

### · Gauge and tool

Gauge 0~35 MPa (0~350 bar, 0~5000 psi)

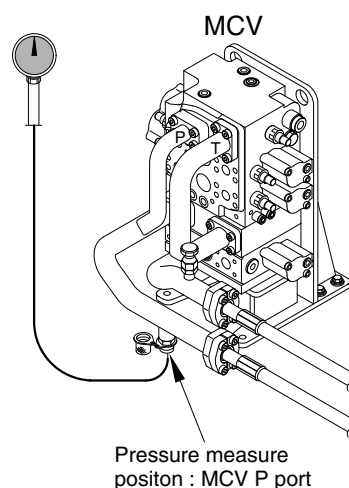
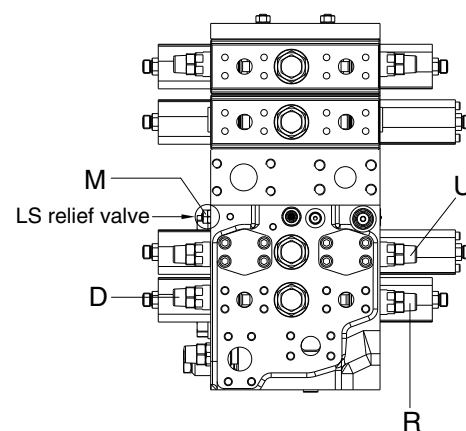
M : System (main) relief valve

R : Bucket rollback relief

D : Bucket dump relief

U : Boom raise relief

- 1) Install fitting and pressure gauge to test port in pump delivery line.
- 2) Install temperature reader.  
(see temperature reader installation procedure in this group)
- 3) Heat hydraulic oil to specifications.  
(see hydraulic oil warm up procedure in this group)
- 4) To check the system relief (M), run engine at low idle. Lower boom to bottomed position.  
Slowly activate boom down function while watching pressure gauge. If pressure is not to specification, loosen lock nut on system relief valve (M) and adjust to specification.



9806WE30

※ Do not adjust the system relief valve above 280 kg/cm<sup>2</sup> (3980 psi). Damage to the pump will result from excessive pressure settings.

## 7. HYDRAULIC SYSTEM RESTRICTION TEST

### · SPECIFICATION

Oil temperature  $45 \pm 5^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $113 \pm 9^{\circ}\text{F}$ )

Engine speed High idle

Maximum pressure 4.5 MPa (45 bar, 640 psi) at flow amplifier.

Maximum pressure at main control valve  
1 MPa (10 bar, 145 psi)

### · GAUGE AND TOOL

Gauge 0~7 MPa (0~70 bar, 0~1000 psi) 2EA

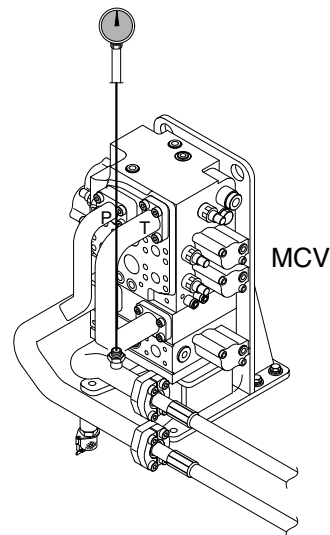
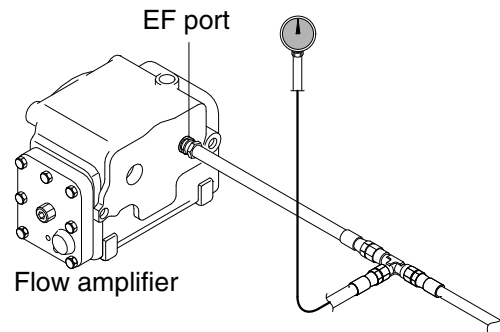
This test will check for restrictions in the hydraulic system which can cause overheating of hydraulic oil.

- 1) Install temperature reader.  
(see temperature reader installation procedure in this group)
- 2) Heat hydraulic oil to specifications.  
(see hydraulic oil warm up procedure in this group)
- 3) Connect fitting and gauge to steering valve.
- 4) Connect fitting and gauge to main control valve.
- ▲ Do not operate steering or loader functions or test gauge may be damaged.
- 5) Run engine at specification and read pressure gauges.

If pressure is more than specification at the loader control valve, check for a kinked, dented or obstructed hydraulic line. Check loader control valve for a binding spool.

If pressure is more than specification at the steering unit, inspect neutral condition of the steering unit and flow amplifier for a stuck spool. Make sure orifice plugs are installed in ends of priority valve spool.

Check for plugged orifice in priority valve and dynamic signal orifice on flow amplifier body.



9806WE31



## 8. LOADER CYLINDER DRIFT TEST

### · SPECIFICATION

Oil temperature  $45 \pm 5^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $113 \pm 9^{\circ}\text{F}$ )

Boom horizontal

Bucket horizontal

Bucket unloaded

Item	Standard value
Retraction of boom cylinder rod	30 mm
Retraction of bucket cylinder rod	15 mm

### · GAUGE AND TOOL

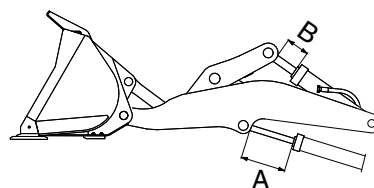
Stop watch

Temperature reader

⚠ Put the safety lock lever in the lock position.

⚠ Do not go under the work equipment.

- 1) Set the boom and bucket horizontal, then stop the engine.
- 2) Stop the engine, wait for 5 minutes, then start measuring.
- 3) Measure the amount the boom and bucket cylinder rods retract during 15 minutes.



A : Retraction of boom cylinder rod

B : Retraction of bucket cylinder rod

7577AWE31

## 9. BOOM AND BUCKET CYLINDER LEAKAGE TEST

### · SPECIFICATION

Oil temperature  $45 \pm 5^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $113 \pm 9^{\circ}\text{F}$ )  
Engine speed Low idle  
Maximum leakage 15 ml/min (1/2 oz/min)

### · GAUGE AND TOOL

Temperature reader  
Stop watch  
Measuring container

1) Fasten temperature sensor to head end port of cylinder to be tested. Cover sensor with a shop towel.

2) Heat hydraulic oil to specifications (see hydraulic oil warm up procedure in this group).

**⚠ Never work under raised equipment unless it is supported with a hoist or support stands.**

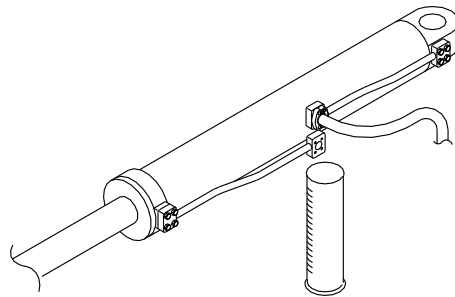
3) Full extend the cylinder to be tested. If testing the boom cylinders, restrain boom in the fully raised position using a hoist or a stand.

※ Check cylinders for leakage in the fully extended position only. In the retracted position contacts the end of the cylinder and seals off piston seal leakage.

4) Remove and plug cylinder rod end hose or line.

5) Run engine at slow idle. Activate control lever to extend cylinder for 1 minute over relief while measuring leakage for open port.

If leakage is within specification, excessive cylinder drift is caused by leakage in the loader control valve or circuit relief valve.



(770-3ATM) 6-56

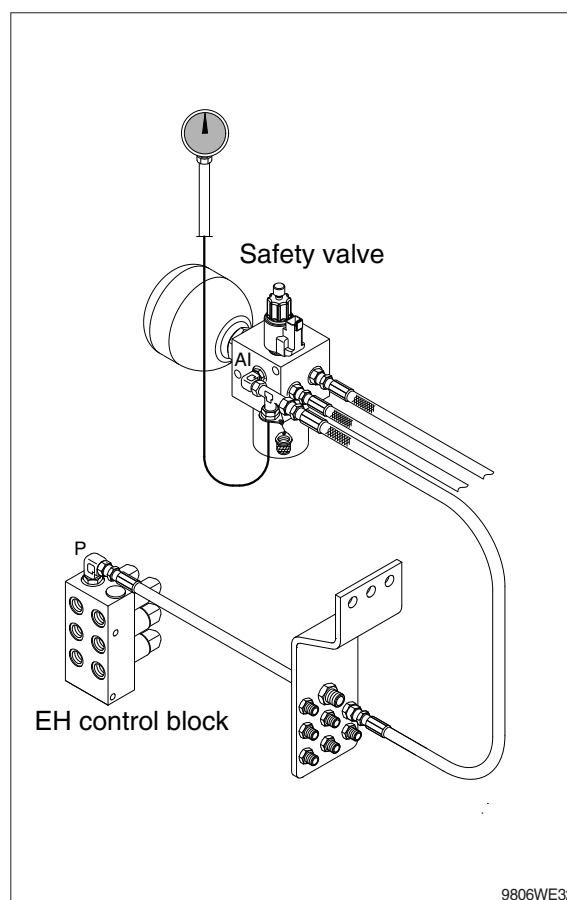
## 10. PILOT CONTROL VALVE (EH CONTROL BLOCK) PRESSURE TEST

### · SPECIFICATION

Oil temperature  $45 \pm 5^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $113 \pm 9^{\circ}\text{F}$ )  
Engine speed High idle  
Maximum pressure 3.0 MPa (30 bar, 427 psi)

### GAUGE AND TOOL

- 1) Gauge 0~7 MPa (0~70 bar, 0~1000 psi)
- 2) Lower boom to ground.  
Connect gauge to the pilot pressure port of function to be checked.
- 3) Install temperature reader (see temperature reader installation procedure in this group).
- 4) Heat hydraulic oil to specification (see hydraulic oil warm up procedure in this group).



## 11. CYCLE TIME TEST

### · SPECIFICATION

Oil temperature —  $45 \pm 5^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $113 \pm 9^{\circ}\text{F}$ )

Engine speed — High idle

Function	Operating conditions	Maximum cycle time (seconds)
Boom raise	Bucket flat on ground to full height	6.6
Boom lower (float)	Full height to ground level	4.0
Bucket dump	Boom at full height	1.3
Bucket rollback	Boom at full height	2.0
Steering (number of turns)	Frame stop to stop	4.5 turns

Hydraulic pump performance cycle time.

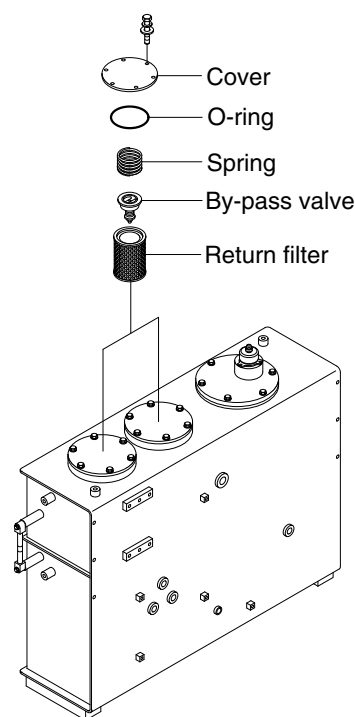
Function	Operating conditions	Maximum cycle time (seconds)
Boom raise	Bucket flat on ground to full height while holding steering over relief	10

## 12. HYDRAULIC OIL FILTER INSPECTION PROCEDURE

- 1) Lower the bucket to the ground, stop the engine, move the control lever back and forth several times, and clean all over the upper surface of the hydraulic oil tank.
- 2) Remove the bolts and take out the filter case cover and O-ring.
- 3) Remove the spring and bypass valve.
- 4) Remove the filter element from the tank.
- 5) Check the element and the filter case bottom for debris. Excessive amounts of brass and steel particles can indicate a failed hydraulic pump or a pump failure in process. A rubber type of material can indicated cylinder packing or other packing failure.

※ The hydraulic oil filter in the filter case of the hydraulic oil tank should be replaced every 250 operating hours or more often. When the filter element is replaced, please keep as follows.

- (1) Clean the inside of the filter case.
- (2) Place new element in the proper positions inside the filter case.
- (3) Install the bypass valve and spring. Make sure the element stand upright, and check for complete contact of the element bottom with the filter case bottom.
- (4) Install the O-ring and filter case covers. Tighten them with bolt. Replace the O-ring with new one if damaged.

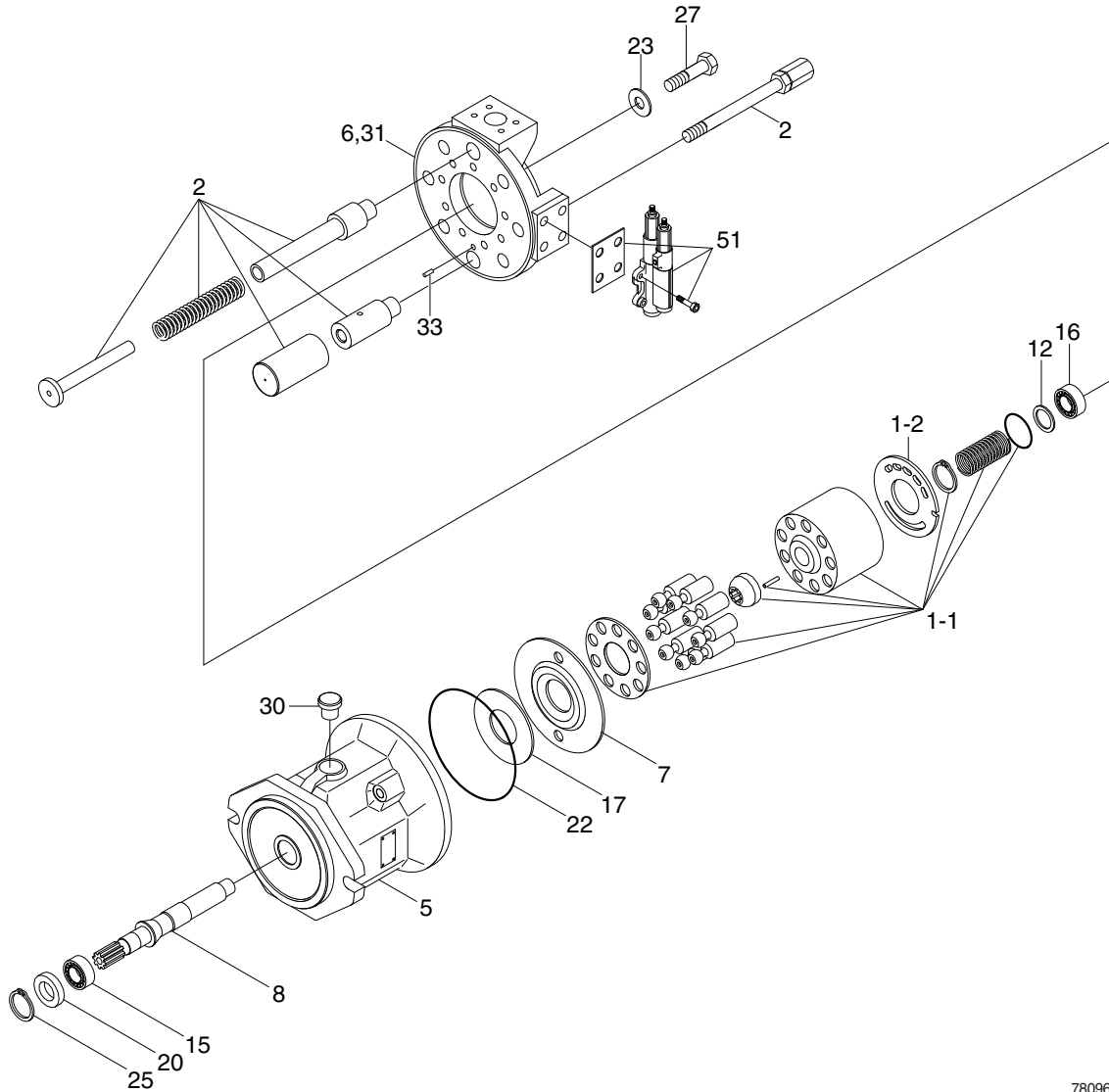


9806M124

## GROUP 4 DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

### 1. MAIN PUMP (STEERING PUMP, LOADER PUMP)

#### 1) STRUCTURE



78096WE11

1	Rotary group	8	Drive shaft	23	O-ring
1-1	High speed rotary group	12	Adjustment shim	25	V-ring
1-2	Control plate	15	Taper roller bearing	27	Socket screw
2	Adjusting piece	16	Taper roller bearing	30	Locking screw
5	Pump housing	17	Bearing liner	31	Double break-off pin
6	Port plate	20	Shaft seal ring	33	Cylinder pin
7	Swash plate	22	O-ring	51	Control valve

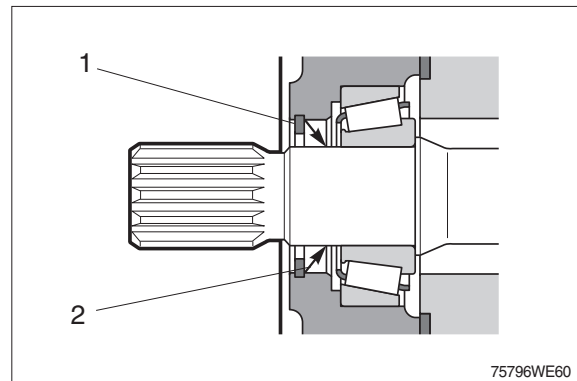
## 2) GENERAL REPAIR GUIDELINES

- ※ Observe the following guidelines when carrying out repairs on hydraulic pumps.
- (1) Close off all openings of the hydraulic unit.
- (2) Replace all of the seals.  
Use only original spare parts.
- (3) Check all sealing and sliding surfaces for wear.
- ※ Re-work of the sliding surfaces by using, for example abrasive paper, can damage the surface.
- (4) Fill the hydraulic pump with hydraulic oil before commissioning.

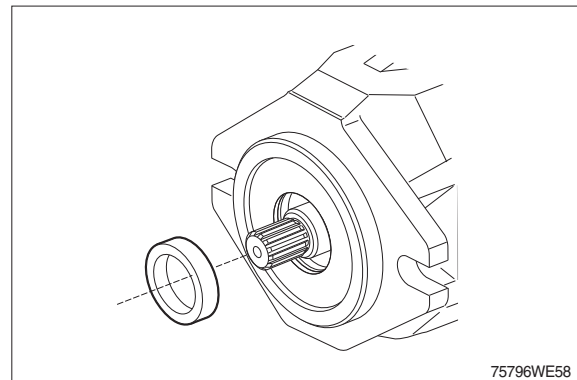
## 3) SEALING THE DRIVE SHAFT

- (1) Protect the drive shaft.  
Remove the circlip.  
Remove the shaft seal.

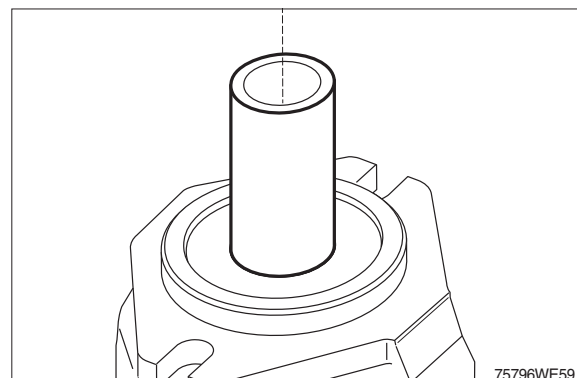
1 Circlip    2 Shaft seal



- (2) Change the shaft seal and check its sliding surface (drive shaft) and housing, grease the sealing ring.



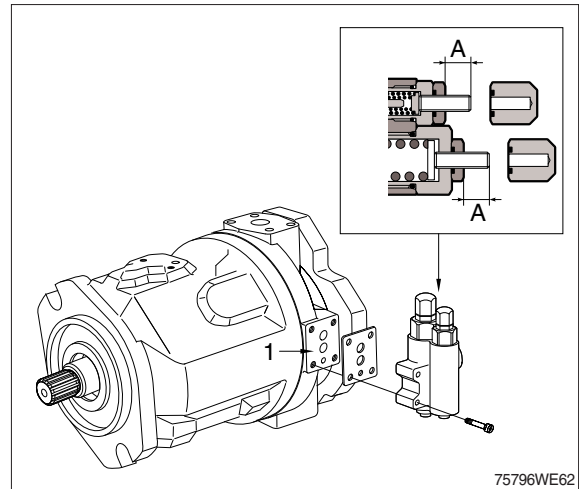
- (3) Assemble the sealing ring, fitting tool holds the correct position of the sealing ring in the pump housing.  
Assemble the circlip in the correct position.





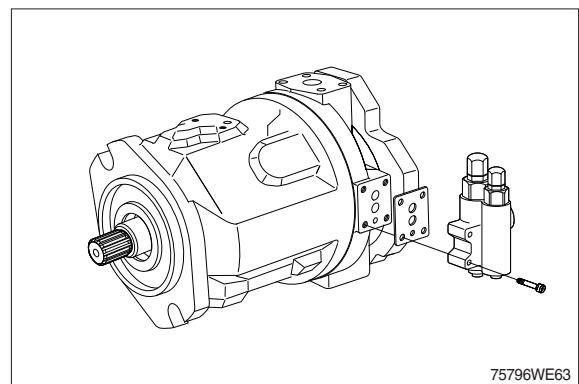
#### 4) SEALING / CLEANING THE CONTROL VALVE

- (1) Disassemble the control valve.
  - ※ Measure dimension A and note down.
  - Check sealing surface (1).

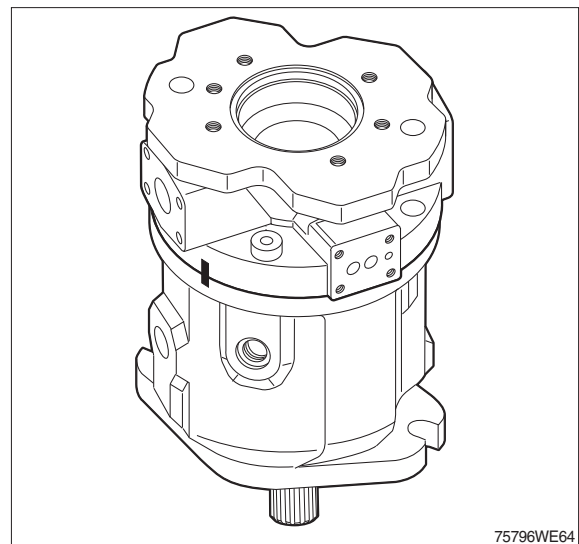


#### 5) DISASSEMBLE THE PUMP

- (1) Remove the control valve.

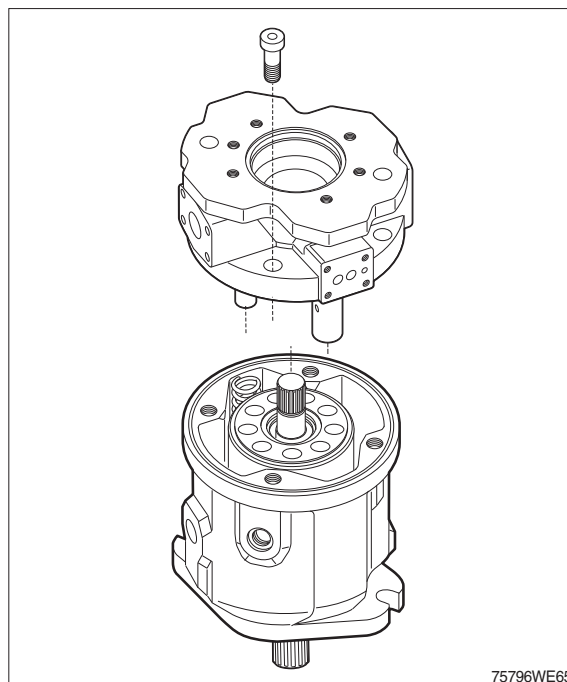


- (2) Mark the location of the connection plate on the housing.



(3) Remove the connection plate fixing bolts and the connection plate.

※ Distributor plate and adjustment piston can drop down.

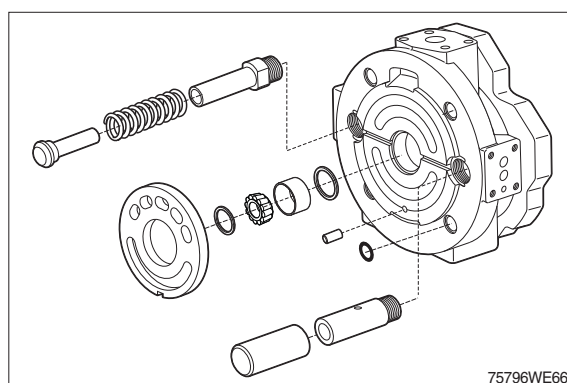


(4) Remove distributor plate.

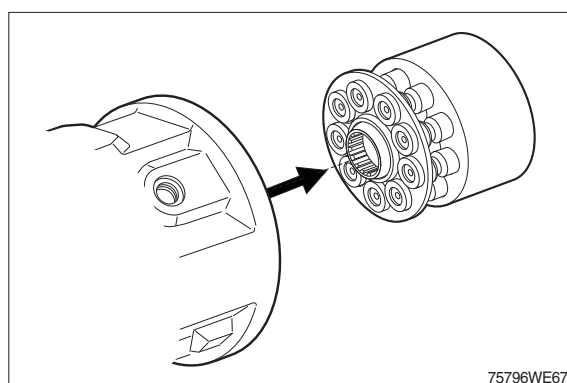
Take note of the orientation.

※ Remove bearing with withdrawal tool.

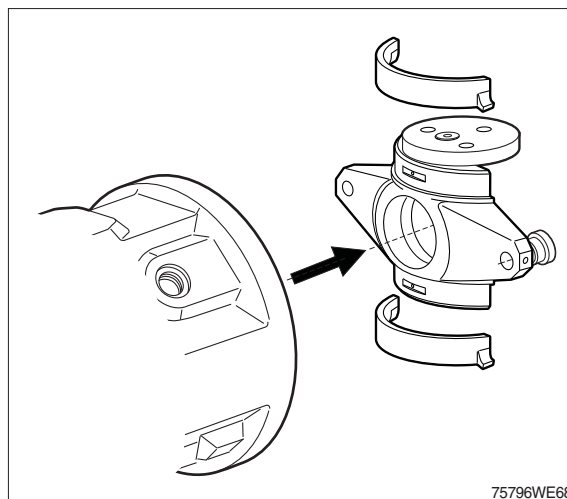
Do not damage the sealing surface.



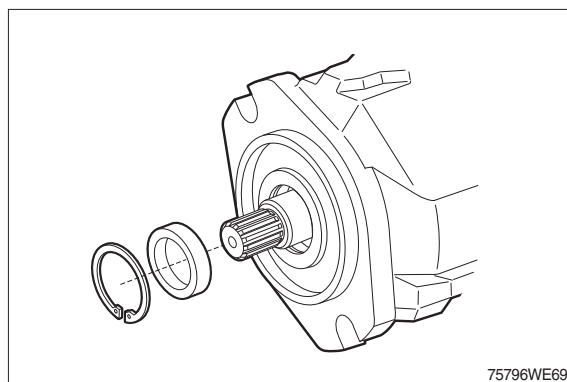
(5) Remove the rotary group in a horizontal position.



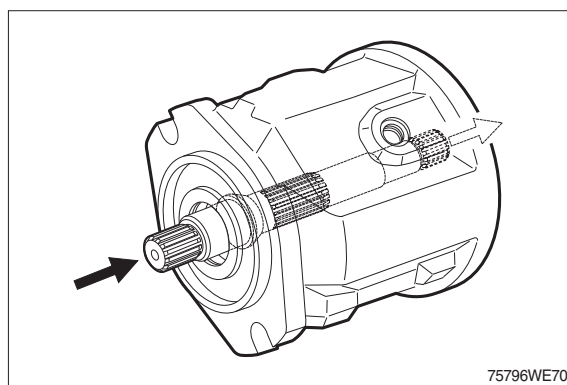
(6) Remove swash plate and bearing shells.



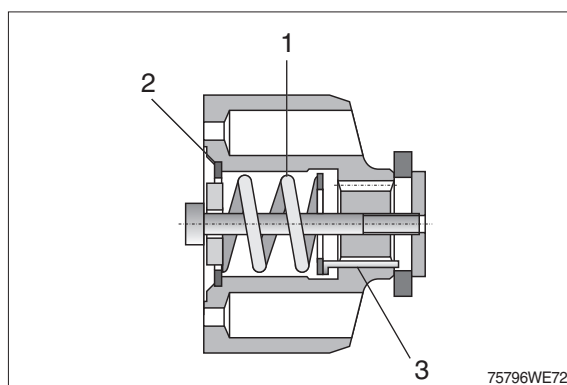
(7) Remove the circlip and the shaft seal.



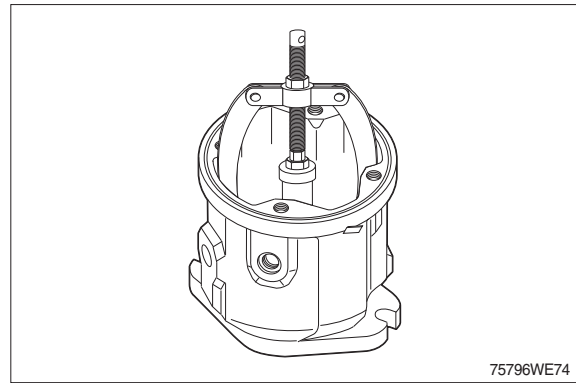
(8) Remove the drive shaft through rear side.



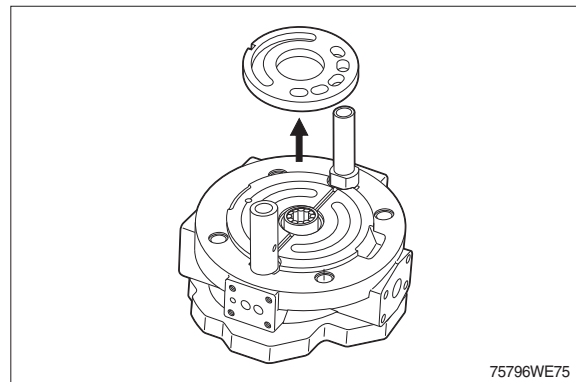
(9) Pre-tension the spring (1) using a suitable device.  
Remove circlip (2).  
Remove spring (1) and pressure pins (3).



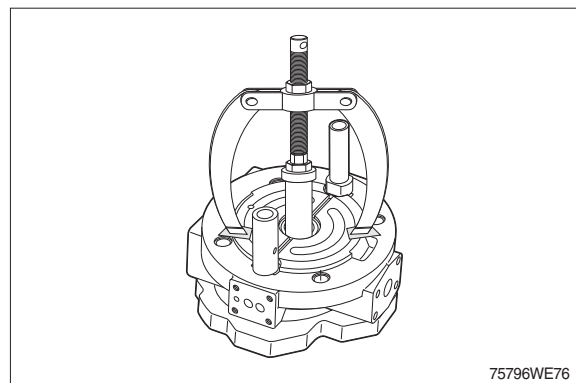
- (10) Use bearing puller to remove outer bearing race of front bearing out of housing press seat.



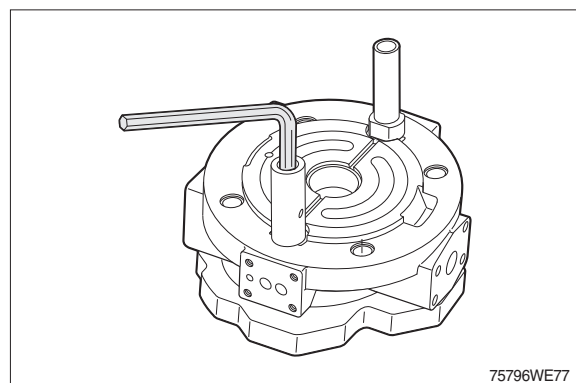
- (11) Remove the control plate.



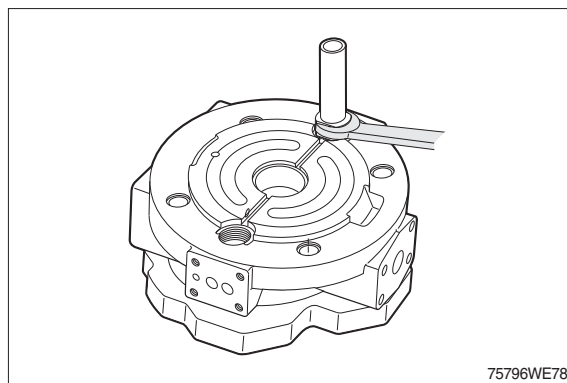
- (12) Use bearing puller to remove outer bearing race of rear bearing - press seat.



- (13) Disassemble the guide of control piston (Mounting position: pilot valve side).

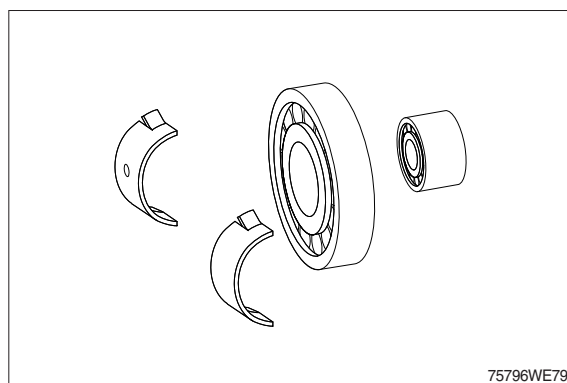


(14) Disassemble the guide of the opposite piston.



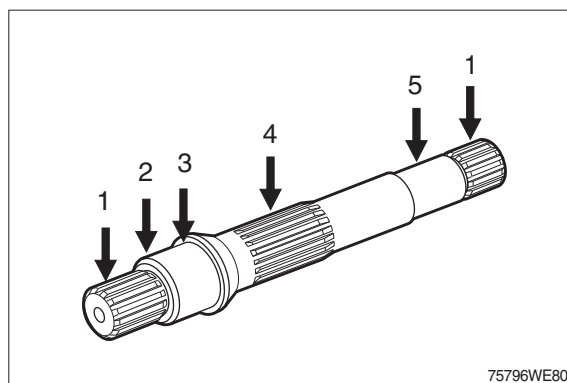
## 6) INSPECT HINTS

(1) Renew all bearings.



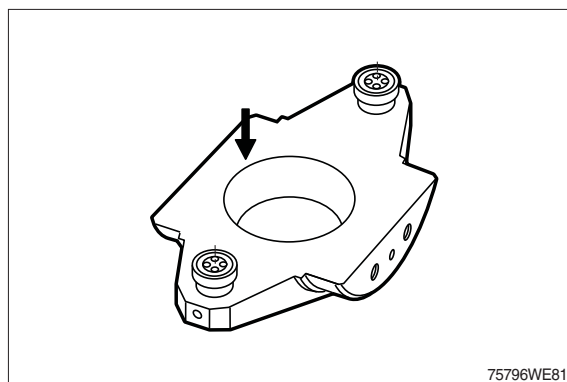
(2) Check :

- 1 Wear on splines, rust
- 2 Drive shaft seal wear grooves
- 3 Bearing seat
- 4 Splines for cylinder drive
- 5 Bearing seat

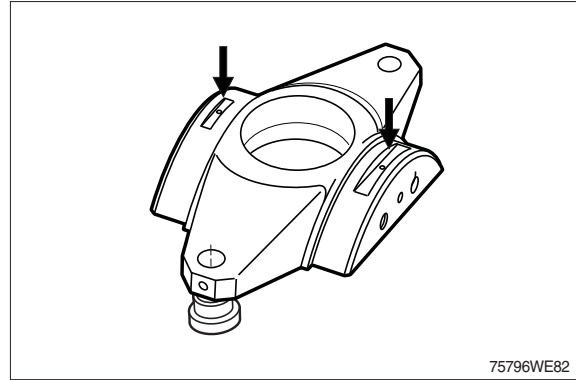


(3) Check :

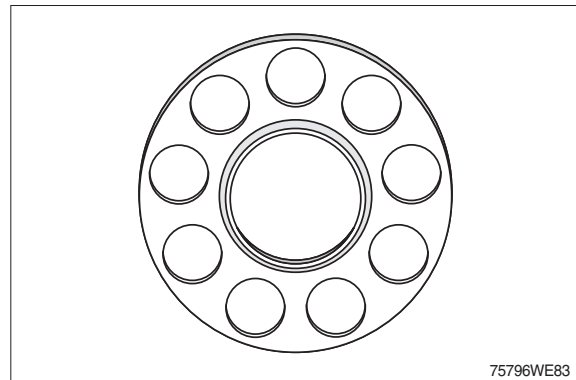
Sliding surface free of grooves.



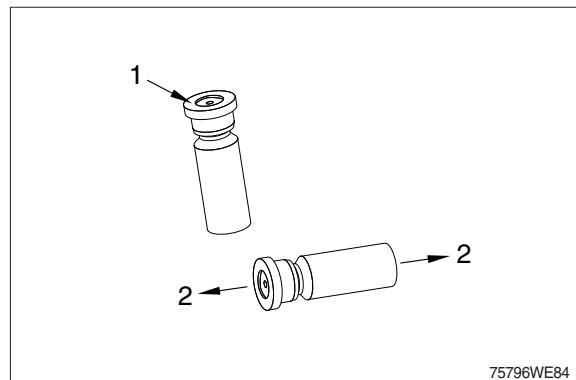
- (4) Check :  
Bearing surfaces.



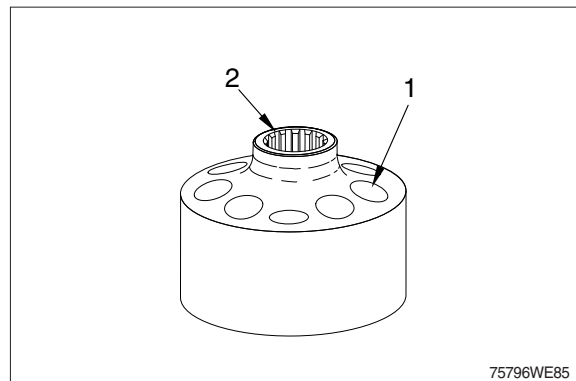
- (5) Check :  
That the retaining plate is free of grooves  
and that there is no wear in the slipper  
pad area.



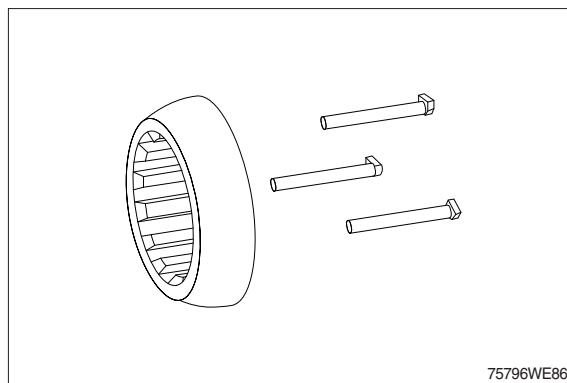
- (6) Check :  
Check to see that there are no scratches  
or metal deposits on the sliding surface  
(1) and that there is no axial play (2)  
(Pistons must only be replaced as a set).



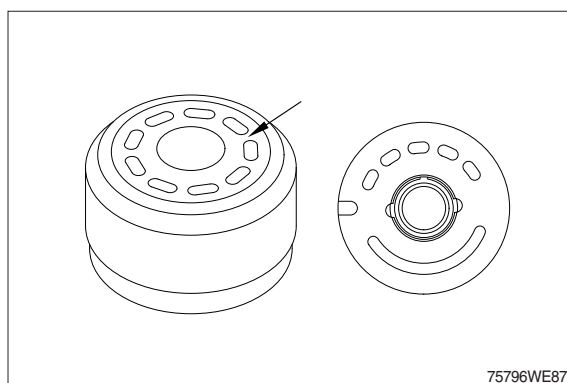
- (7) Check :  
1 Cylinder bores  
2 Splines



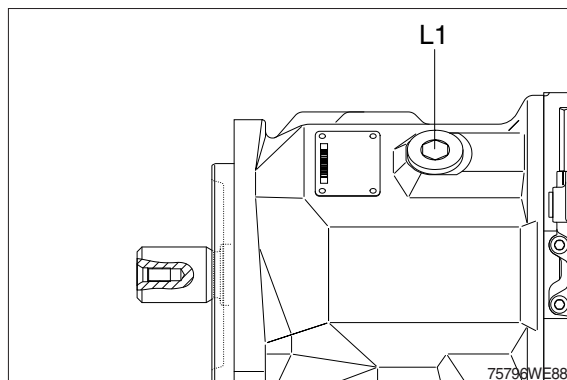
(8) Free of grooves, no signs of wear.



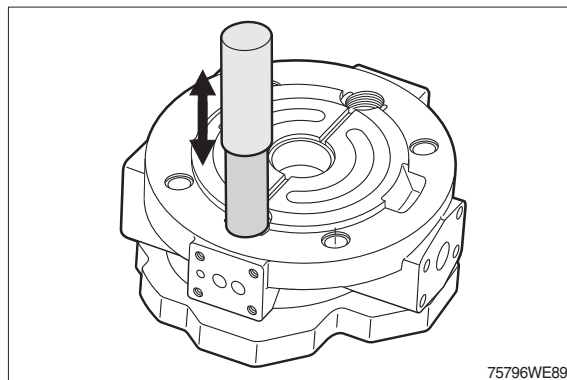
(9) Check :  
Cylinder sliding surface free of grooves,  
no wear, no embedded foreign particles.  
That there are no scratches on the control  
plate. (Only replace them as a set).



(10) Check :  
Mounting surface - control plate  
undamaged.



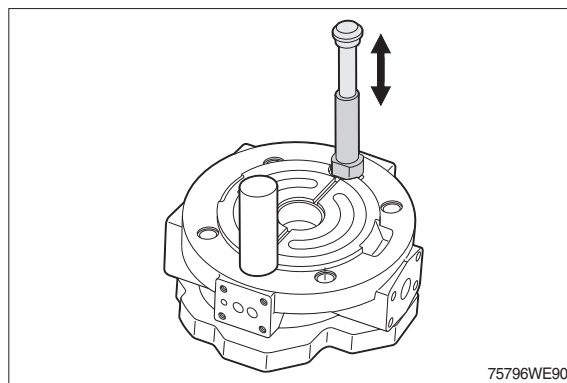
(11) Check :  
Check running conditions of the control  
piston.





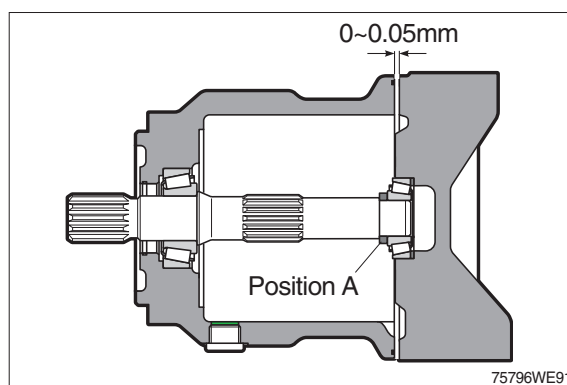
(12) Check :

Check running conditions of the opposite piston.



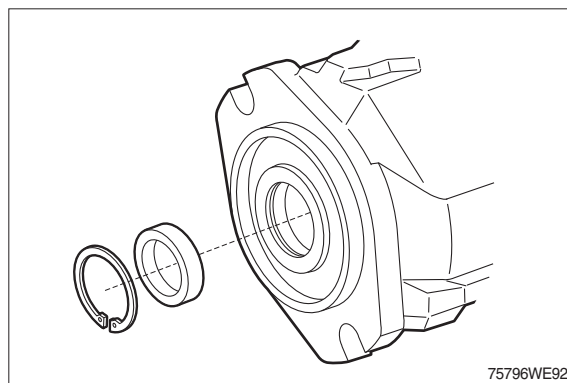
## 7) ADJUSTMENT OF TAPER ROLLER BEARING SET

- (1) Cast iron housing must have initial tension of the bearings: 0~0,05 mm, grind position A if necessary.

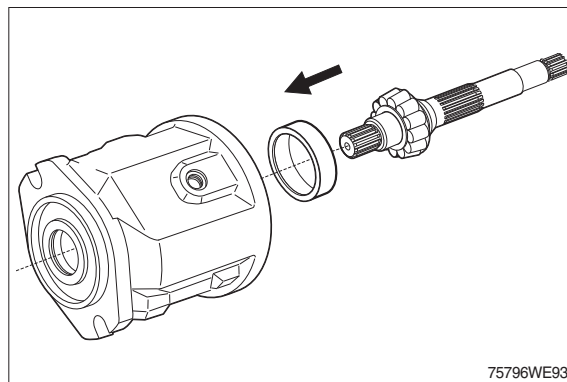


## 8) PUMP ASSEMBLY

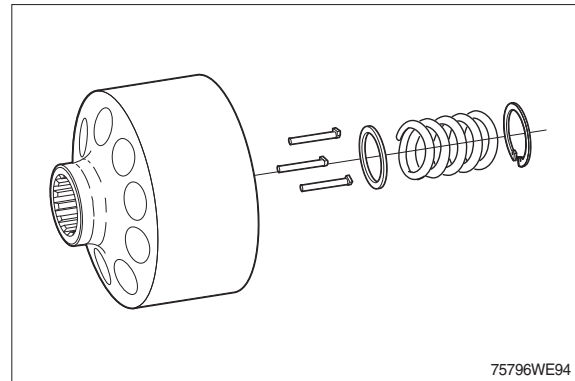
- (1) Fit the seal into the housing.  
Fit the circlip.



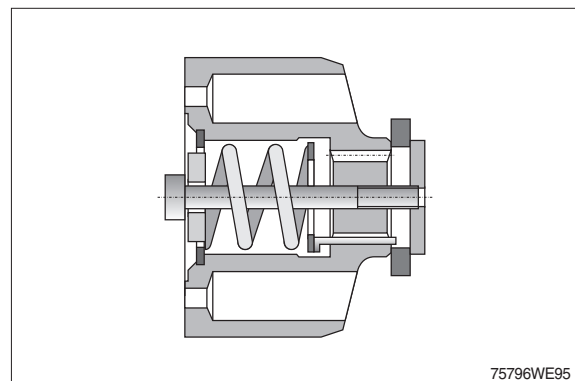
- (2) Fit the drive with bearing from rear end.  
※ Do not touch seal lip with edge of keyway or spline.



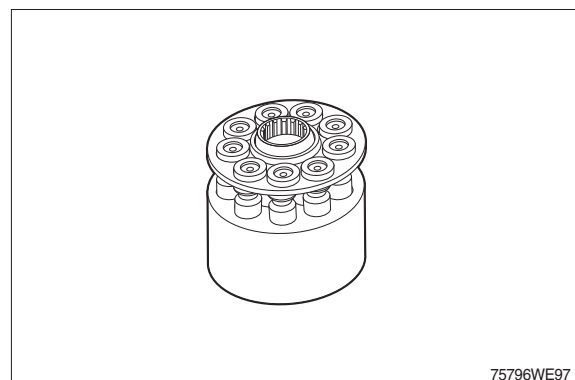
(3) Fit pressure pins using an assembly aid.



(4) Pre-tension the spring using a suitable device.

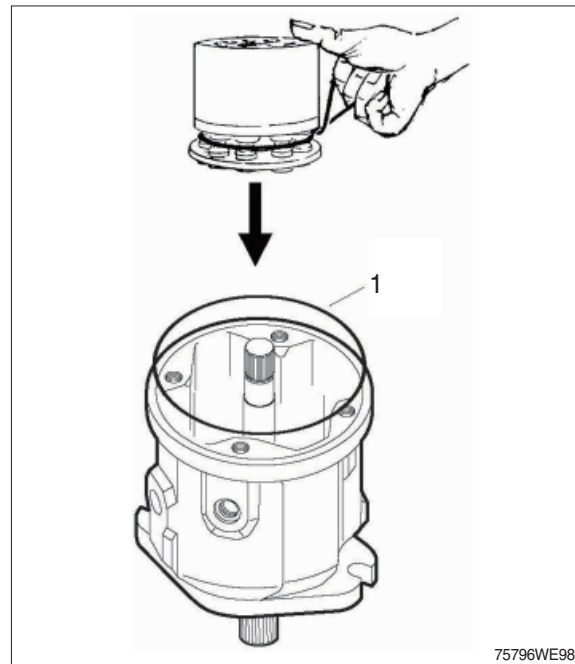


(5) Assemble piston with retaining plate.  
※ Oil piston and slipper pad.



(6) Fit rotary group.

- ※ Hold the piston by using an O-ring.  
Fit O-ring (1).



(7) Fit bearing (1) in connection plate.

Fit cylindrical pin (2).

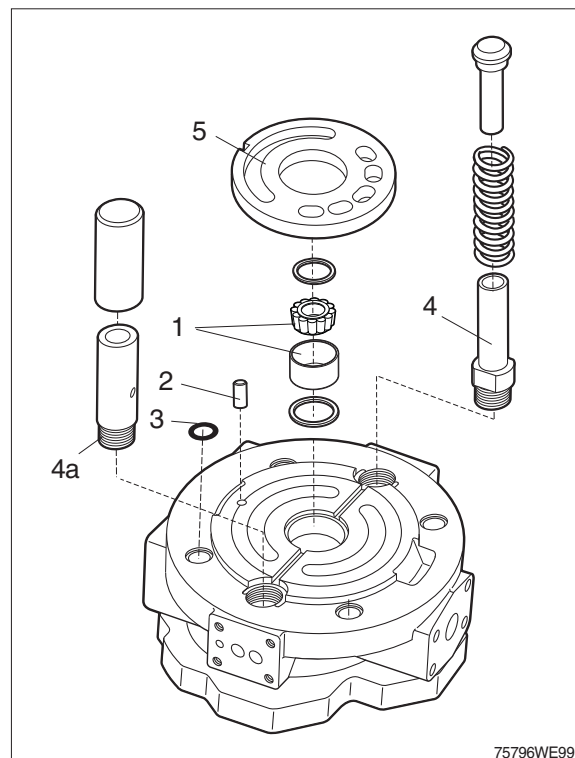
Fit O-rings (3) 4 pieces.

Fit adjustment spool (4) and guide piston (4a).

Fit distributor plate (5) (direction of rotation dependent)

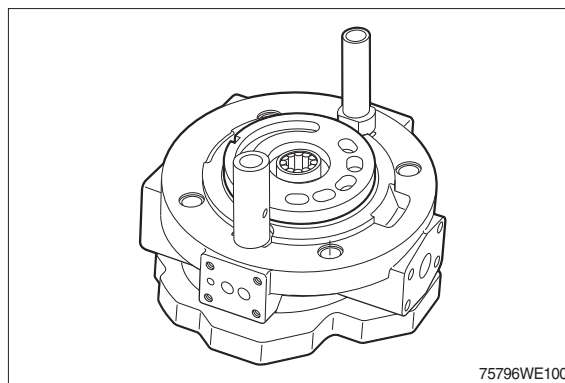
※ Assembly.

Hold the components in place with grease.



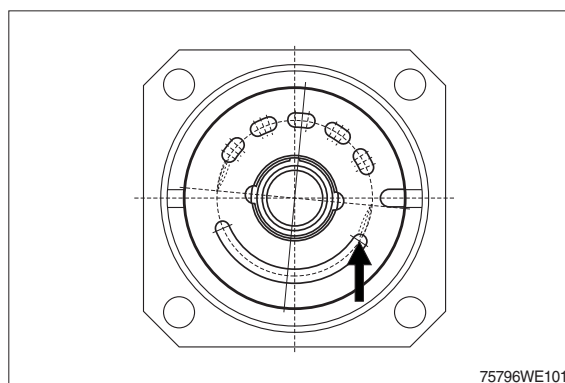
(8) Fit distributor plate.

※ Assembly aid : Grease

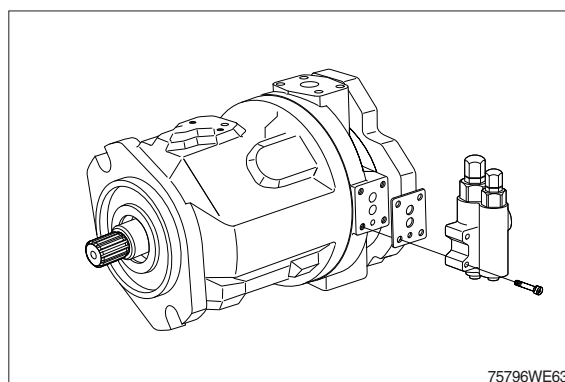


(9) For clockwise rotation pumps the distributor plate is off-set by 4° to the right from the centre position.

(Clockwise and anti-clockwise rotation distributor plates are not identical).

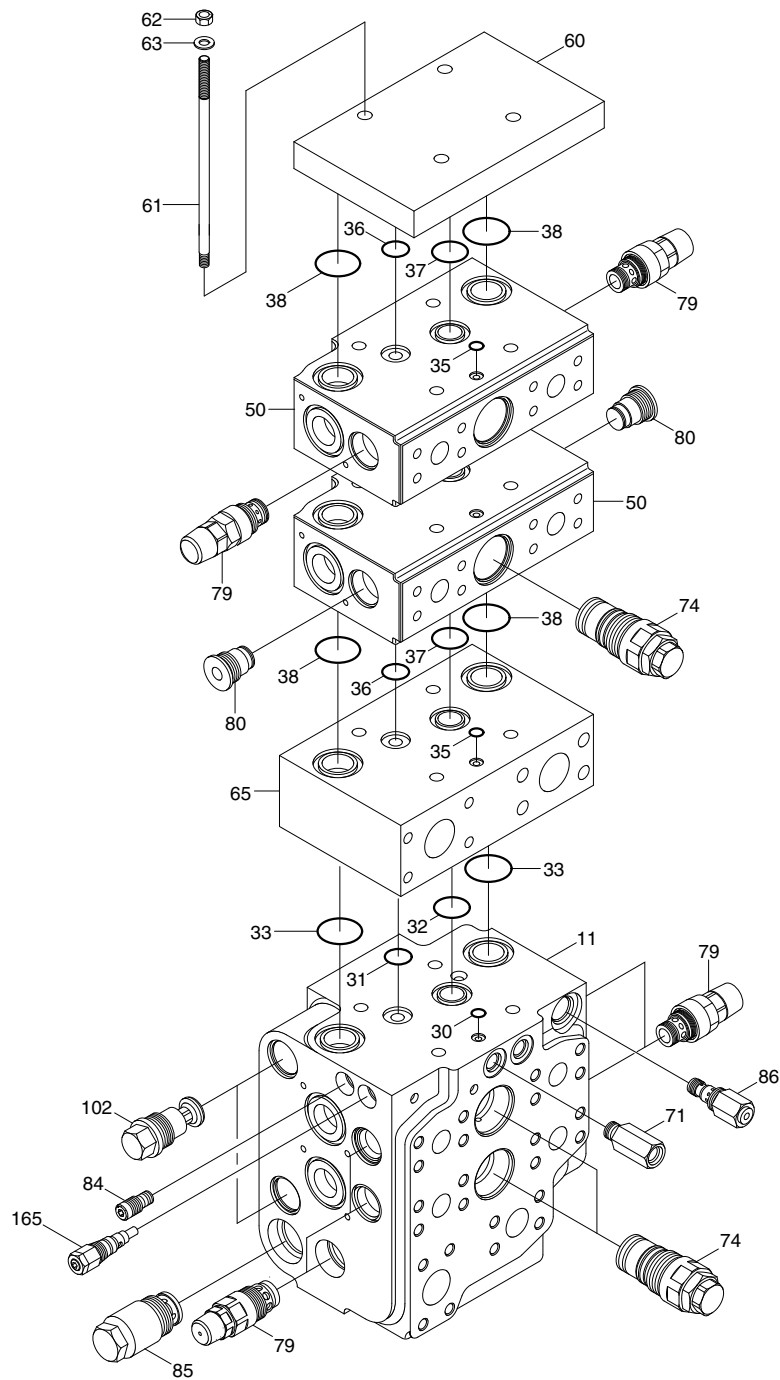


(10) Fit connection plate and control valve.



## 2. MAIN CONTROL VALVE

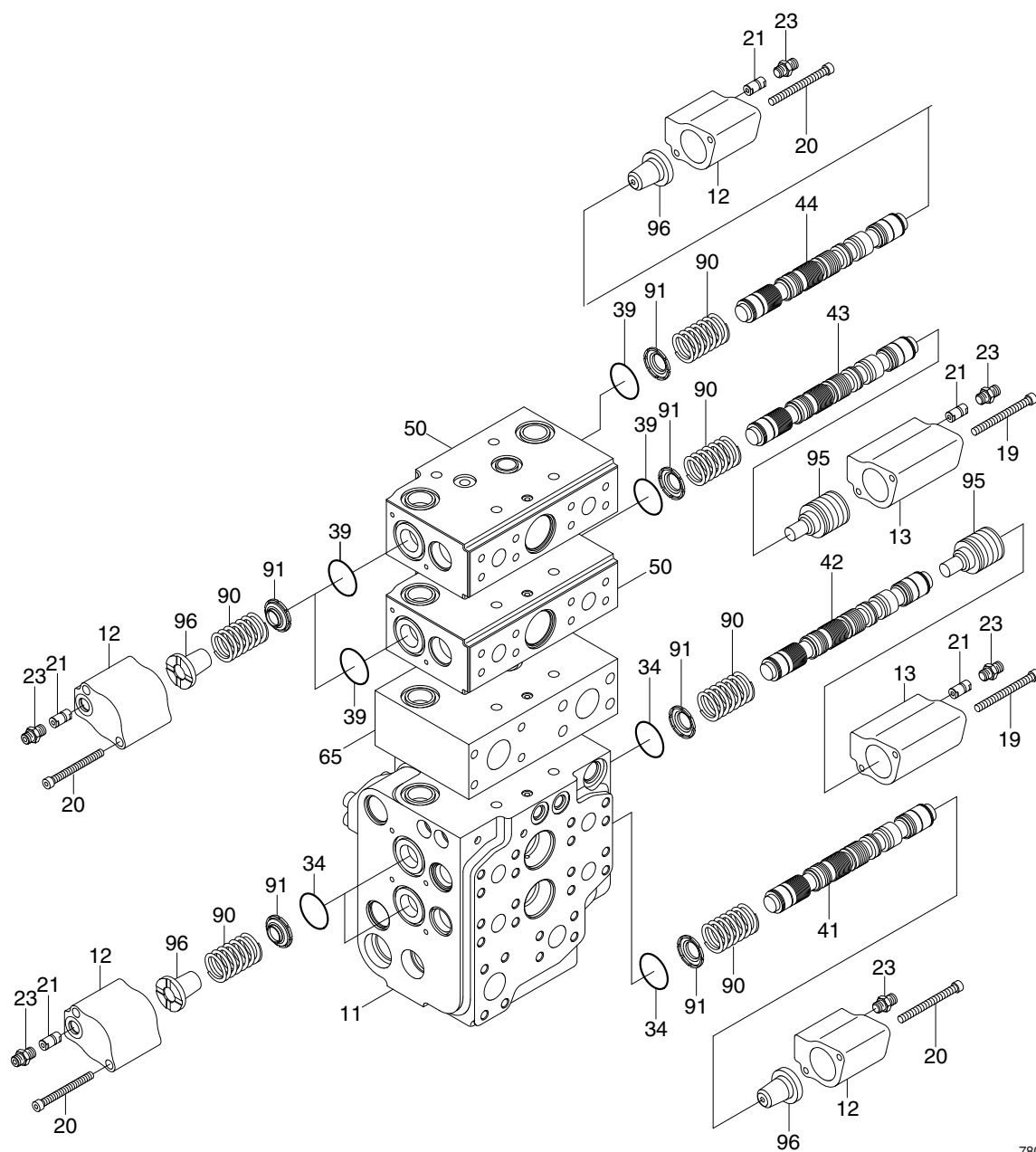
### 1) STRUCTURE (1/2)



78096WE13

11	Housing	38	O-ring	74	Compensator valve
30	O-ring	50	Housing	79	Pressure valve
31	O-ring	60	Plate	80	Plug screw
32	O-ring	61	Stud	84	Flow regulator
33	O-ring	62	Hexagon nut	85	Precharge valve
35	O-ring	63	Washer	86	Pressure reducing valve
36	O-ring	65	Sandwich plate	102	Locking screw
37	O-ring	71	Shuttle valve	165	Pressure relief valve

## STRUCTURE (2/2)



78096WE14

11	Housing	34	O-ring	65	Sandwich plate
12	Cover	39	O-ring	90	Compression spring
13	Cover	41	Spool	91	Spring retainer
19	Bolt	42	Spool	95	Spring retainer
20	Bolt	43	Spool	96	Spring retainer
21	Throttle check valve	44	Spool		
23	Threaded steel pipe fitting	50	Housing		

## **2) GENERAL PRECAUTIONS**

- (1) Clean room with no dust is recommended for maintenance. Because hydraulic components are precision, and have minute clearance. Tool and wash-oil must be clean, too. Handle them carefully.
- (2) At removing control valve from the machine, wash around the piping port, and neither dust nor water should go into inside with plugging. It is same at attaching the machine.
- (3) Prepare the required parts by checking structure figure before assembly. There are parts which are supplied with only sub-assembly part, so check the parts list before assembly.

## **3) PRECAUTIONS FOR DISASSEMBLY**

- (1) Handle the components carefully not to drop them or bump them with each other as they are made with precision.
- (2) Do not force the work by hitting or twisting as burred or damaged component may not be assembled or result in oil leakage or low performance.
- (3) When disassembled, tag the components for identification so that they can be reassembled correctly.
- (4) Once disassembled, O-ring and back-up rings are usually not to be used again.(Remove them using a wire with its end made like a shoe-horn. Be careful not to damage the slot)
- (5) If the components are left disassembled or half-disassembled, they may get rust from moisture or dust. If the work has to be interrupted, take care to prevent rust and dust.

## **4) PRECAUTIONS FOR REASSEMBLY**

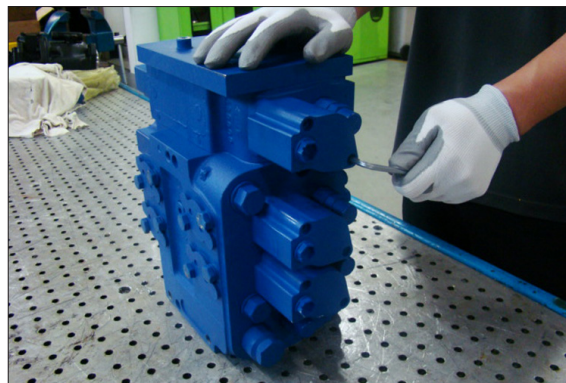
- (1) Take the same precautions as for disassembly.
- (2) When assembling the components, remove any metal chips or foreign objects and check them for any burrs or dents. Remove burrs and dents with oil-stone, if any.
- (3) O-rings and back-up rings are to be replaced with new ones, as a rule.
- (4) When installing O-rings and back-up rings, be careful not to damage them. (Apply a little amount of grease for smoothness)
- (5) Tighten the bolts and caps with specified torque.



## 5) DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

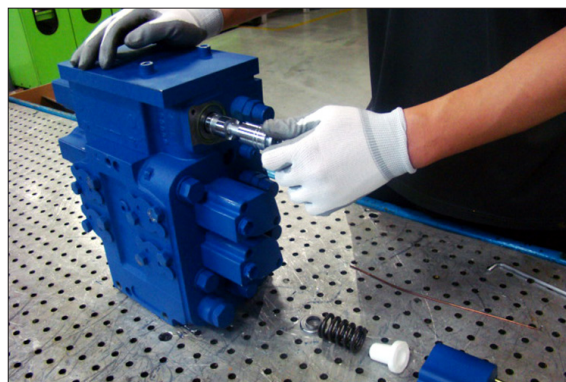
### (1) Spool

- ① Loosen the bolt (2EA).
  - Tool : Wrench 5 mm
  - Tightening torque : 0.85 kgf · m  
(6.1 lbf · ft)



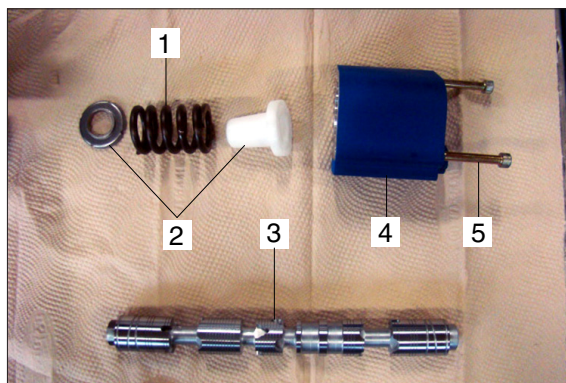
76096WE40

- ② Remove the cover, spring retainer, spring and spool.



76096WE41

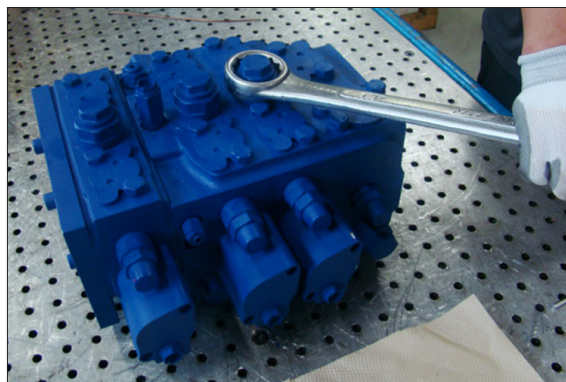
- 1 Spring
- 2 Spring retainer
- 3 Spool
- 4 Cover
- 5 Bolt



76096WE42

### (2) Compensator valve

- Tool : Spanner 42 mm



76096WE43

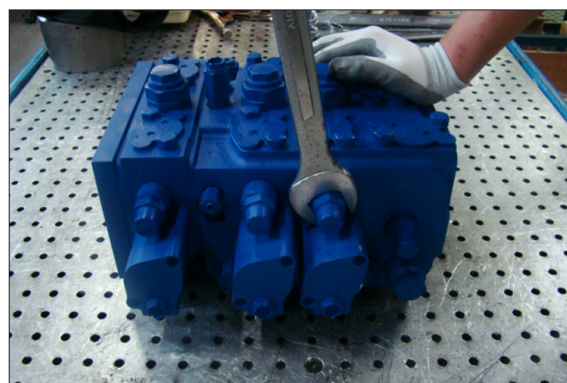
- Tightening torque : 20.4 kgf · m  
(148 lbf · ft)



76096WE44

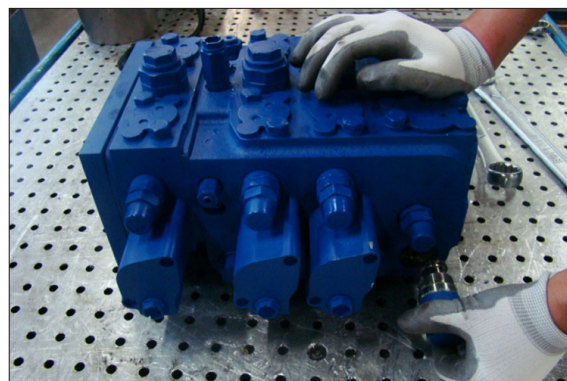
### (3) Port relief valve

- Tool : Spanner 30 mm



76096WE45

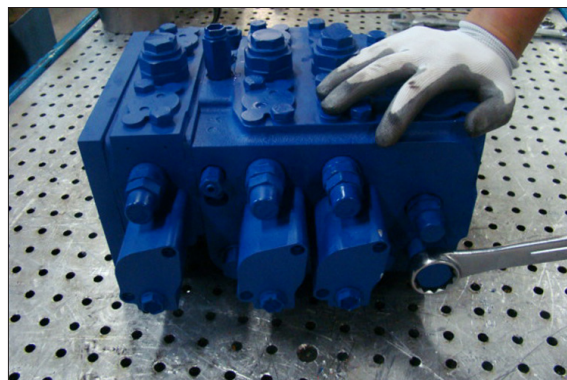
- Tightening torque : 10.2 kgf · m  
(73.8 lbf · ft)



76096WE46

### (4) Precharge valve

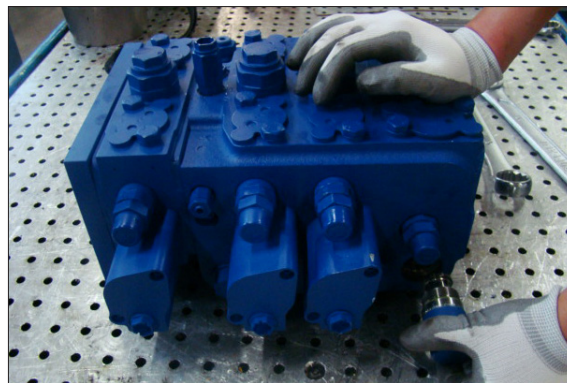
- Tool : Spanner 32 mm



76096WE47



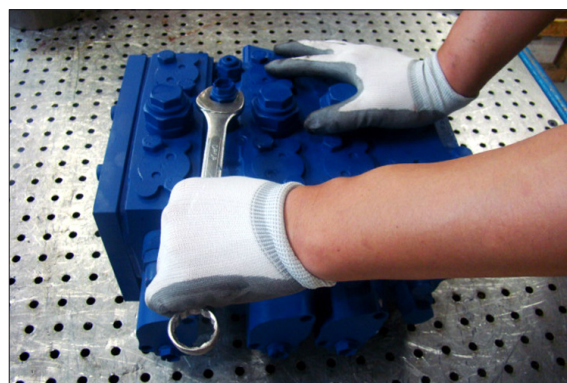
- Tightening torque : 6.1 kgf · m  
(44.3 lbf · ft)



76096WE48

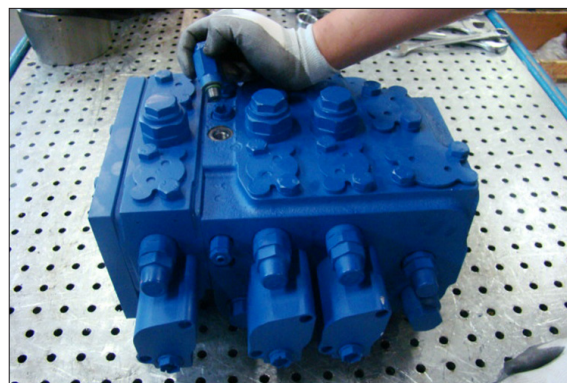
#### (5) Shuttle valve

- Tool : Spanner 22 mm



76096WE49

- Tightening torque : 3.6 kgf · m  
(25.8 lbf · ft)



76096WE50

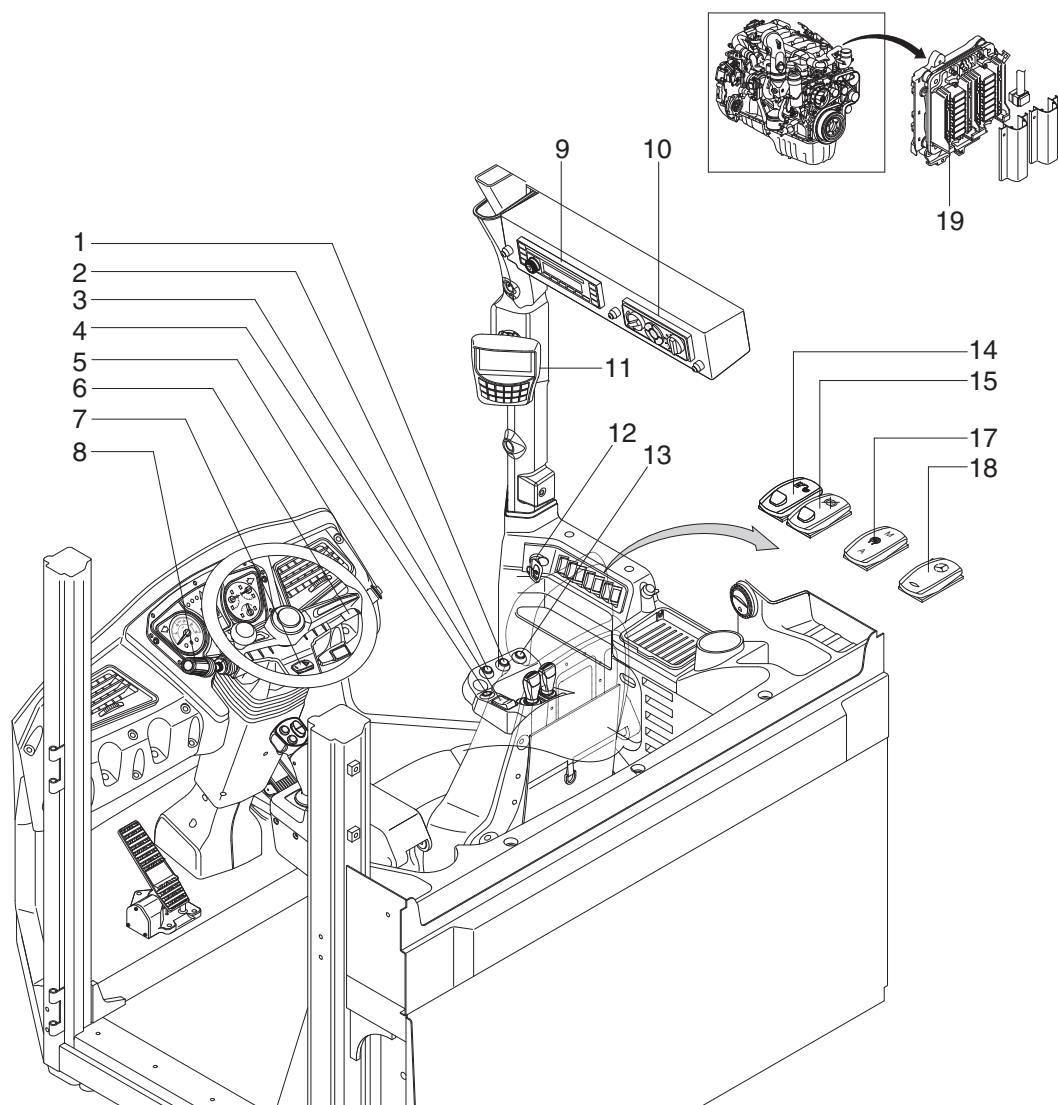
## SECTION 7 ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

Group 1 Component Location .....	7-1
Group 2 Electrical Circuit .....	7-3
Group 3 Monitoring System .....	7-22
Group 4 Electrical Component Specification .....	7-67
Group 5 Connectors .....	7-74
Group 6 Troubleshooting .....	7-95

# SECTION 7 ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

## GROUP 1 COMPONENT LOCATION

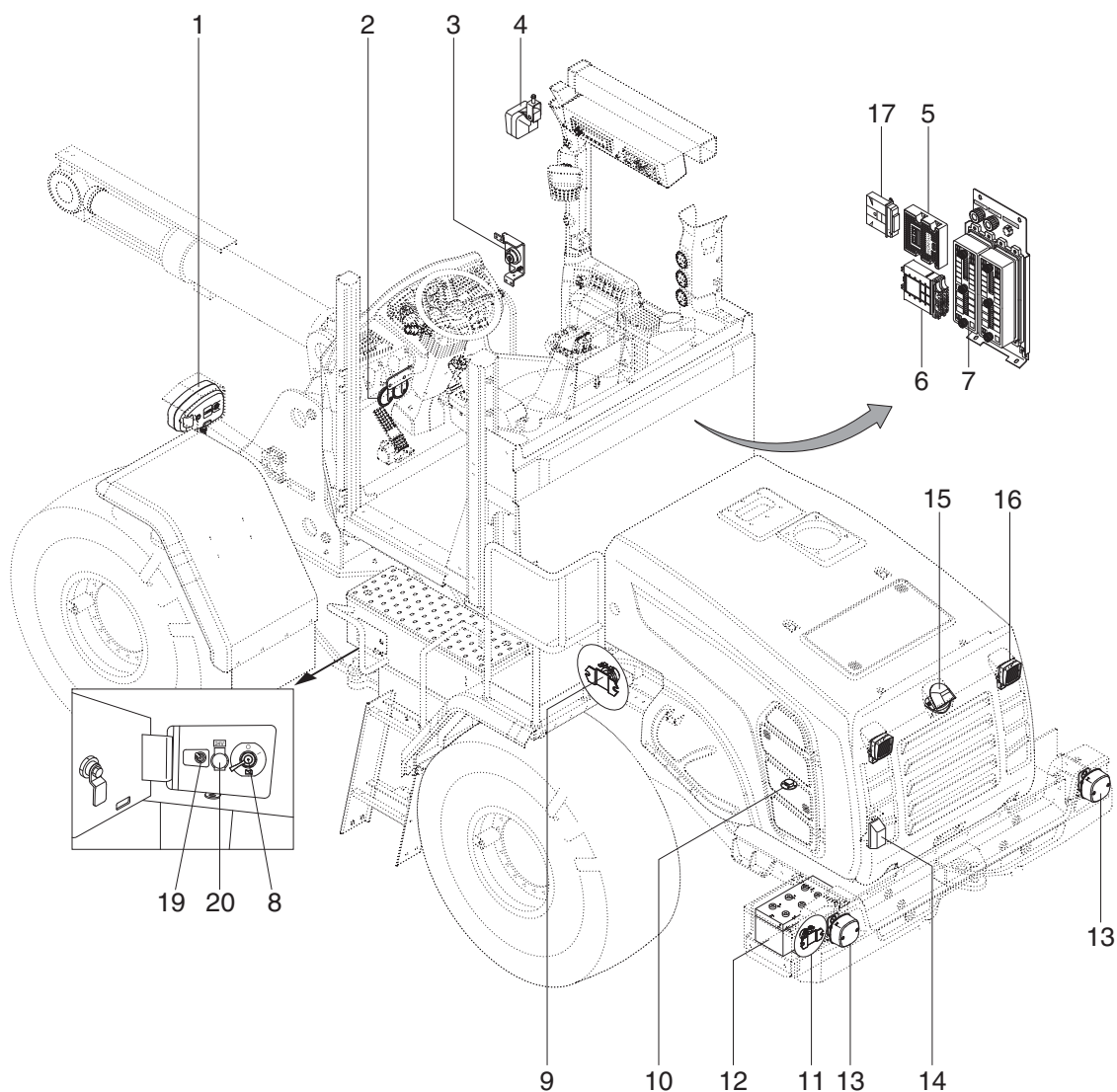
### 1. LOCATION 1



770F7EL20

- |                         |                           |                                   |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 Kick down button      | 8 Gear select lever       | 14 Pilot cut off switch           |
| 2 Horn button           | 9 Radio & USB player      | 15 Parking brake switch           |
| 3 FNR switch            | 10 Aircon & heater switch | 17 Differential lock switch (opt) |
| 4 FNR select button     | 11 Monitor                | 18 Emergency test switch          |
| 5 Hone button           | 12 Starting switch        | 19 Engine control unit (ECU)      |
| 6 Multi function switch | Starting button (opt)     |                                   |
| 7 Hazard switch         | 13 Work load button       |                                   |

## 2. LOCATION 2

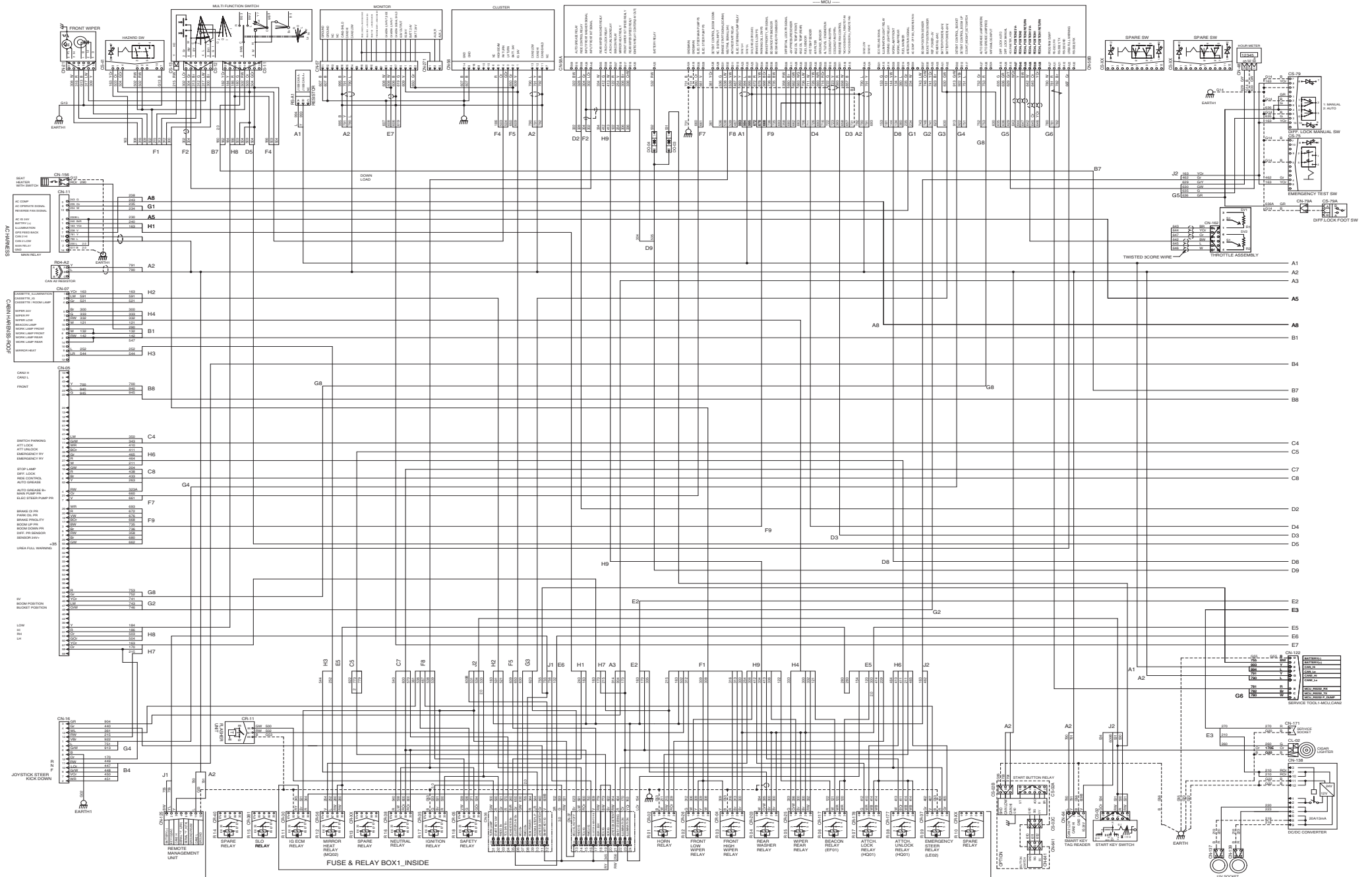


760F7EL21

- |                                   |                      |   |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------|---|
| 1 Head lamp                       | 8 Master switch      | 15 Camera (opt)   |
| 2 Horn                            | 9 Start relay        | 16 Work lamp  |
| 3 Angle sensor                    | 10 Fuel sender       | 17 Control unit (electro hydraulic & joystick steering) |
| 4 Work lamp                       | 11 Battery relay     | 19 Engine hood open switch                              |
| 5 Machine control unit (MCU)      | 12 Battery           | 20 24V socket   |
| 6 Transmission control unit (TCU) | 13 Rear combi lamp   |   |
| 7 Fuse and relay box              | 14 Number plate lamp |   |

GROUP 2 ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT

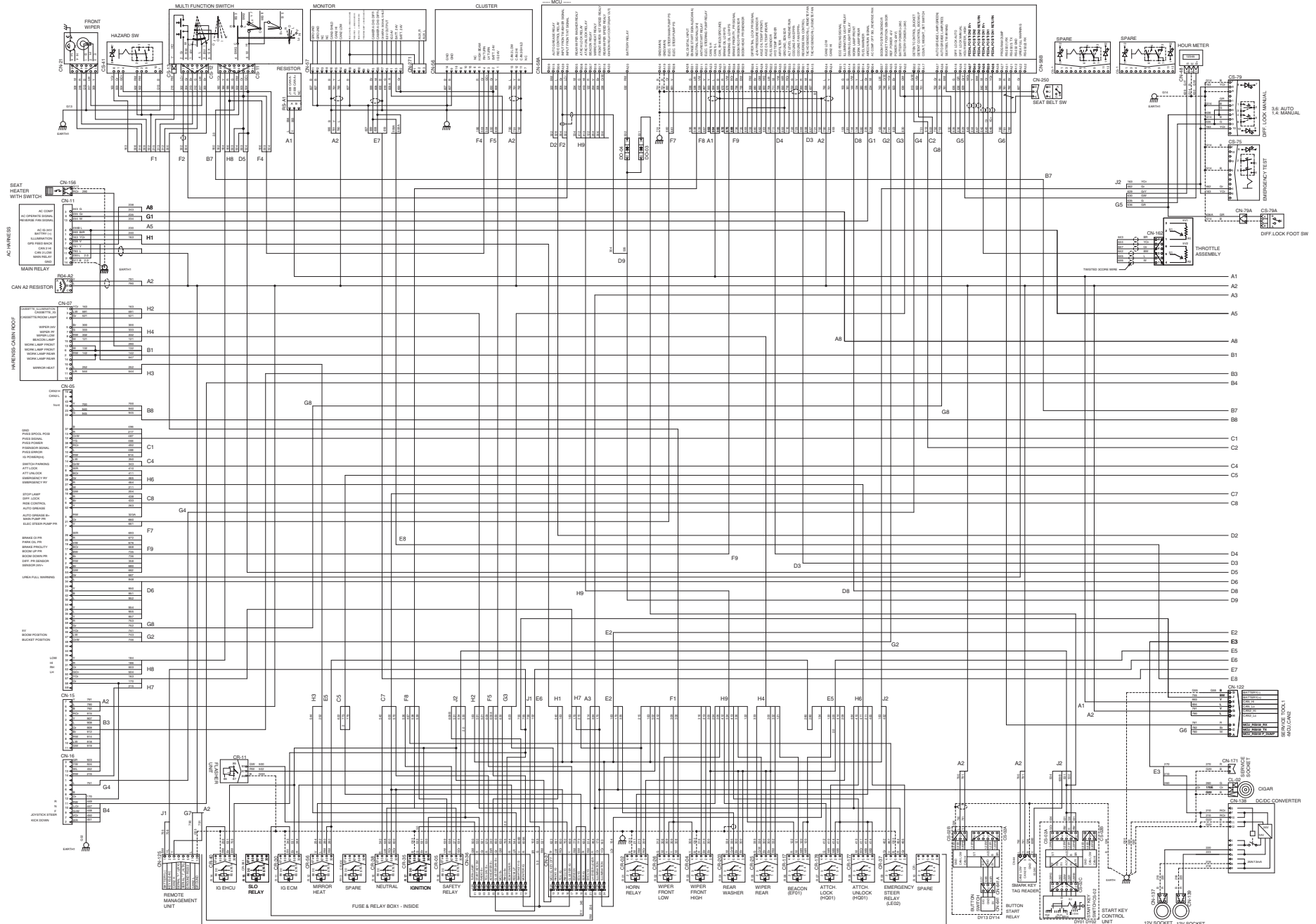
• ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT (1/3, machine serial number : ~#0112)





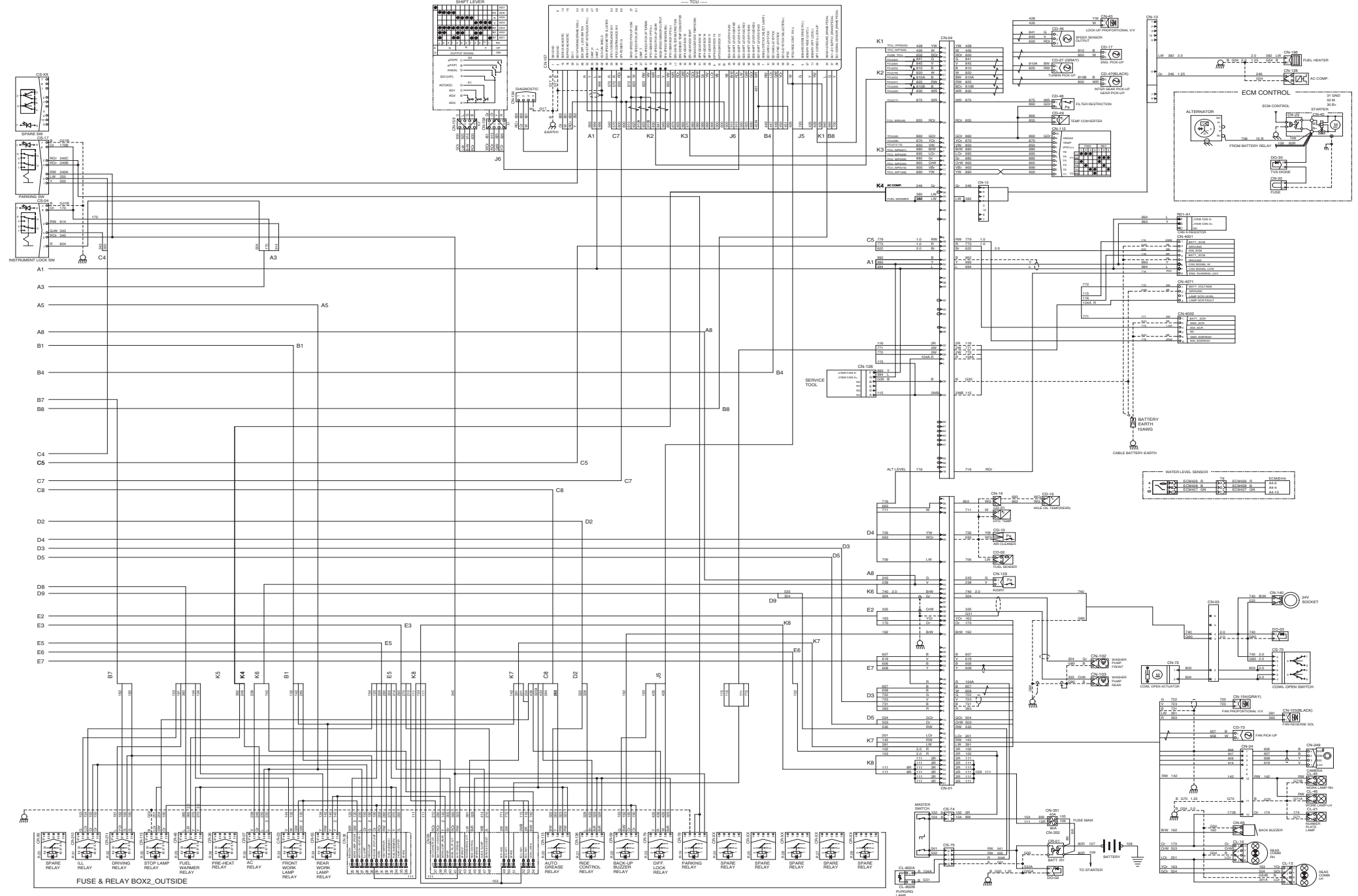
## GROUP 2 ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT

• ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT (1/3, machine serial number : #0113~)

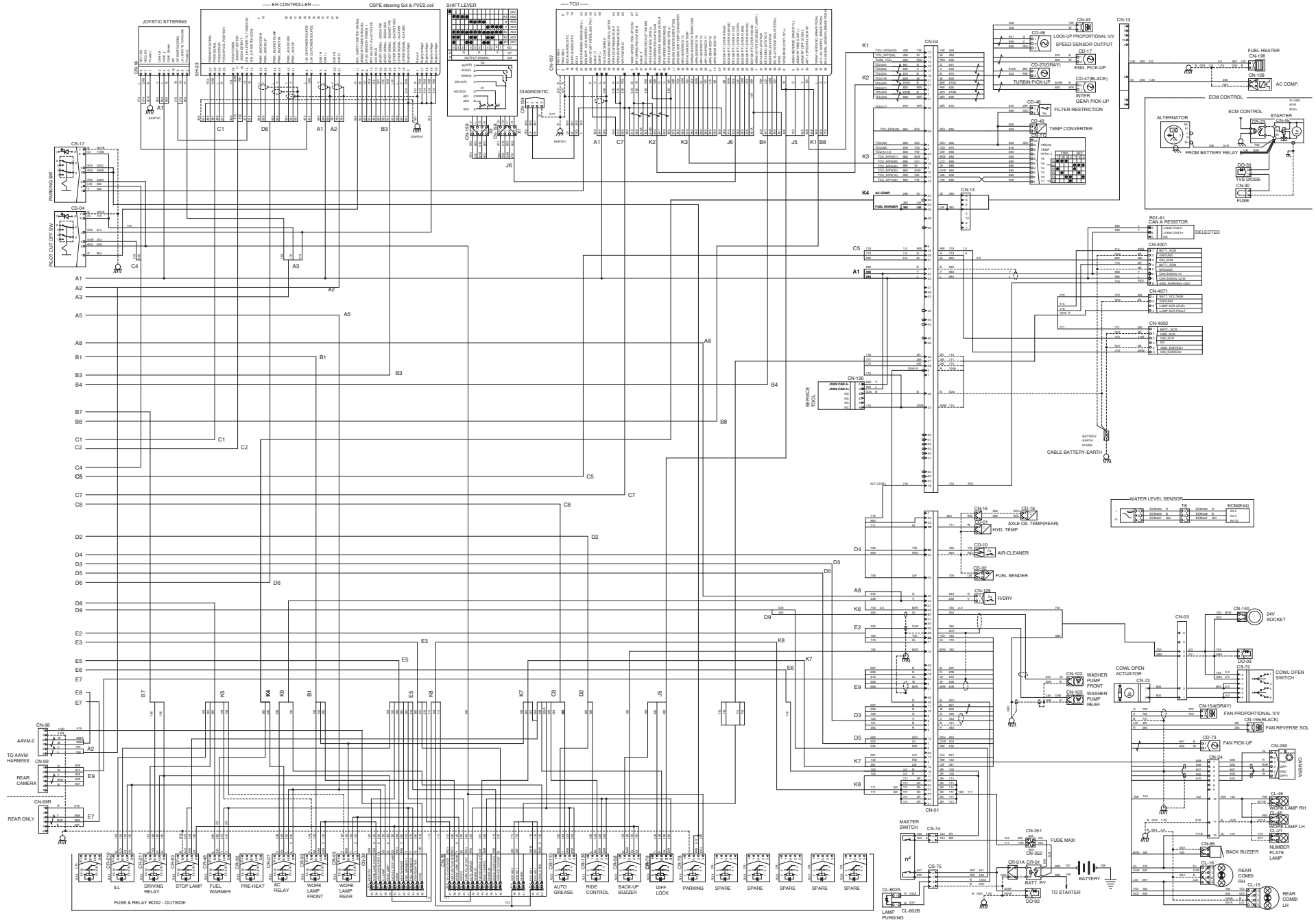


20WF-91028-02

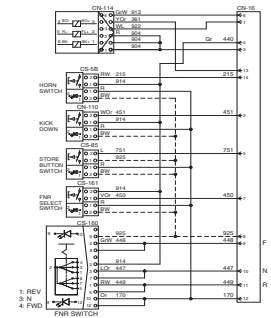
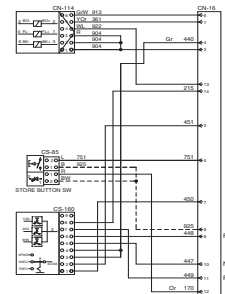
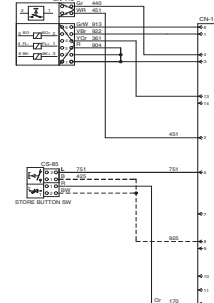
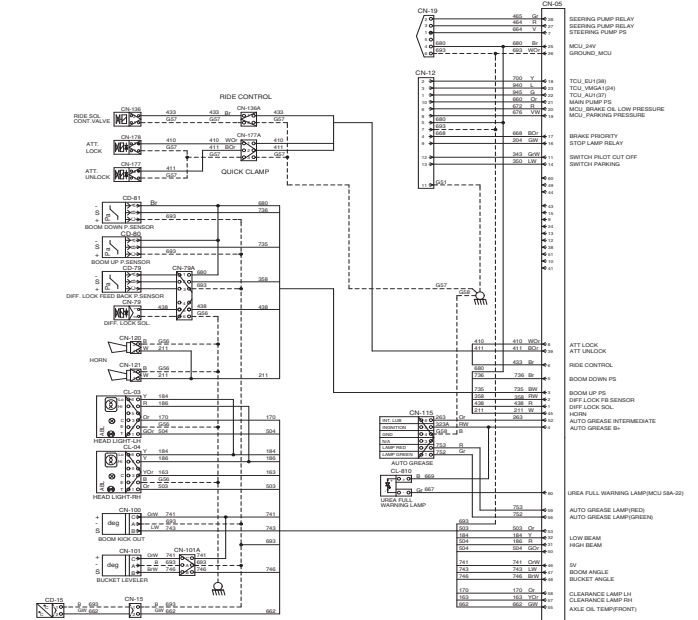
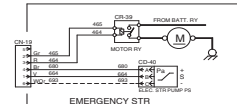
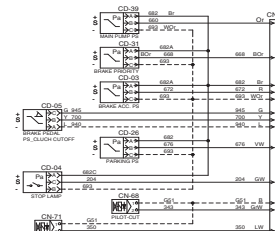
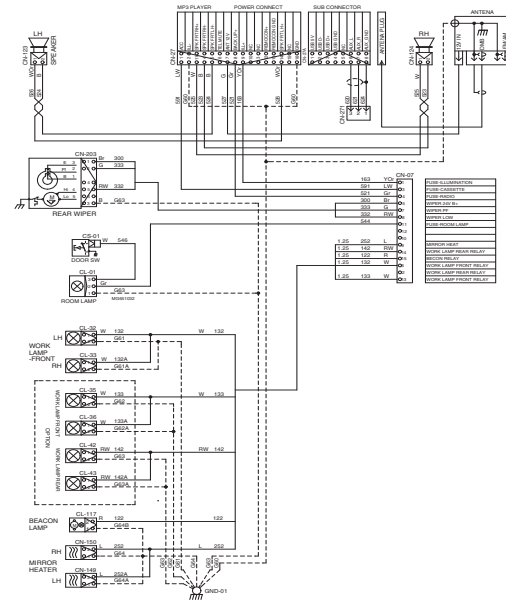
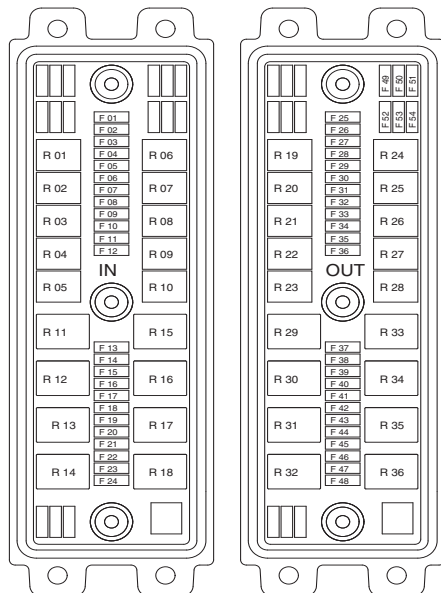
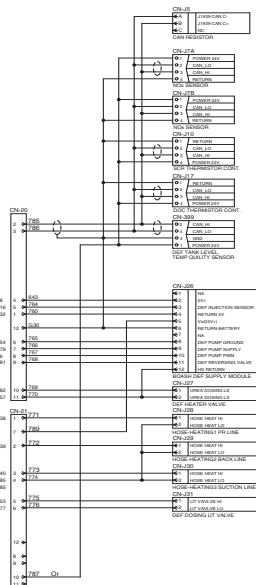
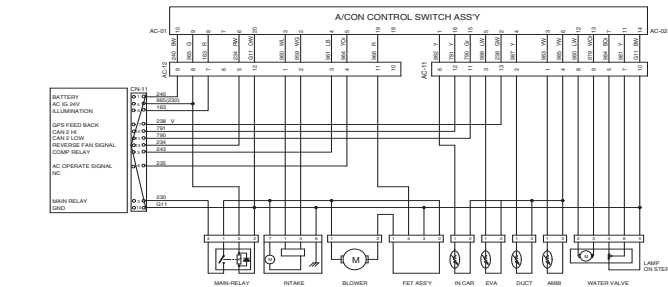
· ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT (2/3, machine serial number : ~#0112)



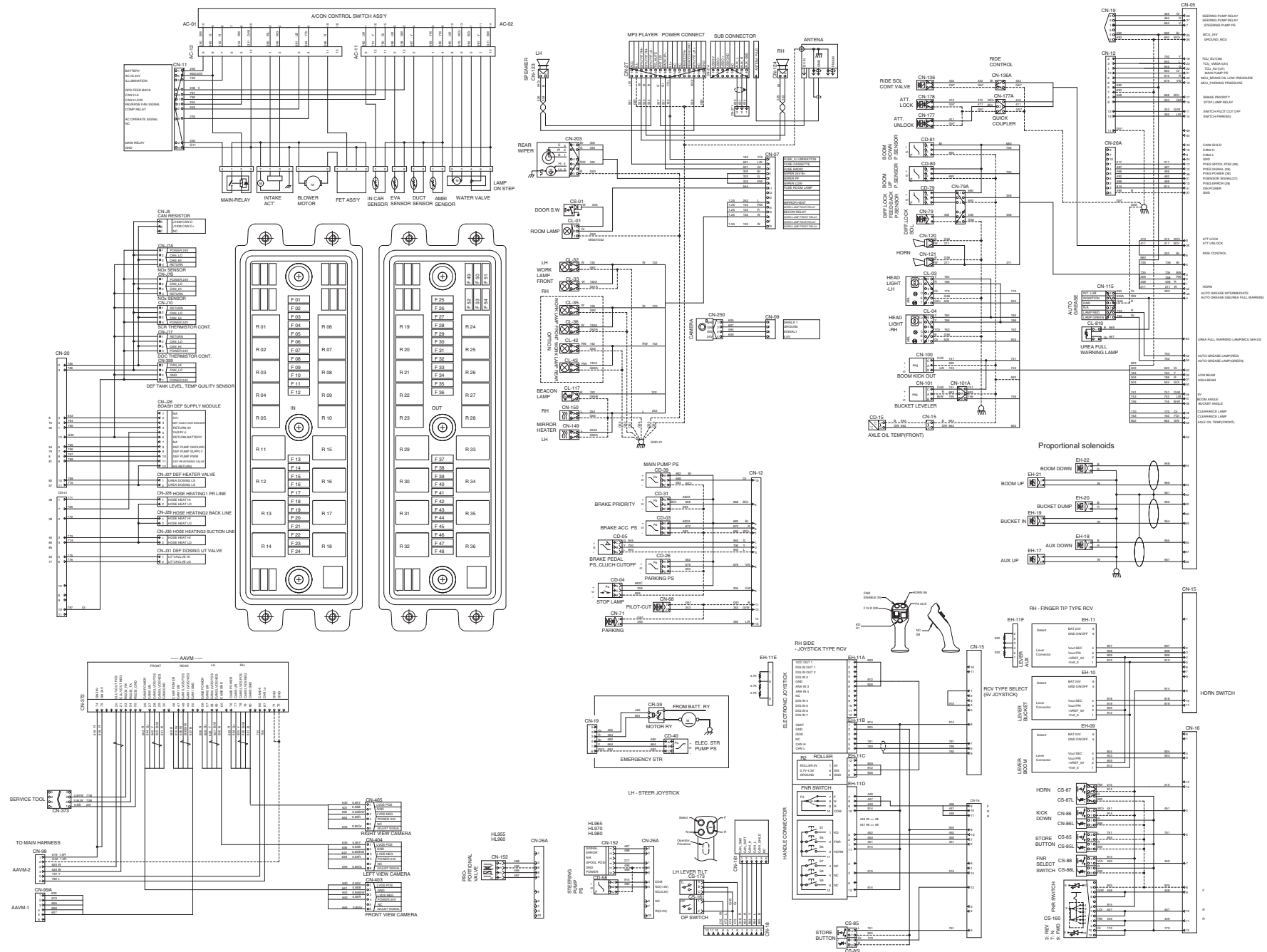
· ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT (2/3, machine serial number : #0113-)



• ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT (3/3, machine serial number : ~#0112)



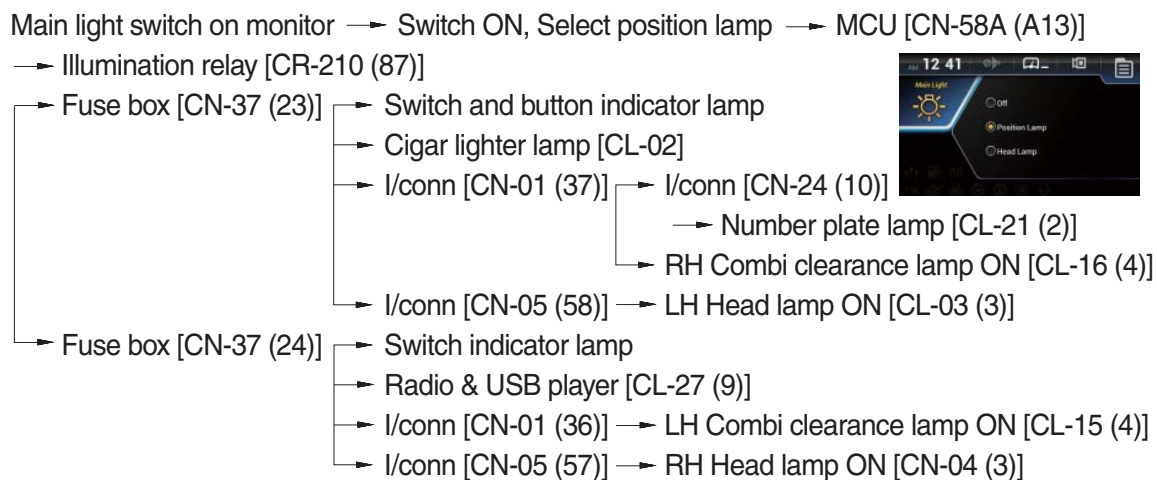
• ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT (3/3, machine serial number : #0113~)





## 1. ILLUMINATION CIRCUIT

### 1) OPERATING FLOW



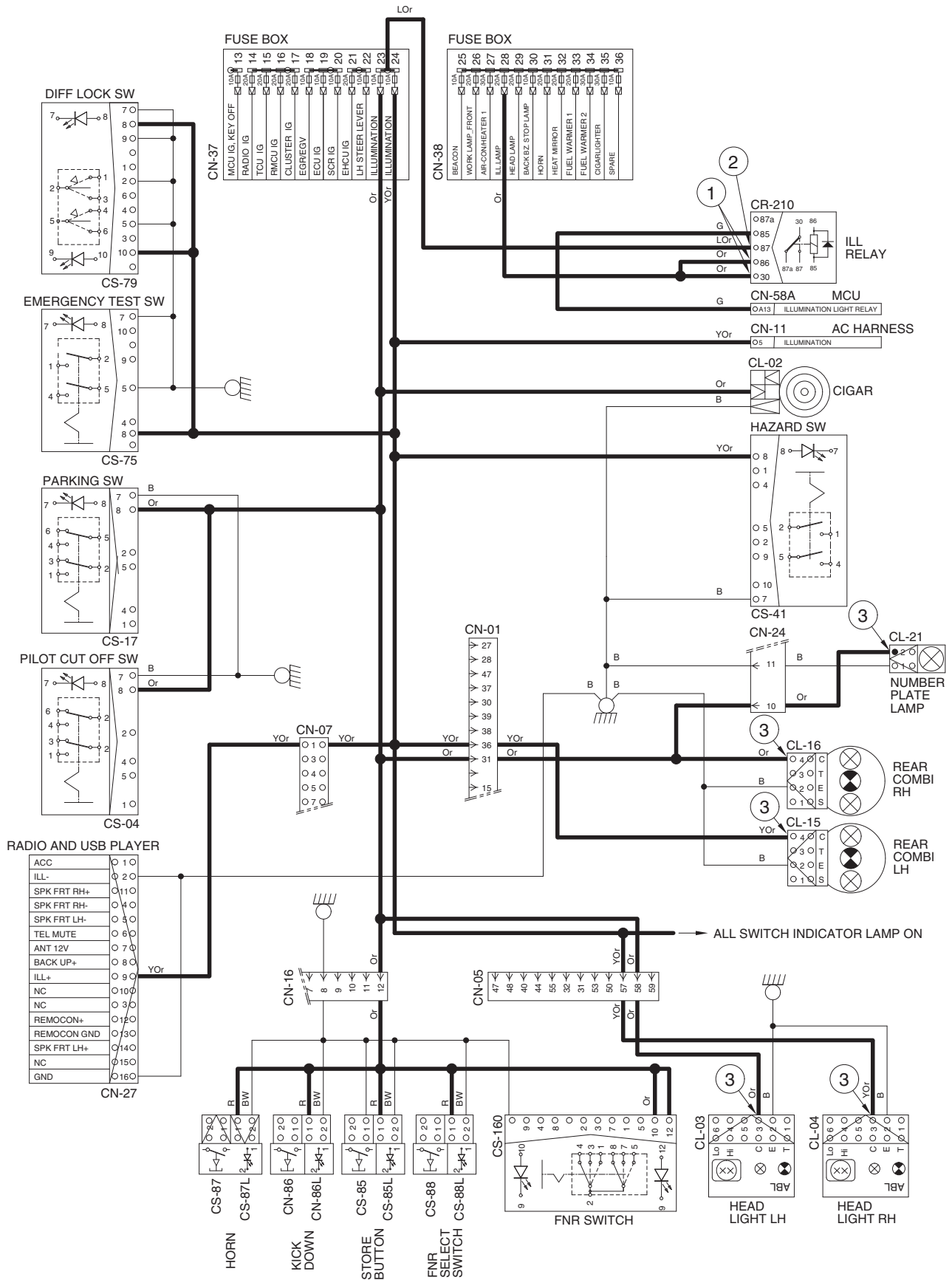
### 2) CHECK POINT

Engine	Key switch	Check point	Voltage
OFF	ON	① - GND (relay input) ② - GND (relay output) ③ - GND (to light)	20~25V

※ GND : Ground

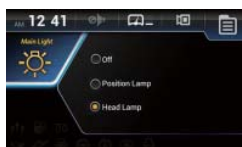
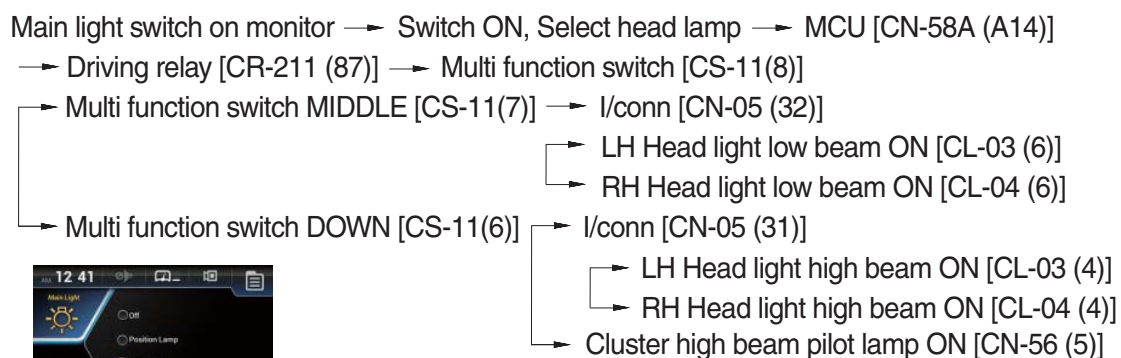


# ILLUMINATION CIRCUIT



## 2. HEAD LIGHT CIRCUIT

### 1) OPERATING FLOW

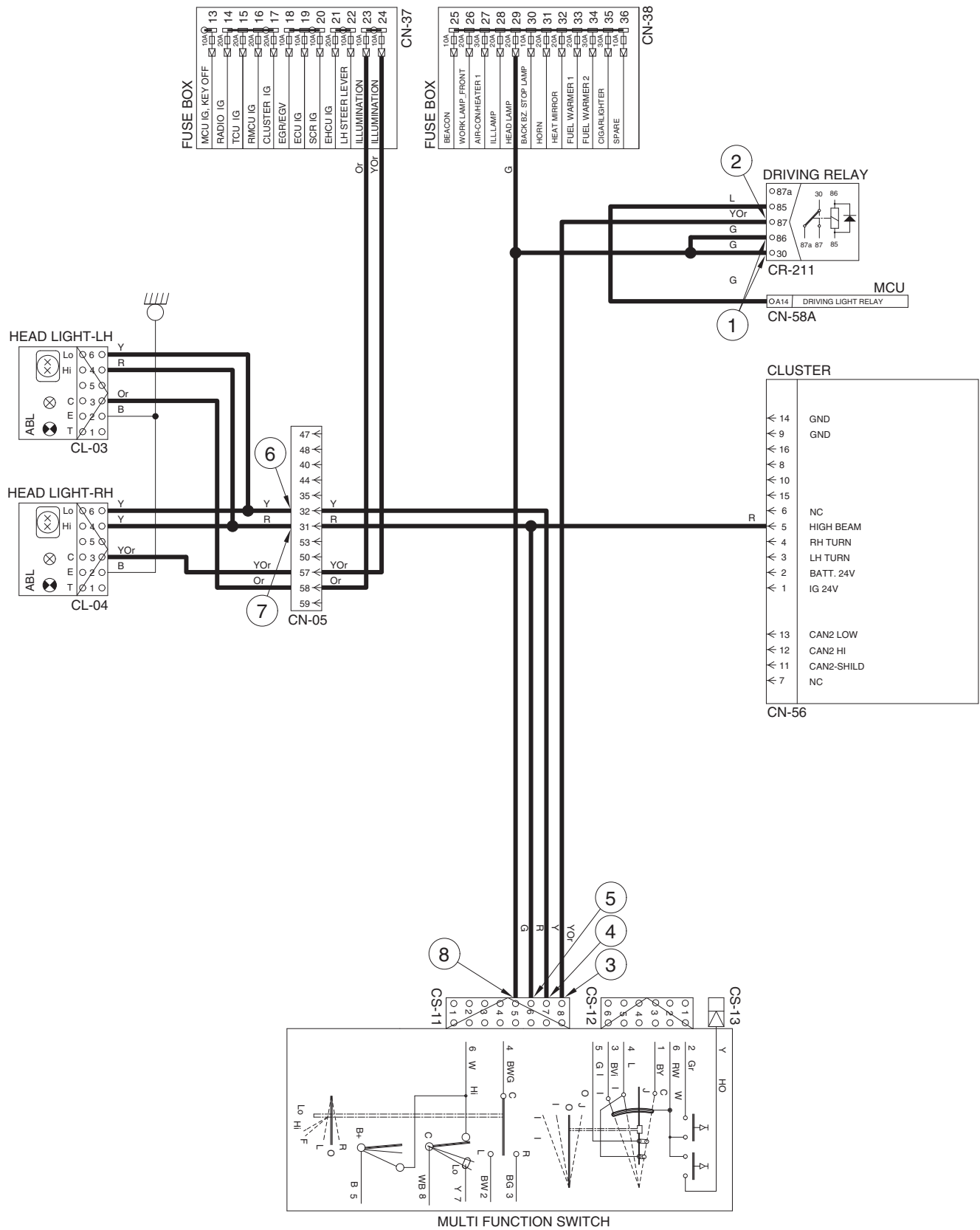


### 2) CHECK POINT

Engine	Key switch	Check point	Voltage
OFF	ON	① - GND (relay input) ② - GND (relay output) ③ - GND (multi function input) ④ - GND (multi function output) ⑤ - GND (multi function output) ⑥ - GND (low beam) ⑦ - GND (high beam) ⑧ - GND (passing B <sup>+</sup> )	20~25V

※ GND : Ground

## HEAD LIGHT CIRCUIT



### 3. WORK LIGHT SWITCH

#### 1) OPERATING FLOW

※ Main light switch on monitor : Select position lamp.

##### (1) Work lamp switch (select Front)

MCU [CN-58B (B09)] → Front work lamp relay [CR-03 (87)] → I/conn [CN-07 (06)]

- LH Front work lamp ON [CL-32 (1)]
- RH Front work lamp ON [CL-33 (1)]



##### (2) Work lamp switch (select Rear)

MCU [CN-58B (B03)] → Rear work lamp relay [CR-55 (87)] → I/conn [CN-01 (33)]

- I/conn [CN-24 (12)]
  - LH Rear work lamp ON [CL-46 (1)]
  - RH Rear work lamp ON [CL-45 (1)]

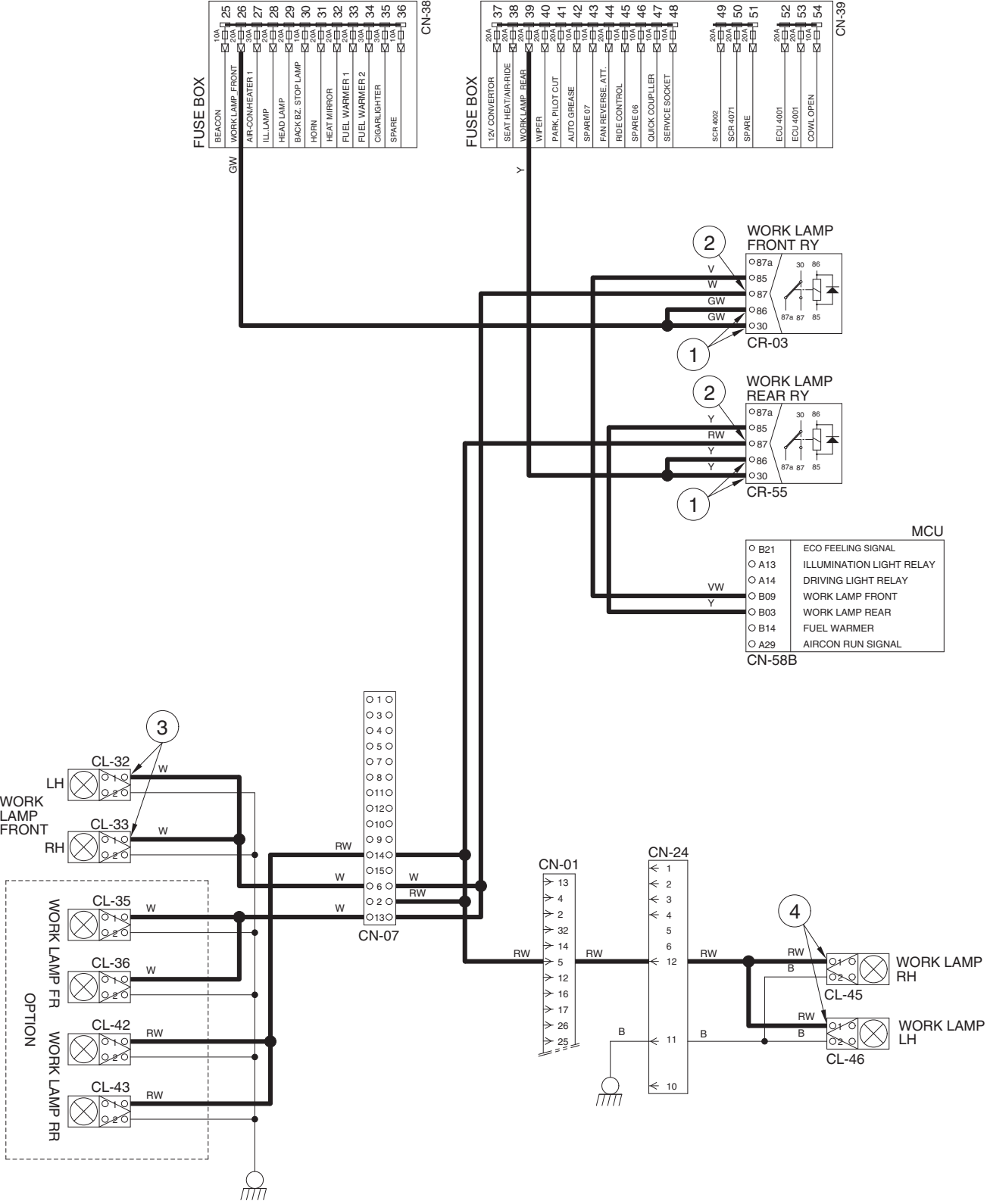


#### 2) CHECK POINT

Engine	Key switch	Check point	Voltage
OFF	ON	① - GND (work lamp power input) ② - GND (work lamp power output) ③ - GND (front work lamp) ④ - GND (rear work lamp)	20~25V

※ GND : Ground

WORK LIGHT SWITCH



9807EL06

## 1) OPERATING FLOW

- ※ The gear selector lever is neutral position. It is necessary condition before the starting. The gear selector has an output signal which is activated whenever the shift lever is in the neutral position. This signal can be used to control a relay and prevent engine from starting whenever the shift lever is not in the neutral position.

```

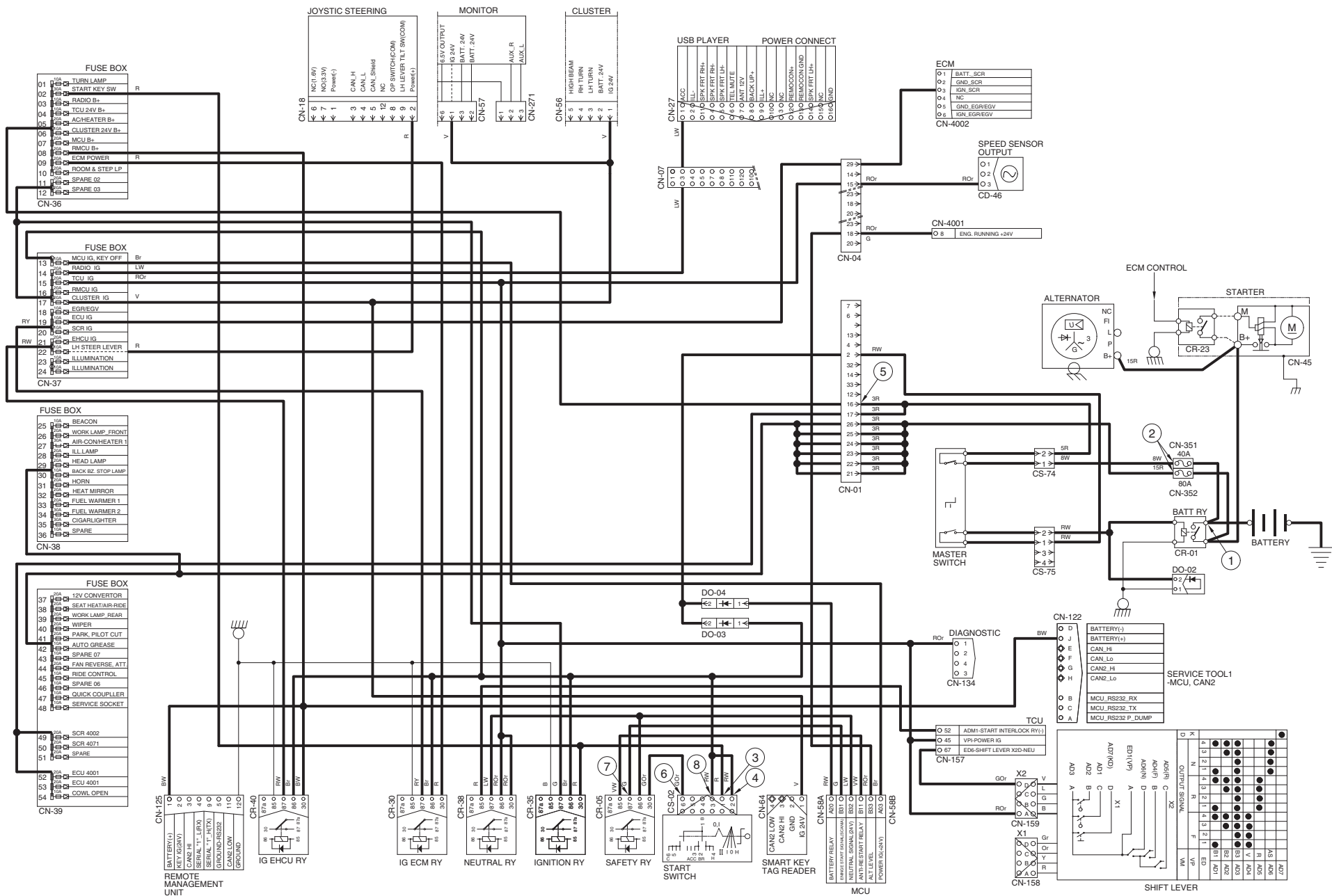
graph LR
    Start[Start switch ON [CS-02 (2, 3)]] --> IConn1[I/conn [CN-01(2)]]
    IConn1 --> Master[Master switch [CS-75 (1) → (2)]]
    IConn1 --> BatRel[Battery relay [CR-1]]
    BatRel --> BatRelOp[Battery relay operating (All power is supplied with the electric component)]
    IConn1 --> ECMRel[ECM power relay [CR-30 (30) → (87)]]
    ECMRel --> FuseBox1[Fuse box [CN-37 (19)]]
    IConn1 --> IConn4[I/conn [CN-04 (35)]]
    IConn4 --> ECM[ECM [CN-4002 (3)]]
    IConn1 --> FuseBox2[Fuse box [CN-37 (13)]]
    FuseBox2 --> MCU[MCU [CN-58A (A03)]]
    IConn1 --> PowerRel[Power relay [CR-35 (30) → (87)]]
    PowerRel --> FuseBox3[Fuse box [CN-37 (15)]]
    PowerRel --> TCU[TCU [CN-157 (45)]]
  
```

Start switch START [CS-2 (6)] → Start safety relay [CR-05 (30) → (87)] → MCU [CN-58A (B31)] → Start relay [CR-23] → Starter (terminal B<sup>+</sup> and M connector of start motor)

Engine	Key switch	Check point	Voltage
Running	ON	① - GND (battery B <sup>+</sup> ) ② - GND (fusible link) ③ - GND (start key B terminal) ④ - GND (start key BR terminal) ⑤ - GND (i/conn CN-01 (16)) ⑥ - GND (start key C terminal) ⑦ - GND (start safety relay output) ⑧ - GND (start key ACC terminal)	20~25 V

- 7-13

# STARTING CIRCUIT



## 5. CHARGING CIRCUIT

When the starter is activated and the engine is started, the operator releases the key switch to the ON position.

Charging current generated by operating alternator flows into the battery through the battery relay (CR-01).

The current also flows from alternator to each electrical component and controller through the fuse box.

### 1) OPERATING FLOW

#### (1) Warning flow

Alternator (B<sup>+</sup>) → ECM [CN-4001 (8)] → I/conn [CN-04 (18)] → MCU [CN-58B (B33)]  
→ Cluster charge warning lamp ON

#### (2) Charging flow

Alternator → Starter [CN-45 (B<sup>+</sup>)] → Battery relay [CR-01]  
→ Battery (+) terminal → Charging  
→ Fusible link [CN-351 (40A)] → Master switch [CS-74 (1)→(2)] → I/conn [CN-01 (16, 17)]  
→ Fuse box [CN-36, 39]  
→ Fusible link [CN-352 (80A)] → I/conn [CN-01 (21~26)] → Fuse box [CN-38, 39]

### 2) CHECK POINT

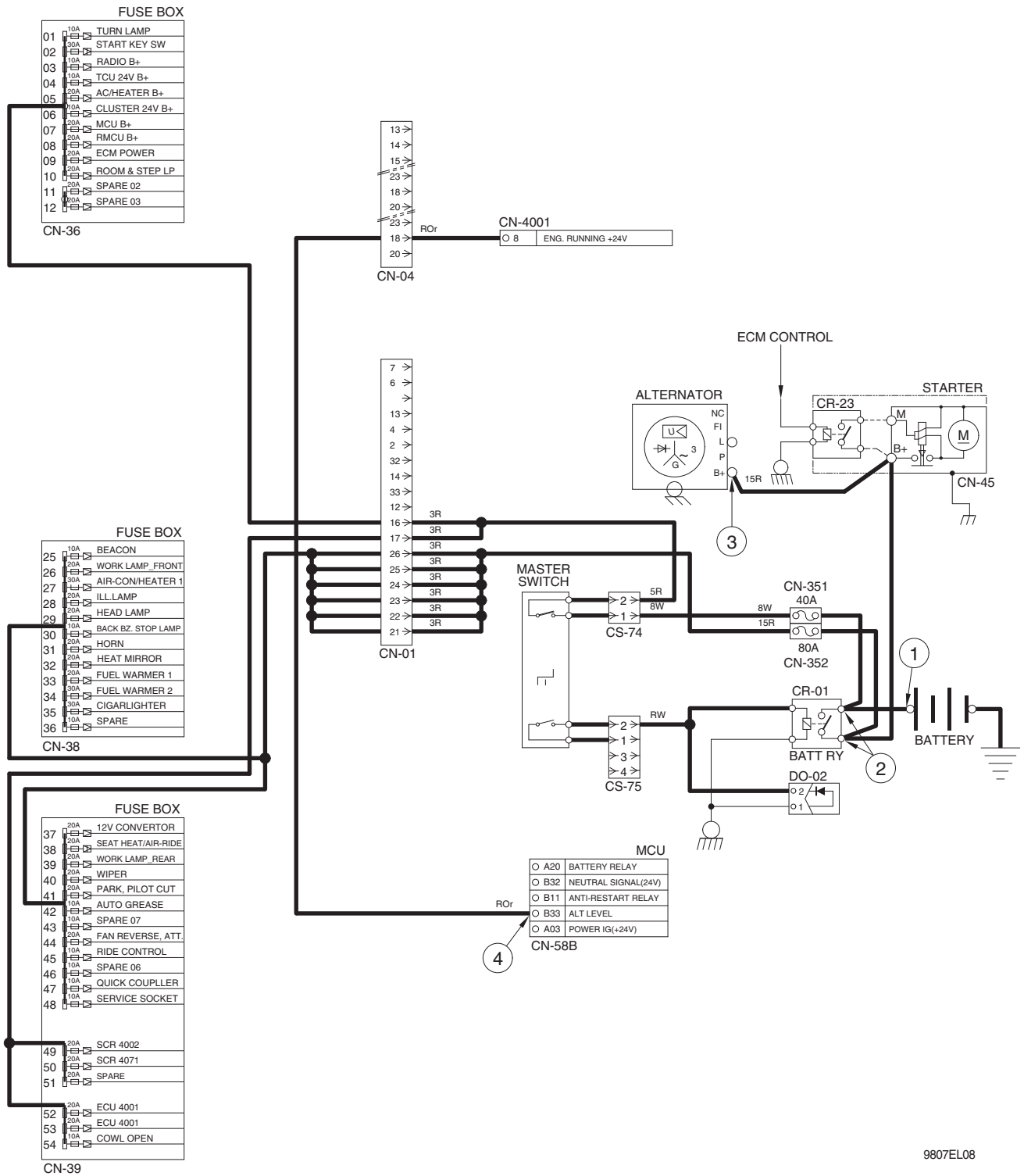
Engine	Key switch	Check point	Voltage
OFF	ON	① - GND (battery) ② - GND (battery relay) ③ - GND (alternator B <sup>+</sup> ) ④ - GND (MCU)	20~28V

※ GND : Ground

※ MCU : Machine control unit



# CHARGING CIRCUIT

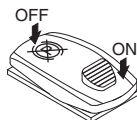


## 6. ELECTRIC PARKING, PILOT CUT OFF CIRCUIT

### 1) OPERATING FLOW

#### (1) Parking OFF

Fuse box [CN-39 (41)] → Parking switch OFF → [CS-17 (5)→(4)] → I/conn [CN-05 (14)]  
 → I/conn [CN-12 (13)]  
 → Parking solenoid ON (activated)  
 → Parking brake released (by hydraulic pressure)  
 → [CS-17 (2)→(1)] → T/M control unit [CN-157 (21)]



#### (2) Parking ON

Fuse box [CN-39 (41)] → Parking switch ON → Parking solenoid [CN-71] OFF  
 → Parking brake applied [By spring force]

#### (3) Pilot cut off ON

Fuse box [CN-39 (41)] → Pilot cut off switch ON → Pilot cut off switch [CS-4 (5)→(4)]  
 → I/conn [CN-05 (11)] → I/conn [CN-12 (12)] → Pilot cut off solenoid ON [CN-68] (activate)  
 → Pilot cut off released

#### (4) Pilot cut off OFF

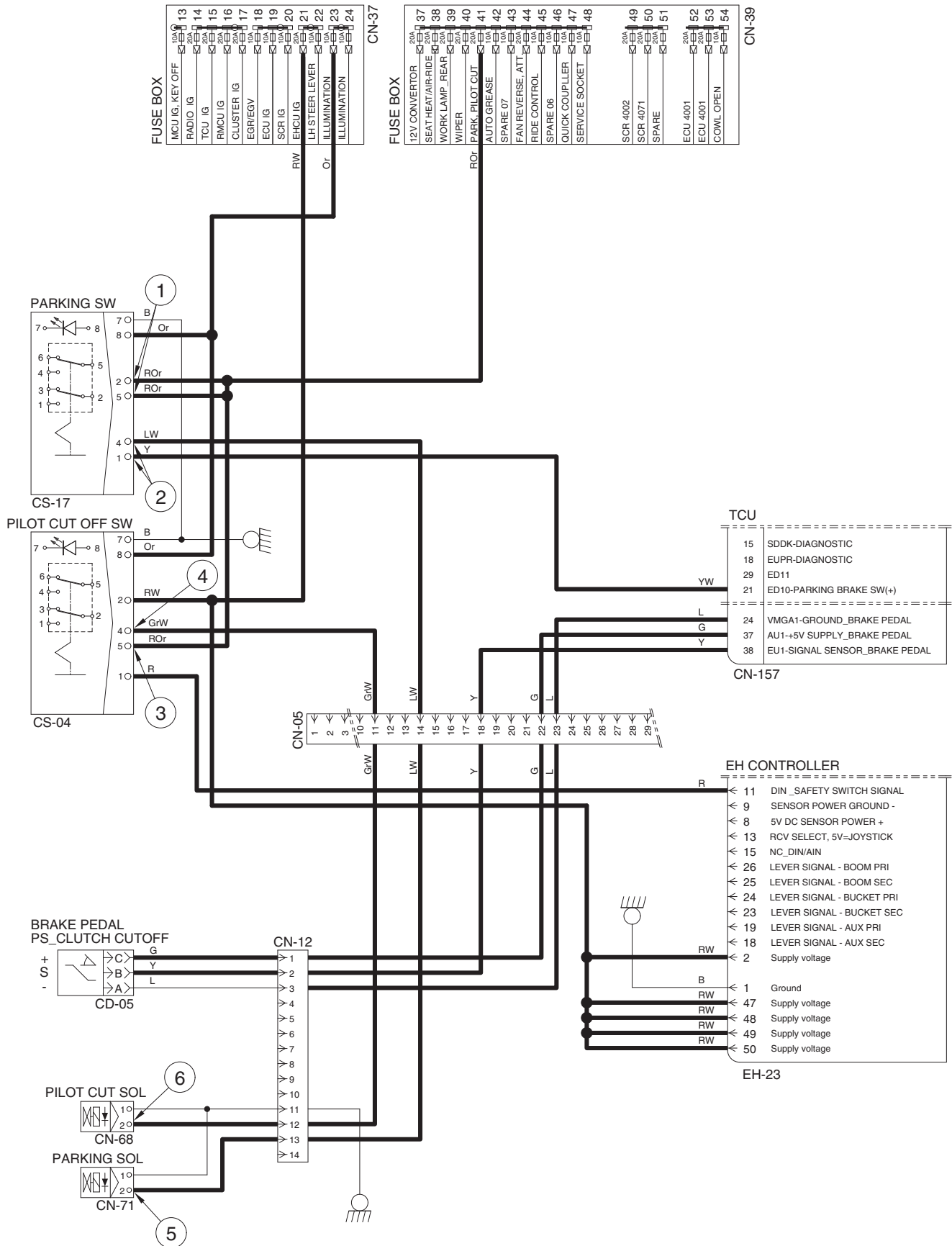
Fuse box [CN-39 (41)] → Pilot cut off switch OFF → Pilot cut off solenoid [CN-68] OFF  
 → Pilot cut off applied

### 2) CHECK POINT

Engine	Key switch	Check point	Voltage
Running	ON	① - GND (parking switch input) ② - GND (parking switch output) ③ - GND (pilot cut off switch input) ④ - GND (pilot cut off switch output) ⑤ - GND (parking solenoid) ⑥ - GND (pilot cut off solenoid)	20~25V

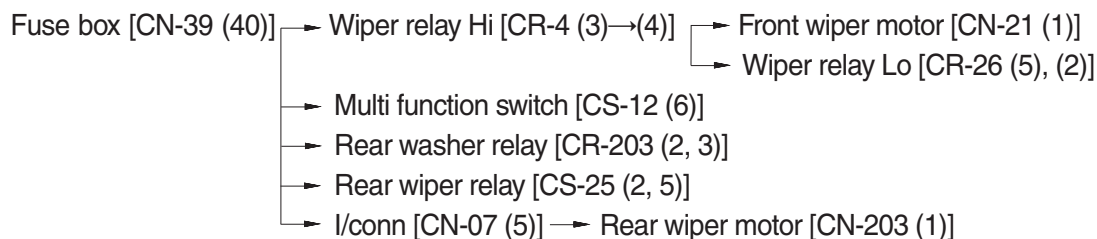
※ GND : Ground

# ELECTRIC PARKING, PILOT CUT OFF CIRCUIT

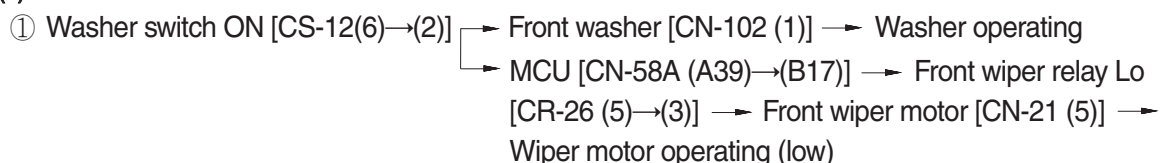


## 7. WIPER AND WASHER CIRCUIT

### 1) OPERATING FLOW

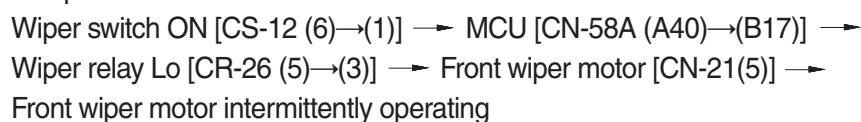


#### (1) Front washer switch ON

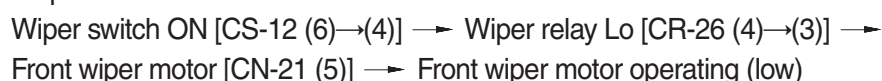


#### (2) Front wiper switch ON

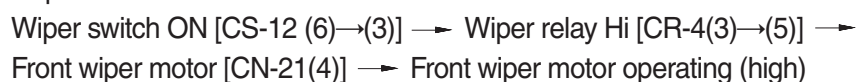
##### ① INT position



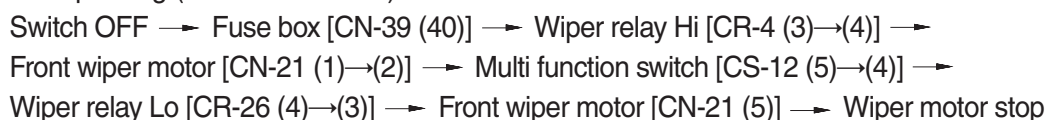
##### ② Lo position



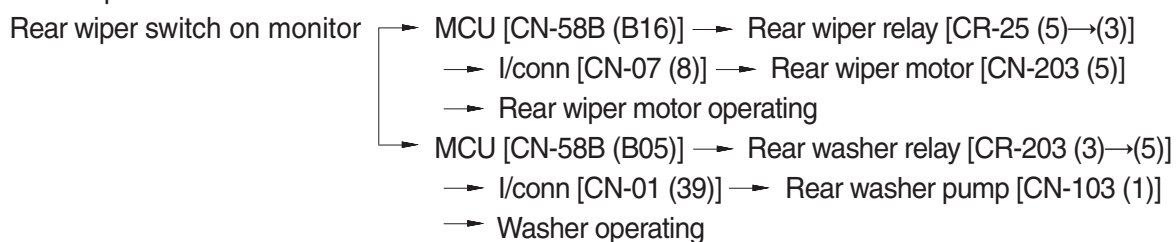
##### ③ Hi position



#### (3) Auto-parking (when switch OFF)



#### (4) Rear wiper and washer switch

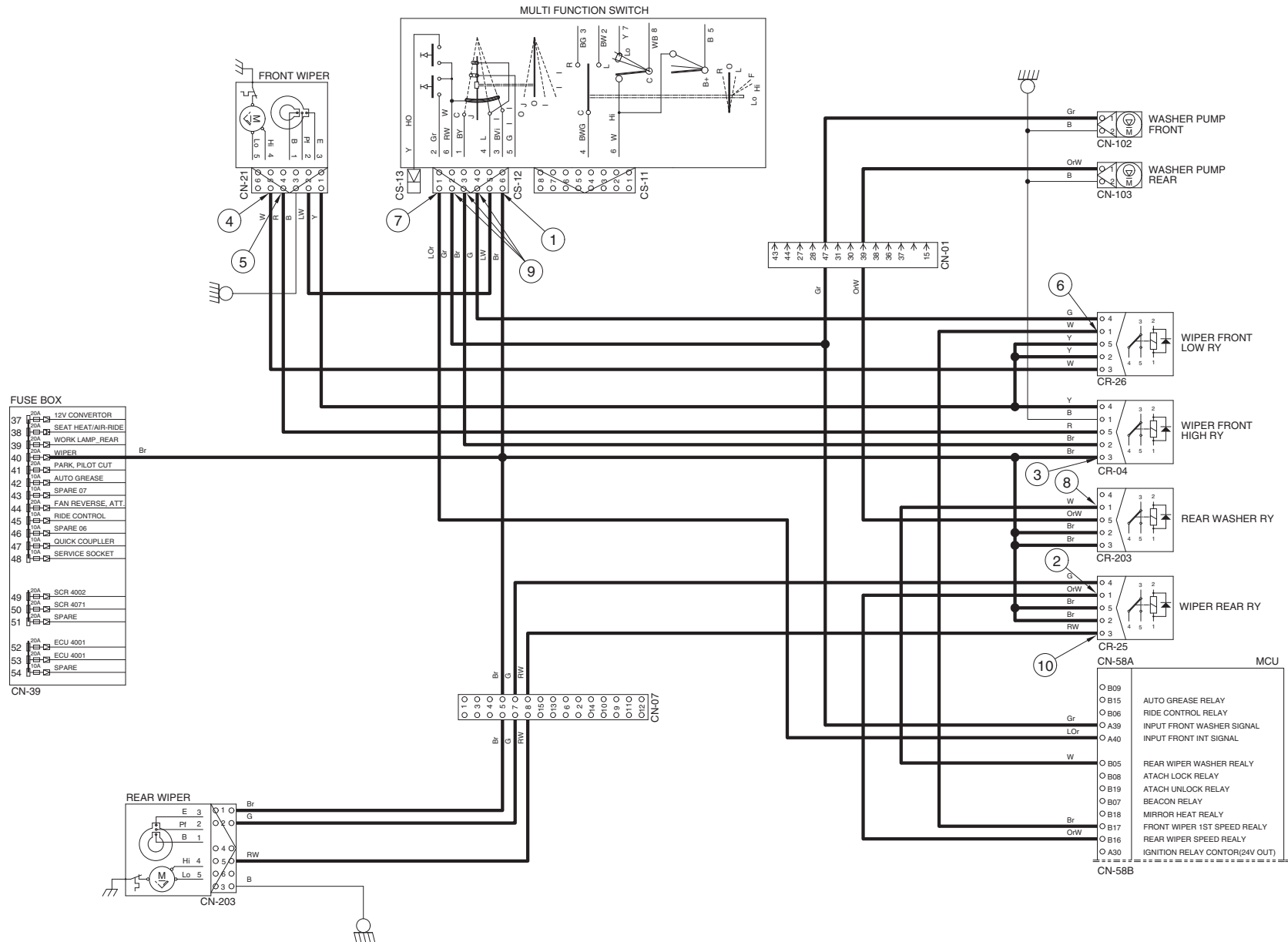


### 2) CHECK POINT

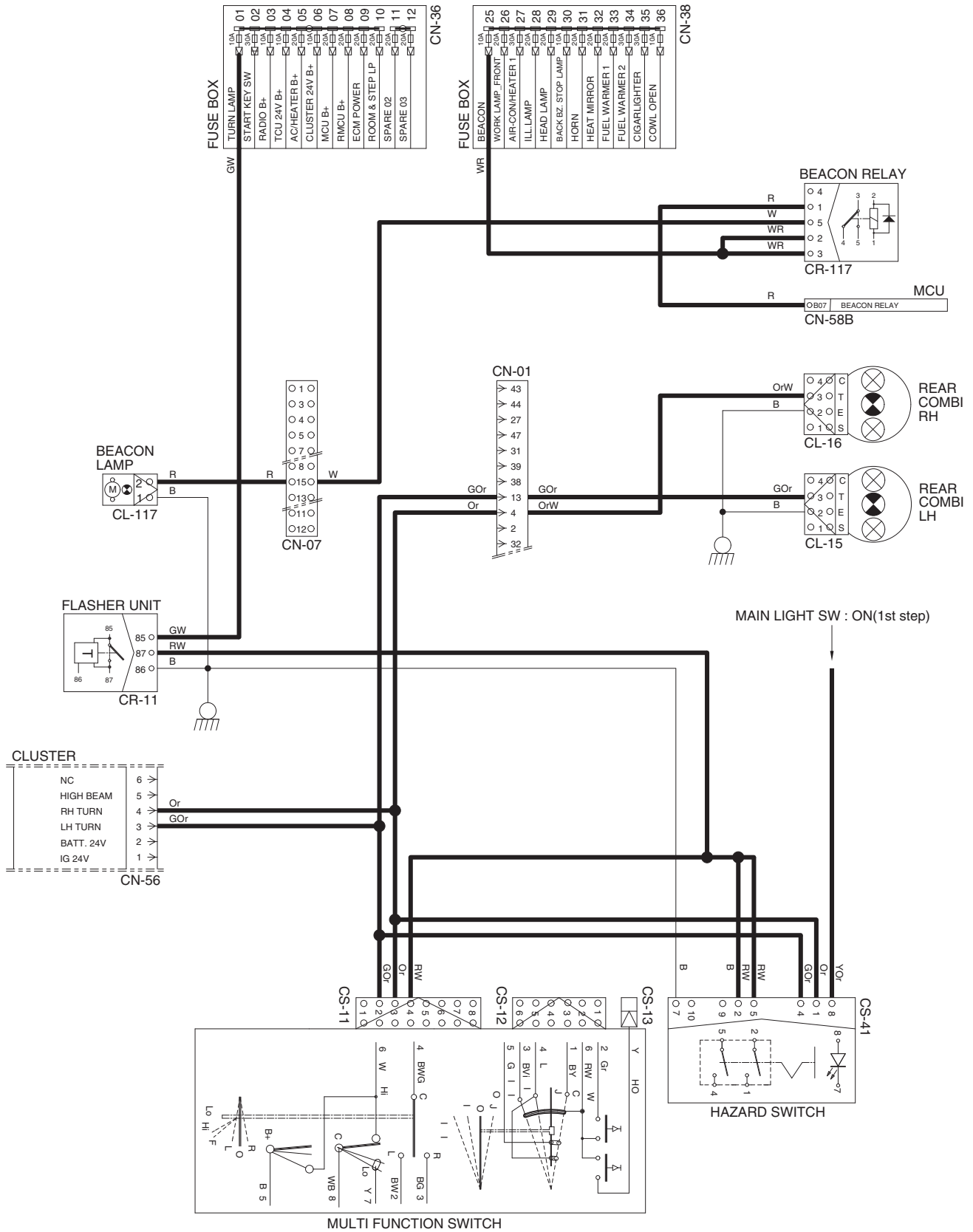
Condition	Check point	
Engine : Stop Key switch : ON Voltage : 20~25V	① - GND (front wiper switch power input)	⑥ - GND (wiper relay power input)
	② - GND (rear wiper relay power input)	⑦ - GND (front washer power output)
	③ - GND (wiper relay power input)	⑧ - GND (rear washer power output)
	④ - GND (front wiper motor Lo power input)	⑨ - GND (front wiper motor power output)
	⑤ - GND (front wiper motor High power input)	⑩ - GND (rear wiper motor power output)

※ GND : Ground

## WIPER AND WASHER CIRCUIT



# HAZARD, TURN AND ROTARY CIRCUIT



770F7EL11

## GROUP 3 MONITORING SYSTEM

### 1. CLUSTER

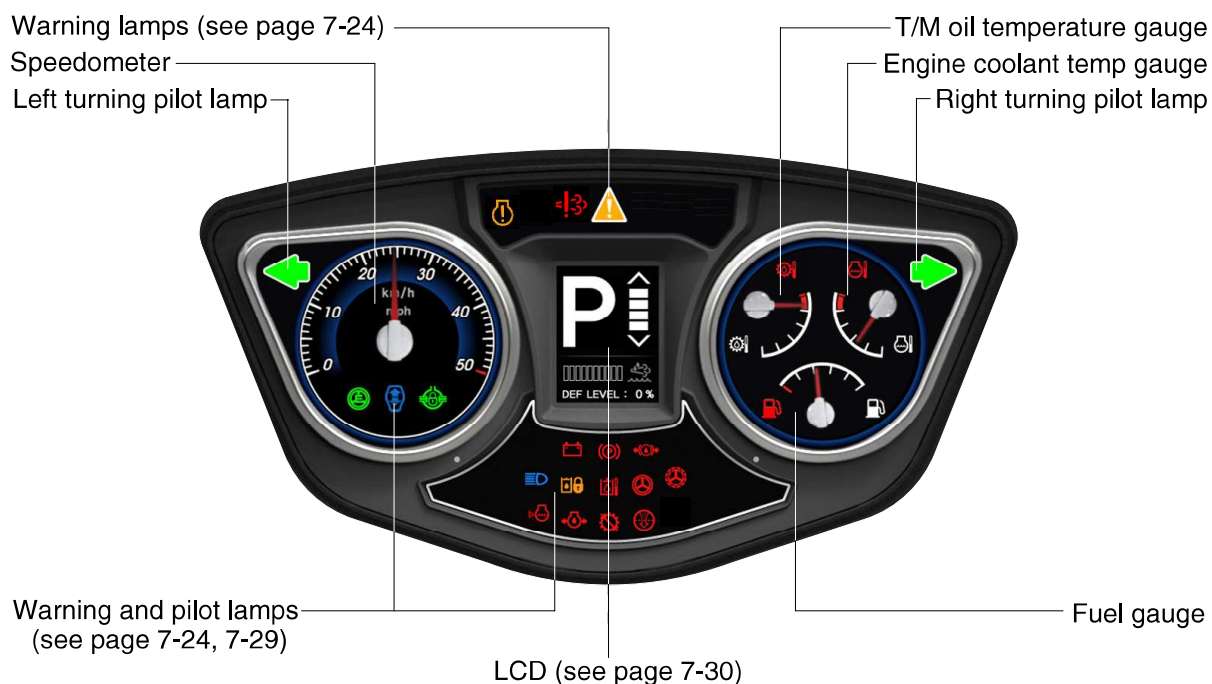
#### 1) STRUCTURE

The cluster consists of gauges, lamps and LCD as shown below, to warn the operator in case of abnormal machine operation or conditions for the appropriate operation and inspection.

- Gauges : Indicate operating status of the machine.
- Warning lamps : Indicate abnormality of the machine.
- Pilot lamps : Indicate operating status of the machine.
- LCD : Indicates selected the driving speed and direction.

※ The cluster installed on this machine does not entirely guarantee the condition of the machine. Daily inspection should be performed according to chapter 6, MAINTENANCE.

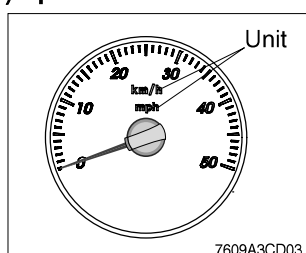
※ When the cluster provides a warning immediately check the problem, and perform the required action.



770F7EL25

### 2) GAUGE

#### (1) Speedometer

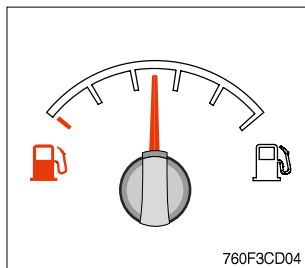



① The speedometer displays the speed of machine in mph and km/h.

※ The unit (km/h or mph) can be set by the display set up menu of the monitor and selected unit is displayed.

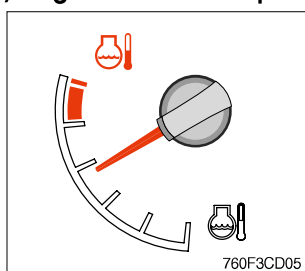
Refer to page 7-51.


## (2) Fuel gauge



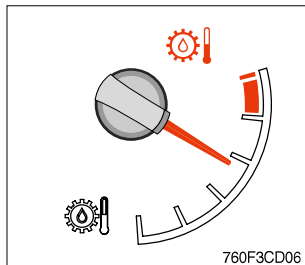
- ① This gauge indicates the amount of fuel in the fuel tank.
- ② Fill the fuel when the indicator moves red range or  lamp blinks in red, refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.
- ※ If the gauge indicates red range even though the machine is on the normal condition, check the electric device as that can be caused by the poor connection of electricity or sensor.


## (3) Engine coolant temperature gauge



- ① This gauge indicates the temperature of coolant.
  - White range : 40~113°C (104~235°F)
  - Red range : Above 113°C (235°F)
- ② If the indicator is in the red range or  lamp blinks in red, turn OFF the engine and check the radiator and engine.
- ※ If the gauge indicates red range even though the machine is on the normal condition, check the electric device as that can be caused by the poor connection of electricity or sensor.

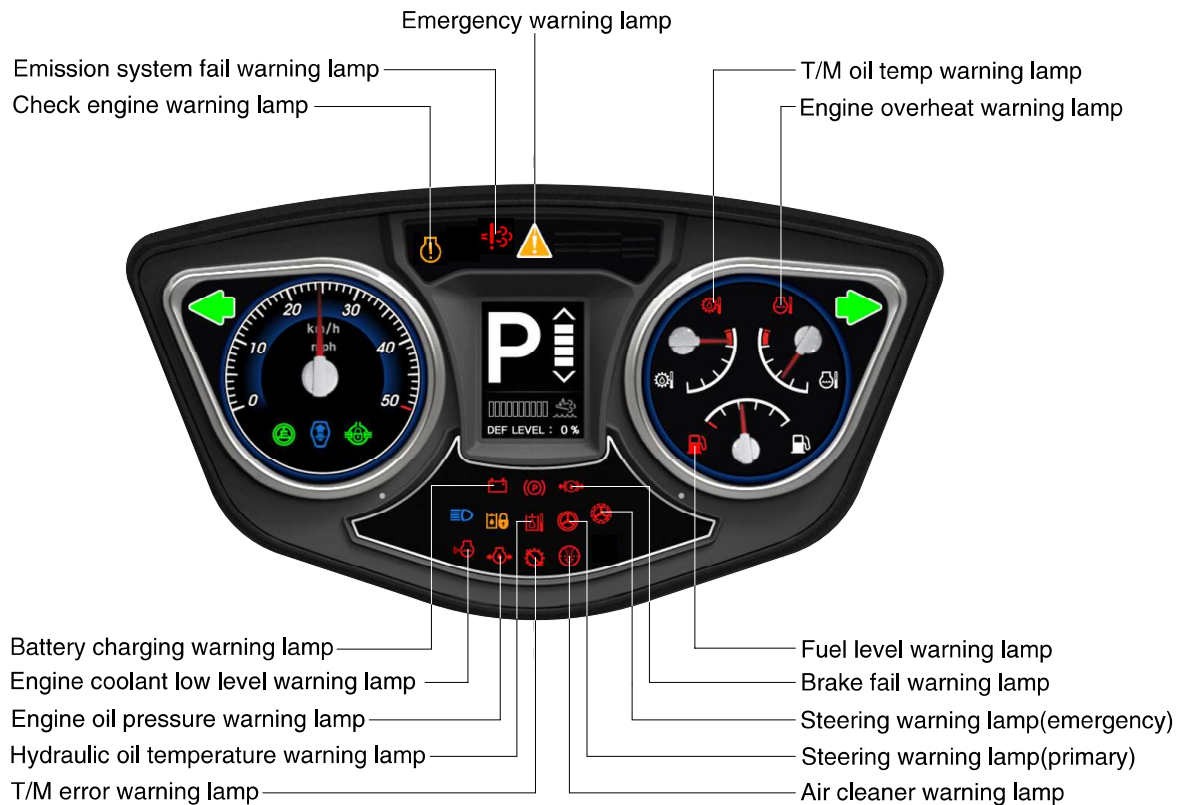
## (4) Transmission oil temperature gauge



- ① This gauge indicates the temperature of transmission oil.
  - White range : 40~107°C (104~225°F)
  - Red range : Above 107°C (225°F)
- ② If the indicator is in the red range or  lamp blinks in red, it means the transmission is overheated. Be careful that the indicator does not move into the red range.
- ※ If the gauge indicates red range even though the machine is on the normal condition, check the electric device as that can be caused by the poor connection of electricity or sensor.

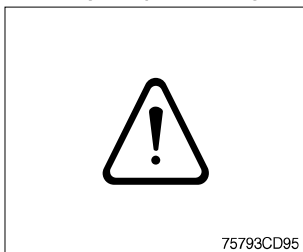


### 3) WARNING LAMPS



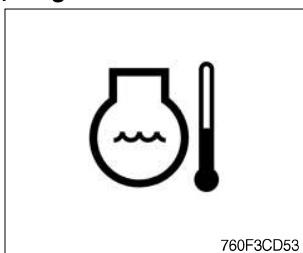
770F3CD09

#### (1) Emergency warning lamp



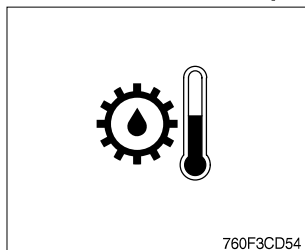
- ① This lamp blinks when each of the below warnings is happened.
  - Warning lamps light ON
  - MCU input voltage abnormal
  - Monitor communication data error
  - Engine ECM and TCU communication data error
- ② When this warning lamp blinks, machine must be checked and service immediately.

#### (2) Engine overheat warning lamp



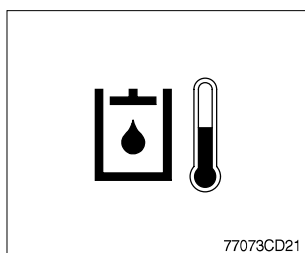
- ① This lamp is turned ON when the temperature of coolant is over the normal temperature (113°C, 235°F).
- ② Check the cooling system when the lamp is ON.

### (3) Transmission oil temperature warning lamp



- ① This lamp is turned ON when the temperature of transmission oil is over the normal temperature (107°C, 225°F).
- ② When this lamp lights up during operation, stop the engine and check the machine.

### (4) Hydraulic oil temperature warning lamp



- ① This warning lamp operates and the buzzer sounds when the temperature of hydraulic oil is over 106°C (223°F).
- ② Check the hydraulic oil level when the lamp is turned ON and the buzzer sounds.
- ③ Check for debris between oil cooler and radiator.

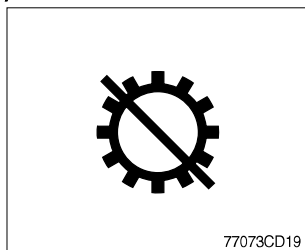
※ If you want to stop buzzer sound, just touch the  icon.

### (5) Fuel level warning lamp



- ① This warning lamp lights ON when the fuel level is low. Refuel the machine as soon as possible.

### (6) Transmission error warning lamp

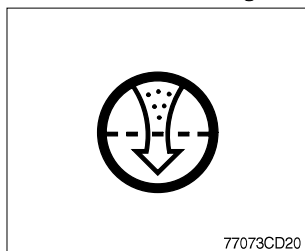


- ① This lamp lights ON and the LCD display show the error codes when an error occurs in the transmission.
- ② Immediately pull the machine to a convenient stop. Stop the engine. Investigate the cause.

※ Consult a HYUNDAI dealer to investigate the cause.

※ Do not operate until the cause has been corrected.

### (7) Air cleaner warning lamp



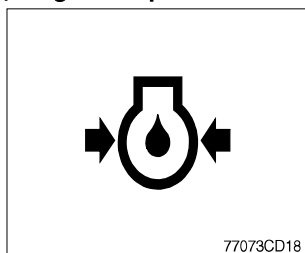
- ① This lamp lights ON and the buzzer sounds when the filter of air cleaner is clogged.
- ② When the air cleaner warning lamp is ON and the buzzer sounds, check and clean the primary element.


※ If you want to stop buzzer sound, just touch the  icon.

※ The primary element should be replaced if the warning lamp is ON after installation of a clean primary element.

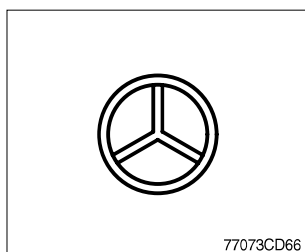
※ Replace the primary element after 4 times cleanings.

#### (8) Engine oil pressure warning lamp




- ① This lamp is comes ON and the buzzer sounds after starting the engine because of the low engine oil pressure.
- ② If the lamp comes ON and the buzzer sounds during engine operation, shut OFF engine immediately. Check engine oil level.
- ※ If you want to stop buzzer sound, just touch the  icon.

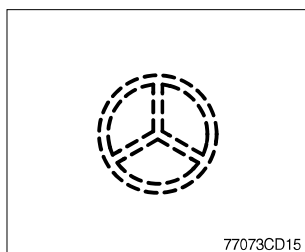
#### (9) Steering warning lamp



##### ① Primary

This lamp indicates that the primary steering has failed. When the indicator comes ON and the action alarm sounds, steer the machine immediately to a convenient location and stop the machine. Stop the engine and investigate the cause.

- ※ If you want to stop buzzer sound, just touch the  icon.
- ※ Do not operate the machine until the cause has been corrected.

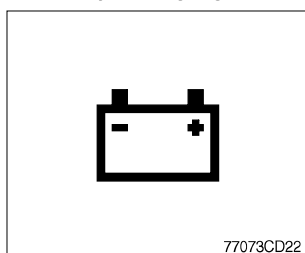



##### ② Emergency

This lamp indicates the emergency steering system is active.

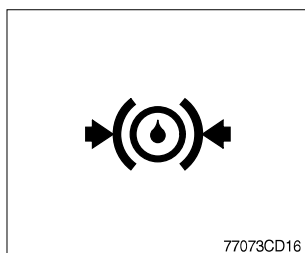
- ※ Immediately pull the machine to a convenient stop and stop the engine.
- ※ The emergency steering system can be manually tested. Refer to page 7-63.


#### (10) Battery charging warning lamp



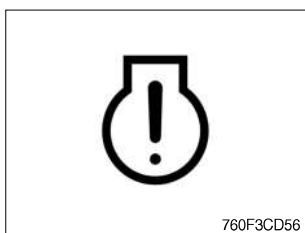
- ① This lamp is ON and the buzzer sounds when key ON, it is turned OFF after starting the engine.
- ② Check the battery charging circuit when this lamp comes ON and the buzzer sounds, during engine operation.
- ※ If you want to stop buzzer sound, just touch the  icon.

#### (11) Brake fail warning lamp



- ① The lamp lights ON and the buzzer sounds when the oil pressure of service brake drops below the normal range.
- ② When the lamp is ON and the buzzer sounds, stop the engine and check for its cause.
- ※ If you want to stop buzzer sound, just touch the  icon.
- ※ Do not operate until any problems are corrected.


## (12) Check engine warning lamp



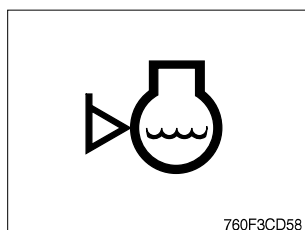
① This lamp lights ON and the buzzer sounds when the communication between MCU and engine ECM on the engine is abnormal, or if the cluster received specific fault code from engine ECM.

② Check the communication line between them.

If the communication line is OK, then check the fault codes on the monitor.

※ If you want to stop buzzer sound, just touch the  icon.

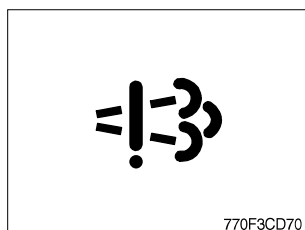
## (13) Engine coolant low level warning lamp



① This warning lamp lights ON when the level of coolant is low.

② Fill the coolant immediately when the lamp is ON.

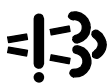
## (14) Emission system fail warning lamp



① This warning lamp lights ON if there are faults on the SCR system.

※ In the case of some faults, the torque is reduced.

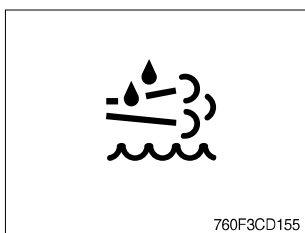
※ Please contact your Hyundai service center or local dealer.

Warning lamp		Torque reduction
	Time	
On	Fault detected	-
Blink	After 30 minutes	· Torque is reduced by 1% per minute to 70% of the highest torque.
Blink rapidly	After 4 hours	· Torque is reduced by to 0% (low idling) within 2~10 minutes.

※ Once the fault has been remedied and the engine control unit has received an indication that it is working, torque returns to the normal level.

※ If a new fault occurs within 40 hours of operation since the first fault, the warning lamp will come ON. After 30 minutes of operation, the warning lamp will blink rapidly and torque will be reduced to 0% (low idling) within 30 minutes.


#### (15) DEF/AdBlue® level warning lamp



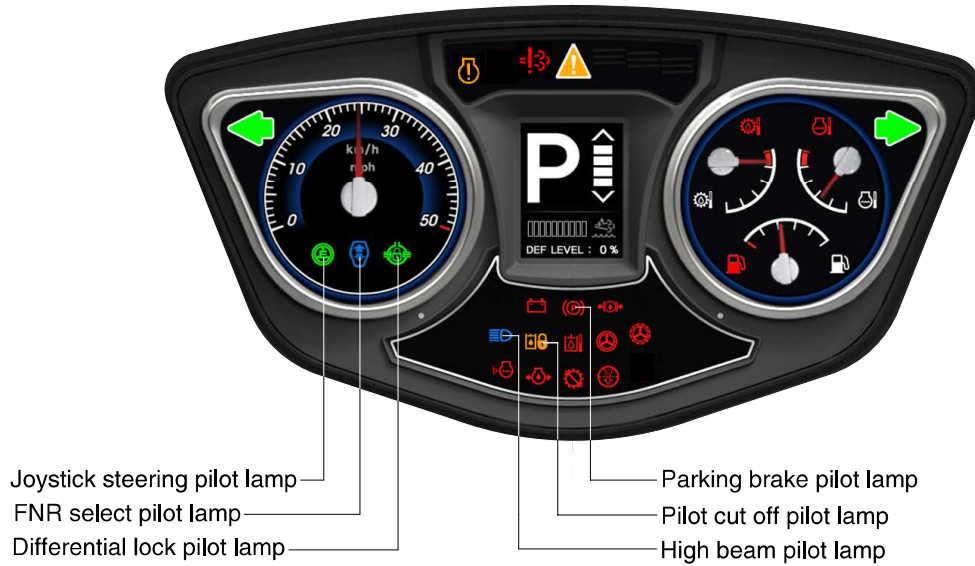
① This warning lamp indicates when ON or blinking, that the DEF/AdBlue® level is low as table below.

※ It is recommended that the DEF/AdBlue® tank be filled completely full of the DEF/AdBlue® in order to correct any fault conditions.

※ The engine resumes normal torque after DEF/AdBlue® has been filled to a level of at least 20%.

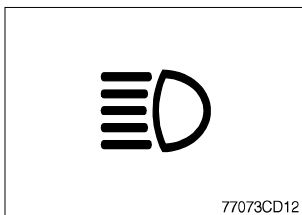
Warning lamp		Description
	DEF/AdBlue® level	
On	20%	· The DEF/AdBlue® level has fallen below the initial warning level (20%).
Blink	10%	· The DEF/AdBlue® level has fallen below the critical warning level (10%). · Torque is reduced by 1% per minute to 70% of the highest torque.
Blink rapidly	0%	· This is happened when 30 minutes elapsed with empty conditions (0%) of the DEF/AdBlue® tank. · Torque is reduced by to 0% (low idling) within 2~10 minutes.

#### 4) PILOT LAMPS



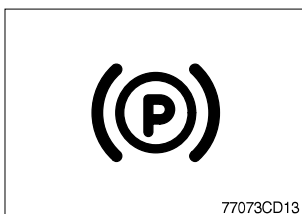
770F3CD10

##### (1) High beam pilot lamp



- ① This lamp works when the illuminating direction is upward.
- ② This lamp comes ON when the dimmer switch is operated, e.g., when passing another vehicle.

##### (2) Parking brake pilot lamp



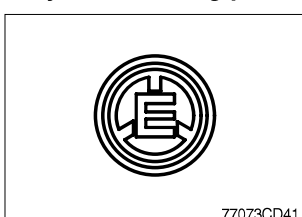
- ① When the parking brake is actuated, the lamp lights ON.
- ※ Check the lamp is OFF before driving.

##### (3) FNR select pilot lamp (option)



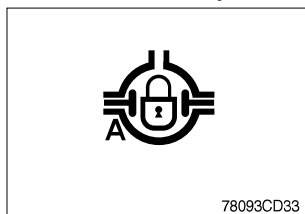
- ① The lamp comes ON when FNR select button on the optional FNR remote control lever is pressed.
- ※ Refer to page 7-65.

##### (4) Joystick steering pilot lamp (option)



- ① This lamp lights ON when joystick steering is activated. It is then possible to steer the machine and select gears from the armrest to the left of the operator's seat.
- ※ Refer to page 3-49 in operator's manual.

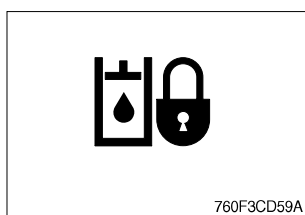
## (5) Differential lock pilot lamp (option)



① This lamp lights ON when the differential lock function is operating.

※ Refer to page 7-63.

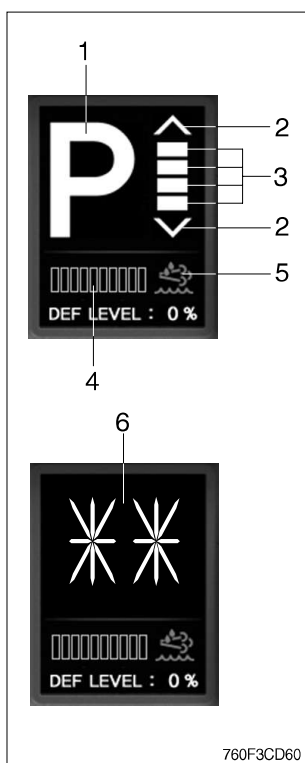
## (6) Pilot cut off pilot lamp



① This lamp lights ON when the pilot cut off switch is pressed.

※ Refer to page 7-63.

## 5) LCD



(1) The LCD can be used with the gear selector.

It indicates speed, driving direction, DEF/AdBlue® level and transmission warning.

No	Symbol	Meaning	Remark
1	△, ▽, N	Actual gear display	Forward, reverse, neutral
	1, 2, 3, 4, 5		Actual gear
	P		Parking brake mode active
2	^, v	Forward, reverse	<div> <div>^</div> <div>FWD 1</div> </div> <div> <div>▽</div> <div>REV 1</div> </div>
3	≡	Gear range display	<div> <div>≡</div> <div>FWD 5</div> </div> <div> <div>≡</div> <div>REV 5</div> </div>
4		DEF/AdBlue® level	Display the amount of liquid in the DEF/AdBlue® tank
5	⚠	DEF/AdBlue® level warning lamp	Fill the DEF/AdBlue® when the lamp ON or blinks in red. - ON : DEF/AdBlue® level 20% - Blink : DEF/AdBlue® level below 10% ※ If the lamp ON or blinks in red even though the machine is on the normal condition, check the electric device as that can be caused by the poor connection of electricity or sensor.
6	LF, LR	Limp home gear	-
	**	Oil temperature too low, no gear available	Warm up engine/transmission
	WS	Warning sump temperature	Alternate between WS and actual gear / direction while driving, in neutral only displayed WS if no fault is detected ※ Cool down transmission
	WT	Warning torque converter temperature	Alternate between WS and actual gear / direction while driving, in neutral only displayed WS if no fault is detected ※ Cool down transmission

## 2. MONITOR (7 inch touch screen)

- The monitor is adjustable.
- Vertical : 30°
- Horizontal : 15°



770F3CD20-1

### 1) MAIN DISPLAY

- ※ You can select or set the menu by the switches or touch screen.
- ※ Please refer to switch, page 7-57 for selection and change of menu and input value.
- ※ Display type can be changed by operator. See page 7-52 for details.



760F3CD11-1

- |                 |                                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|---------------|
| 1 Clock         | 6 Machine monitoring            | 11 Engine rpm |
| 2 Buzzer        | 7 Fuel rate                     | 12 Quick menu |
| 3 Wiper speed   | 8 Engine mode/Operation history | 13 10 lamps   |
| 4 Camera screen | 9 Transmission mode             |               |
| 5 Menu          | 10 ECO gauge                    |               |



## (1) Menu bar



760F3CD07-1

※ In main display, you can move to right side menu by touching each icon.

### ① Clock setting

Set the time (hour, minute and AM or PM)

### ② Wiper speed

Set the wiper speed (slow, normal, fast and very fast)

### ③ Menu

Move to main menu.

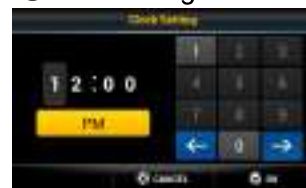
### ④ Buzzer stop

If you want to stop buzzer sound, just touch the



icon.

### ① Clock setting



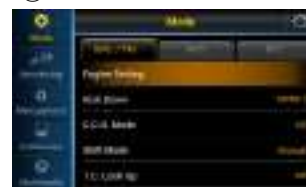
760F3CD07A-1

### ② Wiper speed



760F3CD07B-1

### ③ Menu



760F3CD07C-1

### ④ Buzzer stop



760F3CD07E-1

## (2) Change display information



760F3CD08-1

※ In main display, you can check the data and setup what you want by touching each window area or icon.

### ① Machine monitoring

To display the item in main display, select two items of them.

#### ※ Priority in the machine monitoring display

The priority of the weighing system is the highest.

If the weighing system is selected, the other items are not available.

To display the other items, the weighing system should not be selected.

※ **Weighing system : see page 7-40.**

### ① Machine monitoring



760F3CD08A-1

## ② Fuel rate

- Set average fuel rate or a days fuel used on main display screen.
- Refer to page 7-47.

## ② Fuel rate



760F3CD08B-1

## ③ Engine mode and operation history

- Set the engine mode (A).
- Refer to page 7-37.
- Set Hour meter / ODO meter (B).
- Refer to page 7-46.

## ③ Engine mode



A

760F3CD08D-1



B

760F3CD08K-1

## ④ Transmission mode

- Set the clutch cut off (A), shift (B) and torque converter lock up mode (C).
- Refer to page 7-38.

## ④ Transmission mode



A

760F3CD08C-1



B

760F3CD08L-1




C

760F3CD08M-1

## ⑤ Quick menu



760F3CD08F-1

※ Move the quick menu screen by touching  .

### ① User switching

- When multiple users share a machine, it allows users to switch user settings of machine.
- User can apply or save the setting of monitor easily.

### ② Active fault

- Display the fault code of MCU/ECU/TCU/EHCU.
- Refer to page 7-46.

### ③ Maintenance

- Elapsed time, change or replace cycle can be changed.
- Refer to page 7-49.

### ④ Help

- Read the monitor manual as a PDF file on the monitor.

### ※ Smart terminal

- The menu features a smartphone and operates the miracast.

### ① User switching



760F3CD08H-1

### ② Active fault



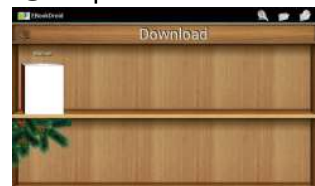
760F3CD16-1

### ③ Maintenance




760F3CD08J-1

### ④ Help



760F3CD08K

### ⑤ Virtual keypad

To display the virtual keypad, drag the button (  ) to top of the screen.

※ Refer to the page 7-57 for details.



760F3CD68A-1



### Virtual keypad



760F3CD68B-1

### (3) Fault and maintenance warning



- ① If you touch the warning sign (red icon), move to the quick menu.
- ② You can check the fault message and move the maintenance screen by touching relevant area.



### (4) Machine monitoring warning

- ① Warning sign (red icon) will be shown when the temperature of hydraulic oil, cooling water, transmission oil or battery voltage is not normal state.
- ② Case of warning sign

Icon	Description
	Above 106°C of hydraulic oil temperature
	Above 113°C of cooling water temperature
	Above 107°C of transmission oil temperature
	Below 24.5 voltage of battery (for 3 minutes)



### (5) Communication error

- ① MCU could not communicate with monitor over 10 seconds, error message will be show on the screen.








### (6) Eco gauge

- ① This gauge indicates the fuel consumption rate and machine load status. So that operators can be careful with fuel economy.
- ② The fuel consumption rate or machine load is high, the segment is increased.
- ③ The color of Eco gauge indicates operation status.
  - White : Idle operation
  - Green : Economy operation
  - Yellow : Non-economy operation at a medium level.
  - Red : Non-economy operation at a high level.



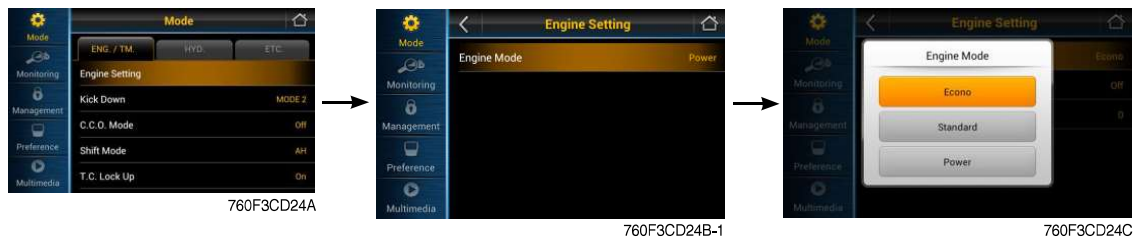
## 2) MAIN AND SUB MENU

### (1) Structure

No	Main menu	Sub menu	Description
1	<p>Mode</p>  <p>760F3CD25A</p>	<p>Engine setting</p> <p>Kick down</p> <p>C.C.O mode</p> <p>Shift mode</p> <p>T.C. lock up</p> <p>Work load</p> <p>Boom/bucket detent mode</p> <p>Bucket priority</p> <p>Auxiliary attach max flow level</p> <p>Soft end stop</p> <p>Speedometer frequency setting</p> <p>Cooling fan reverse mode</p> <p>Wiper level setting</p> <p>Calibration</p> <p>Engine auto shutdown</p>	<p>Engine mode</p> <p>Mode 1 (down/up), Mode 2 (down only)</p> <p>Clutch cut off mode ON/OFF</p> <p>Transmission shift mode (manual, AL, AN, AH)</p> <p>Torque converter lock up ON/OFF</p> <p>Weighing system, Weighing display, Error detection</p> <p>Boom/bucket detent ON/OFF, Save position</p> <p>Bucket priority ON/OFF</p> <p>Oil flow level setting</p> <p>Boom up/down, Bucket in/dump ON/OFF</p> <p>Speedometer setting</p> <p>Off, Manual, Automatic</p> <p>Slow, Normal, Fast, Very fast</p> <p>Boom/bucket angle, Boom pressure, Brake pedal sensor, AEB</p> <p>Once, Always, Disable, ESL system setting</p>
2	<p>Monitoring</p>  <p>760F3CD25B</p>	<p>Machine monitoring</p> <p>Operation history</p> <p>Fault history</p> <p>Fuel consumption history</p> <p>Machine information</p>	<p>Hyd, Coolant and T/M oil temp, Battery voltage</p> <p>Hour meter, ODO meter</p> <p>Active/Logged fault (MCU, ECU, TCU, EHCUC)</p> <p>General record, Hourly record, Daily record, Mode record</p> <p>TCU, ECU, MCU, RMCUC, EHCUC, Monitor, Cluster</p>
3	<p>Management</p>  <p>760F3CD25C</p>	<p>Machine security</p> <p>Maintenance</p> <p>Service menu</p> <p>Change A/S phone number</p> <p>Software update</p>	<p>ESL system setting, Change password, Smart key</p> <p>Elapsed time, Cycle, Maintenance history</p> <p>Sensor monitoring, Speed limit setting, Weighing system compensation, EHCUC I/O information</p> <p>Check and change of contact information</p> <p>Update file in USB memory</p>
4	<p>Preference</p>  <p>760F3CD25D</p>	<p>Brightness setting</p> <p>Clock setting</p> <p>Unit setting</p> <p>Display style/Language</p> <p>Sound output setting</p> <p>Camera setting</p>	<p>Manual, Automatic</p> <p>Clock setting</p> <p>Temp (°F/°C), Speed (km/h, mph), Weight (ton, lb), Pressure (bar, Mpa, kgf/m², psi)</p> <p>Type A, Type B, 13 multiple language</p> <p>Internal speaker, External speaker (Aux)</p> <p>Active camera, Display order, Reverse mode</p>
5	<p>Multimedia</p>  <p>760F3CD25E</p>	Multimedia	Play video and audio files in USB.

## (2) Mode

### ① Engine setting mode



#### · Engine mode

The operator can adjust the machine's performance.

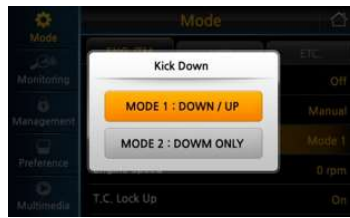
- Econo : Maximum fuel efficiency for general loading.
- Standard : General digging and loading operation.
- Power : Maximum power output for hard digging operation or hill climb.



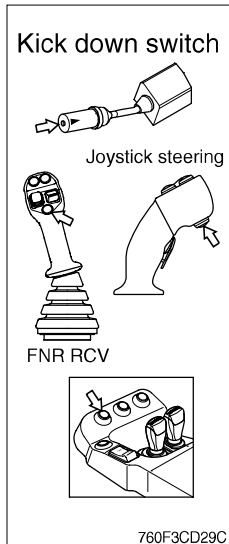
## ② Kick down mode



760F3CD29A



760F3CD29B



760F3CD29C

- **Manual mode** (shift mode : manual)  
It is effective 2nd speed to 1st speed only and recover to 2nd speed quickly when push the switch one more time.
- **Automatic mode** (shift mode : AL, AN, AH)
  - **Mode 1** (down/up)  
It shifts down quickly from current gear to one step lower speed by pushing the switch and recover to current speed quickly when push the switch one more time.
  - **Mode 2** (down only)  
It shifts down from current gear to one step lower speed when push the switch every time.  
The kick down function is released in only 1st speed.
- ※ **The normal autoshift function continues after the kick down switch is released.**

## ③ I.C.C.O. (Intelligent Clutch Cut Off) mode



9803CD26A

- **OFF** : The clutch cut off function is disable.
- **ON (I.C.C.O)** : It will cut off the clutch when brake pedal operation.
- ※ The clutch cut off function is automatically adjusted depending on slope angle or machine load,  
And inching fuction becomes possible by using the brake pedal.

#### ④ Shift mode



- Four modes are available for operator's preference and job condition.
  - Manual : Machine is operated by selected gear on lever.
  - AL (Auto Light) : Automatic shifting point is fast for long-distance transportation and fuel efficiency.
  - AN (Auto Normal) : Automatic shifting point is normal without automatic kick-down to 1st gear for general digging and loading operation.
  - AH (Auto Heavy) : Automatic shifting point is normal with automatic kick-down to 1st gear for more powerful operation.

#### ⑤ Torque converter (T.C.) lock up mode (5-speed transmission)



- If you select ON, the lock-up clutch on the torque converter will automatically activate according to load.
- Lock-up clutch function (option)**  
To prevent power loss in the torque converter, the pump rotor and turbine rotor on the torque converter lock together through a direct lock-up clutch.



## ⑥ Work load mode



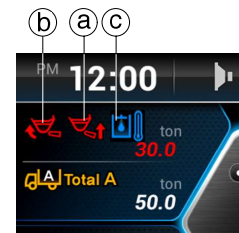
760F3CD33A



760F3CD33B-1

- Weighing system : Set the workload measurements.
- Weighing display : Set the display on main display screen.
- Initialization : Workload initialization.
- Error detection : Set error detection ON/OFF.
  - OFF : Errors are not displayed.
  - ON : ①, ② and ③ are displayed on main display screen.
    - ① The boom lift was performed too fast.
    - ② The bucket was not in the fully tilted back position while bucket was in the weigh range.
    - ③ The hydraulic temperature is low (below 40 °C).
- Boom pressure calibration : See the page 7-44 for details.

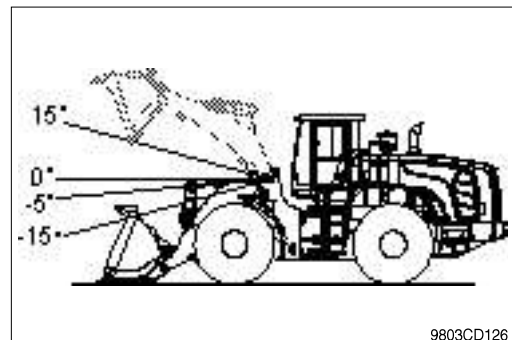
※ Refer to page 7-60 for details.



760F3CD33CK

### ※ Weighing system

- The weight indication in bucket is calculated by measuring boom position and boom pressure.
- ① The weight is '0.0 ton' when the boom is placed at below -15°.
- ② The weight is indicated when the boom is placed at the range (-5°→15°).
- ③ The weight is calculated when the boom is placed at above -5° and boom is lowered below -15° after dumping operation.



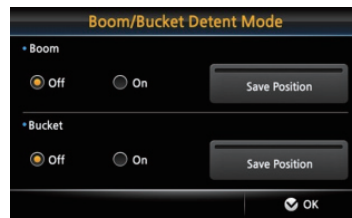
9803CD126

In order to recheck weight, go to the ② after changing boom position (below -15°).

- Dump operation : It is checked by bucket cylinder's stroke change (below 250 mm).

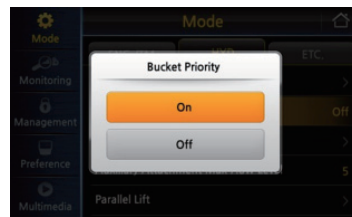
※ The temperature for the hydraulic oil must be raised to at least 40 °C (104 °F) before operation.

## ⑦ Boom/bucket detent mode



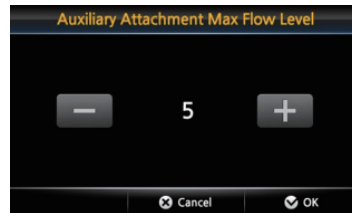
- OFF : Detent functions are not operated.
- ON : Boom or bucket detent functions are operated.
- Save position : Refer to page 4-22 in operator's manual.

## ⑧ Bucket priority mode (option)



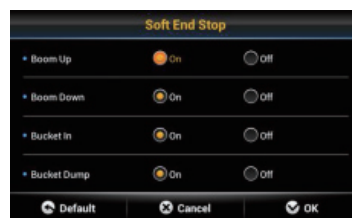
- Bucket priority function is to be more convenient for operator to load materials. Bucket-in (roll back) operation takes priority over the boom-up (raise) operation in case of using both operations at the same time and therefore boom (raise) operation is stopped and only bucket (roll back) is operated.
- Set the bucket priority function ON/OFF.

## ⑨ Auxiliary attachment max flow level mode (option)



- If the machine is equipped with auxiliary attachment, auxiliary attachment flow can be easily adjusted and controlled.
- Set the oil flow level from 0 to 15 level by using +/- button.



## ⑩ Soft end stop mode (option)



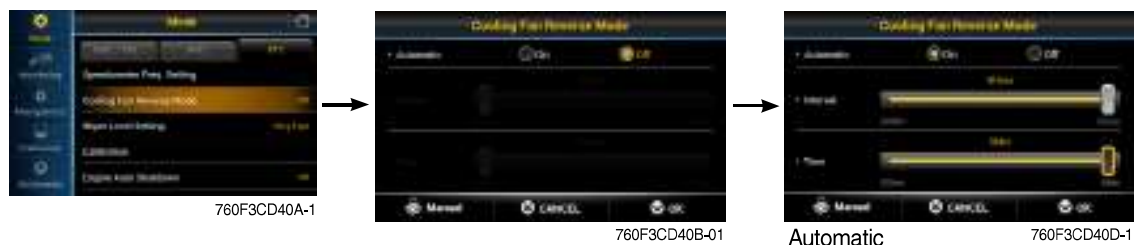
- This function gives shock free operation by reducing the speed of attachment near the end stroke.
- Set the soft end stop function ON/OFF.

### ⑪ Speedometer frequency setting mode



- Press speedometer setting bar (or  for 3 seconds.
- ※ **Only for the service person. Do not adjust arbitrary.**
- ※ **Using button**
  - To change the pulse value, press ◀ or ▶.
  - To change the position, press .

### ⑫ Cooling fan reverse mode



- **Manual** : Rotate the fan with reverse direction while pressing the button "Excute".
- **Automatic** : Rotate the fan with reverse direction by preset cycle.
  - Interval : 30 min ~ 5 hrs
  - Time : 30 sec ~ 5 min
- ※ **Default : Interval (60 min), time (120 sec)**



### ⑬ Wiper level setting mode



- Setting wiper speed (slow, normal, fast and very fast).

## ⑭ Calibration



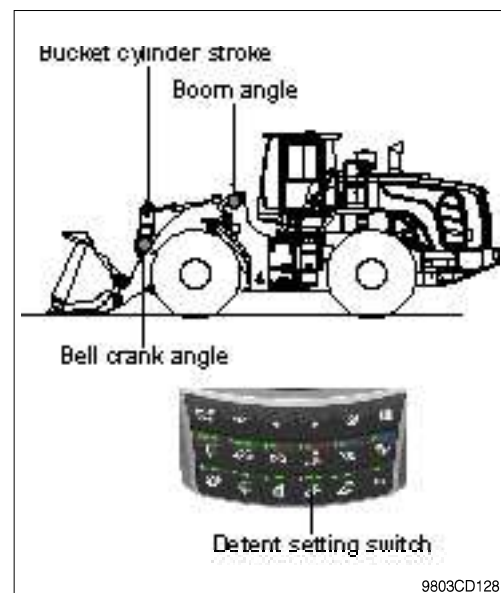
- Press NEXT button after following the instruction at each step.
- If correction is right, NEXT button will be activated, then go to next stage.
- After following each step correctly, the message "Calibration is done" will be shown. Press complete button, then process be ended.

### ※ Using switch






- Using  instead of NEXT, complete button.

### · Boom / Bucket angle calibration

- MCU get sensing signal from boom angle and bell crank angle and calculate bucket cylinder stroke and boom link position angle from ground real time basis.
- Boom angle position and bucket cylinder stroke is set by detent setting switch on monitor.
- Individual setting position is done by lever (detent, release operation).
- Angle sensor calibration is basically carried out before delivery of the machine.  
When angle sensor is replaced or actual value is different compared to setting value, this function can be done.

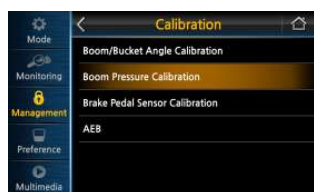


- The calibration must be carried out as follows :

- ① Lower the boom at maximum low position and press NEXT button or  (bucket must be max tilting position).
- ② Raise boom at maximum high position and press NEXT button (or ).
- ③ Position boom at  $-5^{\circ}$  and press NEXT button (or ).
- ④ Retract bucket cylinder length (to minimum position) at  $-5^{\circ}$  boom position and press NEXT button (or ).
- ⑤ Extend bucket cylinder length (to maximum position) at  $-5^{\circ}$  boom position and press NEXT button (or ).
- ⑥ In case above steps are carried normally, "Calibration is done" message is shown. Then angle sensor calibration is finished.

※ **Boom down / boom up / bucket position setting** : Refer to page 4-22 in operator's manual.

## · Boom pressure calibration



760F3CD70A



Display A


760F3CD70B-1

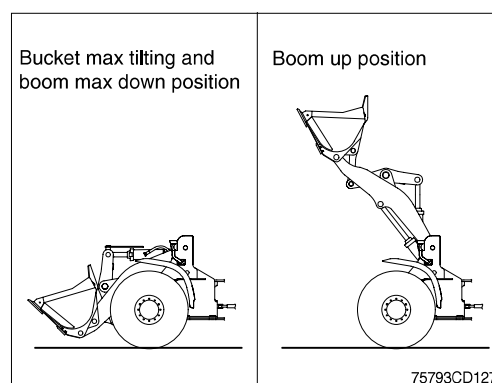
- Press START button after following the instruction.
- After a few minutes, "Calibration fail" or "Calibration success" message will be shown. Press complete button then process be ended.

### ※ Using button

- Using  instead of NEXT, complete button.

## · Boom pressure calibration

- It is used when bucket weight is changed or measured weight is inaccurate.
- The calibration must be carried out as follows :
  - ① Increase hydraulic temperature (about 40~60°C).
  - ② Select "Boom-pressure".
  - ③ Roll-in the bucket at maximum range and lower the boom at minimum height.
  - ④ Press START button.
  - ⑤ Raise boom to maximum position. Boom up must be finished before stepping advance in "display A".
  - ⑥ If it show "Calibration success" message in a moment, press complete button (or ).



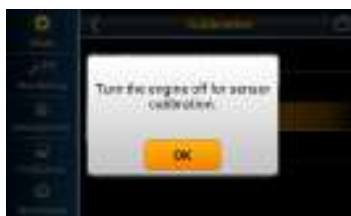
75793CD127

- ※ **Raise hydraulic temperature enough when checking work load / boom pressure sensor calibration (recommendation : about 40 ~ 60°C).**
- ※ **Check if pressure sensor or angle sensor is in normal condition for accurate work load algorism or pressure sensor calibration [pressure sensors at boom cylinder head area and rod area, boom angle sensor (CD-80), bell crank angle sensor (CD-81)].**
- ※ **Sensor error message during pressure sensor calibration : sensor need to be checked.**



## · Brake pedal sensor calibration



760F3CD71A






760F3CD71B-1

- Turn the engine OFF and turn the starting switch ON position.
- Press OK button, then calibration will be started.
- When display "IP  " on main display, press slowly the brake pedal completely.
- Release the brake pedal when display "IP  " on main display.
- For cancel, press MENU/HOME switch.

- ※ When the brake pedal or sensor is replaced, **brake pedal sensor calibration must be performed.**

## · AEB



- AEB mode controls the disk clearance of the transmission, automatically.
- To start AEB setting, press AEB bar (or ) for 3 seconds.
- To cancel AEB setting, press .
- If "OK" in actual gear window, press  to complete AEB setting.
- **Display during AEB mode**

Symbol	Meaning
ST	Start AEB
K1~K4, KV, KR	Calibrating clutch K1~K4, KV or KR respectively
OK*	Calibration for all clutches finished
Spanner and Kx*	Kx couldn't be calibrated, AEB finished
△E	Engine speed too low - Raise engine speed
▽E	Engine speed too high - Lower engine speed
△T	Transmission oil temperature too low - Heat up transmission
▽T	Transmission oil temperature too high - Cool down transmission
FO*	Output speed not zero
FN*	Shift lever not in neutral position
FP*	Parking brake not applied

\* : Transmission stays in neutral, you have to restart the TCU (starting switch off/on).

## ⑮ Engine auto shutdown mode



- The engine auto shutdown function can be activated or cancelled.
- Engine runs for the setting time (2~40 minutes) and then shuts down.



### (3) Monitoring

#### ① Machine monitoring



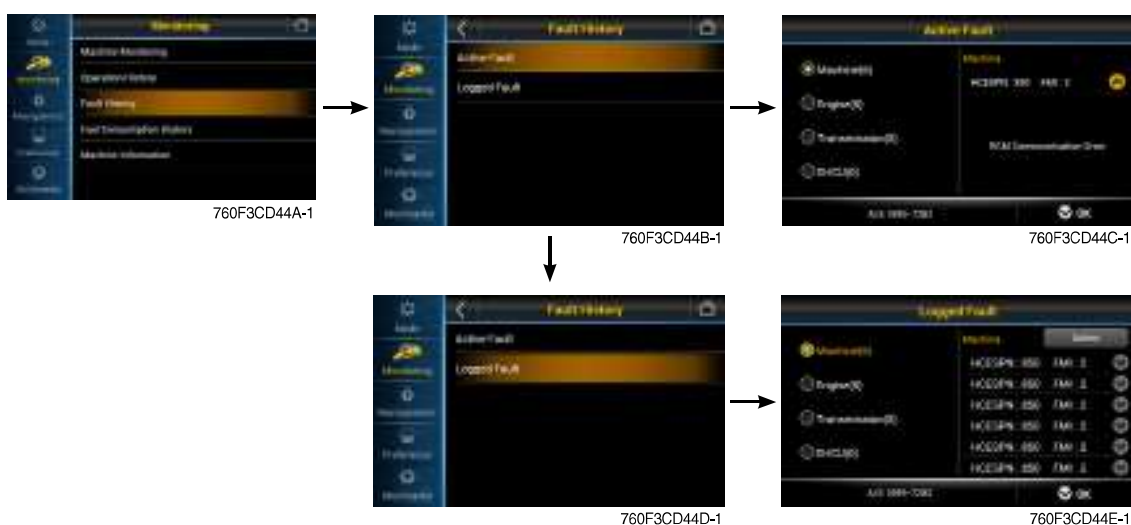
- Monitor the status of the machine.

#### ② Operation history



- **Hour meter / ODO meter**
- **Total**
  - Total distance (this item cannot be initialized).
  - Total working hour can check on service meter.
- **Latest**
  - Working hour/distance after reset.
  - If you select **Initialization**, working hour/distance start zero.
- To display the item in main display, select the item in main display.

#### ③ Fault history



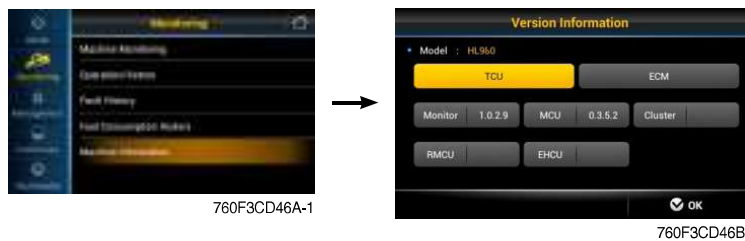
- Display the fault code of MCU/ECU/TCU/EHCU and delete logged fault.
- ※ Refer to service manual for HCESP/N/FMI of engine and transmission.
- ※ Not define will be indicated in case of that there's no fault.
- ※ EHCU : Electro Hydraulic Control Unit.

#### ④ Fuel consumption history



- Display the fuel consumption history.
  - General record (average fuel rate and a days fuel used)
  - Hourly record
  - Daily record
  - Mode record

#### ⑤ Machine information



- Software versions of MCU, ECU, TCU, EHC, Cluster and monitor can be checked.



## (4) Management

### ① Machine security



#### · ESL system setting

- ESL : Engine Starting Limit
- ESL mode is designed to be a theft deterrent or will prevent the unauthorized operation of the machine.
- If the ESL mode was selected ON, the password will be required when the start switch is turned ON.
- **Disable** : Not used ESL function
- **ON, Always** : The password is required whenever the operator start engine.
- **ON, After specific time** : The password is required when the operator start engine first. But the operator can restart the engine within the specific time without inputting the password. The specific time can be set maximum 2 days.



#### · Specific time

- If set specific time to 5 minutes, ESL system is activated after 5 minutes. Therefore, the password does not need to restart engine within 5 minutes.

#### ※ Default password : 00000

#### · Change password

- Input 5 to 10 digits.

#### · Smart key (opt)

- Manage usage : Set the using or not of smart key.  
If you using smart key, ESL function always be activated.
- Manage tag : Register or delete user tag and display registered user tag.  
When delete user tag, all user tag will be deleted.

#### ※ Using smart key

##### - Verification success

Green smart key icon is displayed on the main display screen.

##### Verification failure

- Red smart key icon and password input screen is displayed.



Verification success



Verification failure

## Engine Starting Condition

Case	ESL Mode	Smart Key	Condition
1	Disable	Disable	- With registered tag : Engine can be started without password input. - Without registered tag : Engine can be started without password input.
2	Disable	Enable	If Smart Key is enabled, ESL Mode is automatically enabled. This Case 2 work the same as the Case 4.
3	Enable	Disable	- With registered tag : Engine can be started with password input. - Without registered tag : Engine can be started with password input.
4	Enable	Enable	- With registered tag : Engine can be started without password input. - Without registered tag : Engine can be started with password input.

## ② Maintenance



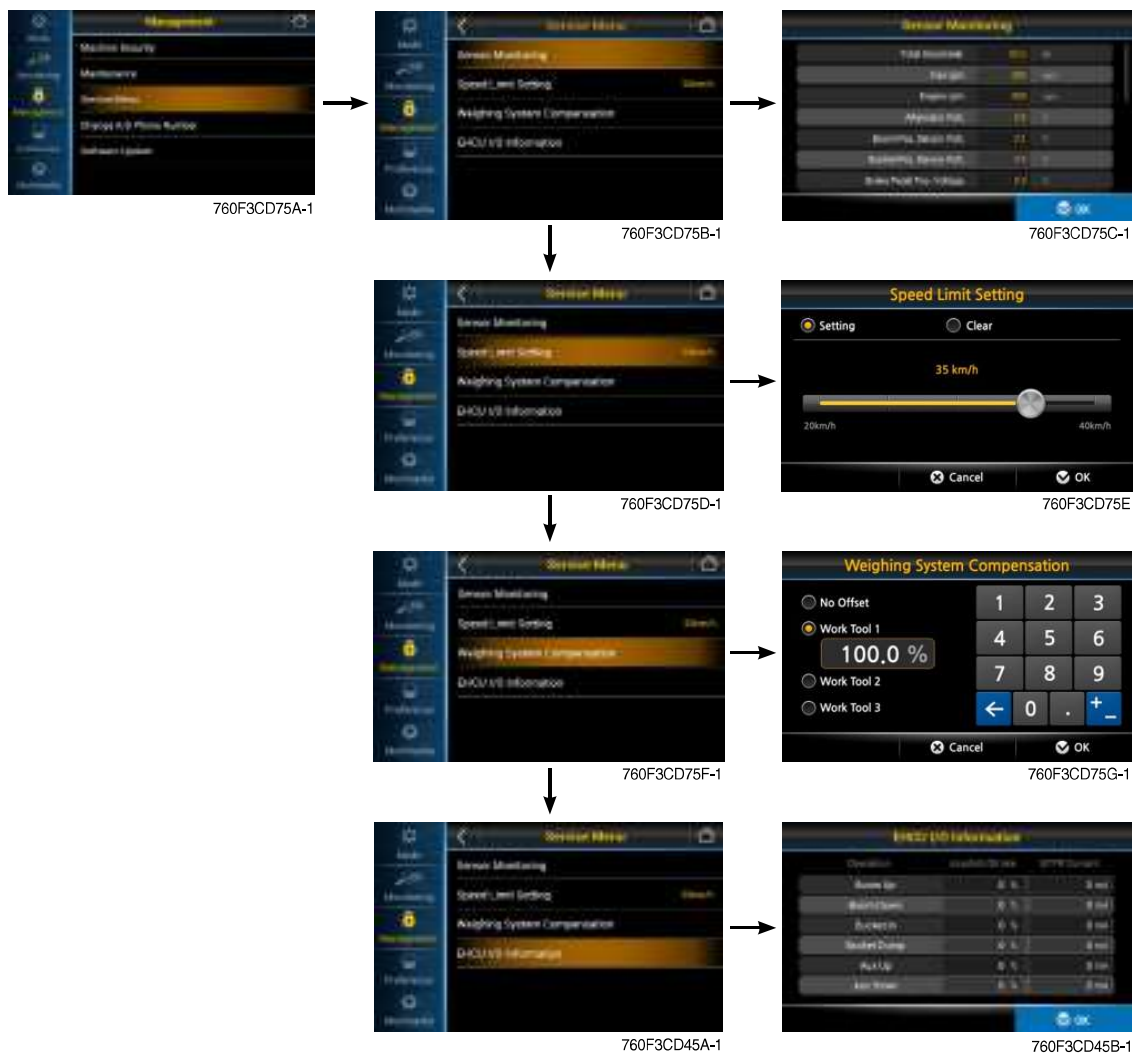
- **Replacement** : The elapsed time will be reset to zero (0).
- **Change cycle** : The change or replace cycle can be changed in the unit of 50 hours.
- **Show the maintenance history below 10.**  
When history have more than 10, delete the old item.
- **Change or replace interval**

No	Item	Interval
1	Engine oil	500
2	Hydraulic oil	★ <sup>1</sup> 2000 ★ <sup>2</sup> 5000
3	Pilot line filter element	1000
4	Hydraulic oil return filter	1000
5	Engine oil filter	500
6	Fuel filter (suction & pressure)	1000
7	Fuel filter (return)	1000
8	Hydraulic tank air breather	1000
9	Radiator coolant	2000
10	Transmission oil and filter	1000
11	Axle oil (front and rear)	1500
12	Aircon & heater outer filter	1000
13	DEF/AdBlue® tank filter	1000

★<sup>1</sup> : Conventional hydraulic oil

★<sup>2</sup> : Hyundai genuine long life hydraulic oil

### ③ Service menu



- **Sensor monitoring** : Display information of each sensors.
- **Speed limit setting** : 20~40 km/h (5 km/h intervals)
- **Weighing system compensation**
  - Calibration workload depending on work tool.
  - ※ **Only for the service person. Do not adjust arbitrary.**
- **EHCU I/O information**
  - Real time monitoring (joystick stroke, EPPR current).

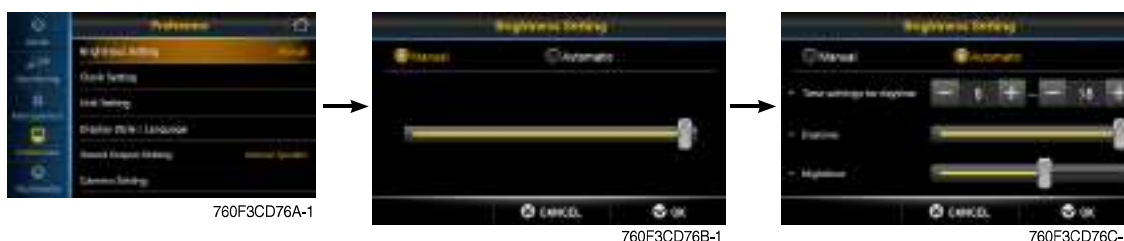
### ④ Change A/S phone number and software update



- **Change A/S phone number** : Check and change of contact information for customer service.
- **Software update** : Update file in USB memory.

## (5) Preference

### ① Brightness setting



- **Manual**
    - Manual setting for LCD brightness.
  - **Automatic**
    - Automatic control of LCD brightness as set level of day/night.
  - **Setting day time**
    - Set the time for daylight.
    - If you set the time for daylight, the rest time will be night.
- ※ **Using button**
- Changing brightness by ◀ or ▶ , input data by ↻.

### ② Clock setting



- Set the time (hour, minute and AM or PM)

### ③ Unit setting



- Temperature : °C ↔ °F
- Speed : km/h ↔ mph
- Weight : ton ↔ lb
- Pressure : bar ↔ Mpa ↔ kgf/m² ↔ psi

※ **Using button**

- Move to other item by ↻.

#### ④ Display style/ Language



- Set the display type A or B.
- User can select preferable language and all display are changed the selected language.
- 13 multiple language available.



#### ⑤ Sound output setting



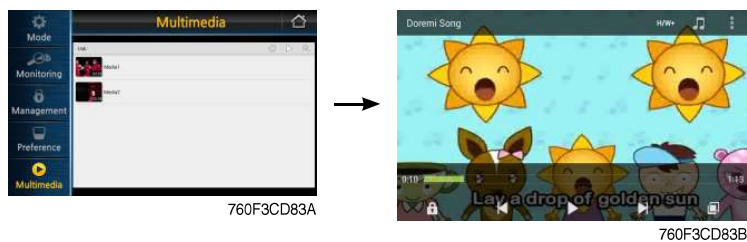
- Internal
  - Use speaker of monitor.
- External
  - Use cab speaker. User should put radio mode into Aux mode.

## ⑥ Camera setting



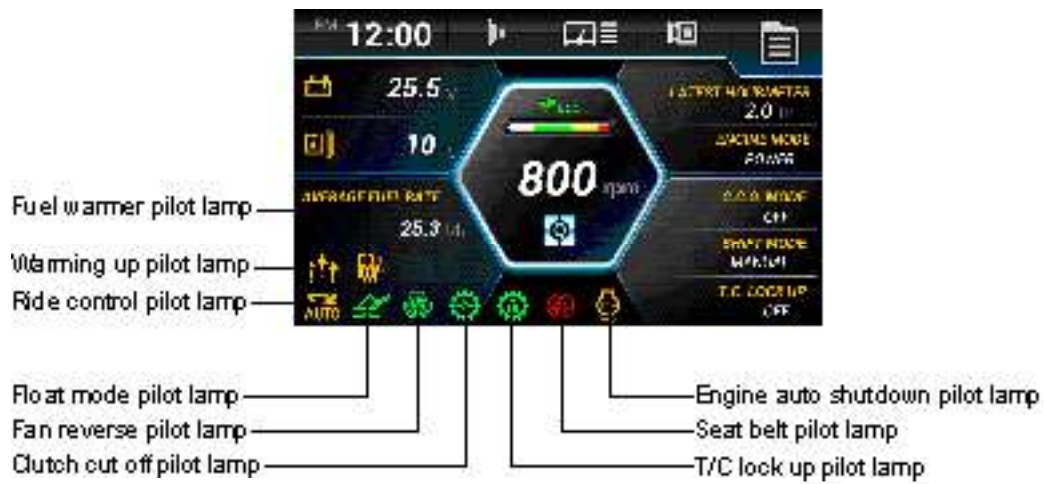
- **Active camera**
  - Four cameras can be installed on the machine.
- **Display order**
  - Set the channel sequence of each camera.
- **Active when the reverse gear is selected**
  - If transmission engages the reverse gear (R1~R3), the camera mode is displayed automatically in main display.
- If the camera was not equipped, this menu is not useful.
- In main display, if the  is touched (or  switch is pushed), the first ordered display camera will be viewed.

## (12) Multimedia



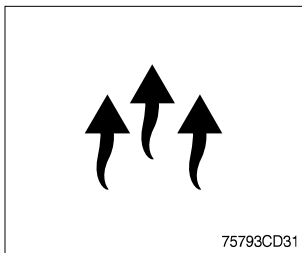
- Play video files in USB (mp4, mkv, avi, 3gp, divx, f4v, flv, mpeg, mov, vob, wmv, webm, xvid).
- Play audio files in USB (mp3, mp4, ogg, wma, wav, flac, aac).

### 3) PILOT LAMPS



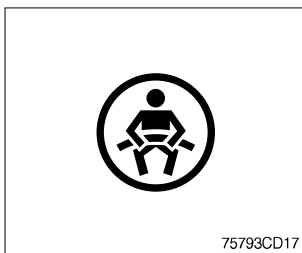
9703CD90

#### (1) Warming up pilot lamp



- ① This lamp lights ON when the coolant temperature is below 30°C (86°F).
- ② The automatic warming up is cancelled when the engine coolant temperature is above 30°C, or when 10 minutes have passed since starting the engine.

#### (2) Seat belt pilot lamp



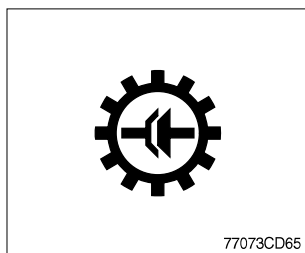
- ① This lamp lights ON for the first five seconds after starting the engine.

#### (3) Engine auto shutdown pilot lamp



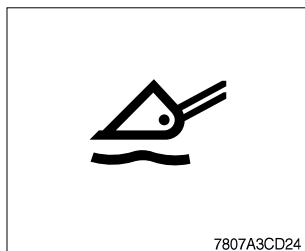
- ① This lamp lights ON when the engine auto shutdown function is activated.
- ※ Refer to page 7-45.

#### (4) Clutch cut off pilot lamp



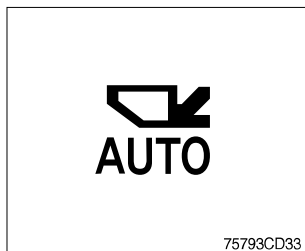
- ① This lamp lights ON when clutch cut off mode is set L, M, H.  
※ Refer to page 7-38.

#### (5) Float mode pilot lamp



- ① This lamp lights ON when the boom float is activated.

#### (6) Ride control pilot lamp (option)

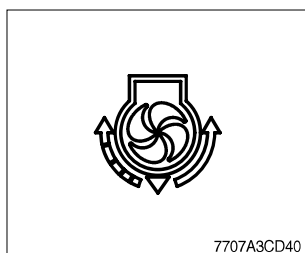


- ① **Auto ride control**  
This lamp lights ON when the automatic ride control function is activated (**ON**, **Conditional speed** setting).  
※ Refer to page 7-59.



- ② **Manual ride control**  
This lamp lights ON when the manual ride control function is activated (**ON**, **Always** setting).  
※ Refer to page 7-59.

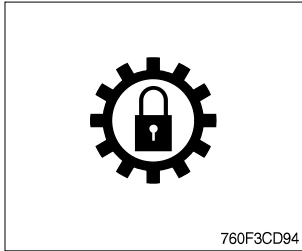
#### (7) Fan reverse pilot lamp



- ① This lamp lights ON when the cooling fan reverse mode is activated  
※ Refer to page 7-42.



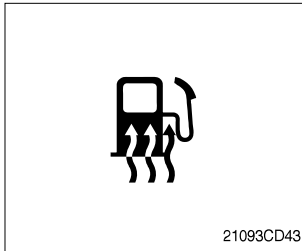
**(8) Torque converter lock up pilot lamp (option)**



- ① This lamp lights ON when the torque converter lock up function is operating.

※ Refer to page 7-39.

**(9) Fuel warmer pilot lamp**



- ① This lamp is turned ON when the coolant temperature is below 10°C (50°F) or the hydraulic oil temperature 20°C (68°F).
- ② The automatic fuel warming is cancelled when the engine coolant temperature is above 60°C and the hydraulic oil temperature is above 45°C since the start switch was ON position.

### 3) SWITCHES



760F3CD95-1

※ If you push left or right switch ( ◀ ▶ ) on main display, show the select box on current time.  
Move to next item in order by using left / right button.

(① Time → ② Buzzer → ③ Wiper → ④ Camera → ⑤ Menu → ⑥ Machine monitoring →  
⑦ Fuel rate → ⑧ Engine mode/Operation history → ⑨ Transmission mode → ⑩ Quick menu)

※ Move to selected setting screen by using enter switch ( ⏎ ).

※ When keypad is not pressed for 3 seconds, convert screen to main display.

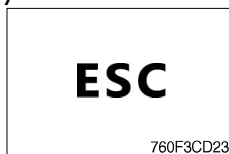
※ If you push left and right switch ( ◀ ▶ ) at the same time, move language settings.

#### (1) Menu / Home switch



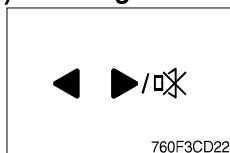
① Main display to main menu, main menu to main display.

#### (2) ESC switch



- ① For other menu, this is used for cancellation (move to previous menu).
- ② AEB cancel or finish button in AEB.

### (3) Left / Right move switch



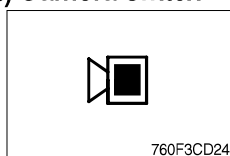
- ① Move in menu (left, up / right, down).
- ② Decrease / Increase input value.
- ③ Stop buzzer sound when sound is on.

### (4) Enter switch



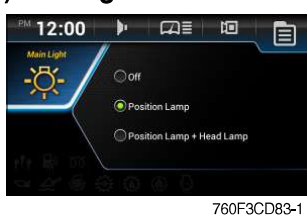
- ① Select menu (enter).

### (5) Camera switch



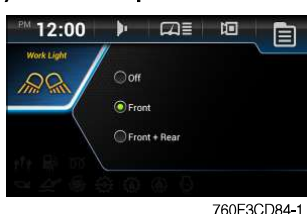
- ① Enter rear camera mode in main display.

### (6) Main light switch



- ① This switch use to operates the clearance lamp and head light.
  - **Position lamp** : Clearance lamp and cluster illumination lamp come ON. The green pilot lamp is turned ON.
  - **Head lamp + Position lamp** : Clearance lamp, cluster illumination lamp and head light come ON. The green pilot lamp is turned ON.

### (7) Work lamp switch



- ① This switch use to operates the front and rear work lamps.
  - **Front** : Front work lamp located on the cab comes ON. The green pilot lamp is turned ON.
  - **Front + Rear** : Front work lamp located on the cab and rear work lamp located on the cowl come ON. The green pilot lamp is turned ON.

### (8) Central grease lubrication switch (option)



- ① This switch is used to operate the central grease lubrication system.
- ② The central grease lubrication system is operated for set period. The green pilot lamp is turned ON.
- ※ **When malfunction occur in grease lubrication system, the red pilot lamp is turned ON.**
- ※ **Refer to page 8-1 in operator's manual.**

## (9) Quick coupler switch (option)



760F3CD86A-1



760F3CD86B-1



760F3CD86C-1

### ① Locking attachment

- The quick coupler pins move in the engaged position and buzzer sounds.
- The green pilot lamp is turned ON.

### ※ Check for engagement as followings.

- Put down pressure on the attachment.
- Back up the machine and make sure that there is no movement between the quick coupler and attachment.

### ② Unlocking attachment

- The quick coupler pins move in the disengaged position and buzzer sounds.
- The red pilot lamp is turned ON.

⚠ Always check that the attachment is properly secured to the attachment quick coupler by pressing the front part of the attachment against the ground.

⚠ Never use an attachment before you have checked its mounting.

## (10) Ride control switch (option)



760F3CD87A-1



760F3CD87B-1

### ① ON, Conditional speed

- Select **ON, conditional speed** in order to turn on the automatic ride control. The automatic ride control automatically turns on when the travel speed exceeds a preset speed. (forward / backward 1~15 km/h )
- The blue pilot lamp is turned ON.

### ② ON, Always

- Select **ON, Always** in order to turn on the system for ride control regardless speed. The ride control will smooth the ride of the machine during travel.
- The green pilot lamp is turned ON.

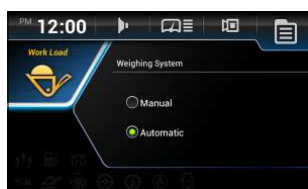
### ③ OFF

Select **OFF** in order to turn off the system for the ride control.

## (11) Work mode switch



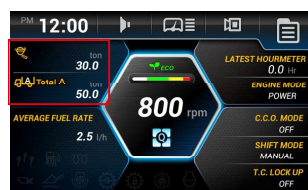
760F3CD115A-1



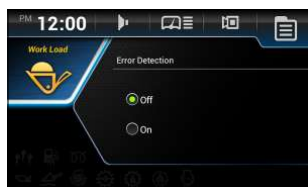
760F3CD115B-1



760F3CD115C-1



760F3CD115E-1



760F3CD115D-1

### ① Weighing system

#### - Manual

Accumulate the weight in memory A, B, C manually.

The green pilot lamp is turned ON.

※ Refer to the page 7-65 for workload button.

#### - Automatic

Accumulate the weight in memory A, B, C automatically.

The blue pilot lamp is turned ON.

※ Refer to the page 7-40 for weighing system.

※ Refer to the page 7-44 for boom pressure calibration.

### ② Weighing display

Selected item is shown in main display.

	Work weight (today)
	Work weight (previous day)
	Total weight accumulated in memory A, B, C individually regardless of date
	Current weight

### ※ Initialization daily, total A, B, C

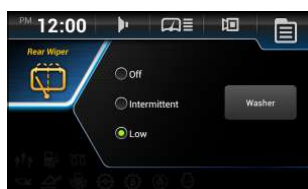
Initialize accumulated value at memory daily, A, B and C.

### ③ Error detection

Set error detection ON/OFF.

※ Refer to the page 7-40 for details.

## (12) Rear wiper and washer switch



760F3CD89-1

### ① This switch use to operates the rear wiper and washer.

When pressing the switch, the mode is changed sequence base.  
(OFF → intermittent → Low → OFF )

- **Intermittent** : The rear wiper operates intermittently.
- **Low** : The rear wiper is operated lower speed.
- **Washer** : The washer liquid is sprayed while long pressing the button.

### ② The green pilot lamp is turned ON.

### (13) Beacon lamp switch (option)



760F3CD88

- ① This switch turns ON the rotary light on the cab.
- ② The green pilot lamp is turned ON.

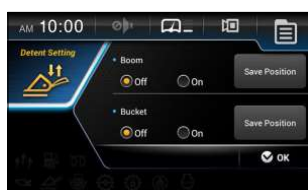
### (14) Mirror defrost switch (option)



760F3CD65

- ① **ON**
  - In condition of ON, it operates for 15 minutes. After 15 minutes, the defrost function stops automatically.
  - The green pilot lamp is turned ON.
- ② **OFF**
  - Stops defrost function.

### (15) Detent setting switch



760F3CD66

- ① **Boom and bucket**
  - Set the boom and bucket detent function ON/OFF.
- ② **Save position**
  - Set the boom kickout and bucket leveler.
  - Refer to page 4-22.

※ **The green pilot lamps are turned ON.**

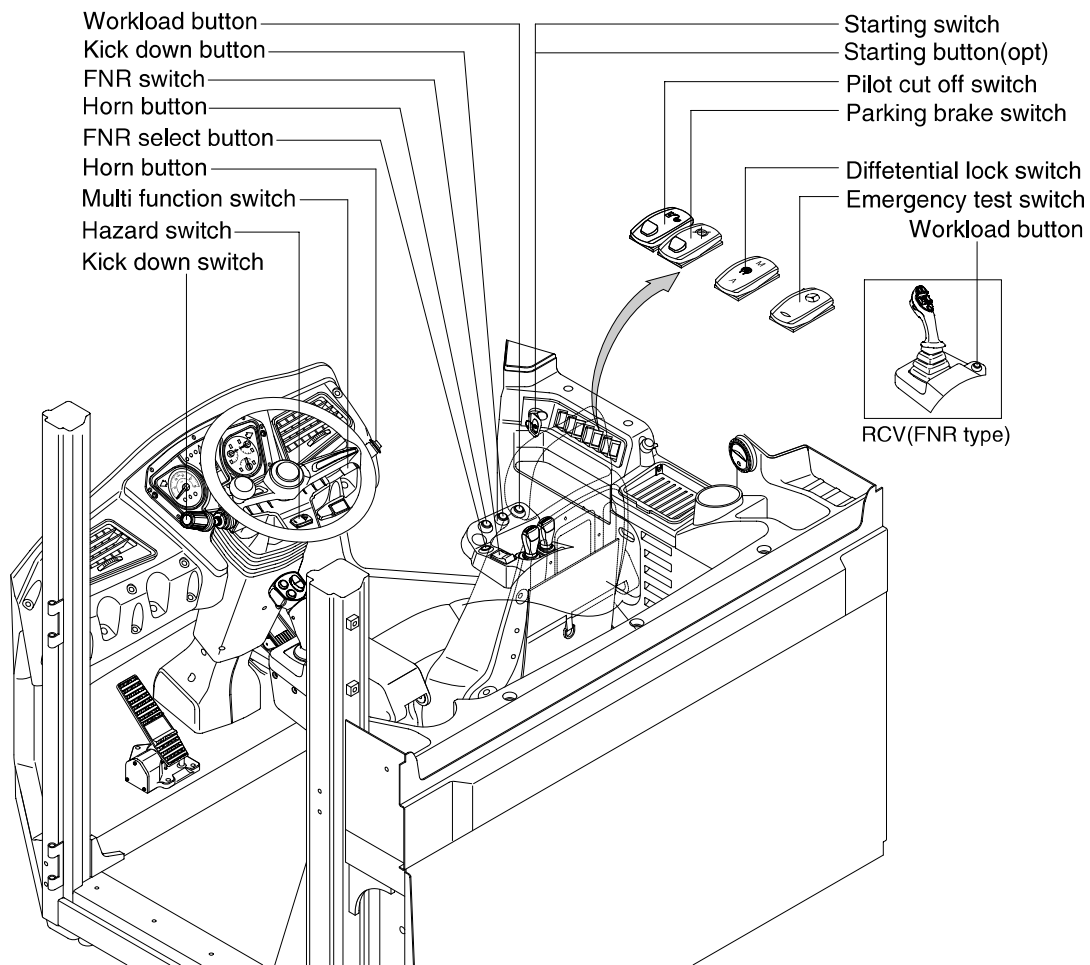
### (16) Fine modulation switch



760F3CD67

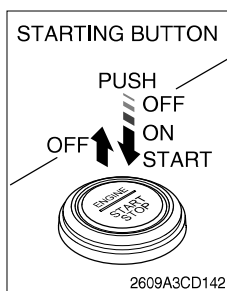
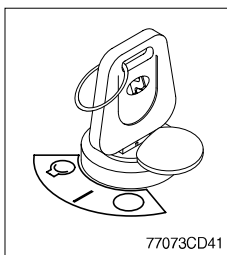
- ① **ON**
  - Remote control lever provide the operator with precise control of the work equipment (bucket and boom cylinders can be controlled precisely).
  - The green pilot lamp is turned ON.
- ② **OFF**
  - Turn off the function.

### 3. SWITCHES



770F3CD29

#### 1) STARTING SWITCH & STARTING BUTTON (OPT)



Starting button with smart key tag (opt)

(1) There are three positions, OFF, ON and START.

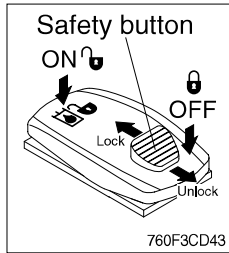
- ○ (OFF) : None of electrical circuits activate.
- | (ON) : All the systems of machine operate.
- ○ (START) : Use when starting the engine.

Release key immediately after starting.

※ If you turn ON the starting switch in cold weather, the fuel warmer is automatically operated to heat the fuel by sensing the coolant temperature. Start the engine in 1~2 minutes after turning ON the starting switch. More time may take according to ambient temperature.

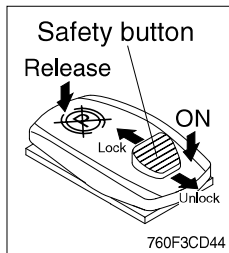
※ Key must be in the ON position with engine running maintain electrical and hydraulic function and prevent serious machine damage.

## 2) PILOT CUT OFF SWITCH



- (1) When the switch is pressed to OFF position, the hydraulic pilot line will be cut off, so the work equipment will not operate.
  - (2) Press the ON position in order to unlock the hydraulic pilot line.
- ※ **This switch can be set to ON or OFF position only when the safety button is pulled to the unlock position.**

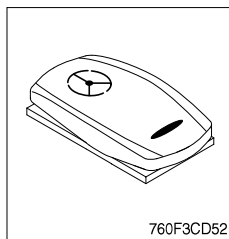
## 3) PARKING BRAKE SWITCH



- (1) When the switch is pressed to ON position, the parking brake will start to operate and the cluster warning lamp will come ON.
  - (2) Press the release position in order to disengage the parking brake.
- ※ **When operating the gear selector lever, be sure to release the parking brake. If the machine is operated with the parking brake engaged, the brake will overheat and may cause the brake system to go out of order.**

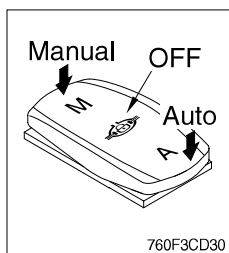
※ **This switch can be set to ON or Release position only when the safety button is pulled to the unlock position.**

## 4) EMERGENCY TEST SWITCH (option)



- (1) The emergency steering system can be manually tested. Push the switch in order to determine if the emergency steering and the emergency steering lamp are functional.
- (2) When the switch is pressed, the emergency steering pump motor will run. The emergency steering lamp will light. If the emergency steering lamp does not light, do not operate the machine.

## 5) DIFFERENTIAL LOCK SWITCH (option)



- (1) This switch is used to apply differential lock. The differential lock gives equal power to both front wheels and is used in conditions when traction is poor.

### (2) Manual mode

Press the **M** of the switch for the manual mode of the differential lock function. You press the switch, the differential lock will engage immediately and differential lock pilot lamp lights ON. Manual mode is temporarily engaged as long as the operator pushes the switch. When the switch is released, differential lock function is disengaged and the switch returns to OFF position.

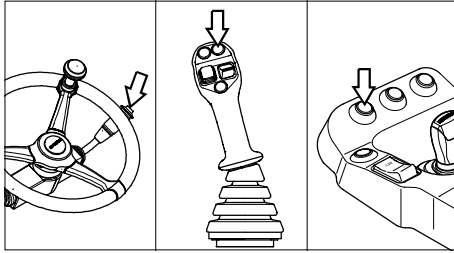
### (3) Auto mode

Press the **A** of the switch for auto mode of the differential lock function. If you press the switch, the axle differential lock will automatically engage when the differential function is used.

※ **While the axle differential lock function is operating, the differential lock pilot lamp lights ON.**



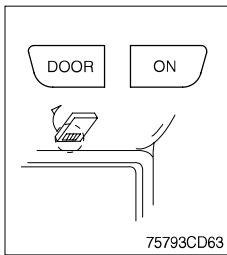
## 6) HORN BUTTON



760F3CD104

(1) If you press the button, the horn will sound.

## 7) CAB LAMP SWITCH



75793CD63

(1) This switch turns ON the cab room lamp.

### ① DOOR

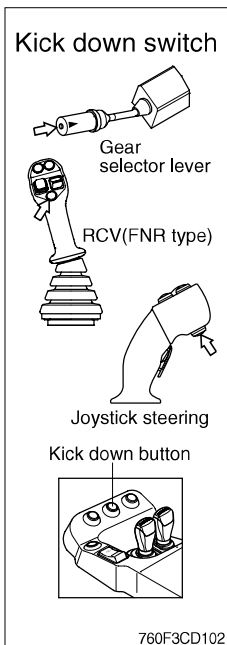
The lamp comes ON when the door is opened.

When the door is closed the lamp is OFF.

### ② ON

This switch is used to turn the lamp ON or OFF.

## 8) KICK DOWN SWITCH



760F3CD102

### (1) Manual mode

It is effective 2nd speed to 1st speed only and recover to 2nd speed quickly when push the switch one more time.

### (2) Automatic mode

#### ① Mode 1 (down/up)

It shifts down quickly from current gear to one step lower speed by pushing the switch and recover to current speed quickly when push the switch one more time.

#### ② Mode 2 (down)

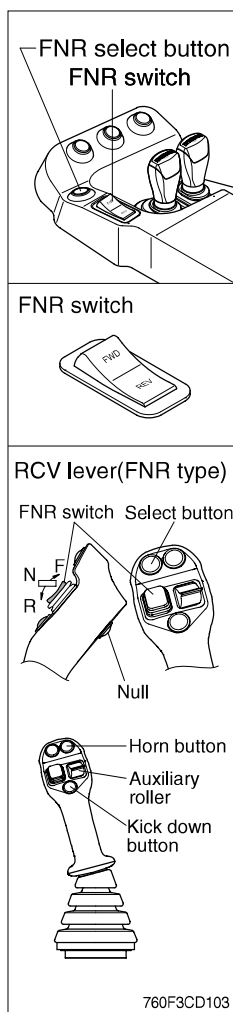
It shifts down from current gear to one step lower speed when push the switch every time.

The kick down function is released in only 1st speed.

※ Refer to page 7-38 for the kick down mode.

※ The normal autoshift function continues after the kick down switch is released.

## 9) FNR SELECT BUTTON AND SWITCH



(1) These button and switch are used for forward and backward drive.

※ **Gear range can be selected by gear selector lever.**

### (2) FNR select button

① If the select button is pressed, the indication lamp on the cluster will be ON and this FNR switch will start to operate.

※ **When the engine is running, the machine is on standstill (0 speed), parking brake is released, gear selector lever is in the neutral position, you can use this function after pressing the select button.**

### (3) FNR switch

- F : Forward drive
- N : Neutral
- R : Reverse drive

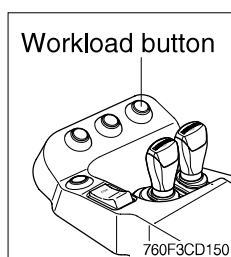
① If the upper side (F, FWD) of this switch is pushed, the machine moves forward.

② If the down side (R, REV) of this switch is pushed, the machine moves backward.

③ This function is automatically released when the engine is stopped, parking brake is ON or gear selector lever is out of neutral.

(4) **Auxiliary roller** : If the machine is equipped with auxiliary hydraulics, this roller is used for the attachments.

## 10) WORKLOAD BUTTON



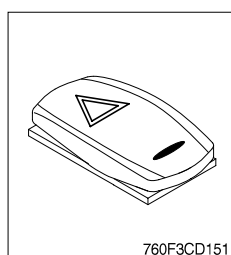
(1) This button is used to calculate the weight manually.

If the button is not pushed, the weight of the weighing system is not calculated.

(2) This button is pushed for one second more, calculated weight will be accumulated.

※ **Refer to the page 7-40, weighing system.**

## 11) HAZARD SWITCH

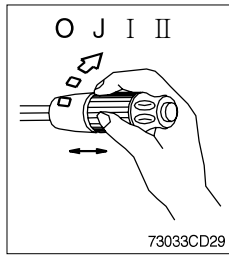


(1) Use for parking or loading the machine.

(2) Both turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.

※ **If the switch is left ON for a long time, the battery may be discharged.**

## 12) MULTI FUNCTION SWITCH

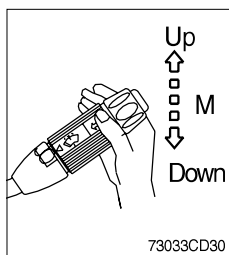


### (1) Front wiper and washer switch

- ① When the switch is in J position, the wiper moves intermittently.
- ② When placed in I or II position, the wiper moves continuously.
- ③ If you push the grip of the lever, washer liquid will be sprayed and the wiper will be activated 2-3 times.

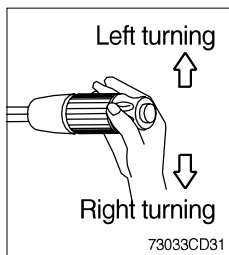
※ Check the quantity of washer liquid in the tank. If the level of the washer liquid is LOW, add the washer liquid (in cold, winter days) or water. The capacity of the tank is 1 liter.

※ If the wiper does not operate with the switch in ON (J, I, II) position, turn the switch OFF (O) immediately and check the cause. If the switch remains ON, motor failure can result.



### (2) Dimmer switch


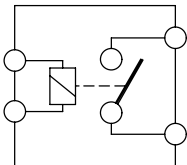
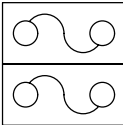
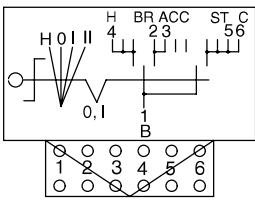
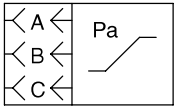
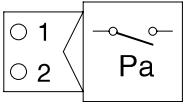
- ① This switch is used to turn the head lights direction.
- ② Switch positions
  - Up : To flash for passing
  - Middle : Head lights low beam ON
  - Down : Head lights high beam ON
- ③ If you release the switch when it's in up position, the switch will return to middle.

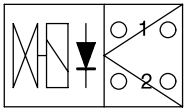
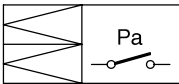
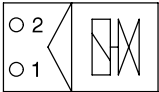
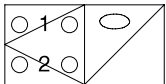
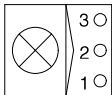
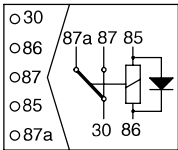


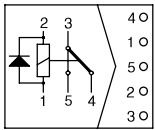
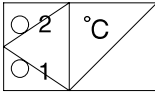
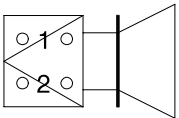
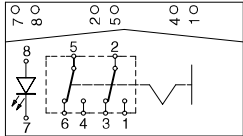
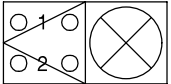
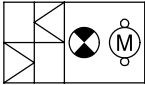
### (3) Turning switch

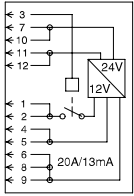
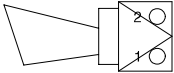
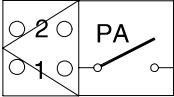
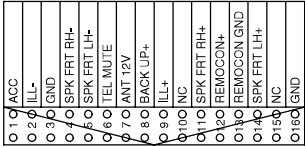
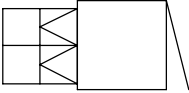
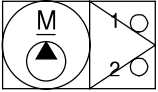
- ① This switch is used to warn or signal the turning direction of the machine to other vehicles or equipment.
- ② Push the lever up for turning left, pull the lever down for turning right.

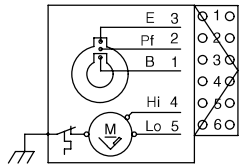
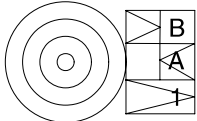
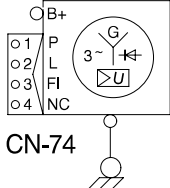
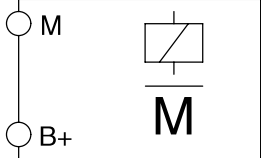
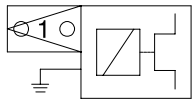
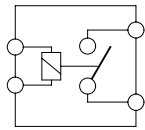
## GROUP 4 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT SPECIFICATION

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check item
Battery		12V × 200Ah (2EA)	Gravity 1.280 over : over charged 1.280 ~ 1.250 : normal 1.250 below : discharged
Battery relay	 CR-1	Rated load : 24V 100A (continuity) 1000A (30seconds)	Coil resistance broken : approx 50Ω connected : ∞Ω
Fusible link	 CN-351 (40A), CN-352 (80A)	24V	Resistance between ring terminal and each connector pin 0Ω: normal
Start key	 CS-2	B-BR : 24V 1A B-ACC : 24V 10A B-ST : 20V 40A	Resistance between each pin Key off : ∞Ω(for each pin) Key on : 0Ω(for pin 1-2 & 1-3) Start : 0Ω(for pin 1-5)
Pressure switch	 CD-3 CD-26 CD-31 CD-39 CD-40 CD-58 CD-79 CD-80 CD-81	N.C Type	Resistance 0Ω: normal (close)
Pressure switch	 CD-48 CD-129	N.O Type	Resistance ∞Ω: normal (open)

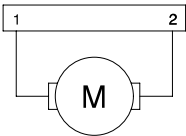
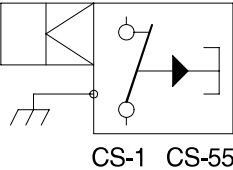
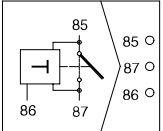
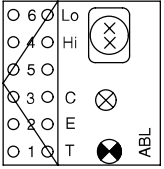
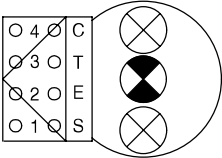
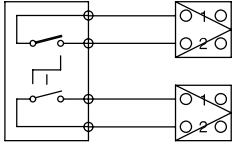
Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check item
Pilot cut off, parking brake, diff lock, attach lock, unlock solenoid	 CN-68 CN-177 CN-71 CN-178 CN-79	24V 1A	Resistance normal : 15~25Ω
Air cleaner pressure switch	 CD-10	Max load : 6W N.O Type	Resistance ∞Ω: normal (open)
Lock-up, Ride control valve / Fan sole- noid	 CN-43 CN-136 CN-154 CN-155	24V 1.2A	※ Check LED lamp ※ Check resistance about 24Ω
Fuel sender	 CD-2	-	Resistance at fuel levels full level : 200Ω 9/12 level : 500Ω 6/12 level : 800Ω 3/12 level : 1100Ω empty : 1300Ω
Room lamp	 CL-1	24V 10W	Resistance normal : 1,2Ω
Relay (5pin)	 CR-3 CR-5 CR-7 CR-30 CR-35 CR-36 CR-38 CR-40 CR-46 CR-55 CR-56 CR-63 CR-210 CR-211 CR-381	24V 20A	Resistance normal : about 160Ω (for pin 85~86) 0Ω(for pin 30~87) ∞Ω(for pin 30~87)

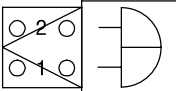
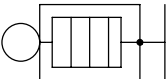
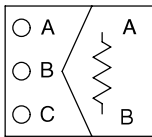
Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check item
Relay (5 pin)	 CR-2 CR-4 CR-25 CR-26 CR-37 CR-58 CR-79 CR-115 CR-117 CR-136 CR-302 CR-303	24V 20A	Resistance normal : about 160Ω (for pin 1~2) 0Ω(for pin 3~4) ∞Ω(for pin 3~5)
Hydraulic, transmission temperature	 CD-1 CD-49	—	Resistance normal : ∞Ω 105. C over : 0Ω
Speaker	 CN-123 (LH) CN-124 (RH)	4Ω 20W	Resistance normal : 4Ω
Switch (Locking type)	 CS-4 CS-17 CS-75	24V 8A	Resistance at switch off position ∞Ωbetween pin 1-5 and 2-6 0Ωbetween pin 5-7 and 6-8
Work lamp, Number plate lamp	 CL-21 CL-32 CL-33 CL-35 CL-36 CL-42 CL-43 CL-45 CL-46	Work lamp 24V 70W Number plate lamp 24V 10W	Resistance normal : 1.2Ω
Beacon lamp	 CL-117	24V 70W (H1 TYPE)	Resistance normal : 1.1Ω

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check item
DC/DC Converter	 CN-138	12V 3A	Resistance 8.8Ω(for pin A-B) 7.7Ω(for pin B-C)
Horn	 CN-120 CN-121	24V 2A	Operation by external power source - connect 24V power to (+) terminal - ground the (-) terminal
Receiver dryer	 CN-29	24V 2.5A	Resistance 0Ω: 2.1±0.3~27±2kgf/cm² ∞Ω: ~2.1±0.3, 27±2~kgf/cm²
Radio & USB player	 CN-27	24V 20W+20W	Resistance Power ON : 4Ω+4Ω (for pin 1-6, 4-8)
Back up buzzer	 CN-65	24V 0.5A 110dB	Resistance normal : 5.2Ω
Washer pump	 CN-102 (FR) CN-103 (RR)	24V 2.5A	Resistance normal : 26.4 Ω (for pin1-2)

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check item
Wiper motor	 <p>CN-21 (FR) CN-102 (RR)</p>	24V 1.5A 2-speed Auto parking	-
Cigar lighter	 <p>CL-2</p>	24V 5A 1.4W	Coil resistance normal : about 1MΩ
Alternator	 <p>CN-74</p>	24V 100A	Voltage normal : 24~28V
Starter	 <p>CN-45</p>	24V-6.0kW	Operating or not
Aircon compressor	 <p>CN-28</p>	24V 79W	Resistance normal : 13.4Ω
Start relay	 <p>CR-23</p>	24V 300A	Coil resistance normal : 1-2Ω Switch connection ∞Ωat normal open position 0Ωwhen engaged



Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check item
Blower motor		24V 9.5A	Resistance at each switch position normal : 0.5-2Ω
Door switch		24V 2W	Resistance normal : about 5MΩ
Flasher unit		24V 85 ~ 190 C/M 50dB	-
Head lamp		24V 75W/70W (H4 TYPE) 24V 4W (T4W)	Resistance normal : a fewΩ
Combi lamp (rear)		24V 5W (R5W) 2×24V 21W (P21W)	-
Master switch		Continuous capacity : 180Amp Push in capacity : 1000Amp	-

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check item
Warning buzzer	 CN-26	24V 200mA $90 \pm 5\text{dB}$ ( $\ell\text{m}$ )	-
Preheater	 CN-80	24V 200A	Resistance $0.25 \sim 0.12\Omega$
Resistor	 CN-99	4W	Resistance A - B : $120\Omega$

## GROUP 5 CONNECTORS

### 1. CONNECTOR DESTINATION

Connector number	Type	No. of pin	Destination	Connector part No.	
				Female	Male
CN-1	DEUTSCH	48	I/conn (Frame harness-Main harness)	DRB16-48SAE-L018	DRB12-48PAE-L018
CN-4	DEUTSCH	60	I/conn (Engine harness-Main harness)	DRB16-60SAE-L018	DRB12-60PAE-L018
CN-5	DEUTSCH	60	I/conn (Front harness-Main harness)	DRB16-60SAE-L018	DRB12-60PAE-L018
CN-7	AMP	15	I/conn (Main harness-Cab harness)	2-85262-1	368301-1
CN-9	DEUTSCH	4	Cab camera	DT06-4S	DT04-4P
CN-11	AMP	15	I/conn (Main harness-Aircon harness)	2-85262-1	368301-1
CN-12	AMP	15	I/conn (Front harness-Bottom harness)	2-85262-1	368301-1
CN-14	DEUTSCH	12	I/conn (Frame harness-Grill harness)	DT06-12S	DT04-12P
CN-15	KET	11	I/conn (RH console harness-Main harness)	MG651350	MG641353
CN-16	KET	14	I/conn (RH console harness-Main harness)	MG651110	MG641113
CN-18	DEUTSCH	12	LH seat console	DT06-12S	DT04-12P
CN-19	Econoseal J	6	I/conn (Emer steer harness-Front harness)	S816-006002	S816-106602
CN-21	AMP	6	Front wiper motor	936257-1	-
CN-24	DEUTSCH	12	Grill harness	DT06-12S	-
CN-26	250	2	Warning buzzer	S810-002202	-
CN-26A	TYCO	10	Joystick steering	174661-2	368537-1
CN-27	MK II	16	Radio and USB player	PK145-16017	-
CN-27A	MK II	8	USB connector	174984-2	-
CN-31	DEUTSCH	3	Brake priority	DT06-3S	-
CN-36~39	-	-	Fuse box	21WF-11213	-
CN-43	AMP	2	Lock-up	282028	-
CN-45	Ring term	-	Starter	R14-12	ST 710246-2
CN-48	AMP	1	Hour meter	2-520193-2	-
CN-56	KUM	16	Cluster	KPK145-16017	-
CN-57	AMP	20	Monitor	174047-2	-
CN-58A	DEUTSCH	40	MCU	DRC26-40-SA	-
CN-58B	DEUTSCH	40	MCU	DRC26-40-SB	-
CN-64	MOLEX	4	Smart key	39012040	-
CN-65	DEUTSCH	2	Back up buzzer	DT06-2S	-
CN-68	DEUTSCH	2	Pilot cut off	DT06-2S	-
CN-71	DEUTSCH	2	Parking solenoid	DT06-2S	-
CN-72	DEUTSCH	2	Cowl open activator	DT06-2S	-

Connector number	Type	No. of pin	Destination	Connector part No.	
				Female	Male
CN-79	DEUTSCH	2	Differential lock solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-79A	AMP	6	Differential lock solenoid	S816-006002	S816-106002
CN-83	NMWP	2	Aircon fan	PB625-02027	-
CN-100	DEUTSCH	3	Boom kick out	DT06-3S	-
CN-101	DEUTSCH	3	Bucket leveler	DT06-3S	DT04-3P
CN-102	KET	2	Front washer tank	MG640605	-
CN-103	KET	2	Rear washer tank	MG640605	-
CN-112	-	16	Gear box	21L7-60290	-
CN-115	DEUTSCH	6	Auto grease	DT06-6S	DT04-6P
CN-120	MOLEX	2	Horn	26825-0211	-
CN-121	MOLEX	2	Horn	26825-0211	-
CN-123	KET	2	Speaker (LH)	7123-1520	-
CN-124	KET	2	Speaker (RH)	7123-1520	-
CN-125	DEUTSCH	12	Remote management control unit	DT06-12S	DT04-12P
CN-126	DEUTSCH	9	Data link	HD10-9-96P	-
CN-128	DEUTSCH	2	Aircon compressor	-	DT04-2P
CN-129	KET	2	Receiver drier	MG640795	-
CN-134	AMP	6	Diagnostic (TCU)	1-480705-0	-
CN-136	AMP	2	Ride control solenoid	85202-1	-
CN-136A	Econoseal J	2	I/conn (Ride control harness-Front harness)	S816-002002	S816-102002
CN-137	AMP	1	12V socket	174198-1	-
CN-138	AMP	12	DC/DC Converter	1-967622-1	-
CN-139	AMP	1	12V socket	174198-1	-
CN-149	DEUTSCH	2	Mirror heat (LH)	DT06-2S	DT04-2P
CN-150	DEUTSCH	2	Mirror heat (RH)	DT06-2S	DT04-2P
CN-152	AMP	4	Proportional valve	2-967059-1	-
CN-154	DEUTSCH	2	Fan speed solenoid	DT06-2S	-
CN-155	DEUTSCH	2	Fan reverse solenoid	DT06-2S	-
CN-156	DEUTSCH	2	Seat heat (with switch)	DT06-2S	DT04-2P
CN-157	AMP	68	T/M control unit	963598-1	-
CN-158	PACKARD	4	Gear shift lever	1201-0974	-
CN-159	PACKARD	4	Gear shift lever	1201-5797	-
CN-160	CARLING	12	FNR joystick lever	LC3-01	-
CN-162	AMP	6	Pedal	174262-2	-
CN-163	AMP	2	ECO feeling switch	174352-2	-
CN-171	AMP	1	Service socket	174198-1	-
CN-177	DEUTSCH	2	Quick coupler unlock solenoid	DT06-2S-EP04	-

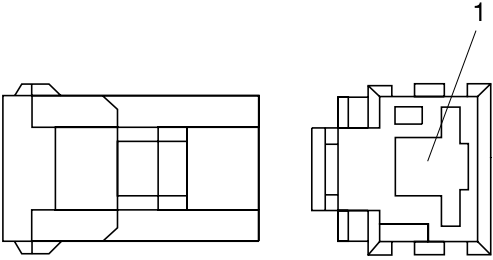
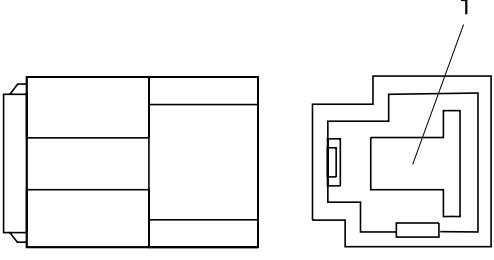
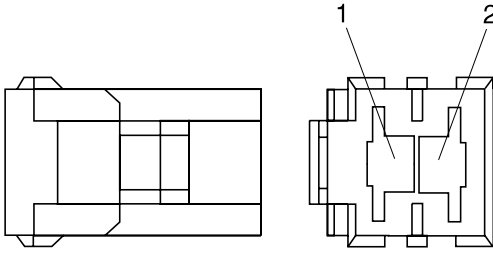
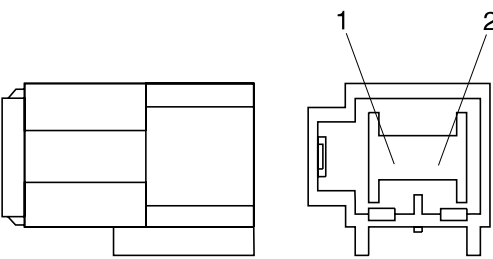
Connector number	Type	No. of pin	Destination	Connector part No.	
				Female	Male
CN-177A	Econoseal J	3	I/conn (Front harness-Quick coupler harness)	S816-003002	S816-103002
CN-178	DEUTSCH	2	Quick coupler lock solenoid	DT06-2S-EP04	-
CN-196	PACKARD	4	Fuel heater	2-967325-3	-
CN-203	AMP	6	Rear wiper motor	936257-1	-
CN-246	KET	1	PTC power	-	MG620659-5
CN-249	DEUTSCH	4	Camera	DT06-4S	DT04-4P
CN-250	Econoseal J	4	Rear view camera	S816-004002	S816-104002
CN-252	TYCO	6	Differential lock	S816-006602	S816-106602
EH-09	DEUTSCH	6	Boom lever	DT06-6S	-
EH-10	DEUTSCH	6	Bucket lever	DT06-6S	-
EH-11	DEUTSCH	6	Auxiliary lever	DT06-6S	-
EH-23	DEUTSCH	50	Electro-hydraulic control unit	DRC26-505-01	-
Relay					
CR-1	Ring term	-	Battery relay	S820-104002	-
CR-2	AMP	5	Horn relay	VCFM-1002	-
CR-3	AMP	5	Front work lamp relay	VCFM-1002	-
CR-4	AMP	5	Wiper relay (Hi)	VCFM-1002	-
CR-5	HELLA	5	Safety relay	8JA003526-001	-
CR-7	AMP	5	Aircon relay	VCFM-1002	-
CR-11	250	3	Flasher unit	S810-003702	-
CR-23	Ring term	-	Start relay	ST 710289-2	ST 710384-2
CR-24	Shur	1	Preheater relay	S822-014000	-
CR-25	AMP	5	Rear wiper relay	VCFM-1002	-
CR-26	AMP	5	Wiper relay (low)	VCFM-1002	-
CR-30	HELLA	5	ECM power relay	8JA003526-001	-
CR-36	AMP	5	Preheater relay	VCFM-1002	-
CR-39	DEUTSCH	2	Emergency steering pump relay	DT06-2S	DT06-2P
CR-40	KET	5	EHCU power relay	MG610047-1	-

Connector number	Type	No. of pin	Destination	Connector part No.	
				Female	Male
CR-46	HELLA	5	Fuel warmer relay	8JA003526-001	-
CR-55	AMP	5	Rear work lamp relay	VCFM-1002	-
CR-56	KET	5	Mirror heat relay	MG610047-1	-
CR-58	AMP	5	Back up relay	VCFM-1002	-
CR-63	AMP	5	Stop lamp relay	VCFM-1002	-
Switch					
CS-1	Shur	1	Door switch	S822-014004	-
CS-2	AMP	6	Start key switch	S814-006000	-
CS-4	VC2-01	10	Pilot cut off switch	21HN-56300	-
CS-11	KET	8	Multi function switch	S814-008000	-
CS-12	AMP	6	Multi function switch	S814-006000	-
CS-13	KET	1	Multi function switch	S822-014000	-
CS-17	VC2-01	10	Parking switch	21HN-56300	-
CS-41	VC2-01	10	Hazard switch	21HN-56300	-
CS-74	DEUTSCH	2	Master switch	DT06-2S	-
CS-75	VC2-01	10	Emergency steering test switch	21HN-56300	-
CS-79	VC2-01	10	Differential lock switch	21HN-56300	-
CS-85, 85L	KET	2	Workload switch	MG610070	MG620074
CS-86, 86L	KET	2	Kick down switch	MG610070	MG620074
CS-87, 87L	KET	2	Horn switch	MG610070	MG620074
CS-88, 88L	KET	2	FNR select switch	MG610070	MG620074
Light					
CL-1	KET	3	Room lamp	MG651032	-
CL-2	KET	3	Cigar lighter	S822-014000	S822-114000
CL-3	DEUTSCH	6	Head light (LH)	DT06-6S	-
CL-4	DEUTSCH	6	Head light (RH)	DT06-6S	-
CL-15	YAZAKI	4	Combi lamp (RR, LH)	7232-7444	-
CL-16	YAZAKI	4	Combi lamp (RR, RH)	7232-7444	-
CL-21	SWP	2	Number plate lamp	S814-002000	-
CL-22	DEUTSCH	2	Work light (LH)	DT06-2S	-
CL-23	DEUTSCH	2	Work light (RH)	DT06-2S	-
CL-32	DEUTSCH	2	Rear work light (RH)	DT06-2S	DT04-2P
CL-33	DEUTSCH	2	Rear work light (LH)	DT06-2S	DT04-2P
CL-42	DEUTSCH	2	Rear work light (opt)	DT06-2S	DT04-2P
CL-45	DEUTSCH	2	Work light (RH)	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CL-46	DEUTSCH	2	Work light (LH)	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CL-117	AMP	2	Beacon lamp	174198-2	-

Connector number	Type	No. of pin	Destination	Connector part No.	
				Female	Male
Sensor, sender					
CD-1	AMP	2	Hyduaualic oil temp sendor	85202-1	-
CD-2	YAZAKI	2	Fuel sendor	7123-7424	-
CD-3	DEUTSCH	3	Brake fail pressure switch	DT06-3S	-
CD-4	DEUTSCH	3	Stop lamp pressure switch	DT06-3S	-
CD-5	PACKARD	3	Clutch cut off pressure switch	-	1215793
CD-10	AMP	2	Air cleaner switch	85202-1	-
CD-17	AMP	2	Engine pick-up sensor	85202-1	-
CD-26	DEUTSCH	3	Parking pressure switch	DT06-3S	-
CD-27	AMP	2	Turbin pick up sensor	85202-1	-
CD-31	DEUTSCH	3	Brake priority	DT06-3S	
CD-39	DEUTSCH	3	Main pump pressure switch	DT06-3S	-
CD-40	DEUTSCH	3	Steering pump pressure switch	DT06-3S	-
CD-43	AMP	2	Lock up proportional valve	282027	-
CD-45	DEUTSCH	2	WIF sensor	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CD-46	AMP	3	Output speed sensor	282087	-
CD-47	AMP	2	Gear chain sensor	85202-5	-
CD-48	AMP	2	Oil filter restriction sensor	282080	-
CD-49	AMP	2	Converter temp sensor	85202-1	-
CD-73	AMP	2	Speed sendsor	174352-2	-
CD-79	DEUTSCH	3	Diff lock feed back sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-80	DEUTSCH	3	Boom positioner sensor	DT06-3S	-
CD-81	DEUTSCH	3	Bucket positioner sensor	DT06-3S	-
CD-96	PACKARD	3	Coolant level sensor	12110293	-

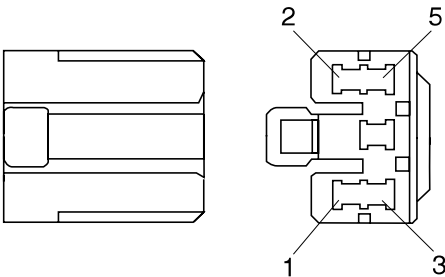
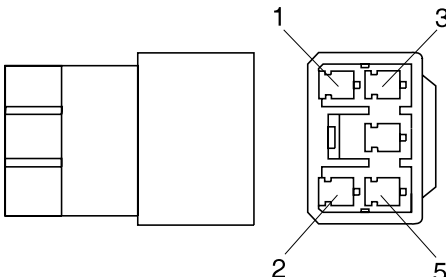
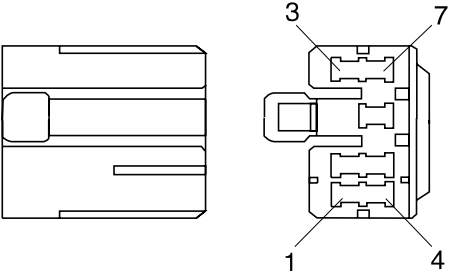
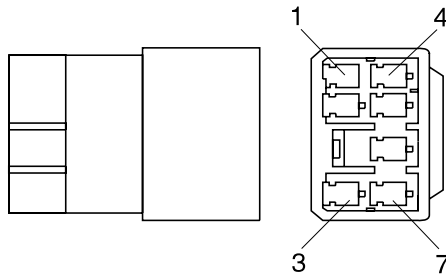
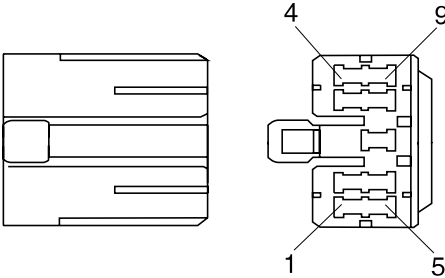
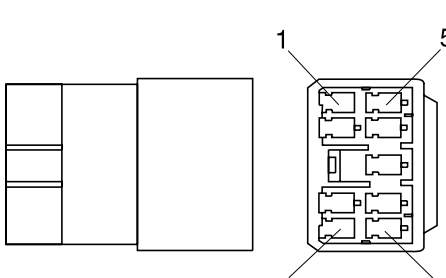
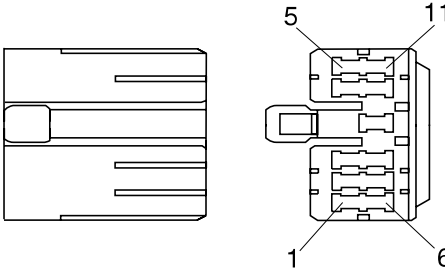
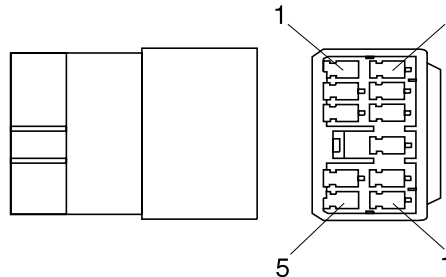
2. CONNECTION TABLE FOR CONNECTORS

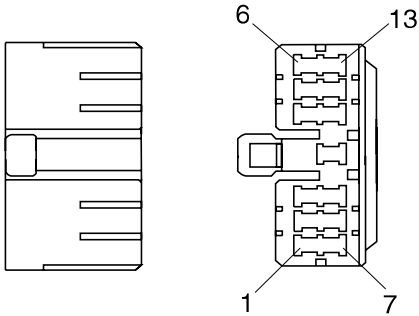
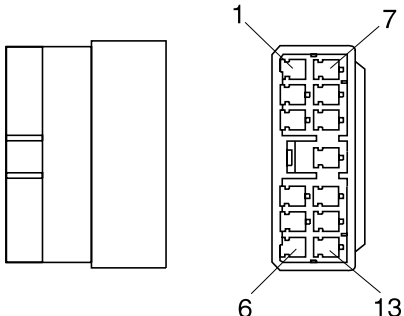
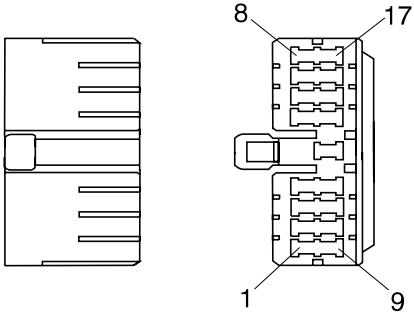
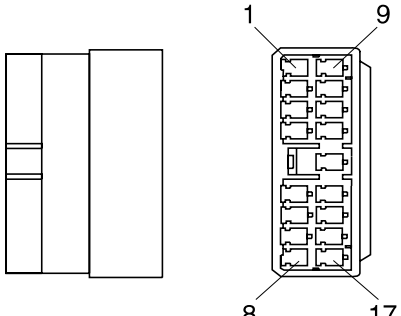
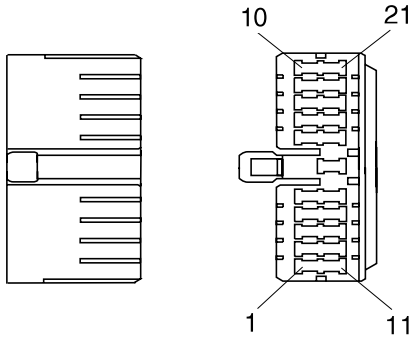
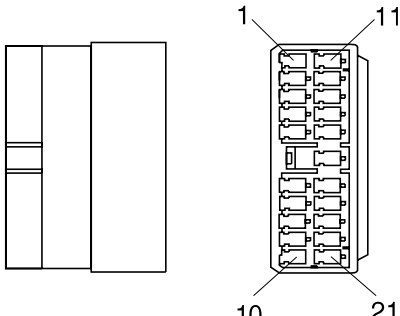
1) 58-L TYPE CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
1	 S813-030100	 S813-130100
2	 S813-030200	 S813-130200

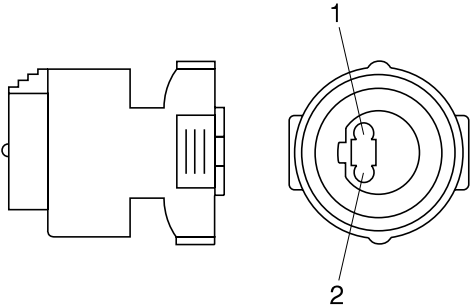
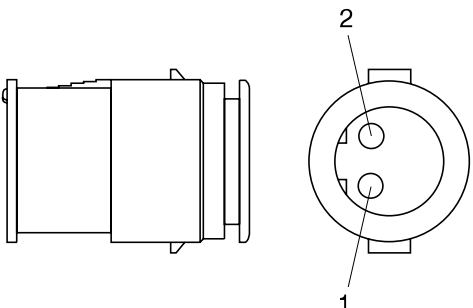
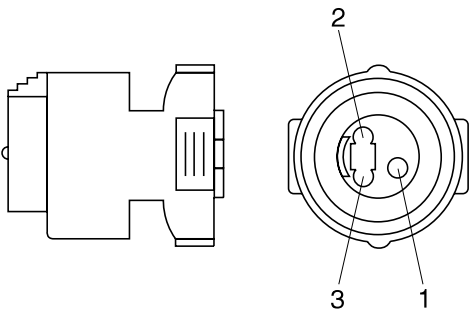
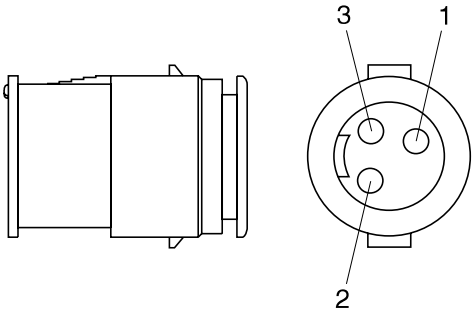
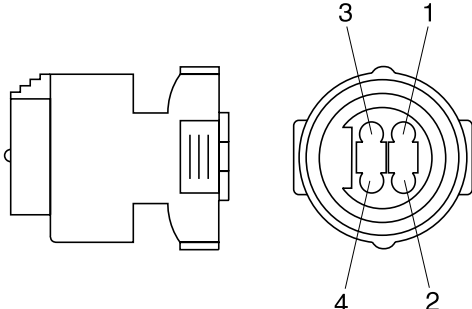
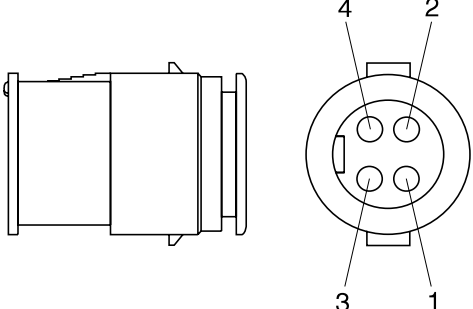
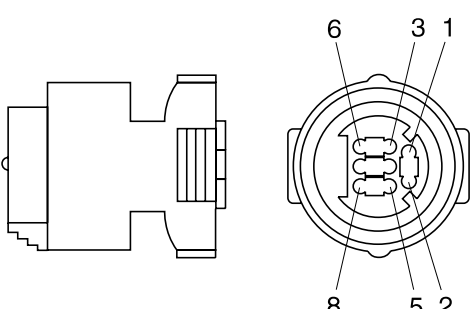
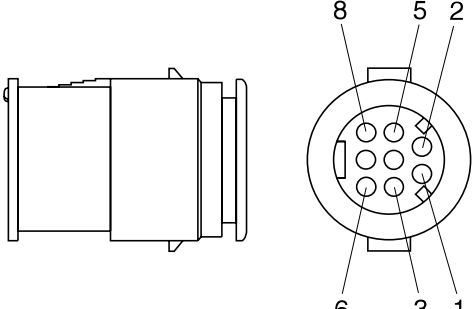


## 2) PA TYPE CONNECTOR

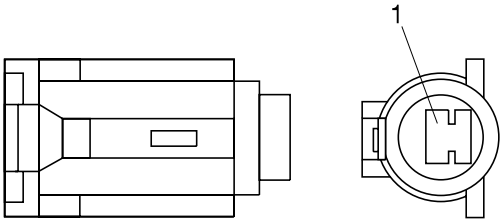
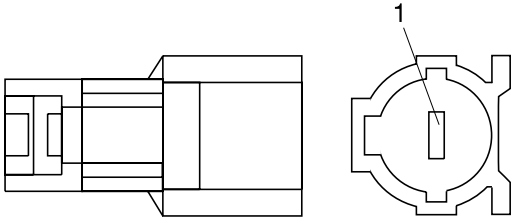
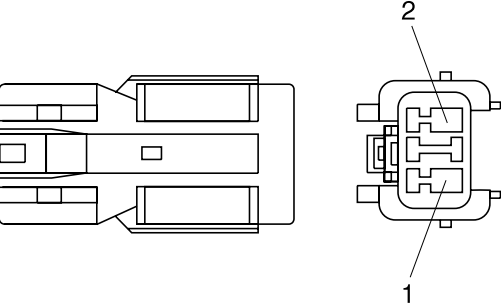
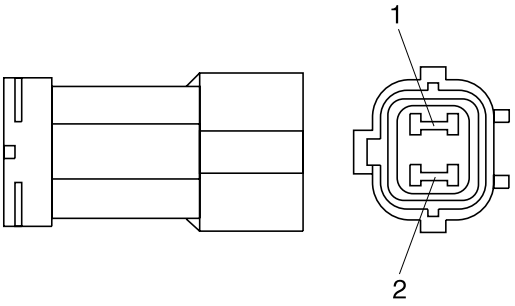
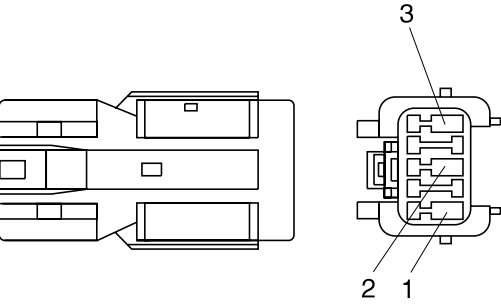
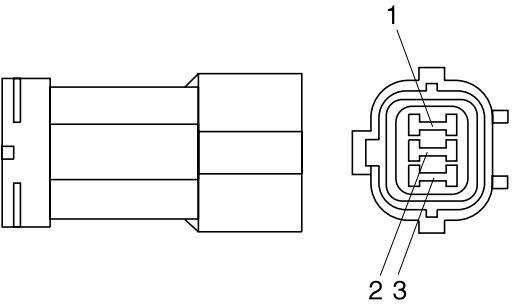
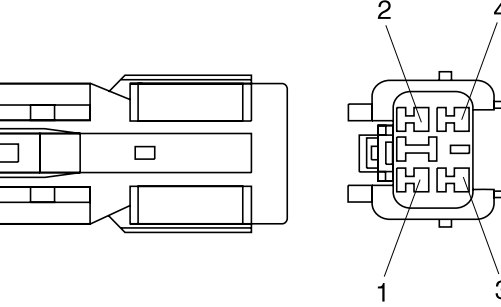
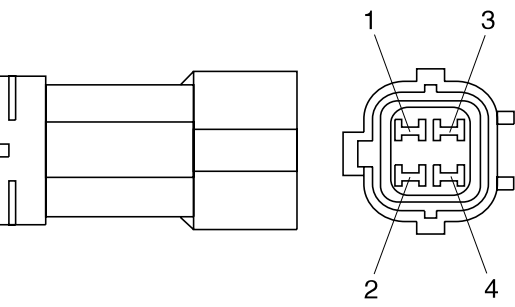
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
5	 <p>S811-005002</p>	 <p>S811-105002</p>
7	 <p>S811-007002</p>	 <p>S811-107002</p>
9	 <p>S811-009002</p>	 <p>S811-109002</p>
11	 <p>S811-011002</p>	 <p>S811-111002</p>

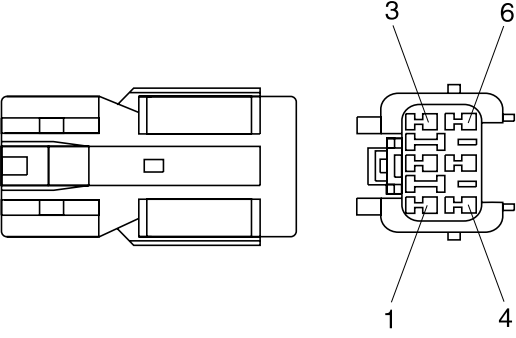
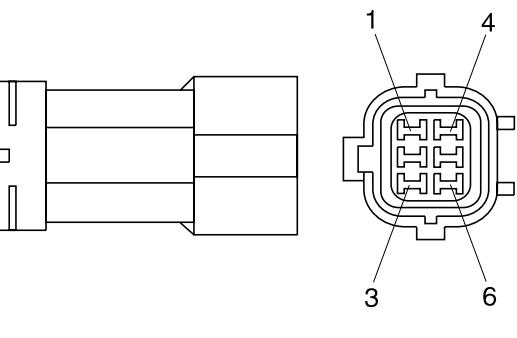
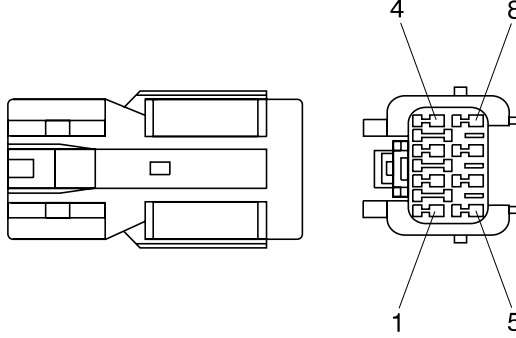
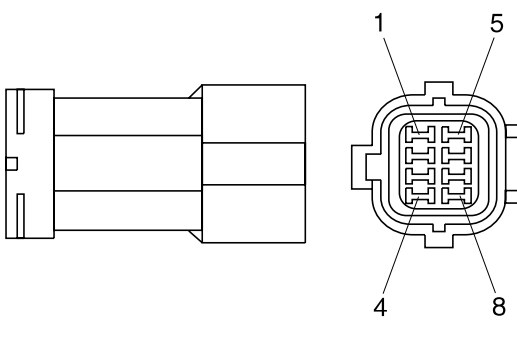
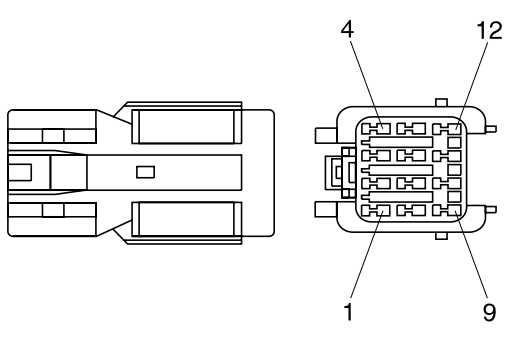
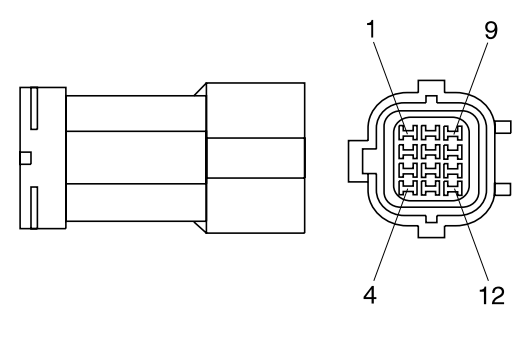
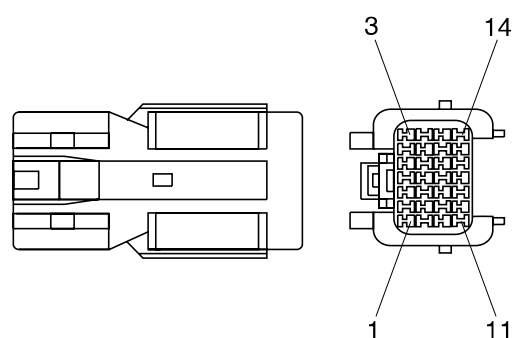
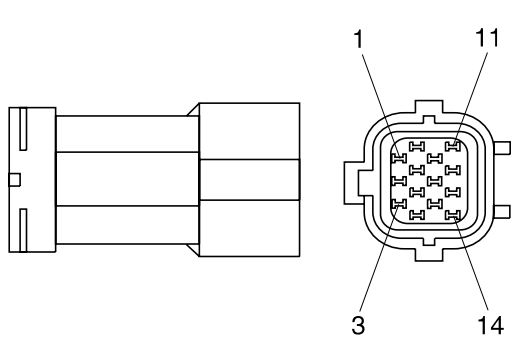
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
13	 <p>S811-013002</p>	 <p>S811-113002</p>
17	 <p>S811-017002</p>	 <p>S811-117002</p>
21	 <p>S811-021002</p>	 <p>S811-121002</p>

3) J TYPE CONNECTOR

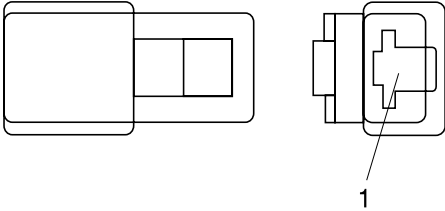
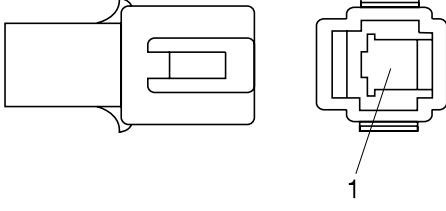
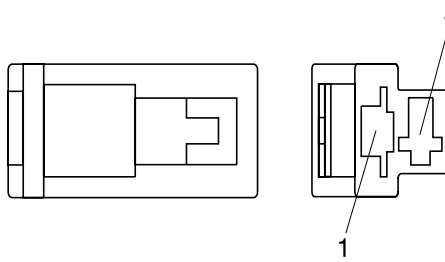
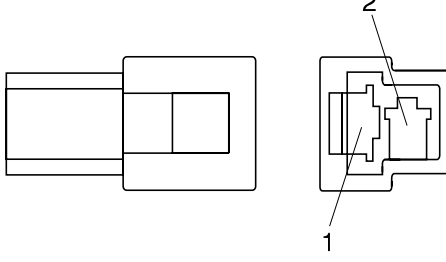
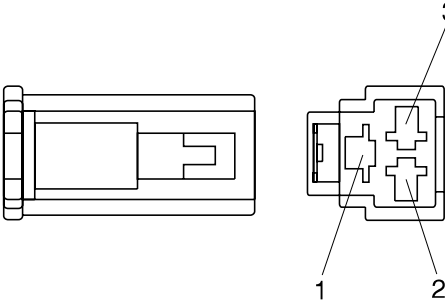
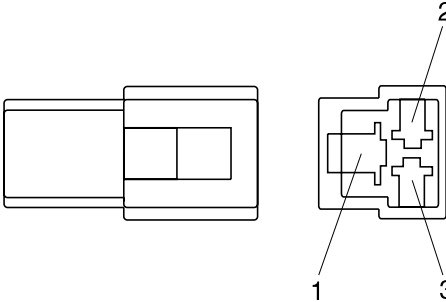
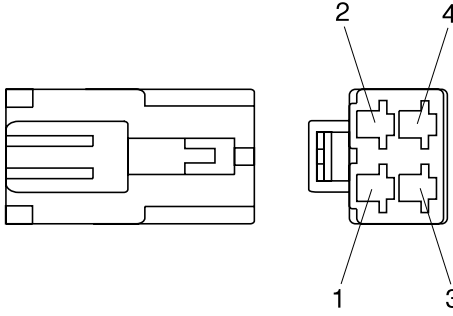
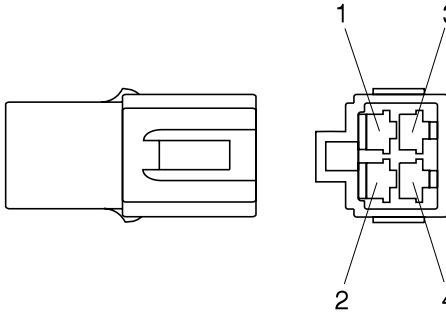
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 <p>S816-002001</p>	 <p>S816-102001</p>
3	 <p>S816-003001</p>	 <p>S816-103001</p>
4	 <p>S816-004001</p>	 <p>S816-104001</p>
8	 <p>S816-008001</p>	 <p>S816-108001</p>

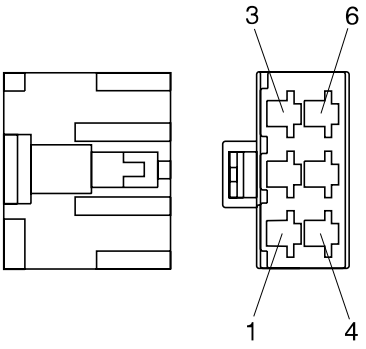
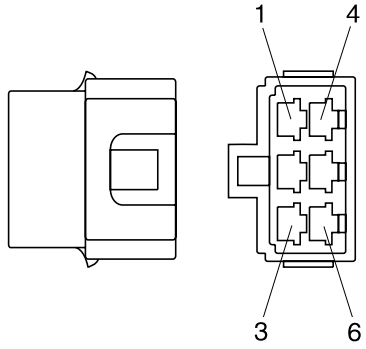
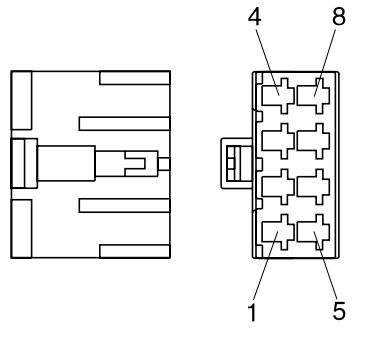
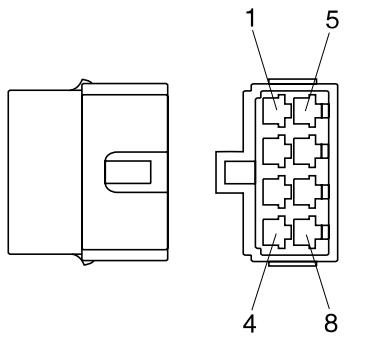
4) SWP TYPE CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (Female)	Plug connector (male)
1	 S814-001000	 S814-101000
2	 S814-002000	 S814-102000
3	 S814-003000	 S814-103000
4	 S814-004000	 S814-104000

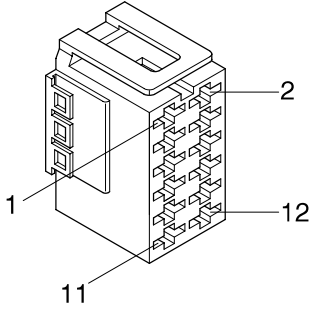
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
6	 <p>S814-006000</p>	 <p>S814-106000</p>
8	 <p>S814-008000</p>	 <p>S814-108000</p>
12	 <p>S814-012000</p>	 <p>S814-112000</p>
14	 <p>S814-014000</p>	 <p>S814-114000</p>

## 5) CN TYPE CONNECTOR

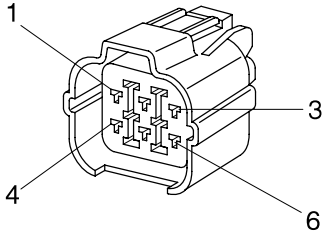
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
1	 <p>S810-001202</p>	 <p>S810-101202</p>
2	 <p>S810-002202</p>	 <p>S810-102202</p>
3	 <p>S810-003202</p>	 <p>S810-103202</p>
4	 <p>S810-004202</p>	 <p>S810-104202</p>

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
6	 <p>S810-006202</p>	 <p>S810-106202</p>
8	 <p>S810-008202</p>	 <p>S810-108202</p>

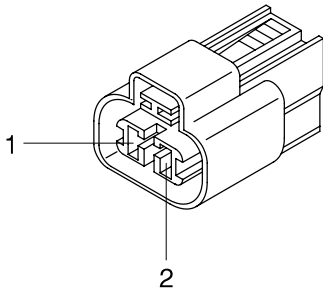
## 6) ITT SWF CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
10	 <p>SWF589790</p>	

## 7) HW090 SEALED CONNECTOR

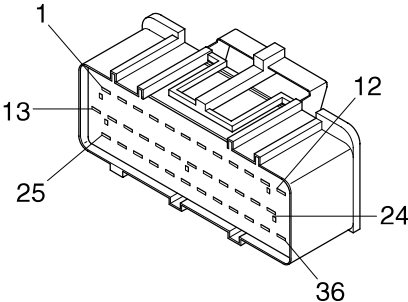
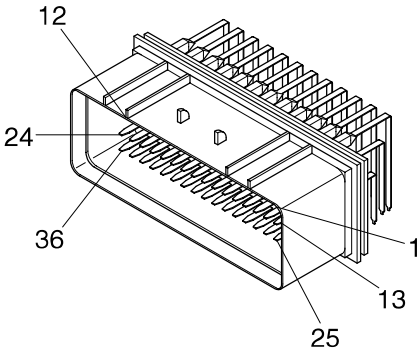
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
6	 <p>6189-0133</p>	

## 8) MWP02F-B CONNECTOR

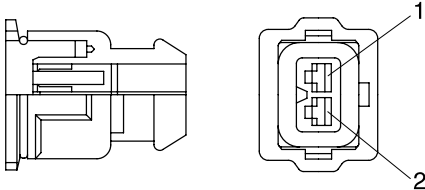
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 <p>PH805-02028</p>	



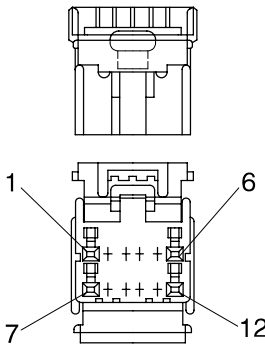
9) AMP ECONOSEAL CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
36	 344111-1	 344108-1

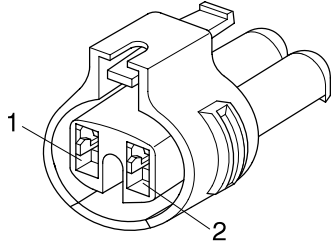
10) AMP TIMER CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 85202-1	

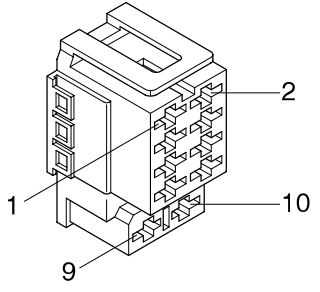
11) AMP 040 MULTILOCK CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
12	 174045-2	

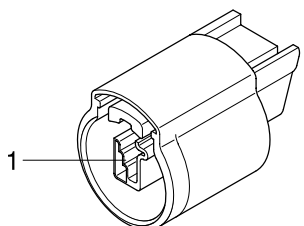
## 12) KET 090 WP CONNECTORS

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 <p>MG640795</p>	

## 13) ITT SWF CONNECTOR

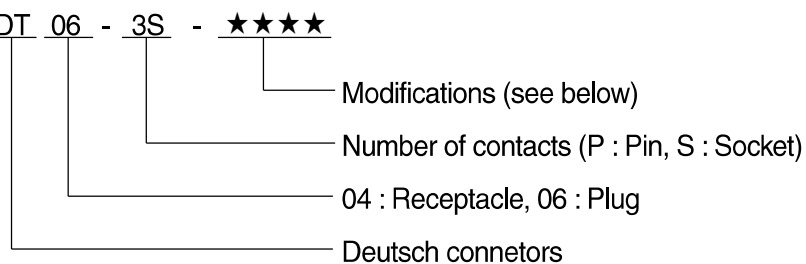
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
10	 <p>SWF593757</p>	

## 14) MWP NMWP CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
1	 <p>NMWP01F-B</p>	

## 15) DEUTSCH DT CONNECTORS

DT 06 - 3S - ★★☆☆



### ※ Modification

E003 : Standard end cap - gray

E004 : Color of connector to be black

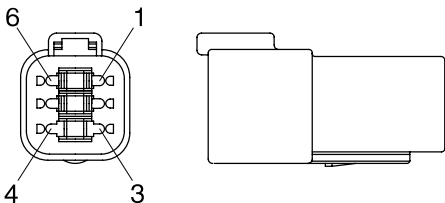
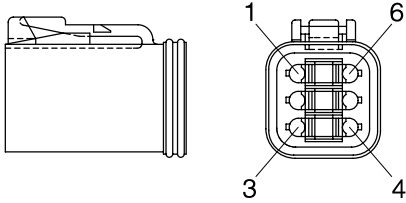
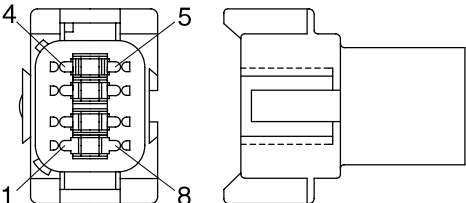
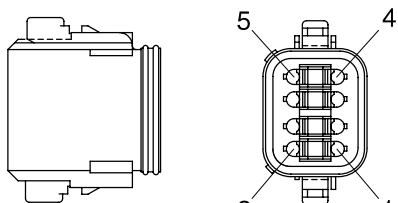
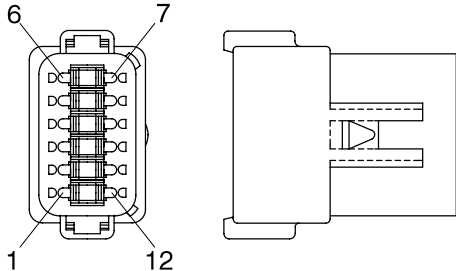
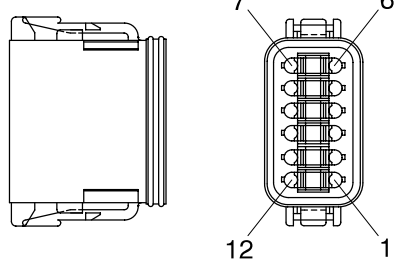
E005 : Combination - E004 & E003

EP04 : End cap

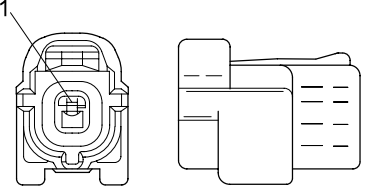
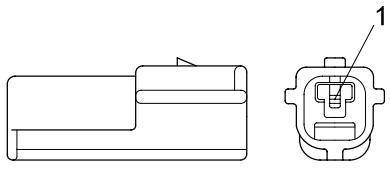
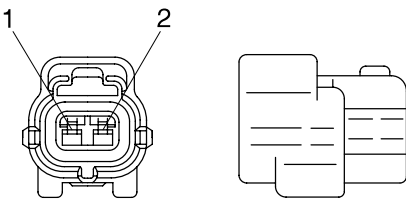
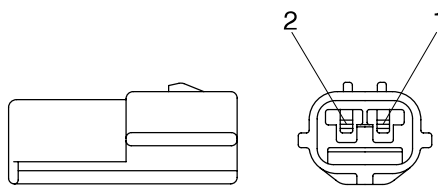
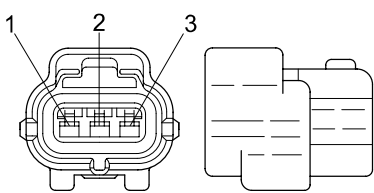
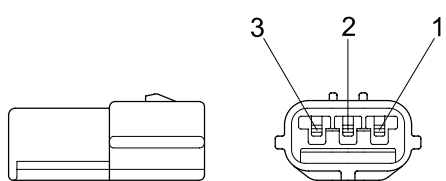
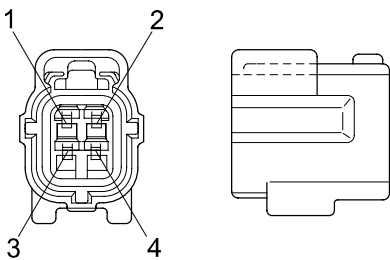
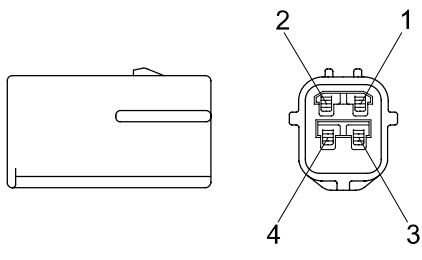
EP06 : Combination P012 & EP04

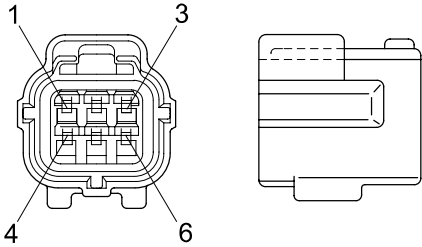
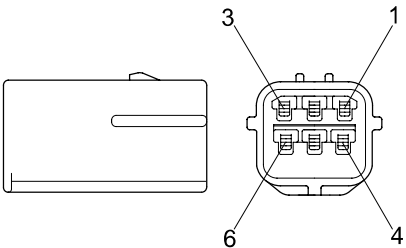
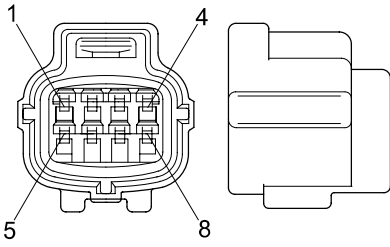
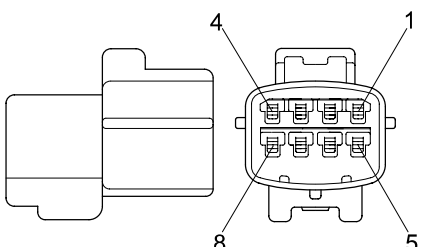
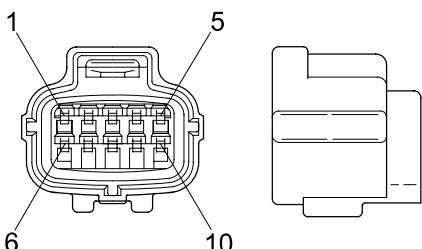
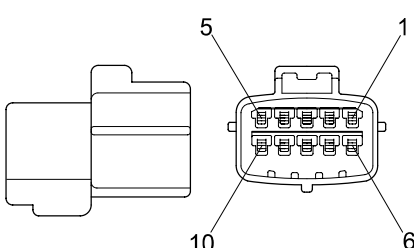
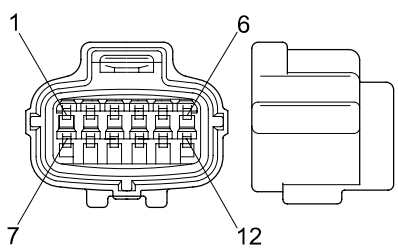
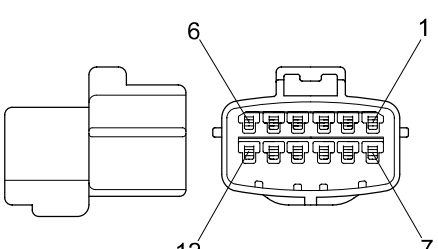
P012 : Front seal enhancement - connectors color to black for 2, 3, 4 & 6pin

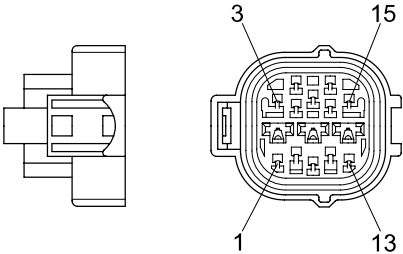
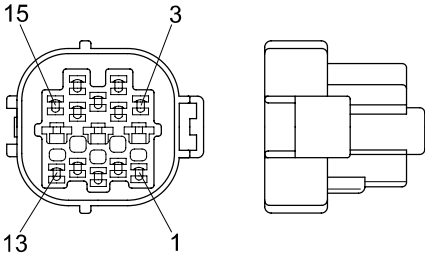
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	<p>DT06-2S</p>	<p>DT04-2P</p>
3	<p>DT06-3S</p>	<p>DT04-3P</p>
4	<p>DT06-4S</p>	<p>DT04-4P</p>

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
6	 <p>DT06-6S</p>	 <p>DT04-6P</p>
8	 <p>DT06-8S</p>	 <p>DT04-8P</p>
12	 <p>DT06-12S</p>	 <p>DT04-12P</p>

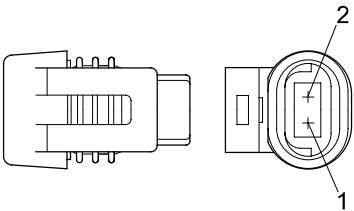
## 16) ECONOSEAL J TYPE CONNECTORS

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
1	 <p>S816-001002</p>	 <p>S816-101002</p>
2	 <p>S816-002002</p>	 <p>S816-102002</p>
3	 <p>S816-003002</p>	 <p>S816-103002</p>
4	 <p>S816-004002</p>	 <p>S816-104002</p>

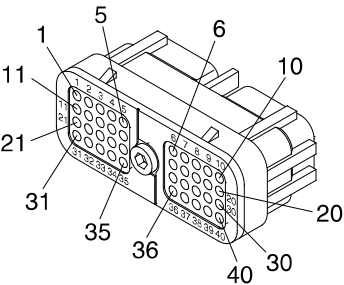
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
6	 <p>S816-006002</p>	 <p>S816-106002</p>
8	 <p>S816-008002</p>	 <p>S816-108002</p>
10	 <p>S816-010002</p>	 <p>S816-110002</p>
12	 <p>S816-012002</p>	 <p>S816-112002</p>

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
15	 <p>368301-1</p>	 <p>2-85262-1</p>

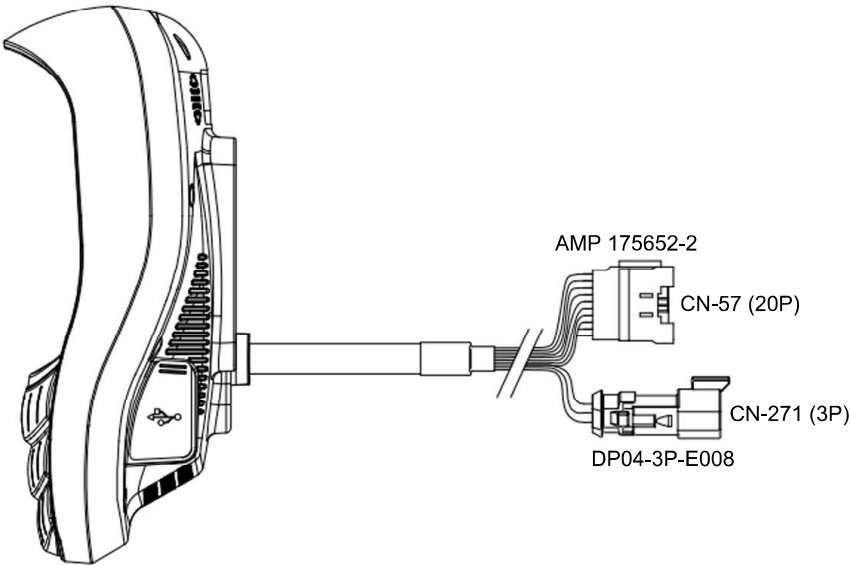
### 17) METRI-PACK TYPE CONNECTOR

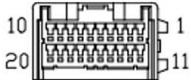
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 <p>12040753</p>	


### 18) DEUTSCH MCU CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (Female)	Plug connector (Male)
40	 <p>DRC26-40SA/B/C</p>	

19) MONITOR CONNECTOR (21WD-11100, 21WD-11101, 21WD-11102)

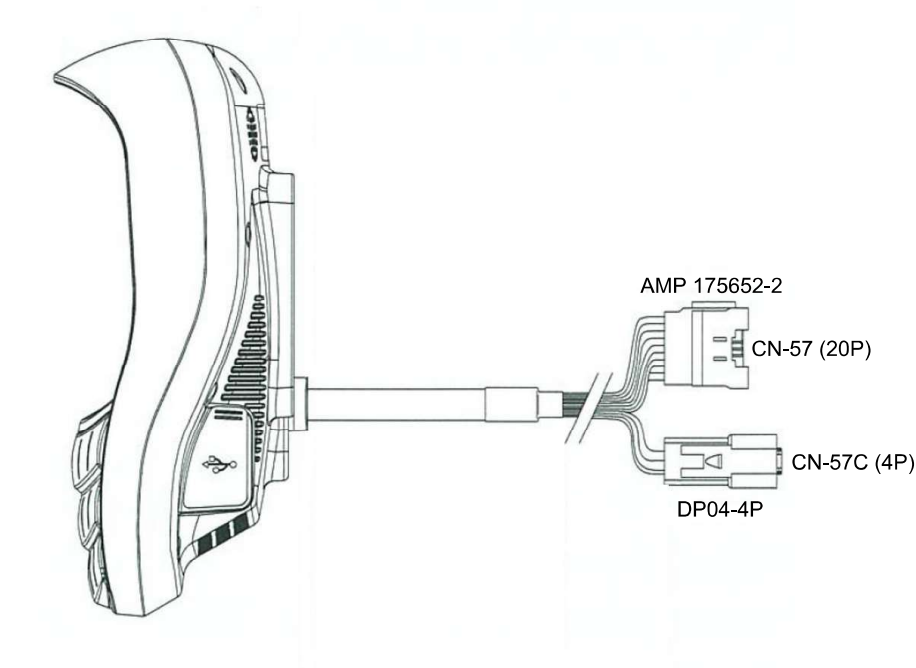


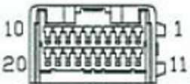
<div>PART NO. : AMP 175652-2</div>			
NO	PIN NAME	NO	PIN NAME
1	IG 24V	11	GND
2	BATTERY 24V	12	GND
3	BATTERY 24V	13	CAN1 H
4	CAMERA CH0	14	CAN2 L
5	CAMERA CH0 SIDE	15	CAN2 H
6	6.5V OUTPUT	16	CAN2 SHIELD
7	AVX LEFT	17	CAMERA SHIELD
8	AVX RIGHT	18	CAN1 LOW
9	CAMERA CH1	19	GND
10	CAMERA CH2	20	CAMERA CH3

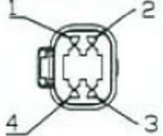
<div>PART NO. : DP04-3P-E008</div>			
NO	PIN NAME	NO	PIN NAME
A	AUX GND	C	AUX RIGHT
B	AUX LEFT		



MONITOR CONNECTOR (21WD-11103, 21WD-11104)



 PART NO. : AMP 175652-2			
NO	PIN NAME	NO	PIN NAME
1	IG 24V	11	GND
2	BATTERY 24V	12	GND
3	BATTERY 24V	13	CAN1 H
4	CAMERA CH0	14	CAN2 L
5	CAMERA CH3 DIFF-	15	CAN2 H
6	6.5V OUTPUT	16	CAN2 SHIELD
7	N.C	17	CAMERA SHIELD
8	N.C	18	CAN1 L
9	CAMERA CH1	19	N.C
10	CAMERA CH2	20	CAMERA CH3 DIFF+

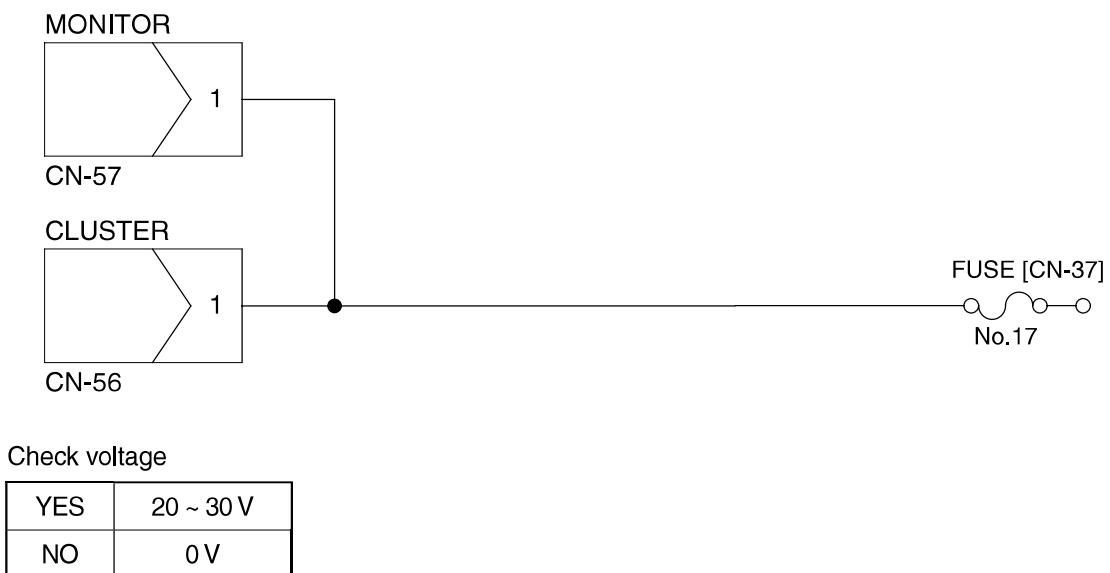
 PART NO. : DT04-4P			
NO	PIN NAME	NO	PIN NAME
1	CAM VCC	3	CAM CH3 +
2	CAM GND	4	CAM CH3 -

## GROUP 6 TROUBLESHOOTING

### 1. WHEN STARTING SWITCH IS TURNED ON, CLUSTER AND MONITOR LAMP DOES NOT LIGHT UP

- Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and the fuse No.17 is not blown out and ON/OFF of bulb.
- After checking, connect the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.

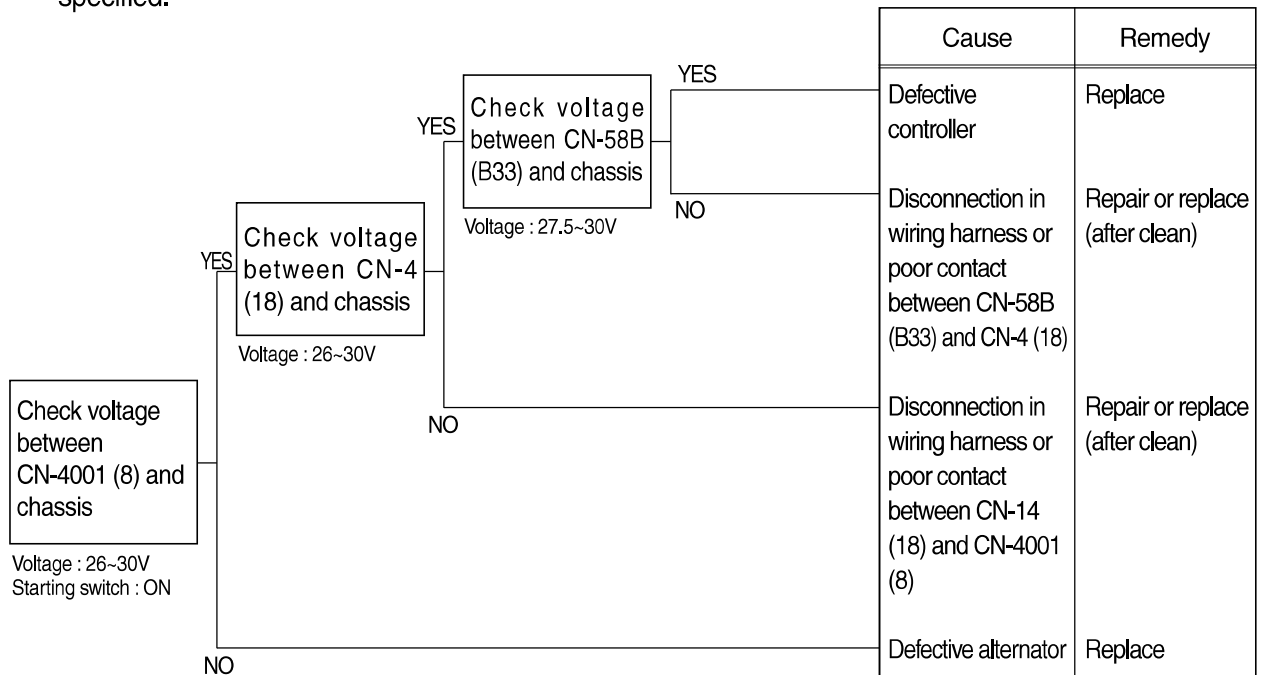
		Cause	Remedy
Check voltage between CN-56 (1), CN-57(1) and chassis	YES	Defective cluster Defective monitor	Replace Replace
	NO	Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CN-56 (1), CN-57 (1) and fuse No. 17	Repair or replace (after clean)



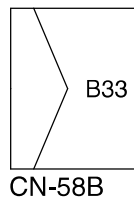
760F7EL24

## 2. WHEN BATTERY LAMP LIGHTS UP (engine is started)

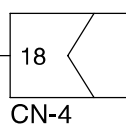
- Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
- After checking, connect the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



### CONTROLLER(MCU)

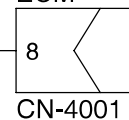


CN-58B



CN-4

### ECM



CN-4001

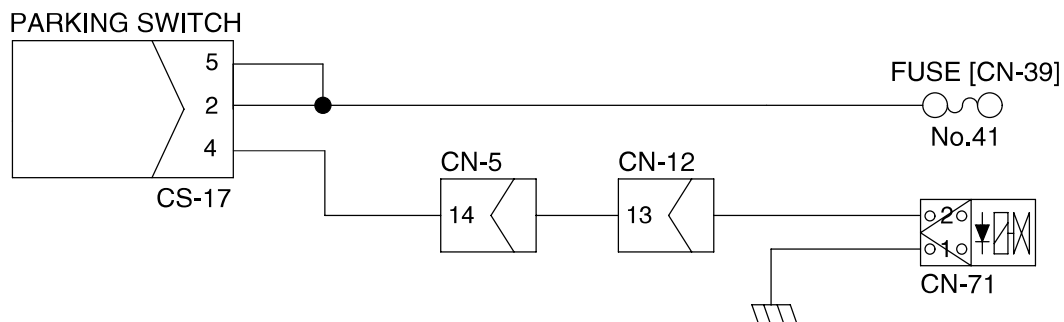
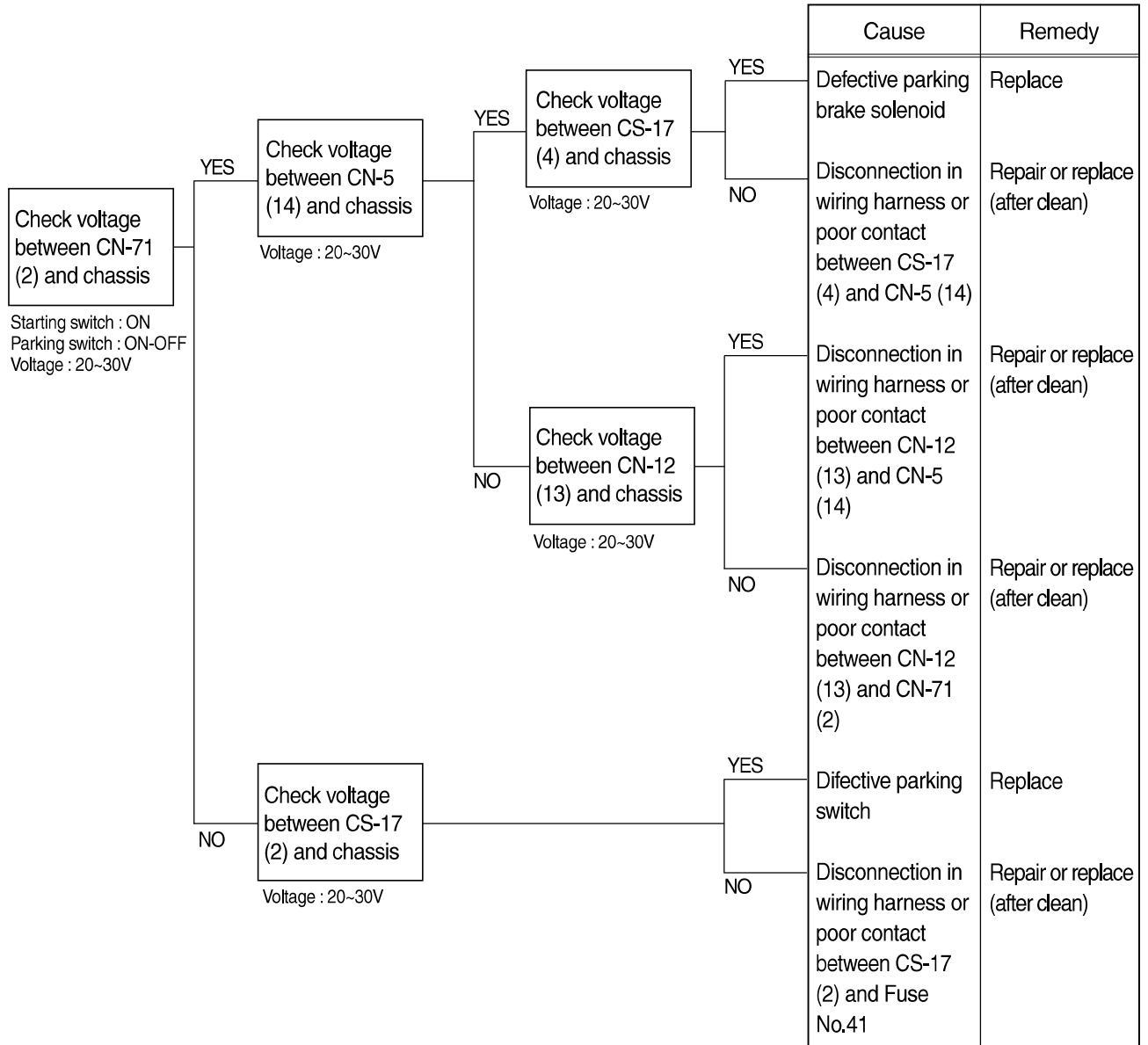
### Check voltage

YES	20 ~ 30 V
NO	0 V

9807EL38

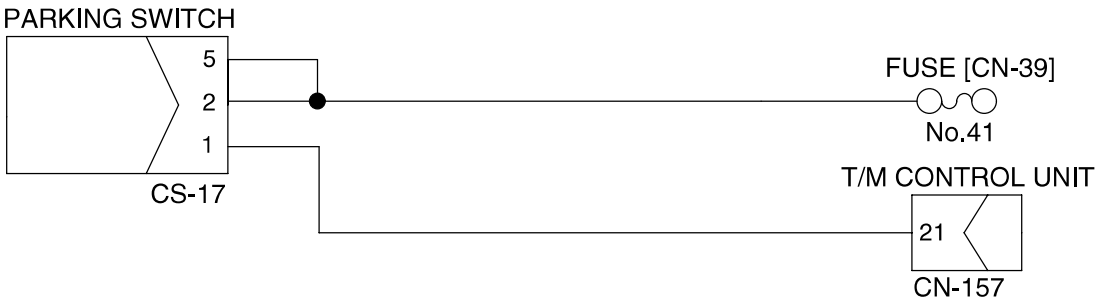
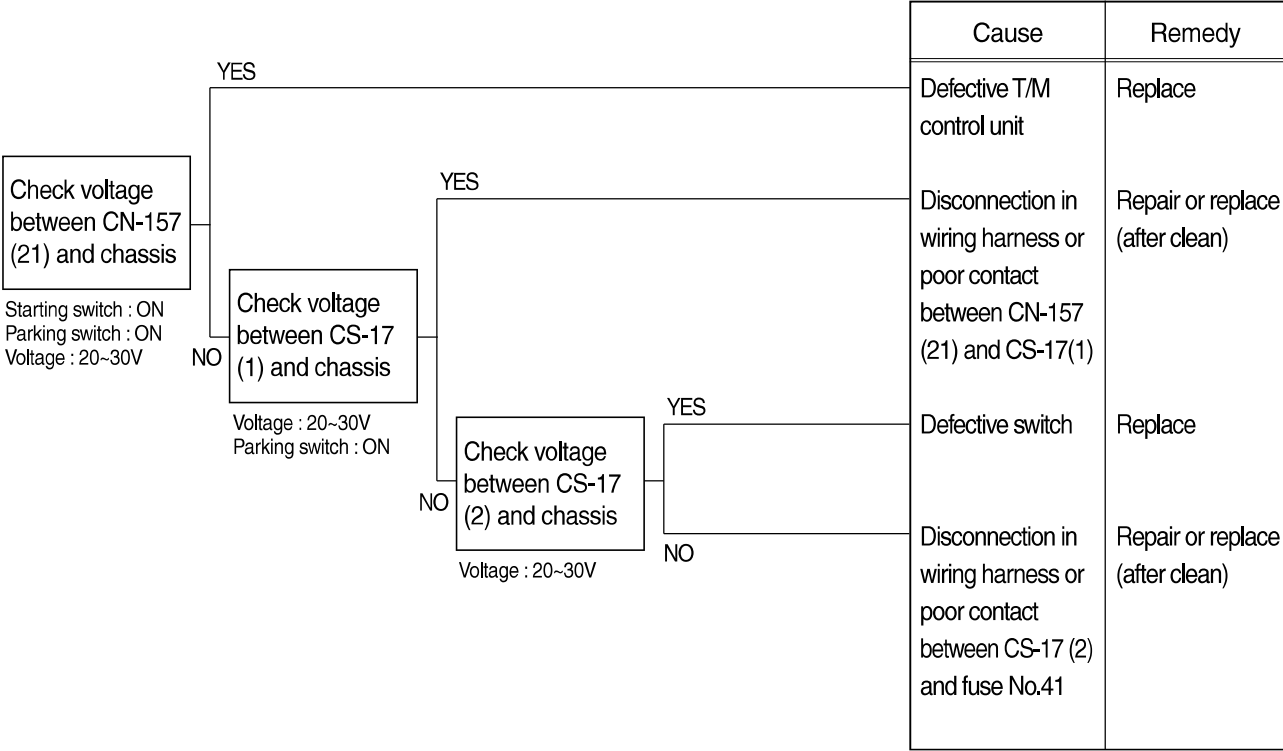
### 3. WHEN PARKING SOLENOID DOES NOT WORK

- Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and the fuse No.41 is not blown out.
- After checking, connect the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



4. TRANSMISSION IS NOT RETURNED TO NEUTRAL WHEN PARKING BRAKE IS APPLIED

- Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and the fuse No.15 (transmission control unit) and No.41 are not blown out.
- After checking, connect the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



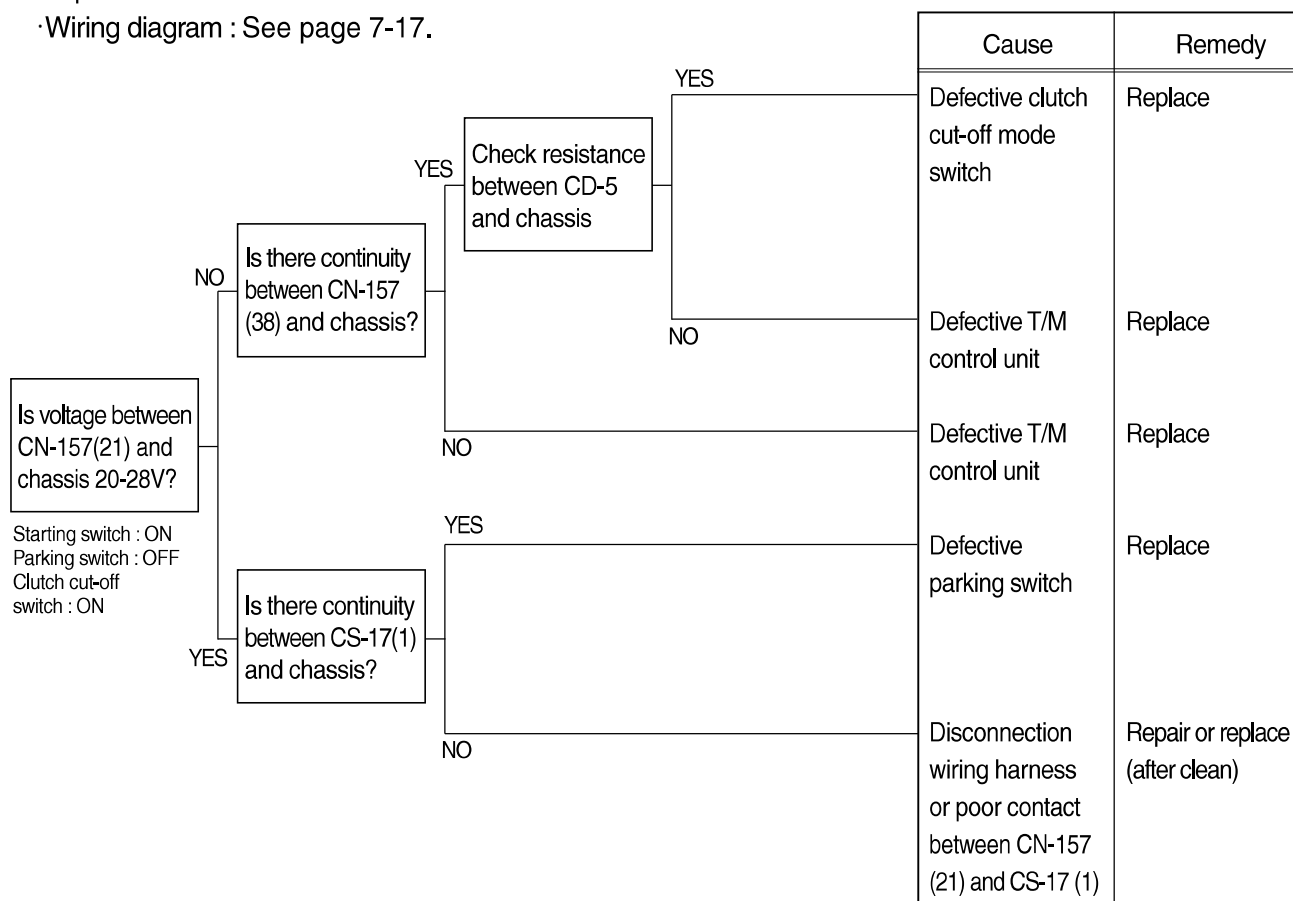
Check resistance

YES	MAX 1Ω
NO	MIN 1MΩ

760F7EL40

## 5. MACHINE DOES NOT TRAVEL

- Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and the fuse No.15 (transmission control unit) is not blown out.
- After checking, connect the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.
- Wiring diagram : See page 7-17.

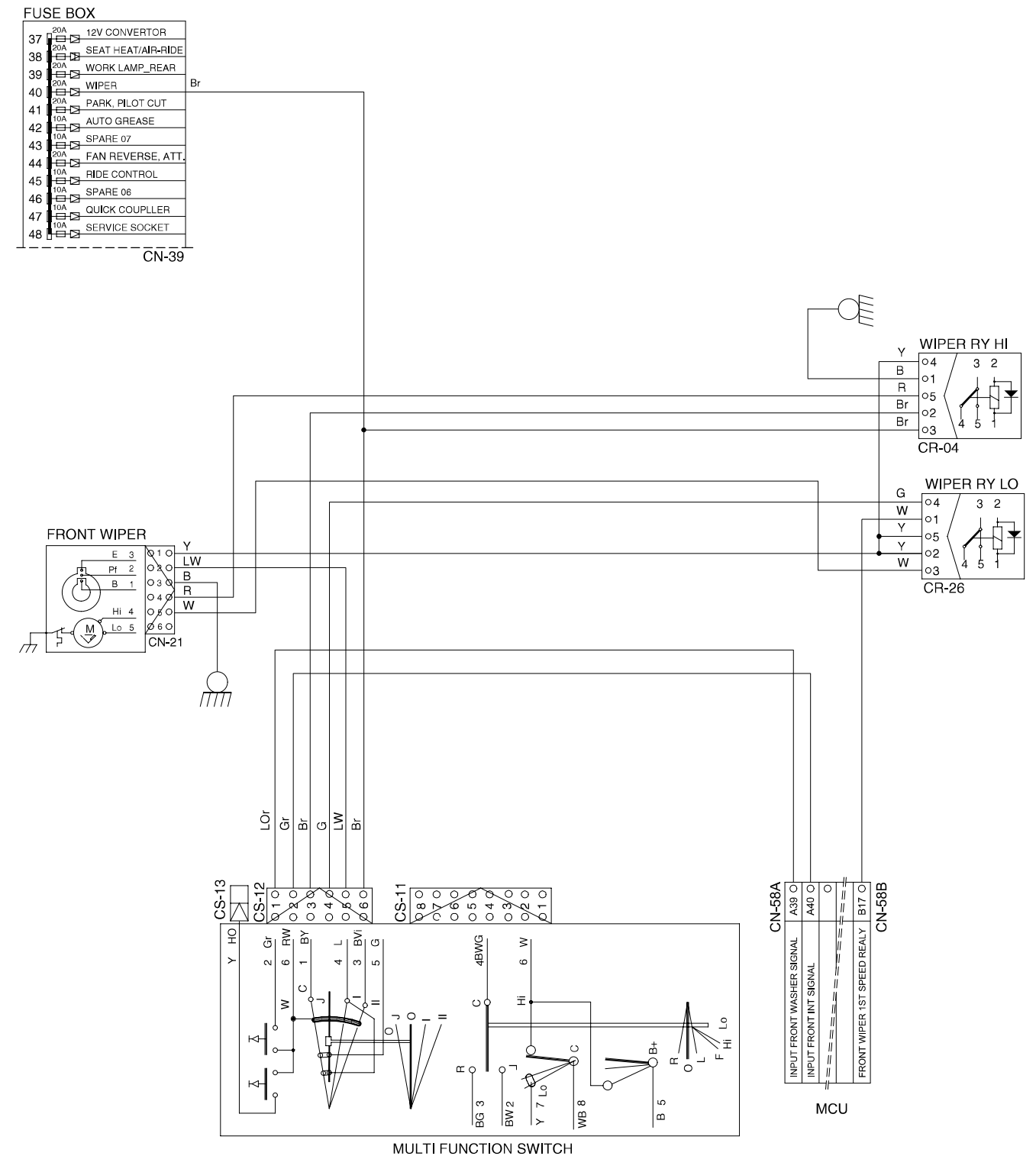
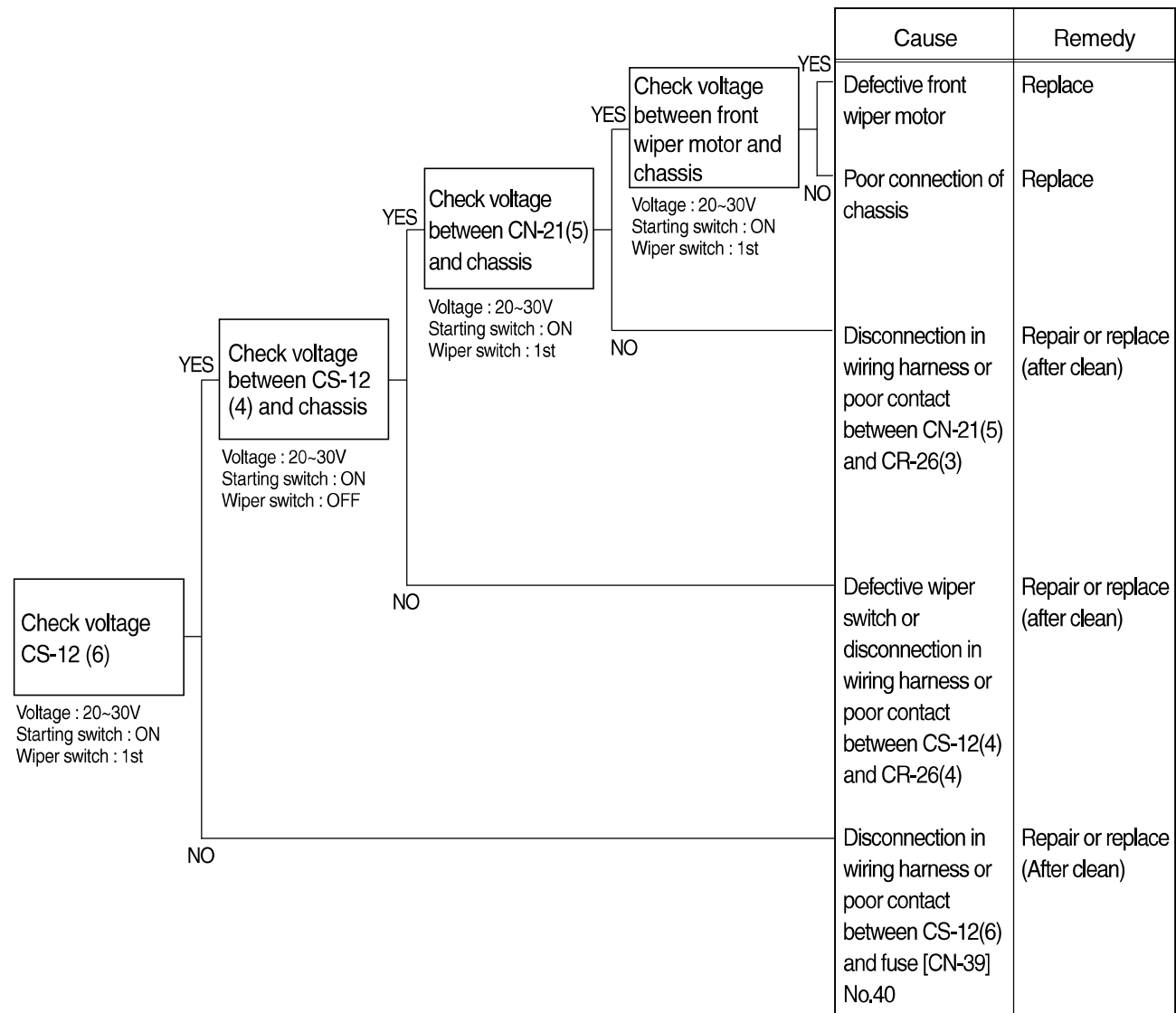


Check resistance

YES	MAX 1Ω
NO	MIN 1MΩ

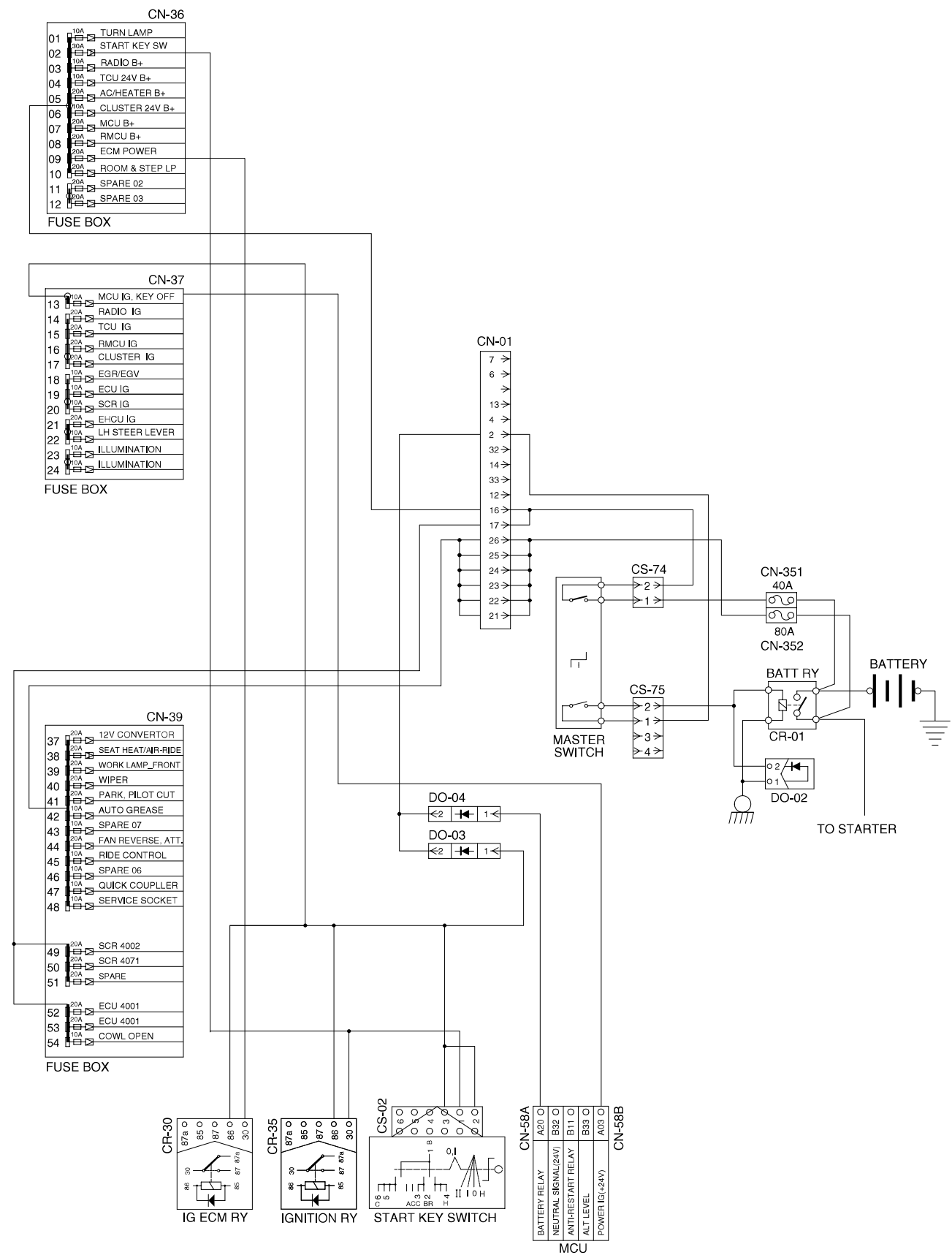
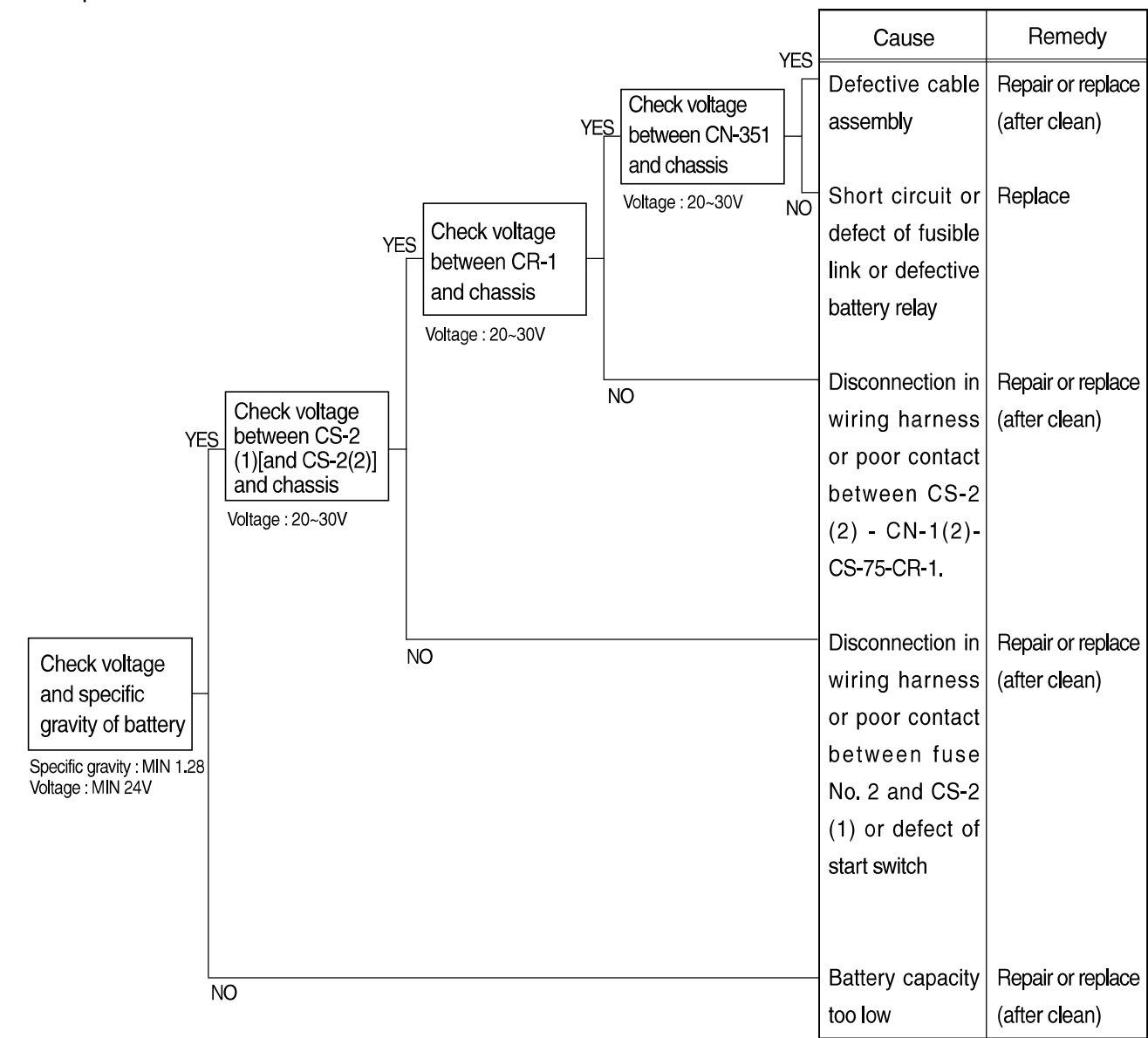
## 6. WHEN STARTING SWITCH IS TURNED ON, WIPER MOTOR DOES NOT OPERATE

- Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and the fuse No.40 is not blown out.
- After checking, connect the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



7. WHEN STARTING SWITCH "ON" DOES NOT OPERATE

- Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted the fuse No.2 is not blown out.
- After checking, connect the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.





8. WHEN STARTING SWITCH IS TURNED ON, WORK LAMP DOES NOT LIGHTS UP

- Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted, and the fuse No.26, 39 is not blown out.
- After checking, connect the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.

